Truth and Terror: a Text-Oriented Analysis of Daniel 8:9-14

Martin T. Pröbstle
Andrews University

Follow this and additional works at: http://digitalcommons.andrews.edu/dissertations
Part of the Biblical Studies Commons

Recommended Citation
Thank you for your interest in the

Andrews University Digital Library

of Dissertations and Theses.

Please honor the copyright of this document by not duplicating or distributing additional copies in any form without the author’s express written permission. Thanks for your cooperation.
Andrews University
Seventh-day Adventist Theological Seminary

TRUTH AND TERROR: A TEXT-ORIENTED
ANALYSIS OF DANIEL 8:9-14

A Dissertation
Presented in Partial Fulfillment
of the Requirements for the Degree
Doctor of Philosophy

by
Martin Pröbstle
July 2006

Volume 1
TRUTH AND TERROR: A TEXT-ORIENTED ANALYSIS OF DANIEL 8:9-14

A dissertation presented in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree Doctor of Philosophy

by

Martin Pröbstle

APPROVAL BY THE COMMITTEE:

Faculty Adviser
Jacques B. Doukhan
Professor of Hebrew and Old Testament Exegesis

Richard M. Davidson
J. N. Andrews Professor of Old Testament Interpretation

Roy E. Gane
Professor of Hebrew Bible and Ancient Near Eastern Languages

Niels-Erik Andreasen
Professor of Old Testament Studies

Choon-Leong Seow
Henry Snyder Gehman Professor of Old Testament Language and Literature Princeton Theological Seminary

Roy E. Gane
Director, Ph.D./Th.D. Programs

Dean, SDA Theological Seminary

John K. McVay

July 26, 2006
Date approved
To Marianne

אחת נעליות בבללה

Joy of my life (Prov 31:29)

To Max and Jonathan

שמתי שמותך אชำניכם

In your presence is fullness of joy (Ps 16:11)
ABSTRACT

TRUTH AND TERROR: A TEXT-ORIENTED
ANALYSIS OF DANIEL 8:9-14

by

Martin Pröbstle

Adviser: Jacques B. Doukhan
ABSTRACT OF GRADUATE STUDENT RESEARCH

Dissertation

Andrews University
Seventh-day Adventist Theological Seminary

Title: TRUTH AND TERROR: A TEXT-ORIENTED ANALYSIS OF DANIEL 8:9-14

Name of researcher: Martin Pröbstle

Name and degrees of faculty adviser: Jacques B. Doukhan, D.H.L., Th.D.

Date completed: July 2006

Daniel 8:9-14 constitutes the climax of the vision report in Dan 8, and is arguably one of the most difficult Danielic passages. This dissertation investigates the Masoretic Text of Dan 8:9-14 by means of a detailed and comprehensive text-oriented analysis that utilizes linguistic, literary, and intertextual procedures.

In chapter 1, an overview of modern text-oriented approaches and the review of recent literature on Dan 8 pave the way for a description of this study's methodology, which consists of a combination of linguistic (syntax, semantics, and text-grammar), literary (style and structure), and intertextual approaches (textual relations within the book of Daniel), using them as a threefold avenue to the understanding of the text, while at the same time demonstrating their interdependence.

The linguistic analysis in chapter 2 analyzes the syntactic and semantic features of
each clause, as well as significant terms and expressions in Dan 8:9-14. A text-grammatical analysis identifies the interclausal relations in the passage.

The literary analysis in chapter 3 examines the rhetorical and stylistic devices and their function in Dan 8:9-14, and describes the literary structure and dynamics of the passage. Stylistic and structural devices include poetic-like language in vs. 11, verbal gender shifts in vss. 9-12, the use of the key word בְּדַע in a "hubris-fall" pattern, and spatial imagery. The investigation of terminological fields and their distribution observes the interplay of military, royal, cultic, creation, and judgment terminology, showing how these themes characterize the role of the horn figure and convey the text’s theological message.

The intertextual analysis in chapter 4 explores the lexical and thematic links of Dan 8:9-14 with other texts in the book of Daniel—particularly with 8:23-25 and chaps. 7, 9, and 10-12—and how these texts contribute to the interpretation of Dan 8:9-14.

The summary and conclusions in chapter 5 highlight the results of each of the three avenues of the text-oriented approach to Dan 8:9-14.

The climax of the vision report with its accompanying audition, against the general opinion, is linguistically well-composed and an extremely artistic literary piece that combines significant theological themes. The Day of Atonement serves as a macrotheme and typifies the divine reaction to the cosmic challenge created by the cultic war of the horn. By its complex textual relations, Dan 8:9-14 constitutes a central passage in the book of Daniel.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES ..................................................................................................................... xi

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS ............................................................................................... xiv

Chapter

1. INTRODUCTION ...................................................................................................... 1

   Preliminary Remarks and Statement of Problem ................................................................. 1
   Purpose of the Study ............................................................................................................ 7
   Text-Oriented Approaches to Daniel 8:9-14 ........................................................................ 7
       Overview of Text-Oriented Approaches ........................................................................ 8
       Introduction .................................................................................................................. 8
       Overview of Text-Oriented Approaches ........................................................................ 16
       Linguistic approaches ................................................................................................. 17
       Literary approaches ..................................................................................................... 22
       Canonical approaches .................................................................................................. 25
   Summary .......................................................................................................................... 29

   Text-Oriented Approaches to Daniel 8: A Review of Recent Studies ......................... 30
   Studies Using Some Linguistic or Literary Methods ......................................................... 35
   The Text-Oriented Approach of Bernhard Hasslberger (1977) ....................................... 42
       Description .................................................................................................................. 42
       Assessment .................................................................................................................. 46
   The Text-Oriented Approach of Klaus Koch (1983) ......................................................... 49
       Description .................................................................................................................. 49
       Assessment .................................................................................................................. 53

   The Text-Oriented Approach of the Schweizer School –
       Winfried Bader, ed. (1994) ......................................................................................... 55
       Description .................................................................................................................. 55
       Assessment .................................................................................................................. 62
   The Text-Oriented Approach of Holger Gzella (2003) ..................................................... 63
       Description .................................................................................................................. 63
       Assessment .................................................................................................................. 66
   Summary .......................................................................................................................... 67

   Justification and Relevance ............................................................................................. 70

   Methodology and Procedure ........................................................................................... 71
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methodological Considerations and Principles</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delimitations</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedure</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal Textual Witnesses of Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. LINGUISTIC ANALYSIS</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delimitation of the Text</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text and Working Translation</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause Analysis of Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 9a</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The verb נָאַמְרָא and its antecedent</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbolic meaning of נָאַמְרָא</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 9b</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 10a</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of נָאַמְרָא נַעַמְרַמְרָא</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 10b</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of נָאַמְרָא נַעַמְרַמְרָא</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 10c</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 11a</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of נָאַמְרָא נַעַמְרַמְרָא</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of the Clause</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 11b</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text-critical note on the verb in Dan 8:11b</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax of 11b and antecedent of נָאַמְרָא נַעַמְרַמְרָא</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntactic-semantic analysis of נָאַמְרָא נַעַמְרַמְרָא</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of נָאַמְרָא נַעַמְרַמְרָא</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 11c</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntactic-Semantic Analysis of “2300 Evening-Morning”</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence: noun + numeral</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular and asyndetic use of רבע בְּקָרָה</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word order and meaning of רבע בְּקָרָה</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function of רבע בְּקָרָה</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause 14c</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntactic function of בֵּיתָן</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive mood of בֵּיתָן</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of בֵּיתָן</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of שֵׁלֶּשׁ</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interclausal Analysis</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clause Types in Daniel 8:9-14 and Their Function</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word Order</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interclausal Relations</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. LITERARY ANALYSIS</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preliminary Remarks</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literary Style</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prose and Poetry in Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>437</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concept of Biblical Hebrew Poetry</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poetic Analysis of Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function of Poetic Style in Daniel 8:11</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender Difficulties</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masculine Verbal Gender in Daniel 8:11</td>
<td>463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender as Stylistic Device</td>
<td>467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thematic Distribution and Arrangement</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Fields of Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Terminology: Power, Control, Violence</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal Terminology</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultic Terminology</td>
<td>476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creation Terminology</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judgment Terminology</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covenant Terminology</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminology of Perception</td>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distribution of Semantic Fields</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Macrotheme: Day of Atonement ............................................................. 489
Semantic Fields in Daniel 8:3-8 in Anticipation of Daniel 8:9-14 . 497
Spatial Imagery ......................................................................................... 505
“Leitwörter” and Keywords in Daniel 8:9-14 ....................................... 506
“Leitwörter” ....................................................................................... 506
Keyword מִלְחַמָּה and the “Hubris-Fall” Pattern ........................................ 510
Characterization of the Horn Figure ...................................................... 516
Horn as King ..................................................................................... 517
Horn as Priest (Anti-Priest) ............................................................. 517
Horn as God (Anti-YHWH) ............................................................... 518
Horn as Chaos Force (Anti-Creator) ............................................. 520
Summary ............................................................................................ 521
Literary Structure of Daniel 8:9-14 ............................................................... 522
Introduction ................................................................................................ 522
Genre of Daniel 8 ..................................................................................... 523
Structure of Daniel 8 ................................................................................. 526
Structure of Daniel 8:9-14 ............................................................. 529
Vision of the Horn (Daniel 8:9-11) ................................................ 530
Audition (Daniel 8:12-14) ............................................................... 537
Delimitation of Daniel 8:9-14 ............................................................. 540
Unity of Daniel 8:9-14 ........................................................................ 543
Structural Commentary of Daniel 8:9-14 ................................................ 549
Vision of the Horn (Daniel 8:9-11) ................................................ 549
Audition (Daniel 8:12-14) ............................................................... 551
Different nature of verse 12 .................................................... 551
Connection between verse 11b-c and verse 12a-b ............... 552
Structure of the question in verse 13c ..................................... 554
Cohesion within the audition .................................................. 561
Function of the audition ........................................................... 561
General Conclusion .......................................................................................... 563

4. TEXTUAL RELATIONS .............................................................. 565
Introduction to Intertextual Analysis ......................................................... 565
The Concept of Intertextuality ................................................................. 566
Different Types of Intertextuality ............................................................... 568
Criteria for Intertextual Relations and Methodological
Considerations .................................................................................. 574
Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 8:23-26 .... 581
Similarities ......................................................................................... 584
Thematic Similarities ........................................................................ 584
Specific Phrases ............................................................................. 587
Differences ............................................................................................ 597

viii

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
5. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Methodological Results ................................................................. 741
Major Contributions ....................................................................... 742
Linguistic Analysis ....................................................................... 742
Literary Analysis ......................................................................... 747
Intertextual Analysis .................................................................. 749
Perspectives ................................................................................. 751
Final Conclusion .......................................................................... 752

Appendix

1. A CONCORDANCE OF THE VOCABULARY OF DANIEL 8:9-14 IN
   THE BOOK OF DANIEL ................................................................. 753

2. THE SEMANTIC FUNCTION OF THE PREPOSITION בֵּין IN
   CLAUSES WITH ........................................................................... 758

3. THE SEMANTIC FUNCTION OF THE PREPOSITION בֵּין IN
   CLAUSES WITH ........................................................................... 763

BIBLIOGRAPHY ............................................................................. 770
LIST OF TABLES

1. Daniel 8:9-14: Clause Division and Working Translation ................................. 95
2. Levels of Meaning for Symbolic Language ......................................................... 100
3. Introduction of the Main Actors of the Vision in Daniel 8 ................................. 123
4. Meaning of הָלְכוּת “Stars” in the Hebrew Bible ......................................................... 159
5. Clauses with רִמְו hif./hof. + מָן ................................................................. 196
6. Greek and the Syriac Renditions of כְּפַרְדִּיָּה and כְּפַרְדִּיָּה הָרֶנֶך in the Book of Daniel . 223
7. Interpretations of the Meaning of כְּפַרְדִּיָּה .......................................................... 263
8. Semantic Function of ב (according to Jenni) ....................................................... 282
9. Semantic Function of ב in Combination with Major Terms for Sin ................... 288
10. Occurrences of the Verbal Root יִצְלַה in the Hebrew Bible ............................... 323
11. Syntax of Object Clauses to נִשְׁפָּת with Predicative Participles of Uttering ... 330
12. Structure of the Audition in Daniel 8:12-14 ...................................................... 342
13. Terminological Comparison of Daniel 8:13c; 11:31c-d; and 12:11 ..................... 360
14. Phrases with Cardinals (Higher than One) in the Book of Daniel ................... 373
15. Interpretations of “2300 Evening-Morning” ..................................................... 385
16. Analysis of כְּפַרְדִּיָּה-Clauses in the Hebrew Bible ................................................. 401
17. Clause Types in Daniel 8:9-14 ........................................................................... 426
18. Verbal/Clausal Forms and Discourse Constellation ........................................ 427
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Interclausal Relations in Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Rhythm Count of Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Alternative Rhythm Count of Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Nonpoetic Particle and wayyiqtol/w'qatal Count in the Hebrew Parts of Daniel</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Poetic Insets in the Visions and Angelic Interpretations in Daniel 7–12</td>
<td>459</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Distribution of Terminology in Daniel 8:9-14 according to Isotopies</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Leitwörter in Daniel 8</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Literary Crescendo of the Verbal Root יִרְבָּה</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>&quot;Hubris Leads to a Great Fall&quot; Theme in Daniel 8</td>
<td>513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>יִרְבָּה-Pattern in Daniel 8:9-11</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Structural Division of Daniel 8</td>
<td>528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Structural Pattern of the Vision in Daniel 8</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Leitwörter of Daniel 8 Occurring in Daniel 8:9-14</td>
<td>548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Two Concepts of Intertextuality</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Lexical and Thematic Links between Vision and Interpretation in Daniel 8</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Basic Structural Components in Daniel 7 and Daniel 8</td>
<td>608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>References to the Visionary Activity in Daniel 7</td>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Similarities of the Little Horns in Daniel 7 and Daniel 8</td>
<td>614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Correlation of Daniel 7 and 8 with the Little Horns Designating Different Powers</td>
<td>617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Correlation of Daniel 7 and 8 with the Little Horns Designating the Same Power (A)</td>
<td>617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Lexical and Thematic Correspondences between the Animals of the Visions in Daniel 7 and 8</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Correlation of Daniel 7 and 8 with the Little Horns Designating the Same Power (B)</td>
<td>624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>“Holy Ones” in Daniel 7</td>
<td>631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>“Holy Ones” under Attack in the Book of Daniel</td>
<td>633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Creation Theme in Daniel 7 and 8</td>
<td>652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Usage of the Root אֶב in Daniel 8 and 9</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Lexical Correspondences of Keywords between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 10-12</td>
<td>711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Terminological Comparison of Daniel 8:11-13 and Daniel 11:31</td>
<td>717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Similarities of the Horn in Daniel 8 and the King of the North in Daniel 11</td>
<td>734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 1-6</td>
<td>736</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

The following technical abbreviations are used:

adj      adjective
adv      adverb
art      article
ArtWG    article word group
BA       Biblical Aramaic
BH       Biblical Hebrew
c        common
ConjWG   conjunction word group
cs       construct form
CsWG     construct word group
C.Sy     non-obligatory syntagmeme
du       dual
ePP      enclitic personal pronoun
f        feminine
inf      infinitive
interrog interrogative
ipf      imperfect
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iPP</td>
<td>independent personal pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>noun phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumWG</td>
<td>numeral word group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pf</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ptc</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PWG</td>
<td>prepositional word group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.Sy</td>
<td>predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sg</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sy</td>
<td>syntagmeme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.Sy</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.Sy</td>
<td>direct object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.Sy</td>
<td>indirect object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.Sy</td>
<td>prepositional object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.Sy</td>
<td>syntagmeme of dislocation: dislocative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following nomenclature is used for verbal forms and clause types:

- **wayyiqtol**  
  *waw* consecutive + verb in imperfect form

- **w³qatal**  
  *waw* consecutive + verb in perfect form
Abbreviations of Sources

The abbreviations used in this dissertation follow the exhaustive abbreviation lists in The SBL Handbook of Style. In addition, the following abbreviations not listed in The SBL Handbook of Style are also used:

- **ANES** Ancient Near Eastern Studies
- **AOTC** Abingdon Old Testament Commentaries
- **ATSAT** Arbeiten zu Text und Sprache im Alten Testament
- **ATSDS** Adventist Theological Society Dissertation Series
- **AUSDDS** Andrews University Seminary Doctoral Dissertation Series
- **BIS** Biblical Interpretation Series
- **BSem** The Biblical Seminar
- **BThSt** Biblisch-theologische Studien
- **BZAR** Beihefte zur Zeitschrift für alterorientalische und biblische

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DARCOM</td>
<td>Daniel and Revelation Committee Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBSJ</td>
<td>Detroit Baptist Seminary Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exp</td>
<td><em>The Expositor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIOTL</td>
<td>Formation and Interpretation of Old Testament Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTJ</td>
<td>Grace Theological Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBS</td>
<td>Herders Biblische Studien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBL</td>
<td>Indiana Studies in Biblical Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JATS</td>
<td><em>Journal of the Adventist Theological Society</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBLMS</td>
<td>Journal of Biblical Literature Monograph Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBT</td>
<td>Jahrbuch für Biblische Theologie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEchtB: AT</td>
<td>Die Neue Echter Bibel: Kommentar zum Alten Testament mit der Einheitsübersetzung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSK: AT</td>
<td>Neuer Stuttgarter Kommentar: Altes Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIVAC</td>
<td>NIV Application Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBS</td>
<td>Oxford Bible Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBTS</td>
<td>Sources for Biblical and Theological Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StBL</td>
<td>Studies in Biblical Literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THLI</td>
<td>Textwissenschaft, Theologie, Hermeneutik, Linguistik, Literaturanalyse, Informatik</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

Preliminary Remarks and Statement of the Problem

"The paradigm is changing."1 Whether or not Kuhn's concept of "paradigm shift"2 applies to the present state in the field of exegetical methodology, it is evident that

1Rolf Rendtorff, "The Paradigm Is Changing: Hopes—and Fears," BibInt 1 (1993): 52. This is Rendtorff's proclamatory statement about the new interest in the final form of the text and in text-oriented approaches after the focus in mainstream Old Testament scholarship has been to a large extent on the author(s) and the concept of exegesis was mainly diachronic, using the methods of historical criticism. At another place, Rendtorff describes this phenomenon as "a fundamental shift in priorities" ("Between Historical Criticism and Holistic Interpretation: New Trends in Old Testament Exegesis," in Congress Volume, Jerusalem 1986, ed. J. A. Emerton, VTSup, no. 40 [Leiden: Brill, 1988], 300). Other characteristic terms for the new text-oriented interest are not lacking; for example, Helmut Utschneider employs the term "renaissance" ("Die Renaissance der alttestamentlichen Literaturwissenschaft und das Buch Exodus," ZAW 106 [1994]: 197-198); Phyllis Trible and Otto Kaiser designate it as "paradigm shift" (Phyllis Trible, Rhetorical Criticism: Context, Method, and the Book of Jonah, GBS [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1994], 74; Otto Kaiser, "Von Stand und Zukunft der alttestamentlichen Wissenschaft," in Congress Volume: Oslo 1998, ed. A. Lemaire and M. Sæbø, VTSup, no. 80 [Leiden: Brill, 2000], 491); and Tremper Longman III describes it as "(re)birth" ("Literary Approaches to Old Testament Study," in The Face of Old Testament Studies: A Survey of Contemporary Approaches, ed. D. W. Baker and B. T. Arnold [Grand Rapids: Baker, 1999], 97). Of course, it has to be noted that while the study of texts as it stands is not really new (approaches to the biblical text before the rise of historical criticism are generally synchronic), the synchronic study of texts in a systematic way by means of text-oriented approaches has risen only in the twentieth century (cf. James Muilenburg, "Form Criticism and Beyond," JBL 88 [1969]: 8). John Barton, among others, warns to use "paradigm" language as it "implies that there are many valid ways of reading texts" and "historical criticism was never meant to be one valid option among many: it was supposed to yield truth, and truth independent of the outlook of the investigator" ("Historical Criticism and Literary Interpretation: Is There Any Common Ground?" in Crossing the Boundaries: Essays in Biblical Interpretation in Honour of Michael D. Goulder, ed. S. E. Porter, P. Joyce, and D. E. Orton, BIS, no. 8 [Leiden: Brill, 1994], 4).

in the last decades the study of biblical texts has gained immense momentum by the new emphasis of text-oriented approaches. A new interest has emerged in the study of the text itself, as it stands in its final form. Narrative, poetic, and prophetic texts, both large and small corpora, are again investigated by means of various exegetical methods used in the field of text-oriented approaches.

not progress in a gradual fashion by cumulative acquisition of knowledge, but rather remains fixated on a particular academic approach or paradigm of thought, which is only overthrown with great difficulty and replaced by a new one (e.g., the shift from the Ptolemaic to the Copernican system, or from Newtonian physics to relativity and quantum physics). The term “paradigm” stands for a collection of “intertwined theoretical and methodological belief” (17), “the entire constellation of beliefs, values, techniques, and so on shared by the members of a given community” (175). Kuhn’s paradigm shift designates the process of acknowledging the inadequacies of a given paradigm—which are exposed by arising anomalies or inconsistencies that present insoluble difficulties within the old paradigm—that leads to a radical change of the way of perception, thought, and evaluation, resulting in the replacement of the old paradigm in whole or in part by an incompatible new paradigm that is able to solve the difficulties of the old academic approach. In the new paradigm new assumptions and expectations are taken on that will transform the existing theories, traditions, rules, and standards of practice.

1The term “text-oriented approach” (analysis, interpretation, etc.) is used in a technical sense and refers to an exegetical approach which focuses primarily on the written text as it stands and the linguistic and literary data it provides. Such an approach could also be qualified as text-immanent or text-centered.

2The terms “final form” and “final text” are used here for the written text as constituted by the Masoretic Text (MT) of the Leningrad Codex B 19 A. I chose this MT as the “final text” for it represents a text tradition that is generally accepted among scholars as a working text, although I am aware of the recent critique of such a concept (James Alfred Loader, “The Finality of the Old Testament ‘Final Text,’” OTE 15 [2002]: 739-753; James E. Bowley and John C. Reeves, “Rethinking the Concept of ‘Bible’: Some Theses and Proposals,” H ench 25 [2003]: 3-18, esp. 10-13). By using the term “final” I neither intend to imply that there are earlier texts, or a prehistory or a history of transmission of the text, of which the “final” text would be the last or canonical text, nor do I deny any historical developments of texts per se. I also do not imply that “final” automatically means “authoritative.”

3A constantly growing number of studies witnesses to the wide use of text-oriented approaches. See, e.g., the compilations of bibliographic material on literary approaches, which marks only one avenue of text-oriented approaches, by Mark Minor (Literary-Critical Approaches to the Bible: An Annotated Bibliography [West Cornwall: Locust Hill, 1992]; Literary-Critical Approaches to the Bible: A Bibliographical Supplement [West Cornwall: Locust Hill, 1996]). In the preface to the supplement, which appeared only four years later, Minor specifies that “the appearance of over eleven hundred items here, most of which post-date 1991, testifies dramatically to the steadily interest in...
Besides deserving more attention than it has received, Dan 8, especially the small unit of Dan 8:9-14, is a good choice for reconsidering text-oriented methodology in combination with the actual exegesis of a text. Reasons for this lie in the fact that the book of Daniel including chap. 8 has for the most part been approached by literary-critical or historical considerations. The task of a synchronic approach to this text as it stands has been “neglected too long.” Also, the MT of Dan 8:9-14 is intricate and has received a number of interpretations which differ significantly. Most of these interpretations, which


2Using words by R. Rendtorff when he diagnoses that the synchronic approach in OT scholarship has in general been “neglected too long and too intentionally” (“The Paradigm is Changing,” 52).

3For the different interpretations of the little horn symbol, the temporal expression “2300 evening-morning,” and three cultic expressions of Dan 8:9-14 from 1700 to 1900 see Samuel Nuñez,
are often based on diachronic analysis, have not taken into careful consideration the linguistic and literary data of the text. Insufficient attention has also been given to the text of Dan 8:9-14 itself. Furthermore, the assessment of text-oriented approaches applied to Dan 8 so far (see below) seems to show that, though helpful in detecting linguistic and literary features of the text, a more comprehensive text-oriented approach is still a desideratum. As a result, syntactic, literary, and semantic questions regarding these verses still remain to be answered.

A close look at the Hebrew text and a comparison of the various studies reveals a number of intratextual1 problems facing the exegete when analyzing Dan 8:9-14. Some of the prominent issues are:

1. The demarcation of clauses and sentences in vss. 10-13, especially the syntactic place of נָשַׁב in vs. 12a and the elements of the question in vs. 132

---

1The terms “intratextual” and “intertextual” are used in a technical sense here. “Intratextual” means within one text passage, whereas “intertextual” means between different text passages. According to such a definition the literary term “intratextuality” refers to lexical, thematic, and literary interconnections within a specific text corpus and the way they cohere. The term “intertextuality” refers to lexical, thematic, and literary interconnections of a specific text with other texts.

2Some scholars have tried to make sense out of the traditional divisions of the MT (e.g., Bernhard Hassberger, Hoffnung in der Bedrängnis: Eine formkritische Untersuchung zu Dan 8 und 10–12, ATSAT, no. 4 [St. Ottilien: EOS, 1977], 8-9). Others demarcate sentences differently from the Masoretes, leaving the consonantal text with its word divisions untouched (e.g., John E. Goldingay, Daniel, WBC, vol. 30 [Dallas: Word Books, 1989], 195, 197-198). The majority of scholars, however, suggest textual emendations to obtain syntactically well-formed sentences; an extreme example being George Foot Moore who in his tentative reconstruction of Dan 8:9-14 emends the MT fifteen times in these six verses (“Daniel viii. 9-14,” JBL 15 [1896]: 193-197).
2. The shift between perfect and imperfect forms in vss. 9-12, especially the one between the *weqatal* form in vs. 11c and the *yiqtol* form in vs. 12a.

3. The function of the *weqatal* form יָשַׁר in vs. 14c (The difficulty of this form is twofold: the time and aspect of יָשַׁר and the fact that the Nifal form of יָשַׁר is a *hapax legomenon*.)

4. The gender shift of verbs in vss. 9-12 (There are three: from masculine to feminine in vs. 9, from feminine to masculine between vss. 10 and 11, and from masculine to feminine between vss. 11 and 12.)

5. The usage and absence of the article in vss. 10-14 with the words יָשַׁר, אֶחְיָב, and שִׁיר as well as the semantic function attached to this phenomenon (אֶחְיָב occurs with the article in vs. 11 without apparent anaphoric function. יָשַׁר occurs without the article in vss. 12 and 13, though it is determinate in vss. 10 and 11. שִׁיר occurs twice, in vss. 13 and 14, both times without the article.)

6. The syntax and meaning of the sentences in vss. 11-12 (Besides points 1, 2, 4, and 5 mentioned above, the subject of the verb יָשַׁר and the semantic function of the prepositions יָשַׁר and ב in vs. 12a contribute to the difficulty of syntax.)

---

1 Only Hasslberger attempts to explain the usage of the article in Dan 8:9-14 (26-27, 102).

2 In fact, Dan 8:11-12 is one of the most difficult texts in the book of Daniel because of its intricate syntactic and semantic problems (see Martin T. Probstle, "A Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12," *JATS* 7/1 [1996]: 81-106). The following assessments reflect the degree of difficulty: "These verses [Dan 8:11-13] form one of the most difficult passages in Daniel owing to the corruptions of the text" (R. H. Charles, *A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on the Book of Daniel: With Introduction, Indexes and a New English Translation* [Oxford: Clarendon, 1929], 204); "the text [vs. 12a] is very difficult here" (John J. Collins, *Daniel: A Commentary on the Book of Daniel*, Hermeneia [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1993], 326); "Pour comprendre la difficulté d’un choix pour la
7. The structure of vss. 9-14 and whether these verses exhibit unity or disunity

8. The identification, role, and semantic meaning of keywords and key phrases according to the structure and the literary dynamics of the passage. (Words and word groups such as הָעָבָדָה [vs. 10], אֱלֹהִים [vs. 11], לְמַעַן [vs. 11, 12, 13], פָּנֵי [vs. 11], קָנָה [vs. 12], שֶׁמֶשׁ [vs. 13], חָסִיד [vss. 13, 14], and בַּדַּק [vs. 14] have received different interpretations.)

9. On account of these intricacies and in comparison to the very artistic literary form and structure of the Aramaic chap. 7, it has often been inferred that the quality of the Hebrew in chap. 8, particularly in 8:9-14, is rather poor and clumsy.

Another set of problems arises from the fact that Dan 8:9-14 shows a high degree of intertextuality, particularly with other parts of the book of Daniel. Such intertextual relations often affect the meaning of a passage with its keywords and keyword groups, in addition to the semantic functions of the syntactic-literary features of the passage itself which, of course, have priority in determining meaning.

traduction de ce verset [v. 12], je suggère de lire toutes les Bibles et les commentaires, en comptant les divergences: le cas est vraiment désespéré" (Pierre Grelot, review of Daniel, by John J. Collins, RB 102 [1995]: 288); and "11.12 constitute crescendo the most difficult short passage of the b[oo]k" while “11 presents less difficulty of the two” (James A. Montgomery, A Critical and Exegetical Commentary on the Book of Daniel, ICC [Edinburgh: Clark, 1927], 335).

1See the brief overviews of different interpretations of these words and phrases in Collins, Daniel (1993), 331-336.


Purpose of the Study

The problem areas in the exegesis of Dan 8:9-14 indicated above call for a text-oriented analysis along three lines of research: linguistic (including syntactic and semantic), literary, and intertextual. Therefore, the purpose of this research is to examine the text of Dan 8:9-14 synchronically by proceeding from form to function: that is, to investigate the linguistic and literary features of the text, to determine the meaning of the relevant words, word groups, and of the text itself, to identify its intertextual relations, and thereby to achieve a text-oriented interpretation of the passage. In pursuing a fresh text-oriented approach to the challenging text of Dan 8:9-14 this study makes allowance for the “changing paradigm” in biblical exegesis and nourishes the hope that new approaches might significantly contribute to the understanding of biblical texts.

Text-Oriented Approaches to Daniel 8:9-14

To situate the present study in its methodological context, a general overview of the different text-oriented approaches to OT texts is given first. Then, an overview of the literature on Dan 8:9-14 from 1970 and on is provided. The latter lists non-text-oriented approaches to Dan 8:9-14, considers studies which partially employ methods that are also used in text-oriented approaches, and then reviews more extensively the text-oriented approaches.

1Here, I try to comply in a modest sense with Otto Kaiser’s first plea in his assessment of the future of OT studies: “Each investigation that is dedicated to a specific topic should determine its place and its importance for the whole of its science; for only in this way can it be perceptible beyond the small circle to those who are interested in and dependent on its results” (504-505).
Overview of Text-Oriented Approaches

Introduction

Studies using a text-oriented approach to Dan 8 represent only a small selection of a plethora of different text-oriented approaches available today. As the present study claims to be a text-oriented approach, utilizing methodological insights from other existing text-oriented approaches, it is necessary to present a brief overview of the types of this approach and their methodological principles in general, before proceeding to a review of text-oriented approaches to Dan 8 in particular. Furthermore, such an overview also lays the necessary foundation for the history of research that follows and will help to clarify that the existing major text-oriented approaches to Dan 8 stem basically from only one avenue of text-oriented approaches, namely the linguistic approach.

What is a text-oriented approach? The term “text-oriented approach” refers to a specific kind of approach to the biblical text. Text-oriented approaches are similar in that their main focus is the study of the text, as it stands on its own, leaving aside anything which is non-textual. The text exists on its own, constitutes a world of language on its own, and, thus, deserves to be analyzed in its own right. The exegete concentrates on the features of the text, without inquiring about its genesis and development or the

\[\text{Considerations on the history of research must always be considerations on the hermeneutics of the research, only for that reason to guarantee a minimum of comparability between the different scholarly trends} \] (Utzschneider, “Renaissance,” 198).

It is almost superfluous to say that there is not only one specific text-oriented approach but rather a great number of them. It would be a gross misrepresentation “to impose an artificial unity” upon them (Paul Joyce, “First Among Equals? The Historical-Critical Approach in the Marketplace of Methods,” in Crossing the Boundaries: Essays in Biblical Interpretation in Honour of Michael D. Goulder, ed. S. E. Porter, P. Joyce, and D. E. Orton, BIS, no. 8 [Leiden: Brill, 1994], 19). Nevertheless, basic distinct elements can be detected in the plethora of these approaches.
inner dynamics of its author(s). Therefore, a text-oriented approach is primarily synchronic, taking the text as starting-point and center of research. The specific focus on the text allows for more certainty on the part of the exegete.1

As such, text-oriented approaches are distinguished from other approaches that have their focal point on the authors and their worlds, on the readers and their worlds, or on the subject matter and its world.2 Naturally, overlap between these categories is


2 This distinction results from the process of understanding and communication which involves the author (artist), the text (work), the recipient (audience), and the subject matter (universe). The methodological approaches to understanding (biblical) texts may be distinguished according to their main focus on one of these elements. The origin of the fourfold distinction according to the process of communication is found in a now classic model for classifying different approaches of criticism outlined by M. H. Abrams (The Mirror and the Lamp: Romantic Theory and the Critical Tradition [London: Oxford University Press, 1953], 3-29, esp. 3-5) which has been adapted for biblical studies by John Barton who distinguishes between approaches concerned with historical events or theological ideas, with text, with author(s), and with readers (“Classifying Biblical Criticism.” JSOT 29 [1984]: 19-35; Reading the Old Testament: Method in Biblical Study, rev. and enlarged ed. [Louisville: Westminster, 1996], 237-243). Already James Barr, without referring to the process of communication, distinguished between three possible avenues of studying the biblical text: study of entities referred to (Referential), study of mind of the writers (Intentional), and study of myths and images of the text as it is (Poetic or Aesthetic) (The Bible in the Modern World: The Croall Lectures Given in New College, Edinburgh in November 1970 [London: SCM, 1973], 61-62). Both divisions in three and in four interpretative approaches are quite common: Umberto Eco distinguishes three main directions of interpretation theories: intentio auctoris (what the author of the text intended to say), intentio operis (what the text says independently of authorial intentions), and intentio lectoris (what the readers find as meaning by virtue of their own system of expectations) (The Limits of Interpretation, Advances in Semiotics [Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1990], 44-63). In the field of biblical studies, Tremper Longman III advocates such a threefold distinction between author-centered, text-centered, and reader-centered theories (Literary Approaches to Biblical Interpretation, Foundations of Contemporary Interpretation, no. 3 [Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1987], 18-41). More recently Manfred Oeming proposes a “hermeneutic quadrangle” (hermeneutisches Viereck) of the four elements: author, text, recipient, and subject matter (Biblische Hermeneutik, 5, 6, 176). Similarly, Luis Alonso Schökel proposes a text-centered hermeneutic schema with the work (= text) in the center and a set of factors involved in the literary work: author, receiver (= reader), language, and theme or subject (A Manual of Hermeneutics, with J. M. Bravo, trans. L. M. Rosa, further ed. B. W. R.
possible, as the text is the object and starting point of any interpretation—for example, almost every interpretation of a text uses in some way linguistic observations—and ultimately also the sole adjudicator of any interpretation. However, it is the main emphasis of the approach which determines the category it may be assigned to.

The factors which have led to redirect the emphasis on the analysis of the text itself, moving away from author-oriented approaches, may be encapsulated in two words: “dissatisfaction and seduction”; dissatisfaction with the diachronic analysis of the historical-critical methods and seduction by new trends in the study of literature and linguistics. These two factors shall be summarized briefly. Let me start with the “seduction” factor.

The first factor in the changing of the paradigm is the rise of modern linguistics.

In outlining the hermeneutic debate in the interpretative guild, which revolves around the diverse methods using author-centered, text-centered, or reader-centered assumptions, A. R. Pete Diamond points to the unique value of the final text form: “The text in its final form is not just the prime datum for adjudicating the contending models of interpretation; it is the only datum” (“Introduction,” in Troubling Jeremiah, ed. A. R. P. Diamond, K. M. O’Connor, and L. Stulman, JSOTSup, no. 260 [Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1999], 18).

Luis Alonso Schökel observes concerning the development in contemporary biblical scholarship: “What makes a new trend arise and impose itself? Basically dissatisfaction or seduction. Yet dissatisfaction shows different faces. One may feel frustrated by what one has or seduced by what one does not have. One is frustrated because the method has not produced what it promised, or because it cannot produce any more, or because it has gone too far. The seduction, like a new love, usually comes from the outside: in our case, from related disciplines full of youth and vitality” (“Trend: Plurality of Methods, Priority of Issues,” in Congress Volume, Jerusalem 1986, ed. J. A. Emerton, VTSup, no. 40 [Leiden: Brill, 1988], 285).
and "New Criticism" and their influence on biblical studies, beginning in the late 1960s.

The engagement of exegetes in general linguistics and their application of linguistic principles and methodologies in exegetical practice was especially kindled by the analyses of J. Barr\(^1\) and by the methodological considerations of W. Richter.\(^2\) Especially the influence of French structuralism and the text-immanent interpretation (\textit{Werkinterpretation}) in Germany led to the conviction that "synchronic semantic description, which seeks to understand language within its contemporary linguistic system, has methodological priority."\(^3\) In other words, an intersubjectively more


verifiable understanding of a text is only possible if exegetes immerse themselves in the world of the text. Particularly important are the fundamental distinctions formulated by F. De Saussure (langue/parole, synchronic/diachronic, significant/signifié) and the increasing recognition by the exegetes that a text has different linguistic levels which need to be analyzed accordingly. The "New Criticism," an analytic literary analysis applied first to English and classic texts, has arisen in Britain and in North America in the 1940s and 1950s. This new approach was subsequently also adopted by biblical exegetes using literary approaches to biblical texts, and was followed more intensely since the 1970s.

The second important motive for the rise of text-oriented approaches, especially literary and canonical approaches, is the discontent with the results of the historical-critical exegetical methods and the recognition of their limits. The growing


1 Cf. Oeming, Biblische Hermeneutik, 26-27.


dissatisfaction with diachronic readings of biblical texts and with overestimating their value, while at the same time neglecting by and large synchronic readings, has triggered a new interest in analyses that pay attention to the text itself, as it stands, and the inner-biblical coherence of texts.

Text-oriented approaches not only differentiate themselves from author-oriented approaches but also from reader-oriented approaches that have been developed since the 1970s. In general, reader-oriented approaches make the act of reading the text and the

role of the reader in the process of understanding the central factor and focus in the interpretation of the text. There are different shapes of reader-oriented approaches that attribute different degrees to the role of the reader in the making of meaning, from a rather moderate one that believes that the text is still external to the reader, both standing in dialogue with each other (reception theory by W. Iser), to a more radical one that gives the reader and the interpretive community the sole role of producing the meaning of texts (reader-response criticism by S. Fish).  

Reader-oriented approaches take into account that the reception of a text is radically different from its production by the author. Objections cannot be leveled against reader-oriented approaches on account of the fact that the role of the readers and their receptive activities are fundamental factors in the interpretive process. There is no question that the reader is involved in and contributes to the process of understanding, be it consciously or subconsciously. As such, these approaches assist hermeneutical self-
awareness. Naturally they presuppose the possibility that different readers create different meanings of the text, presuming that texts are open to more than one meaning. Subjectivity in interpretation therefore becomes a necessary and desired principle.

Reader-oriented approaches certainly have their place in the landscape of theories and approaches. However, "the paradox between the constraints of the text and the freedom of the reader remains a methodological challenge." A major problem with reader-oriented approaches is that the role of the reader tends to be regarded as more significant than the text itself, in accordance with the motto that it is the reader who "makes" literature. Such an approach must face the critical question whether it is really "the creative reader of today" who is primarily important in order to understand the text.

For the reader does not construe the meaning of a text without the text communicating in some way the meaning which the author intended it to convey. The meaning continues to be generated by the text itself and thus has its origin outside of the reader. A further problem seems to be the absence of a methodological basis that allows for a critical

---

1 Cf. the concluding evaluation of reader-response theories by Thiselton, 550. In his favorable overview, McKnight offers further reasons why a reader-response approach "that utilizes the rich possibilities of reading for actual readers" is valuable (240).


4 Hardmeier, Textwelten, 27. Hardmeier observes that "it is the old problem of exegesis and eisegesis that, logically, reader-response criticism and its radicalization in deconstruction increasingly face" (ibid., 26). The danger in reader-oriented approaches is to use texts for understandings that do not exegete, explain, interpret or listen to these texts anew but that are carried into the texts. If it is the creativity of the reader that produces the text's meaning, the interpreter can easily move interpretation beyond the text itself, and hence the contours of exegesis and eisegesis are more difficult to discern.
dialogue with a reader's interpretation. Plurality of interpretation leads inevitably to 

relativism. In the end, there are no correct interpretations, only readings of texts.¹

Methodologically, there must be a difference maintained between the meaning the
text itself generates and the reception of the text. Exegesis as a text-oriented
interpretation focuses on the former, whereas the latter lies in the responsibility of a
reader and becomes in turn the reader's own text. A text-oriented approach assumes
integrity and determinacy of text and meaning so that "informed readers" have the
possibility to arrive at similar or even at the same interpretations and also have the
methodological basis to discuss and critique them.

To sum up, a text-oriented approach is defined as an approach which concentrates
on the text and its language and studies textual features first. While striving as much as
possible for hermeneutical self-awareness, the text remains the center of interpretational
focus. By its very nature a text-oriented approach is a synchronic approach. This new
impetus in the exegesis of biblical texts was kindled by the interest of biblical scholars in
modern linguistics and New Criticism and their dissatisfaction with the results of
historical-critical methods.

Overview of Text-Oriented Approaches

The different text-oriented approaches may be classified roughly in three
categories or trends according to their main emphases: linguistic, literary and canonical,²

¹Barton, Reading the Old Testament, 212.

²See Oeming, Biblische Hermeneutik, 63-88. I follow to some extent his categorization of
text-oriented approaches but do not include his fourth category (exegesis as an event of language and
which correspond mainly to their interest in microstructure, text structure, and canonical structure. These categories may overlap and are usually not used in total isolation from each other. In the following paragraphs, the general methodological principles of each category, selected representatives, and a brief assessment are provided. The focus will be on OT scholarship. There is no intention to go into detail here, but rather to give a broad overview serving as methodological background for the present study.

Linguistic approaches

Linguistic approaches strive for an exact formal and primarily synchronic analysis of the text in its different linguistic levels (phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, and recently textlinguistics and pragmatics) to detect its fine texture. The basic word), for this kind of approach is philosophical rather than text-oriented in that its representatives (G. Ebeling, E. Fuchs, H. Weder) actually base their hermeneutic on Martin Heidegger's philosophical understanding of language (ibid., 82-88; cf. also Hardmeier, Textwelten, 19-21).

1Though certainly oversimplified, the correspondence between different types of text-oriented approaches and their interest in a specific structural level of the text appears to be a helpful categorization of the reality in exegetical practice.

2The assessment covers only the general strengths and weaknesses of the various approaches as related to the interpretation of the text. This means, for example, that an evaluation of the canonical approaches regarding their contributions to biblical theology is not in the scope of the present overview.

distinction between expression-plane (Ausdrucksseite) and content-plane (Inhaltsseite) is the reason that for a given text the linguistic analysis is characterized as a form-to-function approach which means that first the form of a linguistic entity is to be described before its function is analyzed.\(^1\) Linguistic approaches focus mainly on words, word groups, sentences, sentence combinations, and single texts, and they take stock of the grammatical features on these levels. However, recently an area of discourse linguistics, sometimes called text-linguistics, devotes itself to entities larger than the clause or sentence, often helped by computer-assisted analysis.\(^2\) Major exponents of linguistic approaches to biblical texts are, for example, W. Richter and the Richter school,\(^3\) H. Schweizer and the Schweizer school, and C. Hardmeier in Germany;\(^4\) the Kampen

\(^1\)Generally, two different kinds of linguistic approaches may be distinguished. First, the form-to-function approaches use formal distributional criteria and “treat the formal data at the lower level exhaustively before any phenomenon is treated on a higher level” (Christo H. J. van der Merwe, “Discourse Linguistics and Biblical Hebrew Grammar,” in Biblical Hebrew and Discourse Linguistics, ed. R. D. Bergen [Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1994], 16). Second, the functional approaches usually “commence with a hypothesis or theoretical frame of reference on specific linguistic notions and try to explain hitherto problematic Biblical Hebrew phenomena in terms of this hypothesis” (ibid.). The distributional approach is sometimes associated with the European text-linguistic tradition (Richter, Schweizer, Talstra), while the functional approach is associated with the American linguistic tradition (Longacre) (ibid., 17-21). The distributional description appears to be usually followed when specific texts are analyzed, whereas the functional approach seems rather to be applied in analyzing specific features of the Hebrew language.


School,¹ E. Talstra and the Werkgroep Informatica in the Netherlands;² and R. E. Longacre in North America.³

The advantages of linguistic approaches are several, the most important of which


¹A concise description of the analysis of the Kampen School is provided by Jichan Kim (The Structure of the Samson Cycle [Kampen, Netherlands: Kok Pharos, 1993], 118-134). He adopts the structural approach developed mainly by J. C. de Moor and P. van der Lugt (for extensive references see Kim, 118-119 n. 15).


are specified here. First, using a linguistic approach forces the investigator to observe the
textual features closely and to penetrate deeply into the text's microstructure.¹ Second, a
linguistic approach usually consists of systematic and comprehensive observations of the
grammatical features of a given text providing a better foundation for further interpretations. Third, the tendency towards formalization, as well as the systematic
analysis of the text, makes this approach more transparent and fathomable, and thus a
more suitable control instrument for the correct understanding of the text and for exegesis
in general.²

Probably the most often cited disadvantage of linguistic and structural methods is
their extensive use of metalanguage or technical terminology, that is, linguistic jargon. It
is said that too many linguistic terms and abbreviations are used.³ On the other hand, the
advantage of a metalanguage is that it enhances the possibility to verify the interpretation
of a text.⁴ Other, related disadvantages are the lack of uniformity in the terminology used
by different scholars and the high degree of abstraction in their methodological
considerations. The analysis of details at times is too exhaustive and overly detailed
("minute linguistic dissection")⁵ so that the expenditure of time and terminology is out of

¹Cf. Berg, 136; Oeming, Biblische Hermeneutik, 69.
²Cf. Egger, 67.
³Lust points to a graphic example of complicated technical language in Schweizer's work
(review of Metaphorische Grammatik, by Harald Schweizer, ETL 60 [1984]: 142).
⁴See Harald Schweizer, "Motive und Ziele sprachwissenschaftlicher Methodik," BN 18
⁵Cheryl J. Exum, review of The Structure of the Samson Cycle, by Jichan Kim, JBL 114

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
proportion to the attained results usable for exegesis.\textsuperscript{1} One should also bear in mind that linguistics in general, as well as the application of linguistic theories to the biblical text, is an ever-changing field, making it difficult for the exegete to stay abreast in that area.

A final note needs to be added on the sometimes misunderstood relationship between linguistics and exegesis. At the 2001 IOSOT meeting in Basel, M. O’Connor proposed that linguistics and exegesis need to be kept separate.\textsuperscript{2} He lists three arguments in support of his suggestion. First, the developing character of linguistics makes it difficult to decide which linguistic approaches will in the end be useful for biblical exegesis. Second, linguistics plays only a minimal role in other subfields of biblical study, such as textual criticism or literary criticism. And third, linguistics is a modern science “involving verifiability, falsifiability, or comparable criteria for proceeding” and “oriented away from the unique,” whereas exegetical reading is devoted to a unique passage, and, as an act of reading, it can be modern, pre-modern or pre-critical, or post-modern.\textsuperscript{3} O’Connor’s points are extremely important when assigning linguistic studies their proper place in relation to exegesis. As an indispensable tool for the study of biblical languages and thus for understanding the language of biblical texts, it is essential that linguistic inquiries remain an integral part of exegesis. If not expected to provide answers for exegetical problems it cannot address, but used as an appropriate way to deal

\textsuperscript{1}Oeming, \textit{Biblische Hermeneutik}, 69. This leads Joachim Rhode even to the rash conclusion that linguistic analysis is not suitable as an exegetical method (\textit{review of Biblische Texte verstehen}, by Harald Schweizer, \textit{TLZ} 113 [1988]: 425).


\textsuperscript{3}Ibid., 42.
with the language of the biblical text, linguistics certainly adds valuable tools for the
exegetical reading process.¹

Literary approaches

The category of literary approaches comprises different avenues that use a great
variety of methodologies to study the text.² Similarly varied is the terminology used for
these approaches.³ Nevertheless, there are some basic characteristics the different literary

¹In the words of O 'Connor: "Linguistics cannot solve the problems proper to exegesis,
although it must be an important tool and helper, especially in the case of a language so poorly
understood as Biblical Hebrew" (ibid., 38).

²For an overview of methodological avenues and of important works using a literary approach
see Culley, 171-180; Paul R. House, "The Rise and Current Status of Literary Criticism of the Old
Testament," in Beyond Form Criticism: Essays in Old Testament Literary Criticism, ed. P. R. House,
SBTS, no. 2 (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1992), 3-22; J. H. Coetzee, "Close Reading of the Bible,"
Dockery, K. A. Mathews, and R. B. Sloan (Nashville: Broadman & Holman, 1994), 205-223; Trible,
73-80; Duane F. Watson and Alan J. Hauser, Rhetorical Criticism of the Bible: A Comprehensive
Bibliography with Notes on History and Method, BIS, no. 4 (Leiden: Brill, 1994), 14-19; Barton,
Reading the Old Testament, 158-236; Joan E. Cook, "Beyond 'Form Criticism and Beyond': James
Mullenburg's Influence on a Generation of Biblical Scholars," Proceedings: Eastern Great Lakes and
Midwest Biblical Societies 17 (1997): 19-27; Tremper Longman III, "Literary Approaches and
Interpretation," NIDOTTE, 1:103-124, esp. 104-111; idem, "Literary Approaches to Old Testament
Study," 97-115; David M. Gunn, "Narrative Criticism," in To Each Its Own Meaning: An
Introduction to Biblical Criticisms and Their Application, rev. and expanded, ed. S. L. McKenzie and
S. R. Haynes (Louisville: Westminster, 1999), 202-212; David Jobling, "Methods of Modern Literary
Companions to Religion (Oxford: Blackwell, 2001), 19-35; Manfred Oeming and Anne-Ruth Pregla,

³For example, different literary approaches have been called close reading, formalism, holistic
interpretation, literary approach, literary criticism, literary paradigm, narrative criticism, narrative
analysis, narratology, New Criticism, New Literary Criticism, New Textuality, poetics, rhetorical
analysis, rhetorical criticism, semiostructural exegesis, semiostructural exegetical approach, semiotics,
structural analysis, structuralism, stylistics, synchronic approach, synchronic reading, text-immanent
approach, textual interpretation, total interpretation. According to David J. A. Clines and J. Cheryl
Exum these forms of literary approaches are no longer new and should not be considered anymore as
approaches of New Literary Criticism ("The New Literary Criticism," in The New Literary Criticism
and the Hebrew Bible, ed. J. C. Exum and D. J. A. Clines, JSOTS, no. 143 [Sheffield: Sheffield
approaches have in common. Literary approaches take the final form of the text as the primary focus. The autonomy and self-sufficiency of the literary work of art is emphasized. Thus, the text has to be examined by close reading and by synchronic analysis. Literary approaches, however, do not confine themselves to the microstructure of the text. Rather they deal with text structures and their literary and artistic characteristics, mainly by means of detailed stylistic analyses. Literary approaches focus on the function of larger text blocks in its final form (such as chapters, chapter groups, stories, books, book groups, OT canon). Especially the aesthetic character of the texts is

1 Leland Ryken and Tremper Longman III describe the conformity of literary approaches: “Underlying the range of current [literary] critical approaches, however, is a shared conviction that literature is the result of conscious composition, careful patterning, and an awareness of literary conventions prevalent at the time of writing and subsequently” (“Introduction,” in A Complete Literary Guide to the Bible, ed. L. Ryken and T. Longman III [Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1993], 18). Carl L. Holladay identifies three distinguishing characteristics of literary approaches: (1) an ahistorical view of texts which requires a synchronic analysis of the text; (2) the autonomy of the text from which following corollaries emerge: (a) attention is focused on the final form of the text; (b) the text is viewed as a whole; and (c) texts are considered intrinsically meaningful; and (3) meaning is understood as aesthetics (“Contemporary Methods of Reading the Bible,” NIB, 1:136-140). Oeming finds six basic points of similarity of literary approaches: (1) Their main representatives are not bound to theological faculties; (2) they try to communicate also to the lay people; (3) literary approaches try to use language which is generally understandable; (4) literary approaches live in critique of the historical-critical method and its approaches; (5) literary approaches focus on the aesthetics of texts; and (6) literary approaches have mainly been applied to the narrative texts of the Bible (Biblische Hermeneutik, 70-71; cf. Oeming and Pregla, 6-7). Those using a literary approach are also said to be unified by their position in relation to the historical-critical tradition (Mark Allen Powell, What Is Narrative Criticism? GBS [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1990], 6-10; Gunn and Fewell, 9-12) and their philosophical assumptions (Philip Nel, “Philosophical Presuppositions of a Literary Approach to the Old Testament,” OTE 7, no. 4 [1994]: 65-71).
traced and elaborated. Literary approaches then study the literary form of the text ("form expresses meaning") and its literary techniques ("text is art").¹ Major representatives of literary approaches have often been grouped geographically but have been growing into an international circle, an overview of which is rather difficult.²

To assess literary approaches is nearly impossible, as there are too many different kinds. Notwithstanding, some general observations are possible.³ The advantage of literary approaches is that they regard the biblical text as a work of art and through their analyses surprise with many hitherto unrealized functional and aesthetic features which add coherence to small and large texts. The attention to new kinds of detail, the emphasis upon textual integrity, and the sensibility toward inner-biblical relations and structures are strengths of these approaches. Difficulties of the final text need not be explained away by

¹Alter and Kermode give a well-formulated sketch of the operation of literary criticism, though it does not provide a method for this approach: "We assume that literature is a complex language. . . . Its syntax, grammar, and vocabulary involve a highly heterogenous concord of codes, devices, and linguistic properties. These include genre, convention, technique, contexts of allusion, style, structure, thematic organization, point of view for the narratives, voice for the poetry, imagery and diction of both, and much else. The complexity of this interplay of elements certainly calls for expert literary appraisal and also guarantees that there will be no unanimity of approach or of interpretive conclusions" (5).


Referring to its textual history. The study of the text as a whole and bringing conventions of writing biblical narrative and poetry to the forefront have enhanced the interpretation of biblical texts and given it a new freshness. A new “wealth of insights” is opened as the literary approach “tends to maximize the possibilities of a text.”

Critique of literary approaches has mainly centered around their devaluation of the historical-critical method and the diachronic analysis of texts as well as of the history of criticism. Also, literary approaches consist of such a great variety applying such diverse methods that this field easily becomes too vast. Danger then arises that different literary approaches contradict each other and that new-fashioned approaches eventually lead away from the focus on the text. This is an outcome of a “lack of explicit methods and formal controls.” Literary approaches at times also stand accused of using language that is too technical or obscure, though not to the same extent as their linguistic counterparts do.

Canonical approaches

For canonical approaches the text under investigation is the final text in its

---

1Ibid., 21: “The most important impulse of New Literary Criticism is, in a sense, that it educates [the exegete] not wanting to solve the problems of a biblical text too quickly by declaring the text’s final form as unreadable, that is, as senseless, and to ‘help it up’ by imagining circumstances that the text itself does not bring into discussion.”


3Porter, “Literary Approaches,” 117. Similarly, Adele Berlin observes that the “rules and procedures have yet to be spelled out. The situation in literary studies of the Bible is somewhat like that portrayed in the Book of Judges: each person does what seems right in his or her eyes” (“Literary Exegesis of Biblical Narrative: Between Poetics and Hermeneutics,” in “Not in Heaven”: Coherence and Complexity in Biblical Narrative, ed. J. P. Rosenblatt and J. C. Sitterson, Jr., ISBL [Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1991], 120).
They search for coherence and unity in the Bible and try to understand individual texts in the contexts of larger text blocks, such as books and book groups, and of the whole Bible, that is, Old and New Testament. They especially pay attention to inner-biblical relations of words and texts (Vernetzung), intertextuality, and composition techniques. Furthermore, these approaches try to reestablish the importance of Scripture for the present time. In canonical approaches, as opposed to the literary approaches, a respect for diachronic questions remains. Major representatives are B. S. Childs and J.

1 Again terminology varies: canonical approach, canonical exegesis, canonical-intertextual reading, canonical criticism, or theological exegesis.

2 A holistic approach means for Rolf Rendtorff that "the position of every individual section of text in its more immediate and wider context is intentional and has a point" (Canon and Theology: Overtures to an Old Testament Theology, OBT [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1993], 194).

3 Although the importance of the final text as a whole is a proper starting point for exegetical and theological interpretations, exegesists using a canonical approach do not automatically abandon the historical-critical methods for exegesis. In general, they accept the prehistory of the final text and uphold historical-critical methods as indispensable tools for the diachronic analysis of the text, though not for its theological understanding (see Brevard S. Childs, Biblical Theology of the Old and New Testaments: Theological Reflections on the Christian Bible [London: SCM, 1992; Minneapolis: Fortress, 1993], 104-106, 211-218, 262-264; Rendtorff, “Between Historical Criticism and Holistic Interpretation,” 301-302; idem, Canon and Theology, 49, 171, 194). Rendtorff believes that “the diachronic aspect belongs to the concept itself” (“Between Historical Criticism and Holistic Interpretation,” 302) and Norbert Lohfink finds that canonical exegesis uses in principal similar tools like the historical-critical method, however with a different focus of interest (“Was wird anders bei kanonischer Schriftauslegung? Beobachtungen am Beispiel von Ps 6,” in Zum Problem des biblischen Kanons, JBT, no. 3 [Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1988], 29-30).

A. Sanders in North America, and R. Rendtorff, Ch. Dohmen and M. Oeming, and G. Steins in Germany. It should be noted that under the category of canonical approaches one finds distinct forms that differ considerably from each other, such as the approaches taken by Childs (text-oriented) and Sanders (author-oriented).


5 The concept of “canonical criticism” as advocated by James A. Sanders is interested in each stage of the process of developing the Old and New Testament, whereas the “canonical approach” of Childs focuses on the final result and its content. Thus, Sander’s canonical criticism is author-
Canonical approaches to exegesis can be credited for their contribution to the understanding of macrostructures in large text blocks and the interrelationship between different texts. The analysis of the large-scale compositions of texts is as important as the careful attention to details of a text. In addition, the canonical approach may serve as a bridge between biblical exegesis and biblical theology as well as systematic theology.\(^1\)

The main criticism leveled forth against canonical approaches, as far as textual interpretation is concerned, is the existing danger that the supposed relations between words or phrases over a large text block or between texts may lead to overinterpretation when there are only "tender interrelations."\(^2\) Callaway also sees a potential problem in the "tendency to read texts as a unity and therefore to prefer harmonization to dissonance oriented and should not be regarded as a text-oriented approach. See F. A. Spina, "Canonical Criticism: Childs versus Sanders," in *Interpreting God's Word for Today: An Inquiry into Hermeneutics from a Biblical Theological Perspective*, ed. J. E. Hartley and R. L. Shelton, Wesleyan Theological Perspectives, no. 2 (Anderson: Warner, 1982), 165-194; James A. Sanders, *Canon and Community*, 21-37; idem, *From Sacred Story to Sacred Text*, 153-174; Gerald T. Sheppard, "Canonical Criticism," *ABD*, 1:862-863; Kent D. Clarke, "Canonical Criticism: An Integrated Reading of Biblical Texts for the Community of Faith," in *Approaches to New Testament Study*, ed. S. E. Porter and D. Tombs, JSNTSup, no. 120 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1995), 179-204.

\(^1\)The canonical approach has doubtlessly been the text-oriented approach that has been most fruitful for the area of biblical theology. See the comprehensive, though rather critical, reflections by James Barr on the canonical approach (*The Concept of Biblical Theology*, 378-451).

\(^2\)Oeming, "Kanonische Schriftauslegung," 206. Besides the danger of overinterpretation, Oeming lists three other deficiencies or dangers of canonical approaches which, however, do not apply to the method of textual interpretation in a canonical approach. First, sometimes the opposition to historical-critical methods is overemphasized and may lead to the misunderstanding that the canonical approach and the historical-critical method cannot be integrated and the canonical approach would be an attempt to return to precritical reading, which in fact it is not. Second, the different canonical approaches still add to the denounced plethora of approaches. Third, there is no agreement on which canon a canonical approach should be based (*Biblische Hermeneutik*, 82).
and uncertainty."

Summary

This overview has sketched the recently opened, vast field of approaches focusing on the text. While three broad categories of text-oriented approaches with their common methodological principles can be outlined (linguistic, literary, and canonical approaches), the various approaches of each category show substantial differences. It is therefore obvious that there is no such thing as a unified text-oriented approach, which in the end may not even be desirable.

The major contributions of text-oriented approaches to exegesis may be summarized as follows: On the linguistic level (1) the distinction of different, hierarchical levels of linguistic analysis which are dependent upon each other (e.g., syntax and semantics are closely related), (2) the analysis from form to function generally achieved by paying attention first to all formal features of the text before getting involved with the meaning and function thereof, and (3) the attempt at a transparent and intersubjectively verifiable approach which is achieved by formal controls; on the literary level the better understanding of literary artistry and textual integrity; and on the canonical level the recognition of interrelations between text blocks and between texts. Finally, the most important contribution, which is common to all text-oriented approaches, is the attempt at the interpretation of the text as it stands. The latter presents itself in a synchronic

---

analysis, based on the concept of operational priority of synchronic analysis over diachronic analysis.

The possible pitfalls and dangers identified in connection with text-oriented approaches consist of an overuse of metalanguage, a too-detailed analysis of features that do not further the understanding of the text, a tendency to devalue other approaches, and an overinterpretation of specific features in the text or of interrelations between texts. I therefore attempt to avoid such pitfalls in the text-oriented approach used in this study.

Text-Oriented Approaches to Daniel 8: A Review of Recent Studies

The aim of this section is to provide an overview of exegetical approaches applied to the text of Dan 8:9-14 in recent studies (since 1970)\(^1\) and to review only the extant text-oriented approaches in more detail. An exhaustive *Forschungsbericht* of the existing critical work on Dan 8:9-14 is not presented here, since reference to the research on individual questions as well as to the problems of scholarship associated with the text is supplied extensively in the following chapters. It should go without explanation that almost every interpretation of a text somehow uses linguistic or literary methods of analysis, for the simple fact that the text is the object of interpretation. However, the

\(^1\)As the present study is especially interested in text-oriented approaches which have risen only because of the shift in exegetical methodology after the middle of the twentieth century (cf. Barr, *The Semantics of Biblical Language*; Muilenburg, "Form Criticism and Beyond"; Richter, *Exegese*), the following overview of research concentrates on the recent decades, beginning from 1970. Most of the studies regarding Dan 8 which have been undertaken in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries until 1970 approached the text from a historical-critical perspective (author-oriented) and thus diachronically, though there are some exceptions which nevertheless cannot be categorized as text-oriented, but rather as matter-oriented. For a brief overview of the history of interpretation of the book of Daniel since the rise of historical criticism see Collins, *Daniel* (1993), 121-123.
general methodological orientation of most studies on Dan 8 usually differs from a text-oriented approach.

The commentaries on the book of Daniel, which, of course, include comments on Dan 8:9-14, generally use a combination of different approaches to the text (literary criticism, form criticism, redaction criticism, etc.). Some commentaries use linguistic and literary insights only selectively,¹ others pay closer attention to the linguistic and literary data of the text of Dan 8:9-14,² while none present a thorough analysis of the


language itself before getting involved in the interpretative task.

Apart from the commentaries on the book of Daniel, several monographs and articles also touch on Dan 8 using different kinds of methodological approaches: literary criticism (Hall, 1974; Porter, 1983; Stahl, 1994), form criticism (Collins, 1984; Reid, 1989; Behrens, 2002), tradition-historical criticism (Niditch, 1983) and tradition-
historical and sematological approach (Beyerle, 2004), motif study or concept study (Freer, 1975; Rodriguez, 1986; Gane, 1997; Wastling, 1997; Vogel, 1999), synchronic and intention of Dan 8 and classifies Dan 8 as belonging to the genre of "theriomorphic historical allegory" (Enoch and Daniel: A Form Critical and Sociological Study of Historical Apocalypses, BIBAL Monograph Series, no. 2 [Berkeley: BIBAL, 1989], 92-104, esp. 94-96). He tries to present the literary history of the text and reconstructs the sociological setting, that is the identity of the community, from which the text emerged. As Reid's main focus is to observe the elements pointing to the sociological setting of the text, the use of the form-critical method may be justified. However, there is no literary analysis, the structural outline which rather appears to be a thematic outline is not based on a structural analysis, and only little attention is given to the Hebrew text. For example, Reid mentions only eight Hebrew words or phrases that belong to Dan 8 of which he only partly discusses their origin of tradition. None of these words comes from vss. 9-14. In fact, the text of Dan 8:9-14 lacks a proper analysis. On Achim Behrens (2002) see below.

By using a developmental or diachronic history-of-traditions approach, Susan Niditch distinguishes three historic stages of the symbolic vision form (The Symbolic Vision in Biblical Tradition, HSM, no. 30 [Chico: Scholars Press, 1983], 7-12). Daniel 8 belongs to the third stage, the "baroque stage," which extends the narrative thread in the vision. In the section on Dan 8, she presents a translation with textual notes, studies the motif pattern of Dan 8, observes a few stylistic features—e.g., the "brief clause" style of 8:4, 7, 11, 12 (224-225)—and discusses the background of the symbolic usage, e.g., the animal figures, the stars motif, and the king motif (215-233). Throughout her analysis of Dan 8, Niditch aims to detect the traditions behind the text and not to provide a linguistic or literary examination. Stefan Beyerle analyzes the vision in Dan 8 from a decidedly theological viewpoint, and attempts to show how the tradition-historical reference contexts of this apocalyptic vision lead to the conclusion that it combines both immanence and transcendence ("Die apokalyptische Vision in Daniel 8," in Apokalyptik in Antike und Aufklärung, ed. J. Brokoff and B. U. Schipper, Studien zu Judentum und Christentum [Paderborn: Schöningh, 2004], 25-44).

In regard to Dan 8:9-14, Kenneth Orville Freer describes the structure of Dan 8 ("A Study of Vision Reports in Biblical Literature" [Ph.D. dissertation, Yale University, 1975], 35-39), and studies the motifs horns (125-128), prince of the host (143-146), and host/host of heaven (149-152), as well as the terms vision and truth (162-165) in order to identify the history of the motifs and their semantic meaning. Angel M. Rodriguez lists the cultic terminology in Dan 8:9-14 and gives a brief semantic analysis of those cultic terms in relation to other OT texts. This study may also be designated as an early-stage study on intertextual relations ("Significance of the Cultic Language in Daniel 8:9-14," in Symposium on Daniel: Introductory and Exegetical Studies, ed. F. B. Holbrook, DARCOM, vol. 2 [Washington, DC: Biblical Research Institute, 1986], 527-549). Roy Gane focuses on the terminology of judgment, sanctuary restoration and covenant review in Dan 7 and 8 and finds in Dan 8:9-14 several hints for these concepts ("Judgment as Covenant Review," JATS 8/1-2 [1997]: 181-194). Mildred A. Nilsen Wastling studies selected terms and expressions in Dan 8:9-14 related to the activity of the little horn (horn, host of heaven and stars, host, prince of the host, daily/continual, truth, "2300 evening-morning," and "") and then concentrates on terms which supposedly may reflect a covenant context, namely הָרָעָה ("indignation," 8:19), הָרָעָה ("given over," 8:12,13), הָרָעָה ("transgression," 8:12,13), הָרָעָה ("the transgressors," 8:23), הָרָעָה ("reach fullness," 8:23), הָרָעָה ("the transgression of desolation," 8:13), and הָרָעָה ("fierce features," 8:23) ("Can
Covenant Theology Be Found in Daniel Chapter 8? A Study of Daniel Chapter 8 in the Light of the Covenant” [M.A. thesis, Andrews University Extension Campus, Newbold College, 1997]). She concludes that these terms point to the fact that Dan 8:9-14 reflects the consequences of a covenant breach, and that וַיְבָא הָאָדָם in vs. 14 indicates the “covenant-curse-reversal-aspects of judgment, vengeance, redemption and reconciliation/atonement” (108-109). In the course of her study, Wastling employs only linguistic argumentation when she examines the syntactic function of וַיְבָא הָאָדָם in vs. 12a (53-59). Winfried Vogel examines in his motif study, among other things, specific words and phrases in Dan 8:9-14 which relate to the cultic motif. In the category of cultic space he deals with וַיְבָא הָאָדָם, the phrase וַיּוֹרֵד מִיָּה וַיְבָא הָאָדָם, and וַיַּעַד (The Cultic Motif in Space and Time in the Book of Daniel” [Ph.D. diss., Andrews University, 1999], 73-89) whereas in the category of cultic time he discusses וַיְבָא הָאָדָם (174-179). He determines the meaning of these cultic elements and marks in this way their contribution to the cultic motif. Vogel also pursues the question why there is an apparent change of terminology in Dan 8:11-14, especially the shift from וַיּוֹרֵד מִיָּה to וַיְבָא הָאָדָם (cf. Winfried Vogel, “The Cultic Motifs and Themes in the Book of Daniel,” JATS 7/1 [1996]: 21-50).

1 On Pablo S. David’s approach see below.

2 John J. Collins describes his approach as “a literary rather than a historical study” because he examines “the meaning of the book of Daniel as found in the Hebrew bible [sic]” (Apocalyptic Vision, xv). He deals with the vision in Dan 8 mainly in relation to the vision in Dan 7. Daniel 8:9-14 is investigated only for mythic elements (106-108) and the meaning of the host and the stars (139-140). William H. Shea discusses the meaning of Dan 8:9-12 and also identifies the different directional movements in this vision ascribing them to either a vertical or horizontal dimension. He aims at a literary structure of these verses based exclusively on the spatial dimensions mentioned in the text. Shea perceives three scenes: a horizontal, earthly scene in vs. 9 and two vertical, heavenly scenes in vs. 10 and vs. 11-12 (“Spatial Dimensions in the Vision of Daniel 8,” in Symposium on Daniel: Introductory and Exegetical Studies, ed. F. B. Holbrook, DARCOM, vol. 2 [Washington, DC: Biblical Research Institute, 1986], 497-526, esp. 505-521). However, Shea's literary structure is clearly thematic in nature and does not come as a result of a linguistic or literary study of the text. An analysis of 8:13-14 is not provided. Although James H. Sims claims his approach to be a literary analysis, his discussion of Dan 8 and much of the other chapters of Daniel is hardly more than an ample description of the content (A Comparative Literary Study of Daniel and Revelation: Shaping the End [Lewiston: Mellen, 1994], 39-41).

3 On these see below.
This again indicates the need for a text-oriented approach starting with an analysis of the form of the text.

Studies Using Some Linguistic or Literary Methods

Several of the above mentioned studies employ to a certain extent linguistic or literary methods of analysis as part of their overall diachronic approach (David, 1991; Stahl, 1994; Behrens, 2002) or in their analysis of the meaning of the text (Hasel, 1981 and 1986; Hardy, 1983). These studies deserve further comment.

Hardy pays attention to some issues in Dan 8:9-12 in an appendix of his thesis. According to his analysis,


2 Frank Wilton Hardy, “An Historian Perspective on Daniel 11” (M.A. thesis, Andrews University, 1983), 270-298. Although Dan 8:14 is mentioned in the title of the appendix, the verse itself is not discussed but only referred to in the paragraphs on the meaning of מִשְׁכָּר.
as the interpretation of the terms “prince,” “host,” “horn,” and “daily.” Hardy incorporates linguistic arguments for the interpretation of these verses, however, he limits himself to matters of gender in vs. 9, similarities in syntax in vss. 10-12, and the interpretation of words in vss. 10-12. Besides treating only vss. 9-12, the argumentation is weakened by applying linguistic observations rather selectively and not providing any linguistic framework.

A lengthy article by G. F. Hasel presents a clause-by-clause investigation of Dan 8:9-14. Hasel describes the procedure of his research as follows:

1. A philological study of key terms,
2. An analysis of the word (grammar) and sentence (syntax) patterns of the Hebrew text with comparisons of modern translations where advisable,
3. The narrower and larger contexts within the book of Daniel and the Bible as a whole, and
4. Will relate to the suggestions and conclusions of major schools of interpretations and their chief exponents. Attention will also be given to extra-biblical materials where relevant.

Throughout Hasel’s analysis of the various clauses this series of four steps is discernible. His philological investigation comprises brief word studies on all significant terms in the passage. He discusses the meaning of רֶשֶׁת, הָעִקְרָב, הֵן, דָּוִד, קְרָשׁ, מֵעֲשָׁה, פֶּעַשׁ, חֲטָא, לֶחֶם, מְכַסֶּה, מְלַכֶּה, and יַעֲשֹׁתָה. In order to determine the meaning of and the concepts intended by these words and terms, Hasel usually looks first at their meaning as they occur elsewhere in the Old Testament. Thus, for Hasel the


use of a specific word in the Old Testament plays a decisive role in determining its meaning in Dan 8:9-14. The analysis of grammar and syntax is undertaken only selectively. With regard to intertextuality, Hasel indicates lexical and thematic relations of Dan 8 to Dan 9 and to Dan 7, as well as thematic links to Lev 16. The interpretation of the meaning of the passage and its clauses is another major concern for Hasel. Throughout his article he pursues a historicist interpretation, based on his three steps of analysis, while in critical dialogue with other views.

Hasel therefore focuses mainly on two aspects of exegesis: the meaning of words and the (historicist) interpretation of the passage. Only a few linguistic (grammatical and syntactic) arguments are offered, and he does not attempt a systematic observation of the structural and literary features of the text.

Pablo S. David pursues a synchronic and diachronic reading of the book of Daniel, thereby identifying its structure and composition. In his synchronic reading David outlines the correspondence between Dan 8 and Dan 11, focusing in Dan 8 on vss. 1

1Hasel discusses the gender in the construction נִקְצֶה נִקְצֶה in vs. 9 and its syntactic relations of reference (ibid., 387-392), the subject gender shift in vs. 11a (401), the clause relations in vs. 11 (409), and the syntactic function of נִקְצֶה—subject or object?—in vs. 12a (416-418). However, there is no examination, e.g., of the syntax of the question in vs. 13 or the meaning of the grammatical form of נִקְצֶה in vs. 14.

2Ibid., 436-439 (on relations between Dan 8 and Dan 9); 458-460 (on relations between Dan 8 and Dan 7), 427, 440, 451, 455, 457 (on relations between Dan 8 and Lev 16).

3For example, Hasel discusses the origin and the nature of the little horn (ibid., 387-394) and the interpretation of the time element in the period of “2300 evening-morning” (430-436).

4Hasel bases his literary structure of Dan 8:9-14 on thematic considerations only, especially on the horizontal (earthly) and vertical (heavenly) dimensions mentioned in the text (ibid., 380-383).
The diachronic reading compares Dan 8 with Dan 7 and Dan 10–12, noting both the points of contact as well as of contrast. David concludes that chap. 8 “minus the secondary additions” of vss. 11b-14 “manifests a coherent structure as a literary unit” and together with chaps. 10–12 has been written by one Maccabean author at two different periods. In an excursus David deals extensively with the secondary addition of 8:11b-14 using text-critical methods to reconstruct via the LXX the prehistory of the MT.

David’s synchronic reading of Dan 8 limits itself to the structural correspondences with other parts of the book of Daniel. As his main task is to describe “how a biblical text such as Daniel has evolved into its present shape through several stages of rereading, reinterpretation, and reactualization in changing historical circumstances,” it is understandable that a close reading of the text of Dan 8 was not attempted. Therefore, the synchronic approach of David would more accurately be defined as a macrostructural approach.
reading of the book of Daniel and should not be mistaken as a linguistic or literary approach to the text.

Rainer Stahl discusses the text of Dan 8 in a literary analysis and a redaction-critical analysis of what he calls the “Daniel library” (Danielbibliothek).¹ His procedure of literary analysis is a notation of those lexical, structural and syntactic features which attracted his attention.² Though Stahl essentially assumes that Dan 8 represents a unity, he nevertheless argues for a number of additions by redactional work. Thus, original to Dan 8:9-14 are only vs. 9, vs. 10 (without ד"ת מָלֵךְ וּמִשָּׁל), and 12b. Verses 11, 12a, 13, and 14, he claims, were added by several later revisions of the text.³

Stahl’s literary analysis is weakened by several factors. First, he does not give a methodological basis for his literary analysis. Modern linguistic research, which would


²In the section on Dan 8:9-14, Stahl observes, for example, the following (ibid., 173-175): Regarding the morphological level, he marks יָשָׁמֶשׁ in vs. 9 as playing on the sound of יָשָׁמֶשׁ, which follows shortly, and takes יָשָׁמֶשׁ in vs. 12 as a wayyiqtol form. Regarding syntax, he notes the shift of perfect and imperfect forms in vss. 9-12, the shift of gender of verbs in vss. 10-12, and the shift of active and passive form in vss. 11-12, for none of which he gives an explanation. He mentions the difficult place of יָשָׁמֶשׁ in vs. 12, which he seems to take belonging to vs. 11 (175 n. 298). Regarding structure, he views vs. 12c-d (“12c” in Stahl’s reference system) as a summary statement and vs. 13c (13b) with its lexemes as retrospective and prospective. Regarding semantics, he remarks on the surprising positive turn in vs. 14b.

³Ibid., 178. Stahl believes that Dan 8 underwent extensive redactional work, that is, four revisions plus one later gloss (see also 92, 99, 109, 111, 122-124). For him, these additions were prompted by the need for theological clarifications and additions in the historical context of the crises under Antiochus and were finished for Dan 8 in the year 165 B.C.E. (122). Cf. also Rainer Stahl, "'Eine Zeit, Zeiten und die Hälfte einer Zeit': Die Versuche der Eingrenzung der bösen Macht im Danielbuch," in The Book of Daniel in the Light of New Findings, ed. A. S. van der Woude, BETL, no. 106 (Leuven: Leuven University Press, 1993), 491 n. 47.
have greatly enhanced his basic methodology, was barely integrated at all.\(^1\) Second, his analysis is not comprehensive, meaning that he is not attentive to all features of the text and does not cover all of the text material. Third, he does not distinguish between morphological, syntactic, and semantic features. Finally, Stahl explains some problematic literary features as coming into existence by redactional work,\(^2\) but his conclusions are seemingly too hasty and do not give due attention to the admittedly intricate literary style of the text. In sum, Stahl's work on Dan 8:9-14 is essentially marked by his literary-critical and redaction-critical focus. Although he observes some of the main literary features, he does not provide convincing explanations or discussions for them. This seems due primarily to the inadequacy of his literary/redaction-critical methodology.

Achim Behrens undertakes in his dissertation a detailed form-critical description of the literary genre "prophetic vision report" in the Hebrew Bible, and also analyzes in the course of his investigation the vision report in Dan 8:3-14.\(^3\) He describes the linguistic construction elements of the genre "prophetic vision report," and tries to understand its function by utilizing insights from text-linguistics or text-grammar and speech-act theory. According to Behrens, the principal pattern of a "prophetic vision

---


report” consists of two parts, a vision proper and a dialogue, both exhibiting their peculiar linguistic features. Daniel 8:3-14 displays these linguistic construction elements: The vision part opens with a form of the verbal root הָלַךְ followed by הָלַךְ + nominal clause (vs. 3), and the rest of the description of the vision usually consists of further nominal clauses (vss. 3-12). Behrens identifies three formal features of the dialogue part of a prophetic vision report, all of which he finds exhibited in Dan 8:13-14: (1) the dialogue opens with a wayyiqtol-form of רָאָת (vs. 13b); (2) the following first speech act is always direct speech in the form of a question or an imperative and thus gives the dialogue part its appellative character (vs. 13c); and (3) the dialogue ends with a comment by Yahweh or his messenger, never with one by the visionary (vs. 14).

Behrens’s analysis is commendable for its scrutiny and clarity in identifying the linguistic construction elements and function of the genre “prophetic vision report.” However, his linguistic investigation serves exclusively the form-critical analysis and is not employed to help in deciphering the meaning of words, clauses, or the entire text of Dan 8:3-14. A literary analysis is not undertaken. An intertextual analysis, although Behrens does not refer to it as such, confines itself to the form-critical comparison of Dan 8:3-14 with Dan 10:5-14; Dan 12:5-7; and other vision reports.

Especially worthy of consideration are the text-oriented approaches of Hasslberger, Koch, the Schweizer school, and Gzella, to which I owe basic insights into the questions of linguistic analysis of Dan 8:9-14. I will review these approaches more comprehensively.
The Text-Oriented Approach of Bernhard Hasslberger (1977)

Description

One approach that proceeds strictly from the linguistic data of the text is applied in the 1976 dissertation of B. Hasslberger. Though he claims that his work is a form-critical study of Dan 8 and 10–12, he diverges from traditional form-critical studies by utilizing the methodological principles of W. Richter under whose direction the dissertation was written.

Richter proposed six aspects of methodology or steps of analysis: unity or composition of the text (literary criticism), form (form criticism), genre (genre criticism), traditions (tradition criticism), compositions and redactions (redaction criticism), and

---


3 In fact, Hasslberger’s dissertation was one of the earliest applications of Richter’s methodological principles to a larger body of text.
content (text-immanent exegesis). He places special emphasis on form, which he regards as the most significant aspect of his methodology. However, Richter understands “form” and “form criticism” in a different way from that generally used by previous scholars: He assigns the term “form” (*Form*) to the description of a single text unit, whereas “genre” (*Gattung*) refers to a text type. Therefore, form analysis cannot and should not start from the content, either from analyzing a genre or collection of texts. Rather it is the analysis and description of a single text unit itself according to its external form (words, word groups, sentences, syntax and style), and its inner form (semantic features of lexemes and semantic classes of word groups or words). Therein lies Richter's main contribution to the theory and methodology of OT literature studies. It ensures that students of a biblical text first examine the grammatical features of text units in a scientifically verifiable way before they proceed to other aspects, which may include arguments from the content of a text. The synchronic analysis of the text must occur prior to its diachronic analysis.

Richter suggests that the linguistic layers of a text can be described and analyzed without 

---

1 Richter, *Exegese*, 49-120.

2 Ibid., 72-79, 125-132; see also idem, “Formgeschichte und Sprachwissenschaft,” 216-225. Hermann Gunkel, for instance, used the term form (*Form*) and genre (*Gattung*) almost identically (*Genesis*, 3d ed. [Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1910], xiii-lvi). Richter's suggestion concerning the relation between *Form* and *Gattung* has not been without influence: it has been taken up by L. Markert (in Fohrer et al., 85 n. 84). See Hans-Peter Müller's overview on how such terminology as *Gattung, Form, Formeln, Formen,* and *Strukturen* has been developed and is used differently by various scholars (“Formgeschichte/Formkritik I,” *TRE*, 11:275-277). See also Harald Schweizer for the different usage of the terms “form” and “content” and their analysis by the form-critical school on the one hand and the Richter school on the other hand (“Form und Inhalt: Ein Versuch, gegenwärtige methodische Differenzen durchsichtiger und damit überwindbar zu machen; dargestellt anhand von Ps 150,” *BN* 3 [1977]: 35-47).

any regard to its content, just on the basis of syntax, because a text to him is nothing else but a series of sentences conveying content.¹

Although Richter insists on the precedence of synchronic analysis, he nevertheless arranges his proposed linguistic approach according to the conventional sequence of historical-critical methods applied to the text, in which literary criticism is the first step. Richter allows for an initial stage of literary criticism that examines the unity of smaller text units.² In other words, the literary-critical analysis on a linguistic basis comes prior to the form-critical analysis.³

In the line with Richter’s methodology, Hasslberger defines his main task as acquiring and evaluating the formal data of the text in order to detect the structure of Dan 8 and 10–12.⁴ Form and structure rather than content are at the center of his attention. Hasslberger therefore exemplifies a form-to-function approach to the text.

Hasslberger’s analysis of Dan 8 consists of five steps.⁵ First, he provides a


²Richter, Exegese, 70-72.

³It has to be noted that Richter’s methodology outlined in Exegese als Literaturwissenschaft has been deemed as controversial, which may be illustrated by referring to two textbooks on exegetical methods used at German universities. On the one hand, Fohrer’s team incorporates Richter’s methodology into their methodology of linguistic description (Fohrer et al., 64-65 n. 60). On the other hand, Odil Hannes Steck finds it rather difficult to combine the linguistic approach of Richter with the methods used in OT exegesis, and therefore refrains from using his methodological suggestions (Old Testament Exegesis: A Guide to the Methodology, 2d ed., trans. J. D. Nogalski, SBLRBS, no. 39 [Atlanta: Scholars Press, 1998], 52-53 n. 32, 68 n. 63, 97-98 n. 91).

⁴Hasslberger, xiii.

⁵In the following I focus only on Hasslberger’s work on Dan 8 (3-110), and there especially on 8:9-14, though he has analyzed Dan 10–12 accordingly (113-374). Interestingly, Hasslberger does
transcription of the text\textsuperscript{1} with text-critical comments. An improvement in reference notation is achieved, since each clause is specifically identified and appears on a separate line, e.g., Dan 8:12 is divided into four clauses, 12a to 12d. Second, in the section on literary criticism Hasslberger delimits the text and examines its unity.\textsuperscript{2} In Dan 8, he identifies as secondary vss. 11-14, 26a, 27f.\textsuperscript{3} He analyzes therefore vss. 9-10 separately from the supposedly later insertion vss. 11-14.\textsuperscript{4} Third, under form analysis, which actually comprises the largest part of Hasslberger's study, he analyzes the sentence relations and the usage of words, describes syntax and style, analyzes the inner form, and ends with a summary of the literary structure of Dan 8 and the statement of the goal of the unit.\textsuperscript{5} Fourth, he then gives special attention to specific formulae, fixed expressions and word groups, and the "horizon."\textsuperscript{6} Finally, he presents also a form-analysis (third and

\textsuperscript{1}The transcription follows the rules outlined by Wolfgang Richter, \textit{Transliteration und Transkription: Objekt- und metasprachliche Metazeichensysteme zur Wiedergabe hebräischer Texte}, ATSAT, no. 19 (St. Ottilien: EOS, 1983).

\textsuperscript{2}Hasslberger, 14-22.

\textsuperscript{3}Ibid., 22.

\textsuperscript{4}Ibid., 52-55, 97-107.

\textsuperscript{5}Of 411 pages of the main body of text, 317 pages, that is about 77%, are devoted to form analysis (ibid., 23-110, 143-371). Hasslberger uses the term "form criticism" as Richter defined it and understands it therefore differently from most of the other scholars.

\textsuperscript{6}Horizon refers to the literary affinities of a passage beyond its scope (ibid., 96). See the definition by Richter who borrowed this expression from Otto Eissfeldt (\textit{Exegese}, 117-118).
fourth step above) of the secondary additions, namely Dan 8:11-14, 26a, 27f.¹

Hasslberger supplements his major form-critical study by a chapter on aspects which concern both Dan 8 and 10–12.² He first pays attention to the syntax of verbs. Then he addresses the problem of the numbers in 8:14 and 12:7, 11, 12.³ Third, Hasslberger attempts to identify the genre and the Sitz im Leben. Fourth, a tradition-critical investigation leads Hasslberger to the conclusion that Dan 8 was influenced by Ezekiel and Zechariah, particularly by Ezek 1:26–2:3 and Zech 2:1-2; 6:1-15.⁴ Last, Hasslberger concludes his dissertation with the question of authorship. He reconstructs different authors for Dan 8 and 10–12, and finds that the author/s of Dan 10–12 used Dan 8 as Vorlage for their elaborations.

Assessment

Hasslberger has to be credited for providing an exhaustive discussion of the grammar and function of terms in Dan 8. The value of his work lies in two areas: first

¹A minor formal inconsistency is that when analyzing the original unit Hasslberger separates the analysis of formulae, fixed expressions, and horizon from the form analysis, whereas when he analyzes the secondary verses he does both under the one heading “form analysis.” According to Richter, the form analysis and the function of the forms—the latter includes the study of formulae, fixed expressions and horizon—are the two subareas of form criticism (Exegese, 79-120).

²Hasslberger, 377-411.

³After a survey of the different existing opinions, Hasslberger opts for the explanation that the numbers refer to an apparent delay in expectation on the side of the author/s, whereas the question why exactly these numbers are used “cannot be solved any more” (396).

⁴Collins criticizes Hasslberger that he “only considers parallels within the Hebrew Bible, and then only when they involve verbal parallels. So he leaves out of account not only later texts but also the sections of 1 Enoch which are earlier than, or roughly contemporary with, Daniel and even the Aramaic vision in Dan 7. It is difficult to see how any valid conclusion about either Gattung or history of traditions can be reached on such a limited basis” (Collins, review, 460).
and foremost, in the implementation of a linguistically designed method, which, when examining the text of Dan 8, makes it possible to focus on the text itself, and second, in the vast amount of detailed formal observations regarding syntax and style. Hence Hasslberger was the first to attempt a truly text-oriented analysis of Dan 8.

Three further observations may be added. First, while Hasslberger follows the methodology of Richter he does not interact with other linguistic or text-based approaches to biblical texts. For the most part this can be explained by the fact that the integration of modern linguistic research into biblical exegesis in the 1970s was just on the eve of its development; even Richter’s own theoretical linguistic framework (Grundlagen einer althebräischen Grammatik) was yet to be published.

Second, Hasslberger never attempts a synchronic analysis of the whole text of Dan 8. This is because Richter’s methodological principles as outlined in his Exegese als Literaturwissenschaft do not allow for a true synchronic analysis of a given text. First of all, the text has to be investigated to detect the smaller text units, which are examined to see whether they belong together. The smaller units are then discussed diachronically. Only after this initial literary criticism, which separates earlier from secondary material, can one proceed to the analysis of form. Accordingly, in following the approach of Richter, Hasslberger’s first step of analysis is literary criticism. Although this section is

---

1 For the latter see also Gradl (360) and Collins (review, 461). However, Collins objects that the conclusions drawn by Hasslberger’s linguistic observations are rather “meager” (ibid., 460).

2 Richter, Exegese, 66-72.
brief, its results influence not only the question of authorship but to a large extent the whole structure of Hasslberger's work. I want to illustrate this by pointing out some of its consequences regarding the passage of Dan 8:9-14.

Hasslberger considers Dan 8:11-14, 26a, 27f as secondary material, and therefore throughout his dissertation he analyzes these sections apart from the rest of chap. 8. This means that Hasslberger never investigates 8:9-14 as a unit. He does not analyze the language in vss. 11-14 in comparison with the surrounding verses, even though he refers to the structural correspondence of sentence types and the placement of the verbs between 8:11-12 and 8:8-10 as well as between 8:13-14 and 8:15-16. In Hasslberger's analysis, vss. 11-14 do not supply any arguments for the analysis of vss. 9-10, indeed for the whole original unit of chap. 8. For example, the difficult syntax of vss. 11-12 is disregarded in the description of the verb syntax used in chap. 8; formulae, fixed expressions and the horizon of vss. 11-14 are not part of the original chap. 8 and excluding vss. 11-14 with its cultic terminology from the original unit of chap. 8 robs this chapter of any cultic element. As a result, the cult plays no decisive role in chap. 8—a consequence of which

---

1 Hasslberger, 14-22 (cf. the critique by Gradl, 360).
2 Hasslberger, 408.

3 Hasslberger's analyses of the original Dan 8 (23-96) and of the secondary material (97-110) are neither compared nor brought together into a synthesis.

4 Ibid., 97-98. In criticism of Hasslberger, Becker points out that structural correspondences of 8:11-14 with the surrounding verses are not considered in Hasslberger's line of argument, and that his use of argument from content is not compelling at all (313).

5 Hasslberger, 377 n. 1.
6 Ibid., 110.
Hasslberger is well aware. In my view, for a text-based approach to chap. 8 in general and 8:9-14 in particular it is highly problematic to view vss. 11-14 as secondary prior to any linguistic analysis of the whole text.

A third observation is that in Hasslberger’s approach, the analysis of syntax and style is placed so much in the foreground that the semantic analysis plays only a minor role. Richter’s last aspect of methodology, that is, the study of content or meaning, is not addressed at all. Brief semantic discussions of specific words or phrases occurring in Dan 8:9-14 are found scattered throughout the form analysis, but cannot obscure the fact that Hasslberger’s study lacks the analysis of the content of 8:9-14.

The Text-Oriented Approach of Klaus Koch (1983)

Description

In 1979, Klaus Koch presented a form-critical analysis of one kind of apocalyptic work, namely the vision report, as exemplified by Dan 8. Koch uses a methodology

1Ibid., 400 n. 11.

2Becker thinks that Hasslberger regards 8:11-14 as secondary material a priori (312-313).

3See the brief semantic discussion and notes on יִהְיֶה in vs. 10 (Hasslberger, 54-55, 91), אֶפְשָׁר in vs. 11 (98-99), רָדִּים in vs. 11 (100), רָאָּס in vs. 12 (103-104), לְדָמִים and אֶפְשָׁר in vs. 13 (106) and שֵׁפֶר in vs. 14 (107). Only the discussion on לְדָמִים in vs. 12 (101-103) is longer, covering more than two pages. The section which is devoted to the problem of the numbers (385-396), including the “2300 evening-morning,” cannot be regarded as analysis of meaning. Rather it is an overview of opinions as to what the numbers refer to in reality. Only the observation on אֶפְשָׁר (392-393) is attempting to establish the meaning of this phrase.

which he calls “structural form criticism” (strukturale Formgeschichte) in which a linguistic analysis is taken into the service of an all-encompassing form-critical analysis. He described this methodological approach extensively already in 1976.¹

The tools for Koch’s form-critical investigation are provided by structural grammar, especially by text-linguistics.² The understanding of the term “text” and the use of text-linguistics is the main difference to Richter’s approach.³ Koch does not subscribe to the view that the sentence is the highest level of linguistic description. Rather, the decisive data are provided by macrosyntactic units, texts, which have to be analyzed by the discipline of text-linguistics.⁴ For Koch, text is nothing else but a specimen of a


³Koch discusses Richter’s approach at several places (*Amos*, 1:13-15; “Reichen die formgeschichtlichen Methoden,” 807-814; and *Was ist Formgeschichte?* 5th ed., 313-314). Koch’s critique of Richter’s methodology includes the following points. First, Richter does not include semantics in his methodology. Second, Richter provides no grammatical controls for structures beyond the sentence level. Third, the linguistic terminology of “levels” and “aspects” is not used properly, but rather corresponds to the traditional steps of OT exegesis. Fourth, Richter’s emphasis on form over against content contradicts the inseparable interrelation of expression plane and content plane which needs to be considered on each linguistic level. Koch concludes that methodological reflections stimulated by linguistics are necessary and helpful, but that Richter’s use of linguistics in form criticism is not sufficient (“Reichen die formgeschichtlichen Methoden,” 812-814).

⁴Therein lies the reason why Koch believes that Hassberger’s analysis is insufficient, because of its improper use of text-linguistics and its abandonment of macro-syntactic questions (“Visionsbericht,” 415).
He believes that linguistic analysis is true form-critical analysis (in the sense used by Gunkel), as it examines texts which constitute specific genres. The functions of such a kind of text-linguistics, as he calls it, are to demarcate texts of component literary types (Gliedtexte) and to describe their structures in order to arrive at a matrix for a complex literary type. In the analysis of component literary types, criteria from both form and content are used in combination, for form and content cannot be separated but depend on each other. Only after the structural analysis has been completed does the literary-critical analysis follow, using data which have been detected by the structural analysis but could not be explained by text-linguistics. In other words, Koch emphasizes that a synchronic study (structural grammar) has to precede a diachronic study (literary criticism). To sum up, Koch utilizes a linguistic-oriented, synchronic(-diachronic) analysis as a tool for his form-critical approach. This implies that Koch regards the linguistic or text-linguistic analysis as part of the form-critical analysis. His ultimate purpose is to detect forms in the text which help to describe specific genres.

Koch applies these methodological principles in his form-critical analysis of Dan 8. It is carried out inductively consisting of four parts: (1) a structural analysis of Dan 8

---

1. Koch (Was ist Formgeschichte? 5th ed., 290) defines a text as "a written or oral statement which is clearly demarcated to the back and to the front and constitutes a self-contained unit. Text, respectively oral tradition, belongs to the area of 'language,' the use of language, to which on the part of langue corresponds the genre which determines the structure of a text." Elsewhere, Koch makes clear that "in this understanding text is nothing else than a specimen of genre" (Amos, 1:11).

2. Koch, Amos, 1:11; idem, Was ist Formgeschichte? 5th ed., 313 (pace Richter). For a reaction to Koch in favor of the Richter school see Schweizer, "Form und Inhalt," 46 n. 16.

3. Ibid., 9-12. Here, in this, lies another difference to Richter's approach in which the literary-critical analysis precedes the form analysis (Richter, Exegese, 70-72).
(macrosyntax); (2) a comparison of prophetic and apocalyptic vision reports (synchronic evidence for a genre); (3) considerations regarding the discontinuity between prophetic and apocalyptic vision reports and the Sitz im Leben; and (4) reflections on the semantics of metaphoric-symbolic language (textsemantics).\footnote{Koch, “Visionsbericht,” 415. Between the first and the second step Koch inserts a section on tradition history which, true to his synchronic emphasis, he labels as diachronic excursus (421).} It is the structural analysis of the macrosyntax of Dan 8 in which the linguistic analysis is employed. As I am interested especially in the application of a text-oriented approach, I will from here on refer only to Koch’s structural and textsemantic analysis.\footnote{Ibid., 415-421. The analysis by Koch in the other sections shall be summarized briefly. In the diachronic excursus on the tradition history of Dan 8 Koch identifies three motifs joined together: astral-geography (ram and goat), sacrilegious hubris myth (Himmelstürmer), and angelic liturgy (host of heaven and cult in Jerusalem) (421-423). For the synchronic evidence of a vision report, Koch compares in detail Dan 8 with the locust vision in Amos 7:1-3 and the vision of the fourth apocalyptic rider in Rev 6:7-8. He adds a structural outline of 44 visions which should show that there exists a vision report genre (423-427). Very helpful are the overview charts on pp. 442-445. The discontinuity between prophetic and apocalyptic vision reports is seen by four main points. In apocalyptic texts—in contrast to the prophetic texts—the vision report is a standard feature, the dismay or shock of the visionary emerges clearly, a hierarchy of angels is known, and an interpretation is necessary (428-429).}

Koch starts his macrosyntactic analysis with establishing the structural outline of Dan 8 by paying attention to structural devices of either formal (דֶּרֶך + ב + infinitive) or content type (time formula, self-introduction, description of the visionary’s dismay). He identifies four text constituents: introduction (vss. 1-2α), main part I (vss. 2αβ-14), main part II (vss. 15-26), and conclusion (vss. 26β-27). Then, he investigates the macrosyntax of the two main parts. He notes repetitive lexemes (ךְּשָׁם, צָוָּא), the interrupting morpheme /1sg/, the use of different sentence types (nominal sentences, verbal sentences) and verbal tenses (perfect, imperfect), and the specific content of the text segments.
Again both formal elements and content elements are used as structural criteria.

Koch’s structural analysis of Dan 8 is summarized in a convenient chart.¹ It presents almost the complete MT of Dan 8 in a detailed structured form and especially marks the genre devices, the interpretative key lexeme שִׁלֹחַ, and the resumption of vision elements in the interpretation. Koch also notes the structural elements under a column entitled “genre structure / syntax.” Noticeable again is that Koch perceives a close connection between the contents of the genre structure and the formal elements of grammatical and syntactic features. He calls this correlation between linguistic features and genre structure “genre matrix” (Gattungsmatrix). Thus, the correlation between expression plane and content plane regarding structure is nicely presented.²

In the section on textsemantics, Koch deals with the question of why such unusual and often paradoxical language is used in apocalyptic vision reports. For this he outlines the narrative plot of vss. 3-14—which constantly increases the narrative tension until vs. 14—and attempts to trace the semantics of the vision proper and the interpretation thereof. Koch proposes to perform the latter with help of selected expressions, but he merely describes the contents of Dan 8 by following along its verses.³

Assessment

The merit of Koch’s approach is that he emphasizes linguistic analysis as a

¹The chart is inserted after ibid., 432.

²Ibid., 442-446.

³Ibid., 430-440.
valuable tool for the study of a text and its structure that should be undertaken right in the beginning. He refrains from literary criticism as a first step of analysis, rather treating the text as a whole in a synchronic manner.\(^1\) In this way, Koch is able to identify structural features which otherwise tend to be lost if one separates secondary from original text material. As a result, a new appreciation of text structure comes to light. Koch comes to the conclusion that Dan 8 is thoughtfully and artistically structured. No tense or morpheme is placed carelessly, and no repetition is without function. Koch almost delights in the aesthetics of the structure.\(^2\)

Koch not only enhances his structural analysis by linguistics but also demonstrates the correlation between form and content, between the levels of expression and content. His structural outlines are valuable in this regard. Some may argue that Koch is methodologically inconsistent,\(^3\) but it seems unavoidable to include arguments from content when analyzing syntax and structure.\(^4\)

Koch's approach is not truly a linguistic approach, but rather a form-critical approach with the implementation of linguistic studies. Though Koch stresses the priority of a linguistic analysis, he uses it only as the first and basic level of analysis in the

\(^1\)In his BKAT commentary on Daniel, Koch is reluctant to incorporate literary-critical considerations as well. Rather, he wants to analyze the final form of the text (e.g., 112-115).


\(^3\)This would be the argument of scholars working with a strict “bottom-up-process,” that is, giving precedence to form over function and meaning in every aspect of the analysis.

\(^4\)Cf. Talstra, “Text Grammar and Hebrew Bible. II,” 38. To scholars working with a strict formal approach it is sometimes pointed out that they introduce arguments from the content into their formal analysis (see, e.g., Rüdiger Bartelmus, review of “Und die Wahrheit wurde hinweggefegt”: Daniel 8 linguistisch interpretiert, ed. by Winfried Bader, TZ 52 [1996]: 275).
framework of the existing "Gunkelian" form-critical method. It appears that his only goal is to identify features which contribute to the structure of the text and help in a form-critical analysis. This is one of the reasons why Koch's linguistic analysis is far from comprehensive.\(^1\) For example, the macrosyntactic analysis of Dan 8 does not include a syntactic analysis. No attention is given to the intricate syntax of Dan 8:9-14. The only additional information given for vss. 9-14 addresses concerns of how this section functions in the plot (the inner form of the vision proper).\(^2\)

The Text-Oriented Approach of the Schweizer School—Winfried Bader, ed. (1994)

Description

Another linguistic study of Dan 8 appeared in 1994 and is comprised of eleven articles which are based upon the linguistic framework developed by Harald Schweizer.\(^3\) Schweizer laid the foundation for his approach in his *Metaphorische Grammatik* (1981).\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Koch himself points out that in the structural analysis he has restricted himself to only a few observations (“Visionsbericht,” 420). Other reasons for such a restriction of analysis may be due to time limitations (the material of this article was first presented at a Colloquium) and space limitations (Koch's essay appears in a volume of 34 collected essays).

\(^2\) Ibid., 432-433.


\(^4\) The term “metaphoric” in the title of Schweizer’s *Metaphorische Grammatik* stands on the one hand for the experimental nature of this work (applying new approaches to old problems), and on the other hand for the transfer of traditional subject matter of grammar to syntax and semantics, and in addition also to pragmatics. Schweizer described and elaborated his approach further in a later work (*Biblische Texte verstehen*, 37-117; cf. already “Wovon reden die Exegeten?” 173-175), in which he outlined a three-step pragmatic description of the text (80-81), adapted from Hartwig Kalverkämper.
There is no question that Schweizer is indebted to Richter. However, his approach is nevertheless sufficiently different to deserve being presented separately.¹

Schweizer’s purpose is to introduce more recent linguistic methods to Old Testament interpretation. Most prominently, Schweizer insists on a purely formal approach. In fact, he accuses those using a classical approach (historical-critical approach) of confusing form and meaning.²

Schweizer’s approach is characterized by three levels of analysis taken from linguistics: syntax, semantics and pragmatics.³ This triad is found in almost all works of the “Schweizer school.”⁴ The three steps of analysis correspond to a characterization given by Charles Fillmore who equates syntax with the study of form, semantics with the

¹Schweizer, Metaphorische Grammatik, 3-16, esp. 4-7.

²The theoretical basis for this triad has been laid by the philosopher Charles W. Morris who identifies syntax, semantics, and pragmatics as the three dimensions of semiotics (Foundations of the Theory of Signs, International Encyclopedia of Unified Science, vol. 1, no. 2 [Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1972]). Schweizer applies Morris’s sign theory to the exegesis of OT texts.

³See the series “Textwissenschaft, Theologie, Hermeneutik, Linguistik, Literaturanalyse, Informatik” edited by Schweizer, in which between 1991 and 1995 nine volumes were published, or dissertations such as Silvia Becker-Spörli, “Und sang Debora an jenem Tag”: Untersuchungen zu Sprache und Intention des Deboraliedes (Ri 5), Europäische Hochschulschriften: Reihe 23, Theologie, no. 620 (Frankfurt am Main: Lang, 1998).
study of form and function, and pragmatics with the study of form, function and setting.¹

According to Schweizer, syntax deals only with the combination of linguistic signs and expressions, not with meaning. Therefore, he analyzes syntax on a purely formal level, leaving aside the elements of meaning for the semantic analysis.²

Semantics deals with the meanings of expressions and of their combinations.³ Schweizer seems most intent on developing the semantic interpretation of expressions. Such a semantic analysis needs to consider the meaning of the individual illocution units in and of themselves.⁴ The semantic interpretation is therefore equivalent to the literal meaning of the illocution units.⁵

The third level of description is pragmatics. Pragmatics refers to the analysis of the communicative situation, the analysis of the illocution units as they form a text. It describes and systematically explains the connections between sentences, their meaning, and the circumstances of their utterance—whereas semantics deals with the relations


²Ibid., 40-79, esp. 44-47.

³Ibid., 80.

⁴Schweizer defines an illocution unit (Äußerungseinheit) as a unit that fulfills a specific semantic function. Illocution units are clauses with predicates (phrastic illocution units) and phrases or groups of phrases without a predicate but with a communicative function of their own (aphrastic illocution units) (ibid., 23, 31-32). For at least ten criteria to distinguish illocution units, see Schweizer, “Wovon reden die Exegeten,” TQ 164 (1984): 175.

⁵For the study of semantics, Schweizer distinguishes different semantic notions (illocution, predication, valences and actants, determination, adjunctions) and different semantic codes attached to words and phrases (epistemology, imagination, initiative, actualization, axiology, state and aspects) (Metaphorische Grammatik, 94-210).
within expressions to detect their literal meanings. Pragmatics is a kind of semantics on the level of the text. Whereas semantics works on the sentence level, pragmatics operates at the textual level.1 Schweizer distinguishes three levels of pragmatic description: textgrammar, textlinguistics, and textpragmatics.2 For the pragmatic meaning of a text, Schweizer uses such categories as word types, indirect illocution (indirect expression of wishes, orders, etc.), figurative language (hyperbole, irony, etc.), chronological system (expression of time), topological system (expression of place), presentation of speech in a text (speech form and dialog form), relations between illocution units (actant, adjuctions, semantic codes, neustic), thema-rhema (topic-comment), the various uses of synonymy (isotopy), and presuppositions.3

To sum up, Schweizer suggests the following levels for the study of texts: syntax, semantics, and pragmatics. He also adds a further step before the triad, namely the constitution of the text, in which the text is divided into illocution units to prepare it for later interpretation.4 The arrangement of the linguistic description of texts is therefore the following:

---

1Ibid., 211-214.

2For Schweizer, textgrammar investigates the literary context (the relation of illocution units to other illocution units) in its literal sense; textlinguistics examines the literal sense for second meanings, structures in argumentation, and remarkable constructions; and textpragmatics is the description of the communicative situation and its implications ("Wovon reden die Exegeten?" 174; Biblische Texte verstehen, 137-138).

3Schweizer, Metaphorische Grammatik, 224-324.

4Schweizer, Biblische Texte verstehen, 37-40. Later, Schweizer regards literary criticism as part of the text constitution ("Weitere Impulse zur Literarkritik," BN 80 [1995]: 95).
Text constitution
Syntax—interpretation of expression
Semantics—interpretation of contents, part one
Pragmatics—interpretation of contents, part two
  Pragmatics: Text-grammar
  Pragmatics: Text-linguistics
  Pragmatics: Text-pragmatics

In "Und die Wahrheit wurde hinweggefeigt" (1994) the methodological linguistic framework suggested by Schweizer is applied to Dan 8. The essays in this volume are arranged exactly as outlined above: a preliminary constitution of the text precedes the analytical triad “syntax—semantics—pragmatics” with pragmatics subdivided into text-grammar, text-linguistics, and text-pragmatics.

M. Schindele divides the text of Dan 8 into 124 illocution units and outlines them in conjunction with a morphological transcription and a translation. He provides a discussion of selected text-critical problems and a detailed explanation of his translation.¹

Two other articles focus on the level of surface syntax. They aim at an interpretation of expressions only, disregarding their meaning, and are carried out with the help of computer programs. In the first, H. Schweizer examines the internal surface syntax.² He tries to detect structures within Dan 8 by comparing identical expressions. Their distribution and frequency in chap. 8 are presented in a graph and then interpreted. As a result Schweizer discovers that the word basis or vocabulary of chap. 8 is presented


in the "exposition" in vss. 1-14.¹ In the second, M. Schindele analyzes the external surface syntax comparing fixed expressions of chap. 8 with other parts of the Hebrew Bible using a functional definition of form.² He concentrates on three formulae, which appear in Dan 8:1, 3, 4, and compares his results with those of Hasslberger.

On the level of semantics, Bader describes the modalities of Dan 8 and thus investigates the author's subjective opinion.³ In doing so, he notices that the author of Dan 8 presents the vision as if dealing with established facts—in order to increase its acceptance—and that he in a subtle way imparts his own values to the reader. For Bader the question "how long?" in vs. 13 marks the nucleus of Dan 8, which expresses the categorical lack of knowledge on the part of all readers.⁴

On the level of pragmatics, two articles deal with textgrammar. In the first, S. Bucher-Gillmayr groups the illocution units according to semantic criteria into three textgrammatical units: a short introduction (vss. 1a-2a), the vision (vss. 2b-26f), and the reception by Daniel (vs. 27). She follows the line of thought of the vision in detail and

¹Schweizer defines the term "exposition" as a section in which many small repetitions produce a familiarity with the text (ibid., 25).
²Martin Schindele, "Möglichkeiten und Grenzen maschineller Befunderhebung zur Untersuchung von Formeln und geprägten Wendungen mit Beispielen aus Daniel 8," in ibid., 31-38. Schindele defines a formula as a sequence of words of which the individual components (words) stand in relation to the components of other sequences of words (32).
³Winfried Bader, "Reale und gedachte Welt: Die Modalitäten in Daniel 8," in ibid., 39-58. Modalities are defined as linguistic elements (adverbs, conjunctions, verb tenses, etc.) which express the subjective opinion of the authors, viz. the author's position, assessment, world view, etc. (39).
⁴Ibid., 55, 56, 169.
outlines its substructure. In the second, D. Bauer studies the most frequent words (lemmata), the Leitwörter. He includes word repetitions on the level of syntax, variations of these words on the level of semantics, and descriptions of the same contents as found in other words on the level of pragmatics. In doing so, he identifies four semantic fields or isotopies to which the Leitwörter of Dan 8 belong—first-person narrator, perception, power (control, violence), and sanctuary—which in turn produce a Leitwort-structure: vss. 3d-13f have their main emphasis on power, and vss. 11b-14c on sanctuary. In Bauer’s opinion, vss. 11b-14c constitute the climax of Dan 8.

On the level of textlinguistic pragmatics, G. Langer focuses on the isotopy of power and violence. He identifies the words and phrases belonging to the semantic field “power” and points out the references and allusions to power in Dan 8. Again, vss. 10-12, as well as vss. 23-25, mark a climax regarding this semantic field. The articles on the level of text-pragmatics deal with the hermeneutical and philosophical aspects of Dan 8 and with the chapter’s historical background, and as such are not of interest to my study.

2Dieter Bauer, “Daniel 8 – eine ‘Leitwortuntersuchung,’” in ibid., 73-85. Bauer defines a Leitwort as a lemma that occurs at least three times in a given text (78).
Assessment

That the text of Dan 8 itself is studied as a whole proceeding from form to
function is a major contribution of Schweizer’s methodological approach. The strict
separation of form and meaning helps the investigator to experience the “resistance of the
text” and prevents him or her from moving too quickly to arguments based on content.

On the other hand, the strict separation of form and meaning, which is reflected in
the separation of syntactic, semantic, and pragmatic levels of investigation (a strict
working-up process), may lead to another danger, that is, of disallowing arguments from
higher levels of investigation of coming into play on lower levels of investigation. This
bears out in the work of the Schweizer school on Dan 8, where the analysis of semantics
is clearly separated from the syntax. However, it is an accepted fact that upper levels of
analysis may and should influence decisions on the lower level. There are no “sterile”
levels of linguistic description, which should be self-evident, due to the fact that text and
language are very complex entities. At times, even Schweizer himself seems to separate
form and content only in theory. Furthermore, it is quite surprising that semantics, which

1Schweizer, Biblische Texte verstehen, 15.

2See Talstra’s reflections on the interplay between syntactic level and semantic level (“Text
Grammar and Hebrew Bible. II,” 35-38) and Archibald L. H. M. van Wieringen’s relevant
observations: “The fact, that semantic meanings are not available separated from texts, implies also
that semantics cannot be disconnected from other textual aspects. In other words: the famous triad
text-syntax, text-semantics and text-pragmatics consists of distinguishable parts, but not separable
textual categories”; and “form and function do not have a one-to-one relationship” (“Form and
Function — Some Hermeneutic Remarks on Semantics and Analogies: An Answer to Prof.

3See Bartelmus who finds that Schweizer’s interpretation on the formal, syntactic level of
Dan 8 includes argumentation from meaning and content: “What is a little surprising is the fact that in
the ‘interpretation,’ despite the strictly formalistic approach, contents play nevertheless a certain role
plays a major role as a bridge between syntax and pragmatics in the analysis of a text, comprises such a small part in the essays compiled by Bader.¹

Because Bader (1994) presents a collection of articles, there are yet varying emphases or minor differences between the scholars working with the same methodological approach. However, a synthesis is missing. The same text is discussed in several places, sometimes quite alike and with similar conclusions.² Furthermore, while each author concentrates on a specific topic, some aspects of interest for Dan 8:9-14 are in my opinion not treated adequately. For example, a syntactic discussion of Dan 8:9-14 on the sentence level is covered only briefly in the section of the explanations for the translation.³ The two articles on the expression syntax do not discuss syntactic observations on the sentence level and do not provide a syntactic structure of the text.

The Text-Oriented Approach of Holger Gzella (2003)

Description

In 2003 Holger Gzella published a monograph on the various literary elements of Dan 8.⁴ This monograph constitutes the most extensive discussion on Dan 8 so far. After

again” (review, 275).

¹The major component of Bader (1994) is the pragmatic analysis (ca. 90 pages), whereas syntax and semantics are given smaller space (each ca. 20 pages).

²For example, material on Dan 8:9-14 is discussed on pp. 8-9, 45, 48-49, 53-54, 63-64, 80, 90-92, 96-97, 118-119.


an introduction Gzella discusses in the second chapter the text of Dan 8: a textual commentary explains, usually with great care, the text-critical decisions Gzella takes.¹ For Dan 8:9-14 he adopts only a few text-critical emendations.² The next three chapters deal each with one part of the vision report in Dan 8: one is devoted to the visionary frame in Dan 8:1-2, 27, one to the battle narrative in 8:3-12, and one to the commentary section, which is subdivided into the angelic conversation in 8:13-14 and the application of the vision in 8:15-26.

Gzella’s methodology is text-oriented and consists of two main foci: a linguistic one and a literary one. In regard to the linguistic analysis, Gzella examines various features, however, mainly verbal syntax. He bases his analysis of verbal syntax on the foreground/background distinction in which the form wayyiqtol indicates foreground information with Aktionsart punctual, while waw + qatal indicates background information with Aktionsart durative. To some extent, he also takes note of word order and specifies its respective function.

Gzella also pays attention to various literary elements, observing in particular how linguistic features can be appreciated on a literary level. His main point is that the use of verbal forms in the vision proper shows a particular narrative pattern that consists of three

¹Gzella pays attention to the MT, two Qumran fragments, the Greek versions, Vulgate, and the more significant scholarly conjectures; sometimes reference is given also to the Peshitta and the fourteenth-century Babylonian-Yemenite text edited by Morag. In evaluation of the textual history of Dan 8, Gzella concludes that the MT, improved by 4QDan⁴, 4QDan⁵, and Pap. 967 (representing the pre-Hexaplaric Old Greek), presents the best base for a textual analysis of Dan 8.

²Gzella (35-41) suggest four emendations in Dan 8:9-14: לָאֵיִב instead of לָאֵיִב (8:9a), מֶלֶךְ instead of מֶלֶךְ (8:11b), וַיִּקְרָא instead of וַיִּקְרָא (8:13c), and יִתֵּן instead of יִתֵּן (8:14a).
elements: (1) the setting indicated by nominal clauses, participles and qatal; (2) the mainline action expressed by wayyiqtol; and (3) an evaluation of the new situation expressed by weqatal.¹ The form weqatal thus functions as a structuring device indicating the end of a subsection.² At the same time the overall pattern of appearance, dominion, defeat/disappearance is consistent with ram, he-goat, and horn which, according to Gzella, puts all of them on “the same narrative axis.”³

Gzella’s own methodological considerations are rather scarce, except when he comments about the literary genre of Dan 8. His main thesis is that the vision report in vss. 3-12 is not a historical allegory or a symbolic dream but a mimetic representation of reality which portrays a power struggle in the supernatural world. The interpretation or commentary in 8:13-26 contextualizes and actualizes the universal dimension of this cosmic conflict, presenting a corresponding historical situation. Hence, for Gzella the vision narrative (8:3-12) can be interpreted on its own level without considering the historical background, while the pesher-like application to historical reality (8:13-26) constitutes a different level of reading. Gzella’s hermeneutical approach distinguishes clearly between these two levels.

Several of Gzella’s more significant observations for Dan 8:9-14 are the following: the grammatical anomalies in these verses function to attract attention; the form qatal in vs. 9a expresses background action; fronting of elements in vss. 11a, 11b

¹Ibid., 124-125.
²Ibid., 100-102.
³Ibid., 122.
and 12a is for the sake of topicalization; and vss. 11-12 are the crucial verses of the vision report because of their seven short verbal clauses.

Assessment

Three issues in assessing the strengths and weaknesses of Gzella's methodology and contributions need to be pointed out. First, Gzella's attempt at a text-oriented analysis on a linguistic and literary level is commendable. Particularly in a study of the vision report in Dan 8 the examination of verbal syntax needs to be included, which has been largely neglected so far. Gzella is not afraid to tackle the more intricate syntactic problems of 8:9-14 and to offer some possible solutions. Furthermore, he does engage in literary considerations more than previous studies. In accord with Koch's assessment, Gzella finds the Hebrew of Dan 8 to be "a very carefully crafted composition" that shows "a maximum of syntactical possibilities, a rich, peculiar and complex lexicon and various literary genres (narrative, dialogue, commentary, prophecy)."

However, the linguistic-literary approach by Gzella appears not to be comprehensive enough. He focuses on selected issues, such as verbal syntax and the literary narrative pattern on the bases of verbal syntax, but he fails to include, for example, a study of Leitwörter, keywords, and themes. Though he is able to demonstrate the relationship between syntax and literary interpretation, he does not show how syntax influences the meaning of specific words.

Second, the distinction between textual understanding and interpretative historical

\[\text{\textsuperscript{1}}\text{Ibid., 157.}\]
application, which Gzella takes, is an important one. In the analysis of Dan 8:9-14 these two levels too often have not been clearly separated. Gzella thus gains a refreshing independence from any preconceived historical application. However, he does not analyze consistently the symbolic level of meaning that bridges the lexical level of meaning and the interpretative historical meaning. For Gzella, the symbolic level of meaning seems to belong to the historical application, whereas it is probably better to suggest that the symbolic meaning belongs rather to the realm of the text than to the realm of reality and thus should be considered in a text-oriented approach.

And third, like the others before him, Gzella noticeably does not engage in a systematic intertextual analysis. For example, he does not consider at all the texts of Dan 7 or Dan 9, which play an important role for a better understanding of Dan 8:9-14.

Summary

Several conclusions can be drawn reviewing the recent literature on Dan 8:9-14. First, the majority of approaches to the interpretation of Dan 8:9-14 do not proceed from the linguistic data itself and thus are in essence not text-oriented. They either represent a diachronic approach using historical-critical methods or they are synchronic approaches which are mainly interested in the content and meaning of the passage. These approaches generally lack a systematic description and investigation of the syntax and structure.

Second, studies analyzing the meaning of Dan 8:9-14 and its words and phrases

---

1In his own words, Gzella is “trying to consider the clues for interpretation furnished by the narrator himself and hence to avoid an a priori understanding of the vision as a historical allegory which provides a symbolic representation of the forces of particular history” (3).
(Hasel, 1986; Shea, 1986) only sparingly employ linguistic analysis, while the linguistic studies of the text (Hasslberger, 1977; Koch, 1983; Schweizer school in Bader, ed. 1994) lack comprehensive examination of the meaning of the passage. A commendable exception is Gzella’s analysis (2003). Third, against the background of the classification of text-oriented approaches presented above, it becomes evident that the studies which applied a text-oriented approach to Dan 8:9-14 can all be classified as linguistic approaches. Each of these linguistic studies of Dan 8 makes use of a specific methodological framework (developed by Richter, Koch, or Schweizer) and rigorously applies the selected framework to the text.

Fourth, specific contributions and deficiencies of the linguistic approaches hitherto undertaken have surfaced. Hasslberger’s dissertation certainly presents the most comprehensive syntactic and stylistic approach to the text of Dan 8:9-14 so far. However, he does not study the text synchronically, that is, the text as it stands, nor does he employ a comprehensive semantic analysis of 8:9-14. Koch’s analysis contributes mainly towards the structure of the text, but his linguistic analysis is selective, guided by his form-critical aim. The studies of the Schweizer school in particular enhance the level of understanding the form of 8:9-14, but leave some of the problem areas in this passage untouched. Gzella’s monograph offers numerous linguistic insights, particularly on the syntactic level and in reference to verbal syntax, that are significant for the understanding of 8:9-14, but it is not comprehensive enough and furthermore reduced in that it does not attempt to understand the meaning of the symbolic language.
Fifth, literary approaches to Dan 8 are largely missing. Though there are some traces of literary interpretation, they are based primarily on content and conceptual considerations. Again, an exception is Gzella's literary analysis which focuses on the thematic pattern as well, but also includes patterns in verbal syntax.

Sixth, no real systematic attempt to study and determine the intertextuality of Dan

---

8:9-14 has been undertaken so far.

Justification and Relevance

The above review confirms the specific need for a fresh, text-oriented approach to Dan 8:9-14, a study which comprises both a linguistic and literary analysis including an investigation of the semantic meaning of the passage. It is therefore worthwhile to study the text anew on a linguistic basis, allowing different linguistic approaches to bring their input to the text, and thus proceed from form to function. However, the linguistic analysis needs to be complemented by a literary analysis in order to fully recognize the different features of the text.

The significance of this study lies in the fact that a text-oriented analysis of Dan 8:9-14, that is, a linguistic and literary study inclusive of its intertextuality, is of vital importance for a proper understanding of this difficult passage and its actual words as well as its place and function in the book of Daniel. In addition, the procedure of analysis from form to function lays the necessary foundation for any theological interpretation of this passage.

Such a text-oriented approach of Dan 8:9-14 seems imperative and to date remains unachieved. It is especially significant in view of the fact that the majority of other than text-oriented approaches are more concerned with the meaning or content than with structure and form of the text.\(^1\) If this study is successful in providing such a text-

\(^1\)In this regard, Hassberger's comment from 1977 is still valid: “The examination of literature shows that often few or no reasons are given for held opinions. Most often the criticizing and propounding of hypotheses is based on content without analyzing the structure and form of the text. The weakness of the methods, which have been employed so far, is their fortuitousness. Thus, the
oriented analysis for this Danielic passage, it is hoped it would lend itself as a stimulus for future linguistic-literary and semantic investigations of passages in the book of Daniel and elsewhere.

**Methodology and Procedure**

**Methodological Considerations and Principles**

In the present text-oriented study I do not attempt to present an integration model of text-oriented approaches, which seems neither possible¹ nor desirable.² Rather this study makes eclectic use of different text-oriented approaches selecting those insights which appear to be best suitable for a text-oriented analysis of Dan 8:9-14.³ In fact, by results are to a large degree dependent on whether a scholar intuitively makes a remarkable observation and draws the right conclusions from it. By proceeding predominantly from the content the criteria for conclusions are often ambiguous and accidental" (xiii).

¹For example, the linguistic approach of Schweizer on the one hand and of Talstra on the other hand cannot possibly be integrated since Talstra stresses that contents can play a role in syntactic analysis whereas Schweizer analyzes a text strictly on a formal basis. Even for approaches which seem to be closer to each other, like Richter’s and Schweizer’s, it has to be said that an attempt at an integration model is futile. Cf. Rüdiger Bartelmus’s pertinent assessment of such an endeavor as “desperate” (review of *Methoden im Widerstreit*, by Oskar Dangl, *TZ* 52 [1996]: 271).

²Talstra’s well-grounded observation in his 1987 dissertation has not lost its force: “The intensification of the discussion between exegesis, grammatical inquiry, and general linguistics means that the door has been opened for various experiments after the example of as many linguistic schools. One might fear that the exegetes, too, will regroup under the banner of French structuralism, German ‘Sprachinhaltsforschung,’ or Anglo-American generative grammar, or be wholly guided by the movements in literary theory grafted on the various linguistic schools. In any case it is by no means the time to ask for a consensus” (*Solomon’s Prayer*, 11).

³The eclectic approach favored here involves only methods from the field of text-oriented approaches. However, as L. C. Jonker points out, if a “‘super method’ is created by amalgamating the ‘strong’ points of every available exegetical strategy” (emphasis mine), “such a methodological integration would be too subjective and would deny the plurality of existing approaches” (“Reading Jonah Multidimensionally,” 2). Similarly, P. Joyce warns that “a lazy eclecticism” between the historical-critical approach and alternative approaches does not work (“First Among Equals?,” 17, 21). In this respect the conclusion reached by C. R. Holladay, which he originally applied to the different contemporary methods of reading the Bible, can be used in a more limited way to express the
not presenting or promoting a specific linguistic or literary theory it may be said that the role of the language itself in the exegetical process is highlighted.

The three different avenues in text-oriented approaches (linguistic, literary, and canonical) are incorporated in the present study, and their contributions to exegesis commend themselves. The linguistic approach comprises the grammatical-syntactic and semantic analysis, the literary approach consists of the stylistic analysis and structural analysis, and the canonical approach surfaces in the intertextual study of Dan 8:9-14.

Since the present approach is text-oriented, the focus is on the text of Dan 8:9-14 as it stands, which will be the MT, and there will be no attempt at an independent diachronic study of this passage. In other words, this study is basically a synchronic analysis of Dan 8:9-14.1 Thereby the value of a diachronic study is not at all relation of the present text-oriented approach to other text-oriented approaches: "The way forward is to be more modest and recognize both the possibilities and the limitations of different approaches, and to recognize knowledge and experience in many methods and approaches. Actual interpretation will involve a combination of approaches" ("Contemporary Methods of Reading the Bible," 149).

1The distinction between synchrony and the diachrony in modern general linguistics goes back to Ferdinand de Saussure's groundbreaking *Cours de linguistique générale* in 1915 (*Course in General Linguistics*, ed. C. Bally and A. Sechehaye, trans. W. Baskin [New York: Philosophical Library, 1959], 101-190). Although originally in general linguistics synchrony and diachrony have been used with a wider meaning, in biblical studies "synchronic" refers to the description of a text as a whole in its given shape without historical considerations, whereas "diachronic" refers to studies of the text according to its historical genesis. Jacob Hoftijzer therefore avoids the terms "diachronic" and "synchronic" and uses instead "compositional/redactional" and "holistic/structural" ("Holistic or Compositional Approach? Linguistic Remarks to the Problem," in *Synchronic or Diachronic? A Debate on Method in Old Testament Exegesis*, ed. J. C. de Moor, OtSt, no. 34 [Leiden: Brill, 1995], 98). The question whether biblical exegesis should pursue either synchronic or diachronic analysis, or should use both approaches complementarily or in an unrelated manner is much debated and lies at the heart of the discussions about exegetical methods. In short, exegetes using a text-oriented approach do not necessarily discard a diachronic analysis. After much debate most scholars seem to consent theoretically that both historical criticism and literary criticism, respectively diachronic analysis and synchronic analysis, are needed, though there are still voices who prefer the one over the other. Generally it is held that the synchronic description has an "operational priority" (Robert M. Polzin, *Moses and the Deuteronomist: A Literary Study of the Deuteronomic History*, pt. 1, Deuteronomy,
Joshua, Judges [New York: Seabury, 1980], 2, 6) over the diachronic, and that such an order of analysis is "irreversible" (Wolfgang Schenk, "Die Aufgaben der Exegese," 888). Talstra explains that "the point is not that the synchrony is fundamentally privileged above the diachrony. The operational priority of the synchronic analysis means only that one first reads a text as a whole, as a unity, in an attempt to establish the structure of meaning of the whole and the contributions of the constituent parts of the text to the total meaning. Then comes the diachronic question of whether all the constituent parts of the text presupposes the same time and situation of origin" (Solomon’s Prayer, 83-84; cf. 18-20). This means that "the synchronic analysis must always precede the diachronic one; in fact a diachronic analysis cannot do without a synchronic one. On the other hand . . . a synchronic analysis does not need to be supplied with a diachronic analysis, for it can quite suffice to understand the message of the text at hand without settling the question of its origin" (Christoph Dohmen, "Das Zelt außerhalb des Lagers: Exodus 33,7-11 zwischen Synchronie und Diachronie," in Textarbeit: Studien zu Texten und ihre Rezeption aus dem Alten Testament und der Umwelt Israels, Festschrift für Peter Weimar zur Vollendung seines 60. Lebensjahres, ed. K. Kiesow and T. Meurer, AOAT, no. 294 [Münster: Ugarit, 2003], 168). Uwe F. W. Bauer elaborates in his habilitation, which focuses on the synchronic approach, on the reason why the synchronic approach does not have only operational priority but also qualitative priority, which basically involves the communicative function of the text: the author(s)/redactor(s) obviously regarded the final text, which is "a literary work sui generis," as communicatively understandable for its intended readers ("Warum nur übertretet ihr SEIN Geheiß!": Eine synchrone Exegese der Anti-Erzählung von Richter 17-18, BEATAJ, no. 45 [Frankfurt am Main: Lang, 1998], 35-40). This communicative function of the final text "cannot be claimed in the same measure for hypothetic literal or oral pre-stages of a text, because in most cases they can be reconstructed only partially, and therefore they should be regarded as only limited communicative" (36-37). "Another argument for the priority of synchrony is that biblical texts have to be read contextual" (37). Bauer upholds that a text is only fully communicative if it is read as a text integrated into the larger final text created by the author(s). Hypothetical reconstructions do not have such a contextual quality (37-39). For the ongoing discussion between the relation of diachronic and synchronic study as well as between historical criticism and text-oriented approaches see also, e.g., Robert M. Polzin, "Literary and Historical Criticism of the Bible: A Crisis in Scholarship," in Orientation by Disorientation: Studies in Literary Criticism and Biblical Literary Criticism, Presented in Honor of William A. Beardslee, ed. R. A. Spencer, PTMS, no. 35 (Pittsburgh: Pickwick, 1980), 99-114; idem, Moses and the Deuteronomist, 1-9; Alonso Schökel, “Of Methods and Models,” 3-13; Meir Sternberg, The Poetics of Biblical Narrative: Ideological Literature and the Drama of Reading (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1985), 11-23; Suzanne Boorer, “The Importance of a Diachronic Approach: The Case of Genesis-Kings,” CBQ 51 (1989): 195-208; Bruce K. Waltke and Michael O’Connor, An Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1990), 11-15; Paul R. Noble, “Synchronic and Diachronic Approaches to Biblical Interpretation,” Journal of Literature and Theology 7 (1993): 130-148 (cf. The Canonical Approach, 159-170); Barton, “Historical Criticism and Literary Interpretation,” 3-15; Joyce, “First Among Equals?” 17-27; Daniel Marguerat, “L’exégèse biblique: éclatement ou renouveau?” FoiVie 93, no. 3 (July 1994): 7-24; Ferdinand E. Deist, ‘On ‘Synchronic’ and ‘Diachronic’: wie es eigentlich gewesen,“ JNSL 21 (1995): 37-48; the essays in Synchronic or Diachronic? A Debate on Method in Old Testament Exegesis, ed. J. C. de Moor (Leiden: Brill, 1995), esp. James Barr, “The Synchronic, the Diachronic and the Historical: A Triangular Relationship?” 1-14; John Barton, “What Is a Book? Modern Exegesis and the Literary Conventions of Ancient Israel,” in Intertextuality in Ugarit and Israel: Papers Read at the Tenth Joint Meeting of the Society for Old Testament Study and Het Oudtestamentisch.
called into question, of course with the condition that "such an analysis can produce results that are more than merely hypothetical."1

Regarding the methodological procedure the exegetical approach chosen should strive to be as intersubjectively testable as possible. Research in biblical exegesis lives certainly by intuition and by conclusions derived at from numerous observations. It is, however, vital that researchers exert themselves to make their exegetical findings "communicable, understandable, and verifiable."2 Hence the exegetical results and the procedure that led to them need to be submitted to intersubjective verification, which is best carried out by means of the text at hand.3 For this purpose an approach is required

---

1David M. Howard, Jr., The Structure of Psalms 93-100, Biblical and Judaic Studies from the University of California, San Diego, no. 5 (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1997), 24.


3According to Werner H. Schmidt the variety of exegetical approaches has not done away with the necessity for a common exegetical task and the need to find exegetical insights that can be shared by scholars. For Schmidt the latter can only be attained by "committing oneself back to the text" (Rückbindung an den Text). Therefore, "observations rooted in the text—as against opinions or theories—have to be granted priority above all" ("Zur Theologie und Hermeneutik des Alten Testaments: Erinnerungen und Erwägungen zur Exegese," EvT 62 [2002]: 17-18, cf. 21).
(1) which avoids extra-textual influences, (2) in which the criteria according to which conclusions are reached are explicitly described, and (3) of which the results are consequently intersubjectively verifiable.

The approach adopted in this study is a form-to-function approach which initially starts with what is concretely presented in Dan 8:9-14, namely the graphemes of the MT and via several steps of analysis finally takes the entire text into view. A linguistic analysis treats all the surface structure features of the text and follows a bottom-up process, that is, the study of syntax precedes the study of semantics and the literary study. For that reason the text in Dan 8:9-14 is investigated on the basis of linguistic analysis since linguistic approaches rightly claim to work with the text at hand. The semantic study comes after the syntactic analysis because the semantic meaning of the text builds on the verifiable results of the lower levels of linguistic description. Furthermore, the linguistic analysis precedes the literary analysis because the literary study uses the

1 For the researcher this also means to approach the text with "passionate dispassionateness" (Kaiser, 507).


3 For the levels of linguistic analysis used in general linguistics see John Lyons, *Introduction to Theoretical Linguistics* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1968); and idem, *Semantics*, 2 vols. (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1977), 2:373-378. Lyons distinguishes at least three levels: the phonological, the syntactic, and the semantic, with the possible extension by the morphological level as bridge between phonology and syntax in particular languages (ibid., 373). For different levels of linguistic description of Biblical Hebrew and the relation between syntax and semantics see, e.g., Richter, *Grundlagen einer althebräischen Grammatik*, 1:14-21. Richter identifies four hierarchical linguistic layers: morphological, morphosyntactic, syntactic, and semantic.

linguistic data of the text in order to produce results in a more controlled way.\footnote{In view of the fact that in the recent resurgence of rhetorical criticism, structural/stylistic studies tend to be arbitrary in using linguistic data in the text, thus producing divergent results, one should remember that a more controlled treatment of the linguistic data arises from a general linguistic analysis prior to a rhetorical/stylistic analysis” (Daniel Hojoon Ryou, Zephaniah’s Oracles against the Nations: A Synchronic and Diachronic Study of Zephaniah 2:1-3:8, BIS, no. 13 [Leiden: Brill, 1995], 5-6). Talstra warns against the “circularity of the argumentation present in explanations of the text that skip over grammatical details and proceed from assumptions on ‘deliberate design’ or ‘author’s compositional skills’” (“Tense, Mood, Aspect,” 95; cf. also Kim, 116).}

It is important to note that there exists an interdependence between the different levels of linguistic analysis, which is mainly significant for the syntactic and the semantic analysis.\footnote{Talstra points out that “in linguistic communication syntactic and semantic levels co-operate and do not function mutually independently. This also implies a procedure which analyzes from the formal to the functional aspects of a text” (“Text Grammar and Hebrew Bible. II,” 38, emphasis his).} Form and function are essentially complementary, not contradictory. The same phenomenon of interdependence is true for the two steps of synchronic analysis, namely the linguistic and the literary analysis. Methodologically, they are “complementary and compatible.”\footnote{Ryou, 6.} Syntactic, semantic, and literary studies are therefore each not “naked” in themselves, but stand in close relation to each other, mutually influencing each other.

One needs also to bear in mind that decisions on higher textual levels may guide or may even necessitate reconsideration of decisions on lower levels, which means that the semantic analysis may influence or add data to the analyses of lower linguistic levels; for example, it may provide help for syntactic decisions. “The consideration of content is already necessary when the surface structure of signs is described, so that content cannot be ignored in the grammar.”\footnote{Richter, Grundlagen einer althebräischen Grammatik, 1:11.} A formal analysis without ever looking to semantics or
textlinguistics is not desirable.¹

At this juncture, comment on the position of the semantic analysis in the order of exegetical steps in this study is appropriate. It is clear that the semantic analysis is part of the larger linguistic analysis of a text. However, one needs to ask at what time exactly it should be undertaken in the exegetical process. Generally three possible locations of the semantic analysis in a synchronic approach have been suggested and are available to the exegete: the semantic analysis can follow the syntactic analysis as a separate section,² or the semantic analysis can be built into the syntactic analysis (but not the other way around),³ or the semantic analysis is split and is undertaken on different text levels as lexical semantics, clause/sentence semantics, and text semantics.⁴ In this study the interplay between syntax and semantics, between literary texture and semantics, as well as between intertextuality and semantics is acknowledged and is recognized in several places. The analysis of semantics applied to different linguistic levels best describes the


²So, e.g., Schweizer (Metaphorische Grammatik; Biblische Texte verstehen) and Rechenmacher (Jungfrau, Tochter Babel).

³Talstra (Solomon’s Prayer, 18). So, e.g., Talstra, Solomon’s Prayer, 83-170; and Bauer, “Warum nur übertretet ihr SEIN Geheiß!” 175-414.

methodology used in the actual research. Nevertheless, the semantic analysis is presented as being part of the linguistic analysis to show the close interrelatedness of syntax and semantics and to accommodate the reader by placing the different analyses of meaning of words, phrases, and clauses conveniently at the same location where the syntax of these entities is discussed. This should not distract from the fact that literary and intertextual considerations play a definite role in determining the meaning of words, sentences, and texts.

A final word on methodological principles has to be said regarding the previously identified pitfalls and dangers of text-oriented approaches (cf. above). In order to avoid those pitfalls the following principles are consciously adopted:

First, the use of metalanguage has been restricted to a minimum level. Metalanguage is used solely to enhance clarity and exactness, secure verifiability, and when a significant contribution is made.

Second, unnecessary detail has been avoided. Although during the research all the linguistic data were taken into consideration, a minutely detailed analysis is not presented, unless real enhancement for the understanding of the text can be achieved in this way.¹ I try to follow Alonso Schökel's aphorism on biblical scholarship: "Share the fruit, not the sweat."²

Third, it has to be clearly pointed out that by using a text-oriented approach,

¹Cf. Kim, 121: "we should remember the danger of obsession with linguistic structures 'as an end in themselves'" (emphasis his).

²This practical advice by Alonso Schökel is recorded in Trible, *Rhetorical Criticism*, 106.
which naturally is synchronic, other readings of biblical texts—often diachronic—are by no means downgraded. No exclusive claim is made that the exegetical method employed here is the only permissible procedure for reading the text of Dan 8:9-14. Yet it cannot be overlooked that these other approaches are not text-oriented in nature and thus do not study the text as it is.

And fourth, relations between texts are proposed only on the basis of controls which are explicitly stated in order to avoid overinterpretation. These controls are presented in the section on intertextuality.

Delimitations

This research has a number of delimitations, of which some have already been mentioned. Only the text of Dan 8:9-14 is dealt with in linguistic detail. The texts and passages which show intertextual relations to Dan 8:9-14 are dealt with only insofar as

---

1 On exclusivity in exegetical praxis see Jonker, *Exclusivity and Variety*, 31-35. It is important to distinguish between upholding one's exegetical procedures and the claim that one's exegesis is the only correct one: "It is of course clear that every exegete will (of necessity) emphasize the value, and need to consider the results, of his/her own specialization area in exegetical praxis. Exclusivism, however, develops when the exegete claims (consciously or unconsciously) that his/her specialization area is the only key to the correct exegesis of a text" (32-33).

2 Rendtorff points to the inadequacy of diachronic approaches for the exegesis of the text itself: "Yet one should distinguish those investigations [reconstructions of Israelite history by the diachronic concept of exegesis] from exegesis or interpretation of biblical texts themselves. I am, however, highly distrustful of the traditional Literarkritik so far as it leads to a production of texts. The subject of any interpretation has to be first and foremost the given text of the Hebrew Bible" ("Between Historical Criticism and Holistic Interpretation," 300, emphasis his). Similarly, from a linguistic viewpoint Talstra argues "that a consistent formal approach is more fruitful both for grammatical and literary analysis of biblical texts, than a grammatical model that is largely dependent on interpretation and psychological speculation concerning an author's mind and purposes" ("Text Grammar and Hebrew Bible. I," 174). And from a literary viewpoint, Fokkelman depicts the literary approach as "a new paradigm whose underpinnings are an intersubjective hermeneutics" and as "an independent discipline that pursues intrinsic studies of the texts and respects their nature as an object sui generis" ("Is the Literary Approach to the Bible a New Paradigm?" 20).
they have significance for the text under consideration. An exhaustive exegesis of those passages is not attempted.

A full-blown text-critical analysis of Dan 8:9-14, which would pay attention to all available manuscripts and versions and to the numerous scholarly suggestions regarding this passage, is not undertaken.

The text of Dan 8:9-14 is studied synchronically. A diachronic reading is not the focus here, though the study of the theological implications of the passage may ultimately recognize historical developments in theological thought.

Any interpretation which goes beyond the immediate textual or intertextual meaning of Dan 8:9-14 is not addressed because the primary focus of the exegetical interpretation is on the final text itself. Accordingly, the theological significance of words and phrases is discussed only insofar as the textual and intertextual study determines its need.

Procedure

The point of departure will be the text in its canonical form, that is, the MT. After the text is briefly demarcated, a working translation and a syntactic-structural outline of the text are provided at the beginning in order to facilitate the subsequent analyses.

Next the linguistic analysis comprises grammatical-syntactic analyses and semantic analyses. The syntax of Dan 8:9-14 is described, and specific syntactic features

---

1This study therefore clearly differs in nature from studies focusing on the interpretative meaning of Dan 8:9-14, such as Reuben Lynn Hilde, "An Exegesis of the Little Horn of Daniel 8" (M.A. thesis, Seventh-day Adventist Theological Seminary, 1953).
are dealt with. The description follows the different levels of words, word groups, and clauses. Since text-critical issues are involved in a number of interpretations of 8:9-14, it is necessary to deal at least briefly with some of them. On the semantic level, the role and meaning of the relevant terminology within 8:9-14 is determined by syntagmatic (contextual) and paradigmatic (semantic field, synonyms) relations as well as by philological studies. At this stage the results of the intertextual analysis, that is, the texts in lexical and thematic relation to 8:9-14, often provide vital data for the semantic study. After the meanings of words and word groups have been determined, it is also possible to examine the meanings of the sentences and their relation to each other.

The literary analysis investigates the text for rhetorical, stylistic, and structural devices and how they contribute to the dynamics and structure of the text. It needs to be determined whether significant parts or the whole of Dan 8:9-14 should be characterized as either prose or poetry. Semantic isotopies and relevant words and phrases are then identified according to the syntactic-literary structure of the passage. Finally, the literary structure is outlined and commented on.

The intertextual study focuses on the lexical and thematic links of Dan 8:9-14 with other parts of the book of Daniel. Every occurrence of the lexemes of this passage in other places in Daniel is noted. A “word/word group concordance” of the vocabulary of 8:9-14 in the book of Daniel is constructed, which by specified factors will help to determine the intertextual relations of 8:9-14 on the lexical and thematic levels. The texts obtained on the basis of intertextual relations are examined for syntactic, structural, or semantic data which could be of importance for the understanding of 8:9-14.
Both the literary and intertextual analysis contribute to the theological understanding of the whole passage. Theological themes present in Dan 8:9-14 are identified in both sections, and the import of this text for those themes is outlined.

**Principal Textual Witnesses of Daniel 8:9-14**

Before I focus the linguistic study on the MT, a brief overview of the principal textual witnesses of Dan 8:9-14, their main features, and their relationship to each other places the MT in its textual environment. I will not provide a discussion of the relation of these witnesses for the entire book of Daniel, but rather concentrate on the passage under investigation. The main textual witnesses for Dan 8:9-14 are the same as those for the entire book of Daniel and comprise the Hebrew (Masoretic Text, Qumran), Greek (Old Greek, Theodotion), Syriac (Peshitta) and Latin text (Vulgate). There was no Targum made of the book of Daniel.

The primary and most complete witness of the Hebrew text of Dan 8:9-14 is the Masoretic Text (MT) of the Leningrad Codex B 19 A, dated 1008 or 1009 C.E., which is the base of the BHS.¹ For Dan 8:9-14 the text of the Keter Yerushalayim or the Jerusalem Crown, which is the reconstructed text of the Aleppo Codex, is identical to the one of the Leningrad codex.² This dissertation follows the MT of the Leningrad Codex for the MT

---


²The Aleppo Codex produced by the Masorete Aharon ben Asher remains the oldest complete manuscript of the Hebrew Bible. However, as a result of the burning of the scroll on December 1, 1947, among other parts the book of Daniel has been lost. The Keter Yerushalayim is based on the Aleppo Codex and related manuscripts, following the text and editorial principles formulated by Rabbi Mordechai Breuer (*Jerusalem Crown: The Bible of the Hebrew University of Jerusalem* [Jerusalem: Ben-Zvi; Basel: Karger, 2000]; see also the photographic facsimile edition:...
is the received text of the Hebrew Bible, it is the only fully preserved Hebrew text, it represents a text tradition that was the dominant text form among Palestinian Jews in the last two centuries B.C.E., and it is generally accepted as the basis for biblical study and interpretation in Jewish and Christian communities.¹

Among the manuscripts of Qumran, eight fragmentary Daniel manuscripts have been found. Only two or three of these cover some text material of Dan 8: 4QDan⁴ preserves Dan 8:1-5, and 4QDan⁶ covers Dan 8:1-8 and 8:13-16, and Pap6QDan might show 8:16-17 and 8:20-21.² This means that for the text under investigation only 4QDan⁵ is of importance since it covers portions of 8:13-14.³ 4QDan⁶ is dated on paleographic analysis in the first half of the first century C.E., ca. 20-50 C.E.⁴

In general, the Danielic fragments at Qumran show only a few variants, mostly orthographic, phonological or morphological.⁵ As is well known, 4QDana and 4QDanb

Moshe H. Goshen-Gottstein, ed., The Aleppo Codex [Jerusalem: Magnes, 1976]). The missing portions have been carefully reconstructed from external sources that provide information about the Aleppo Codex, by the scrutiny of its remaining parts for evidence about those that are missing, and by a comparison with related manuscripts.


³In fact, fragment 18 ii shows nine words of Dan 8:13-14.


⁵A good summary of the status quaestiones of the Qumran manuscripts of Daniel, listing all the textual variants and evaluating their significance in regard to the textual history of Daniel, is provided by Eugene Ulrich, “The Text of Daniel in the Qumran Scrolls,” in The Book of Daniel:
align with the MT. 4QDan⁴ agrees in orthography with the MT against the fuller spelling of 4QDan⁵, but with respect to textual variants 4QDan⁴ and 4QDan⁵ almost always agree against the MT."¹ That 4QDan⁵ tends toward plene script is seen in the preserved passage of Dan 8:13-14. In these verses 4QDan⁵ is next to identical to the MT, which means that there are no textual variants; the only orthographic variants being שֵׁדֶד instead of שֵׁדֶד in vs. 13c (Frg. 18 ii 2) and שֵׁדֶד instead of שֵׁדֶד in vs. 14c (Frg. 18 ii 3). The close relation of the MT and the Qumran fragments of Daniel testifies to the antiquity of the textual tradition of the MT, including the consonantal text of Dan 8:13-14."²

There is a Yemenite Daniel manuscript (Y) that probably dates from the fourteenth century."³ The consonantal text corresponds to MT. The Babylonian vocalization at times supposedly reflects a textual tradition different from the Tiberian.

The text-critical value of Y is however doubtful, since the Tiberian tradition of biblical

---


²Armin Schmitt concludes his comparative study of Daniel manuscripts at Qumran and the MT with the observation that "all in all" the Qumran fragments of the book of Daniel present "already " proto-Masoretic" text form. This designates a Hebrew/Aramaic consonantal text which is pre-Masoretic, but essentially identical to the MT. Such demonstrates once more that the tradition of the MT goes way back before the time of the Masoretes" ("Die Danieltexte aus Qumran und der masoretische Text [M],," in Der Gegenwart verpflichtet: Studien zur biblischen Literatur des Frühjudentums, BZAW, no. 292 [Berlin: de Gruyter, 2000], 134).

Aramaic has to be regarded as older than the Babylonian tradition of biblical Aramaic.\(^1\)

For Dan 8:9-14, Y shows only three orthographic variants: In 8:9a it vocalizes מָשְׁלֵה instead of מָשְׁלֶה כֶּדָּר, in 8:11b it reads מָשְׁלֵה כֶּדָּר, and in 8:13c and 14c it reads מָשְׁלֵה instead of מָשְׁלֶה כֶּדָּר.

Two main Greek versions exist of Daniel: Old Greek and Theodotion.\(^2\) In church usage, the original translation, the Old Greek, was replaced by Theodotion. There are three principal textual witnesses of the Old Greek.\(^3\) The first is the pre-Hexaplaric Chester-Beatty papyrus 967 which dates ca. 200 C.E. and is considered to be the oldest textual witness of the Old Greek. The arrangement of chapters deviates from the familiar one in that chaps. 7 and 8 are placed before chaps. 5 and 6.\(^4\) The text itself shows an unusual orthography and a number of spelling mistakes. The other two OG witnesses are Hexaplaric manuscripts: Codex 88, also called “Codex Chisianus,” from the tenth century C.E., and the Syrohexapla (Syh) which Paul of Tella produced early in the seventh century C.E.\(^5\) Both Codex Chisianus and Syh go back to Origen’s Hexapla and are

\(^1\) Morag, xv.

\(^2\) The Greek translations of Aquila and Symmachus reflect the MT type.


\(^4\) The editio princeps to Dan 5-12 is Angelo Geißn, ed., Der Septuaginta-Text des Buches Daniel, Kap. 5-12, zusammen mit Susanna, Bel et Draco, sowie Esther Kap. 1, 1a-2, 15 nach dem Kölner Teil des Papyrus 967, Papyrologische Texte und Abhandlungen, no. 5 (Bonn: Habelt, 1968).

\(^5\) Manuscript 88 was first published by Simon de Magistris, ed., Daniel secundum septuaginta: ex tetrapsis Origenis (Rome: Typis Propagandae Fidei, 1772). The Syh is preserved in the facsimile A. M. Ceriani, ed., Codex syro-hexaplaris Ambrosianus, Monumenta sacra et profana,
reliable witnesses to the Hexaplaric recension with the typical asterisks and obeli and the rearrangement of the Greek word order to follow the Hebrew word order. Most of these corrections are to bring the Greek text into conformity with the Hebrew text type represented by the MT.

A second version of the Greek Daniel is called Theodotion because it was erroneously ascribed to Theodotion in the second half of the second century C.E. Usually a pre-Christian “proto-Theodotion” or kaige recension is postulated. Since very early Theodotion replaced the Old Greek, Theodotion is amply attested in the manuscripts.¹ The relationship between Old Greek and Theodotion and their role in the textual history of Daniel is somewhat debated.² For example, for Dan 8:1-10 Theodotion

¹For textual witnesses of Theodotion see Ziegler, ed., Susanna, Daniel, Bel et Draco, 2d ed., 121-129 (Greek manuscripts and citations by early Greek church fathers), 142-146 (Origen’s Hexaplaric recension), 146-150 (Lucianic recension), 172-214 (an addendum by D. Fraenkel on the new fragmentary textual witnesses to Theodotion).

is regarded as a revision of the Old Greek in light of an earlier MT type\(^1\) or as a translation of its own.\(^2\)

For Dan 8 the Vorlage of the Old Greek is close to the text of the MT type,\(^3\) and Theodotion is close to both the MT, with some interesting variants, and to the Old Greek. A comparison of the Old Greek and the MT for Dan 8:9-14 shows that the Old Greek has a few minuses, one major plus (in 8:11c), and a number of different word choices. A comparison of Theodotion and the MT for Dan 8:9-14 shows the same results.\(^4\) The characteristics of the Old Greek in Dan 8 are its idiomatic Greek, short expansions and brief explanatory glosses, whereas Theodotion reproduces the Hebrew Vorlage more literally, and in comparison with the Old Greek it simplifies and is less idiomatic.\(^5\)

The Syrian Peshitta of Daniel\(^6\) is based on a text that was very similar to the MT. It shows in some instances influence from Theodotion, but little influence from the Old

---

\(^1\)Jeansonne, 56-57.


\(^3\)Jeansonne argues that the Old Greek for Dan 7-12 renders accurately the Hebrew Vorlage, which is not necessarily the MT text type. For her, the translator felt free to add, and errors are mostly technical and not due to theological Tendenz (131-133). For Dan 2-7 a similar conclusion is reached by Meadowcroft who states that the Old Greek in these chapters has a Vorlage that predates the MT, although he allows for intentional choices of the translator that reveal a particular viewpoint (*Aramaic Daniel and Greek Daniel*, 262-263). In Dan 4-6 the Old Greek differs widely from the MT type so that one might suspect that the Old Greek used a different Vorlage for these chapters.


\(^5\)See Gzella, 52-57.

\(^6\)The standard text is “Daniel and Bel and the Dragon,” prepared by the Peshitta Institute on the basis of material collected and studied by Th. Sprey, in *Vetus Testamentum syriace: iuxta simplicem syrorum versionem*, pt. 3, fasc. 4, *Dodekapropheton—Daniel-Bel-Draco* (Leiden: Brill, 1980).
Greek. The Syriac translation of Dan 8:9-14 is a fairly literal translation. A comparison with the MT shows that for Dan 8 the Peshitta contains some interpretative glosses (vss. 5, 7, 8, 20, 21), but 8:9-14 does not show any pluses, only two minuses. The Syriac also has four interesting word choices, four alterations in words, one substitution, and two additional uses of conjunction in 8:9-14.

For the Latin Vulgate (ca. 383-405 C.E.) Jerome used a Hebrew Vorlage for his translation of the Old Testament which was almost identical with the MT. In Dan 8:9-14 the Vulgate represents a fairly literal translation of the MT type.

There are a number of other versions of Daniel, usually daughter translations of the Greek text, but they have almost no text-critical value on their own.

---


2 The results are based on the analysis of the relationship of the Syriac to the Hebrew in Dan 8 undertaken by R. A. Taylor, The Peshitta of Daniel, 211-230. The gloss which Taylor locates “before” vs. 9—“Antiochus Epiphanes; the four servants of Alexander, son of Philip, who ruled after his death” (219)—could as well be located at the end of vs. 8. The minuses of the Syriac in 8:9-14 are that the mem prefix on נhiroע (vs. 9a) is not represented and the phrase נלוות (vs. 9b) is absent.

3 Word choices: נל"מ “the holy” for תונ in vs. 12b, הכנ "transgress” for בושי in vs. 12c, נל"מ “justify” for תונ and נל"מ “the right” for " in vs. 14c. Alterations in words: Plural for the singular נ in vs. 11a, perfect for the imperfect נ in vs. 12a (cf. OG, Theodotion, Vulgate), active for the passive נ in vs. 11c (cf. Vulgate), and passive for the active נ in vs. 12b (cf. OG, Theodotion). Substitution: מ" to him” instead of מ" to me” in vs. 14a (cf. OG, Theodotion, Vulgate). Additional uses of conjunction: before נלוות in vs. 10b and before נלוות in vs. 13c.


In sum, the textual witnesses of Dan 8:9-14 show that the MT corroborated by 4QDan and Papyrus 967 presents the best base for a textual analysis of Dan 8.

Discussions of text-critical questions for Dan 8:9-14 are placed at their specific verse locations in the linguistic analysis (chapter 2), for the text-critical study is interdependent with the linguistic study and both must proceed together. The following text-critical questions will be dealt with in particular: the phrase מִן םִּירָא וִיה and its gender (8:9a), נָבִי and its gender (8:9a), text-critical emendations for מְשַׁפְתָּא הָאָדָם (8:9a) and נְבֵצָא (8:9b), the question of ketib (Hiphil דֶּנְה) or qere (Hophal רַכְבֵּ֣דָה) of the verb in 8:11b, the complex text-critical issues of vss. 12a and 13c, לְאֵ֣כַך or לְאֵ֣כַךְ (8:14a), and the versions of נְבֵצָא (8:14c). The text-critical study is limited to the attested variants, and scholarly conjectures without any base in the versions will be regarded with due hesitancy.

1 Moshe Greenberg illustrates this: "To avoid premature text-alteration, exegesis and text-criticism must proceed together, each illuminating the other. The exegete, whose task is to interpret text in hand, must work on the hypothesis that every element in his texts has significance—contributes to the meaning of its context. Only such a hypothesis keeps him alert to discover significance and design if it is there, and he will cling to it until he is baffled (at which point he may be inclined to think that some flaw exists in the text). While he notes the particulars of the versions, his focus is the MT, not because it is the best or oldest, but because it is the only complete text of the Hebrew Bible, and only through it can sound exegesis, interpreting the Hebrew by the Hebrew, be achieved" ("The Use of Ancient Versions for Understanding the Hebrew Text: A Sampling from Ezek II,1-III,11," in Congress Volume: Göttingen 1977, VTSS, no. 29 [Leiden: Brill, 1978], 147).

2 For the text-critical study the standard editions of the different versions are consulted. Helpful is Klaus Koch and Martin Rösel, Polyglottensynopse zum Buch Daniel (Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener Verlag, 2000).

3 Berlin advises against suggesting conjectures too quickly: "Emendations reflect the exegesis of the emender; emendation is the process of rewriting the text to make it say what the exegete thinks it meant to say or should have said" (Zephaniah, 25).
CHAPTER 2

LINGUISTIC ANALYSIS

The linguistic analysis is the essential foundation of a text-oriented approach. While dealing with the form of the text at hand and studying its various linguistic features, it also provides valuable data for further steps of analysis (literary, intertextual, theological) and therefore occupies a crucial place in the synchronic study of a text.

The linguistic description of the text in this study, the Masoretic text of Dan 8:9-14, comprises four parts. First, the delimitation of the text is a necessary starting point. This is primarily achieved by paying attention to linguistic features of the text, but literary structural features need to be taken into consideration also.

Second, the text of Dan 8:9-14 is divided into clauses and a working translation is provided. Both facilitate the subsequent analyses. In particular, the clause designations facilitate the referencing system and help it to be more precise. All further discussions of Dan 8:9-14 use these clause designations. The clause delimitation and the working translation are preliminary insofar as the linguistic clause analysis needs to first produce the relevant results that allow for this second step.

The third part of the linguistic description is the clause analysis which consists mainly of two components: a grammatical-syntactic analysis of each clause and the
analysis of the meaning of specific words, phrases, and clauses. The primary emphasis is on the syntactic features of the text as the syntax is "regarded as a main entrance to the text."¹ The morphosyntactic features and the syntactic functions of words and phrases are described, sentence types are noted, and special attention is given to the syntactic intricacies of the text. Basically, this part of the linguistic analysis is a syntactic commentary on Dan 8:9-14. The second component of the clause analysis is lexical semantics, the description of the meaning of words and phrases, as well as the meaning of clauses. This semantic analysis is not presented as a separate part after the syntactic description (which without doubt would be a possible location), but rather is incorporated into the analysis of the individual clauses. Inasmuch as the meaning of a word or phrase is, sometimes closely, interrelated to its syntactic features and function in the clause, and the semantic description often naturally follows the syntactic observations or even intersects with it, the semantic description is in my opinion best placed within the clause analysis. Thus, each clause is first described syntactically and then, if necessary, a semantic description of specific words and phrases, or of the clause itself, follows.

Several methodological problems can complicate the semantic study of words and phrases, especially those that occur quite often in the Hebrew Bible and have a wide range of meanings (e.g., the verb הָנָה, or the nouns הָנָה and שָׁנָה): (1) reducing the multivalence of a term to a more manageable sameness and thereby leveling different nuances the term may have, even in the specific text under investigation; (2) privileging one conceptual framework at the expense of others, for example, the tendency to

¹Ryou, 73.
understand פֶּרֶס only by the concept of forensic justification but not as functioning in a relational framework; (3) extracting terms from their literary contexts and placing them in another interpretative framework; and (4) uncritically importing notions from the interpretative framework into the biblical milieu. The foremost principle in avoiding these difficulties and thus to reach an accurate understanding of a term is the careful analysis of the same term in its specific context. Therefore, the different semantic analyses in this chapter will always attempt to pay close attention to the use of the terms in Dan 8:9-14 and beyond that in the book of Daniel, while at the same time avoid neglecting their semantic range as found in the rest of the Hebrew Bible, which, of course, further illuminates the understanding of these terms in Dan 8:9-14.

Fourth, the analysis of the inter-clausal relationships within a text by means of clause types, as well as the analysis of the information structure by paying attention to the word order, helps in understanding the text-linguistic dynamics of Dan 8:9-14.

**Delimitation of the Text**

Any delimitation of a text is by its nature already part of a structural description of that text. Simply to determine the beginning and the end of a text contributes inevitably to the structural understanding of it. Without anticipating the structural analysis presented in chapter 3, a justification will be given at this point as to why vss. 9 to 14 in Dan 8 are considered a text unit that can be examined in its own right.

---

1Leclerc has pointed out these difficulties and illustrated them in the light of a semantic study of יְשָׁרָאָת “justice” (Thomas L. Leclerc, *Yahweh Is Exalted in Justice: Solidarity and Conflict in Isaiah* [Minneapolis: Fortress, 2001], 7-8).
The main reason for me to start the text-oriented analysis with vs. 9 and end it with vs. 14 is the focus of these verses on the horn as main actor. It is introduced in the *x-qatal* clause in vs. 9a, which after the *wayyiqtol* in vs. 8c interrupts the textual flow, and in all clauses in vss. 9-11 the horn is the subject (in vs. 11c the logical subject). Not once are the he-goat, the great horn, or the four [horns] mentioned in these verses, except, perhaps, for the introductory בַּלָּתְיָהוֹן הָרִאשֹׁנָה in vs. 9a, which will receive special attention in the linguistic analysis. As the central and climactic figure of the vision, the horn occupies a position on the same structural level as the ram and the he-goat. The audition in vss. 12-14 is included for analysis because it refers to the activities of the horn and is mainly concerned with this final part of the vision in vss. 3-11. The audition together with the description of the horn represents the climax of the vision report in vss. 3-14. The beginning of the next major text unit in vs. 15a is distinctively marked by the structural formula רֹאשׁ + ז + infinitive (cf. vs. 2b).

In sum, these brief considerations suffice to justify the analysis of Dan 8:9-14. To be sure, the first part of the vision in Dan 8:3-8 is taken into consideration whenever it is deemed necessary.²

Text and Working Translation

In table 1, the left column offers the Masoretic text of Dan 8:9-14 according to

---

¹Contrary to general opinion, I consider vs. 12 as part of the audition. Arguments for this position will be provided in the linguistic and literary analysis.

²For a more detailed and fuller treatment of the structure of Dan 8:9-14 see the structural analysis in chapter 3 (below).
Codex 19a divided into clauses, the middle column lists the clause reference with verse numbers, and the right column provides a working translation. The clause delimitations undertaken in this table are based upon and justified by the syntactic commentary to follow. The working translation is based upon the syntactic-semantic and text-linguistic analysis in this study. As such, this translation, as any translation, although it is presented at the outset of the analysis, anticipates the various analyses and constitutes actually the final product or result of the exegetical process.

It needs to be pointed out that three other linguistic outlines of the text of Dan 8:9-14 already exist. Hasslberger and Richter divide the text into clauses, and regarding methodological principles my clause division is close to both. The Schweizer school divides the text into "Illocution Units" (Äußerungseinheiten), that is, into clauses with

---

1For this reason, in the following analyses the working translation of a term, phrase, or clause is usually given at the end of the respective analysis.


3Wolfgang Richter presents the text according to clauses placing each clause or clause segment on a separate line. This is the result of a linguistic analysis (not a computational analysis), viz. from a tentative knowledge about the contents, from grammatical observations, and from some syntactic judgments. Grammatical observations include (1) the identification of word classes which fill the sentence initial position (conjunctions, deictics) and (2) the place of the verb (usually in first or second clause position). Syntactic judgments refer (1) to sentence constituents or syntagmeme (predicate, subject, object) and (2) to the structure of clauses, mainly that a clause has only one predicate (Biblia Hebraica transcripta: BH, vol. 1, Genesis, ATSAT, no. 33/1 (St. Ottilien: EOS, 1991), 2-3). By these preliminary clause divisions Richter contributes to the syntactic analysis of Biblical Hebrew. As such it helps to start with a linguistic analysis of the text before one undertakes a stylistic analysis. BH is thus a concrete proposal which provides a basis for further discussion and refinement. On methodological questions see the more positive reviews of different volumes of BH by Walter Große (TQ 173 [1993]: 247-249, 314), François Langlamet (RB 101 [1994]: 416-421), Eep Talstra (JSS 39 [1994]: 290-295), Hendrik Jan Bosman (JSS 40 [1995]: 97-103), Arian J. C. Verheij (JSS 40 [1995]: 103-105), and the rather negative, not seldom polemic review by Lothar Perlitt (TRu 59 [1994]: 456-458). See also Christian Riepel, "Satz- und Metasatzbezeichnung in BH: Probleme, Lösungen und Änderungen," RB 103 (1996): 561-580.
Table 1. Daniel 8:9-14: Clause Division and Working Translation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masoretic Text</th>
<th>Working Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יְאֵה קְרוֹרַאָת מִשְׁעֵירָה</td>
<td>and from the one of them went forth one horn from lilleness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגְּלַגָּה</td>
<td>and it grew exceedingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְאֹלֵּה חֹמֶקָּה לֶאָלְכַּמְשֶׁבָּה</td>
<td>toward the south and toward the sunrise (east) and toward the beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and it grew up to the host of heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְאֹלֵּה קְרָאָת מִשְׁעֵירָה</td>
<td>and it caused to fall to the earth some of the host and some of the stars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and it trampled them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and up to the commander of the host he magnified himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and from him he took away the tami d'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and the foundation of his sanctuary was thrown down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and a host will be set against the tami d in rebellion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and it will throw down truth to the earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and it will do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and it will succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and I had heard one holy one speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחַלְגֶּלֶגָּה</td>
<td>and another holy one said to the previous one who had been speaking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Throughout this study I use tamid as translation equivalent for תָּמִּיד. The reason for this is that, according to the semantic analysis undertaken below, English translation equivalents such as “regularity,” “continuity,” or “daily” do not seem to express adequately the semantic connotations of tamid in the book of Daniel.

predicates, and phrases or groups of phrases without a predicate but with a communicative function of their own. It is interesting to note that the clause divisions presented here concur with Hasslberger’s in every respect, while they differ both from Richter’s and from the Schweizer school’s only slightly, however not substantially, in the syntactically difficult vs. 13c. Also, in vs. 14 my clause division concurs with the one presented by the Schweizer school, whereas it disagrees with Richter’s assessment of vs. 14b as a pendensed construction. The beginning of vs. 12a, which is disputed in the

1Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 13-14. In addition, Schindele also provides a working translation which, however, differs from mine in several important aspects (esp. in vss. 12 and 13).
Clause Analysis of Daniel 8:9-14

In this major part of the linguistic analysis each clause of Dan 8:9-14 is described grammatically and syntactically followed by a semantic analysis of relevant words and phrases in that clause.

The grammatical-syntactic analysis is undertaken for each clause and consists of two basic parts, the formulaic analytical description of it (according to three levels: morphology, morphosyntax, and syntax) and the pertaining grammatical-syntactic comments. The formulaic analytical description is presented in a specific pattern (matrix): The first line gives the verse number of the clause, followed by the vocalized Masoretic Text (MT). To enhance clarity, in this line the syntactic components of the clause are already indicated by using square brackets. The following lines explain the morphological, then the morphosyntactic, and finally the syntactic description of the clause. The relation of the MT to the morphological and the morphosyntactic description is easily followed as each morpheme is described in the same order as it appears in the MT. The syntactic description designates the syntactic components of the clause. Two formats are used: a formulaic, technical description used in Richter’s circle and a description in more conventional terms. In the final line, the clause type is determined.

1 The former is used for analytical purposes to facilitate further analyses in the framework of Richter’s approach. The latter is used for convenience sake, since most readers follow such a kind of description more easily. For an explanation of Richter’s system of describing clause elements (syntagmemes) see Richter, Grundlagen einer althebräischen Grammatik, vol. 3; Walter Groß, Die Satzteilefolge im Verbalsatz altertestamentlicher Prosa: Untersuchungen an den Büchern Dtn, Ri und 2Kön, FAT, no. 17 (Tübingen: Mohr, 1996), 25-29; Diße, 166-180; and in English see C. H. J. van der
The purpose of this analytical description matrix is to present the analysis of the different grammatical levels of the text as transparently as possible and to illustrate how the syntactic description builds upon the morphological and morphosyntactic description.1 The identification of the clause types will be relevant for text-grammatical considerations later on.

The main part of the grammatical-syntactic clause analysis follows the analytical description matrix and consists of grammatical comments, mainly to the morphosyntactic and syntactic features of the clause under discussion, along the lines of an extensive grammatical and syntactic commentary. These comments and discussions often justify a specific grammatical description given in the analytical description matrix of the clause. This part of the analysis usually starts when applicable with comments on the verbal element, for it is the verb which determines the number of complements in a clause, and then proceeds to the other clausal elements and grammatical, syntactic features of the clause. To understand some constructions it is necessary to gather relevant material with help from a concordance,2 lending evidence to the old wisdom once again, that the

Merwe, The Old Hebrew Particle gam: A Syntactic-Semantic Description of gam in Gn-2Kg, ATSAT, no. 34 (St. Ottilien: EOS, 1990), 28-32; Rechenmacher and van der Merwe, 71. Groß adapts Richter’s system but places more emphasis on the relation between morphological form and syntactic function (Satzteilfolge, 29-43; see also Diße, 166-174).

1 For example, the description of the different levels shows when elements on one level function not only on that level and on the higher level(s) but also when specific elements function directly on a higher level. Cf. Richter, Grundlagen einer althebraischen Grammatik, 1:20.

2 Besides the software Bible Works for Windows, Version 6.0 (Big Fork: Hermeneutika Bible Research Software, 2003), the following works have been consulted: Gerhard Lisowski, Konkordanz zum hebräischen Alten Testament, 2d ed. (Stuttgart: Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, 1981); Abraham Even-Shoshan, A New Concordance of the Bible: Thesaurus of the Language of the Bible, Hebrew and Aramaic, Roots, Words, Proper Names, Phrases and Synonyms (Jerusalem: “Kiryat Sefer,”)
concordance provides the best commentary. Sometimes it is advisable to construct a taxonomy. To this end the paradigmatic comparison involves syntactic criteria and may also involve semantic criteria.

The analysis of the meaning of words and phrases is incorporated into the clause analysis. The reason for this lies in the fact that syntax on the one hand and semantics of words and phrases on the other hand are interdependent. The semantic analysis of words and phrases often utilizes the results of the syntactic analysis, and at times the process is reversed. The meaning of words and phrases is basically determined by two elements: the syntagmatic or contextual relations and the paradigmatic relations, the latter at times indicating intertextual relations. Regarding the semantic analysis of a specific word, it goes without saying that one has to be careful not to import blindly its usage and meaning from other places to the text under investigation. Syntagmatic or contextual relations must have priority over paradigmatic relations. Nevertheless, the usages of the word in other texts help to define its syntactic function as well as its semantic range. This calls for a reasonable weighing of contextual (syntagmatic) arguments and arguments coming from the usage of the word in other texts.

Important for the semantic analysis of Dan 8:9-14 is the distinction between lexical meaning, symbolic meaning, and interpretative meaning (see table 2). Daniel 8:9-11 is part of a description of a symbolic vision and vss. 12-14 take up language from vss. 9-11 and thus symbolic language may be encountered in this part, too. Therefore, when it

comes to the meaning of words and phrases, care is indicated to distinguish between lexical meaning and symbolic meaning.

Table 2. Levels of Meaning for Symbolic Language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Lexical Meaning</th>
<th>Symbolic Meaning</th>
<th>Interpretative Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>הָרִים (Dan 8:8)</td>
<td>horn</td>
<td>king, kingdom</td>
<td>Alexander the Great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶלֹהִים (Dan 8:10b)</td>
<td>stars</td>
<td>God's people, angels, gods, etc.</td>
<td>Jewish people (2d cent. B.C.E.), Christians, patron angels, gods, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, the word הָרִים in vs. 10b denotes lexically “the stars.” However, it is obvious that the word “stars” in this context also has symbolic meaning, and as such does not refer to literal stars. Hence, it is appropriate to say that for vision reports the lexical meaning of a word or phrase denotes what the visionary actually saw—the assumption being that the visionary tries to describe as closely as possible what he or she was seeing—whereas the symbolic meaning refers to the intended meaning beyond the literal sense of the terminology. Finally, the interpretative meaning refers to the meaning of such symbolic language in our reality. The interpretative meaning could at times be the same as the symbolic meaning, for example, if the stars in Dan 8:10b were a symbol for the heathen gods (= heavenly bodies worshiped), the interpretative meaning of “the stars” would be “gods” as well. Usually contextual features and other interpretative decisions influence the identification of a symbol in (historical) reality. For example, in its symbolic meaning the conspicuous or large horn in Dan 8:5, 8 refers to a
great king/kingdom, and in its interpretative meaning it refers to Alexander the Great.

Clause 9a

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

9a [הַֽעֲרָבָּהוּ] [נַעֲרָבָּהוּ] [נַעֲרָבָּהוּ] [נַעֲרָבָּהוּ] [נַעֲרָבָּהוּ] [נַעֲרָבָּהוּ] [נַעֲרָבָּהוּ]

waw+prep art+num/sgf/ prep+ePP/3plm/ Qal-pf/3sgm/ noun/sgf/ num/sgf/ prep+noun/sgf/

waw+PWG(prep ArtWG(art+num/sgf/) PWG(prep+ePP/3plm/)) Qal-pf/3sgm/ NumWG(noun/sgf/ num/sgf/) PWG(prep+noun/sgf/)


waw+description of change of location +predicate +subject +description of change of metaphoric location

Clause type: x-qatal.

The verb נָעַר

The verbal root נָעַר denotes an activity of movement and serves double duty in vs. 9a. The horn went forth “from one of them” and at the same time it came forth “from littleness.” Such an active movement expressed by נָעַר contrasts the idea of natural growth since נָעַר itself usually does not indicate growth. In fact, elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible נָעַר is never used for the developing of horns, and the verb used for it in the vision of Dan 8 is הַנֶּלִּים (Dan 8:3, 8). Semantically, it is then difficult to support the idea that in vs. 9a the horn grows “from one of them,” rather it comes forth.

1 נָעַר can be analyzed as noun/sgf/ or as nominal adjective/sgf/. See below.

2 In Akkadian, the verb (w)asu(m) is used in a few cases with horns as subject, but it describes the stative protruding or sticking out of horns and not their growth (AHw, 3:1477).
There is no completely satisfying answer to the question why the verb ניט is masculine in gender and the subject ניט is feminine. One likely explanation is that verbal inflections are sometimes omitted when the verb precedes the subject, especially when the subject designates animals or things. The author begins with the simplest form of the predicate, the uninflected verbal form /3sgm/. Daniel 8:9a may belong to those cases in which the predicate precedes a subject denoting an animal’s part.1 If this is the case, the masculine verb can be used instead of the feminine2 and emendation is not 


2The Masorah Parva recognizes three instances where the letter י is omitted at the end of the suffix conjugation of the verb ניט so that in the MT ניט stands for מיט: Gen 19:23; Jer 48:45; and Dan 8:9 (Masorah magna 127). Christian D. Ginsburg, The Massorah: Compiled from Manuscripts, Alphabetically and Lexically Arranged, 4 vols. (London: by the author, 1880-1905; reprint, New York: Ktav, 1975), 1:731; 4:509 (§472); cf. idem, Introduction to the Massoretico-Critical Edition of the Hebrew Bible (London: Trinitarian Bible Society, 1897), 147. However, the Masoretic note הַיְפַס (abbreviation of הַיְפוּס "supposed") “cites a possible emendation for a problem text, but warns that the emendation, which might be ‘supposed’ to be superior, should nevertheless be avoided. It insists that the text be left as it is, problems notwithstanding.” Page H. Kelley, Daniel S. Mynatt, and Timothy G. Crawford, The Masorah of the "Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia": Introduction and Annotated Glossary (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1998), 156. Another text where ניט stands apparently for ניט is Ps 73:7.
necessary.\(^1\) Another hypothesis is that the masculine X^' is constructed *ad sensum*, that is, the masculine gender refers to the reality (a king) behind the symbol "horn."\(^2\) The problem with this stylistic explanation is the difficulty it presents in explaining the immediate change to the feminine verb in vs. 9b. For why should the verb in vs. 9a be constructed *ad sensum* when the verb in vs. 9b is not?

---

\(^{1}\) הָּלְעַי for הָלְעַי is read by Moore, 197; Paul Riessler, *Das Buch Daniel*, Kurzgefasster wissenschaftlicher Commentar zu den Heiligen Schriften des Alten Testamentes: Section 3, vol. 3, pt. 2 (Vienna: von Mayer, 1902), 72; Friedrich Delitzsch, *Die Lese- und Schreibfehler im Alten Testament: nebst den dem Schrifttexte einverleibten Randnoten klassifiziert; ein Hilfsbuch für Lexikon und Grammatik, Exegeis und Lektüre* (Berlin: de Gruyter, 1920), 29; Hassberger, 7-8 n. 21. Martin Buschhaus suggests reading נָעַי (Hiphil imperfect) with the he-goat as subject instead of הָלְעַי; "he (the he-goat) caused to rise [?] a little horn" ("Traumpsychologisch-parapsychologische Bemerkungen zu drei Übersetzungsschwierigkeiten im Buch Daniel," *BZ* 38-39 [1987]: 28). Problems with this suggestion are numerous: (1) The usual form is הָלְעַי (Lev 16:27; Num 27:17; Deut 24:11; Isa 42:1, 3; Mic 7:9; Pss 25:15; 107:14, 28; Prov 29:11; 30:33 [3x]), whereas the short נָעַי occurs only in Job 28:11; (2) it would be difficult to explain an imperfect form; (3) there is no indication that the horn should be taken as object (e.g., no object marker); and (4) the meaning of the Hiphil of נָעַי in relation to horn as object ("to cause to rise a horn" as Buschhaus translates) is rather strange.

The preverbal field\(^1\) is occupied by the phrase הֶבַע פִּי הֶבַע "from the one of them." The preposition מִי preceding the construction הֶבַע פִּי הֶבַע is a מִי of direction indicating that the semantic function of the whole phrase is dislocative or, more specific, separative.\(^2\) In other words, הֶבַע פִּי הֶבַע is a description of change of location, referring to the place from which the horn went forth and separated from. Although the focus on the starting point of movement is already inherent in the נָחַת + מִי construction,\(^3\) additional emphasis is laid on this point, for הֶבַע פִּי הֶבַע occupies the preverbal field.

This begs the question as to which entity the numeral and the pronominal suffix of הֶבַע פִּי הֶבַע refers. Two different antecedents have been proposed. Most commentators on Dan 8:9a take it for granted that הֶבַע פִּי הֶבַע refers back to מִי "four [horns]" with

---

\(^1\) By applying the *Stellungsfeldermodell* to Biblical Hebrew clauses, Gross distinguishes between a preverbal field (Vorfeld) and a main field (Hauptfeld). The preverbal field is that part of a clause that precedes the verb, whereas the main field is that part of a clause that follows the verbal predicate (Gross, *Satzteilfolge*, 44-45). For the *Stellungsfeldermodell* see also Dief, 180-201, especially 187-201 for BH clauses; *BHRG*, 336-343 (§46.1); Van der Merwe, “Towards a Better Understanding of Biblical Hebrew Word Order,” *JNSL* 25, no. 1 (1999): 280-284.

\(^2\) The semantic function of מִי is due to the verb נָחַת that governs this preposition. In other words, when the preposition מִי is used with the verb נָחַת it is a מִי of direction and indicates separation. Already Harald Schweizer described the meaning of נָחַת + מִי as "dynamic+monovalent; dislocative+separative+ingressive" (*Elischa in den Kriegen: Literaturwissenschaftliche Untersuchung von 2 Kön 3; 6,8-23; 6,24-7,20*, SANT, no. 37 [Munich: Kösel, 1974], 151). נָחַת + מִי occurs 369 times in BH (according to *DCH*, 4:254-265), which means that the מִי of direction occurs in more than a third of all the clauses with נָחַת (1,067 times according to *DCH*). The only exceptions to this semantic function of מִי in נָחַת-clauses are the rare use of a מִי of cause (because of, 2 Chr 21:15) and the compound prepositions מִי-לָיָן (towards, Josh 15:3) and מִי-לָיָן (to, 2 Chr 26:15), whereas it has to be noted that in general compound prepositions could be considered as a group of more specialized prepositions, and as such are different from the individual prepositions they are built of.

the noun “horns” omitted by ellipsis, in vs. 8c. However, it has also been suggested that 
refers back to the immediately preceding “four winds of heaven” in vs. 8c, which is apparently a metaphor for the four directions of the compass.3

The so-called syntactic argumentation for the second proposal is that the feminine 
refers to the feminine , and the masculine pronominal suffix refers to the masculine plural .4 The supposed syntactic parallelism of gender

---

1See, e.g., the brief notes in Hasselberger, 26 n. 29, 32 n. 85; and Buecher-Gillmayr, 63; no discussion, e.g., in Goldbergay, Daniel, 197, 209; Collins, Daniel (1993), 325, 331.

2Arthur E. Bloomfield suggests that the little horn “is to come out of one of the four winds of heaven,” but does not provide any argument for that position (The End of the Days: A Study of Daniel’s Visions [Minneapolis: Bethany, 1961], 165, cf. 112).

3The phrase “four winds of heaven” is found in Dan 8:8; 11:4; Zech 2:10; 6:5; and “four winds” is found in Jer 49:36; Ezek 37:9; 42:20; 1 Chr 9:24. These phrases are often considered as the four cardinal directions (see commentaries). On other terms for the compass points see M. O’Connor, “Cardinal-Direction Terms in Biblical Hebrew,” in Semitic Studies: In Honour of Wolf Leslau on the Occasion of His Eighty-fifth Birthday, November 14th, 1991, ed. A. S. Kaye (Wiesbaden, Harrassowitz, 1991), 2:1140-1157. In Dan 8:8 and Zech 2:1, 10, the “four winds of heaven” and “four horns” occur in the same context, both phrases seemingly conveying the idea of totality (see Paul Heger, The Three Biblical Altar Laws: Developments in the Sacrificial Cult in Practice and Theology: Political and Economic Background, BZAW, no. 279 [Berlin: de Gruyter, 1999], 176-177, 226-228).

according to an A+B/A+B pattern (f.+m./f.+m.) has been presented in a graphic alignment:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>f.</th>
<th>m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dan 8:8</td>
<td>le'arba' to the four</td>
<td>rûhô t winds of the heavens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan 8:9</td>
<td>ámin- and from</td>
<td>hâ'ahat the one</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The difficulty with "four (horns)" as antecedent for "one of them" supposedly is "that on the basis of syntax the numeral 'one,' a feminine form, does not line up with the masculine form of the numeral 'four,' nor does the masculine 'them' line up with the feminine 'horns' (understood)."2


3"Noun" in this formula may refer to a noun (substantive), pronoun, numeral, or adjective (see *BHRG* 174 [§23]; cf. Joñon and Muraoka, 237-328 [§§86-101]). There are also some cases in which this construction occurs with another numeral than יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי: 1 Chr 11:15 (יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי three); Lev 26:8 (יִנְסָי five); Exod 28:10 (יִנְסָי six); 2 Sam 2:15 (יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי twelve); 23:13 (קֶטֶיב יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי thirty, gere יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי three); Exod 24:1, 9 (נְנָסָי/תַּנְסָי seventy); Lev 26:8 (יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי hundred); 1 Sam 13:2 (יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי three thousand). In Exod 28:10; Lev 26:8; 1 Sam 13:2; 2 Sam 23:13 (גֵּרֵה יִנְסָי/תַּנְסָי) and 1 Chr 11:15 the numeral referring to the part is in the opposite gender to the noun referring to the whole. Syntactically, it may be said that the numeral is in the correct gender relation, because numerals for the numbers 3 to 10 combine with nouns in reversed gender. Joñon and Muraoka call this...
"pīn") in BH sheds light on the form and referential meaning of בְּהֵן in Dan 8:9a. There, the preposition בְּ is a partitive: the entity indicated by the numeral for "one" represents only part of the total of the entity indicated by the prepositional phrase with בְּ. For this reason, only בְּ constructions with a בְּ partitive are listed and examined. In order to facilitate a comparison with Dan 8:9a the following taxonomy notes whether (1) the numeral or numeral word group refers to the part, (2) the phrase following the preposition בְּ, which refers to the whole, is a noun or a pronoun, and (3) the numeral is the masculine דְּ or the feminine נְ. These different forms do not affect the semantic function of the בְּ דְ נ construction. The list contains all seventy-

phenomenon the "law of dissymmetry" (323-324 [§100d], 526 [§526d]). The numeral for the number 12 agrees in gender with the noun referring to the whole (2 Sam 2:15), whereas the numbers 70 (Exod 24:1, 9) and 100 (Lev 26:8) do not change the form according to the gender of the noun they refer to.

1For the partitive notion of phrases with a cardinal numeral as first member see Takamitsu Muraoka, "'Three of Them' and 'the Three of Them' in Hebrew," ANES 38 (2001): 215-216.

2The construction numeral/numeral word group + בְּ of location + noun (Exod 29:23; Num 6:19; Judg 13:2; 21:6; Josh 21:16; 1 Sam 1:1; Jer 3:14 [2x]; Ezek 33:2; Cant 4:9) is not considered here, though sometimes it functions semantically similar to the construction with a בְּ partitive. Furthermore, a בְּ partitive may also be preceded by substantives (e.g., 2 Kgs 10:3), or the preceding noun proportion of the part to the whole is unspecified (e.g., Exod 16:27; Dan 8:10).

3First, there appears to be no different function when the part is expressed by a numerical word group or when it is expressed by a numeral alone, e.g., compare בְּ דְ נ "one of the young men" (1 Sam 25:14) with בְּ דְ נ נ "one of the young men" (1 Sam 16:18; 26:22).
Second, there is no difference in function when after the preposition the total of the entity is expressed by a noun phrase or when it is expressed by a pronoun, e.g., compare בְּ נ דְ ה נ (Lev 4:2) with בְּ נ דְ ה נ (Lev 4:13, 22; 5:17) and בְּ נ ד (Lev 4:27). An additional third difference in form is the nominal state of the numeral דְ נ which may be in absolute or in construct. This feature will not be noted in the taxonomy. Again, there appears to be no difference between the construction בְּ ד נ + noun (e.g., Lev 13:2; Num 36:3; Judg 21:8; 1 Sam 16:18) and the construction בְּ ד נ נ נ נ (Gen 3:22; Lev 13:2; 1 Sam 9:3; 2 Sam 1:15; 1 Kgs 19:2; 22:13; 2 Kgs 6:12; 9:1; Ezek 18:10; Obad 11)—which has been referred to as extension of the construct state; see König, 3:240 (§278a); Jouon and Muraoka, 470 (§129m.o); BHKG 194 (§25.3/1[iii]). Of course, one cannot differentiate whether in the phrase בְּ ד נ the cardinal ד נ is in the absolute or construct state. Yet, in Dan 8:9 the article before נ indicates that the numeral functions nominally in the absolute state.
five cases of a numeral or numeral word group "תָּלָה/תְּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ partitive + noun" in BH:  

1. numeral תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + noun (61x)
   1.1 תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + non-pronoun\(^2\) (41x)
      with תָּלָה (31x): Lev 7:14; 13:2; 14:30; 25:48; Num 31:47; 36:3, 8;
      Judg 17:5,11; 21:8; 1 Sam 9:3; 16:18; 26:22; 2 Sam 1:15;
      Neh 1:2; 11:1; Esth 7:9; Job 33:23; Isa 6:6; Ezek 19:3,5;
      46:17.
      with תָּלָה (10x): Gen 2:21; Lev 4:13,22,27; 5:17, 22, 26; Deut
      4:42; Josh 20:4; Job 9:3.
   1.2 תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + pronominal suffix (13x)
      with תָּלָה (9x): Gen 3:22; Num 16:15; Deut 28:5, 55; 1 Sam 17:36;
      1 Kgs 22:13; 2 Chr 28:12; Ps 106:11; Obad 11.
      with תָּלָה (4x): 2 Sam 24:12; Ps 34:21; Isa 34:16; Dan 8:9.
   1.3 תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + independent personal pronoun or demonstrative pronoun
      (7x)
      with תָּלָה (1x): Ezek 18:10.
      with תָּלָה (6x): Lev 4:2; 5:4, 5, 13; 1 Chr 21:10; Ezek 16:5.

2. numeral word group with תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + noun (14x)
   2.1 numeral word group with תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + non-pronoun (10x)
      with תָּלָה (8x): Num 31:28, 30; Josh 23:14; 1 Sam 25:14; 1 Kgs
      8:56; 19:2; 20:35; Ecc 7:28.
      with תָּלָה (2x): 2 Kgs 4:1; Ezek 45:15.\(^4\)
   2.2 numeral word group with תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + pronominal suffix (1x)
      with תָּלָה (1x): Josh 23:10.
   2.3 numeral word group with תָּלָה + numeral word group with תָּלָה + נֶפֶשׁ + noun (3x)
      with תָּלָה (3x): Num 34:18; Josh 4:2, 4.

\(^1\)In BA the construction numeral תָּלָה (referring to the part) + נֶפֶשׁ + noun (referring to the
whole) occurs two times: Dan 6:3 and 7:16. In both verses תָּלָה is not determined and agrees in gender
with the noun.

\(^2\)A non-pronoun may be a noun, a noun with pronominal suffix, a relative clause, or a
numeral.

\(^3\)Note that in the immediately following תָּלָה תְּלָה (one of the donkeys) the preposition
נֶפֶשׁ seems to be elliptical, so that this may be another numeral + נֶפֶשׁ + noun construction.

\(^4\)Note that the designation for the whole, תָּלָה, is a common noun.
Syntactic features of מְנִחֵת יְהֹוָה. Specific attention is now paid to the question whether (1) the phrase under consideration refers to a previous construct word group, (2) whether there is gender agreement between the numeral (the part) and the noun after the preposition מְנִחֵת (the whole), and (3) whether the numeral takes the article. For questions (1) and (3) all 75 occurrences of מְנִחֵת constructions are taken into consideration. For question (2) 60 of the 61 מְנִחֵת constructions in which מְנִחֵת occurs alone are considered; excluded are Num 36:8, as well as the 14 occurrences in which מְנִחֵת is part of a numeral word group. The following observations and conclusions can be drawn from the taxonomy.

1. Regarding the reference to a construct phrase. The noun referring to the whole may be a construct phrase or it may refer to one. When the total of the entity is expressed by a pronoun (21 times) it is never found to refer to only one member of a construct phrase. There is no case in which the parts of the מְנִחֵת construction refer to the different parts of a construct phrase. In other words, in no instance does the numeral refer to the construct of a construct phrase and what follows the preposition מְנִחֵת to the absolute of the same construct phrase. Leaving the empirical evidence for a moment and

1The reasons for the exclusion of numeral word group constructions regarding question (2) is that the part and the whole in such a construction could refer to two different, though related entities which may have different genders, e.g., "one man (m.) of the family (f.)." The same is true of the מְנִחֵת construction in Num 36:8 ("one of the family of the tribe of her father") in which the numeral refers to "one of the sons of the family of the tribe of her father." To be sure, in all 14 occurrences of numeral word group מְנִחֵת constructions, the gender of the numeral and the gender of the whole is the same. This conforms to the results with the other 61 מְנִחֵת constructions.

2For example, Judg 21:8; 2 Sam 9:11.

3The only case is Lev 4:2 where מְנִחֵת refers back to מְנִחֵת.
arguing grammatically, a simple insertion test shows that an alleged split in reference to the members of a construct phrase is not viable. In the insertion test the referring element is substituted by its antecedent. Applying this test to Dan 8:9a, and assuming the numeral and the pronoun each refer to one of the two parts of the preceding construct phrase in vs. 8c, מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם הַזֹּקְנִים would read “from one wind out of the four heavens,” which would not make any sense. On the other hand, if both the numeral and the pronoun refer to the whole construct phrase, מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם הַזֹּקְנִים would read “from one wind of the heavens out of the four winds of the heavens,” which would be perfectly intelligible. This would invalidate the argument that in the phrase מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם in Dan 8:9a קָחַת refers to the first member וַיַּיְתֵר וַיַּכְּלֵה and מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם refers to the second member מִדְיֵרָה of the construct phrase מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם “winds of heaven” in vs. 8c. Rather if מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם refers to the “four winds of heaven”—or to the “four (horns)”—both the numeral and the pronominal suffix would refer to the four winds, to the whole construct phrase “four winds of heaven,” or to the four horns respectively.

2. Regarding gender in מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם. Out of a total of 60 cases of מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם, the numeral referring to the portion of the part and the word/phrase following מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם referring to the whole agree in gender 58 times. Only in 2 Sam 24:12 and Dan 8:9 does the gender not agree. Therefore, as a rule, the gender of the part and the whole is expected to be the gender of the whole noun. However, it should be noted that, first, the gender of the numeral is congruent with the gender of the noun on the syntactic level. For example, in Deut 4:42 and Josh 20:4 the noun מֹשֶׁה is morphologically masculine, that is, it has a masculine ending, but syntactically it is feminine; therefore, the numeral is feminine (cf. BHRG, 175-178 [§24.2/1]). And second, when מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם is followed by a number (Num 31:28, 30, 47; Job 9:3; 33:23; Eccl 7:28; Neh 11:1), it has to be expected that מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם agrees in gender with the gender of the elliptical noun. For example, in Num 31:28 and Neh 11:1 מֶלֶךְ הַשָּׁמַיִם refers to an elliptical noun which is masculine as the feminine numerals מְסֵמֶר וְמְסֵמֶר “five hundred” and מְסֵמֶר “ten” indicate.
same, which is natural because both refer to the same antecedent.\(^1\) Regarding Dan 8:9a, two observations are important:

a. If the whole construction refers back to a masculine numeral 3-10 with an elliptical feminine noun, one would expect the numeral and the ePP of the construction to be feminine,\(^2\) as is the case in the following text:

\[
\text{1 Chr 21:10} \quad \text{שֵׁלשׁ אֶתְנַא נִעֲשֵׂה סָלֵמָה בַּעֲרָרָה לָצָה מְטָנָה}
\]

*Three* (m.) [things] I offer you, choose for yourself *one* (f.) of *them* (f.)

b. The construction הַדַּה תִּמְנָה in 2 Sam 24:12, the only other place besides Dan 8:9a where the gender of the part and the whole do not agree, clearly refers back to the masculine numeral שֵׁלשׁ (three) with an elliptical feminine noun.

\[
\text{2 Sam 24:12} \quad \text{שֵׁלָשׁ אֹבֵנֵי נִשְׁלָה}^3 \quad \text{פְּץָה בַּעֲרָרָה לָצָה מְטָנָה}
\]

*Three* (m.) [things] I offer you, choose for yourself *one* (f.) of *them* (m.)

For Dan 8:9a both observations lead to the same conclusion: There is no syntactic reason

---

\(^1\) Gender congruence is certainly the reason why in Dan 8:9a several manuscripts and editions of the Hebrew text read מַלְאָכָה instead of מַלְאָכָה. See Giovanni Bernardo De Rossi, *Variae lectiones Veteris Testamenti librorum: ex immensa manuscriptorum editorumque codicum congerie haustae et ad Samaritanum textum, ad vetustissimas versiones, ad accuriores sacrae criticae fontes ac leges examinatae*, vols. 3-5, Bibliotheca Rossiana, vol. 7 (Parma: Bodoni, 1786-1798; reprint, Amsterdam: Philo, 1970), 143.

\(^2\) The reason for this is the law of dissymmetry or rule of opposition in gender for the numbers 3-10. The numerals for the numbers 3-10 take the feminine ending if they occur with a masculine noun. If they occur with a feminine noun the numerals have no ending (as is usually the case with masculine nouns). Explanations for this phenomenon have been often suggested; cf. the literature in Richter, *Grundlagen einer althebraischen Grammatik*, 2:27 n. 107. Therefore, in מַלְאָכָה אֶתְנַא נִעֲשֵׂה מַלְאָכָה אֶתְנַא נִעֲשֵׂה “one out of ten” (Neh 11:1) the whole is referred to by the feminine numeral for the number 10 with an elliptical masculine noun “people” and the part is referred to by the masculine מַלְאָכָה according to the elliptical masculine noun.

\(^3\) The difference between מַלְאָכָה “imposing” (2 Sam 24:12) and מַלְאָכָה “turning” (1 Chr 21:10) and the text-critical issues involved do not play a role in the present discussion.
why the feminine numeral נְנֵּנה could not refer back to the elliptical feminine noun "horns" with the masculine numeral בְּנֵי "four" (8:8c), because in both 1 Chr 21:10 and 2 Sam 24:12 the feminine numeral נְנֵּנה does refer back to a masculine numeral with its elliptical feminine noun. Indeed, if in Dan 8:9 נְנֵּנה refers to עֲבֹדָה in vs. 8, both the construction נְנֵּנה in Dan 8:9 and in 2 Sam 24:12, including their referents, are alike regarding syntax. In other words, the phrase נְנֵּנה in Dan 8:9a could syntactically either refer to the “four (horns)” or to “the four winds of the heavens” (8:8c).

Nevertheless, the gender disagreement in נְנֵּנה needs further explanation.

The observation can be made that in BH the pronominal suffix /3plm/ can replace the feminine form.¹ A comparison between 2 Sam 24:12 and 1 Chr 21:10, two parallel texts

¹The pronominal suffix /3plm/ is used instead of /3plf/ in Gen 14:11; 18:20 (cities are usually feminine); 26:15, 18; 32:16; 33:13; 41:23; Exod 1:21; 2:17 (יַיְבִּי; the correct ePP/3plf/ is also used in this verse); 8:10 (cf. vss. 5, 7); 25:29; 26:1, 7; 28:9, 11, 14, 26, 27; 35:18; 36:14; 39:7, 18, 20; Lev 18:30; 20:8; 22:31; 24:6; 26:3; Num 10:2, 3; 15:39; 16:17, 18 (cf. Lev 10:1); 17:3; 27:7 (later in the same verse the correct ePP/3plf/ is used twice); 35:2, 3, 6; 36:4, 6; Deut 3:6; 27:2, 4, 5; 33:17; Josh 4:3, 8; 11:13; 13:28; 14:4; 17:4; 24:13; Judg 3:2; 10:4; 16:3 (3x); 19:24 (3x); 21:12, 22 (3x), 23; 1 Sam 6:7 (2x), 10 (גֵּלֵּל), 12; 9:20; 17:40; 31:12; 2 Sam 6:22; 20:3; 24:12; 1 Kgs 6:12; 32; 9:13; 22:17; 2 Kgs 16:17; 18:13, 16; 23:14; Isa 3:16; 34:17 (feminine verbs and feminine suffixes are used for the same referent in vss. 16-17); 36:1; 38:16 (both feminine and masculine suffix is used for the same referent); 48:3, 5, 6, 7; 60:8; Jer 10:2; 23:2, 3, 4; 27:2; 33:3, 24 (?); 43:9, 10; 44:2; Ezek 1:6-26 (several masculine and feminine suffixes for the same antecedent נֵר לְמַעְלָה "four living beings" in Ezek 1:5); 5:6; 7:16; 11:17; 13:20; 16:16, 58; 18:19; 20:16, 34, 41; 23:46; 27:9; 32:9; 34:23, 24; 37:2, 4, 8; 42:24, 11; 43:11; 46:22, 23; Hos 2:20; Amos 4:1, 2 (2x) (the expected feminine suffix is also used once in 4:2); 9:14; Zech 5:9; 11:5; Pss 34:20; 78:3; 119:129, 152, 167; Prov 6:21 (2x); 7:3; 20:10, 12; Job 1:14, 15; 15:3; 39:3, 4, 14; 42:15 (3x); Cant 4:2; 5:3; 6:6; Ruth 1:19; 4:11; Lam 2:20; Eccl 2, 10; 10:9; 11:8; 12:1; Esth 1:17; Dan 1:5; 8:9; Ezra 10:3, 44(?); Neh 1:9; 11:30; 13:19; 1 Chr 6:49, 50; 8:8; 10:7; 23:22; 28:15; 2 Chr 4:7, 20; 8:2; 11:11, 12; 14:13; 29:3; 32:1; 35:25. See especially Wilhelm Diehl, *Das Pronomen personale suffixum 2. und 3. pers. plur. des Hebräischen in der alttestamentlichen Ueberlieferung* (Giessen: Ricker, 1895), 46-48; Robert Jeffrey Ratner, "Gender Problems in Biblical Hebrew" (Ph.D. diss., Hebrew Union College, 1983), 36-44, 51-55; Gary A. Rendsburg, *Diglossia in Ancient Hebrew*, AOS, vol. 72 (New Haven: American Oriental Society, 1990), 45-48. Cf. König, 3:5-6 (§14); GK C, 440 (§1350); Mayer G. Slonim, "The Substitution of the Masculine for the Feminine Hebrew Pronominal Suffixes to Express Reverence," *JQR* 29 (1938-1939): 397-403; idem, "The Deliberate Substitution of the Masculine for the Feminine Pronominal Suffixes in the Hebrew Bible," *JQR* 32 (1941-1942): 139-158; Jüdön and Muraoka, 551 (§149b);
with "in phrases, exemplifies this phenomenon:

2 Sam 24:12 (ePP/3plm/)

1 Chr 21:10 (ePP/3plf/)

It should be noted that in Dan 1:5 an ePP/3plm/ in "at the end of them" (דָּמָל) refers to the syntactically feminine "three years" (שְׁשָׁה). Here, the masculine rather than the feminine plural suffix is used. The same may be true in Dan 8:9a (similarly in BA in Dan 2:33, 41, 44; 7:8, 19). In fact, both the Hebrew and the Aramaic in the book of Daniel never use feminine plural pronominal suffixes. Thus, the masculine pronominal suffix in

Waltke and O'Connor, 302 (§16.4b); and J. C. L. Gibson, Davidson's Introductory Hebrew Grammar, Syntax: 4th Edition (Edinburgh: Clark, 1994), 3 (§1 R. 3). Different explanations for this gender disagreement have been attempted, mainly in terms of the history of the language (see Ratner, 53-55). For Diehl, the feminine suffixes have been displaced by the masculine forms in the course of the transmission of the text (50-51). Ratner concludes that "-m progressively replaced -n in the function of third feminine plural pronominal suffix during the biblical period, culminating in the complete disappearance of -n in the language of the Chronicler" (55). Rendsburg explains the gender disagreement in Dan 8:9 as "gender neutralization" (48). "Gender neutralization arises from the total loss of feminine forms with the corresponding masculine forms becoming epicene" whereas "gender discord, on the other hand, concerns other parts of speech where the masculine forms may be used for their feminine counterparts, but there is no consistency and this development is not regular" (69). For Rendsburg this gender neutralization is "one of the main characteristics of spoken dialects throughout Semitic" (35) and thus the usages of the pronominal suffix /3plm/ instead of /3plf/ are to be explained as colloquialisms that have penetrated the literary creations of Biblical writers" (49).

Rendsburg's thesis may be strengthened by the observation that the pronominal suffix /3plf/ never occurs in the book of Daniel and therefore the gender displacement could be regarded as consistent and regular (see below). Regarding the use of the ePP/3plm/ instead of the ePP/3plf/ after verbal forms which end in -ג (Gen 26:15, 18; 33:13; Exod 2:17; 39:18, 20; Num 17:3, 4; Josh 4:8 [2x]; Judg 3:2; 1 Sam 6:10; 18:27; Neh 13:19; 1 Chr 23:22; 2 Chr 35:25), they appear to be in order "to avoid a confusion with the personal ending י" (GKC, 162 [§60h]; cf. Mayer Lambert, Traité de grammaire hébraïque [Paris: Presses Universitaires de France, 1946], 147-148 [§329]; Ratner, 52).

1 Other examples of parallel clauses in which gender disagreement in the pronominal suffix is found are Gen 41:23 and Gen 41:6; 1 Kgs 22:17 and 2 Chr 18:16; Amos 9:14 and Jer 29:5, 28.

2 Feminine pronominal suffixes occur 12 times in the Hebrew of the book of Daniel: as ePP/3sgf/ in Dan 1:1; 8:8; 9:14; 9:18; 11:6 (3x), 7, 10 (ketib), 17 and as ePP/2sgf/ in Dan 10:19; 11:2. On the other hand, masculine plural pronominal suffixes are used 46 times in the BH parts of Daniel (out of a total of 237 occurrences of a masculine pronominal suffix): ePP/3plm/ in Dan 1:2, 4 (3x), 5 (3x), 6, 7, 14 (2x), 15, 16 (3x), 17 (2x), 18 (2x), 19 (2x), 20 (2x); 2:3; 8:9a, 10c, 23; 9:7 (2x); 10:7;
The construct phrase יָדְיוֹ in Dan 8:9a can refer back to the feminine "winds of heaven" or to the feminine
It is therefore not necessary to suggest emendation or that the masculine gender of מְנָחִים, as well as other masculine forms in Dan 8:9, 11, is constructed *ad sensum* because the feminine horn would symbolically refer to the masculine realities of a king or kingdom.

3. **Regarding the article in וּלְאַלְמָן.** Out of a total of seventy-five cases of רֹאשׁ/רֹאֶשׁ + נֶב + נ, the numeral occurs seventy-three times without the article. This may be due to the fact that רֹאֶשׁ refers to an unspecified "one" out of a larger whole or because of the inherent determinateness of the numeral רֹאֶשׁ. Only in Lev 14:30 and Dan 8:9a is the numeral in a רֹאֶשׁ/רֹאֶשׁ + נ construction found with the article.

 Normally, numerals are determined by the article when they refer back to a number or list already mentioned. The article then indicates that a specific referent has been mentioned before. For example, in Lev 14:30, רֹאֶשׁ נֶב נרְאֶשׁ "the one of the turtledoves" refers to one of the two turtledoves mentioned in vs. 22.

The function of the article in וּלְאַלְמָן in Dan 8:9a can therefore be explained

---

1Note that in Deut 33:17 the כְּפַל/כָּפַל/כַּפַל is used to refer back to the feminine רֹאֶשׁ פְּל "his horns."

2רֹאֶשׁ is read for מְנָחִים by Moore, 197; Riessler, *Daniel* (1902), 72; Hasslberger, 7 n. 20.

3A construction *ad sensum* is supposed by Rosenmüller, 258; Hävernick, 267; Caesar von Lengerke, *Das Buch Daniel* (Königsberg: Bornträger, 1835), 375; Keil, 294; Meinhold, "Daniel," 307; Tiefenthal, 266; Leupold, 344.

4See Jouon and Muraoka, 528 (§1421); Waltke and O'Conner, 283 (§15.2.6a).

5GKC, 434 (§134k). Such anaphoric use of the article is in accordance with the general use of the article with particular referential function based on previous mention of the thing or person; see Waltke and O'Connor, 242 (§13.5.1d).
accordingly. The numeral with the article refers to one specific horn or one specific wind of heaven out of the four horns or the four winds of heaven mentioned in vs. 8c; compare the similar function of the article+numeral in 8:3 (מְצֹלֵיא) where it refers to a specific horn in contrast to another horn. An explanation why the narrator of the vision in vs. 9a refers to a specific one out of the four, and therefore employs the article, may be that the narrator was shown from which horn or wind of heaven this one horn went forth. In any case, the anaphoric use of the article creates coherence within the text: It links vs. 9a with vs. 8c. On the other hand, the article in front of a numeral sometimes indicates an ordinal function of מְצֹלֵיא, so that could be translated as "and from the first of them," though it is doubtful whether such a function is intended here.


2Hasslberger classifies the article of מְצֹלֵיא as occurring with a word whose first mention was indefinite—מְצֹלֵיא in vs. 8c—and which in following occurrences receives definiteness by the article. Hasslberger also provides all the references of articles in Dan 8 that belong to this category of article usage (26 n. 29).

3For the function of מְצֹלֵיא to refer to a specific one out of a group see also Gen 4:19; 10:25; 42:13, 27, 32, 33; 44:28, etc.

4For the ordinal function of see Andrew E. Steinmann, " as an Ordinal Number and the Meaning of Genesis 1:5," JETS 45 (2002): 577-584; cf. OKC, 434 (§134k), R. J. Williams, 21 (§98); Waltke and O’Connor, 274 (§152.1b). Steinmann’s investigation of the grammatical usage confirms that מְצֹלֵיא is used as an ordinal number for countable items or in numbering units of time. Genesis 2:11 is an example for מְצֹלֵיא as an ordinal number for countable items. The text mentions the first of four, where after mentioning that there are four rivers (vs. 10) the name of the first (מְצֹלֵיא) is given. However, the ordinals in vss. 13 and 14 leave no doubt that מְצֹלֵיא has ordinal function, whereas the context of Dan 8:9 does not provide such a clear indication. In numbering units of time מְצֹלֵיא is used four times with the meaning “first” in the book of Daniel (1:21; 9:1; 11:1), always in conjunction with מְצֹלֵיא “year” (מְצֹלֵיא מְצֹלֵיא “first year”). However, when מְצֹלֵיא is used with another noun, its meaning is “one” (Dan 8:3 [2x], 9, 13 [2x]; 9:27; 10:5, 13 [2x], 21; 11:20, 27; 12:5 [2x]).
Before concluding, one should note that an investigation of the construction “numerals + ꔿף” with numerals other than “one” does not yield any further data that need to be taken into consideration here.¹

Conclusion. The syntactic considerations lead to the preliminary conclusion that there are two possible referents of the phrase דיתות הנחורים in Dan 8:9a. It can refer to the “four (horns)” or to the “four winds of heaven” (vs. 8c), both of which are feminine. The final question then is, To which entity does the phrase דיתות הנחורים refer?

Two arguments used previously should not be employed here. One argument is that הרוחות “winds” has a double gender and both הרוחות and הנחורים in vs. 9 refer to it.² This argumentation appears to be flawed for three reasons. First, in Dan 8:8c הרוחות “winds” is clearly marked as feminine by its appositional relationship with the numeral ארבע “four” that in this form accompanies feminine nouns (cf. Dan 11:4). One cannot advert to other occurrences, where הרוחות is masculine,³ in order to infer masculine gender to הרוחות in Dan

¹Such a construction occurs with דיתות two (Gen 6:19, 20; 7:15; Lev 20:18; Jer 3:14; Ecc 4:9); דיתות three (Ezek 40:10 [2x], 21 [2x]; 1 Chr 11:15); דיתות five (2 Kgs 7:13; 2 Chr 4:6 [2x], 8 [2x]); דיתות five (1 Kgs 7:49 [2x]; 2 Chr 4:7 [2x]); דיתות six (Exod 28:10); דיתות nine (Josh 21:16); דיתות twelve (2 Sam 2:15). However, in these occurrences the preposition יִהְיֶה governs a nominal phrase and not a pronominal element. Therefore these constructions are not really comparable with the construction in Dan 8:9a. Also, in none of these cases does the construction refer to a construct phrase.


³For a discussion of the gender of הרוחות, see Karl Albrecht (“Das Geschlecht der hebräischen Hauptwörter: (Fortsetzung),” ZAW 16 [1896], 42-44), and especially the balanced and meticulous study by Wolfram von Soden (“Der Genuswechsel bei רוחות und das grammatische Geschlecht in den semitischen Sprachen,” ZAH 5 [1992]: 57-63). Von Soden correctly observes that the grammatical gender of הרוחות is identifiable in only about a third of its ca. 378 occurrences. He argues that the gender of הרוחות is to some degree dependent upon its semantic usage. With the meaning “wind” approximately
8:8 and thereby explain the use of the anaphoric לֵבָנָה in vs.9a. The immediate syntactic relationship of רֹאֶהוּ, namely with the numeral בֵּית, has priority. Further, the word רֹאֶהוּ as a masculine noun is only attested in the singular, but whenever the plural form is used, it is the feminine רוֹאֶהוּ (13x in BH).1 Second, in the Hebrew parts of Daniel רוֹאֶהוּ is always feminine.2 Third, an intentional difference in gender between the numeral and the ePP in רוֹאֶהוּ should not be assumed, for it is unlikely that the author would refer to the same word once with a feminine and once with a masculine pro-element, especially

half of the occurrences of רוֹאֶהוּ show masculine grammatical gender (ca. 14 times), while with the meaning “breath” (6x fem.; 3x m.; 1x equivocal), “spirit” (32x fem.; 5x m.; 5x equivocal), and “spirit of God” (37x fem.; 4x m.; 5x equivocal) it is predominantly considered to be feminine (pace Dieter Michel who could not find a reason for the masculine gender shift of רוֹאֶהוּ [1:76]). Erasmus Gaß explains the different gender of theological רוֹאֶהוּ by the lexical and syntactic context in which it is used (“Genus und Semantik am Beispiel von ‘theologischem’ ruh,” BN 109 [2001]: 45-55). Cf. Markus Zehnder, “Variation in Grammatical Gender in Biblical Hebrew: A Study on the Variable Gender Agreements of רוֹאֶהוּ, ‘Way,’” JSS 49 (2004): 21-45.

1Num 16:22; 27:16; Jer 49:36; Ezek 37:9; 42:20; Zech 2:10; 6:5; Ps 104:4; Prov 16:2; Dan 8:8; 11:4; 1 Chr 9:24.

2In the Hebrew of Daniel, רוֹאֶהוּ occurs four times and is syntactically feminine (in 2:1, 3 with the meaning “spirit” and feminine verb; in 8:8 and 11:4 with the meaning “wind” in apposition to the numeral תֵן נתנָה which accompanies a feminine noun). Note that in 8:8 and 11:4 the same phrase רוֹאֶהוּ תֵן נתנָה “toward the four winds of heaven” occurs (elsewhere in the OT in Ezek 37:9; 42:20; Zech 2:10; 6:5; 1 Chr 9:24). In the Aramaic part of Daniel רוֹאֶהוּ occurs eleven times. Its gender is usually feminine (five times clearly identified by the syntax: 5:12; 15; 6:4; 7:2; 15; five times without such clear syntactic identification: “a spirit of the (holy) gods” in 4:5, 6, 15; 5:11, 14). Only once does its gender appear to be masculine (2:35), but it could be argued that here the verb precedes the subject and therefore the masculine form as genus potius is used; see Bauer and Leander, Grammatik des Biblisch-Aramäischen, 333-334 (§99g); cf. Marti, Kurzgefasste Grammatik, 102-103 (§126a,b); Segert, Altaramäische Grammatik, 331 (§6.3.1.3.7), 420 (§7.3.2.3). Von Soden regards the gender of רוֹאֶהוּ in such cases in BH as aniceps (equivoal) (“Genuswechsel,” 58). Note especially that the Aramaic רוֹאֶהוּ תֵן נתנָה “the four winds of heaven” in Dan 7:2 is the equivalent to the Hebrew רוֹאֶהוּ תֵן נתנָה in 8:8 and that in 7:2 it is feminine because as subject of the clause it has a feminine plural participle as predicate. This is another reason to regard רוֹאֶהוּ in 8:8 as feminine.
when both elements occur together in a נָבָאָה חֲזֵית construction.¹

Another argument put forward previously is that a word which is unexpressed but only alluded to through ellipsis, like “horns” in Dan 8:8, can hardly function as antecedent.² However, there seems to be no reason why an elliptical noun cannot function as antecedent of “one of them.” In vs. 8c the noun נַחֲמַת נִמְנֵי “horns,” which is omitted by ellipsis, can be inferred from the context of the sentence, namely from the meaning of vs. 8c in relation to vs. 8b—four came up in the place of the broken large horn—and also from analogy with נַחֲמַת נִמְנֵי in vs. 5. If such an elliptical noun is understood in the text, one should be able to refer to it, particularly since it functions as subject in vs. 8c.³

Excursus: The antecedent of “one of them” (Dan 8:9a) from a textual and literary point of view. Based on the analysis above it has become clear that the antecedent to נַחֲמַת נִמְנֵי has to be decided on other than syntactic considerations. Yet, even on the textual and on the literary level the phrase remains somewhat ambiguous. There are textual and literary arguments for both the “four (horns)” and the “four winds of heaven” as antecedent to נַחֲמַת נִמְנֵי. The following considerations would imply that the phrase refers to one of the “four (horns)” (ordered from textual to literary character, not according to importance):


³In order to provide conclusive statements further investigation is needed on the function of ellipses in BH and on the question whether elements can be anaphoric to ellipses.
1. The theme of vs. 8c is the “four (horns)” which came up in place of the large horn. It seems natural that the theme of vs. 8c would be taken up in the phrase “from one of them” in the next clause that introduces the new topic “one horn.”

2. In the vision of Dan 8 the form נְנָח is used in vs. 3, which is the only other occurrence of the numeral נְנָח with an article in the book of Daniel, and refers to one of the two horns of the ram. In vs. 9a, immediately after the phrase נְנָח נְנָח, the numeral נְנָח is again used in a word group with נָח (נְנָח נְנָח in vs. 9a). Thus, נְנָח is used twice in reference to a horn (8:3, 9). This usage of נְנָח in the vision report of Dan 8 may indicate that נְנָח refers to one of the four horns, although it is not clear whether this use of נְנָח is not incidental.

3. It is a peculiar feature of Dan 8:9-11 that the verbal gender of words referring to the horn are both feminine (vss. 9-10) and masculine (vs. 11). One may speculate that the gender incongruence in נְנָח could be the first instance where with regard to horn or horns both genders are used, and therefore the phrase should be understood as referring to one of the four horns.

The following considerations would imply that נְנָח refers to one of the “four winds of heaven”:

1. The phrase “the four winds of heaven” is the nearest possible antecedent to “one of them,” and so “one of them” should refer to it.

---

1 The masculine נְנָח occurs three times in the vision report referring once to the ram (8:3) and twice to one of the holy ones (8:13a; 8:13b).

2. Another argument concerns the flow of the two activities of movement expressed in vs. 9. In vs. 9b, the horn grows toward three geographical entities of which two are cardinal directions, “the south” and “the east.” This second activity of the horn suggests that the first activity may also be on the geographical plane so that the horn comes out from one of the four points of the compass (“winds of heaven”) and grows toward other (compass) directions.

3. The order of gender in מְדַתְּכָם may be intentional. On the one hand, it has been suggested that the feminine-masculine order is reminiscent of the feminine-masculine order in the previous דְּבָרָה דְּבָרָה and could thus indicate that מְדַתְּכָם refers to מְדַתְּכָם. Even alliteration of grammatical morphemes may be involved, which results in the parallel endings נ - ב // נ - ב. However, such a literary argument, which is essentially based on choice of expression, is somewhat weakened since for the book of Daniel the construction מְדַתְּכָם מַגִּישָׁנָה with its feminine-masculine gender seems to be the expected way to refer back to the four horns or the four winds. On the other hand, the feminine-masculine order in מְדַתְּכָם could be intentionally reversed in the masculine-feminine order of the following מַגִּישָׁנָה מַגִּישָׁנָה, creating a chiastic order of gender (f. - m. // m. - f.) that emphasizes the literary device of gender shift and gender

---

1This possible literary feature should not be confused with gender-matched (synonymous) parallelism. The latter is a poetic device which “consists chiefly of the use of nouns of matching gender within a colon” (Watson, “Gender-Matched Synonymous Parallelism in the OT,” 322), though it is also used in prose passages (ibid., 341). Dan 8:8c and 8:9a, however, are not in parallelism, neither syntactically nor semantically. Furthermore, the two nouns in the construct chain of vs. 8c (“winds of heaven”) are not exchanged by two other nouns in vs. 9a but rather, if it is the case, referred back to by a numeral and a pronominal suffix.

2See Doukhan, Secrets, 125.
matching in this passage and may imply that דִּבְרִי הַשָּׁמַיִם refers to a horn. Hence, the literary argument of gender order is ambiguous and does not help to identify the referent of “one of them.”

4. The structure of the whole vision in Dan 8 suggests that the horn comes from one of the winds of heaven.¹ To anticipate the conclusion of the structural analysis of the vision in Dan 8, the vision consists of three main parts which show the same structural pattern of introduction and movement, resulting in absolute power and self-magnification, and downfall: the description of the ram (vss. 3-4), the description of the goat (vss. 5-8), and the description of the horn (vss. 9-11). In each of the initial statements of these parts, the main actor—the ram, the goat, and the horn—is introduced in relation to a geographical term or location and its first activity is described as a geographical movement (see table 3). For the sake of consistency, “out of one of them” should refer to one of the compass points expressed by “the four winds of heaven.”²

¹For a discussion of the structure and a more detailed table of the structure of Dan 8 see “The Structure of Dan 8:9-14” in chapter 3.

²In his structural analysis, Koch places the horn mentioned in vs. 9a on the same level as the horns mentioned in vss. 3, 5, 8 and calls them Teilgegenstand (subtopic), whereas the ram (vs. 3), the he-goat (vs. 5) and the broken great horn (vs. 8b) he regards as the Hauptgegenstand (main topic). Koch, “Visionsbericht,” chart inserted after p. 432. According to Koch’s structure “out of one of them” then refers to the “four (horns)” in vs. 8c. However, it is rather difficult to see why the broken great horn (vs. 8b) should be considered as the main topic of vss. 8-12. The great horn does not even function once as an actant in these verses. On the contrary, the horn introduced in vs. 9a is the major actant in vss. 9-12 and its activities are referred back to by the question in vs. 13. This horn has to be regarded as the Hauptgegenstand (main topic) and, therefore, should be placed on the same structural level as the ram and the he-goat, but not on the same level as the four horns.
Table 3. Introduction of the Main Actors of the Vision in Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Main Actor</th>
<th>Ram (8:3-4)</th>
<th>Goat (8:5-8)</th>
<th>Horn (8:9-11)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>standing (ת&quot;ע) before the canal (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
<td>coming (ת&quot;ה) from the west (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
<td>came forth (ת&quot;ה) from one of them (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vs. 3)</td>
<td>(vs. 5)</td>
<td>(vs. 9a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement</td>
<td>butting</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>grew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>westward (ת&quot;ו)</td>
<td>up to (ת&quot;ו) the ram (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
<td>toward (ת&quot;ו) the south (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>northward (ת&quot;ו)</td>
<td>which I had seen (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
<td>toward (ת&quot;ו) the east (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>southward (ת&quot;ו)</td>
<td>standing before (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
<td>toward (ת&quot;ו) the beauty (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vs. 4)</td>
<td>the canal (מַלְאָךְ)</td>
<td>(vs. 9b)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. The intertextual relation of Dan 8 and Dan 7 (see below) also favors the horn coming forth from one of the winds of heaven. The parallel order of the protagonists in the two visions does not allow for a sequential connection between the four horns in 8:8c and the horn in 8:9a:¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lion (vs. 4)</td>
<td>ram with two horns (vs. 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear (vs. 5)</td>
<td>he-goat with large horn (vs. 5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leopard (vs. 6)</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fourth beast (vs. 7)</td>
<td>a horn (vs. 8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. The phrase “the four winds of heaven” in Dan 8:8c may allude to “the four winds of heaven” in 7:2.² The Hebrew שֵׁם רָמֶה (רָמֶה וְרָמֶה) is the exact equivalent of שֵׁם רָמֶה (רָמֶה וְרָמֶה).

¹For a detailed explanation of this point see the analysis of the intertextual relationship between Dan 8 and Dan 7 in chapter 4 below.

²Doukhan proposes, “In mentioning that the horn comes from one of the winds, he [Daniel] is implying that it originates in one of the beasts” (Secrets, 125). Harald Sahlin also suggests a relation...
the Aramaic רהיח (רַחְיָם), with the exception of the gender of רַחְיָם being feminine in 8:8c but masculine in 7:2. The purpose of such an allusion could be to imply that the horn comes from the four winds of heaven, as the beasts in Dan 7 came from the sea stirred up by the four winds of heaven (7:2-3).

7. Finally, from a zoological viewpoint a horn does not grow out of another horn. Instead, horns are attached individually to the frontal bones of a mammal’s skull.¹ So, the

between “the four winds of heaven” in Dan 8:8 and 7:2; however, with the unconvincing symbolic interpretation of the four winds as four beings, of which two should be the two holy ones in 8:13 (“Antiochus IV. Epiphanes und Judas Makkabäus: Einige Gesichtspunkte zum Verständnisse des Danielbuches,” ST 21 [1969]: 52-53).

¹Both goats and sheep, to which the he-goat and the ram from Dan 8 would belong, are mammal species that belong to the family of Bovidae, that is, the horned ungulates (cattle, bison, hartebeests, duikers, reedbucks, waterbucks, impalas, antelopes, gazelles, chamois, sheep, goats, and other related species), under the parent order of Artiodactyla, that is, the even-toed ungulates. For classifications of the bovids see G. B. Corbet and J. E. Hill, A World List of Mammalian Species, 2d ed. (London: British Museum, 1986), 137-143; Peter Grubb, “Order Artiodactyla,” in Mammal Species of the World: A Taxonomic and Geographic Reference, 2d ed., ed. by D. E. Wilson and D. M. Reeder (Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution, 1993), 393-414 (online: www.mnh.si.edu/msw).

All adult male bovids grow horns, as well as females of most species. For goats, the horns of male goats are stouter, long and heavier, e.g., the male wild goat, found in the mountains from Asia Minor to Afghanistan and Pakistan and in some other places, has horns about 80 to 130 cm long, while the horns of the female wild goat grow up to 30 cm. The Persian male goat grows up to 90 kg, the female only up to 45 kg. Could this offer a zoological reason why the goat in Dan 8 is specifically designated to be a he-goat in order to represent more strength and power? The horns of bovids “are pairs of frontal bone processes which, unlike deer antlers, are not shed annually but remain throughout life” (Fritz Rudolf Walther, “Bovids: Introduction,” in Grzimek’s Encyclopedia of Mammals [New York: McGraw-Hill, 1990], 5:290). They are composed of a bony core, attached to the frontal bones of the skull, and are covered with a hard sheath of horny material, keratin. For a zoological understanding of Dan 8:8-9 it is important that the “horn bones appear as independent bones in the deeper layers of skin (mesoderm) in the forehead” (ibid.). Thus, the horns of these animals are “simple unbranched structures” (Encyclopedia Britannica: Micropedia, 15th ed., s.v. “horn”). In contrast, the antlers of deer are not “true” horns. They are entirely composed of bone and shed yearly. Such a distinction between horns and antlers is not only a modern classification but was already known in the ancient world, e.g., to Aristotle in the 4th cent. B.C.E. (Anthony B. Bubenik, “Epigenetical, Morphobiological, Physiological, and Behavioral Aspects of Evolution of Horns, Pronghorns, and Antlers,” in Horns, Pronghorns, and Antlers: Evolution, Morphology, Physiology, and Social Significance, ed. G. A. Bubenik and A. B. Bubenik [New York: Springer, 1990], 3). On bovids, especially goats, see Grzimek’s Encyclopedia of Mammals (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1990), 5:288-567, esp. 510-560 (on horns: 290-295); and Ronald M. Nowak, Walker’s Mammals of the World, 6th
horn’s activity of coming forth “from one of them” (Dan 8:9a) more logically refers better to the movement of coming from one of the four winds that describe the four points of the compass, rather than growing out of one of the four horns of the goat. Note again that the verb קֹחַ in vs. 9a is often used in the Hebrew Bible to describe the activity of movement in reference to location, whereas it is not used to describe the growing of a horn, an activity usually designated by יָלַע (cf. Dan 8:3, 8).

One may wonder whether it is really wise to base an argument concerning any aspect of this vision on the zoological reality from which the symbolic language of the vision is chosen. After all, a symbolic vision that includes animals should not be expected to concur with zoological reality. Though the language used in vss. 3-8 generally remains within the limits of the possible, there are already signs here indicating that the vision transcends the zoological reality. The goat does not touch the ground and has first one horn and later four horns, while normally all goats move on the ground and carry two horns. Then the language used for the description of the horn’s activities in vss. 9-11 becomes highly symbolic and is in itself detached from reality. In the end, zoological concerns should probably not play a role in interpreting the vision of Dan 8.

This rather lengthy discussion on the antecedent of מָלֵא אַף “one of them” in Dan 8:9a shows, how at times, the different levels of analysis are interrelated. Syntactic arguments alone have been found insufficiently convincing to decide on the antecedent. Contextual, literary, and structural considerations have to be added to illuminate this

ed. (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1999), 2:1135-1238, esp. 1220-1228.

1Only the four-horned antelope (Tetracerus) is unique among bovids in having four horns.
syntactic function of הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים. Although some ambiguity still remains, it seems clear that on the whole the arguments for “the four winds of heaven” as referent outweigh the arguments for the “four (horns)” as referent. It is not the number of arguments, however, that is decisive. Rather it is the literary-structural arguments in particular that are the determining factors for the referential relation between הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים and the four winds of heaven. Hence, Dan 8:9a presents a case of referential meaning that can be decided only on higher levels of analysis. (End of excursus.)

Another grammatical problem in vs. 9a is the semantic function of the numeral in the phrase הַמִּצְלָמִים. The numeral can function as a substitute for the indefinite article—“a horn” or “a certain/specific horn”—or it can function as the cardinal “one”—“one horn.” In favor of indetermination it can be said that the phrase הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים in Dan 8:3, which also introduces a new topic, is indeterminate: “a ram.” For the cardinal “one” it can be mentioned that in the immediate context, in which three numerals—“four” (twice in vs. 8c) and הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים “one” (vs. 9a)—all function as cardinals, הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים seems

1Samuel Krauss emends to הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים אֲשֶׁר הָיוֹת הַמִּצְלָמִים מִיִּתְנַבְּרֵנֵהוּ "a small horn of their sisters [referring to the four horns] grew up" (“Some Remarks on Daniel 8.5 ff,” HUCA 15 [1940]: 306-307).

2See Meinhold, “Daniel,” 307; Georg Behrmann, Das Buch Daniel übersetzt und erklärt, HKAT, vol. 3/3, 2 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1894), 03; Hartman and Di Lella, 225. For the indeterminate function of הָיוֹת see GKC, 401 (§125b), and Jouon and Muraoka, 513 (§137u), who quote Dan 8:3 as an example, but do not mention Dan 8:9. However, DCH classifies הָיוֹת in Dan 8:3 both as an adjective of quantity (“one, single”) and as a particularizing adjective (“a certain, a”) (1:180-181). To argue that the indeterminate function of הָיוֹת is an Aramaism and should therefore be preferred (so Goldingay, Daniel, 197) overlooks the fact that in the Aramaic of the book of Daniel the corresponding numeral אֶת can indicate also the specific number “one” (6:3; 7:16).
to be used in contrast to the numeral "four." Both alternatives are possible.

The expression is best analyzed as preposition with the noun/sgf/ "smallness/littleness" although it has also been understood as preposition with a substantivized adjective/sgf/ from "small, little" Both options result in the same meaning "from smallness/littleness." This refers to the small beginnings of the horn, in comparison to the conspicuously large horn (8:5, 8) and to the four notable ones before (8:8). In this sense, the expression "contrasts very well and above all with the verbs in 9b and 10a, especially with the intensification in 9b."

Because , either as a noun or an adjective in substantive use, is rarely

---

1See Keil, 295; Tiefenthal, 266; Leupold, 344 ("one single horn"); Hasslberger, 53.

2See HALOT, 3:1041. Dieter Michel cites under abstract nouns that are formed by the ending (70). Cf. Magne Sæbo, "smallness, youth" TDOT, 12:427. For a feminine noun "smallness, youth" see Gen 43:33.

3See BD B, 859. The preposition has also been regarded as comparative with substantive or adjective , which then can designate either the smallness ("a horn less than small/smallness"); so Ch. B. Michaelis (cited in von Lengerke, 375); König, 3:477 (§352a); cf. 2:196 (§99.1); 3:148 (§244f) or the greatness of the horn (Old Greek—that is the combined witness of Papyrus 967, Codex 88, and the Syro-Hexaplar—and Theodotion may have understood the Hebrew like this when they read "strong"); Ewald (cited in Kliefoth, 251) renders with "more than small"), or the expressions with comparative functions as adverb describing the infamous manner of the horn’s growth ("very wretched, small"); Hävernick, 269). However, these explanations are arduous.

4So von Lengerke, 375; Kliefoth, 251; Kranichfeld, 299; Kell, 295; Hasslberger, 8 n. 22, 53; Süring, The Horn Motif, 413; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 394. Delcor regards as an explicative gloss to “out of one of them” (172), and translates “from the one of them, from the little” (176).

5Hasslberger, 53.
attested in BH, several text-critical emendations for נֲשֶׁכִּירָה have been suggested. The difficulty with all of these conjectures is that there are no Hebrew variants, and the Old Greek and Theodotion could represent an emended text in light of vs. 9b or may be based

1Several conjectures can be identified. First, it has been suggested to omit the initial ה and read נָשֶׁכִּירָה "little" (Heinrich Graetz, "Beiträge zur Sach- und Worterklärung des Buches Daniel," MGWJ 20 [1871]: 352; Delitzsch, 96; Hartman and Di Lella, 221; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 159; Niditch, 219; Collins, Daniel [1993], 325; Gzella, 35). Second, it has been conjectured that the ה was originally a ה at the end of the preceding word, and the text should be read as נֲשֶׁכִּירָה נָשֶׁכִּירָה "another horn, a little one" in analogy to BA תַּלְעִיס "another horn, a little one" in Dan 7:8 (A. A. Bevan, A Short Commentary on the Book of Daniel [Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1892], 131; A. Kamphausen, The Book of Daniel: Critical Edition of the Hebrew and Aramaic Text Printed in Colors Exhibiting the Bilingual Character of the Book, with Notes, The Sacred Books of the Old Testament, pt. 18 [Leipzig: Hinrichs; Baltimore: Hopkins; London: Nott, 1896], 33; August von Gall, Die Einheitlichkeit des Buches Daniel: Eine Untersuchung [Giessen: Ricker, 1895], 48; Moore, 197; J. Dyneley Prince, A Critical Commentary on the Book of Daniel: Designed Especially for Students of the English Bible [Leipzig: Hinrichs; London: Williams & Norgate; New York: Lemcke & Buechner, 1899], 241; Marti, Daniel, 57; Riessler, Daniel (1902), 72; G. Jahn, Das Buch Daniel nach der Septuaginta hergestellt: übersetzt und kritisch erklärt [Leipzig: Pfeiffer, 1904], 77; Ehrlich, 146; Montgomery, 333, 338; Charles, 203; H. W. Obbink, Daniël, Teksten en uitleg: Praktische Bijbelverklaring [Groningen: Wolters, 1932], 65; Frank Zimmermann, "Some Verses in Daniel in the Light of a Translation Hypothesis," JBL 58 (1939): 350; idem, "Hebrew Translation in Daniel," JQR 51 [1960-61]: 201; C. Lattey, The Book of Daniel, The Westminster Version of the Sacred Scriptures [Dublin: Browne and Nolan, 1948], 85; J. T. Nelis, Daniel: uit de grondtekst vertaald en uitgelegd, De Boeken van het Oude Testament, vol. 11, no. 2 [Roermond: Romen & Zonen, 1954], 95; Ploger, Daniel, 122). A close relation between Dan 7:8 and Dan 8:9a seems evident. However, there is no manuscript or version evidence for either of the suggested readings. Third, because the Old Greek and Theodotion read λυσάμων "strong," it has been suggested that their Vorlage read נָשֶׁכִּירָה "strong" (Jeansonne, 55; McLay, The OG and Th Versions of Daniel, 171). However, the Greek versions might have read exactly as the MT but on contextual basis interpret it as λυσάμων (so Gzella, 36-37). Fourth, other emendations are to read a noun נָשֶׁכִּירָה "small thing" with reference to נָשֶׁכִּירָה in Gen 19:20 (Hartman and Di Lella, 221 who also regard נָשֶׁכִּירָה as possible; Lucas, Daniel, 205), or to revocalize into a Hiphil participle נָשֶׁכִּירָה "decreasing, appearing small" (so J. D. Michaelis, cited in Hävernich, 267-268; Heinrich Ewald, Ausführliches Lehrbuch der hebräischen Sprache des alten Bundes, 8th ed. [Göttingen: Dieterich, 1870], 664 n. 1 [§270b]; idem, Commentary on the Prophets of the Old Testament, vol. 5, Commentary on the Books of Haggai, Zakharya, Mal'aki, Yona, Barükh, Daniel [London: Williams and Norgate, 1881], 320; Kamphausen, 33; a 14th-century Babylonian-Yemenite Daniel manuscript, which was edited 1973, reads נָשֶׁכִּירָה [Morag, xiii]), or into a feminine mīqṭīl adjective נָשֶׁכִּירָה "a little" with dagesh euphonic in נ (Jacob Barth, Die Nominalbildung in den semitischen Sprachen, 2d ed. [Leipzig: Hinrichs, 1894; reprint, Hildesheim: Olms, 1967], 252 [§165]). However, all emendations are hypothetical at best, for none of these forms is attested elsewhere.
on another Vorlage that is not available for us. Thus, no textual emendation is necessary.

is another prepositional phrase with a of direction that is dependent upon the verbal root . Similar to “from the one of them” which describes the starting point of the horn’s expansion as coming forth from one of the four winds or four horns in vs. 8c, describes that the horn went out “from littleness,” meaning it separated itself from its status of insignificance.

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases
Symbolic meaning of

As previously in Daniel the noun “horn” is used symbolically here. In Daniel’s symbolic visions, the horn stands for kings, either as an individual (7:24; 8:21) or as rulers of a dynasty or empire (8:20), or for kingdoms (8:22). Thus, horns can symbolize both kings and kingdoms. In addition, the horn-motif has associations of

See Hasslberger, 8 n. 22.

See Baldwin, 157.

Daniel 8:3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9a, 20, 21; in Aramaic in Dan 7:7, 8 (4x), 11, 20 (2x), 21, 24.

It should be noted that the singular noun “king” in 8:21 could also represent a kingdom with many individual kings. See, e.g., Dan 7:17 where such an interpretation is usually taken.

On the fusion of the concepts “king” and “kingdom” see Süring, The Horn Motif, 420-421.

presumptuous craving for dominion and power. Its use on what Sirin calls the “horizontal level” designates an “aggressive, attacking, evil and even persecuting power.” The horn in Dan 8:9-14 therefore stands for a power hostile to God’s people and even to God himself against whom the activities of the horn are directed.

Clause 9b

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

In contrast to vs. 9a, the feminine verbal form is now gender congruent


2Sirin, The Horn Motif, 443 (see her extended discussion on the horn-motif in apocalyptic texts in pp. 383-422); idem, “The Horn-Motifs of the Bible and the Ancient Near East,” AUSS 22 (1984): 338; Porter, Metaphors, 64-69. On the “vertical level” the horn-motif refers in a prophetic-messianic setting to the divinely promised Righteous One (Sirin, The Horn Motif, 443-444; idem, “The Horn-Motifs,” 335-338). The horn is then “a symbol of power and victory” (Kedar-Kopfstein, 13:173). Again, on a horizontal level the idea of strength and victory also plays a role, for the horn in Dan 8, as the one in Dan 7, is victorious in its evil doings (see esp. 8:12c-d).

3See Porter, Metaphors, 65-69.
with its feminine subject “horn” which has to be supplied from vs. 9a. In general, the
verbal root נֵרֵל expresses movement or expansion.

The adverbial function of נֵרֵל is also found in Isa 56:12 in נֵרֵל “very
great indeed” and in Ps 31:24 as נֵרֵל “exceedingly” (cf. BA נֵרֵל in Dan 3:22; 7:7,
19). Note that in Isa 56:12 נֵרֵל is found in apposition to נֵרֵל. In Dan 8:9b it modifies
the verb נֵרֵל and describes the manner of the action. Thus, the phrase can be translated
as “and it became exceedingly great.”

The series of three prepositional word groups with נֵרֵל “to” and a geographical
term functions as object describing a directional change of location. This represents the
only place in the Hebrew Bible where נֵרֵל is used with נֵרֵל. The preposition marks the
goal of the horn’s movement in reference to נֵרֵל “the South,” נֵרֵל “the East,” and
נֵרֵל “the Beauty.” The article in front of each term designates the uniqueness of the
referent. The three similar prepositional phrases and the fact that נֵרֵל and נֵרֵל
designate cardinal points suggest that נֵרֵל could also denote a geographic entity, or at

---

1The noun נֵרֵל, “remnant, rest” but also “excess, abundance” (Ps 17:14; Prov 17:7; Job
22:20), can function as adverb (see Hans Bauer and Pontus Leander, Historische Grammatik der
hebräischen Sprache des Alten Testamentes [Halle: Niemeyer, 1922; reprint, Hildesheim: Olms,
1962], 632 [§801], for adverbs which are recognized as original nouns).

2See, e.g., Bevan, 131; Behrmann, 53; Marti, Daniel, 58; Montgomery, 339; Charles, 203;

3According to Arthur Jefferey, נֵרֵל could also mean “he acted big” (“The Book of

4According to the principles for the nomenclature of the cardinal points, נֵרֵל falls into the
category of local-geographical orientation using for the South a word that designates the Palestinian
arid depression south of the Shephela, whereas נֵרֵל “the East” falls into the category of solar
orientation using for the East a word that designates the place where the sun rises. See Knut Tallqvist,
“Himmelsgegenden und Winde,” StudOr 2 (1928): 105-185; O’Connor, “Cardinal-Direction Terms in
least an entity that can be geographically located. Indeed, "the beauty" occurs in the similar but fuller expression "the land of (the) beauty" in Dan 11:16, 41. The longer expression obviously refers to Palestine, and so seems the shorter one, although it is also possible that with the article refers to the city of Jerusalem, Mount Zion, or to the sanctuary in particular, as the phrase "the beautiful holy mountain" or "the mountain of the beauty of the holy" (Dan 11:45) may suggest. In fact, the following verses (vss. 10-12) with their cultic terminology strengthen the view. There are also other explanations given for the phrase. The OG reads καὶ ἐκ βορρᾶς "toward the North" (from Hebrew הָרָּאָה or הָרָאָה) (so also Graetz, 385; and Jahn, 78). Theodotion reads καὶ πρὸς τὴν δύναμιν and the Vulgate fortitudo (both from אַלּוּפָה). It has also been suggested to delete the phrase as gloss from Dan 11:41 (Moore, 197; Plöger, Daniel, 122) or as gloss to the following מָאן (Montgomery, 339), or to interpret the phrase as epxexegetical addition to מָאן (Kranichfeld, 293).

2 Cf. the description of the land promised to Israel as מָאן (Jer 3:19; Ezek 20:6, 15) and the "beauty of his ornament" in Ezek 7:20 which may refer to the land and the city Jerusalem (cf. vss. 21-23); cf. also "Babel, the beauty of kingdoms" (Isa 13:19). A similar expression for the land of Israel is מָאן מַלְאָק (Jer 3:19 [in parallelism to מַלְאָק מַלְאָק עֵנָאָה אֲבָנָה לִּי "the most beautiful inheritance of the nations"], Zech 7:14; Ps 106:24; cf. Jer 12:10). מָאן is understood as the land of Israel by most commentators.

3 מָאן can certainly be used to designate a specific place or city of pride in a land, such as the major cities of Moab (Ezek 25:9).

4 Mount Zion, the holy mountain, is "beautiful (םָה) in height" (Ps 48:2-3), "the perfection of beauty (םָה)" (Ps 50:2; Lam 2:15; cf. the use of מָה for Jerusalem in the "extended metaphor" in Ezek 16:14, 15, 25).

5 מָאן is understood as sanctuary, specifically as the temple in Jerusalem, by Jürgen-Christian Lebram ("König Antiochus im Buch Daniel," VT 25 [1975]: 768; Lebram gives a different interpretation, namely "land of beauty," in his later commentary [Daniel, 23, 94]). H. Madl ("םָה s'ג", TDOT, 12:237), and Seow (Daniel, 122). Collins takes מָאן as "the glorious [land]" and points out that "from the visionary's viewpoint, the goal of the little horn's action was the Jerusalem Temple" (Daniel [1993], 331).

that הַנָּבִי in vs. 9b connotes more than just a geographical location and specifically indicates the growing of the horn towards the sanctuary in a hostile manner. Such a qualitative distinction between הַנָּבִי and the previous terms seems also to be hinted at by the use of the disjunctive תִּפֵּה, an accent that divides vs. 9b in two with את הַנָּבִי on the one side and את הַנָּבִי on the other side. In short, one may say, the horn grows exceedingly towards "the beauty" (vs. 9b), and the rest is commentary (vss. 10-12).

Clause 10a

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

10a [תָּפַן הַנָּבִי] 

waw+Qal-ipf/3sgf/ prep+noun/cssgm/ art+noun/plm/

wayyiqtol(waw+Qal-ipf/3sgf/) PWG(prepp+CsWG(noun/cssgm/ ArtWG(art+noun/plm/)))


Clause type: wayyiqtol.

The understood subject of תָּפַן הַנָּבִי is the "horn" (vs. 9a). After a verb of movement the preposition עם indicates "spatial positioning" and "marks a point up to which a movement occurs,"¹ as in Dan 8:10a "up to the host of heavens" or "as far as the host of

¹BHGR, 291 (§39.18). The temporal meaning of עם, which indicates a point in time up to which events occur, appears to have been transferred to activities of movement toward a goal. See Ernst Jenni, "Die Präposition min in zeitlicher Verwendung bei Deuterojesaja," in Werden und Wirken des Alten Testaments: Festschrift für Claus Westermann zum 70. Geburtstag, ed. R. Albertz et al. (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1980), 291.
The difference between הָרָע (vss. 10a, 11a) and אָרֶץ (vs. 9b) is that the former includes the limit and thus expresses movement up to (terminative) whereas the latter indicates direction and thus expresses movement toward or against (allative). The assumption that אָרֶץ describes movement in a horizontal direction, whereas הָרָע is used for the movement in a vertical dimension, would fit vss. 9-11 and could be regarded as a stylistic intensification of the horizontal-vertical movement there. However, such a distinction between אָרֶץ and הָרָע cannot be maintained in regard to the whole vision because both אָרֶץ and הָרָע are used to express horizontal movement (8:6).

The combination נִדְרַל + הָרָע with הָרָע in the Qal stem occurs seven times. In all seven instances הָרָע designates the extent to which one becomes great, either in temporal (Gen 26:13; 2 Sam 7:26; 1 Chr 17:24; 2 Chr 17:12) or geographical dimension (Mic 5:3; Dan 8:10; Ezra 9:6). The latter references are syntactically similar: “Our guilt has grown even up to (הָרָע) the heavens” (Ezra 9:6); “It grew up to (הָרָע) the host of heaven” (Dan 8:10); and “He will be great unto (הָרָע) the ends of the earth” (Mic 5:3). The two occurrences of נִדְרַל + הָרָע in which נִדְרַל occurs in the Hiphil stem show the same semantic function of the preposition הָרָע, namely to designate the extent to which something grows in geographical dimension: “The male goat magnified himself exceedingly (נִדְרַלְתָא רָע)” (Dan 8:8a) and “It magnified itself up to (הָרָע) the prince of the host” (Dan 8:11a). 

1Driver, Daniel, 116; Redditt, 139.
2Cf. Waltke and O’Connor, 215 (§11.2.12a); Joüon and Muraoka, 485 (§ 133b).
4Therefore, it is difficult to assume a subjective sense for the Qal הָרָע in vs. 10a (Driver, Daniel, 116: “supposed himself to touch the stars of heaven”; cf. Zöckler, 175; Meinhold, “Daniel,”
The definite article with ד'ותל should not come as a surprise. In the book of
Daniel ד'ותל always has an article (8:8,10; 9:12; 11:4; 12:7); the same is true for ד'ותל in
the Aramaic part.\(^1\) Further, in the Hebrew Bible the phrase ד'ותל occurs always
with an article.\(^2\)

The syntactic-semantic relationship\(^3\) of the construct phrase ד'ותל could
either be an adverbial relationship of origin—"the host (entity) of/from heaven
(source)"—or a relationship of possession—"the host (possession) of heaven (possessor)"
or "the host (is/belongs) to the heaven." The context allows for both notions. The
geographical term "heavens" in the construct phrase suggests that in the vision the
movement of the horn is directed upwards.

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Meaning of ד'ותל

**Interpretations.** Different interpretations for the meaning of the ד'ותל in

\(^1\) In BA ד'ותל is always determinate ד'ותל (38x): Jer 10:11 (2x); Ezra 5:11, 12; 6:9, 10; 7:12,
21, 23 (2x); Dan 2:18, 19, 28, 37, 38, 44; 4:8, 9, 10, 12, 17, 18, 19, 20 (2x), 22, 23, 28, 30, 31, 32, 34;
5:21, 23; 6:28; 7:2, 13, 27.

\(^2\) Cf. König 3:280 (§292c). A construct word group with ד'ותל in the postconstructus occurs
76 times in the OT (the seven occurrences of ד'ותל are not considered to be construct word
groups), whereas a construct word group with ד'ותל in the postconstructus occurs 17 times, with the
possible exception of Jer 33:25 all in poetic texts: Gen 49:25; Deut 33:13; Jer 33:25; Pss 68:34; 78:23,
24; 89:30; 105:40; Job 11:8; 22:12, 14; 26:11, 13; 38:29, 33, 37; Lam 4:19.

\(^3\) For examples of different syntactic-semantic relationships in construct relationships see Jan
H. Kroeze, "Underlying Syntactic Relations in Construct Phrases of Biblical Hebrew," *JSem* 5, no. 1
Relations Expressed by the Genitive in Hebrew," *JBL* 19 (1900): 107-113; and Jan H. Kroeze, "Die
Dan 8:10a have been rendered. They can be grouped in the following categories.

1. **Humans: saints.** In this interpretation the “host of heaven” is understood to signify the people of God or the saints, which are usually identified with Israel or the Jewish people. More explicitly, the host is sometimes understood to be a specific group

---

of God's people: the true faithful Israelites (not all the Jews), the priests, the priests and rulers of Israel, or the Jewish troops. Others regard the host as referring "in a secondary sense to earthly monarchs" so that "some of the host" in vs. 10b refers to "rival kings" (cf. Isa 24:21).

2. Celestial beings. Another interpretation is that the "host of heaven" signifies God's angels, often understood as guardian or patron angels. Reference is being made to

---

1Hävernick, 273; C. P. Caspari, Zur Einführung in das Buch Daniel (Leipzig: Dörrfling and Francke, 1869), 137; Driver, Daniel, 116.


3Chr. Wordsworth, The Book of Daniel: With Notes and Introduction, 2d ed., Holy Bible: With Introduction and Notes: Old Testament, vol. 6, pt. 1. London: Rivingtons, 1871), 39; Albert Barnes, Daniel, 2 vols., Notes on the Old Testament (Grand Rapids: Baker, 1950), 2:110, 112. It is not clear whether Barnes believes that only the stars represent the priest and rulers and that the host stands for the people, or whether both expressions refer to the people of Israel.

4Buchanan, 243, 414-415.

5Baldwin, 157; an option for Redditt, 139.

the existence of an associative or spiritual connection between these angels and the saints so that oppression of the saints is also oppression of the angels.\textsuperscript{1} Still, the primary reference of the host of heaven is to angels and not to humans. This is often based on an implied mythological background in the language of Dan 8:10,\textsuperscript{2} or even an allusion to the myth of fallen angels.\textsuperscript{3}

3. Both human and supernatural beings. Goldingay allows for a double intention of the expression “heavenly army.” On the one hand, it may represent the Jewish people or the priesthood in particular, and on the other hand it points to supernatural beings so that “perhaps . . . an attack on the Jerusalem temple, the people of Israel, and the priesthood is presupposed to be implicitly an attack on the God worshiped there and on his supernatural associates who identify with Israel.”\textsuperscript{4} The background for this understanding is found in the ancient Near Eastern worldview, also reflected in the Hebrew Bible, in which “warfare was conducted on both the human and divine levels.

For this reason it is sometimes difficult to determine whether a term for YHWH’s army

\textsuperscript{1}For example, Prince refers to the “heavenly people of Israel . . . a divinely appointed angel-nation” (Daniel, 146); Thomson believes “when a nation was defeated or oppressed, its angel or star was regarded as thrown to the earth and trodden underfoot” (248); Towner speaks of “guardian angels” of Israel (121); and Collins states that “the empirical tribulation of the Jewish people is understood to have its counterpart in the heavenly battle” (Daniel [1993], 335); cf. also Smith-Christopher, 114; and Seow, Daniel, 124.


\textsuperscript{3}Mach, Entwicklungsstadien, 176.

\textsuperscript{4}Goldingay, Daniel, 209-210.
designates a human or supernatural group. . . . The use of ‘host of heaven’ in Dan. 8:10 reflects this confusion."

4. Stars in a mythological meaning: gods.² From the interpretation of the host of heaven as guardian/patron angels and the identification of mythical language it is not a far stretch to suggest that the “host of heaven” represents gods. In this view, the “host of heaven,” as well as the “stars,” refers to “heavenly bodies, especially as the objects of heathen worship, and as the celestial rulers of the heathen world.”³ The standard explanation is that the horn can fight against the heavenly gods by overthrowing in sacrilegious attacks the religion and the gods of the kingdoms and nations on earth.⁴ In a different explanation, the horn attempts to bring stars as objects of worship down to earth.⁵ Similar to this interpretation is the view that the “host of heaven” refers to heavenly beings—either angels or pagan deities—in connection with astral worship.⁶

5. Literal stars used in hyperbolic language. The expression “host of heaven”

¹Freer, 152.


³Moore, 194.

⁴Ibid. The דִּליִס “strong ones” in 8:24 are then the Gentile nations, and the expression “prince of the host” signifies that God is the supreme ruler among the host of heaven, that is, the pantheon of gods (see also Montgomery, 333-334).

⁵Marti, Daniel, 58. Marti then interprets vs. 10 as the attempt of Antiochus Epiphanes to hellenize the Jews.

⁶Porteous, 125; Philip R. Davies, Daniel, OTG (Sheffield: JSOT, 1985), 102, 104.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
refers to the haughtiness of the horn\(^1\) or denotes the cosmic aspect of the battle.

6. Meteorites. J. A. Goldstein suggests that the “host of heaven” and the fallen stars are meteorites used as idolatrous equipment (an “Abomination from Desolation”) upon the sacrificial altar of the temple.\(^2\)

7. Uncertain. Finally, some are not certain as to what the “host of heaven” refers.\(^3\)

In analyzing the meaning of the “host of heaven” it is important to note that first of all one needs to determine what Daniel saw before one should inquire about the meaning and interpretation thereof.\(^4\) Here the distinction between different levels of meaning of symbolic language bears upon the discussion. The lexical meaning of the “host of heaven” has to be established before one attempts to determine its symbolic meaning. I believe that an analysis of the usage of הַשֵּׁלֶם יָמָה in the Hebrew Bible provides the necessary data for both decisions.


\(^3\)For example, Hasslberger notes all occurrences of the phrase הַשֵּׁלֶם יָמָה in the Hebrew Bible, but he does not find concrete evidence for a connection of Dan 8:10a to any of these texts. He concludes that Dan 8:10a uses this expression as an already established *terminus technicus*, but he does not indicate to which entity this technical term refers (91). Anderson presents the interpretations that the host of heaven could refer to angelic beings or to the people of God but does not decide which one he prefers (“The Michael Figure,” 311-313). Similarly, Redditt does not decide whether the host of heaven are angels (like in 1 Kgs 22:19; 2 Chr 18:18; 1 Enoch 104:2, 4, 6) or kings (parallelism in Isa 24:21) (139).

\(^4\)This caution has also been voiced by Kliefoth (253).
"Host of heaven" in the Hebrew Bible. Besides Dan 8:10a, the construct phrase Q'M'n K3S occurs seventeen times in the Hebrew Bible with the following two meanings:  

1. Celestial bodies = stars  
   a. In non-worship context: Isa 34:4; Jer 33:22.  
   b. In worship context: "Host of heaven" is the object of worship; celestial bodies are regarded as gods: Deut 4:19; 17:3; 2 Kgs 17:16; 21:3, 5 (= 2 Chr 33:3, 5); 23:4, 5; Jer 8:2; 19:13; Zeph 1:5.  

2. Celestial beings  

First, the lexical meaning of נֵבֶט קָנָה “host of heaven” clearly refers to celestial or "For discussions of the “host of heaven,” see G. Westphal, “Qοττίν K32J,” in Orientalische Studien: Theodor Nöldeke zum siebzigsten Geburtstag (2. März 1906) gewidmet von Freunden und Schülern, ed. C. Bezold (Gießen: Töpelmann, 1906), 2:719-728; Freer, 149-152; Hermann Spieckermann, Juda unter Assur in der Sargledonzei, FRLANT, no. 129 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1982), 221-225; Helmer Ringgren, "אֱלֹהִים נָבֵט," TDOT, 12:213; Houtman, Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 194-205; Herbert Niehr, "Host of Heaven K32S נֵבֶט," DDD, 428-430; cf. also Mettinger, 123-128; and Albani, 201-203. The expression נֵבֶט "all their host" after the mentioning of "heaven" also refers to the host of heaven (Isa 34:4; 45:12; Ps 33:6; Neh 9:6; and possibly Gen 2:1).

2 Whereas in Neh 9:6 נֵבֶט כָל קָנָה certainly refers to heavenly beings, it is not clear whether כָל נֵבֶט "and all their host," mentioned earlier in this verse, refers to the stars or to heavenly beings. Usually, scholars take כָל נֵבֶט as referring to the stars and point to Gen 2:1, although there, too, it is disputed whether the expression stands for the celestial bodies—sun, moon, and stars—or for all living inhabitants of the earth (and the heavens), in the sense of "all that is in them" (cf. Exod 20:11), or for both (for the problems of understanding נֵבֶט in Gen 2:1 and a survey of different views see Manfred Görg, "Das Übersetzungsproblem in Gen 2,1," BN 95 [1998]: 5-11 [he suggests to take נֵבֶט as a homonym to נֵבֶט "host" and to regard it as an Egyptian loanword, influenced by gb3, with the meaning "ornament" or "outfit"]; and Hans-Georg Mutius, "Der hebräische Text von Genesis 2,1 im Licht der Septuaginta und der rabbinischen Schriftauslegung," in Sachverhalt und Zeitbezug: Semitische und alttestamentliche Studien Adolf Denz zum 65. Geburtstag, ed. R. Bartelms and N. Nebes, Jenaer Beiträge zum Vorderen Orient, no. 4 [Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2001], 107-112). However, that כָל נֵבֶט in Neh 9:6 refers to heavenly beings could be supported by the occurrence of כָל נֵבֶט in the same verse (Neh 9:6) designating the angels and also by a possible structure in which the tripartite division of the cosmos in heaven, earth, and sea is expressed by mentioning each area and the beings belonging to that area (cf. the clause "you give life to all of them" right after the tripartite creation is mentioned).
astral bodies, more specifically to the stars (#1). In other words, the “host of heaven” and
the stars refer to one and the same.1 In a non-worship context occurs twice
in its literal meaning, in conjunction with other terms of the natural world,2 where in Jer
33:22 it is used as a simile for the descendants of David (#1a). In a context where the
“host of heaven” is the object of worship it still refers to celestial bodies, but takes on an
extended meaning insofar as worshipers consider the “host of heaven” to be gods (#1b).

The worship context can be established by terms that express an act of worship or are
associated with worship.3 Several times the “host of heaven” is mentioned on the same

1 A comparison between the close passages in Deut 4:19 and 17:3—Deut 17:3 refers back to
the initial command not to worship the heavenly bodies in 4:13 by the phrase “which I have not
commanded”—shows that the host of heaven and the stars are identical. In Deut 17:3 the host of
heaven substitutes the term “stars” in Deut 4:19. Furthermore, in Deut 4:19 the three terms sun,
moon, and stars are each introduced by the object marker הָא, and the phrase “all the host of heaven”
is added after “the stars” without introducing it by the object marker. Syntactically, the addition of
“all the host of heaven” could stand in apposition to all three expressions (sun, moon, stars) or only to
the last one (stars). Here again, Deut 17:3 is a reason to identify in 4:19 “all the host of heaven” as an
alternative expression to “the stars”:

III. Stars/Host of Heaven II. Moon I. Sun

Deut 4:19 אַלּוֹ כָּלָה הָאֵלֶּהַ עָלַי
Deut 17:3 אַלּוֹ כָּלָה הָאֵלֶּהַ עָלַי

Deuteronomy 4:19 could then be translated “... the sun // and the moon // and the stars, which is: all
the host of heaven” (so also Houtman, Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 196). Thus, the three terms
sun, moon, and stars (Gen 37:9; Deut 4:19; Isa 13:10; Jer 31:35; Ezek 32:7; Joel 2:10; 4:15; Ps 148:3;
Ecc 12:2) find their correspondent in the three terms sun, moon, and all the host of heaven (Deut
17:3; Jer 8:2). Similarly, on the day of divine judgment, the "day of YHWH," the four entities
affected are the stars of heaven, their constellations (בְּשֵׁמוֹ), the sun and the moon (Isa 13:10)
which are the entities the Israelites had worshiped—“the sun and moon and constellations (בְּשֵׁמוֹ)
and all the host of heaven” (2 Kgs 23:5)—except that the stars of heaven stand for the host of heaven.

2 In Isa 34:4 with כְּלַכְלִים הָאֵלֶּהַ "heaven/sky"; in Jer 33:22 in parallelism with הָאֵל "sand of the
sea."

3 In hithpalel/hišṭaphel “worship” (Deut 4:19; 17:3; 2 Kgs 17:16; 21:3; Jer 8:2; Zeph
1:5; 2 Chr 33:3), "serve" (Deut 4:19; 17:3; 2 Kgs 17:16; 21:3; Jer 8:2; 2 Chr 33:3), "to
build/erect an altar for" (2 Kgs 21:3, 5 = 2 Chr 33:3, 5), "burn incense/sacrifices" (2 Kgs 23:5; Jer
19:13), "pour out drink offerings" (Jer 19:13), and הָאֵל "to love," אָבָר "to go after,"
חֲרָבוֹת "to seek" (Jer 8:2).
level as Baal and Asherah (2 Kgs 17:16; 21:3, 5; 23:4, 5; 2 Chr 33:3, 5; cf. also Zeph 1:4-5) or “other gods” (Jer 19:13). However, its combination with sun, moon, and other terms of the natural world (Deut 4:19; 17:3; 2 Kgs 23:5; Jer 8:2) still indicates that the “host of heaven” refers to astral bodies.  

In yet another lexical meaning, the “host of heaven” can also refer to “the heavenly entourage of Yahweh” or the heavenly army (#2). In a non-worship context

---

1 M. Weinfeld concludes that the worship of the host of heaven penetrated into Judah through the Assyrian influence in the time of Ahaz and Manasseh in the 8th and 7th cent. B.C.E. (M. Weinfeld, “The Worship of Molech and of the Queen of Heaven and Its Background,” UF 4 [1972]: 149-151; so also Speickermann, 222-224; Othmar Keel and Christoph Uehlinger, Gods, Goddesses, and Images of God in Ancient Israel [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1998], 370, cf. 316-319). On the other hand, John Day suggests that the sun cult was Canaanite (Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of Canaan, JSOTSup, no. 265 [Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 2000], 151-1155). However the sun cult may have entered Judah, the thesis by J. Glen Taylor that the worship of the host of heaven was a Yahwistic phenomenon and in some contexts Yahweh was worshiped as the sun appears to over-interpret the biblical evidence (Yahweh and the Sun: Biblical and Archaeological Evidence for Sun Worship in Ancient Israel, JSOTSup, no. 111 [Sheffield: JSOT Press, 1993], 105-107, 172-183). For Yahweh as sun god and solar elements in the worship of Yahweh see also Hans-Peter Stähi, Solare Elemente im Jahweglauben des Alten Testaments, OBO, no. 66 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag, 1985), esp. 30-51; Herbert Niehr, Der höchste Gott: Altestamentlicher JHWH-Glaube im Kontext syrisch-kanaanäischer Religion des 1. Jahrtausends v. Chr., BZAW, no. 190 (Berlin: de Gruyter, 1990), 150-161; Othmar Keel and Christoph Uehlinger, “Jahwe und die Sonnengotttheit von Jerusalem,” in Ein Gott allein? JHWH-Verehrung und biblischer Monotheismus im Kontext der israelitischen und altorientalischen Religionsgeschichte, ed. W. Dietrich and M. A. Klopfenstein, OBO, no. 139 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag, 1994), 269-306, esp. 292-300; and the recent suggestion of the development of the image of Yahweh as a sun god in an anti-Assyrian context by Martin Arndt, “Sonne der Gerechtigkeit”: Studien zur Solarisierung der Jahwe-Religion im Lichte von Psalm 72, BZAR, no. 1 (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2000). Against the equation of Yahweh with the sun see John Day, “Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of Canaan,” in Ein Gott allein? JHWH-Verehrung und biblischer Monotheismus im Kontext der israelitischen und altorientalischen Religionsgeschichte, ed. W. Dietrich and M. A. Klopfenstein, OBO, no. 139 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht; Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag, 1994), 188-191; idem, Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of Canaan, 156-161.

Pace Speickermann who regards the astral triad “sun, moon, and host of heaven” as a list of gods (222).

3 HALOT, 3:995.
(2a), “all the host of heaven” is standing to the left and right of YHWH who is sitting on his throne (1 Kgs 22:19 = 2 Chr 18:18). In a worship context (2b), the “host of heaven” worships YHWH (Neh 9:6). In these texts, אֶלֶ֖כֶת certainly designates celestial beings and cannot be understood as stars since they act as persons (cf. the verbs “stand” and “worship”).

In light of such usage of אֶלֶ֖כֶת in the Hebrew Bible, the lexical meaning of the “host of heaven” in Dan 8:10 can therefore be identified as celestial entities, either as stars or as angels. The Greek versions reflect these possibilities, without providing further help.

---


2In a sense the two possible meanings—celestial bodies (stars) and celestial beings (angels)—do not lie very far apart and are connected in two other texts (Isa 14:13; Job 38:7). For Mach, the expression יְהוָה נָר links angels with the stars (Entwicklungsstadien, 25, 173, referring to Ps 148:1-3; Job 38; and Judg 5:20) and is one of the designations used for the heavenly council (16; Mach also lists Seraphim, Cherubim, Sons of God, and Holy Ones as group names for the heavenly council). Keel and Uehlinger suggest that the Judahite designation for individuals of the host of heaven is the title נָרָא יְהוָה “angel/messenger of YHWH” (Gods, 347). For Patrick D. Miller, the term יְהוָה נָר is a “technical term referring to a fixed and specific group usually associated with astral elements” (The Divine Warrior in Early Israel, HSM, no. 5 [Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1973], 154; see his discussion on נָרָא יְהוָה on pp. 151-155) and may function “as a part of the divine assembly” (67). It is not necessary here to engage in a study of the Begriffsgeschichte of the “host of heaven.” Such studies have been undertaken, e.g., by Westphal and by Houtman. Westphal argues that the history of the phrase יְהוָה נָר developed from the designation of natural stars to the idea that there is a supernatural, yet humanlike, host of heaven which was understood as the heavenly army. For him, יְהוָה נָר combines two developments: from stars to heavenly beings, and from the human army to the heavenly army (719-728). In contrast, Houtman asserts that from the beginning יְהוָה נָר had been understood by the Israelites both as heavenly council and as stars without drawing sharp differences between the two (Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 194-198, 204-205). Cf. also Niehr, “Host of Heaven,” DDD, 428-429.

3Old Greek reads ὡς τῶν ἀστέρων τοῦ οὐρανοῦ “unto the stars of heaven,” while Theodotion reads ὡς τῆς δυνάμεως τοῦ οὐρανοῦ “unto the powers of heaven.” However, “the
Before proceeding to the discussion of the symbolic meaning of the “host of heaven,” two equivalent or similar terms need to be considered briefly: “host of YHWH” and “host.” The host of heaven seems to be closely related to the host of YHWH, not in a euphemistic but in a conceptual way. The expression “host of YHWH” (יהוהארstackpath) can refer both to the heavenly army (Josh 5:14, 15) as well as to the Israelite host which YHWH himself calls “my host” (Exod 7:4) and is described as “the hosts of YHWH” (Exod 12:41). The simple term “host” (עשׁ) can represent military service (Num 1:3, etc.) or military troops (Num 2:4, etc.), the people of God (Exod 6:26; 12:17, 51), the service at the tent of meeting (Num 4:3, 23, 30, 35, 39, 43, etc.), the celestial bodies (Isa 40:26; translation of sb in the LXX is wholly inconsistent) (Ringgren, “יוה,” 12:215), and it seems that the readings of the Greek versions for עשת in Dan 8:10-13 exhibit the same inconsistency.

1It has been argued that in Dan 8:10a ד舭וכ “the heaven” is a symbol for God (Goldwurm, 223; Buchanan, 243: “Heaven was a euphemism for God” [cf. 414 n. 37]) so that the “host of heaven” is actually the “host of God.” Heaven as a synonym for God himself is found in Dan 4:26; also in 1 Macc 3:18; 4:10, 24, 55; 12:15; 2 Macc 7:11. However, in Dan 8:9a and its context there are no indicators that “heaven” should be taken as synonym for God. Elsewhere in the Hebrew of Daniel עשת always refers to the natural heaven (Dan 8:8; 9:12; 11:4; 12:7). And even if “the heaven” should be a symbol for God, this does not help in determining the symbolic meaning of the host of heaven (pace Buchanan who identifies the host or army of God as referring to the Jewish army).


3Note that the phrase עשת עשת ליבר ליבר אלהים המזרע “to perform service” and in 4:23 synonymous with עשת ליבר ליבר אלהים המזרע “to do the work in the tent of meeting” so that עשת is best understood as the sanctuary service but not as the sanctuary personnel (cf. Baruch A. Levine, Numbers 1-20, AB, vol. 4 [New York: Doubleday, 1993], 134). Still, the line between עשת designating the sanctuary work itself (“service”) on the one hand and designating the personnel responsible for that work (“work force”) on the other hand sometimes cannot be drawn sharply, as is, e.g., evident in Levine’s consistent translation of עשת in Num 4 with “work force” (163-165).
45:12), or the angelic host (Pss 103:21; 148:2). It is evident that the specific meaning of these terms with גֵּרֵן must be determined by the context in which they are used.

"Host of heaven" in Dan 8:10a and its symbolic meaning. The expression גֵּרֵן "host of heaven" in Dan 8:10a has of course a lexical and a symbolic meaning. On the lexical level, the host of heaven denotes celestial bodies (i.e., stars), and it is easy to imagine that in the vision the host of heaven appeared as stars. However, symbolically the host of heaven does not refer to literal celestial bodies. Both the military expression גֵּרֵן “commander of the host” in vs. 11a, which designates the leader of that host, and the host connoting an army suggest strongly that beings are involved. Also, the trampling (רָבַר) of some of the host and some of the stars (vs. 10c) implies that the object of the trampling are persons (cf. 8:7). Besides, it would not make much sense to have the horn fight against literal stars. Thus, beyond the lexical meaning the host of heaven has a symbolic meaning in which it refers to beings.

The question that remains is: Does גֵּרֵן in Dan 8:10a refer to stars, which symbolically could stand for human beings, as will be shown in the discussion of גֵּרֵן in vs. 10b, or to angels? There are supportive arguments for both sides.

1The parallelisms in Pss 103:20-21 and 148:2-3 suggest that the host can be identified with the angelic host. In Ps 103:20 the angels are called attributively גָּדוֹל “warrior of strength,” alluding to the angels as army. See Mettinger, 123-124; Mach, Entwicklungsstadien, 25.

2 Cf. Westphal, 720.

3 So Houtman, Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 202-203. See my grammatical-syntactic comments on גֵּרֵן below.

4 Collins refutes correctly the view that the host of heaven and the stars represent pagan gods (so Moore, Marti, Montgomery, Delcor, Hartman) on the grounds that pagan gods would not be
1. *The host of heaven as symbol for saints.* After the host of heaven is mentioned in vs. 10a the first contextual factor to determine its meaning is the immediately following phrase "and from the stars" in vs. 10b, which is syntactically parallel to "from the host." The host of heaven and the stars seem to be interchangeable so that one is inclined to argue that "the host appears as stars in the vision." The symbolic meaning of the host of heaven has therefore to be identified with the symbolic meaning of the stars. The term "stars" in its symbolic meaning refers to human beings, more specifically to God’s covenant people (see the analysis of vs. 10b). The joining of "some of the host" with "some of the stars," whatever the exact relationship between the two phrases may be, suggests that the host falls into the same category as the stars. If the relationship is marked by a *waw explicativum* the host would be identical with the stars, and thus the host would also refer to God’s covenant people. In fact, it seems that the expression "נֶעַ֣בְרֵים נֶעַ֣בְרֵים" "is not metaphorical in itself." Therefore, the stars should be considered as an explication of the host of heaven, which connects the host to the symbolic meaning of the stars, that is, to God’s covenant people.

---

1. Spieckermann notes that the synonymity of יְהַבְרֵים and נֶעַ֣בְרֵים is demonstrated in Jer 33:22 and Dan 8:10 (225).


3. Zöckler, 176.

4. Van der Woude keenly observes that "'אַבְרִים" has an entirely different meaning when used to imitate the terminology of the patriarchal promise of descendants instead of כּוֹנְבַיִם 'stars' to designate the innumerable stars (Jer 33:22; cf. also Dan 8:10)" ("אַבְרִים," 2:1042).
In BH the verbal root רָםָס used with a personal object implies destruction or death. In Dan 8:10c the verbal root רָםָס is used with some of the host and some of the stars as personal object. The clause obviously refers to the destruction or annihilation of beings to which the host and the stars refer. It therefore makes more sense to interpret host and stars as human beings who are being terrorized, rather than to believe that angels are destroyed by the horn.

A stylistic link, though a weak one, is the observation of a possible alliteration and assonance between the construct נָעַשׂ "host" (vs. 10a) and the noun נָבֶי “beauty, beautiful (land)” in the previous clause (vs. 9b). The growing of the horn toward the beauty (נָבֶי) results in a growing of the horn up to the host (נָעַשׂ), which could indicate that the host of heaven is associated with the beauty, either that the inhabitants of the promised land are called the host, or that the people in association with the sanctuary/temple (נָבָה) are called the host.

Finally, in the interpretation of the vision, both expressions for those who are the object of the king’s aggression can refer to human beings: דִּינָשׁ "strong ones" is associated with humans and נָבֶה יְהוֹשָׁע "people of holy ones" can denote either humans or

---

1 See the comments in the analysis of vs. 10c below.

2 See von Gall, 51.

3 So or similarly Hitzig, 131; Kranichfeld, 293; Zöckler, 175; Meinhold, "Daniel," 308; Prince, Daniel, 241; Goettsberger, 61; Stahl, Weltengagement, 173. Interestingly, the noun נָבֶי “beauty” occurs once in the plural construct as נָבֶה נְבָה (Jer 3:19) from נָבָה כָּוָה, which is the same form as the plural of נָעַשׂ "host."
angels (see analysis under מַלְאָכִים in vs. 10b). Since these terms obviously correspond to the host and the stars in the vision, those should also be associated with human beings.

The conclusion that the host of heaven in its symbolic meaning refers to the people of God does not automatically mean that one has to identify them with the Jewish people. Indeed, the text in vs. 10 itself does not indicate who the people of God were. Here again, it is important to differentiate between the symbol (heavenly bodies; physical stars), its symbolic meaning (people of God), and the interpretative meaning, that is, the historical application of the symbolic meaning (people of Israel, Jews, God’s people in NT times, etc.). Kliefoth correctly points out that the interpretation of who the people of God are depends upon one’s conclusion as to what time the vision refers to.2

1Two lines of argumentation would eliminate Dan 8:24 as a possible help in establishing the identity of the host of heaven. First, Collins claims that Dan 8:24-25 “is plainly corrupt” and suggests with the help of the LXX a different Hebrew reading in which he then suspects a dittography of שָׁלָשׁוֹת. “Consequently the reference to the people of the holy ones must be regarded as textually suspect and no conclusions as to its meaning can be based on this verse” (Apocalyptic Vision, 139; cf. also 141: “In view of the corruption of the text [Dan 8:24-25], it is not possible to decide whether or not Israel is included in the interpretation”). For Collins, the holy ones are equivalent with the host of heaven and the stars, but “since ‘host’ and ‘stars’ refer unequivocally to heavenly, angelic beings, the natural inference is that the holy ones are angels too” (ibid.). This conclusion is dependent upon Collins’s understanding of Dan 8:24. Collins can only uphold the view that the host of heaven and the stars refer to celestial beings by removing the possibility that 8:24 could help in the identification of the ones attacked by the horn. However, there is no evidence and no necessity for a negative evaluation of vs. 24 as “corrupt.” Second, Houtman sees a difference in language between the vision (vss. 10-11) and the interpretation (vs. 24). For him, instead of מַלְאָכִים נַעֲבַד vs. 24 mentions מִלְאָכָה, the mighty heathen nations and/or their (earthly) leaders. And the attack on the מַלְאָכִים, the God of Israel, is mentioned in vs. 24 as an attack on מָלָאךְ מֵאֲלֶית, that is Israel. Houtman concludes that Dan 8:10, 24 highlights the concept that “there exists a correspondence between gods/patrons and nations”: The end of the autonomous existence of the nations and their cult means the end of the gods, which is expressed by the falling down of the astral bodies (Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 202-203). However, Houtman’s analysis cannot convince since the correspondences, which he identifies, are questionable. In the interpretation the corresponding term to מַלְאָכִים is not מַלָאךְ מֵאֲלֶית but certainly מַלָאךְ מַלָאךְ "prince of princes.” This means that מַלָאךְ מַלָאךְ corresponds to the host of heaven and/or the stars. And the host of heaven and the stars are referred to as מַלָאךְ מְלָאךְ in the interpretation.

2Kliefoth, 254-255.
2. The host of heaven as symbol for angels. Immediately following vs. 10 the host is mentioned in the expression אָרְאֵי אֶדֶם “commander of the host” (vs. 11a) in which it seems to refer primarily to the celestial army. One would expect the host in vs. 11a to be the same host mentioned previously in vs. 10a and 10b, particularly as it carries the definite article.¹ There are several reasons why חַיֵּי in the title “commander of the host” appears to refer to angels. First, if the phrases אָרְאֵי אֶדֶם in the vision and וֹאָרְאֵי אֶדֶם “prince of princes” in the interpretation (8:25) designate the same being and are parallel expressions, the host would be equated with וֹאָרְאֵי “princes” which are angels, as they are mentioned elsewhere during a vision or audition in the book of Daniel.² Of course, it may be that the interpretation uses different language from the vision or employs a different title for the same being. In the vision this being could be referred to as the leader of the saints, while in the interpretation the same being is identified as the leader of the angels. Second, the heavenly אָרְאֵי is reminiscent of the epithet of YHWH as “YHWH of hosts” (הַיָּדֵּהוֹ וֹאָדֶם) in which the hosts are usually considered to be a reference to the heavenly armies. And third, the analysis of the phrase אָרְאֵי shows that it is intertextually linked to the “commander of the host of YHWH” in Josh 5:14-15. There, the host of YHWH is again the heavenly army. In addition, the commander of the heavenly army assumes the role of the actual leader of the Israelites and is recognized as such by Joshua, since he commands Joshua what to do and Joshua carries out his orders.

¹There is no reason to assume with Goldwurm a difference in meaning between חַיֵּי in the title of the prince of the host (angels) and חַיֵּי in the phrase “host of heaven” (people of Israel) (223).

²Dan 8:11a, 25; 10:13 (2x), 20 (2x), 21; 12:1; for further discussion see the section “The term הָדָא in the book of Daniel” (below).
It is thus possible that intertextually the נפתלך in Dan 8:11a should be understood primarily as the heavenly commander of the heavenly army but by extension as the heavenly leader of the earthly host also. In sum, the “host” in the title נפתלך, though it seems to designate the angelic host, can also refer to the earthly host of God’s people.

A further consideration that may suggest that angelic beings are involved with the activities of the horn is the mentioning of “holy ones” (i.e., angels) in Dan 8:13-14. A holy one asks the question רֹאֲשּׁׁ בְּנַי וַעֲלָמָּי “until when?”—a question that always expresses concern and some kind of involvement on the part of the one who asks that question. The angels therefore seem to be somehow affected by the activities of the horn. But again, this does not necessarily mean that the host of heaven in vs. 10a refers to angels, simply because the idea that the angelic world takes part in what is happening in the human world is portrayed elsewhere in the book of Daniel (see esp. Dan 10:10-21; 12:1).

In view of the above discussion the possibility arises that נפתלך “host of heaven” has a double meaning in the vision of Dan 8. It could refer symbolically to the saints of God and also to the angels of God.1 In the book of Daniel such a linkage

1Houtman elaborates the idea that in relation with the concept of נפתלך נ QS there is a correspondence between the heavenly world and the earth (Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 194-205). Keil comments regarding Dan 8:10-11: “As in heaven the angels and stars, so on earth the sons of Israel form the host of God; and as the angels on account of the glory of their nature are called קדשים (holy ones), so the Israelites by virtue of their being chosen to be the holy nation of God, forming the kingdom of heaven in this world. As God, the King of this people, has His throne in heaven, so there also Israel have their true home, and are in the eyes of God regarded as like unto the stars” (297). The connection between the people of God and the angels in Dan 8:10 was already pointed out by Jerome, Commentariorum in Danielem, 854: “id est filios Israel, qui angelorum uallabantur auxilio” (“that is the children of Israel, who were safeguarded by the assistance of angels”). Compare Lacocque’s view, for whom the intimate relation between heaven and earth explains why an attack on the saints on earth can be described as an attack of the host of heaven or the stars, and even as “an attack on the divine majesty” (The Book of Daniel, 162).
between the angelic world and the human world is found explicitly in chap. 10 and implicitly by the interest of angels shown in human affairs. In fact, there seems to be the concept of a war pact between angels and humans, between the angelic host and the host of God’s people. Biblical examples for the cooperation of human and angels in war are the “prince of the host of YHWH” in Josh 5 and the celestial princes in the book of Daniel (8:25; 10:13, 20, 21:12:1), both closely associated with Dan 8:10-11. In view of the increasing use of cultic terminology in Dan 8:9-14, it is also noteworthy that the connection between the angelic and human world may not only exist on a military level but could also be effective on a cultic level.

---

1Mach, Entwicklungsstadien, 241, 251. Patrick D. Miller comments that “from earliest times on Israel viewed its battles as under the aegis of Yahweh and with the participation of the various cosmic forces which he commanded as the divine warrior, general of the heavenly armies.” The exodus and the conquest are intimately linked with “Yahweh going forth at the head of the armies of heaven and Israel (e.g., Deut 33:2-5, 26-29; Judg 5; Ps 68, esp. vss. 8-13 and 18; Hab 3; cf. Josh 5:13-15, a most important reference)” (“The Divine Council and the Prophetic Call to War,” VT 18 [1968]: 101). Miller summarizes the function of the encounter between Joshua and the נירפ in Josh 5:13-15 succinctly: “The general of Yahweh’s heavenly armies had come to the general of Yahweh’s earthly armies to indicate that the holy war against Canaan had begun and that the armies of heaven were joined with those of earth in the enterprise” (“Cosmology and World Order in the Old Testament: The Divine Council as Cosmic-Political Symbol,” HBT 9, 2 [1987]: 58). Likewise, Marjo Christina Annette Korpel, in discussing “divine warrior” imagery in relation to the armies of YHWH, notes: “The divine name YHWH Seabot should be seen as a comprehensive designation including all creatures, whether on earth or elsewhere. There is insufficient reason to suppose that this designation of YHWH originally referred to either the divine or the human armies” (A Rift in the Clouds: Ugaritic and Hebrew Descriptions of the Divine, UBL, no. 8 [Münster: UGARIT-Verlag, 1990], 513).

It seems that the battle between supernatural forces remains a constant theme in the background of the text. The expression קָרְבָּן הַשְּׁכָרֶה hints at this cosmic battle. The horn is certainly a human power. Such an understanding is obviously supported by the succession of earthly kingdoms in Dan 7 and 8. As a human power the horn apparently fights against other human powers. Thus, the דֵּקֵק should be understood as referring to God’s people. Still, on a larger scale, the horn as human power typifies the role of a transcendent, anti-divine demon who rages war against the good angels and against God himself. In a similar way, the expression the “host of heaven” refers to the host of saints which is God’s army on earth, but at the same time hints at the heavenly army that is also involved in this cosmic battle.

Clause 10b

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

10b [נַחֲמָאָה] מַרְאָה הַשְּׁכָרֶה יְהֹוָה יְהוֹדֵדְרֵיהוֹמ

waw+Hiphil-ipf/3sgf/ noun/sgf+/He locale prep+art+noun/sgm/
waw+prep+art+noun/plm/

wayyiqtol(waw+Hiphil-ipf/3sgf/) noun/sgf+/He locale
PWG(prep+Art WG(art+noun/sgm/)) waw+PWG(prep+Art WG(art+noun/plm/))

predicate [+subject] +description of change of location +object

Clause type: wayyiqtol.

¹One needs to be careful not to imply that the horn symbolizes a demon. For example, Lewis O. Anderson expresses the idea that the horn is not “simply a self-magnifying earthly power but also a transcendent demon which the earthly Little Horn power embodies” (“The Michael Figure in the Book of Daniel” [Th.D. diss., Andrews University, 1997], 312). Rather, it appears that the horn is empowered by demonic forces, and would typify in its actions the demonic forces behind it.
The understood subject of בּוֹרָא is the “horn” (vs. 9a). The noun רֹאשׁ with he
locale (or he of direction) refers to the place to which the object is transported to, namely
“to the earth.” Both prepositions נָמַל before each part of the object function as min
partitive and thus the prepositional phrases refer to a part of a greater whole, “some of the
host and some of the stars.” The article הָאָנֶס refers to the previous mention of
הָאָנֶס in vs. 10a. The article הָאָנֶס is apparently placed in analogy to the
article הָאָנֶס in and refers to the whole group of stars. Furthermore, the article is
conditioned by the prose character of this text for אַבָּלָנֶס, when it refers to the stars as a
group in general (34 out of 37 times), is always definite when used in prose, whereas in
poetry it may be definite or indefinite.

It is not possible to determine the relationship between the “stars” and the “host of
heaven” on syntactic grounds. Rather semantic and textual considerations determine the
meaning of both stars and host first, and then, as a consequence, clarify their relation.

---

1The partitive use of מִן is sometimes considered under the larger concept of separation; cf. N.
Zerweck, Die hebräische Präposition “min” (Leipzig: Akademische Buchhandlung, 1894), 30; König,
2:288 (§112.2), 3:27-28 (§81); GKC, 382 n.2 (§119w); Jolion and Muraoka, 489 (§133e); and Gibson,
148 (§118 R. 1). Other occurrences of min partitive in the book of Daniel are found in Dan 1:2, 3, 5,
19; 8:9; 11:5, 7, 35; and in Aramaic in Dan 2:42. It is not necessary to assume an ellipsis of “some
of” or “a few of” before the prepositional phrases (Schindele, “Textkonstituierung,” 8).

2In three occurrences the expression does not refer to the stars as a group in general: The
singular כַּלַּכַּלַּכַּל is found in Num 24:17 and Amos 5:26, and the expression “eleven stars” refers
symbolically to Joseph’s eleven brothers in Gen 37:9.

3With article: Gen 1:16; 15:5; Deut 4:19; Dan 8:10; 12:3; Neh 4:15; in construct relation with

4With article: Judg 5:20; Isa 47:13; Ps 147:4; Eccl 12:2; in construct relation with a definite

5Isa 14:13; Jer 31:35; Joel 2:10; 4:15; Obad 4; Pss 8:4; 136:9; 148:3; Job 9:7; 22:12; 25:5;
38:7.
Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Meaning of מָצָאִים

Interpretations. There are various options on how to interpret the relationship between the phrase מָצָאִים and the previous מִן הַמֵּאֲסָרָה, which of course affects the understanding of the symbolic and interpretative meaning of the stars.

1. The stars are synonymous to the host. The conjunction waw is explicative:
   “some of the host, that is some of the stars” or “some of the host, namely of the stars.”
   In other words, the stars are simply an explanation of the host of heaven.

2. The stars and the host designate different entities. The conjunction waw is coordinative: either the stars are totally separate from the host (“some of the host and some of the stars”) or the stars are part of the host (“some of the host and [even] including some of the stars”).

3. The phrase “and some of the stars” is a secondary addition or was originally a

---

1 Bertholdt, 489; Hävemick, 272; von Lengerke, 378; Hitzig, 131; Kliefoth, 253; Kranichfeld, 293; Keil, 296; Rohling, Daniel, 238; Zöckler, 175-176; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 308; Bevan, 132; Behrmann, 53; Tiefenthal, 267-268; Prince, Daniel, 146, 242; Montgomery, 340; Aalders, Het boek Daniel, 162; Goettsberger, 61; Charles, 204; Linder, 335; Lattey, 85; Leupold, 346; Young, Daniel, 171; Slotki (1951), 67; Aalders, Daniel (1962), 175; Delcor, 173; Walvoord, 186; Wood, 213; Hartman and Di Lella, 225, 236; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 161-162; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 398 (offered as alternative); Goldingay, Daniel, 197, 209-210; Collins, Daniel (1993), 332; Haag, Daniel, 64; Miller, Daniel, 226; Smith-Christopher, 113; Di Lella, Daniel, 160; Redditt, 139; Gowan, Daniel, 120; Lucas, Daniel, 205; cf. Houtman, Der Himmel im Alten Testament, 196.


3 Ewald, Daniel, 261; Meinhold, Composition, 78; von Gall, 51; Hasslberger, 55; Goldwurm, 223; Sûring, The Horn Motif, 414; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 397 (offered as alternative).

4 Compare as background Deut 4:19 where the stars (הַמָּצָאִים) are part of all host of heaven (הַמָּצָאִים).
gloss for "from the host of heaven." From the viewpoint of a text-oriented approach, such a solution is the weakest.

With regard to the meaning of the stars, similar interpretations are found as with the host of heaven. Since the host of heaven and the stars are usually regarded as synonymous, their symbolic meaning as well as their interpretative meaning is considered to be the same also. Thus there are again several possible interpretations for the meaning of the stars: human beings (God's people), celestial beings, heathen idols/gods, or literal stars in metaphoric imagery. Those who consider the stars not synonymous with the host of heaven assert that, if the host of heaven represents God's people, the stars represent only the faithful or pious ones of God's people or a special group among the people of God, or, if the host of heaven represents celestial beings, the stars represent the people of God.

---

1 Moore, 197; Riessler, Daniel (1902), 72; H. Louis Ginsberg, Studies in Daniel, Texts and Studies of the Jewish Theological Seminary of America, no. 14 (New York: The Jewish Theological Seminary of America, 1948), 52; Kraeling, 57; Hartman and Di Lella, 221, 225, 236; Niditch, 219 (noted as possible by Goldingay, Daniel, 197; Stahl, Weltengagement, 173). To excise as a gloss requires first to delete the preceding waw for no other reason (so Hartman and Niditch).

2 For references see the list of interpretations regarding the "host of heaven."

3 Meinhold, "Daniel," 308; Driver, Daniel, 116; Leupold, 346; Young, Daniel, 171; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 162 (refers to the passage in 1 Enoch 43:1-4 in which a vision of "stars of heaven" is interpreted by an angel as "the names of the holy ones who dwell upon the earth and believe in the name of the Lord of the Spirits forever and ever"); Goldwurm, 223.

4 These prominent members of God's people (Ewald, Daniel, 261; Maier, 304) are suggested to be "high officials" (Beek, 94); "great civil and religious powers" (Fausset, 427); "either important military commanders [Num 24:17] or prominent faithful ones [Dan 12:3]" (Meinhold, Composition, 78); Levites (Grotius, cited in Thomson, 241); or teachers and leaders of God's people (von Gall, 51; Stokmann, 127 n. 3; Hardy, 287-288).

"Stars" in the Hebrew Bible. In order to bring light to this issue it is important
to investigate the use of פְּלָקְנָה (understood as פלָקָנָה) in Dan 8:10b and how הֶלְכָּנָה is used figuratively or
symbolically in the Hebrew Bible.1

Without being mentioned before or afterwards, the stars appear rather suddenly as
an affected object of the horn's action in Dan 8:10b. Syntactically, פְּלָקָנָה is on the same
level as מִן. Both occur with an article in a prepositional phrase with min partitive and
both form part of the object. The host is the host of heaven (vs. 10a); the stars should
also be thought of as "stars of heaven." The clause itself makes this clear by mentioning
that both "some of the host" and "some of the stars" are thrown down to earth, obviously
from heaven.2

The noun פְּלָקָנָה occurs thirty-seven times in BH and its lexical meaning is clearly
"star,"3 thus also in Dan 8:10b. Like the expression "host of heaven," "stars" could be
objects of worship, which, of course, does not mean that the term "stars" would have the
meaning of divine beings, rather the physical elements may have been thought of as
worthy of worship.4 The question that begs to be answered here is what kind of

1For the figurative meaning of "stars" see R. E. Clements, "פלקנָה kō kāb," TDOT, 7:81-83.
2So a supplementary reading of vs. 10b would be "and he cast down to the earth some of the
host of heaven (supplied from vs. 10a) and some of the stars of heaven (in analogy to the host of
heaven)." To be sure, this is not to suggest a textual emendation.
3Only in Amos 5:26 פְּלָקָנָה may designate a royal ensign in the phrase "the star of your gods."
4For example, Ida Zatelli investigated the astrological beliefs and practices of ancient Israel
and argued that a classsematic analysis of פְּלָקָנָה / הֶלְכָּנָה distinguishes between the classes "physical /
natural elements" and "divinities" ("Astrology and the Worship of the Stars in the Bible," ZAW 103
[1991]: 93-94). In other words, for Zatelli "stars" could be deified (she cites Judg 5:20; Isa 14:13; Job
25:5; 38:7; and also Ps 121:6 and Num 24:17). She assumes that these "astrological" references are
metaphoric or symbolic meaning, if any, lies behind the דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) in the vision of Dan 8.1

A summary of the uses of דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) in the Hebrew Bible is displayed in table 4.

In addition to Dan 8:10b, דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) is used only one other time in Daniel, namely in
Dan 12:3 where figuratively (indicated by the preposition ב) the brightness of the stars is
compared with the גּוֹלוֹת יִשְׂרָאֵל (Golot Yisroel) and those who lead many to righteousness, both denoting a
specific group of believers.2 The phrase דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) "the stars of heaven"—which may
be what the author had in mind in Dan 8:10b when מָלָךְ כֹּה (Malak Kohen) appears together with מָלָךְ כֹּה (Malak Kohen) which refers to the host of heaven—occurs ten times in BH: Once in non-figurative
language (Isa 13:10), once as a point of comparison to the merchants of Nineveh (Nah
3:16), and eight times in the phrase דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) כּוֹלָה כּוֹלָה (Kolah Kolah) "like the stars of heaven" where the
number of God’s covenant people is compared to the countless number of the stars (Gen
22:17; 26:4; Exod 32:13; Deut 1:10; 10:22; 28:62; Neh 9:23; 1 Chr 27:23).3 Thus the
expression "the stars of heaven" is used eight of ten times as a simile for God’s chosen

archaic elements which then underwent “attempts at a Yahwistic censorship, harmonization, or
reinterpretation” (87), thereby affirming that in the biblical context itself the lexical meaning of “stars”
should be understood to refer to the natural elements. On the existence of astral cults and star worship
mentioned in the Hebrew Bible see also Fabrizio Lelli, “Stars דָּלַקְסִים,” DDD, 811-813.

---

1In non-symbolic language דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) designates the astronomical entity "star," which may also
include the planets: Gen 1:16; Deut 4:19; Isa 13:10; 47:13; Jer 31:35; Ezek 23:7; Joel 2:10; 4:15;
Obad 4; Nah 3:16; Pss 8:4; 136:9; 147:4 (the immediate context leaves the possibility open that
דָּלַקְסִים (Dlakšim) refers symbolically to human beings); 148:3; Job 3:9; 9:7; 22:12; 25:5; Ecc 12:2; Neh 4:15.

2For the question whether the astral imagery in Dan 12:3 indicates that the saints in their post-
resurrection state are considered to be celestial beings see the intertextual analysis of Dan 10–12 in
chapter 4 (below).

3Ernst Jenni lists the function of the preposition ב in Deut 1:10; 10:22; 28:62 under the
semantic category of “comparability” (Vergleichbarkeit: “x is the same as / similar to y”) (Die
hebräischen Präpositionen, vol. 2, Die Präposition Kaph [Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 1994], 62) and the
function of ב in Gen 22:17; 26:4; Exod 32:13; Neh 9:23; 1 Chr 27:23 under the semantic category
“similarity” (Gleichartigkeit: “x fares as y fares”) (69).
Table 4. Meaning of "Stars" in the Hebrew Bible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lexical Meaning &quot;Stars&quot; + Refers to Literal Stars</th>
<th>Lexical Meaning &quot;Stars&quot; + Used as Simile (with Preposition כ)</th>
<th>Lexical Meaning &quot;Stars&quot; + Additional Metaphoric Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen 1:16 the stars</td>
<td>Gen 22:17 seed of Abraham</td>
<td>Gen 37:9 &quot;eleven stars&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen 15:5 the stars</td>
<td>Gen 26:4 seed of Abraham</td>
<td>Num 24:17 (sg) &quot;a star&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deut 4:19 the stars</td>
<td>Exod 32:13 seed of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel</td>
<td>Isa 14:13 &quot;stars of God&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judg 5:20 stars signifying supernatural assistance in war</td>
<td>Deut 1:10 Israelites</td>
<td>Job 38:7 &quot;morning stars&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 13:10 the stars of heaven</td>
<td>Deut 10:22 Israelites</td>
<td>Dan 8:10 &quot;some of the stars&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 47:13 the stars</td>
<td>Deut 28:62 Israelites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jer 31:35 stars</td>
<td>Neh 9:23 Israelites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 32:7 their (the heavens') stars</td>
<td>1 Chr 27:23 Israelites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel 2:10 stars</td>
<td>simile for brightness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel 4:15 stars</td>
<td>Dan 12:3 leaders of many to righteousness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos 5:26 “star (sg) of your gods”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obad 4 stars figuratively for great height</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nah 3:16 stars figuratively for large number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 8:4 stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 136:9 stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 147:4 stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 148:3 all stars of light</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 3:9 stars of its twilight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 9:7 stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 22:12 stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 25:5 stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eccl 12:2 the stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neh 4:14 the stars</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
people. This specific figure of speech originated with God’s covenant promise to
Abraham in Gen 15:5 where the stars were used to represent the numerous descendants of
Abraham. As a metaphor, דְּמוֹפִים is used at least five times (Gen 37:9; Num 24:17; Isa
14:13; Job 38:7; Dan 8:10). In Gen 37:9, the “stars” in the divinely inspired dream of
Joseph represent human beings (cf. vs. 10). In Num 24:17, the “star” in the divinely
inspired vision given to Balaam represents a human being who will deliver Israel from its
enemies. In Isa 14:13, the “stars of God” appear to refer to heavenly beings. In Job 38:7
the “stars of the morning” stand in parallelism to “the sons of God” which in this instance
refers to heavenly beings. In Gen 37:9 and Num 24:17 (and also in Dan 8:10b) דְּמוֹפִים
are not qualified by a construct relation, whereas in Isa 14:13 and Job 38:7 דְּמוֹפִים
stands in a construct relation. The enigmatic description in Judg 5:20 that the
“stars fought from heaven” is probably figurative language and should not be considered
as metaphorical for YHWH’s angelic host.¹

¹To be sure, it is difficult to determine the meaning of the stars fighting from heaven in the
Song of Deborah (Judg 5:20). The victory of the Israelites is described by referring to two forces
opposing the enemy: the stars (vs. 20) and the torrent of Kishon (vs. 21). Why are the stars mentioned
here? Three different kinds of solutions have been suggested. First, the stars are taken as real stars,
either in a mythopoetic or in a literal sense. Usually, the stars are understood as the source of rain in
the light of the ancient Near Eastern mythic context, especially in reference to Ugaritic sources. Such
an interpretation would enhance the following lines on the flooding Kishon river (e.g., J. Blenkinsopp,
“Ballad Style and Psalm Style in the Song of Deborah: A Discussion,” Bib 42 [1961]: 73; Hans-Peter
Deborahlied, Richter Kap. 5: Versuch einer neuen Übersetzung und eines Vorstoßes in die älteste
witnessed the total eclipse on Sept. 30, in 1131 B.C.E. when familiar stars could have been seen
unexpectedly during the day in the wrong part of the sky, which is then not during their normal course
(“‘From Heaven Fought the Stars’ [Judges v 20],” VT 31 [1981]: 87-89). Clements takes the
participation of the stars to “expresses the idea that all elements of the created world stand at
Yahweh’s disposal” so that the forces of nature, commanded by YHWH, figuratively wage war on
Israel’s behalf (Clements, “דְּמוֹפִים,” 7:82). Second, some consider the stars to be a mythological
reference to the heavenly army of YHWH (e.g., G. W. Ahlström, “Judges 5:20f. and History,” JNES 36
[1977]: 287; E. Theodore Mullen, Jr., The Divine Council in Canaanite and Early Hebrew Literature,
Incidentally, when “stars” appear in a dream or vision given by God they represent human beings, or even prominent individuals (Gen 37:9; Num 24:17). This is noteworthy and could provide additional help in the interpretation of the symbolic meaning of the stars in Dan 8:10b. Nevertheless, the evidence of only two additional texts in which stars symbolically occur in a vision should make one careful in arguing that the “stars” in Dan 8 are therefore a symbol for human beings, though this line of argumentation may very well be cogent.

To sum up, the figurative or symbolic use of הָלְכוֹת הַשָּׁרֶשֶׁת in the Hebrew Bible shows that (1) the term is used as a simile only for human beings (nine times), almost exclusively for God’s covenant people (eight times), (2) the term is used as a metaphor both for human beings (twice) and heavenly beings (twice), (3) the term is used in a vision for prominent individuals, and (4) in the only other place in the book of Daniel

HSM 24 [Chico: Scholars, 1980], 194-195; Heinz-Dieter Neef, *Deboraerzählung und Deboraliied: Studien zu Jdc 4,1-5.31*, BThSt 49 [Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 2002], 44, 151). The motif of the smiting star has been traced through the ancient Near Eastern literature and applied to the stars in Judg 5:20, which then are said to be “heavenly bodies which serve as God’s emissaries and servants” (Moshe Weinfeld, “Divine Intervention in War in Ancient Israel and in the Ancient Near East,” in *History, Historiography and Interpretation: Studies in Biblical and Cuneiform Literatures*, ed. H. Tadmor and M. Weinfeld [Jerusalem: Magnes, 1983], 124-130; citation on p. 130). A third solution is cautiously offered by P. C. Craigie who argues tentatively that the stars fighting from heaven may be a poetic allusion to the participation of the Hebrew warriors of Deborah in the battle (“Three Ugaritic Notes on the Song of Deborah,” *JSOT* 2 [1977]: 33-38; idem, “Deborah and Anat: A Study of Poetic Imagery [Judges 5],” *ZAW* 90 [1978]: 379-380). A thorough evaluation of these suggestions is beyond the scope of this dissertation. However, arguing from the context of Judg 5:20 it is clear that the first and third interpretations are preferable. Either the immediate context of rainstorm and flash food suggests that the stars from heaven designate a natural force, or the wider context of Judg 4 suggests that the stars could be identified as the Hebrew warriors. To interpret stars as celestial beings is perhaps the least possible, since such a force is neither mentioned in the narrative in Judg 4 nor in the immediate context of the stars from heaven in Judg 5:20, nor elsewhere in Deborah’s song.

So also pointed out by Robert C. Newman, “חֲלָכָן (# 3919),” *NIDOTTE*, 2:611, who extends this to prophetic contexts and includes Isa 14:12-13 (king of Babylon referred to as star?) and Dan 12:3 (stars referring to the wise).
(12:3) the term is used as a simile for righteous, insightful humans.¹ Such evidence then suggests that קְרִיטִים in Dan 8:10b with its lexical meaning "stars" may well be used as a symbolic reference to human beings, specifically to the covenant people of God.

A comparison between the vision and the angelic interpretation confirms this conclusion. If Dan 8:10b and 8:24f refer to the same activity of the horn, and of the king respectively, the stars and the host of the vision are therefore connected with the כֹּלֶת יְהוָה "mighty" or "numerous" and the יְהֹוָה כֹּלֶת "people of holy ones" of the interpretation. Important for the present discussion is that there can be little doubt that both expressions in 8:24f denote a group of human beings, specifically the people of God, and thus the equivalent terms in the vision should also refer to that group of human beings.²

Clause 10c

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

 Clause type: wayyiqtol.

¹Michael Stone’s brief overview of the meaning of “stars” in Intertestamental literature confirms that stars can symbolize angels or the righteous (Michael Edward Stone, Fourth Ezra: A Commentary on the Book of Fourth Ezra, Hermeneia [Minneapolis: Fortress, 1990], 245). For him, the stars in Dan 8:10 refer to the righteous (245 n. 56).

²For a more detailed discussion see chapter 4 “Intertextual Analysis.”
The understood subject ofוֹרַק (vs. 9a) is the “horn” (vs. 9a). The verbal root רָאָק (vs. 9a) requires a direct object and describes the action of trampling with one’s feet on this object or crushing it to pieces. Sometimes the object is first brought to the ground (יָנָה) and then trampled upon. When the object is animate the effect of the trampling is highly destructive, often resulting in death.

In Dan 8:10c the pronominal suffix 3plm, which marks the object of this clause, refers back to the object of vs. 10b שְׁמוֹ קַרְבִּי וְקַרְבִּי אֲדֹנִי “some of the host and some of the stars.” As these terms are symbolic for beings, the implied effect of the trampling by the horn would imply destruction and death. The use of the root רָאָק is thus another indication that the symbols of the host and the stars in the vision of Dan 8 in reality do refer primarily to human beings rather than to celestial beings, for it would be rather inconceivable that a power or being belonging to the human realm (the horn) could devastate and destruct celestial beings. However, inasmuch as the heavenly world takes part in earthly events, one could view an attack on God’s people on earth as indirectly also affecting the celestial beings.

---

1The verb occurs 19 times in the Hebrew Bible. Seventeen times the direct object is explicitly stated; two times it is silently understood by the context (Isa 16:4; Mic 5:7).

2Isa 26:5-6 ( הלל “lay low” with תְּלַל); 28:2-3 ( עָפְרָה “cast/set down” with עָפְרָה); Dan 8:7 ( מָלַא “throw down” with מָלַא), 10c ( לֵא “cause to fall” both לֵא). In Ps 7:6 the life is trampled to the ground (ברך with ברך); in Ezek 26:11 trampling all the streets and bringing the strong pillars to the ground (גֵּפֵי “come down” with גֵּפֵי) go hand in hand.

3Second Kgs 7:17, 20; 9:33; Ezek 26:11 Mic 5:7; Ps 7:6; Dan 8:7; with inanimate objects symbolically for human beings: 2 Kgs 14:9 = 2 Chr 25:18; Isa 63:3: and here in Dan 8:10c.
Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

Clause 11a

11a [‘רש-הָנָבָא [הָנָבָא]]

waw+prep noun/sgm/ art+noun/sgc/ Hiphil-pf/3sgm/

waw+PWG(prep +CsWG(noun/sgm/ ArtWG(art+noun/sgc/))) Hiphil-pf/3sgm/


waw+optional description of expansion of location +predicate [+subject]

Clause type: x-qatal.

The verb רָשַׁיִל is masculine in gender. The subject is still the horn, which has been the subject in all clauses since vs. 9a. The gender incongruence between the masculine predicate and the feminine subject “horn” has been explained by textual emendations\(^1\) or by other solutions.\(^2\) It is obvious that the different gender cannot be

\(^1\)Two different emendations have been suggested. The first is to read מַלְאוֹן instead of מַלְאָן (so von Gall, 48, 51; Moore, 196; Prince, “On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; Prince, Daniel, 242; Marti, Daniel, 58; Charles, 205; translation by Niditch, 217). The second is to read מַלְאַנָא instead of מַלְאָן, as suggested by Ginsberg (Studies in Daniel, 50) and Hartman and Di Lella (221), who assume that the verbal gender in vs. 11 was originally feminine and that the present masculine forms were introduced by a later copyist who identified the feminine horn symbol with Antiochus Epiphanes.

\(^2\)Most commentators believe that the masculine gender refers to the masculine realities for which the feminine horn symbolically stands. Redditt assumes that the masculine הָנָבָא is perhaps partly under the influence of the other masculine verbs in vs. 11b and 11c, and, as a Hiphil perfect, may have also been used in vs. 11a because it was used earlier in 8:4, 8 (139). Another, ingenious suggestion comes from Goldstein who reads הָנָבָא as infinitive absolute הָנָבָא with plene spelling, arguing that the infinitive is used here like a finite verb. He also reads the other verbs in vs. 11 as Hiphil infinitives: plene יְסַרְרֵי and normal לֹא-סִירֵי (I Maccabees, 145-146 n. 251; “The Persecution of the Jews,” 142 n. 28). The use of an infinitive absolute instead of a finite verb is indeed a possible feature in BH (see GKC, 345-347 [§1y-gg]; A. Rubinstein, “A Finite Verb Continued by an Infinitive Absolute in Biblical Hebrew,” VT 2 [1952]: 362-367; John Huesman, “Finite Uses of the Infinitive Absolute,” Bib 37 [1956]: 284-295; E. Hammershaimb, “On the So-called Infinitive Absolutus in Hebrew,” in Hebrew and Semitic Studies Presented to Godfrey Rolles Driver in Celebration of His Seventieth Birthday, 20 August 1962, ed. D. W. Thomas and W. D. McHardy [Oxford: Clarendon, 1963], 89-94; Waltke and O’Connor, 594-597 [§35.5.2]; Jośon and Muraoka,
explained on the syntactic level, but it will be addressed later from a literary-structural viewpoint. To suggest that the masculine ה'ל "the prince of the host" could function as subject of the masculine י'ל, either by applying a temporal sense to the preposition ר' with subsequent textual emendation' or by placing a clause demarcation between ה'ל and י'ל, is both syntactically and semantically highly

2:429-432 \[§123u-y\]. Yet, Goldstein's proposal is unconvincing for several reasons. First, though a thorough linguistic investigation of the use of the infinitive absolute in place of a finite verb is still outstanding, it seems that in such instances the infinitive absolute regularly occupies the initial position of the clause, especially if the infinitive absolute stands in a clause that is sequential to a previous clause with a finite verb form (such is the case in the more than sixty passages cited in the different works above, except in the textually and lexically difficult Ezek 1:14 where the infinitives, if not read differently, could stand as participles [see Waltke and O'Connor, 597 \[§35.5.3\]). The major problem with Goldstein's suggestion of an infinitive י'ל in Dan 8:11a then is that the infinitive absolute in clause 11a, which seems to be sequential after the wayyiqtol ה'ל (vs. 10c), would not stand at the beginning of the clause where it should be expected. Second, there is no question that the plene writing of a Hiphil infinitive is possible in BH (I found 23 occurrences: Deut 15:14; Josh 4:3; 6:3; 7:7; Judg 1:28; 1 Kgs 9:25; Isa 59:4; Jer 3:15; 7:5; 10:5; 23; 23:32; 35:15; 36:16; 44:4, 17, 25; Ezek 7:14; Amos 9:8; Job 34:35; Prov 27:14; Eccl 10:10; Neh 7:3; cf. GKC, 146 \[§53k\]). However, it would be surprising to find a Hiphil infinitive in plene writing two times in one verse without any Masoretic indication whatsoever, followed immediately by another Hiphil infinitive, again not marked as such, but this time without plene writing. There is no obvious reason why the third Hiphil infinitive would be written differently from the first two. Just as a further note here, the only clear Hiphil infinitive absolute form in Daniel י'ל in 1:17) is not spelled plene. Third, Goldstein also has to propose a different clause division. He takes י'ל as belonging to the end of vs. 11a, interpreting the preposition ע as indicating spatial positioning of a mark beyond which a movement occurs and translating vs. 11a with "It grew, until it equaled the Prince of the Host, and beyond." However, the preposition ע has no such meaning, neither with a verb of motion (here ע"ל) nor after the preposition ע. The clause division proposed by Goldstein must be regarded as implausible. In sum, Goldstein fails to provide cogent evidence for his extensive recollection of the verbal forms in vs. 11. To be sure, he points out that the different features he suggests can occur in Hebrew, but he does not show how his reading fits the syntactic reality in Dan 8:10-12. His proposal faces too many difficulties and thus has to be rejected.

1Because of the masculine gender of the verbs, Thomson is convinced that the prince of the host is the subject of the three clauses in vs. 11. He therefore translates vs. 11, starting with a temporal ע"ל, "Until the prince of the host magnify [sic] himself (1 Sam. xii. 24), and by himself he shall offer the daily sacrifice. And he shall cast down the foundation of his holy place." By two emendations—reading ע"ל instead of ע"ל and, with the Peshitta, ע"ל instead of MT ע"ל—he obtains a description of the successes of Judas the Maccabee: "'Until the prince of the host shall make himself greater than he'—viz. the tyrant represented by 'the little horn'—'and shall offer the daily sacrifice. . . . He shall complete the place of his sanctuary'" (242). Thomson is followed by Bloomfield, who suggests curiously enough that "the prince of the host is Satan" (168).
As in vs. 10a, the preposition נַפְשָׁא marks the extent to which the horn makes itself grow. However, whereas in vs. 10a נַפְשָׁא carries a spatial-geographical meaning ("as far as"), in vs. 11a it should rather be understood to have a metaphorical spatial or comparative meaning ("to the degree of").

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Meaning of עֲרֹב

The meaning and the identity of "the commander of the host" are currently being

1See the discussion against such a clause demarcation in Probstle, "A Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12," 82-86. For several reasons separating עֲרֹב from הָבַיֶּל is problematic: First, to take "the prince of the host," which probably refers to a celestial being, as the subject of הָבַיֶּל in Dan 8:11a is contrary to all the other 16 examples where a human being is the subject of a הָבַיֶּל hif.-clause without an object. Second, in 15 out of 16 times the Hiphil of הָבַיֶּל without object designates a negative activity ("magnify oneself," "boast"). Such an activity cannot be harmonized with the noble figure of "the prince of the host" as agent. Third, beside Dan 8:11a, the root הָבַיֶּל occurs five more times in Dan 8 (vss. 4, 8, 25 in the Hiphil; and vss. 9b, 10a in the Qal), always specifying a negative activity. It is difficult to see why it should then involve a positive connotation in vs. 11a. Fourth, the horn/king is the subject of הָבַיֶּל in vss. 9b, 10a, and 25, and thus fits also in vs. 11a as subject of הָבַיֶּל. Fifth, the occurrences of הָבַיֶּל in the vision of Dan 8 (vss. 4, 8, 9, 10, 11) line up to an intentional literary crescendo of boastful activity by adding stronger dimensions to הָבַיֶּל. If the prince of the hosts is the subject of הָבַיֶּל in vs. 11a, the crescendo of presumption would be disturbed and would come to an abrupt end with no further qualifications of הָבַיֶּל. Sixth, if הָבַיֶּל starts a new clause, it needs to be proposed that the phrase עֲרֹב resumes the verbal idea of vs. 10a, with the clauses in vs. 10b and c being a digression that functions not on the main line. However, the three wayyiqtol forms in vs. 10, denoting narrative succession, do not allow for such a hypothetical construction. And finally, the possible intertextual link of Dan 8:11-12 to 11:36-37 suggests that הָבַיֶּל in 8:11a denotes a negative activity, as do the two Hitpael forms of הָבַיֶּל in 11:36-37. Most arguments presented here can also be applied to refute the view that suggests a temporal הָבַיֶּל construction in vs. 11a.

2See Redditt, 139. This nuance in meaning is dependent upon the use of the root הָבַיֶּל in different verbal stems—Qal in vs. 10a and Hiphil in vs. 11a (pace Lucas who regards the difference between the Qal and Hiphil of הָבַיֶּל as "probably stylistic" [Daniel, 205])—and upon the meaning of עֲרֹב.

debated.¹ The majority of exegetes agree that נְבֵפֵר-רֶשֶׁ צ designates YHWH.² Others believe that נְבֵפֵר-רֶשֶׁ צ refers to a being subordinated to YHWH, namely Michael³ or even an otherwise unnamed celestial being,⁴ which at least once is suggested to be a divine

¹On the scholarly discussion see Anderson ("Michael Figure," 306-309, 314-315), who concludes that "the prince of the host appears to be a veiled manifestation, as is Michael, seemingly to occupy a position subordinated to God as God's highest intermediary, or as God in a veiled manifestation" (317).

²So Calvin, 99; Bertholdt, 490; Hävernick, 275; Rosenmüller, 262; von Lengerke, 378-379; Maurer, 143; Hitzig, 132; Kliefoth, 255; Keil, 297; Wordsworth, 39; Fausset, 427; Rohling, Daniel, 238; Zöckler, 176; Ewald, Daniel, 262; Meinhold, Composition, 78; idem, Daniel, 309; Terry, 60; Tiefenthal, 268; von Gall, 51; Kamphausen, 33; Moore, 193-194; Prince, Daniel, 146; Driver, Daniel, 116; H. J. Rose and J. M. Fuller, "Daniel: Introduction, Commentary, Critical Notes and Excursus," in The Holy Bible according to the Authorized Version (A.D. 1611) with an Explanatory and Critical Commentary and a Revision of the Translation, vol. 6, Ezekiel, Daniel, and the Minor Prophets, ed. F. C. Cook (London: Murray, 1900), 344; Marti, Daniel, 58; Riessler, Daniel (1902), 76; Montgomery, 335; Aalders, Het boek Daniël, 162; Goetsberger, 62; Charles, 207; Obbink, 109; Lattey, 86; Leupold, 347; Young, Daniel, 172; Slotki (1951), 67; Bentzen, 70; Saydon, 635; Nels, 96; Jeffery, 474; Barnes, 2:110; Aalders, Daniel (1962), 175; Porteous, 125; Delcor, 173; Walvoord, 187; Wood, 214; Freer, 143-145; Hassberger, 99; Baldwin, 157; Hartman and Di Lella, 236; Anderson, Signs, 95; Archer, 7:100; Goldingay, Daniel, 210-211; Ringgren, "ךְֽלָכָה" 12:213; Collins, Daniel (1993), 333; René Péter-Contesse and John Ellington, A Handbook on the Book of Daniel, UBS Handbook Series (New York: United Bible Societies, 1993), 212; Miller, Daniel, 226; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 170; Smith-Christopher, 113; Di Lella, Daniel, 160; Redditt, 140; Gowan, Daniel, 120; Lucas, Daniel, 216; Seow, Daniel, 123.

³Ibn Ezra (cited in Montgomery, 335); Wilhelm Lucken, Michael: Eine Darstellung und Vergleichung der jüdischen und der morgenländisch-christlichen Tradition vom Erzengel Michael (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1898), 30; Koch, "Visionsbericht," 422; Porter, Metaphors, 58; Hasel, "The ‘Little Horn’" (1986), 403; Smith-Christopher, 113; Dörfel, 151, 160, 162, 246; C. L. Seow, "The Rule of God in the Book of Daniel," in David and Zion: Biblical Studies in Honor of J. J. M. Roberts, ed. B. F. Batto and K. L. Roberts (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 2004), 242-243. Koch was first cautious to identify the prince of the host with the highest angel, that is Michael (Das Buch Daniel, 144, 207). Later, with reference to Josh 5:14 as support, he is more certain about such an identification and declares it to be fitting that an angel is associated with the cult in Zion since in regard to angelic liturgy "angels are the actual subjects of the cultic activities at the Jerusalem temple" ("Visionsbericht," 422). Hence, Koch proposes a cultic concept determined by angelology.

⁴For Gillian Bampfylde the phrase נְבֵפֵר-רֶשֶׁ צ refers to a being subordinated to YHWH, but neither to Michael nor to Gabriel. Rather the prince of the host is an anonymous figure which is "the supreme arch-angel, the chief of the patron princes and warrior for heaven" ("The Prince of the Host in the Book of Daniel and the Dead Sea Scrolls," JSJ 14 [1983]: 131). She comes to this conclusion by examining the identity of the figure of Dan 10:2-21 and 12:5-13—which according to her "remains deliberately anonymous in the Book of Daniel" (129). Bampfylde apparently assumes that the man
“vice-regent” or YHWH’s co-ruler. Some have identified נִשְׂנָתָן as the high priest Onias III or as the legitimate high priest, which, at the time the vision supposedly refers to, was Onias III. Here and there, it has been suggested that the expression “commander of the host” refers to Judas the Maccabee, the leader of the Jewish troops (host of dressed in linen in Dan 10:2-9 is the same person as the one who speaks to Daniel in Dan 10:10-21—a view which agrees with the majority of scholars. She then argues that the figure in Dan 10:2-9 is the one who had spoken to Gabriel (8:16) and is the man dressed in linen in 12:6-7 and therefore cannot be Gabriel. Further, in 10:21 the figure speaks about Michael and thus, the man in Dan 10 cannot be Michael either. “He is therefore to be identified with the ‘Prince of the host’ (8:11),” concludes Bampfylde (130). The part of Bampfylde’s interpretation which is open for discussion is her assumption of one and the same figure in Dan 10:2-9 and 10-21. If it is possible to identify more than one celestial being in Dan 10, her argumentation is seriously flawed. There seems to be agreement that the man in linen (10:2-9) is not Gabriel. However, Dan 10:12 suggests that the angel who touched and strengthened Daniel was indeed Gabriel, as he introduces himself in the same way as previously (9:22-23). In contrast to Bampfylde, one would then have to argue that there are indeed two different celestial figures in Dan 10: the man in linen seen by Daniel (vss. 4-9) and the one who touched Daniel and spoke to him (vss. 10-14). In this case, there is no reason to equate the two. Of course, the question of whether one or two celestial figures appear in Dan 10 has to be dealt with on a more elaborate basis. Cf. Benedict Otzen, “Michael and Gabriel: Angelological Problems in the Book of Daniel,” in The Scriptures and the Scrolls: Studies in Honor of A. S. van der Woude on the Occasion of His 65th Birthday, ed. F. Garcia Martinez, A. Hilhorst and C. J. Labuschagne, VTSup, no. 49 (Leiden: Brill, 1992), 115-117, who argues that Gabriel is the angelus interpres in 10:1-15 and Michael is the celestial figure in 10:16-21 quoting in vs. 21 a divine remark about him; Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 182-194, who concludes that the celestial figure in Dan 10:10-14 is the angel Gabriel.

1Michael S. Heiser, “The Divine Council in Late Canonical and Non-Canonical Second Temple Jewish Literature” (Ph.D. diss., University of Wisconsin-Madison, 2004), 171-175. Heiser believes that the book of Daniel contains the concepts of divine plurality and vice-regency: The Son of Man figure in Dan 7, the “prince of the host” and the “prince of princes” in Dan 8, and the celestial figure in Dan 10 should be identified with a second deity figure, the “king of the gods” of the divine council (cf. 153-154). For Heiser, the supposed Ugaritic provenance of Dan 7 allows the comparison of this figure with Baal so that the two divine beings in Daniel are “Yahweh-El” and “Son of Man-Baal” (165). In arguing that the vice-regent is not Michael but a being superior to him, Heiser follows the argument by Bampfylde with regard to the celestial being in Dan 10 (172-173). While Heiser’s recognition of divine-like characteristics of the celestial figure(s) in Dan 7:13-14; 8:11, 25; and 10:5-6 should not be dismissed easily, his rejection of Michael as possible referent on the basis of Bampfylde’s argument should be reassessed (see the previous note).

2Grotius, Ephraem the Syrian (both cited in Montgomery, 335); Charles, 204 (but cf. 207).

3Beek, 84; cf. 80; Maier, 305.
169

heaven), or that it "refers to the Holy Temple, which is the House of God, the Prince of
the host," or even to the sun. Still others suggest a double reference: to the high priest
and to the angel Michael, or to the high priest and in a secondary sense to God, or to the
angel Michael and to God.

In the face of such a plethora of options it might be best to determine the meaning
and identity of "the commander of the host" by paying close attention to the immediate
context of the expression, and by an examination of the use of אֱלֹהִים in the book of Daniel
and the use of the fixed expression לֹא לֹא in the Hebrew Bible.

**Immediate context of Dan 8:11a.** The cultic imagery associated with the prince
of the host suggests that the figure is divine. The pronominal suffix in אֱלֹהִים (8:11c)
refers back to the prince of the host. Because the prince of the host has a sanctuary or

---

1Thomson, 242; Buchanan, 244.

2Rashi and Moshe Alshich, *The Book of Daniel* = Shield of the Spirit: The
Commentaries of Rashi and Rabbi Moshe Alshich on Sefer Daniel, trans. R. Shahar, The Alshich
Tanach Series (Jerusalem: Feldheim, 1994), 382.

3Goldstein interprets the host and the fallen stars as referring to meteorites (*I Maccabees*,
146).

4Lacocque, *The Book of Daniel*, 162. On the one hand, he detects a cultic background to the
use of אֱלֹהִים (Ezra 8:24; 1 Chr 16:15; 24:5) which allows one “to understand אֱלֹהִים in the sense of ‘(High)
Priest,’” which then is Onias III. On the other hand, the word אֱלֹהִים in the book of Daniel “always
designates an angel” and in 8:11 it is then referring to the archangel Michael.

5So Maier (305), because the high priest is the representative of God.

6So Goldwurm, 223-224. For Hammer (85) and Russell (144-145) the term אֱלֹהִים indicates that
the prince of the host should be the chief of the angel host, who is Michael, whereas the context of the
horn’s attack on “his sanctuary” and the worship of God seems to support that the prince of the host is
God (cf. Beyerle, 34 n. 40).

7Smith-Christopher, 113.
sacred area, he can be identified with God, who is the only one mentioned explicitly in
the Hebrew Bible to have a sanctuary and the only name used in relationship with a
Further, in vs. 11b the “commander of the host” is connected to רֹפֵע, a cultic
term that again indicates that this prince is not merely an angelic being but rather divine.2
At the same time, the military terminology in 8:9-10 as well as the military connotation of
the title itself suggests that the commander of the host is a warrior—an angelic warrior or
even the divine warrior.

The term יָדָשׁ in the book of Daniel.3 In the book of Daniel, the term יָדָשׁ “prince”
occurs eighteen times. It is used nine times for a human leader or a person of note (chaps.
1, 9, 11)4 and nine times for a celestial being or an angel (in chaps. 8, 10, 12).5

1 See Freer, 143; Hasslberger, 99. The only examples of the 75 occurrences in the Hebrew
Bible in which רֹפֵע does not refer to a sanctuary of God are a sanctuary in Moab (Isa 16:12), and the
city Bethel which is called a sanctuary for the king (Amos 7:13). Furthermore, the sanctuaries or
sacred places in Israel (plural of רֹפֵע) could be holy places for God or holy places for other deities
or idols (Lev 26:31; Ezek 7:24; 21:7; 28:18; Amos 7:9; Ps 73:17).

2 See the discussion on the “Meaning of רֹפֵע” further below under “Clause 11b.”

3 See Udo Rüterswörd, Die Beamten der israelitischen Königzeit: Eine Studie zu ör und
vergleichbaren Begriffen, BWANT, no. 117 = Series 6, no. 17 (Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 1985), 54-55;
Herbert Niehr, יָדָשׁ sar, TDOT, 14:211, 213-214; Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 130-131; John J.
Collins, “Prince יָדָשׁ,” DDD, 662-663. Cf. also the excursus on the term יָדָשׁ by Nili Sacher Fox, In the
Service of the King: Officialdom in Ancient Israel and Judah, HUCM, no. 23 (Cincinnati: Hebrew
Union College Press, 2000), 158-163, esp. 159.

4 The technical term יָדָשׁ “the commander of the officials” (1:7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 18; also
called יָדָשׁ “chief of his officials” in 1:3), “our princes” (9:6, 8), “one of his princes” (11:5).

5 The prince of the host” (Dan 8:11a); “the prince of princes” (8:25); “the prince of the
kingdom of Persia” (10:13), “the prince of Persia” (Dan 10:20); “the prince of Jawan” (10:20);
“Michael, one of the chief princes” (10:13), “Michael, your prince” (10:21), and “Michael, the great
prince” (12:1). Some have argued that the phrases of יָדָשׁ with a geographical term in 10:13, 20 refer
to human rulers of the Persian and Greek empires: William H. Shea argues from the Hebrew and
presents three, unfortunately unconvincing, arguments against an angelic interpretation (“Wrestling
Interestingly, all references of רֵעַ to a celestial being occur in a visionary context, whereas רֵעַ referring to a human being is found only once in such a setting (11:5), which, being part of the angelic discourse, is arguably more like a literal explanation of historical material than a vision. This observation strengthens the view that the נֵרֶעַ in the vision of Dan 8 refers to a celestial being. Besides Dan 8:11a, רֵעַ is used in the book of Daniel for Michael, the guardian רֵעַ of God’s people (10:13, 21; 12:1), for guardian and fighting supernatural beings (10:13, 20), and for the “prince of princes” (8:25).

with the Prince of Persia: A Study on Daniel 10," AUS 21 [1983]: 225-250, esp. 234; cf. Alomia, "Lesser Gods," 457), and Tim Meadowcroft refers to the use of רֵעַ for humans in Dan 1 and 11:5 and to the OG translation of σαρατηγός in 10:13, 20 in contrast to ἀπρον used for Michael in 10:13 (“Who Are the Princes of Persia and Greece [Daniel 10]? Pointers Towards the Danielic Vision of Earth and Heaven," JSOT 29 [2004]: 99-113, esp. 102; cf. idem, Aramaic Daniel, 253-254). However, the Greek might be ambiguous (Meadowcroft does not take into account that Theodotion uses ἀπρον in all instances in Dan 10 and that in both Greek versions the celestial being in 8:11 is called ἀρχηγος implying that σαρατηγός can refer to celestial beings) and the Hebrew phrases in 10:13, 20 most probably designate supernatural beings since nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible is רֵעַ used for a human king. In 10:13 there is a clear distinction between רֵעַ and לֵילָה הָנָרָא “the prince of the kingdom of Persia” and לֵילָה הָנָרָא “the kings of Persia.” The singular use of רֵעַ in contrast to the plural use of לֵילָה הָנָרָא suggests that the prince of the kingdom of Persia is a single angelic being responsible for the Persian Empire throughout different rulers, whereas the kings of Persia are the human rulers of this empire. Furthermore, the mentioning of the prince of Persia and the angelic prince Michael on the same level (10:20-21) suggests that the prince of Persia is an angelic being. Cf. the refutation of Shea’s arguments by David E. Stevens, who opts for the view that the princes of Persia and Greece in Dan 10 were national angels or demons (“Daniel 10 and the Notion of Territorial Spirits,” BSac 157 [2000]: 410-431; cf. already Rayner Winterbotham, “The Angel-Princes of Daniel,” Exp 1 [1911]: 50-58, who proposes rather unconvincingly on philosophical and theological reasons that angels oversee the nations and represent their special interests in the divine council). Recently, Ernst Haag traces the concept of national angels or angel princes back to the idea of a heavenly council (cf. Deut 32:8, 9, 43 LXX)—following the Canaanite mythological idea of a heavenly retinue—in which YHWH claims special ownership of Israel, and suggests that conflicts on this earth between Israel as inheritance of YHWH and the nations as inheritance of the sons of God correspond to the armed conflicts among angelic powers (“Der Kampf der Engelmächte in Daniel 10-12,” in Textarbeiten Studien zu Texten und ihrer Rezeption aus dem Alten Testament und der Umwelt Israels; Festschrift für Peter Weimar zur Vollendung seines 60. Lebensjahres, ed. K. Kiesow and T. Meurer, AOAT, no. 294 [Münster: Ugarit, 2003], 249-252). For Haag, the significance of such national angels in Dan 10-12 is that they point to a “Fall” in the angelic world and that Michael, the prince of God’s people, in fighting for the people assigned to him, opposes the anti-YHWH and proves to be successful (252-253).
The expression פסח ש"ר "prince of princes" in the angelic interpretation (8:25) corresponds to אֶלֶג יִשְׂרָאֵל in the vision. Since פסח is used in Daniel for chief angels, the פסח is very likely a reference to the commander of these angels, who may thus be identified as God—although this is less likely, for God is never designated as פסח in the Hebrew Bible—or as the highest of the angels, most likely Michael, the "great prince" (12:1; cf. 10:13). It is a characteristic feature of the book of Daniel that the term פסח is used for a supernatural being since such a usage is found only in the book of Daniel, in Josh 5:14-15, which is dealt with below, and perhaps in Isa 9:52 (and quite frequently at Qumran).

The phrase פסח ש"ר in the Hebrew Bible. It is important to consider the phrase פסח ש"ר on its own, since in the Hebrew Bible the use of פסח crosses civil, military, and religious administrative divisions and the attached qualifying noun is

1Cf. Behrmann, 58; Freer, 145; Collins, Daniel (1993), 333. Only a few scholars argue that the expressions פסח ש"ר and פסח ש"ר refer to different entities (so, e.g., Goldstein, 1 Maccabees, 146). However, as Lust correctly observes, the difference in the title can easily be explained by their use in different contexts, the one in the symbolic vision and the other in the interpretation (Lust, "Cult and Sacrifices in Daniel," 291).

2In Isa 9:5 פסח ש"ר is used for a Messiah-like figure. The context is not clear whether this being was thought of as human or as divine or both. In any case, the names this child or son is called—of which פסח ש"ר is one—each seem to contain both a divine and a human element in an obvious AB-AB // BA-BA order: פסח ש"ר "Wonderful [divine] Counselor [human]," פסח ש"ר "God [divine] Mighty [human]," פסח ש"ר "Father [human] Eternal [divine]," and פסח ש"ר "Prince [human] of Peace [divine]."

3In the following texts the term פסח is used for a celestial being at Qumran: "prince" in 1Q33 (1QM) XIII,14; "prince of light(s)" in CD V,18; 1QS III,20; 1Q33 (1QM) XIII,10; 4Q266 3ii5; 4Q267 2,1; "prince of gods" in 1QP VII,8; "prince of his angels" in 4Q491 1-3,3; "prince of animosity" in 4Q225 2i9; 2iii13-14; 11Q11 II,4; and "prince of the dominion of evil" in 1Q33 (1QM) XVII,5.
particularly important to establish the exact meaning of a particular phrase.\textsuperscript{1} The construct relation of רָשׁ and קָנָב occurs thirty-seven times in the Hebrew Bible.\textsuperscript{2} The phrases can be grouped according to the morphological appearance of רָשׁ and קָנָב:\textsuperscript{3}

1. רָשׁ in the singular
   a. קָנָב is indefinite (4x):
      2 Sam 2:8; 19:14; 1 Kgs 16:16; 1 Chr 27:34.
   b. קָנָב is definite, by the article (10x):
      1 Sam 17:55; 1 Kgs 1:19; 11:15, 21; 2 Kgs 4:13; 25:19; Jer 52:25; Dan 8:11; 1 Chr 19:18; 27:5.
   c. קָנָב is definite, either by pronominal suffix or by a definite noun following in construct relation (16x):
      Gen 21:22, 32; 26:26; Josh 5:14, 15; Judg 4:2, 7; 1 Sam 12:9; 14:50; 26:5; 2 Sam 10:16, 18; 1 Kgs 2:32 (2x); 2 Kgs 5:1; 1 Chr 19:16.

2. רָשׁ in the plural
   a. קָנָב is indefinite (1x):
      Deut 20:9.
   b. קָנָב is definite, by the article (5x):
      1 Kgs 1:25; 1 Chr 25:1; 26:26; 27:3; 2 Chr 33:11.
   c. קָנָב is definite, by a definite noun following in construct relation (1x):
      1 Kgs 2:5.

With regard to the meaning of קָנָב רָשׁ, it needs to be pointed out first of all that this phrase is a technical military term. The expression קָנָב רָשׁ is a “warrior title\textsuperscript{4} that designates the supreme commander of the army, “the commander of the levies,\textsuperscript{5} whereas

\textsuperscript{1}Fox, 150.

\textsuperscript{2}It also occurs once in the Lachish ostraca no. 3, line 14 (\textit{HAE} 1:418; \textit{DNWSI}, 2:1191).

\textsuperscript{3}Cf. the analysis of קָנָב רָשׁ by Rüterswördén, \textit{Beamten}, 35-37 (cf. Freer, 143-145).


\textsuperscript{5}\textit{HALOT}, 3:1352. The commander-in-chief of the Israel army is in 1 Chr 27:3 referred to as נָבָאָר לָךְ שָׁרא הָמֹמֵסְיָה, “the chief of all the commanders of the armies.”
the plural שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת usually refers to somewhat lower military officials. In one instance it may be possible that the plural refers to those overseeing the work in the temple, though the exact meaning is uncertain (1 Chr 25:1; cf. vs. 6).

Second, in almost all texts the army is specified in relation to a human being, a people, a city, or a land, and the commander of the army naturally is a human, military commander. Only in Josh 5:14, 15 is the army explicitly designated as belonging to יהוה (יהוה ובְּנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל) and the commander of the army is a celestial being, which makes this text an important parallel to שנא' in Dan 8:11a who is also a celestial being.

Third, in the human realm it is never mentioned that the army is the commander’s army, rather the additions to the title שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת show whose army it is. The commander’s name is thus often found along with the king’s name or along with the name of the political entity or area from where the army originates, that is, a city or a land. The

---

1The plural forms שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת “commanders of the army” (1 Kgs 1:25; 1 Chr 26:26; 2 Chr 33:11), שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת נַמְכָּר “commanders of armies” (Deut 20:9), and שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת נַמְכָּר נַמְכָּר “the commanders of the armies” (1 Chr 27:3) refer obviously to military officials or commanders of military entities, but not to the supreme commander of the army; compare the phrases “the third commander of the army” (1 Chr 27:5), “commanders in the army” (שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת נַמְכָּר, 1 Chr 12:22), or “the commanders (שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת) of thousands and commanders (שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת) of hundreds” (Num 31:14; 1 Chr 27:1). Only in 1 Kgs 2:5 does the plural שזִמְכַּר רַבָּוֹת נַמְכָּר “the two commanders of the armies of Israel” clearly refer to two supreme commanders, but here it is the context that is decisive and the specific wording is markedly different from the other plural forms.

2This is especially obvious when שזִמְכַּר is followed by a definite noun in construct relation or when a pronominal suffix is affixed to שזִמְכַּר: Phichol, commander of the host of Abimelech (Gen 21:22, 32; 26:26); commanders of the hosts of Israel (Deut 20:9); Sisera, commander of the host of Jabin (Judg 4:2, 7); Sisera, commander of the host of Hazor (1 Sam 12:9); Abner, commander of the host of Saul (1 Sam 14:50; 26:5; 2 Sam 2:8); Shobach the commander of the army of Hadadezer (2 Sam 10:16; 1 Chr 19:16); Shobach the commander of the army of Aram (2 Sam 10:18); Amasa, commander of the army “before me (David)” (2 Sam 19:14); Abner and Amasa, the two commanders of the armies of Israel (1 Kgs 2:5); Abner, commander of the army of Israel (1 Kgs 2:32); Amasa, commander of the army of Judah (1 Kgs 2:32); Omri, commander of the army [of Israel] (1 Kgs 16:16); Naaman, captain of the army of the king of Aram (2 Kgs 5:1); Joab, commander of the army of (belonging to) the king (1 Chr 27:34). Cf. David M. Howard, Jr., Joshua, NAC, vol. 5 (Nashville:
commander of the army was regarded as the most powerful person in the nation second to the king only, to whom he was subordinated.

Fourth, as mentioned earlier, Josh 5:14, 15 and Dan 8:11a are the only passages where the technical military term ספנשת- isp is used for a supernatural being. Two factors, that is, the fixed expression ספנשת ויספ and its reference to a transcendent being, strongly suggest an intertextual relation. The use of ספנשת for a supernatural being in Josh 5:14, 15 may very well have influenced the specific use of ספנשת in Dan 8:11a, and in order to understand its function and meaning in Dan 8:11a it may be helpful to determine as far as possible its referential meaning in Josh 5:14, 15. The significance of these titles as applied to a celestial being can hardly be underestimated.

Since in the human military system ספנשת refers to the commander-in-chief who is subordinate to the king, it seems to make sense that some argue that by analogy “the commander of the army of the Lord” (Josh 5:14, 15) is not the Lord himself but


1So Freer, 143-144; Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 300-301, 420, 436; Dörfel, 151; Seow, “The Rule of God,” 240. Collins calls the “prince of the army of YHWH” in Josh 5:14 “a precedent for the title ‘prince’ applied to an angel” (“Prince,” DDD, 663). Lelli, who supports an astral understanding of the host of heaven, also notes the close association between the two princes when he explains that “at the head of the heavenly host stands a ‘Prince of the army’ (Josh 5:14-15; Dan 8:11), probably the highest star and the farthest from the earth, even if the actual leader is God, to whom the starry army belongs” (“Stars,” DDD, 813).


3Since in Josh 5 the title הספנשת- isp “is very specific and unusual and must be taken seriously” (Patrick Dwight Miller, Jr., “Holy War and Cosmic War in Early Israel” [Ph.D. diss., Harvard University, 1963], 253), the title הספנשת in Dan 8 must receive the same attention.
rather his commander-in-chief. Nevertheless, the commander of the army of the Lord appears to be indeed a divine being. Several textual indicators lead to such a conclusion.

1. The commander of YHWH's army first gives Joshua the order to remove his sandals, "for the place where you are standing is holy," which is reminiscent of YHWH's command to Moses with almost identical wording (Exod 3:5). The position and continuation of these two incidents in their respective narratives are also similar. Thereby the commander of the Lord's army and the Lord appearing to Moses, as well as Moses and Joshua, enjoy the same intertextual level.

2. Holiness is a manifestation of the divine presence.

3. Joshua's body language expresses deference, submission, and worship. His prostration before the commander of YHWH's army is described with the verbal root מַנֶּה which in this context denotes at least acknowledgment of a position of honor and authority but probably also a gesture of submission and worship.

---

1 See, e.g., Hassberger, 98-99; Volkmar Fritz, Das Buch Josua, HAT, Reihe 1, no. 7 (Tübingen: Mohr, 1994), 64; Richard D. Nelson, Joshua: A Commentary, OTL (Louisville: Westminster John Knox, 1997), 81-83; Howard, Joshua, 157-159, though he also admits that "the distinction between Yahweh and his commander is not a sharp one" (ibid., 159). A Targum of Joshua 5 identifies the commander of YHWH's army with Uriel (Heinz Fahr and Uwe Gleßmer, Jordandurchzug und Beschneidung als Zurechtweisung in einem Targum zu Josua 5: (Edition des Ms T.-S. B 13,12), Orientalia biblica et christiana, vol. 3 [Glückstadt: Augustin, 1991], 86-87). An ambivalence of angel and God, which makes it sometimes difficult to decide who is meant, is recognized by Mach, Entwicklungsstadien, 14, 43-45.

2 See, e.g., Gordon Mitchell, Together in the Land: A Reading of the Book of Joshua, JSOTSup, no. 134 (Sheffield: JSOT, 1993), 48-49; Richard S. Hess, Joshua: An Introduction and Commentary,TOTC, vol. 6 (Downers Grove: Inter-Varsity, 1996), 127; Anderson, "The Michael Figure," 302-304. J. Alberto Soggin believes that "the angel is not a being distinct from Yahweh, but in a sense is one of his hypostases" (Joshua: A Commentary, OTL [London: SCM; Philadelphia: Westminster, 1972], 78).

3 Miller, Divine Warrior, 129. For George E. Mendenhall, the activity expressed by מַנֶּה "is essentially the response to power, and is a symbolic acknowledgment of the authority and rule of the
4. Joshua’s words make it clear that he is ready to listen to and to obey this commander whom he serves. The address Tôi của “my lord” does not indicate whether Joshua regarded this commander as divine or only as a superior being. The self-designation of Joshua as his servant “his servant” with the reverential third-person pronominal suffix referring to the commander of the Lord’s army is especially interesting as Joshua is elsewhere called the servant of the Lord” (Josh 24:29; Judg 2:8) and the title “servant” in the book of Joshua is used almost exclusively in relationship to Yhwh. It is therefore likely that the use of inda indicates that Joshua himself regarded this commander as divine.

5. If the episode in Josh 5:13-15 continues with the message given to Joshua in 6:2-5 and thus Josh 5:13-6:5 functions as the first episode of the Jericho story, the person or god thus worshiped (“Biblical Faith and Cultic Evolution,” LQ 5 [1953]: 239), and in the case of Joshua, who sees the angel, prostration is a response to God’s power (241), and should not only be understood as the reverence paid to the higher person (pace Rohling, “Über den Jehovaengel,” 529-530).

1The expression Tôi của “my lord” is used as a polite address and often refers to human superiors. For God the term Tôi của is used instead (see Howard, Joshua, 158). However, one should not argue that the use of inda excludes the commander as divine, for elsewhere in the book of Joshua the word inda occurs only in the proper name Adoni-zedek (Josh 10:1, 3), where it probably refers to a god, and the word Tôi của “lord” is used only in Josh 3:11, 13, where in the phrase Tôi của inda “Lord of all the earth” it refers to God.

2The phrase inda “servant of the Lord” is a title of honor which is in the Hebrew Bible used only for Moses (Deut 34:5; Josh 1:1, 13, 15; 8:31, 33; 11:12; 12:6 [2x]; 13:8; 14:7; 18:7; 22:2, 4, 5; 2 Kgs 18:12; 2 Chr 1:3; 24:6) and Joshua. Cf. other titles used for Moses in the book of Joshua: inda (Josh 1:2, 7 used by Yhwh), inda “his (Yhwh’s) servant” (Josh 9:24; 11:15). Cf. also inda “servant of God,” used only for Moses (Dan 9:11; Neh 10:30; 1 Chr 6:34; 2 Chr 24:9). “Servants” (plural) is in the book of Joshua used only in relation to someone other than Yhwh when the Gibeonites designate themselves as “your servants” in relation to Joshua and the Israelites (Josh 9:8, 9, 11, 23; 10:6).

commander of YHWH’s army (5:15) and YHWH (6:2) appear to be the same person.  

To sum up, in Josh 5:13-15 the expression מֶלֶךְ אֲדֹנָי מִלְאךְ designates the supreme commander of the “host of YHWH” who in the text is distinctly marked as divine, as YHWH. On grounds of the specific usage of מֶלֶךְ אֲדֹנָי מִלְאךְ in the human realm, it is not clear whether in Josh 5 he should be designated as the Most High. The context gives ample reason why this divine being identifies himself with the highest military title: YHWH, the divine warrior, will fight in the impending battle to conquer the promised land, starting here at Jericho, on the side of Joshua and Israel (cf. 1 Sam 17:45). He is not only the leader of the heavenly armies but also the supreme commander of the armies of Israel, giving Joshua and the Israelites specific instructions for the impending battle. It is reasonable to conclude that the title מֶלֶךְ אֲדֹנָי מִלְאךְ in the vision of Dan 8 is used specifically because of its referential meaning to Josh 5:14, 15 so that in the context of the offensive war of the horn מֶלֶךְ אֲדֹנָי מִלְאךְ refers to the heavenly commander who is divine, “a Manifestation of God in person,” and yet at the same time might be distinct from God the Most High.  

This supreme commander leads both the “host of angels” as well as the  

204. Others, of course, believe that Josh 6:1-5 cannot be regarded as a continuation of Joshua’s encounter with the commander of YHWH’s host and so the message of the heavenly commander “has been lost or omitted from the text” (Mullen, 199). 

1Winther-Nielsen also argues that the formula מֶלֶךְ אֲדֹנָי מִלְאךְ with nominal speaker and proper noun addressee recurs in (6:2a) and thus highlights the continuation of the divine commander’s speech (204). 

2Seow, Daniel, 123. 

3The relation between Dan 8:11a and Josh 5:14 has also been pointed out by van der Woude who comes to the same conclusion regarding the nature of the commander of YHWH’s host in Josh 5:14: “Dan 8:10 [sic] describes God himself as the prince of this sābā’ [host of heaven], while Josh 5:14 mentions the prince of Yahweh’s host in the context of a theophany, a reference to a mal’ak
“host of believers.” The title may even add the idea that the prince of the host “will in the end be as victorious over his enemy (the Little Horn power) as Yahweh was in the days of Joshua.”

In addition, some scholars have suggested that the use of the word יְלָע in Dan 8:11a (also) has a priestly connotation and could even refer to the high priest. Indeed, the term יְלָע, which usually denotes (higher) officials, can designate specific priests or Levites as leading priests or officers of the sanctuary:

ywhh-like figure who, as Yahweh’s messenger, is envisioned as simultaneously distinct from and identical with him” (“תֶּלֶע,” 2:1042). In contrast to van der Woude, I take the intertextual reference to Josh 5:14 in Dan 8:11a as indication that the commander of the host in Dan 8:11a is of similar nature as the commander of the host in Josh 5:14; in fact, it is the same being.

1Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 304.

2For Lacocque, יְלָע refers both to the high priest and to the angel Michael (The Book of Daniel, 162). Doukhan mentions that יְלָע “is the technical term for high priest (Ezra 8:24). In the context of the book of Daniel the word refers to Michael (Dan. 10:5, 13, 21; 12:1) who is dressed with linen clothes like the high priest officiating during the Day of Kippur (Lev. 16:4)” (Secrets, 126; cf. already idem, Daniel: The Vision of the End, 37-38). Beate Ego delineates a major tradition in the Rabbinic understanding, that prince Michael should be identified with the heavenly high priest. Reasons for this are that Michael, the great prince (Dan 12:1), stands before God (so in bHag 12b). In the continuation of this clause the cultic meaning of “standing before God” is expressed (Deut 10:8; Judg 20:28), and the term יְלָע can be used for the priest (1 Chr 24:5). Further, the heavenly high priest and Michael fulfill the same tasks and functions, especially the task of intercession (“Der Diener im Palast des himmlischen Königs: Zur Interpretation einer priesterlichen Tradition im rabbinschen Judentum,” in Königsherrschaft Gottes und himmlischer Kult: im Judentum, Urchristentum und in der hellenistischen Welt, ed. M. Hengel and A. M. Schwemer, WUNT, no. 55 [Tübingen: Mohr, 1991], 366-372; cf. Alberto R. Treiyer, The Day of Atonement and the Heavenly Judgment: From the Pentateuch to Revelation [Siloam Springs: Creation Enterprises, 1992], 347-348).

Priests: (Ezra 8:24, 29; 10:5; 2 Chr 36:14)
(1 Chr 24:5)
(1 Chr 24:5)
(1 Chr 24:5)

Levites: (1 Chr 15:5-10, 27)
(1 Chr 15:16; 2 Chr 35:9; perhaps Ezra 8:29)
(1 Chr 15:22)

Obviously, there was more than one priestly רֶהֶךָ at the same time. For example, in 1 Chr 15:5-10, six Levites are called רֶהֶךָ, and in the other texts רֶהֶךָ is used in the plural, whereas the designation for the high priest should be in the singular. It is also noteworthy that רֶהֶךָ is used regularly as head of a construct phrase together with a noun referring to the group or entity in which the person functions as רֶהֶךָ. Thus, if אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ refers to a priestly host, אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ designates the leader of a priestly host. However, in the Hebrew Bible the phrase אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ never refers to the high priest or to priests. It is rather difficult therefore to sustain a primarily priestly connotation for the term רֶהֶךָ or the phrase אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ in Dan 8:11a. Nonetheless, given the strong presence of cultic terminology in vs. 11b and 11c, a priestly connotation of רֶהֶךָ, respectively אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ, seems possible at least in a secondary sense.

**Conclusion.** The use of the title אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ in Dan 8:11a, as well as the appellation אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ in 8:25, implies no less than divine status. It refers to the divine supreme commander. As a military term, אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ emphasizes the war-like character of the activities of the horn and its attack against this heavenly warrior. In fact, the אֲדֹנָי רֶהֶךָ should be understood in the concept of the “Divine Warrior.” To sum up, the

---

1So also the observation by Collins, *Daniel* (1993), 375.
expression נָבַרְתִּי in Dan 8:11a presents the combination of two strands of thinking: (1) נָבַרְתִּי is a military term in the Hebrew Bible and (2) ברְתִי in a visionary context in the book of Daniel refers to a celestial being. In addition, a priestly connotation cannot be excluded.

The question remains, who is this divine-like commander of the host? Most likely, Michael is the commander. First, the title ברְתִי links both the prince of the host and Michael. Of all the occurrences of ברְתִי in the book of Daniel, the phrase ברְתִי הָאֹזְרִים "the great prince" (12:1), which identifies Michael, is most similar to נָבַרְתִּי. Second, regarding terminology, it is noteworthy that the Greek ἀρχιστράτηγος “commander-in-chief,” which renders נָבַרְתִּי in Dan 8:11a, is repeatedly used as an attribute to Michael in the Pseudepigrapha.¹ This is a later tradition, of course, but it confirms the Greek translation of נָבַרְתִּי is fifteen times the term ἀρχιστράτηγος "commander-in-chief." Both in Josh 5:14, 15 and in Dan 8:11a this title occurs. Out of the ca. 73 occurrences of the term ἀρχιστράτηγος in the Pseudepigrapha, which always refers to celestial beings, this title is most frequently used for Michael (ca. 71 times), only once for Raphael (Greek Apocalypse of Ezra 1:4) and once for a man of heaven not identified (Joseph and Asenath 14:7). The phrases "Michael, the ἀρχιστράτηγος" and "the ἀρχιστράτηγος Michael" occur in 2 Enoch 22:6 (J); 33:10 (J and A); 72:5 (J); 3 Baruch (Greek version) 11:4, 6, 7, 8; 13:3; Testament of Abraham (A) 1:4; 2:2; 3:9; 4:7; 7:11; 8:11; 9:8; 10:12; 12:15; 14:5, 12; 15:1; 19:4; (B) 14:7; Greek Apocalypse of Ezra 4:24. Thus, when the Old Greek and Theodotion use the title ἀρχιστράτηγος in Dan 8:11a the interpretation based on the Pseudepigrapha is that this "prince of the host" should be identified with Michael. See Lueken, 26-27; Michael Mach, "Michael Μιχαήλ," DDD, 570; Darrell D. Hannah, Michael and Christ: Michael Traditions and Angel Christology in Early Christianity, WUNT: Reihe 2, no. 109 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 1999), 38-40. Johannes Peter Rohland’s attempt to argue that the ἀρχιστράτηγος in Josh 5:14, 15 and Dan 8:11a should not be identified with Michael because his name does not appear in these biblical texts is not convincing (Der Erzengel Michael, Arzt und Feldherr: Zwei Aspekte des vor- und frühbyzantinischen Michaelskultes, BZRGG, no. 19 [Leiden: Brill, 1977], 13-14). From a diachronic viewpoint, it is more likely that the Pseudepigrapha as later writings used the term ἀρχιστράτηγος from Josh 5:14, 15 and Dan 8:11a and identified it with Michael than the biblical writer intentionally avoided the name Michael in order to make clear that he refers here to another celestial being. On the preeminence of Michael in Jewish and Christian literature see also the list of attributes and characteristics of Michael in Colin Nicholl, “Michael, the Restrainer Removed (2 Thess. 2:6-7),” JTS 51 (2000): 33-35; cf. Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 4-11.

¹The Greek translation of נָבַרְתִּי is fifteen times the term ἀρχιστράτηγος “commander-in-chief.” Both in Josh 5:14, 15 and in Dan 8:11a this title occurs. Out of the ca. 73 occurrences of the term ἀρχιστράτηγος in the Pseudepigrapha, which always refers to celestial beings, this title is most frequently used for Michael (ca. 71 times), only once for Raphael (Greek Apocalypse of Ezra 1:4) and once for a man of heaven not identified (Joseph and Asenath 14:7). The phrases "Michael, the ἀρχιστράτηγος" and "the ἀρχιστράτηγος Michael" occur in 2 Enoch 22:6 (J); 33:10 (J and A); 72:5 (J); 3 Baruch (Greek version) 11:4, 6, 7, 8; 13:3; Testament of Abraham (A) 1:4; 2:2; 3:9; 4:7; 7:11; 8:11; 9:8; 10:12; 12:15; 14:5, 12; 15:1; 19:4; (B) 14:7; Greek Apocalypse of Ezra 4:24. Thus, when the Old Greek and Theodotion use the title ἀρχιστράτηγος in Dan 8:11a the interpretation based on the Pseudepigrapha is that this “prince of the host” should be identified with Michael. See Lueken, 26-27; Michael Mach, "Michael Μιχαήλ," DDD, 570; Darrell D. Hannah, Michael and Christ: Michael Traditions and Angel Christology in Early Christianity, WUNT: Reihe 2, no. 109 (Tübingen: Mohr Siebeck, 1999), 38-40. Johannes Peter Rohland’s attempt to argue that the ἀρχιστράτηγος in Josh 5:14, 15 and Dan 8:11a should not be identified with Michael because his name does not appear in these biblical texts is not convincing (Der Erzengel Michael, Arzt und Feldherr: Zwei Aspekte des vor- und frühbyzantinischen Michaelskultes, BZRGG, no. 19 [Leiden: Brill, 1977], 13-14). From a diachronic viewpoint, it is more likely that the Pseudepigrapha as later writings used the term ἀρχιστράτηγος from Josh 5:14, 15 and Dan 8:11a and identified it with Michael than the biblical writer intentionally avoided the name Michael in order to make clear that he refers here to another celestial being. On the preeminence of Michael in Jewish and Christian literature see also the list of attributes and characteristics of Michael in Colin Nicholl, “Michael, the Restrainer Removed (2 Thess. 2:6-7),” JTS 51 (2000): 33-35; cf. Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 4-11.
identification of the ἀρχιστράτηγος with Michael in the early Jewish literature. Third, whenever Michael is mentioned in Daniel the context is one of contest and controversy, leading Collins to believe that in the book of Daniel “Michael, not Yahweh, is the heavenly warrior who fights for Israel.” Such a background of war and conflict would fit well with the mentioning of this celestial figure in Dan 8:11a in a context in which the horn is on the war-path. Fourth, “the commander of the host of Yahweh” in Josh 5:13-15, which is intertextually related to the commander of the host in Dan 8:11a, has been suggested to be Michael or, at least, a prefiguration of Michael. Fifth, if the host of heaven refers to the covenant people, the commander of the host would be the leader of that covenant people.

---

1 An extensive discussion on the functions of Michael in the Book of Daniel is provided by Anderson, “The Michael Figure,” 181-295. For Michael as the fighting one, even as the Divine Warrior, see John J. Collins, “The Mythology of Holy War in Daniel and the Qumran War Scroll: A Point of Transition in Jewish Apocalyptic,” VT 25 (1975): 600-601; and Otzen, 119-123.


3 Collins suggests that “the figure of Michael must be seen as development of the prince of the host of Yahweh who appears to Joshua in Jos. v 13 and of the angel of the Exodus” (“Holy War in Daniel,” 601 n. 20). A relation between Michael and the celestial figure in Josh 5 could be established on the basis of “parallel passages” to Josh 5:13-15. There, “the prince of the host of YHWH” is described with וכר תאיר בא יתאיא יתאיאו יתאיאו “and his sword drawn in his hand” (Josh 5:13). Exactly the same characterization is used for גואר תאיר בא יתאיא יתאיאו “the angel of YHWH” in Num 22:23, 31 and 1 Chr 21:16 (cf. Miller, The Divine Warrior, 128-131). Otzen regards these parallel texts as “connecting links from the ‘Prince of the Host of Yahweh’ to the mal’āk with his sword and from there to the figure of the fighting Michael” (120). Otzen also refers to the later rabbinic tradition which interprets “various martial angels figuring in Old Testament narratives as Michael,” for example, the “prince of the host of YHWH” (Josh 5:13) or the angel of YHWH stopping Balaam (Num 22:23). He finally concludes that there is a “development from Yahweh as the divine warrior to a figure of a fighting angel who represents Yahweh in his capacity of warrior and who may even be seen as the ‘warrior aspect’ of Yahweh split off as an independent figure, eventually being personalized as Michael” (121).
the sons of your people" in Dan 12:1 proves him to be the "angelic guardian of Israel,"¹ the protector and patron of the covenant people, a position which is usually attributed to YHWH himself.² One should also mention that the role of the commander of the host in Dan 8 (leader of the host of heaven, heavenly [high] priest, opponent of the horn) is similar to the roles that are in general attributed to Michael in Jewish apocalyptic literature.³

In sum, the suggestion of a "commander of the host" that is both angelic and divine-like seems to be the only solution which is faithful to the different indicators within the text. At the same time, such a proposal resolves the tension felt by those exegetes who chose the prince to be either God or to be Michael.⁴

Meaning of the Clause

An analysis of the syntactic and semantic features of sentences in which בָּל

¹See Hannah, 33-38, esp. 34-35.

²Similarly, but not in the sense of attributing a divine-like character to Michael, Niehr remarks that according to Dan 10:13 and 12:1 "Michael has taken the place of Yahweh as Israel’s protective prince" (Niehr, "מיכאל," 14:214). Anderson argues for the divine character of the Michael figure who is an intermediary between God and angels as well as between God and humans ("The Michael Figure," 288-294).

³See Hannah’s recent discussion on Michael in Jewish apocalyptic literature (including the book of Daniel). He observes that Michael is presented in relation to Israel as the angelic guardian of Israel, the leader of the heavenly host, and Israel’s legal advocate and opponent of Satan. Further, Michael is presented as Israel’s intercessor and heavenly high priest, as psychopomp, as angelus interpres, as the highest archangel, and as “the angel of the Name” (Hannah, 33-54).

⁴For example, Zöckler believes that the prince of the host of YHWH in Josh 5:14, who for him is probably Michael, is not identical with the prince of the host in Dan 8, who by contextual reasons must be divine (176). As another example, Montgomery rejects the view that the prince of the host is Michael, though for him the use of מַלְאָךְ in the book of Daniel as well as Josh 5:14 supports the idea that the prince of the host is Michael (335).
occurs in the Hiphil stem illuminates the meaning of Dan 8:11a. In the OT, thirty-four clauses with הָרָא hif. are found. The semantically relevant syntactic features of these clauses are shown in the following list:

1. הָרָא hif. with direct object; transitive-causative: “to make something great” (13x)
   a. Human subject (negative activity): Amos 8:5; Obad 12; Ps 41:10; Eccl 2:4.
   b. Divine subject (positive activity): Gen 19:19; 1 Sam 12:24; 2 Sam 22:51 (ketib) = Ps 18:51(qere); Isa 9:2; 28:29; 42:21; Ezek 24:9; Ps 138:2.

2. הָרָא hif. with infinitive sentence as semantic predicate; intransitive: “(to do) great things” or “to act mightily or boastfully” (4x)
   b. Divine subject (positive activity): Joel 2:21; Ps 126:2, 3.

3. הָרָא hif. without direct object; inwardly transitive: “to make oneself great,” often by exalting oneself or boasting (17x)
   a. Human subject (mostly negative activity): 1 Sam 20:41; Jer 48:26, 42;

---

1 See Pröbstle, “Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12,” 83-84.

2 See Mosis for similar observations which confirm my analysis (J. Bergman, Helmer Ringgren, and R. Mosis, “הָרָא gādhal,” TDOT, 2:404-406). Ernst Jenni distinguishes הָרָא hif. only between “normal causative” and an “inner-causative” function (“הָרָא gādā l,” TLOT, 1:304-305). DCH distinguishes “transitive” and “intransitive” meaning (2:323-325).

3 In these sentences a desemantized main verb— הָרָא hif.—is followed by an infinitive which designates the actual activity. In other words, הָרָא is syntactically the main verb, but semantically it only accompanies the infinitive.

4 The inwardly transitive meaning may be confused with the reflexive meaning (subject and object refer to the same) as both are translated the same. However, the inwardly transitive meaning of the Hiphil includes the causative function so that the “double-status subject causes itself to be or do something, and since the object is elided the verb is formally intransitive” (Walzke and O’Connor, 440 [§27.2f]). For the inwardly transitive (innerlich-transitiv) Hiphil see also Ernst Jenni, Der hebräische Prät: Syntaktisch-semasiologische Untersuchung einer Verbalform im Alten Testament (Zürich: Evangelische Verlagsanstalt, 1968), 46-48. Cf. GKC, 145 (§53d-f); Bergsträsser, 2:102-103 (§19d); and the ingressive meaning mentioned by H. S. Nyberg, Hebreisk Grammatik (Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1952), 226-227 (§78bb).

5 The temporal clause הָרָא does not have an object. However, the text and its meaning is disputed: Jenni regards it as causative but proposes a textual emendation (“תִּקָּרֵא,” 1:304; the text is considered as corrupt by Bergman, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:404; HAHAT, 1:201-202; and

---

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Ezek 35:13; Zeph 2:8, 10; Pss 35:26; 38:17; 55:13; Job 19:5; Eccl 1:16;
Lam 1:9; Dan 8:4, 8, 11, 25.

b. Divine subject: no occurrence.
c. Inanimate subject (positive: “to become great”): 1 Chr 22:5.

The meaning of clauses with לֹּא hif. is determined mainly by two features: (1) by the absence or presence of a direct object and (2) by the subject. With a direct object לֹּא hif. has transitive-causative meaning; without a direct object it has an inwardly transitive meaning. With a human subject the activity expressed by לֹּא hif. is always negative in character (with the possible exceptions of 1 Sam 20:41 and Eccl 1:16), whereas with a divine subject לֹּא hif. always designates a positive activity.

Regarding the clauses without a direct object, to which Dan 8:11a belongs, it is interesting that a divine subject never occurs in combination with the reflexive לֹּא hif.

The subject of the inwardly transitive לֹּא hif. is with one exception (the temple in 1 Chr

HALOT, 1:179); DCH regards it as intransitive: “until David prevailed” which means that he “exceeded his companion in weeping, or, regained his composure” (2:324).

In Eccl 1:16 the object could be elliptical and filled by the object of the next clause (“wisdom”), which would then move this clause to the first category, viz. לֹּא hif. with a direct object; thus Bergman, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:404; HAHAT, 1:201.

The syntactic and semantic function of לֹּא hif. is difficult. Jenni (Pi'el, 49) and HAHAT (1:201) regard the infinitive with ל as inner causative expressing necessity and translate “must become great in measure” (cf. Bergmann, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:405); Waltke and O'Connor classify it as internal Hiphil: “should be magnificent” (441 [§27.2g]); whereas DCH (2:323-324) and HALOT (1:179) regard it as transitive: “to enlarge beyond all measure.” From a syntactic viewpoint לֹּא does not have an object, and therefore it is placed under the group without direct object.

The nearest the syntactic construction of לֹּא hif. + object comes to an inwardly transitive meaning is in Obad 12 where the object of לֹּא hif. is מַעֲשֹׂה “mamouth”: “do not make your mouth great” is close to “do not boast, do not magnify yourself.” Thus, HALOT groups this text with the intransitive forms under “to magnify oneself” (1:179).

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
22:5) always human. 1 The action itself is of a negative character and fifteen out of seventeen times designates the making great of oneself in an illegal, presumptuous, arrogant manner—probably implying boasting, exalting or magnifying oneself—which may be a general activity without direct relationship to someone else, or a specific activity directed explicitly against others. 2 Those who are affected negatively by this activity are marked by the preposition \( \text{יִלָּע} \). 3 The preposition \( \text{יִלָּע} \) with \( \text{נָרל} \) hif. is used only in Dan 8:8, 11a where it denotes the extent to which one makes oneself great. 4 Hence, in Dan 8:11a the construction \( \text{נָרל} \) hif. + \( \text{יִלָּע} \) does not primarily indicate the magnifying of the horn to be directed \textit{against} the commander of the host, in which case the preposition \( \text{יִלָּע} \) would have been expected. 5 Rather it clearly expresses that the magnifying reaches an extent in which the horn makes itself similar or equal in status to the commander of the host. 6

The activity of the horn described in Dan 8:11a is negative in character. The horn

1 Though the subjects in Dan 8:4, 8 are animate (ram, goat) and in Dan 8:11 inanimate (horn), it is clear that the language of the vision is symbolic and refers here to human beings or human powers.

2 See Jenni, \textit{Piel}, 49; Bergmann, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:404-406; and Waltke and O'Connor, 440 and 440 n. 17 (§27.2f). Only in Lam 1:9 and Dan 8:4 does \( \text{נָרל} \) hif. occur with subject alone.

3 Jer 48:26, 42; Ezek 35:13; Zeph 2:8, 10; Pss 35:26; 38:17; 55:13; Job 19:5.

4 The semantic function of \( \text{יִלָּע} \) in combination with \( \text{נָרל} \) qal is similar. See the section on vs. 10a (above).

5 Such expectations are probably the reason for regarding \( \text{נָרל} \) as dittography (from vs. 10a) and to read instead \( \text{לָיָם} \) “even over” with reference to the expression \( \text{לָיָם} \text{נָרָל} \) “to magnify oneself against” or “to become arrogant toward” (see Jer 48:26, 42; cf. Pss 38:17; 55:13). So Ginsberg, \textit{Studies in Daniel}, 82 n. 33; Hartman and Di Lella, 221. Graetz also emends \( \text{נָרָל} \) to \( \text{לָיָם} \) because he regards \( \text{נָרָל} \) as elliptical for \( \text{לָיָם} \text{נָרָל} \) and takes \( \text{לָיָם} \text{נָרָל} \) therefore as an expression for “speak arrogantly, disdainfully” which is used with the preposition \( \text{לָיָם} \) (387 n. 1).

6 The results of this analysis correspond to the suggestion that \( \text{לָיָם} \text{נָרָל} \) in vs. 11a has a subjective sense (Zöckler, 175; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 308).
acts in such a way that it is magnifying itself presumptuously to the extent of the level of the “commander of the host.” The syntax (גלה hif. without direct object) also shows that the activity of the horn should be understood more as inwardly transitive (“to magnify oneself”) rather than only as formally intransitive (“to become great”). The Hiphil עירוב is then an indication for the subjective making great of the horn as compared to the objective growing in vss. 9-10.º

How can a human power affect a divine being? It is mentioned three times in the OT that the magnifying of oneself (גלה hif.) can be directed explicitly against (ה’ God: Jer 48:26, 42; and Ezek 35:13.² The context of these passages describes how hostile nations make themselves great against the people of Israel. God is affected by this invective boasting against his people and he regards it as directed against himself. God is in “fundamental solidarity . . . with the despised Israel.”³ This concept is found underlying the divine judgment oracle in Zeph 2:8-10 in which enemy nations made

¹Thus, for גלה in Dan 8:11a the translation given by HALOT (1:179: “to magnify oneself,” “to boast”) and by DCH (1:324: “act mightily or boastfully, prevail, magnify oneself”) should be preferred over the one given by HAHAT (1:201: “to become great, mighty”) and BDB (152: “do great things”). Lust argues that גלה does not mean “to grow” but rather “to boast” (“Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 290-291; cf. Aalders, Daniel [1962], 175).

²One is reminded of the “tower of Babel” episode in Gen 11:1-9. Though the verb גלה is not used in the story itself, the building of a tower that reaches into heaven (בשמים) is notably the first human attempt at magnifying oneself, which the intention “let us make for ourselves a name” shows (11:4). To be sure, the root גלה appears in the noun גלה, “tower” which occurs here for the first time in the Hebrew Bible (Gen 11:4, 5). The human magnification is a clear offense to YHWH. That is why YHWH intervenes through his judgment. In the following divine call to Abram, which is clearly linked to the “tower of Babel” episode, the verb גלה then occurs for the first time in the Hebrew Bible when YHWH promises Abram to make his name great (בשם, 12:2). Also, YHWH will make Abram a great (בראש) nation (12:2). It is in Gen 11:1-9 and 12:1-3 that the contrasting theme of human self-magnification, on the one hand, which is basically a usurpation of divine status and thus an offense to God, and the divine making great of his chosen people, on the other hand, takes its beginning.

³Mosis in Bergmann, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:405 (in reference to Jer 48:26, 42; Ezek 35:13).
themselves great against "my people" and "their border" (vs. 8), against "the people of the Lord of hosts" (vs. 10). The same context is found in Dan 8:10-11. The horn acts against the host of heaven. This implies that it also acts against the "commander of the host" who is in fundamental solidarity with his host. The attack against the commander of the host therefore consists in the earthly attack on the people of God and on the worship of God. Notwithstanding, the attack of the horn is also directed against the commander of the host himself, as the next two clauses in vs. 11 will show.

Clause 11b

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

4.Sy + P.Sy [+l.Sy] +2.Sy
prepositional object +predicate [+subject] +direct object

Clause-type: x-qatal.

1See, e.g., von Lengerke, 379; Rohling, Daniel, 238; Meinhold, "Daniel," 308-309 ("the oppression of the saints [vs. 10] is also a mockery of God"); Goldingay, Daniel, 211; Seow, Daniel, 124 ("atrocities committed against the people of God are atrocities perpetrated against the heavenly host and, indeed, against God"). George W. Nickelsburg, in discussing Dan 7 and applying the same principle to Dan 8, recognizes that "the apocalypticist views reality on two separate but related levels. Events on earth have their counterparts in heaven and vice versa." In applying the biblical text historically to the time of Antiochus, he describes this interrelation: "When Antiochus persecutes the Jews he is wearing out their heavenly angelic patrons. By the same token the actions of the heavenly court have repercussions on earth. When judgment is passed in heaven the earthly king and his kingdom fall" (Jewish Literature Between the Bible and the Mishnah: A Historical and Literary Introduction [Philadelphia: Fortress, 1981], 85).
The syntactic analysis depends on the form of the verb which is written as Hiphil הָעַלְּפִים "took away" with active meaning but is vocalized as Hophal הָעַלְּפִים "was taken away" with passive meaning. A text-oriented interpretation favors the ketib form because this is the one found in the Hebrew consonantal text which has been chosen for this text-oriented study. In addition, the text-critical comments below also provide reasons for retaining the consonantal text. Nevertheless, an analysis of the clause with the qere of the verb is also provided.

Text-critical note on the verb in Dan 8:11b

The basic issue with the verb in vs. 11b is whether the Hiphil הָעַלְּפִים "he took away" (ketib) or the Hophal הָעַלְּפִים "it was taken away" (qere) constitutes the original text, especially since the versions are also divided. Closely connected to the ketib/qere question is the question of the function of נָמְלַי in the same clause. Regarding procedure, it is more precise to start with the analysis of the verbal form, which is syntactically the main denominator of a verbal clause, before one tackles the prepositional phrase. In other words, the interpretation of נָמְלַי should not influence the decision on the ketib/qere conflict.

Five different avenues of understanding have been proposed in the literature.

1 Peshitta (אֶלְבַּד הָעַלְּפִים) and Vulgate (et ab eo tulit) read as active, whereas Theodotion, Old Greek, as well as Papyrus 967, attest the passive verbal form (ἐπάχθη)

2 Montgomery even attributes the conflict of ketib/qere to the different interpretations of נָמְלַי, which can mean either "and from him (prince of the host)" or "and by him (horn)" (336).
First, the active Hiphil form יָהְרָה “took away” is original.\(^1\) Several reasons argue for this understanding. For one, the verb יָהְרָה with active meaning does not fit smoothly into the series of passives in vss. 11c and 12a (though it fits to the previous Hiphil form in vs. 11a). The reading of יָהְרָה seems therefore to be the lectio difficilior.\(^2\) Also, frequently the motivation for choosing the qere is to avoid the apparent gender incongruence between the feminine subject “horn” and the masculine ketib verb.\(^3\) However, if there are good reasons to retain the masculine verb forms in vss. 9a and 11a (see discussion under the literary analysis), another masculine verb in vs. 11b fits well into this context. Finally, the passive יָהְרָה (qere) could have well been adjusted in analogy to the following passive יָהְרָה and is thus a later development.\(^4\) An argument from the context is that, though with some reservation, the Hiphil form of יָהְרָה may imply priestly language.\(^5\)

Second, the Hophal יָהְרָה “was taken away” (qere) is original.\(^6\) The major reasons

\(^1\)Peshitta; Vulgate; von Lengerke, 379; Hitzig, 132; Kranichfeld, 294; Knabenbauer, 33; Tiefenthal, 268; Kamphausen, 33; GKC, 202 (§72ee); Leupold, 347; Thomson, 242; Næs, 96; Plöger, Daniel, 122; Lebram, Daniel, 94; Dominique Barthélemy, Critique textuelle de l’Ancien Testament, vol. 3, Ézéchiel, Daniel et les 12 Prophètes, OBO, no. 50/3 (Fribourg, Switzerland: Éditions Universitaires; Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1992), 459-460; Haag, Daniel, 64; Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 5; Stahl, Weltengagement, 174.

\(^2\)Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 5.

\(^3\)Moore observes that the passives יָהְרָה and יָהְרָה “may have been occasioned by the discord of gender” (195 n. 16).

\(^4\)See Hävernick, 275; von Lengerke, 379; Kranichfeld, 294; Tiefenthal, 268; Plöger, Daniel, 122.

\(^5\)Stahl, Weltengagement, 174 n. 296.

\(^6\)Old Greek, Theodotion, Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Behrmann, 54 (cites יָהְרָה in Zech 5:11 and BA יָהְרָה in Dan 7:4); von Gall, 48; Prince, “On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; Prince, Daniel, 242; Marti, Daniel, 58; Montgomery, 340; Charles, 205, 207, 377; Beek, 84; Linder, 337; Lattey, 29;
for this are first that a Hophal verbal form would avoid a gender incongruence with the
subject horn, which then needs to be supplied, and second that the Hophal aligns with the
Hophal הָרִים in the next clause (vs. 11c) and with the passive יַרְדֵּן in vs. 12a. The latter
could however be regarded as weakness for it seems to be a harmonization with vss. 11c
and 12a.

The third suggestion is that the consonantal form הרוה is a passive form due to
Aramaic influence. Such an isolated passive meaning of a seemingly Hiphil consonantal
form—also called a Hophal הָרִים with i-vowel— is argued on the analogy of the Aramaic
רְדֵּן in Dan 7:4, and in comparison to the Hophal רְדֵּן in Zech 5:11. This
suggestion is attractive mainly if one holds to the Aramaic influence theory or Aramaic
original theory of Dan 8 and the other parts of BH Daniel.

Fourth, Goldstein proposes to vocalize הרוה as Hiphil infinitive absolute
that functions like a finite verb with active meaning. As shown above, such a proposal
involves too many changes in vocalization in vs. 11 and requires a different clause
division.

Aalders, Daniël (1962), 175; Delcor, 176 (because of the passive רד in vs. 11c); Hasslberger, 8 n.
25; Niditch, 220; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 404 n. 22; translation by Goldingay, Daniel, 195
(cf. 197); Collins, Daniel (1993), 326; Redditt, 139; Gzella, 38.

1 König 1:502f.; Behrmann, 54. The note in Barthélemy (459) that Bentzen, Porteous, and
Plöger support this view is erroneous.

2 Ewald, Lehrbuch, 344 (§131d). Cf. the original first vowel /u/ and the original stem vowel
or second vowel /i/ in the perfect of passive conjugations; Jouon and Muraoka, 165 (§55); Waltke and
O’Connor, 447 (§28.1).

3 Goldstein, I Maccabees, 145-146 n. 251. For comments on this suggestion see p. 155 n. 2.
The fifth category of suggestions is textual emendation.1 Again, from the viewpoint of a text-oriented approach, as long as other possibilities exist that do not require a change of the text, textual emendation is considered an inferior option.

To conclude these comments on the verb form, there are enough reasons to retain the consonantal Hiphil reading with an active sense. The following syntactic analysis is undertaken with the preferred ketib form (Hiphil). Nevertheless, after this a syntactic analysis of the clause with the qere form (Hophal) is also provided.

Syntax of 11b and antecedent of הַמַּעַן

The verb מְיַסֵּד (ketib) is masculine in gender like מְיַסֵּד in the previous clause. The subject is still the horn mentioned explicitly in vs. 9a. Again, the gender difference between the masculine predicate and the feminine subject “horn” will be addressed in the literary analysis. The object of the taking away is מְיַסֵּד “the tamid.”2 The omission of the object marker נא before מְיַסֵּד in vs. 12b, or as occurring typically before מְיַסֵּד in 11:31, or as a sign for language of a high style (HXX is missing before the direct objects in 8:24, 25 [2x], 26). The prepositional phrase מְיַסֵּד with לַא of source indicates the person from whom the tamid is taken away, namely “the prince of the host” to whom the pronominal suffix refers back. This creates a syntactic-semantic

---

1Ginsberg (Studies in Daniel, 50-51) and Hartmann (222) emend to מְיַסֵּד “it removed,” whereas for Hartmann מְיַסֵּד “it removed, put away” is a slightly better reading (referring to Dan 11:31; 12:11). Moore reads מְיַסֵּד in order to avoid gender discord with the feminine horn (196).

2As already mentioned, for the term מְיַסֵּד I will use its transliteration tamid as substitute for an English translation.
correspondence between vs. 11a and vs. 11b: Both clauses start with a prepositional phrase referring to the commander of the host followed by a Hiphil verb form with the horn as subject, except that in vs. 11b a further entity is introduced, the tämi d.

With a passive verb הָדֹּ֖ר (qere) the word תָּמוּ֖ד functions as subject of the passive clause. With such a reading the prepositional phrase יָֽאֵ֖בנָּה becomes ambiguous. Basically, two different functions could be attributed to this phrase.¹ On the one hand, and preferred by most scholars, יָֽאֵ֖בנָּה could be a יָֽאֶ֖ב of source referring to the source from which the tämi d is taken away.² In this case, the pronominal suffix in יָֽאֵ֖בנָּה refers to the prince of the host and the clause is translated with “from him [the prince of the host] the tämi d is taken away.”³ With this understanding the function and referent of the prepositional phrase is the same as in the clause with the ketib חֲלֹ֖ה. On the other hand, יָֽאֵ֖בנָּה could be a יָֽאֶ֖ב of instrument referring to the agent of the taking away, the so-called logical subject of the passive verb. The pronominal suffix in יָֽאֵ֖בנָּה would then refer to the subject of the previous clause (vs. 11a), which is the horn, and the clause would be

¹The textual emendation that reads יָֽאֶ֖ב instead of יָֽאֵ֖ב, as proposed by Ginsberg (Studies in Daniel, 51) and followed by Hartmann and Di Leila (222) and Lacocque (Daniel, 159) has not found much support.

²Goldstein takes יָֽאֶ֖ב to vs. 11a and translates: “It grew, until it equaled the Prince of the Host, and beyond” (I Maccabees, 145-146 n. 251). However, it is extremely difficult to prove that the preposition יָֽאֶ֖ב can indicate spatial positioning of a mark beyond which a movement occurs (once it may indicate the temporal “beyond”: 2 Sam 20:5). The preposition יָֽאֶ֖ב never occurs with a verb of motion in such a meaning—there it indicates only source (from where or from whom) or in specific combinations (e.g., יָֽאֶ֖ב “eastwards,” יָֽאֶ֖ב “far away”)—and it never occurs after the preposition יָֽאֶ֖ב in such a meaning. Therefore, the syntactic transposition of יָֽאֶ֖ב to vs. 11a must be rejected.

³So, e.g., Rosenmüller, 262; von Lengerke, 379; Rohling, Daniel, 231; Bevan, 133; Driver, Daniel, 116; Marti, Daniel, 58; Goettsberger, 62; Leupold, 347; Bentzen, 56; Alders, Daniel (1962), 175; Delcor, 174; Maier, 305; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 404; Redditt, 139. Of course, this opinion is held by all scholars who consider the active חֲלֹ֖ה to be the correct verbal form of vs. 11b.
translated “by him [the horn] the təmî d is taken away.”

There are at least two reasons why the pronominal suffix in יִשָׁנָה refers to the prince of the host. First, both יִשָׁנָה and תְּמִית יִשָׁנָה occupy the preverbal fields of their respective clauses. The focus on the prince of the host established in vs. 11a is reaffirmed in vs. 11b if indeed the pronominal suffix in יִשָׁנָה refers to the prince. There is no apparent reason to switch the focus back to the horn. In fact, יִשָׁנָה is naturally only in sentence-initial position when it emphasizes the previously mentioned יִשָׁנָה, which is also in sentence-initial position.2

Second, whereas the next clause (vs. 11c) has no explicit reference to the subject “horn,” the pronominal suffix בַּאֲפֵי in יִשָׁנָה refers to the prince of the host. As יִשָׁנָה refers back to “the prince of the host” the following pronominal suffix יִשָׁנָה again refers back to the prince, has in יִשָׁנָה a near antecedent.3

Thus, it is rather difficult to assume that in Dan 8:11b the preposition יָּד indicates

1 So the Old Greek and Theodotion, who read δ' αὐτοῦ ... ἐξέλαθεν “by him ... was taken away”; Heinrich Ewald, Syntax of the Hebrew Language of the Old Testament, trans. J. Kennedy (Edinburgh: Clark, 1879), 129 (§295c), who furthermore argues that the preposition יָּד indicates the logical subject of a passive verb in a stronger way than the preposition י does (cf. idem, Daniel, 262); Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Behrmann, 24, 54; BDB, 580 (under יָּד 2e[a]); Charles, 205, who reads יִשָׁנָה with feminine suffix to align it with the feminine יִשָׁנָה. Frank Zimmermann, “The Aramaic Origin of Daniel 8-12,” JBL 57 (1938): 257, who considers the placement of יָּד + pronominal suffix in sentence-initial position as Aramaic construction similar to the frequent יִשָׁנָה יִשָׁנָה “and a decree is issued by me” (Dan 3:29; 4:3; Ezra 4:19; 6:8, 11; 7:21); Linder, 337; Lattey, 29; Barnes 2:11; Wood, 214; Goldingay, Daniel, 195, 197; Lucas, Daniel, 206. For examples of such a function of יָּד with passive verbs see, e.g., Gen 9:11; Isa 53:5; Hos 8:4; Obad 9; Nah 1:6; Ps 37:23; Job 24:1; 28:4; Ecc 12:11; cf. also Dan 3:29, etc. in Aramaic. The canonized Aramaic text of Dan 8:11 (Dan 6:11 in this Aramaic text) reads “and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away” (Nachman Heller, Daniel and Ezra: The Canonized Aramaic Text, Translated into Hebrew, Yiddish and English, and Supplemented with Footnotes and Marginal Comments [New York: Rosenberg, 1905], 59).


3 König, 3:37 ($107); Hassberger, 100; Barthélemy, 460 n. 1439.
the agent of a passive verb. The emphasis of the clauses in vs. 11 is not on the agent itself but on its activities, and on the objects affected by them.

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Syntactic-semantic analysis of מָזַר + לְרֹאֶה

The verbal root מָזַר occurs ninety-two times in the Hiphil and two times in the Hophal. In Dan 8:11b it occurs with מָזַר of the person and is suggested to be translated with “lift up” or “draw away.” In order to understand the syntactic and semantic dimension of the clause in Dan 8:11b, all clauses with the verbal root מָזַר in the H-stem (Hiphil and Hophal) in which a prepositional phrase with מָזַר occurs need to be analyzed. From that material the relevant conclusions for Dan 8:11b can be drawn.

Analysis of clauses with מָזַר hif./hof. + מָזַר. The list in table 5 seeks to tabulate the results of an analysis of clauses with מָזַר hif./hof. (= מָזַר hif.) + מָזַר in BH.

1 Hassler, 100.

2 This count includes the ketib in Pss 66:7; 89:18; Dan 8:11b, and לְרֹאֶה in Ps 75:7.

3 For example, HALOT gives as translation possibilities for מָזַר hif./hof. in Dan 8:11 “lift up, draw away” (ketib, hif.) and “be lifted away, taken away” (qere, hof.) (3:1204-1205).

4 Besides the active/passive differences, the ketib and the qere refer to the same activity in regard to the מָזַר, and thus bring the same semantic values to the meaning of the clause.

5 In all cases of מָזַר hif./hof. + מָזַר the verb occurs only once in the Hophal (Lev 4:10); in all other texts מָזַר is in the Hiphil. To simplify, therefore, I use in the following the expression מָזַר hif. with the understanding that מָזַר hof. is included whenever this is possible.

6 The difficult clause in Ezek 45:9 does not belong into the category of clauses with מָזַר hif. + מָזַר. The preposition מִלְחָמָה seems not to be governed by the verb מָזַר but rather by the root מְשַׁר “expel” in the noun מְשַׁר “your driving away.” The combination מָזַר + מָזַר “drive out from” is found frequently in BH (e.g., Exod 6:1; 11:1; 12:39; Num 22:6; Judg 9:41; 11:7; 1 Sam 26:19; 1 Kgs 2:27; Hos 9:15; Mic 2:9; 2 Chr 20:11).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Translation of הוה気になる</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Prepositional Object with מ</th>
<th>Context</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lev 2:9</td>
<td>priest</td>
<td>remove / set aside¹</td>
<td>its token portion</td>
<td>from the נזקק</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lev 4:8</td>
<td>high priest²</td>
<td>remove / set aside</td>
<td>all the fat of the bull of the מזחא</td>
<td>from it (bull of the מזחא)</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lev 4:10</td>
<td>priest</td>
<td>remove / set aside (וההו הוה)</td>
<td>it (= all of the fat, vs. 8)³</td>
<td>from the ox</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lev 4:19</td>
<td>priest</td>
<td>remove / set aside</td>
<td>all its fat</td>
<td>from it (bull מזחא)</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lev 6:8</td>
<td>priest³</td>
<td>remove / set aside</td>
<td>a handful of fine flour...</td>
<td>from it (תהלת)</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 17:2</td>
<td>priest Eleazar</td>
<td>remove / set aside</td>
<td>the censers</td>
<td>from the midst מבער of the fire</td>
<td>struggle over priesthood (associated with cult; cf. 16:17-18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 18:26</td>
<td>you (Levites)</td>
<td>set aside / withhold⁴</td>
<td>a contribution⁴ for יוהו</td>
<td>from it (the tithe)</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 18:28</td>
<td>you (Levites)</td>
<td>set aside / withhold</td>
<td>a contribution for יוהו</td>
<td>from all of your tithes</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 18:29</td>
<td>you (Levites)</td>
<td>set aside / withhold</td>
<td>the entire contribution for יוהו</td>
<td>from all gifts conveyed to you</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 18:30</td>
<td>you (Levites)</td>
<td>set aside / withhold</td>
<td>its best</td>
<td>from it (the tithes)</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 18:32</td>
<td>you (Levites)</td>
<td>set aside / withhold</td>
<td>its best</td>
<td>from it (the tithes)</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num 31:28</td>
<td>Moses</td>
<td>set aside / raise⁵</td>
<td>a tribute for יוהו</td>
<td>from the men of wars⁶</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
### Table 5—Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Translation of וְזֵר</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Prepositional Object with קְמָת</th>
<th>Context</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Num 31:52</td>
<td>Moses and (high) priest Eleazar⁹</td>
<td>set aside / raise</td>
<td>all gold of the contribution¹⁰ (for YHWH)¹¹</td>
<td>from (דָּמָא) the officers of thousands / hundreds</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Sam 2:8</td>
<td>YHWH</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td>the needy</td>
<td>from the ash heap</td>
<td>Hannah’s Prayer: social status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kgs 14:7</td>
<td>YHWH</td>
<td>exalt</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>from among (מָהָרִים) the people</td>
<td>Prophetic message to Jerobeam: social status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kgs 16:2</td>
<td>YHWH</td>
<td>exalt</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>from among (מָהָרִים) the dust</td>
<td>Divine message to Jehu: social status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 14:13</td>
<td>I (king of Babel)</td>
<td>raise</td>
<td>my throne</td>
<td>from above of (בֵּית הֶלְגָן) the stars of God</td>
<td>Quote in taunt song over king: status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 57:14</td>
<td>unspecified persons</td>
<td>remove</td>
<td>obstacle</td>
<td>from the way of my people</td>
<td>Message: people will return to God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 45:1</td>
<td>unspecified (Israelites)</td>
<td>set apart</td>
<td>an allotment for YHWH, a holy portion</td>
<td>from the land</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 75:7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>exalt¹²</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>from the east / west / desert</td>
<td>Prophetic exhortation in a Psalm of Asaph: social status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 89:20</td>
<td>YHWH</td>
<td>exalt</td>
<td>a chosen one</td>
<td>from the people</td>
<td>Psalm recalling the divine oracle about David: social status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 113:7</td>
<td>YHWH</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td>the needy</td>
<td>from the ash heap</td>
<td>Psalm: social status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan 8:11b</td>
<td>horn</td>
<td>remove</td>
<td>the tami d</td>
<td>from him</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Table 5—Continued.

1In his commentary on Leviticus, Jacob Milgrom translates the Hiphil of הָלַל always with “set aside” since for him in the priestly source הָלַל is a technical term (Leviticus 1-16, AB, vol. 3 [New York: Doubleday, 1991], 186).

2The term הָלַל “the priest” in Lev 4:8 refers to the high priest designated in vss. 3-5 as יִשְׁמְרָא הַלַל “the anointed priest” (see Milgrom, Leviticus 1-16, 233). The definite article in הָלַל is a clear indication for this. Also theologically, the high priest needs to officiate his own sacrifice “because there is no one higher to represent him before God” (John E. Hartley, Leviticus, WBC, vol. 4 [Dallas: Word, 1992], 60).

3A passive clause has no grammatical object and thus no object marker. The place of the object is here filled in by the grammatical subject of the passive clause which transformed is the object of the active clause.

4Milgrom correctly observes that “the anonymous subject throughout this chapter is always the priest” (Leviticus 1-16, 391).

5Levine translates the Hiphil of הָלַל with “withhold” and compares the sense of to withhold one-tenth of the tithes or gifts given to the Levites with the contemporary practice of withholding taxes (Numbers 1-20, 439, 452).

6The term הָלַל stems from the root הָלַל and indicates that which is set aside or dedicated to YHWH, a “contribution” or “dedication.” See the extensive note on הָלַל in Milgrom, Leviticus 1-16, 415-416. Levine observes that “Hebrew terumah is a generic term that literally means ‘what is lifted, taken,’ but rather with the act of collection. Most substances identified as terumah have to do with temple and cult, or with the emoluments of the clergy (Lev 7:14; Num 18:8, 29-30; Deut 12:6-11, 17)” (Numbers 1-20, 191). Levine suggests translating הָלַל with “levied donation” (so in all its occurrences, including Num 18:26, 28, 29).


8Of course, the tribute or tax is taken “from their half” of the booty (Num 31:26, 29), but here the preposition יָלָד designates those persons to whom the booty belonged.

9The attribute הָלַל “the priest,” which is here used for Eleazar (Num 31:51), can also refer to the high priest (for Aaron see Exod 31:10 etc.). Eleazar is called “the priest” 29 times (Num 17:4; 19:3, 4; 26:3, 63; 27:2, 19, 21, 22; 31:6, 12, 13, 21, 26, 31, 41, 51, 54; 32:2, 28; 34:17; Josh 14:1; 17:4; 19:51; 21:1; 22:13, 31, 32), and he certainly officiates as high priest after the death of Aaron (Num 20:28).

10Because the object is expressed by the relative pronoun no object marker is required.

11The expression wisdom belongs to הָלַל to which the relative pronoun refers. See the extension of הָלַל with הָלַל (Exod 30:13; 35:5; Lev 7:14; Num 15:19; Ezek 45:1) or the phrase הָלַל (Exod 30:14, 15; 35:5, 21, 24; Num 18:26, 28a, 28b, 29; 31:29, 41; 2 Chr 31:14).

12The form הָלַל is difficult to analyze (see, e.g., the suggestions in HALOT, 3:1205) but since הָלַל is a key root in Ps 75 (vss. 5, 6, 8, 11) it seems justified to regard הָלַל as Hiphil infinitive construct of הָלַל.
The verbal root רָוָה in the Hiphil, the basic meaning of which is “bring aloft, raise up, lift up,” takes on a specific meaning in clauses with the preposition מִ. A review of table 5 shows that several factors influence and determine the semantic notion of רָוָה in these clauses: foremost its direct object, but also its prepositional object governed by מִ, its subject, and, beyond the syntactic features, the context in which רָוָה hif. is used.

Two semantic notions of רָוָה can be defined according to the category of the direct object. First, if the object is not personal, that is, a physical object or a part of a (dead) animal, רָוָה designates the activity of removing or setting aside something from the place or position occupied, in specific, from someone or something (entity or person) which that object was part of or to which it belonged (Lev 2:9; 4:8, 10, 19; 6:8; Num 17:2; 18:26, 28, 29, 30, 32; 31:28, 52; Isa 57:14; Ezek 45:1). Though there is no instance where רָוָה hif. denotes the simple separation of specific persons from a larger group, this is certainly conceivable. Second, if the object is a person, the activity of separation or removal expressed by רָוָה takes on the additional notion of exaltation. A person is separated from a group to a higher status (1 Sam 2:8; 1 Kgs 14:7; 16:2; Pss 89:20; 113:7). In one case the object is “my throne” (Isa 14:13) which, being the seat of authority of a person, stands symbolically for the status of that person.

The preposition מִ in clauses with רָוָה in the H-stem always has the same

\(^{1}\textit{HALOT}, 3:1204.\)

\(^{2}\)In Num 17:10 a similar clause type occurs, but with the verb רָוָה—a Niphal form of the root רָוָה that is considered to be a by-form of the root רָוָה which does not occur in the Niphal (cf. \textit{HALOT}, 3:1244-1245). Here, \textit{YHWH} commands Moses and Aaron to remove themselves “from among (ָּלָא) this community.” Again, the root רָוָה denotes separation.
function: It governs the entity from which the object is set aside, either to remove or to exalt it. Usually the entity governed by הַנְּחַל is the larger whole from which the object is taken (object from a larger object: Lev 2:9 etc.; person from a group of persons: 1 Kgs 14:7 and Ps 89:20), but it can also refer to the person/s from whom the object is taken (Num 31:28, 52). The latter fact lends support to the view that the preposition הַנְּחַל in Dan 8:11b functions in an identical way and refers to the person from whom the $tֶּמִי d is taken. This would indicate that the expression הַנְּחַל in Dan 8:11b should not be understood to represent the agent of the taking away of the $tֶּמִי d. Furthermore, when it is a person from whom something is taken away, the one who removes has authority over that person (Num 31:28, 52).

In five of the clauses the prepositional object stands in the preverbal field. Two times this can be explained as a poetic arrangement in a parallelism (1 Sam 2:8; Ps 113:7). The other three times the preverbal position of the הַנְּחַל-phrase focuses the attention on the entity from which something or someone is set aside (Num 18:29; Isa 14:13; Dan 8:11b).

An interesting observation should be noted regarding the subject of הַנְּחַל. On the one hand, whenever the subject is a priest or an official of the cult, הַנְּחַל is used in the meaning “to set aside.” This holds true vice versa, except in cases of an unspecified personal subject (Isa 57:14; Ezek 45:1). On the other hand, when the subject is YHWH—and in one case with the presumptuous, divine prerogatives claiming king of Babel as subject (Isa 14:13)— הַנְּחַל is used with the meaning of “to exalt.” In those cases the object is always personal.
These syntactic-semantic observations result in a coherent picture of two basic semantic notions of הָרַד hif. with מֵן, which in addition can also be differentiated by their contexts. First, הָרַד hif. means "to set aside" or "to remove" when something is taken away from someone or something of which it was part or to which it belonged, usually by an official of the cult. And second, הָרַד hif. means "to exalt" or "lift up" when someone is taken or set apart from a group or a social status, usually by יהוה himself. One can observe that in a cultic context הָרַד hif. means "to set aside" or "to remove," whereas in the context of (social) status הָרַד hif. means "to exalt." Hence, to determine the meaning of הָרַד hif. + מֵן the context is decisive also.

Regarding the context of הָרַד hif. + מֵן clauses I concur with Milgrom's observations on the verb הָרַד hif. in cultic usage in general. He concludes that in a cultic context, הָרַד hif. has a technical meaning which is "to remove, set aside." More explicitly, "in the cultic texts of P, the verb הֵרִי hēri, used exclusively with the preposition מִן and with the synonyms הָסִּיר 'remove' (e.g., [Lev] 4:8-10, 31, 35) and נִבְדָל 'be separated' (Num 16:21; 17:10), never means 'raise, lift,' but only 'set apart, dedicate.'" In fact, as

---

1 Jacob Milgrom points out that "its usual meaning, 'to carry, lift' never appears in a cultic context. Instead, two other meanings are indicated: (1) 'donate, give a gift' (see Lev 22:15; Num 15:19-21; 18:19). However, this sense is secondary, a generalization and derivation from a more concrete and basic use, which is (2) 'remove, set aside' (Exod 35:24; Lev 2:9; 4:8, 10, 19; 6:3; Num 18:26-32; 31:28)" (The Book of Leviticus: A Chapter in Cultic History," in Studies in Cultic Theology and Terminology, SJLA, no. 36 [Leiden: Brill, 1983], 160-161).

2 Milgrom, Leviticus 1-16, 413. Milgrom identifies three "special characteristics typical of the verb הֵרִי hēri in cultic usage" which show that הָרַד hif. means "set aside" in cultic context: "(1) Using the verb הֵרִי hēri necessitates the use of the preposition מִן; that is, the הָרַד hif. is always removed from (מִן) something (Exod 29:27; Lev 2:9; 4:8, 10, 19; 6:8; Num 18:26, 28, 29, 30, 32; 31:28; cf. Ezek 45:1, 9; Dan 8:11). (2) If there is a verb parallel to הֵרִי hēri in a cultic text, it is always הָסִּיר hēsi (to remove) (e.g., Lev 4:8-10, 31, 35; cf. Ezek 45:9). (3) הֵרִי hēri in the sense of 'set aside' is especially found in the narrative section of the Priestly source; compare 'remove yourselves (הָרַד hif. מֵן מִן מֵן) from this
indicated by Milgrom, parallel expressions to מז ר hif., especially מז ר hif., provide very clear support for the conclusion that מז ר hif. means "set aside" in a cultic context.\(^1\)

**מז ר + מז ר in Dan 8:11b.** The implications of this linguistic analysis pertinent to Dan 8:11b in combination with some other considerations can be presented now.

First, in Dan 8:11b the object is nonpersonal. The verbal root מז ר therefore designates the activity of removing or setting aside the תמי ד,\(^2\) and not of exalting the community' (Num 17:10) with the parallel expression 'stand back (hibbâdēlū) from this community' (Num 16:21)" (Studies in Cultic Theology, 161; cf. idem, Leviticus 1-16, 474; and E. Firmage, Jr., J. Milgrom, and U. Dahmen, "ד ל ל hif.", TDOT, 13:407).

\(^{1}\)The meaning of מז ר hif. is illuminated by its parallel verb מז ר hif. which always means "remove" (Lev 4:9, 31, 35; cf. 3:4, 9, 10, 15; 7:4). In a sacrificial context מז ר hif. occurs highly concentrated in the regulations concerning the removal of the fat and the inner parts (ten times in Lev 3, 4, 7) and once to designate a similar procedure: the removal of the crop and the contents of a bird for the burnt offering (Lev 1:16). The two verbs—מז ר hif. and מז ר hif.—stand in parallelism in Ezek 21:31; 45:9; and in close parallel in Lev 4:9-10 (cf. König, 3:37 [§107]; Milgrom, Studies in Cultic Theology, 161). Compare also the following texts: (1) "He shall remove מז ר hif. all its fat from it and offer it up in smoke on the altar. . . . So the priest shall make atonement for them, and they will be forgiven"(Lev 4:19-20) and "Then he shall remove מז ר hif. all its fat, just as the fat was removed from the sacrifice of peace offerings; and the priest shall offer it up in smoke on the altar for a soothing aroma to the LORD. . . . Thus the priest shall make atonement for him, and he will be forgiven" (Lev 4:31). Or (2) "just as it [the fat; cf. vs. 8] is removed מז ר hif. from the ox of the sacrifice of peace offerings" (Lev 4:10) and "just as the fat was removed מז ר hif. from the sacrifice of peace offerings" (Lev 4:31). See also the parallel expressions "Remove yourselves מז ר hif., by-form of מז ר from this community" (Num 17:10) and "Separate yourselves מז ר hif. from this community" (Num 16:21), which has been pointed out by Milgrom, Studies in Cultic Theology, 161. Another semantically close verb to מז ר hif. is מז ר, "to take": "Set aside מז ר hif. a tribute for YHWH from the men of war" (Num 31:28) and "take מז ר hif. it from their half" (Num 31:29). For a comparison between מז ר and מז ר in Lev 1-7 as well as in Dan 8:11; 11:31; and 12:11 see William H. Shea, "Unity of Daniel," in Symposium on Daniel: Introductory and Exegetical Studies, ed. F. B. Holbrook, DARCOM, vol. 2 (Washington, DC: Biblical Research Institute, 1986), 204-208. Shea concludes that in cultic contexts both express the notion of taking away, so that the use of מז ר in Dan 8:11b is not unusual.

\(^{2}\)The Old Greek seems to support the idea that the activity in Dan 8:11b is one of removal because it reads for the gere מז ר the indicative aorist passive מז ר from מז ר "remove" or "drive out." The verb מז ר is also used to translate the Hiphil of מז ר in Gen 41:44 ("raise" or "remove"), Isa 62:10 ("lift up"), and Ezek 45:9 ("remove").

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
tamid.¹

Second, the use of the preposition ן of the person in Dan 8:11b functions like the preposition ן in the other clauses with ו ר hif.² and therefore indicates who the tamid is set aside from. The preposition ן should not be understood to indicate the agent of the taking away of the tamid. In addition, the ן of the person implies that the horn seems to exercise authority over the commander of the host, which creates a need of explanation—the commander of the host being the superior—that can only be solved by the idea that the horn acts in presumption.

Third, in Dan 8:11b the object and the prepositional object do not belong to the same category. The object is nonpersonal ( punishable) and the prepositional object is personal (מעון “from him”). This would suggest that tamid cannot be part of “him.” Instead, the tamid belongs to “him,” or, put differently, the tamid stands under the authority of “him.” The construction is similar to Num 31:28, 52, except that in that instance the “men of war” and the officers voluntarily give that which is taken from them, whereas in the context of Dan 8:11b it is clear that the horn takes the tamid by force.

Fourth, it has previously been demonstrated that CIH takes on the specific meaning “set aside, remove” in a cultic context. Occurring in a context that is laden with cultic terminology, tamid in Dan 8:11b needs to be considered as a cultic term also and

¹Pace Malbim (cited in Goldwurm, 224). In BA רב occurs in Dan 4:34 (Polel), 5:19 (Hafel), 5:20 (Peal), and 5:23 (Hitpolel), never with the preposition ן and always with a personal object, which in 5:20 is implied. Thus, these occurrences where רב designates an activity of exaltation cannot be called upon as comparison to Dan 8:11b.

²Milgrom adds Dan 8:11 to the list of ו ר hif. + ן clauses in the Pentateuch (Studies in Cultic Theology, 161; cf. Leviticus 1-16, 474).
therefore should have the same meaning of “set aside, remove.” The Hiphil/Hophal of \( \text{רָמוּ} \) “remove,” another term frequently used in a cultic context, occurs in Dan 11:31 and 12:11 obviously as parallel expressions to the Hiphil of \( \text{רָמוּ} \) in 8:11b and thus supports the view that the meaning of \( \text{דָּתִי} \) lies in the semantic field of removal.

Fifth, since (1) the Hiphil of \( \text{רָמוּ} \) is a term often used in a sacrificial context, (2) the subject of \( \text{דָּתִי} \) hif. meaning “to set aside from, remove from” is typically an official of the cult, usually a priest, and (3) since Dan 8:11b occurs in a context laden with cultic terminology, it is reasonable to conclude that the subject in Dan 8:11b acts similar to an official of the cult. Hence, in describing the horn as removing the \( \text{תָּמִי} \), the horn is seemingly portrayed as a priest. One could even say that in this instance the Hiphil of \( \text{רָמוּ} \) is utilized “almost sarcastically” for the removal of the \( \text{תָּמִי} \). This leads to the next observation.

Sixth, the use of \( \text{רָמוּ} \) hif. for an aggressive pseudo-cultic activity may very well be caused by the fact that \( \text{רָמוּ} \) belongs to the “vocabulary of pride.” In two other texts in the book of Daniel the root \( \text{רָמוּ} \) describes self-exaltation (Dan 11:12, 36). Of course, one should distinguish between the semantic notion of \( \text{רָמוּ} \) to express pride, which is “to raise,” and between the semantic notion which it has in Dan 8:11b, which is “to remove.” Nevertheless, the association with pride by the use of the root \( \text{רָמוּ} \) should not be excluded,

---

1 Behrmann, 54, who then interprets the removal of the \( \text{תָּמִי} \) as the abolition of the sacrifices.

2 Donald E. Gowan designates \( \text{רָמוּ} \) together with \( \text{נָבָל} \) and \( 
\text{נָבָל} \), as “vocabulary of pride” (When Man Becomes God: Humanism and Hybris in the Old Testament, PTMS, no. 6 [Pittsburgh: Pickwick, 1975], 19-23). Close to this group is also the root \( \text{כָּלָל} \) which can describe human beings’ “magnification of themselves over against God” (ibid., 23) and which occurs five times in the context of Dan 8:11b, in 8:4, 8, 9b, 10a, 11a (see also Dan 8:25; 11:36, 37; cf. Isa 10:12; Jer 48:26, 42).
particularly since there are several occurrences of נר in the sense of magnifying oneself—the last of which appears in vs. 11a just before the verb בֹּרֶר is used—do create exactly such an atmosphere of pride and haughtiness. The horn, taking the position of a priest, does act with an arrogant, haughty attitude and with hubris toward the שְׁאוּל seemingly in authority over him. This is a characterization that in a negative context the verbal root בֹּרֶר is able to express.¹

Seventh, two syntactic results should also be mentioned briefly. First, a comparison of the five בֹּרֶר clauses in which the prepositional object stands in the preverbal field shows that the preverbal position of הַנִּמְצַא in Dan 8:11b certainly focuses attention on the person who the רָמִי d is taken away from.² Thus, Dan 8:11b continues the focus of 8:11a, namely on the one who is the target of the horn’s activity: the commander of the host. And second, in Dan 8:11b the object רָמִי does not have the object marker נ. This is not unusual since the object marker is also lacking in other clauses with בֹּרֶר hif. + נ in prosaic texts (Lev 6:8; Num 18:26, 28; 31:28; Ezek 45:1) as well as in poetic texts (1 Sam 2:8; Isa 14:13; 57:14; Pss 89:20; 113:7).

¹In figurative and in theological meaning רָמִי is often used negatively to designate the arrogant, haughty attitude (H.-P. Stühli, “רָמִי to be high,” TLOT, 3:1222, 1224, who also points out that some passages “characterize human רָמִי as the hubris of the godless . . . toward God” [1224]). It may even be that the horn as subject of הַנִּמְצַא in Dan 8:11b alludes sarcastically to the use of בֹּרֶר with “horn” as object, which is a metaphor for strength and pride in the Hebrew Bible and in Ancient Near Eastern literature (ibid., 1222).

²Two times the preverbal position of the נ-phrase can be explained as poetic arrangement in a parallelism (1 Sam 2:8; Ps 113:7). Three times it focuses the attention on where something or someone is set aside from (Num 18:29; Isa 14:13; Dan 8:11b).
Meaning of לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי

Usually, לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי is regarded as an adverb, but occasionally it is classified as a noun.1 Whatever the case may be, it is clear that in the book of Daniel לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי functions nominally.

Interpretations. A number of studies have been undertaken to determine the meaning of לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי, and thus also of לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי in Dan 8:11-13.2 Basically, two interpretations have been suggested.3 The first is that לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי has a narrow meaning: it refers to the regular daily sacrifice that is offered in the morning and in the evening.4 In this case לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי is regarded as a technical term or as an abbreviated form which stands for "the regular burnt offering."5 Only a few reasons are provided for such an understanding. The only specific contextual reason given is that לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי "evening morning" in vs. 14b is said to reflect the language of the morning and evening burnt offering.6 However, this should be challenged since the analysis of לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי shows that

1So K.-M. Beyse, "לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי תָּמִיד," ThWAT, 8:680.


4See, e.g., von Lengerke, 380; Hitzig, 132; Goettsberger, 62; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 176; Collins, Daniel (1993), 334; Beyse, 8:680.

5The omission of the nomen regens לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי is said to be easily understood from the context (so Carl Brockelmann, Hebräische Syntax [Neukirchen: Erziehungsverein, 1956], 126 [§127a]) and is explained as omission of the nucleus of a specifying group (so W. J. Martin, "The Hebrew of Daniel," in Notes on Some Problems in the Book of Daniel, ed. D. J. Wiseman et al. [London: Tyndale, 1965], 29-30).

6For example, Aalders rejects a broader meaning of לְהַמְרָא יִתְאָרִי on the basis of the mention of evening and morning in vs. 14 which is for him a sure indicator for the regular daily offering which
the phrase reflects the language of creation. A second, non-contextual reason offered is that the title תור is found in the Mishnah and in the Talmud as the name of a treatise on the daily offering.

The second interpretation is that תור has a broader meaning: it refers to all the regular cultic activities and rites. The main reason for this view is that the term תור, if it were a technical term, would stand for the collective ritual known as the “daily service” because על קרבן is associated in a construct relation not only with "burnt offering" but with several other terms that designate aspects of the regular cultic service.

My analysis follows two steps. First, an overview of the usage and meaning of תור in BH is presented. Such an analysis of תור in the Hebrew Bible provides the necessary background to understand its unique usage in the book of Daniel. In a second step, the specific characteristics of how תור is being used in Dan 8:11-13 are noted as well as how these interplay with the use of תור in the rest of the Hebrew Bible.

should be brought in the morning and in the evening (Daniël [1962], 176).

1 See, e.g., Hävernick, 276; Kranichfeld, 294; Kliefoth, 255; Keil, 298; Woodsworth, 39; Rohling, Daniel, 238-239; Tiefenthal, 268, 269; Stokmann, 127 n. 1; Leupold, 347; Young, Daniel, 172; Wood, 218; Goldingay, Daniel, 211; Núñez, “תור,” 98-100; Peter L. Trudinger, The Psalms of the Tamid Service: A Liturgical Text from the Second Temple Period, VTSup, no. 98; FIOTL, no. 3 (Leiden: Brill, 2004), 37. Longman believes that תור can refer to the regular daily sacrifice or to the entire temple ritual, whereas for him vs. 11c supports that the whole temple ritual is in view (Daniel, 203).

2 The Greek versions, which read "sacrifice, offering," do not help. Núñez, who translates תור with "the continuity" or "the continuance" ("ם”ר"), observes that in the book of Daniel the LXX always reads תור for תור, whereas elsewhere in the phrase על קרבן or על קרבן is translated 19 times as בקע "burnt offering" and only once as תור (Exod 29:42). However, this argument against the reference of תור to the daily sacrifice appears to overlook the fact that by using the term תור, the Old Greek and Theodotion indeed seem to understand תור as offering or sacrifice.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Usage of קָרְטֵל in the Hebrew Bible. The syntactic and semantic results of an analysis of the 104 occurrences of קָרְטֵל in BH are summarized as follows. In 67 occurrences קָרְטֵל is used adverbially, predominantly in religious and cultic contexts (48 times). In 37 occurrences קָרְטֵל is used nominally: 32 times as nomen rectum (or postconstructus) in a construct relation, in which it follows a term that stems almost exclusively from the cult, and 5 times standing alone in the form קָרְטֵל, which is unique.

1See already Núñez, “דיין,” 95-102; cf. Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 424-425. My syntactic analysis of קָרְטֵל differs from Núñez’ only in Exod 27:20 and Lev 24:2 where the phrase קָרְטֵל should be understood as construct relation (similar to קָרְטֵל in Lev 6:6, which Núñez, too, identifies as construct relation). These texts belong to some cases in which קָרְטֵל without article stands after a noun which form could be absolute or construct and it is not absolutely clear whether קָרְטֵל functions adverbially or nominally as nomen rectum in a construct relation (Exod 27:20; Lev 6:6; 2 Kgs 5:29; Prov 15:15; 1 Chr 16:6). In meaning, of course, the two syntactic possibilities often do not differ significantly. The differences in analysis rather exemplify the ambiguity of the language, e.g., in קָרְטֵל (Exod 27:20; Lev 24:2). HALOT (4:1748) and Beyse (8:681) regard קָרְטֵל as construct relation, whereas BDB (556) and Núñez (“דיין,” 100 n. 1) regard קָרְטֵל as adverbial to the verb הָלַל in the Hiphil. In contrast, in the clause קָרְטֵל (Lev 6:6), HALOT (4:1748) and BDB (506) regard קָרְטֵל as adverbial to לֶכַה, whereas Núñez (“דיין,” 101 n. 4) and Beyse (8:681) regard קָרְטֵל as construct relation. Beside the above decision to consider קָרְטֵל as (Exod 27:20; Lev 24:2) and קָרְטֵל (Lev 6:6) as construct relations, the other texts are analyzed as follows. In 2 Kgs 5:29, קָרְטֵל is not a construct relation as a comparison with the parallel text in Jer 52:33 shows. In Prov 15:5, קָרְטֵל is the predicate of a nominal clause and seems be a construct relation. The trumpets in 1 Chr 16:6 do not seem to be trumpets of continuity (so as option in BDB, 556), but rather the two priests Benaijah and Jahaziel blew trumpets in a regular manner before the ark as they ministered before it קָרְטֵל “regularly” (1 Chr 16:37).

2In a cultic context, קָרְטֵל occurs 18 times “in connection to some objects of the tabernacle/temple or in relation to the ministry of priests in the service of the sanctuary” (Exod 25:30; 28:29, 30, 38; 29:38; Lev 6:13; 24:3, 4, 8; Num 9:16; 28:3; Ezek 46:14; Ps 50:8; 1 Chr 16:6, 37, 40; 23:31; 2 Chr 24:14), 30 times in a “general religious” context (Deut 11:12; Isa 49:16; 52:5; 58:11; 60:11; 65:3; Hos 12:7; Pss 16:8; 25:15; 34:2; 35:27; 38:18; 40:12, 17; 51:5; 70:5; 71:3, 6, 14; 72:15; 73:23; 74:23; 105:4; 109:15; 119:44, 109, 117; Prov 6:21; 28:14; 1 Chr 16:11), and 19 times in a “secular context” (2 Sam 9:7, 10, 13; 1 Kgs 10:8; 2 Kgs 4:9, 25:29; Isa 21:8; 51:13; 62:6; Jer 6:7; 52:33; Ezek 38:8; Obad 16; Nah 3:19; Hab 1:17; Pss 69:24; 109:19; Prov 5:19; 2 Chr 20). For a slightly different count see Núñez, “דיין,” 95. Noteworthy is that in a secular context the adverb קָרְטֵל is used a number of times in an administrative royal context (2 Sam 9:7, 10, 13; 1 Kgs 10:8; 2 Kgs 25:29; Jer 52:33).

3In a cultic context, קָרְטֵל occurs 28 times in a construct relation: קָרְטֵל “regular lamp” (Exod 27:20; Lev 24:2); קָרְטֵל “regular burnt offering” (Exod 29:42; Num 28:6; Ezek 46:15 [plene]; Exra 3:5); קָרְטֵל “regular burnt offering” (Num 28:10, 15, 23, 24 [plene], 31; 29:6, 11, 208

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
for the book of Daniel. Interestingly, the adverbial use is predominantly found in narrative, prophetic and poetic texts, whereas the nominal use is found mainly in the Pentateuch.

As far as meaning is concerned, יִדְּרֵי designates the regularity (with intervals) or continuity (without interruption) of activities, events or state of affairs. In a cultic context, יִדְּרֵי "designates a variety of sacrificial rites that are regular, most often but not always of daily occurrence." Hence, יִדְּרֵי "does not necessarily mean ‘non-stopping, unceasing, continual,’ but rather that the ritual acts in question are to be repeated at regular intervals and at fixed times." For example, יִדְּרֵי can be connected with daily.

1 Dan 8:11b, 12a, 13c; 11:31; 12:11.

2 In 64 occurrences of יִדְּרֵי in these sections (Danielic references not included) it is used 55 times adverbially.

3 In 35 occurrences of יִדְּרֵי in the Pentateuch it is used 23 times nominally.

4 Levine, Numbers, 21-36, 371; cf. HALOT, 4:1748: "[יִדְּרֵי] with a preceding word for an offering, comes to mean regularity, regularly occurring." The following examples for the meaning of יִדְּרֵי regarding time have been offered by Levine, Numbers 21-36, 372.


6 For example the regular burnt offering (Exod 29:38, etc.), the regular grain offering (Lev 6:13; Num 4:16), or the regular incense offering (Exod 30:8). Specifically the text in Exod 29:38 is interesting since there יִדְּרֵי is added after לְיַעַת "each day" which already conveys the idea that the two lambs are offered as a sacrifice on a day. Therefore, יִדְּרֵי seems not to express a specific temporal regularity (e.g., "daily") but rather regularity in general.
weekly,^1^ perpetual or continual^2^ activities or events. It is then clear that "^tami d must be rendered 'regularly,' not 'perpetually.'"^3^ In non-cultic contexts, ^דִּבְּרָאִים most often conveys continuity or perpetuity (e.g., in the Psalms: Ps 16:8, etc.) but can also designate regularity (e.g., 2 Kgs 4:9; 25:30). It could be added that an analysis of ^דִּבְּרָאִים in the Dead Sea Scrolls leads to similar conclusions.^4^ Since ^דִּבְּרָאִים can have different connotations depending on the context, a closer analysis of ^דִּבְּרָאִים in the book of Daniel and especially in Dan 8:11-13 is necessary.^5^

Characteristics of the use of ^דִּבְּרָאִים in Dan 8:11-13. The first and most striking observation is that ^דִּבְּרָאִים functions nominally and stands alone. This usage is unique and

---

^1^ The bread of the presence is set regularly (Exod 25:30) on the table once a week (Lev 24:5-9); whereas the bread itself could be called ^לְכָּלָיְמָה "the continual bread" because it was displayed continuously.

^2^ The fire should be kept burning on the altar without interruption (Lev 6:6).

^3^ Milgrom, *Leviticus 23-27*, 2088. Anthony Tomasino also emphasizes the distinction between regularly repeated activity and continuous activity in the adverbial use of ^דִּבְּרָאִים, though it "is not always possible to distinguish" them ("^דִּבְּרָאִים [^9458]," *NIDOTTE*, 4:302-305). Nevertheless, he opts to render the basic meaning of ^דִּבְּרָאִים in nominal use with "perpetuity" and regards ^דִּבְּרָאִים in the book of Daniel as referring to the "perpetual burnt offering" (ibid., 4:304). However, whether ^דִּבְּרָאִים includes the notion of continuity/perpetuity or the notion of regularity cannot be distinguished syntactically by the adverbial or nominal use of ^דִּבְּרָאִים but needs to be determined by the context.

^4^ For an investigation of ^דִּבְּרָאִים in the then extant literature from Qumran see Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 421-423, who observes the following in regard to the usage of ^דִּבְּרָאִים: (1) ^דִּבְּרָאִים is used predominantly as an adverb with the meaning "continually" or "perpetually." (2) ^דִּבְּרָאִים is used twice in the construct phrase ^דִּבְּרָאִים עַל תַּבְּרוֹן "regular burnt offering." (3) ^דִּבְּרָאִים never stands alone as ^דִּבְּרָאִים in nominal use. (4) ^דִּבְּרָאִים is not a technical expression or a standard abbreviation for the daily sacrifice. Hasel then arrives at the conclusion that the usage of ^דִּבְּרָאִים in the Dead Sea Scrolls "cautions against interpreting hatămí d in Daniel as a technical or abbreviated term" (ibid., 423).

^5^ After scanning some of the different biblical usages of the term ^דִּבְּרָאִים, Levine gives this advice: "It becomes necessary, therefore, to determine in each instance the precise meaning of the designation tami d, as well as its syntactic function as substantive, adjective or adverb" (Numbers 21-36, 372; similarly, Tomasino, 4:302).
is found only in the book of Daniel; elsewhere תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ is always part of a construct relation.

Second, that תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ is used nominally provides strong motivation to interpret it as a term referring to the cult. In its nominal use, תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ occurs almost exclusively in such a context, that is, in twenty-eight of thirty-two texts outside the book of Daniel. Only in three texts it is used in an administrative context of royal provisions for captives (2 Kgs 25:29-30; Jer 52:33-34) or of professionals with a continuing commission (Ezek 39:14), and once it is used in connection with a feast (Prov 15:15). As mentioned earlier, the nominal use of תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ is found mainly in the Pentateuch, and there in the cultic laws, and in texts referring to those Pentateuchal texts. This suggests that the background of the nominal use of תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ in the book of Daniel is to be found in the cultic usage of תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ as it originates in the Torah.

Third, תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ is used with the definite article. The form תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ occurs twenty-four times in BH (including the five Danielic references). Since תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ has the definite article and is used without any introduction or explanation, it must have been a known and identifiable term in this communicative situation. The reasons for such familiarity with

---

1It is in the administrative context that Levine sees the origin of תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ (Numbers 21-36, 372).

2George A. Barton observes concerning תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ: “Is it not obvious that such an expression must have been on the lips of many at the time to have been used by a writer at all? Had it not been, no writer could hope to be understood by it” (“The Composition of the Book of Daniel,” JBL 17 [1898]: 84). Like other commentators, Hassilberger assumes that תֶּןֶפֶּהֶּ had already acquired the status of a terminus technicus at the time of writing the book of Daniel (100). Gzella reasons that the term “may have been coined by the author of ch. 8 and made its way into Mishnaic Hebrew only afterwards” (12-13). On the use of the article in connection with the specific situation or milieu, as well as on other functions of the article, see Augustin R. Müller, “Zu den Artikelfunktionen im Hebräischen,” in Text, Methode und Grammatik: Wolfgang Richter zum 65. Geburtstag, ed. W. Groß, H. Irsigler, and T. Seidl (St. Ottilien, EOS, 1991), 313-329, esp. 324-325.
the term רֵעֵב may be found in its traditional use in BH and/or in the more difficult to
determine historical and social setting of the author and/or that intended of the final text.

The Danielic use of רֵעֵב in this form (i.e., with the definite article) probably
links it to the Torah, since elsewhere the form רֵעֵב occurs only in the
Pentateuch—more specifically in Num 4, 28, and 29—and in Neh 10:34, which refers to
a law in the Torah. In all nineteen non-Danielic texts רֵעֵב is used in a cultic context
and therefore the interpretation for רֵעֵב in Daniel should primarily be based upon its
usage in connection with the cult.

Outside the book of Daniel רֵעֵב occurs always in a construct relation with
cultic terms.1 Statistically speaking, it is understandable why scholars would regard
רֵעֵב as a short form of רֵעֵב since רֵעֵב occurs sixteen times in such a phrase
but only three times in a construct relation with other terms. However, the occurrences of
רֵעֵב are confined to two chapters in Num 28 and 29, where it is part of a
structural formula and thus necessarily repeated, and one verse in the book of Nehemiah.2
The phrase רֵעֵב may not be standardized after all and רֵעֵב may not be a
technical short form for a longer expression.

Fourth, רֵעֵב is used in Dan 8:11-13 together with several unambiguous cultic

---

1 "continual bread" (Num 4:7); "regular grain offering" (Num 4:16; Neh 10:34); or "regular burnt offering" (Num 28:10, 15, 23, 24 [plene], 31; 29:6, 11, 16, 19, 22, 25, 28, 31, 34, 38; Neh 10:34 [plene]).

2 The explanation why this phrase occurs so frequently in Num 28 and 29 is that these
chapters list the burnt offerings and other offerings which should be brought on special
occasions—Sabbath, new moon, festivals—in addition or besides the regular burnt offering. The phrase רֵעֵב functions structurally as part of a refrain at the end of each section
describing the additional offerings for a specific occasion.
terms:  הָרָכֹת “remove, set aside” (vs. 11b),  שֶׁבֶר “sanctuary” (vs. 11c),  הָלָה “holy” (vss. 13c, 14c). Thus, the cultic significance of  הָרָכֹת in Dan 8:11-13, and by extension also in Dan 11:31 and 12:11, seems rather obvious.

Fifth, it is quite safe to conclude based on the following three indicators that the meaning of  הָרָכֹת should be interpreted against the background of its usage in cultic contexts elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible. These indicators are (1) the nominal use of  הָרָכֹת, (2) its occurrence with the definite article, and (3) its use in combination with various cultic terms in the same context. In fact, the OT background shows that  הָרָכֹת itself can be identified as cultic term. As already mentioned,  הָרָכֹת occurs frequently in a cultic context: in adverbial usage to characterize cultic activities as regular, and in nominal usage in construct relations for cultic objects or offerings. And with the definite article it is always used in connection with elements and activities of the cult. The cultic background of  הָרָכֹת provides two further aspects which may have an effect on the meaning of  הָרָכֹת in the book of Daniel. The first follows naturally from its cultic usage: Priests are responsible for the execution of the  הָרָכֹת activities.1 In other words, the agent of a  הָרָכֹת activity in a cultic context is a priest, often the high priest.2

1 The common use of  הָרָכֹת in connection with different types of priestly activities led Shea to the suggestion that the “preferable translation of this word  הָרָכֹת in Daniel is ‘the continual/daily (ministry)’” (“Spatial Dimensions,” 514). Similarly, Rodriguez points to the connection of  הָרָכֹת with priestly activities in the court and in the holy place of which the theological concept he says to be that of intercession. For him,  הָרָכֹת in the book of Daniel “could be better translated ‘continual intercession’” (“Cultic Language,” 533).

2 The  הָרָכֹת responsibilities or activities of the high priest include his special outer garments—the breastplate, the Urim and Thummim (Exod 28:29, 30), and the golden plate (Exod 28:38)—the continual lamp (Exod 27:20; Lev 24:2, 3, 4), the perpetual incense (Exod 30:8), the bread of the presence (Lev 24:8; Num 4:7; cf. 2 Chr 2:3), and the daily cereal offering to be performed by the high priest (Lev 6:13; Num 4:16; Neh 10:34; cf. Ezek 46:14 which could refer to the cereal

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
second aspect is that frequently the expression לְבָנָה is connected with or even stands 
indirectly for God’s perpetual presence.¹ The characteristic phrase לפני יהוה, “before 
YHWH,” or the like, is often mentioned in close connection with לפני יהוה when the latter 
appears in a cultic context.² This should not be surprising since offerings and other cultic 
activities are thought of as worship to YHWH and are being carried out in the presence of 

a burnt offering that accompanies the daily burnt offering) (for the high priestly daily לפני יהוה see Milgrom, 
Leviticus 1-16, 398-399; cf. Levine, Numbers 1-20, 169). It is not clear whether the daily burnt 
offering was performed by priests or by the high priest (Exod 29:38-42; Num 28-29; Ezek 46:15; Ezra 
3:5; Neh 10:34; cf. 2 Chr 24:14). According to 1 Chr 16:39-40 it is Zadok the priest (functioning as 
high priest?) and his relatives (דָּמִית) the priests who should offer the daily burnt offering. Yet 1 Chr 
23:27-32 mentions the sons of Levi as those who should offer the burnt offerings continually. 
Similarly unclear is who exactly is meant by נִאָרִים “the priest” whose responsibility was the perpetual 
fire (Lev 6:5-6). Activities of the Levites are definitely described as دائم in 1 Chr 16:6, 37.

¹To some extent Beyse points in this direction when he comments on the adverbial use of 
 לפני יהוה: “Breiten Raum nimmt die Beschreibung der stetigen Verbundenheit zwischen JHW H und dem 
gläubigen Israeliten ein . . .” (682). Similarly, Doukhan points out that the regular daily sacrifice 
“burned permanently on the altar (tāmīd: ‘perpetual’) and symbolized God’s faithful presence among 
His people” and then refers to Exod 29:42-46 as an example where the tāmīd (vs. 42) is contextually 
linked with God’s presence (vs. 42: “where I will meet you”) and God’s dwelling among the Israelites 
(vss. 45-46) (Secrets, 124).

²See the expression לפני יהוה “before YHWH” (Exod 28:29, 30, 38; 29:42; 30:8; Lev 24:3, 4, 
8; 1 Chr 23:31; cf. Ezek 46:14; Ps 50:8; 1 Chr 16:37; 2 Chr 2:3). Haran classifies לפני יהוה as 
“common characteristic formula” (Temples, 215), which “actually belongs to the temple’s technical 
terminology” (ibid., 26) and often expresses “the sacral-ritualistic character of the acts performed by 
the high priest” and as such is frequently connected with acts performed within the sanctuary (ibid., 
212-213; cf. N. Raban, “_detected, יָד, Tarbiz 1 [1930]: 1-8 [Hebrew], who tries to pinpoint the physical 
location at/in the sanctuary denoted by מִנָּה, and Judith Romney Wegner, “Coming Before the 
Lord”: The Exclusion of Women from the Public Domain of the Israelite Priestly Cult,” in The Book 
Leviticus: Composition and Reception, ed. R. Rendtorff and R. A. Kugler, VTSup, no. 93, PIOTL, no. 
3 [Leiden: Brill, 2003], 451-465, who focuses on the figurative significance of לפני יהוה, which 
expresses “the capacity to approach close enough to communicate with the Deity or at least to 
perceive oneself as being in the Presence of God” [454]). Ian Wilson demonstrates that in the book of Deuteronomy לפני יהוה should be understood in the literal sense pointing to the localized divine 
presence at the cult place (Out of the Midst of the Fire: Divine Presence in Deuteronomy, SBLDS, no. 
151 [Atlanta: Scholars, 1995], 131-197). Other indicators that a regular (דָּמִית) activity or offering 
happens in the presence of YHWH is the use of בָּנָה “the presence” as characterization of the 
showbread (Num 4:7). Outside a cultic context, a connection between לפני יהוה and the presence or 
activity of YHWH is found in Deut 11:12; Isa 49:16; 58:11; 65:3 (offerings are part of the context); Jer 
these latter occurrences, except for Jer 6:7, are in a general religious context.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
YHWH—a fact also expressed by YHWH himself (Ps 50:8). All these nuances can be combined into a plausible description of the cultic context in which דְּמִי is predominantly used: The priest, often the high priest, performs a regular cultic activity, of which the object or the activity itself stands frequently in connection with YHWH’s presence so that the object or activity is part of the regular worship of YHWH. Regarding the cultic use of דְּמִי in Dan 8:11-13 this means that the absolute דְּמִי refers to all the regular priestly activities carried out in the presence of YHWH rather than to the regular daily offering only, to the entire spectrum of constant (cultic) worship of YHWH rather than just to one aspect alone. Hence, it is the use of דְּמִי without any qualification that suggests strongly that more than a specific offering or a specific activity is in view. In fact, one may infer that this is the exact reason why דְּמִי is used in such a unique way in Daniel.¹

Sixth, the דְּמִי is noted to be taken away “from him” (וֹנֵב). The referent of the pronominal suffix has been identified as the יָשָׁב הָעֵדָה “commander of the host” (vs. 11a). There is obviously a relationship between the commander of the host and the דְּמִי.

How can this relationship be further defined? Two possibilities present themselves. First, the דְּמִי is for the commander of the host, or it belongs to him. The commander receives the דְּמִי as it is presented to him, or it is already in his possession. The hom

¹It is of interest here that Haran argues that “the rites performed inside the temple . . . combined to form a unique cultic whole,” which he calls a “ritual complex” (Temples, 205-229, citation on p. 205). Haran convincingly demonstrates how the ritual acts performed by the high priest within the temple “are an integral part of the regular complex of rites, the דְּמִי-rites” (ibid., 213), and “must be understood as a deliberately designed and essentially homogeneous ritual complex deriving its unity from the fact that all its component rites are performed simultaneously by one and the same priest, at the same times fixed by the regularity of דְּמִי” (ibid., 217). It should then not be a surprise that the book of Daniel uses the term דְּמִי to refer to such a unified ritual complex of worship.
removing the ταμία from him would then signify that the horn hinders the commander of the host from receiving the ταμία. In other words, the horn “steals” the ταμία from him.

In this particular interpretation the ταμία would represent the regular cultic activities or the regular worship directed toward the commander of the host, whose divine character is thus being emphasized. The horn’s attack on the host and the trampling of some of its members (vs. 10) supports this view since by this action the horn obstructs the host in serving its leader. At the same time another host is being installed (vs. 12a), which does not serve the commander of the host but the horn. A second possible relationship between the ταμία and the Καισάρεια is one in which the commander of the host is performing the ταμία and the ταμία is part of his responsibility. In this interpretation the Καισάρεια is attributed a more priestly function, or possibly a high priestly function, all the more so since the expression Καισάρεια denotes the highest status of a being. The horn removing the ταμία from him would then signify that the horn tries to take control of the (high) priestly activity of the Καισάρεια, possibly even assuming the (high) priestly role itself. The verb ᾠδάω already indicates in an ironic way that the horn is acting like a (high) priest usurping the (high) priestly role of the Καισάρεια for itself. The mention of ἁγίας “his sanctuary” would fit both possible interpretations. It could hint at the (high) priestly function of the Καισάρεια who serves in his sanctuary and/or, since a sanctuary

1In this regard, it is noteworthy that Gese, in commenting on the view that Michael could be identified as the prince of the host and that he with the other angels is the actual subject of the cultic temple activity (so Koch, “Visionsbericht,” 422), draws the logical conclusion that vs. 12 would then reinforce vs. 11b and would only mean that the horn, which for Gese is Antiochus IV, “wants to offer the ταμία sacrifice instead of Michael” (408 n. 27). Gese, however, rejects such a view on the basis that the prince of the host represents ΥHWH, and not Michael.
belongs to God, it could indicate the divine status of the ἅγιος who is then worthy to be worshiped. In summary, both options concur with the text and it seems wise to suggest that both are valid at the same time. The ambiguity may be intentional so that both dimensions of the ἁμίατος would find expression: the worship and cultic activities directed toward the ἅγιος as well as the cultic activities of the ἁγιασμός as (high) priest himself.¹

Seventh, the other instances of ἁμίατος in the book of Daniel are also helpful in defining its meaning. Although the specific term ἁμίατος is introduced in Dan 8:11-13 and the meaning of its other occurrences in Dan 11:31 and 12:11 therefore depends upon this first text, it is nevertheless possible to deduce at least one important clue for the meaning of ἁμίατος in those latter occurrences. In Dan 11:31 and 12:11, the ἁμίατος is replaced by an abomination of desolation: ἡ φάρσα (11:31), ἡ φάρσα (12:11).² Whatever these phrases exactly mean,³ the root ἅρφα clearly originates from a cultic context. It appears in two different cultic settings. On the one hand, the noun ἅρφα “cultic abomination”

¹In principle this suggestion comes close to Núnez’ typological interpretation of ἁμίατος. He connects ἁμίατος with the “daily service” of the sanctuary that “typifies Christ’s continual atonement and ministry to sinners through which . . . Israel of God’s people, by faith, could worship Him each day and especially on the seventh day of the week” (“TOR,” 100). Unfortunately, he does not present textual evidence from the book of Daniel or from elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible for such a double meaning of ἁμίατος.

²For example, Maurer regards ἀτομή and ἔρωμα ἁρφα as opposites (144), and Lust argues that the “abomination of desolation” is a “replacement of the Tamid” (“Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 293-294).

³On the different scholarly interpretations of ἡ φάρσα see the extensive overview and critique by Lust, “Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 283-299. He identifies two major interpretations of this phrase. The first is to regard it as “contemptuous deformation” (E. Nestle, E. Bickermann), and the second is to regard it as referring to astral cult (J. Goldstein, K. Koch).
designates animals which are prohibited for food and are usually considered impure. On the other hand, the noun פֶּרֶשׁ "abominable thing," used here in Daniel, refers to idolatry and denotes idols and foreign gods or idolatrous rites and practices; it is always strongly condemned by the prophets. During the time of the prophets, Israelites even introduced false gods into the temple and defiled the sanctuary through idolatrous worship. Therefore occurs in the context of ill-directed worship and the worship of idols and false gods. It denotes "everything detestable from the perspective of Yahweh worship." It is

---

1 Lev 7:21; 11:10-13, 20, 23, 41-42; Isa 66:17; Ezek 8:10. However, Jacob Milgrom differs in opinion and believes that פֶּרֶשׁ in the Priestly literature, in contrast to the Holiness source and the Deuteronomic source, is distinguished from נָשָׁךְ "impure" and that animals who are פֶּרֶשׁ are pure and do not transmit impurity ("Two Biblical Hebrew Priestly Terms: סֵקֶס and נָשָׁךְ," MAARAV 8 [1992]: 107-116).

2 The noun פֶּרֶשׁ occurs in this idolatrous cultic context in Deut 29:16; 1 Kgs 11:5, 7; 2 Kgs 23:13, 24; 2 Chr 15:18; Isa 66:3; Jer 4:1; 7:30; 13:27; 16:18; 32:34; Ezek 5:11; 7:20; 11:18, 21; 20:7, 8, 30; 37:23; Hos 9:10; Dan 9:27; 11:31; 12:11. Only once is the noun פֶּרֶשׁ used in the sense of forbidden food (Zech 9:7), but it is possible that the author of Zechariah wishes "also to suggest that those detested things stand for all pagan behaviors, especially idolatry" (Carol L. Meyers and Erich M. Meyers, Zechariah 9-14, AB, vol. 25C [New York: Doubleday, 1993], 114). And once פֶּרֶשׁ is used in a secular context to refer to an otherwise undefined abominable substance, "filth" (Nah 3:6). Cf. Mayer I. Gruber, "Abomination פֶּרֶשׁ," DDD, 3. For Lust, פֶּרֶשׁ "often refers to a statue of a deity or to the deity itself" whereas "in some contexts the abominations must be cultic objects or rituals, and more specifically, pagan altars and sacrifices" ("Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel," 288-289). He then concludes that "in the texts of Daniel, the 'abomination of desolation' appears to be a sacrifice imposed on the Jews as replacement of the Tamid" (ibid., 294).

3 Jer 7:30; 32:34; Ezek 5:11.

4 See D. N. Freedman and A. Welch, "פֶּרֶשׁ סֵקֶס," ThWAT, 8:461-465; Michael A. Grisanti, "פֶּרֶשׁ (# 9210)," NIDOTTE, 4:243-246.

in this context in which 'ppttf is used here in Daniel. After the tamid is taken away, a devastating ppttf, a false worship, is “given.” Assuming there is a congruency between the replaced item and the substitute, the replacement of tamid by ppttf is another indication that ppttf refers to true worship. True worship and service of YHWH is removed and replaced by false, abominable worship.

Eighth, the Aramaic part of Daniel provides another indicator for the meaning of tamid. Lust pointed out that in the Aramaic section (Dan 6:17, 21) one finds a related adverb to tamid in the description of Daniel’s cultic behavior: ḥṭṭṭ which as a noun used adverbially means “constantly” and as a noun “continuance, continuity, perpetuity.” “It is used with the prefix b and refers to Daniel’s ‘continuous’ or ‘daily’ service of his God.” The distinct lexical relation between ḥṭṭṭ in Dan 6:17, 21 and tamid in the Hebrew part of the book of Daniel is evident both by the use of ḫṭṭṭ in the Targums and by the translation of ḥṭṭṭ in the Greek versions.

1971), 58 passim, who translates ḥṭṭṭ with “monster” (Scheusal); and Silvia Schroer, In Israel gab es Bilder: Nachrichten von darstellender Kunst im Alten Testament, OBO, no. 74 (Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag; Göttingen: Vandenhoek & Ruprecht, 1987), 351-353: “polemic word of mockery.”

1The verb ḥṭṭṭ “give” is used in Dan 8:13c; 9:27; 11:31; and 12:11 in relation with ṣḥḥāh (all four texts) and with ḥṭṭṭ (last two texts), so that the abomination “is given” in the place of the tamid; see Lust, “Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 293-294.

2Against the backdrop of the installation of the abomination of desolation, Trudinger concludes that “from the perspective of the second part of Daniel, the daily service epitomizes the pious worship of God and the sacred relationship established through that worship” (37).

3For BA nouns that with a preposition function as adverbs, including ḥṭṭṭ, see Bauer and Leander, Grammatik des Biblisch-Aramäischen, 255 (§68s).

4Lust, “Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 284 n. 4.
In the Targums, אֲרָיוֹת is the Aramaic equivalent to the Hebrew אֲרָיוֹת. Whenever אֲרָיוֹת is translated in Aramaic it is rendered by אֲרָיוֹת and whenever אֲרָיוֹת renders a Hebrew word, the Hebrew is אֲרָיוֹת. This is a perfect one-to-one relation.

1Cf. Behrmann, 41; Marti, Daniel, 45; Montgomery, 277; Charles, 159, who observe this fact, but neither provide data nor relate it to אֲרָיוֹת in the Hebrew part of the book of Daniel.

Therefore, a bilingual reader of the book of Daniel would immediately recognize the lexical relation between אֱלִישָׁבָא in Dan 6:17, 21 and דֹּרֶפֶת in Dan 8:11-13; 11:31; 12:11.

The Old Greek and Theodotion also confirm the relation between BA אֱלִישָׁבָא and BH דֹּרֶפֶת. The Greek rendering of BA אֱלִישָׁבָא in Dan 6:17, 21 (6:16, 20 in the Greek versions) is the adverb ενδεικτικῶς “continually.” Whereas in Daniel דֹּרֶפֶת is usually rendered by η θυσία “the sacrifice/offering,” Theodotion uses ὁ ενδεικτικόμος “the regular”—the corresponding noun to ενδεικτικῶς—to render דֹּרֶפֶת in Dan 11:31 and 12:11. The significance of this finding is that Theodotion establishes a clear lexical relation between אֱלִישָׁבָא in Dan 6:17, 21 and the term דֹּרֶפֶת, at least with its usage in 11:31 and 12:11, which in BH is identical to its usage in 8:11-13.

An analysis of the usage of the adverb ενδεικτικῶς and the noun ενδεικτικόμος in the rest of the Septuagint (outside Daniel) attests to the fact that these terms are one of the preferred renditions of דֹּרֶפֶת. When the adverb ενδεικτικῶς is used as a rendition of a BH transition from translation to midrash...
word, the BH word is תור. Similarly, the noun ἐνδεχομένως is used by the LXX as "stereotyped rendition" of דָּבָר. Thus, the Greek ἐνδεχομένως and ἐνδεχομένως render only the BH תור and the BA עַלְמָה in Dan 6:17, 21.

The Syriac version further supports these observations (see table 6). In Dan 6:17, 21 the Syriac uses the adverb נָכַּנְנַנְn

114x334] In Dan 6:17, 21 the Syriac uses the adverb נָכַּנְn the noun נָכַּn “continuance” for דָּבָר in 11:31 and 12:11 the Syriac reads נָכַּn “the offerings,” respectively נָכַּn “the offering,” for דָּbָר. Hence, the Syriac, too, indicates a terminological link between דָּbָר in Dan 6:17, 21 and דָּbָר, this time in Dan 8:11-13. In fact, the adverb נָכַּn “continually” and the close נָכַּn נָכַּn “true,” all from the root נָכַּn, are the standard renditions for the BH דָּbָר. Only in the Psalms and Proverbs is דָּbָר.

This adverb ἐνδεχομένως is used for דָּבָר in Exod 29:38; Lev 24:3; and Num 28:3; elsewhere ἐνδεχομένως occurs only in the Apocrypha: 1 Esdr 6:29; Sir 20:26; 23:10; 37:18; 45:14; 51:11 (51:10 in LXX Rahlfs). Having some Hebrew manuscripts of the Wisdom of Ben Sira available it is worthwhile to present the data of ἐνδεχομένως in this document. In Sir 45:14 and 51:11 ἐνδεχομένως renders the Hebrew דָּבָר: in 45:14 in regard to the cereal offering (லய) which Aaron, the high priest, offered twice each day by burning it wholly; in 51:11 to describe the constant praise and prayer of Ben Sira. In Sir 20:26 and 23:10 the Hebrew is not available, and in Sir 37:18 ἐνδεχομένως renders the Hebrew מְלִי “entire, whole” making this text the only case where ἐνδεχομένως renders another word than דָּbָר. The Greek translation of the Old Testament by Aquila uses ἐνδεχομένως in Deut 11:12; Pss 34:27 (35:27 in MT); 68:24 (69:24 in MT); 73:23 (74:23 in MT); 118:109 (119:109 in MT); Isa 52:5; 60:11; 62:6; and in an Armenian version of Aquila the equivalent to ἐνδεχομένως occurs also in Isa 49:16. So Joseph Reider and Nigel Turner, An Index to Aquila: Greek-Hebrew, Hebrew-Greek, Latin-Hebrew, with the Syriac and Armenian Evidence, VTSup, no. 12 (Leiden: Brill, 1966), 81. Without exception all these occurrences of ἐνδεχομένως render דָּbָר. Symmachus uses ἐνδεχομένως in Pss 50:5 (51:5 in MT) and 70:6 (71:6 in MT). Again both times ἐνδεχομένως stands for דָּbָר.

1This adverb ἐνδεχομένως is used for דָּbָר in Exod 29:38; Lev 24:3; and Num 28:3; elsewhere ἐνδεχομένως occurs only in the Apocrypha: 1 Esdr 6:29; Sir 20:26; 23:10; 37:18; 45:14; 51:11 (51:10 in LXX Rahlfs). Having some Hebrew manuscripts of the Wisdom of Ben Sira available it is worthwhile to present the data of ἐνδεχομένως in this document. In Sir 45:14 and 51:11 ἐνδεχομένως renders the Hebrew דָּbָר: in 45:14 in regard to the cereal offering (லய) which Aaron, the high priest, offered twice each day by burning it wholly; in 51:11 to describe the constant praise and prayer of Ben Sira. In Sir 20:26 and 23:10 the Hebrew is not available, and in Sir 37:18 ἐνδεχομένως renders the Hebrew מְלִי “entire, whole” making this text the only case where ἐνδεχομένως renders another word than דָּbָר. The Greek translation of the Old Testament by Aquila uses ἐνδεχομένως in Deut 11:12; Pss 34:27 (35:27 in MT); 68:24 (69:24 in MT); 73:23 (74:23 in MT); 118:109 (119:109 in MT); Isa 52:5; 60:11; 62:6; and in an Armenian version of Aquila the equivalent to ἐνδεχομένως occurs also in Isa 49:16. So Joseph Reider and Nigel Turner, An Index to Aquila: Greek-Hebrew, Hebrew-Greek, Latin-Hebrew, with the Syriac and Armenian Evidence, VTSup, no. 12 (Leiden: Brill, 1966), 81. Without exception all these occurrences of ἐνδεχομένως render דָּbָר. Symmachus uses ἐνδεχομένως in Pss 50:5 (51:5 in MT) and 70:6 (71:6 in MT). Again both times ἐνδεχομένως stands for דָּbָר.

In the LXX ἐνδεχομένως is used for דָּbָר in Exod 29:38 (LXX reads κάρπονα ἐνδεχομένως “continual burnt offering” which is not found in the Hebrew), 42; 30:8; Num 28:6, 23; 2 Esdr 3:5 (Ezra 3:5 in MT); 20:33 (2x; 20:34 in LXX Rahlfs; Neh 10:34 in MT); and it occurs furthermore only in 1 Esdr 5:51; Jdt 4:14; and Sir 7:13.
rendered differently.¹

Table 6. Greek and the Syriac Renditions of אָרְיָה and רָחוּב in the Book of Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masoretic Text</th>
<th>Old Greek</th>
<th>Theodotion</th>
<th>Peshitta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6:17 אָרְיָה(ב)</td>
<td>ἐνδελεχώς</td>
<td>ἐνδελεχώς</td>
<td>סְדַרָה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:21 אָרְיָה(ב)</td>
<td>ἐνδελεχώς</td>
<td>ἐνδελεχώς</td>
<td>סְדַרָה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11b רָחוּב</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>מִשְׁלָחָן</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:12a רָחוּב</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>מִשְׁלָחָן</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13c רָחוּב</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>מִשְׁלָחָן</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:31 רָחוּב</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>מִשְׁלָחָן</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:11 רָחוּב</td>
<td>θυσία διὰ</td>
<td>θυσία</td>
<td>מִשְׁלָחָן</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To summarize up to this point, both the use of אָרְיָה in the Targums and the translation of רָחוּב in the Greek versions and in the Syriac of Daniel show conclusively the existence of a close lexical relation between BA אָרְיָה in Dan 6:17, 21 and the BH רָחוּב in Dan 8:11-13; 11:31; 12:11.

¹Outside the book of Daniel, BH רָחוּב (99 x) is rendered by the Peshitta:
(1) 16 times with מַסְדָּכָה "true" (14 x: Num 4:16; 28:24, 31; 29:6, 11, 16, 19, 22, 25, 28, 31, 34, 38; Neh 10:33[34]) or מַסְדָּכָה "true" (2 x: Ezra 3:5; Neh 10:33[34]);
(2) 54 times with מַסְדָּכָה מִלָּה "continually" (22 x in the Pentateuch, 24 x in the Prophets, and 8 x in the Writings);
(3) 23 times with the adverbial phrase מַסְדָּכָה "for all times > always" (20 x: Pss 25:15; 34:2; 35:27; 38:18; 50:8; 51:5; 69:24; 70:5; 71:3, 6, 14; 72:15; 74:23; 105:4; 109:15, 19; 119:109, 117; Prov 15:15; 28:14) or מַסְדָּכָה "for all times > always" (3 x: Pss 16:8; 40:12, 17);
(4) and 6 times מַסְדָּכָה is not rendered at all in the Syriac: in Ezek 38:8; Hab 1:17; Pss 73:23; 119:44; Prov 5:19; 2 Chr 24:14).
The word מַסְדָּכָה "continually" is used only once as a rendition for a BH word other than מַסְדָּכָה, namely for מַסְדָּכָה in "for moments > every moment" (Isa 27:3); and מַסְדָּכָה is added once to the Hebrew text (Lev 6:13).
Ninth and last, a thematic relationship is noted between רָעָד and רֶפֶנַי in Dan 6 and רֶפֶנַי in Dan 8 that sheds further light on the meaning of רָעָד. To begin with, the verbal root used to describe Daniel’s continual activity in Dan 6 is פָּלֵל “serve.” In BA, this verb is always used in the sense of serving God or a god (10 times), and four times it occurs in parallel with מְנַבֵּל “worship.” The serving of God mentioned in Dan 6:17, 21 could therefore very well be an expression used to describe Daniel’s prayers, since “prayer is a form of service of God.” Furthermore, פָּלֵל has cultic overtones, since its participle denotes those who are the servants of the temple (Ezra 7:24) and the only occurrence of its derivative פְּלֵל designates the “service” or “ritual observance” of God’s temple (Ezra 7:19). Thus, Daniel’s service or worship of God in prayer has cultic connotations, which certainly fit the use of רָעָד in this context.

Another observation establishes a cultic background to Daniel’s continual service

---

1 BA פָּלֵל “serve” occurs in Ezra 7:24; Dan 3:12, 14, 17, 18, 28; 6:17, 21; 7:14, 27; in parallel with מְנַבֵּל “worship” in Dan 3:12, 14, 18, 28.


3 Goldwurm observes that “the Aramaic פְּלֵל and its Hebrew counterpart פָּלָה contain a nuance of the idea of physical, hence sacrificial, worship” (186). He concurs with Sifre Deut 11:31 that there is a sacrificial worship in Babylon, which Sifre identifies as בְּלֹם הַרְפֵּה “worship in the heart,” that is, prayer. For Goldwurm, the verb פָּלֵל in Dan 6:11 alludes to this sacrificial worship in the heart. On the meaning of the term פָּלָה see also Jacob Milgrom, Studies in Levitical Terminology, I: The Encroacher and the Levite, the Term ‘Aboda, University of California Publications Near Eastern Studies, no. 14 (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1970), 60-87. Milgrom’s study is primarily concerned with the meaning of פָּלָה in the so-called Priestly literature. While he concludes that in the Priestly literature פָּלָה is confined to “physical labor”—“in the special case of the Levites, to their Tabernacle function as sacred furniture movers”—which for him shows that “the passages in P are old,” he is equally clear that the meaning “cult service” or “temple cult” for פָּלָה “is found in all Pentateuchal sources but P, and predominantly in post-exilic historical texts” (ibid., 87).
of God even more clearly. Daniel’s constant service to God, to which king Darius refers, reveals itself in the fact that Daniel continues to kneel and pray habitually three times a day “as he had been doing previously” (6:11), which is the thematic and structural center of the narrative in Dan 6.¹ In the words of Daniel’s accusers, Daniel “keeps making his petition three times a day” (6:14). It is in this context of continual worship of Yhwh that Darius identifies Daniel as one who constantly (וֹשֵׁב יָדָיו) serves God. Daniel’s continual worship of Yhwh in prayer has specific cultic overtones which are expressed by the orientation/direction towards Jerusalem, by Daniel’s kneeling posture in prayer, by the time Daniel chooses to pray (three times a day), and by the description of the manner and content of his prayers (6:11).²

First, the direction towards Jerusalem appears to be the direction towards the cultic center which lay in ruins at that time: the sanctuary and earthly dwelling-place of Yhwh. Even though destroyed one could still direct prayers toward the temple in Jerusalem and God would hear in heaven. This concept is rooted in the temple theology according to 1 Kgs 8:22-61 (parallel 2 Chr 6:12-42) where the temple is not only a place of sacrifice but also a place of prayer towards God in heaven, so that even in exile God’s people can pray towards their land, towards the city of Jerusalem (1 Kgs 8:44, 48), and toward the temple, and God will hear from רֵדֵב תַּלְמֵי הָאֲרוֹן שָׁבַע "the foundations of his

¹P. B. Petersen, 137, 142.

dwelling in heaven” (1 Kgs 8:46-50).¹

A second indication of the cultic orientation of Daniel’s prayers is his posture of prostration. Haran points to three acts which according to biblical concept comprise worship of God: sacrifice, prayer, and prostration. The worshiper would practice all three. “These three acts—sacrifice, prayer, prostration—joined and complemented each other even though they come in descending order of importance.”² In exile, Daniel worships and serves God constantly. Though he is unable to offer a sacrifice in the temple, he regularly kneels and prays (Dan 6:11) and thus pays homage to the God he serves. Since sacrifices or cultic acts are the most important outward expressions of worship, one could argue that it is possible to refer to the totality of worship by mentioning that term that would comprise all the regular cultic activities: תַּחַת.

Third, two of Daniel’s three selected times of prayer probably coincided intentionally with the times when the daily sacrifice should have been offered. They are the morning and the evening prayer (see 1 Chr 23:30).³ Indeed, the prayer and praising at


³Concluding his study on the three times of prayer Vogel observes that the three times of prayer by itself are “not a direct indication of a cultic connection, even though a partial
morning and in the evening and on Sabbaths, new moons and feast days, always in conjunction with sacrifices, is summed up in the phrase “continually (תְּפַנִּים) before Yhwh” (1 Chr 23:30-31).

Because of the other indicators of cultic orientation in Dan 6:11, it is reasonable to assume that Daniel’s constant (תְּפַנִּים) worship of Yhwh is tied in with the time of the regular daily (תְּפַנִּים) sacrifice. This is also suggested by the time of Daniel’s prayer in chap. 9 which was “about the time of the evening sacrifice (מֵהֵן)” (Dan 9:21). One may even surmise that Daniel’s prayer in Dan 9 is

correspondence is possible” (“The Cultic Motif,” 199) and that it is “probable that at least two of Daniel’s three times of prayer in Dan 6:11 correspond to the two regular times” when the daily sacrifice was offered for the people (ibid., 207). Driver (Daniel, 75), Charles (157), and Montgomery (274) believe that Daniel’s prayer hours were at the time of the morning sacrifice, at the time of the evening sacrifice, and at sunset. Others suggested that the three prayer times were at the time of the morning and evening sacrifice and at noon; cf. Ps 55:18 (so, e.g., von Lengerke, 280-281; Keil, 213; and, recently, A. S. van der Woude, “Zu Daniel 6,11,” ZAW 106 [1994]: 123-124). Whatever may be the case, it is evident that the times of the regular daily sacrifice were utilized as times of prayer. In fact, Dan 6:11 in comparison with 9:21 is probably an indication of the interplay between the two patterns of natural prayer time and sacrificial prayer time that have been examined by Esther Chazon, “When Did They Pray? Times for Prayer in the Dead Sea Scrolls and Associated Literature,” in For a Later Generation: The Transformation of Tradition in Israel, Early Judaism, and Early Christianity, ed. R. A. Argall, B. A. Bow, and R. A. Werline (Harrisburg: Trinity Press International, 2000), 42-51.


2On the phrase “...מֵהֵן the time of the evening sacrifice” and its cultic implications see Walter E. Rast, “Daniel 9: Its Form and Theological Significance” (Ph.D. diss., University of Chicago, 1966), 157-168; and Vogel, “Cultic Motif,” 182-193. The time of the evening sacrifice was a time of individual and corporate prayer, both in the temple precincts (cf. Sir 50:18-20; 2 Enoch 51:4; Luke 1:10; Acts 3:1) as well as at a distance from the temple (1 Kgs 18:29, 36; Ezra 9:4-5; Dan 9:21; cf. Jdt 9:1; Acts 10:30). See, e.g., Havernick, 347-348; Zöckler, 142; Montgomery, 274-275; Weinfeld in H.-J. Fabry and M. Weinfeld, “מֵהֵן minhā,” TDOT, 8:419-421; and especially Chazon, 47-48; for later developments see Daniel K. Falk, Daily, Sabbath, and Festival Prayers in the Dead Sea Scrolls, STDJ, no. 27 (Leiden: Brill, 1998), 117-119. Whether the reference to prayer in connection with incense and evening sacrifice in Ps 141:2 designates a domestic prayer in harmony with the temple rituals (see Erhard S. Gerstenberger, Psalms, Part 2, and Lamentations, FOTL, vol. 15 [Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2001], 414) or a prayer offered in the presence of temple rituals (Leslie C. Allen, Psalms 101-150, rev., WBC, vol. 21 [Nashville: Nelson, 2002], 343-344), prayer and sacrifice cannot be separated. The morning hours are similarly referred to as a time for prayers (Pss 5:4; 59:17; 88:14; 143:8). In addition, it can be noted that the offerings of the regular daily offering
intentionally linked to Daniel’s prayers in chap. 6 since both date into the same regnal year (6:1; 9:1) and the manner of praying is described similarly (cf. 9:3-4 with 6:11-12). Furthermore, Dan 9:21 possibly links the prayer and prophecy in chap. 9 with the vision concerning דָּרַיְם in chap. 8. Daniel 9:21 may therefore constitute a link between chap. 6 and chap. 8.

Finally, the description of the manner and content of Daniel’s prayers uses vocabulary with cultic connotations. Daniel prays and gives thanks (נָשָׁא) before his God (דַּנְיֵאל בָּרוּךָ), is making petition and supplication (נְפָקַד) before his God (דַּנְיֵאל בָּרוּךָ) (Dan 6:11-12). The terms נָשָׁא (BH נא) “confess, praise” (cf. 1 Kgs 8:33, 35) and the Hitpaal participle of נָפָק “supplication” (cf. 1 Kgs 8:33, 47, 59) are indicators of the cultic connotation of Daniel’s prayers, as well as the phrase נָשָׁא בְּרֶךְ “before his God” were such an important part in the life of the believing Israelites that they could be easily used as a reference for time. As Uriel Simon notes: “Telling time by reference to the sacrificial rituals is found in a number of places in Scripture,” and he refers to 1 Kgs 18:29, 36; 2 Kgs 3:20; Dan 9:21; and to the Talmud (Berakot 2a-3a) (Reading Prophetic Narratives, trans. L. J. Schramm, ISBL [Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1997], 283 n. 19).

1Goldingay poses the question of whether the model prayer in chap. 9 is “the kind of prayer the Daniel of chap. 6 is assumed to have prayed, soon after Darius was made king,” and in support points to the similar terms in 9:3-4a and 6:11-12 (Daniel, 239). Lucas also notes the correspondence between 6:10 and 9:21 (Daniel, 240).

2Plöger suggests a link between Dan 9:21 and Dan 8:11-13 when he asserts that the temporal expression in 9:21 “perhaps serves as a reminder of the evening fåmî d sacrifice which was mentioned at length in chap. 8” (Daniel, 139). See already von Lengerke, 427; similarly, Bevan, 152 (“the mention of the oblation doubtless refers to the suspension of the daily sacrifice“); Montgomery, 336; Rast, 166-167; Collins, Daniel (1993), 352. Of course, for Plöger (Daniel, 126) and the others the expression נָפָק in Dan 8 refers exclusively to the daily sacrifice at the earthly sanctuary and does not have a wider meaning as indicated by the link to prayer and constant worship of YHWH in Dan 6:17, 21 and 9:21.

3So pointed out by Vogel, who correctly asserts a linkage to 1 Kgs 8 and understands נָשָׁא in Dan 6:11 not only in the sense of “to praise” but also in the sense of “to confess” (“Cultic Motif,” 204-207). For the relation between Dan 6:11-12 and 1 Kgs 8:44-45 see also Buchanan, 154-155.
(twice in 6:11-12), a phrase quite similar to BH יִשְׂרָאֵל "before YHWH" (cf. 1 Kgs 8:59), which, belonging to cultic terminology, is often used in דָּמִי d contexts.

In sum, Daniel's prayers, which are described in the terminology of 1 Kgs 8 (parallel 2 Chron 6), can be regarded as cultic activity and as being closely associated with the sacrificial worship of YHWH. So when the exiled Israelites were deprived of the


2The close relation between prayer and sacrifice has been recognized time and again. For example, Greenberg points out that "the chief form of divine service in Scripture is the sacrificial cult, but prayer of petition and praise is frequently associated with it" ("On the Refinement of the Conception of Prayer," 59). After giving several biblical examples that show the close interrelation between sacrifice and prayer (1 Sam 1; 7:9; 1 Kgs 8:62; Isa 56:7; Ps 141:2)—one may add Hos 14:3, Pss 51:17-18 and 116:17, in which sacrificial language is used to describe prayer and thanksgiving—Greenberg transposes this conceptual relation also to the attitude of the one who offers sacrifice or prayer, when he observes: "The attitude of one praying to God and that of one sacrificing to him were as closely linked as the phenomena themselves" (ibid., 60). Weinfeld confirms that the time of the evening offering is the "appropriate time for prayer" (Fabry and Weinfeld, 8:419-420). Gary A. Anderson urges to perceive prayer as "a carefully prescribed cultic act" and upholds that "the equation of prayer with sacrifice" is already present in biblical times ("The Praise of God as a Cultic Event," in *Priesthood and Cult in Ancient Israel*, ed. G. A. Anderson and S. M. Olyan, JSOTSup, no. 125 [Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1991], 15). Menahem Haran regards prayer in the temple as of "secondary order" or "optional" belonging "to the periphery of cult" ("Cult and Prayer," in *Biblical and Related Studies Presented to Samuel Iwry*, ed. A. Kort and S. Morschauer [Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1985], 87-92), but at the same time he leaves no doubt that prayer "was a substitute for sacrifice, a kind of 'offering of the poor'" (ibid., 91) and that "prayer was prevalent in the temple courts" (ibid., 90). Finally, Chazon demonstrates that in the Hebrew Bible as well as in the literature of Qumran exists a prayer model based on temple sacrifices (42-51). Daniel K. Falk argues in the light of evidence from the Dead Sea Scrolls that institutionalized prayer did not originate as a substitute of the temple, as an alternative for sacrifice, but co-existed in association with the practice of sacrificial cult: "Prayer at the time of sacrifice, would then not be something that one does simply because one cannot be at the Temple (Judith) as a substitute for sacrifice, but because it is what one would do if one were at the Temple (e.g., Acts 3:1). . . . The attraction of prayer to the Temple ritual assisted in the process of formalizing prayer prior to and in addition to the need to substitute for sacrifice" ("Qumran Prayer Texts and the Temple," in *Sapiential, Liturgical and Poetical Texts from Qumran: Proceedings of the Third Meeting of the International Organization for Qumran Studies, Oslo 1998; Published in Memory of Maurice Baillet*, ed. D. K. Falk, F. Garcia Martínez, and E. M. Schuller, STDJ, no. 35 [Leiden: Brill, 2000], 125; cf. Falk, *Daily, Sabbath, and Festival Prayers*, 123-124). On a side note, Patrick D. Miller regards it as possible that particular petitions or vows to the deity could be set in the context of regular sacrificial rituals, which he demonstrates for the Ugaritic text *KTU* 1.119 (= RS 24.266) and assumes for Hannah's prayer in 1 Sam 1 ("Prayer and Sacrifice in Ugarit and Israel," in *Text and Context: Old Testament and Semitic Studies for F. C. Fensham*, ed. W. Claassen, JSOTSup, no. 48 [Sheffield: JSOT Press, 1988], 153). The discussion on the silence in the
temple, the only cultic service of God they could present was an "offering of the poor" (Haran's terminology), namely the continual prayers directed toward the place where YHWH's temple once stood. The regularity of the prayers exemplifies Daniel's constant (tāmī d) worship and service of YHWH. This is exactly the reason why the OG adds in Dan 6:17 after the expression for tāmī d (ἐν τῇ δεκαεικοσίᾳ) the phrase τρίς τις ἡμέρας "three times the day" which is found exclusively in connection with Daniel's prayer (6:6, 9, 11, 12, 14, 17)—in order to indicate that Daniel's continuous service of God is exemplified by his regular, three times a day, prayer and worship.

The focal issue in chap. 6 is prayer and worship, or with one word: the tāmī d. Daniel's commitment to continuous service to God and his uninterrupted worship practice stand diametrically opposed to the human, and inherently anti-divine, order. In this regard, the struggle involving the tāmī d in Dan 8 resembles the situation in chap. 6, albeit on a larger, universal scale. In both chapters it becomes evident that "spiritual warfare on earth is an attack on the ritual observance of the people."²

sanctuary initiated by Y. Kaufmann centers around the question whether the priest who performed the cultic sacrifices recited prayers during the sacrificial ritual or not (a recent overview of the debate is given by Israel Knohl, "Between Voice and Silence: The Relationship between Prayer and Temple Cult," JBL 115 [1996]:17-30). As such, this discussion does not affect the scholarly consensus that "the people were accustomed to reciting their own prayers at the time of offering the daily sacrifice and the burning of the incense" (ibid., 23). For Heger, the speedy replacement of sacrifices with symbolic performance, like the institution of daily fixed prayers, at the time of the destruction of the Temple, points to the fact that the symbolic performance must have been in place long before the abolition of sacrifices (380-390). Heger suggests a development that connects Josiah's reform of the sacrifices to their replacement by recitals.

¹"After the cessation of the sacrificial service the regular prayer, often three times a day, was considered to be its substitute" (Behrmann, 40; cf. Hävernìck, 348).

²Smith-Christopher, 113, who, however, makes such an observation only in regard to chap. 8. For him, such an attack involves the temple and the offerings.
Conclusion. It is obvious that דת in Dan 8:11-13 should be regarded as a cultic term. Its nominal use, its definite article, and the shared context with other cultic terminology provide excellent support for this. It is simply too limited to interpret the meaning of דת in the book of Daniel as only the daily offering or as the daily burnt offering. To be sure, יד contains the regular daily offering—and thus to exclude the daily burnt offering from the cultic range expressed by יד is equally invalid—but it comprises much more than that. The cultic background of the term יד shows that it represents (1) the regular cultic activities performed by the (high) priest, and/or (2) the continual cultic worship of YHWH. To be specific, יד in Dan 8:11-13 designates (1) the cultic activities of the קספ as high priest, and/or (2) the continual cultic worship directed toward the קספ as divine being.

I suggest an intentional double meaning. Although the cultic background of יד favors the view that (high) priestly activity is meant, which is being part of the Israelite worship, two considerations from the book of Daniel itself provide enough reason to understand יד also as an expression for the true worship and service of YHWH, maybe even “the epitome of the cult.” First, the replacement of יד by false worship or false cult practices (ףפו) in Dan 11:31 and 12:11 implies that יד designates the true worship of YHWH. Second, the obvious lexical and thematic link to Dan 6 (תלך "constant" in 6:17, 21) suggests that יד stands for the continual cultic worship and service of YHWH, which was expressed by Daniel short of sacrifices through his continual service in prayer.

1Trudinger, 36-38.
Daniel 8:11b therefore describes a horrible and extremely offensive act. Just as it was "inconceivable" that the complex of tāmīḏ rites "should ever be interrupted," so it is inconceivable that the tāmīḏ should ever be taken away from the prince of the host. This constitutes the ultimate cultic calamity. Both the continual worship and service of Yhwh as well as the tāmīḏ responsibilities of the prince of the host should never be abandoned or interrupted. To have done so is another strong indication of the horn's haughtiness and its attempt to replace the actual commander of the host.

Clause 11c

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

11c [ךָּהַשְׁפִּיר] [ךָּהַשְׁפִּיר]  

waw+Hophal-pf/3sgm/ noun/cssgm/ noun/sgm/+ePP/3sgm/  

ConjWG(waw+Hophal-pf/3sgm/) CsWG(noun/cssgm/ noun/sgm/+ePP/3sgm/)  

P.Sy +1.Sy  

predicate +subject  

Clause type: qatal-x.

The verb קְרֵשֵׁה is a Hophal form with a rather unusual, yet possible,

---

1Haran, *Temples* refers to the tāmīḏ rites performed inside the sanctuary (218). Similarly, Milgrom states, "The unbroken continuity of the Tāmīḏ in the Temple was reassuring to Israel, and its cessation a traumatic calamity (Dan 8:11-13; 11:31; 12:11). Legend has it that as long as the Tāmīḏ was uninterrupted the walls of Jerusalem were impregnable (b. B. Qam. 82b)" (*Leviticus 1-16*, 457).

2If Gary A. Anderson describes the impact of the taking away of the daily sacrifice so strongly—"No greater cultic calamity could be imagined than the loss of this sacrifice, since it symbolized the serving of the divine-human relationship (Dan 8:11)" (*Sacrifice and Sacrificial Offerings [OT]*, *ABD*, 5:878)—how much more a greater calamity must be the taking away of the tāmīḏ in the sense described in this study.
vocalization.\(^1\) Textual emendation is not necessary.\(^2\) An alternative vocalization, which does not involve a change in the consonantal text, is the suggestion that \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) should be pointed as Hiphil infinitive absolute \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \).\(^3\) This form would be the continuation of the perfect active Hiphil \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) (\(\text{ketib} \) in vs. 11b), especially since the Peshitta (Peal \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \)) and the Vulgate (\(\text{deiecit} \)) read an active verb. Such an active reading may be explained by alignment with the previous active verbs, particularly if in vs. 11b the \(\text{ketib} \) verb form, the active \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \), is chosen.\(^4\) However, the passive meaning of \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) as attested in the MT is supported by the Old Greek and Theodotion, which both read the Future passive \(\text{εἰλήφθη} \). In sum, though the reading \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) appears to be a viable alternative, the reading \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) is preferred here.\(^5\)

The \(\text{qatal-x} \) \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) indicates co-ordination with the \(\text{qatal} \) form in the previous

---

\(^1\)The usual prefix vowel of the Hophal perfect form is \(\text{o} \), but the vowel \(\text{u} \) as in \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) can also be found in other \(\text{x-qatal} \) (Jer 22:28; Ezek 32:32 both with conjunction \(\text{waw} \)) or \(\text{qatal} \) forms of the Hophal (Ezek 19:12).

\(^2\)Two kinds of emendation have been suggested. First, the proposal to read \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) (active) which would conform this form to the previous active \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) (so Thomson, 242; Driver, \text{Daniel}, 116; Nelis, 96). Second, in comparison with vss. 7, 10, and the last three words of vs. 11, the proposal to read \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) and it [the horn] trampled down" in the sense of "and it defiled" instead of \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) which is regarded as a corrupted dittography of \(\text{לְפִּדָּה} \) in vs. 12b (so Ginsberg, \text{Studies in Daniel}, 50; Hartman and Di Lella, 222).

\(^3\)So Hitzig, 132; Kamphausen, 33. Hitzig refers to sequential infinitives after finite verb forms (\(\text{waw-perfect} \)) the Qal infinitive \(\text{רָשָׁה} \) in Dan 9:5, the Hiphil infinitive \(\text{רָשָׁה} \) in Jer 36:23, and a Piel infinitive \(\text{רָשָׁה} \)---as he reads \(\text{רָשָׁה} \)---in Esth 9:27; Kamphausen refers to \(\text{רָשָׁה} \) in Dan 9:5, 11. As noted previously, Goldstein also reads the Hiphil infinitive in Dan 8:12c, but in distinction to the others he regards all three verbs in vs. 11 as infinitives (\text{I Maccabees}, 145-146, esp. n. 251). For comments on Goldstein's view as well as for the phenomenon of an infinitive absolute in the place of a finite verb see p. 155 n. 2.

\(^4\)So Kranichfeld, 294; Hasselberger, 8 n. 25.

\(^5\)See also the report of the committee for textual criticism of the OT in Barthélemy, 460-461, which favors the Hophal vocalization.
234

clause. In other words, the throwing down of the place or foundation of the sanctuary does not occur after the horn has taken away the *tāmīd*. Rather the two activities should be regarded as simultaneous.2

The subject of the passive אֶבירי הָעֵצָם is the construct phrase מְסֹכָה יִשָּׁרָה. Again, textual emendation has been suggested but is not necessary.3 The pronominal suffix belongs to the second element שעֲפָר “sanctuary,” resulting in the translation “the place of his sanctuary,” and refers back to the “prince of the host.” The logical subject of the passive verb is still the horn. It is the horn which throws down the place of the sanctuary of the prince of the host.

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Meaning of מֻסֹכָה יִשָּׁרָה and meaning of the clause

The construct phrase מְסֹכָה יִשָּׁרָה in Dan 8:11c occurs only here in the Hebrew

---


2The same function of a *qatal-x* form occurs in the book of Daniel in 8:27; 9:5; 10:15 (ibid.); and in addition to Driver one should add 9:6 (despite the negative הָיָה the verb is a *qatal-x* type); 10:1, 7; and perhaps 12:5.

3Suggestions are to read עם instead with, because the waw is said to be dittography of the following waw in וְנֹרְאֵה, and to relocate מִשְׁפָּרְנָה in front of מְסֹכָה יִשָּׁרָה in vs. 12a so that it reads “the place of the daily offering” or “the stand of the daily sacrifice” (Ginsberg, *Studies in Daniel*, 49, 51; Nelis, 96; Hartman and Di Lella, 222). With the help of a reconstructed “original text of the LXX,” Charles puts forth that the original Hebrew read עם instead with, and (the) place was cast down and the sanctuary laid desolate” (205-207). Goldstein suggests the reading וְנֹרְאֵה “from the base” and translates vs. 11c “and cast it from its holy base” (Goldstein, *I Maccabees*, 145-146 n. 251).

4Pronominal suffixes may also belong to the first element of a construct word group like in מְסֹכָה יִשָּׁרָה “my mountain of holiness = my holy mountain” (Isa 11:9). In Dan 8:11c such a construction, which is not to be preferred, would be translated as “his place of the sanctuary = his sanctuary-place.”
Bible. The noun הָרְבָּל (found 17 times in the OT) has the semantic notion of location and refers to a place occupied by an object or a person. It usually designates the place or site but could also refer to the foundations of an object, namely the actual foundations of the temple (Ezra 2:68), or the metaphorical foundations of the throne of YHWH:

“righteousness and justice” (Pss 89:15 [parallel to “loving-kindness and truth”]; 97:2),
or—in its only plural occurrence—the metaphorical foundations of the earth (Ps 104:5).

Interestingly, הָרְבָּל in the singular (found 16 times in the OT) exclusively designates the place of the sanctuary and/or the presence or dwelling of YHWH and thus has a strong cultic association. הָרְבָּל is used in relation to the earthly dwelling place of YHWH—the sanctuary/temple (Exod 15:17; 1 Kgs 8:13; 2 Chr 6:2; Ezra 2:68) or mount Zion (Exod 15:17; Isa 4:5)—and in relation to the heavenly dwelling place of YHWH (1 Kgs 8:39, 43, 49; Isa 18:4; Ps 33:14; 2 Chr 6:30, 33, 39). Its use in construct relation with the cultic term וָּשִׁישָׁי in Dan 8:11c fits very well into this semantic range. One could also argue with Tengström that the word הָרְבָּל establishes a relation between the temple and the heavenly throne of YHWH since “in the great majority of cases, that is 12 times, the word designates the foundation of the throne of YHWH.”


Sven Tengström, “Les visions prophétiques du trône de Dieu et leur arrière-plan dans l'Ancien Testament,” in Le Trône de Dieu, ed. M. Philonenko, WUNT, no. 69 (Tübingen: Mohr, 1993), 43. Tengström lists the references to the heavenly throne (Pss 89:15; 97:2), to the foundation of the heavenly throne expressed by וָּשִׁישָׁי הָרְבָּל “the foundations of your dwelling” (1 Kgs 8:39, 43, 49; 2 Chr 6:30) or וָּשִׁישָׁי הָרְבָּל “the foundations of his dwelling” (Ps 33:14), and to the similar expression וָּשִׁישָׁי הָרְבָּל “the foundations of your dwelling” (Exod 15:17; 1 Kgs 8:13; 2 Chr 6:2) which designates the temple (43-44).
connotation, alluding to the sanctuary as the throne of God.

The noun לֶשֶכ (found 75 times in the OT) designates a sanctuary or sacred place, most often the sanctuary or temple of YHWH. In fact, it is one of the most common words used for the sanctuary.1 Here, the suggestion by Milgrom needs to be considered. He argues that לֶשֶכ never means the sanctuary building but refers in P and H to “the sacred area, precinct” (Lev 12:4; 16:33; 19:30; 20:3; 21:12; 26:2; Num 19:20) or to “the sacred objects, sancta” (Lev 21:23; 26:31; Num. 3:38; 10:21; 18:1)” and everywhere else to the sacred area or the Temple precincts.2 Milgrom’s observation, though not convincing for every occurrence of לֶשֶכ, is helpful in several instances.3 Of course, the meaning of

1It is, however, clear that לֶשֶכ is also used for other entities. The plural refers to the compartments of the sanctuary complex (Lev 21:23 [or “sacred objects”?]; cf. Jacob Milgrom, Leviticus 17-22, AB, vol. 3A (New York: Doubleday, 2000), 1832); Jer 51:51; Pss 68:36?; 73:17) and to multiple sanctuaries in Israel, whether legitimate or illegitimate (Lev 26:31 [or “sacra”]; cf. Jacob Milgrom, Leviticus 13-27, AB, vol. 3B (New York: Doubleday, 2001), 2320); Ezek 7:24; 21:7; Amos 7:9). לֶשֶכ also refers to the sanctuary of Tyre (Ezek 28:18), the city Bethel (Amos 7:13), Moab’s sanctuary (Isa 16:12), the heavenly temple (Jer 17:12 [cf. Jack R. Lundbom, Jeremiah 1-20, AB, vol. 21A (New York: Doubleday, 1999), 793]); Ps 68:36?), YHWH as metaphorical sanctuary for the Israelites (Isa 8:14; Ezek 11:16), and the sacred objects of the sanctuary (Num 10:21; perhaps also 3:38; 18:1). In Num 18:29, לֶשֶכ designates a portion of the sacred tithe (according to its pointing, לֶשֶכ could derive from לֶשֶכ; so Even-Shoshan, 704; Milgrom, Leviticus 1-16, 1058). Cf. Richard E. Averbeck, “לֶשֶכ (# 5219),” NIDOTTE, 2:1080-1082; and Susanne Owczarek, Die Vorstellung vom “Wohnen Gottes inmitten seines Volkes” in der Priesterschrift: Zur Heiligtumstheologie der priesterlichen Grundscrift, Europäische Hochschulschriften: Reihe 23, Theologie, no. 625 (Frankfurt am Main: Lang, 1998), 264-269.

2At first, Milgrom argued that in the Priestly literature and in Ezekiel לֶשֶכ never means the sanctuary building (Jacob Milgrom, Studies in Levitical Terminology, I, 23-24 n. 78); later he extended his suggestion to the entire Bible (Leviticus 1-16, 754). He observed that the “connotation of sacred objects... is limited to P and H (and possibly Jer 51:51)” and that everywhere else לֶשֶכ refers to the sacred area or the Temple precincts (ibid., 755). Cf. Haran: “[לֶשֶכ] does not necessarily refer to a house of God. In the priestly terminology it indicates any article or object possessing sanctity” (Temples, 15).

3On the one hand, it can help to explain the plural occurrences of לֶשֶכ (Lev 21:23) and מֶשֶכְלִים (Lev 26:31) as not referring to multiple sanctuaries but to multiple sacred objects. On the other hand, Milgrom notes an ostensible exception in Exod 25:8: מֶשֶכְלִים יֵלֶשׁ “make me a miqdash.” He tries to avoid the meaning of sanctuary building here by pointing to vs. 10 in which מֶשֶכְלִים is
sanctuary building and sacred space is sometimes not too far apart, since the sanctuary encloses sacred space. Hence, in some occurrences of the word "sanctuary" and "sacred space" it seems artificial to distinguish between the meaning "sacred space" and "sanctuary." Its occurrence in Dan 8:11c is such a case. In fact, if in Dan 8:11c the other noun in the construct phrase, which refers to foundations, is taken into consideration, it appears that the word "sanctuary" designates the sanctuary rather than the sacred area, so that the entire phrase designates the foundations of the structure where holiness resides. The idea of foundations fits better with a structure than a place. Thus, in Dan 8:11c, the word is tentatively taken to refer to sanctuary. For the meaning of the clause a differentiation between sanctuary building and sacred area of the sanctuary seems unimportant. This may play a role however in the question why the different terms and are used in this passage (see literary analysis).

When referring to 's sanctuary , whether it denotes the sanctuary itself or the sacred place, most often refers to the earthly sanctuary or temple, but in a few instances to a sanctuary in heaven. However, the idea that "his sanctuary" could stand for God's people is too far-fetched.

supposedly defined as "the Tabernacle . . . and all its furnishings," which are "all objects contained in the sacred precincts" (Leviticus 1-16, 754). However, it seems better to argue that the sanctuary consists of the Tabernacle and the furniture and thus in vs. 8 refers to a tangible building.

References to a heavenly sanctuary have been seen in Pss 68:36; 78:69; 96:6; Jer 17:12 (see Metzger, "Himmische und irdische Wohnstatt Jahwes," 139-140; Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" [1986], 415; cf. also Marvin E. Tate, Psalms 51-100, WBC, vol. 20 [Dallas: Word, 1990], 283).

For Lacocque, the temple profaned is not only the temple in Jerusalem, "it is also the people of the Saints," similar to his interpretation of Dan 7 (The Book of Daniel, 162). Russell seems to agree with such a hypothetical deeper meaning (146). However, nowhere else does have such a connotation, and there is no evidence in Dan 8:11 that this meaning is intended.
The construct phrase הַמֶּלֶךְ הַמְּדֹקֵשׁ "sanctuary" designates either the place/site of the sanctuary or the foundations of the sanctuary, be they literal or metaphorical. The phrase is certainly different from מֵן קָרוֹן מֵן קָרוֹן "place of his sanctuary" which refers to the place of God's sanctuary and thus by extension can refer to God's sanctuary itself.1 Whereas the noun מֵן קָרוֹן always refers to a place in a literal way, the noun מֵן קָרוֹן can be used metaphorically.

From the two nouns מֵן קָרוֹן and מֵן קָרוֹן in the construct phrase in Dan 8:11c, it is the noun מֵן קָרוֹן which determines the syntactic relation to the verb שָלַל. In other words, it is the site or the foundation of the sanctuary which is affected by the action expressed by the verb. It appears that the object of the throwing down/away is not the sanctuary as a whole, since in such a case the use of only the term מֵן קָרוֹן would have been sufficient.2 Therefore, one should be cautious not to refer to מֵן קָרוֹן מְדֹקֵשׁ as the temple itself.3

An analysis of clauses with the verbal root שָלַל significantly impacts the meaning of מֵן קָרוֹן and the understanding of the meaning of the clause in vs. 11c. The

---

1 So Hävernick, 276; pace von Lengerke, 380. Cf. the following phrases using מְדֹקֵשׁ "sanctuary": "the place of my sanctuary" (Isa 60:13) and מְדֹקֵשׁ מֵן קָרוֹן "the place of our sanctuary" (Jer 17:12). Compare also phrases using מְדֹקֵשׁ "place" that designate the sanctuary: מְדֹקֵשׁ מֵן קָרוֹן "place of the holy" (Lev 10:17; 14:13), מְדֹקֵשׁ מֵן קָרוֹן "his holy place" (Ps 24:3; Ezra 9:8), מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ "place of your dwelling" which is "heaven" (1 Kgs 8:30; 2 Chr 6:21), מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ "the place of the name of YHWH Zeboath, Mount Zion" (Isa 18:7; cf. Jer 7:12), and מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ "the place of my throne" and מְדֹקֵשׁ מְדֹקֵשׁ "the place of the soles of my feet" (Ezek 43:7).

2 Cf. Jer 9:18 where a building structure is affected: "They have cast down our dwellings."

3 Pace von Lengerke, 380; Kliefoth, 255-256; Keil, 298; Marti, Daniel, 58; Barnes 2:111; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 176; Miller, Daniel, 227.
following list presents a taxonomy of clause types of the 125 בֵּית clauses:¹

1. **Verb + subject + direct object**
   2 Kgs 7:15; Jer 7:29; 9:18; Ezek 20:7, 8; Joel 1:7; Pss 71:9; 102:11; Eccl 3:5, 6.²

2. **Verb + subject + direct object + object [dislocative]**
   2.1 **Verb + subject + direct object + prepositional object [dislocative]**³

¹ There are 112 clauses with בֵּית in the Hiphil and 13 clauses with בֵּית in the Hophal. The latter are listed after the Hiphil occurrences or are marked with “(Ho)” after the text reference. Since the בֵּית clauses are passive transformations of a corresponding לַעֲבֹר hif. clause, they are transformed back into active mood and then listed under the appropriate clause type.

² In vs. 6 there is an elliptical direct object which can be filled by anything from the world of experience.

³ The prepositions used are quite manifold: the prepositions בַּע (Exod 32:19; Judg 15:17; Josh 10:11; 2 Kgs 17:20; Isa 14:19; Jer 22:19; Ezek 18:31; Pss 2:3; 51:11; Job 29:17; Lam 2:1; 2 Chr 25:12) and בַּע (Deut 9:17; 2 Kgs 13:23; 24:20; 2 Chr 7:20; Jer 7:15 [2x]; 52:3) to designate the starting-point, and the prepositions בַּע, הָא, אֶל, אֵל, בִּקְרֵא, וּבִנְוֹ, and מַי to designate the goal of the action expressed by בֵּית.

⁴ The direct object is omitted by ellipses and needs to be filled in by בֵּית “wood” which occurs in the previous clause.

⁵ In this law the direct object is not stated so that it can refer to anything thrown.

⁶ Here, the preposition בֵּית occurs but the accompanying noun to complete the prepositional object is missing.

⁷ The direct object needs to be supplied by the world of experience. When the east wind hurl or throws against a person—an expression referring to the power of the wind—it is clearly understood that the person feels the air pressed against face and body.
The clause analysis results in the following observations. The verb יָלָל occurs always in the H-stem (112 times in the Hiphil, 13 times in the Hophal). Semantically, it expresses an action in which an agent usually in a vigorous manner causes an object to move from one place to another. Its basic meaning is expressed in the translation “to throw.” The object in a יָלָל clause is most often concrete, either animate or inanimate, but this distinction does not affect the meaning of יָלָל. In a few cases the object is abstract and then the verb יָלָל denotes a metaphorical throwing away which results in an elimination or obliteration of the object: sins (Isa 38:17; Ezek 18:31; Mic 7:19), “law” (Neh 9:26). The clause with יָלָל generally takes a prepositional object that has the semantic function [dislocative] to indicate the goal or locality to which the direct object is

1The prepositional object “to the heat of the day and to the frost of the night” is a description for the open area without protection of a roof or in this case of a burial tomb.

2The object can be supplied by context or world of experience.

3The meteorological theme in vss. 16-18 suggests that the ice thrown is hail which God throws down from heaven to earth.

4The meaning of יָלָל in Job 18:7 is throwing down as the context in vss. 7-10 suggests.

5ינִל hif. clauses with animate objects are Gen 21:15; 37:20, 22; Deut 29:27; 1 Kgs 14:9; Isa 38:17; Jer 38:6,9; Ezek 23:35; Ps 50:17; Neh 9:26; and יָלָל hof. clauses with animate subjects, which are transformed into objects in the corresponding active clause, are Isa 14:19; Jer 22:28; Ps 22:11; Ezek 16:15.
being moved (semantic function [directive]) or, not so frequently, the starting-point from
where the direct object is moved (semantic function [separative]). Sometimes such a
dislocative object needs to be filled in by the context or by the world of experience. In
cases where the clause has no dislocative object—though this distinction could be
disputed as this clause type comes very close to the clause type in which the dislocative
object is filled in by the world of experience—the verb appears to take the absolute
meaning of throwing away, overthrowing or even eliminating.¹

In the case of Dan 8:11c, two features of the clause need consideration: (1) the
lack of an explicit prepositional object with dislocative function, and (2) the concrete or
abstract nature of יָהֹלֵל and its effect on the meaning of the clause.

The first feature, the apparent lack of an object with dislocative function, leads to
the question to which type of clauses Dan 8:11c belongs. Does it belong to the clause
type V+S+O in which יָהֹלֵל carries the meaning of overthrowing/eliminating (#1 in the
table), or does it belong to the clause type V+S+O+O[dislocative] in which יָהֹלֵל carries
the meaning of moving something through space (#2 in the table)? The context suggests
the latter to be the case. The previous clauses describe actions that are taken out on a
vertical axis: "to grow up to the extent" (vss. 10a, 11a), "to cause to fall to earth" (vs.
10b), to lift up (vs. 11b). The meaning of throwing down in vs. 11c fits into this vertical
pattern. Furthermore, the up-down movement in vs. 10 (up in vs. 10a, down in vs. 10b) is
then paralleled by a similar up-down movement in vs. 11 (up in vs. 11a, up and away in

¹For a convenient collection of the different contexts in which יָהֹלֵל is used see W. Thiel,
" יָהֹלֵל "ThWAT, 8:84-93; cf. F. Stolz, " יָהֹל "TLOT, 3:1335-1337.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
vs. 11b, down in vs. 11c), and also corresponds with the down movement in vs. 12b.

More importantly, the meaning of the clause in Dan 8:11c depends on whether מָרות מָעָשֶׁה designates the literal or the metaphorical place or foundations of the sanctuary. On the one hand, vs. 11c could refer to the throwing down of the site or place of the sanctuary or to the throwing down of the structural fundament of the sanctuary. To understand it this way would mean that the sanctuary as a building is affected by the little horn. However, scholars who take the foundation of the sanctuary as referring to the literal temple explain that the verbal notion is not one of overthrowing or destroying but rather of rejecting or desecrating. On the other hand, vs. 11c could refer to the throwing down of the concept or principles upon which the sanctuary is based. This activity does not necessarily affect the architecture of the sanctuary but attacks the raison d’être of the sanctuary and thus of the whole sanctuary system.

The semantic features of vs. 11c as well as contextual considerations appear to provide enough reasons to argue for a metaphorical understanding of מָרות מָעָשֶׁה. First, a literal, concrete understanding of the site/foundations of the sanctuary is difficult to maintain considering the verb used: It does not seem possible to thrown down the site of the sanctuary, and it is rather unlikely to throw down the foundations of a building/structure. Clinging to a literal understanding of מָרות מָעָשֶׁה would force one to regard the construct relation as a synecdoche for the sanctuary.

---

1For example, it is argued that מָרות מָעָשֶׁה includes the notion of “contemptuous treatment” (Hävernick, 276; von Lengerke, 380; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; who refer to Ezek 19:12; Isa 14:19) or “insulting treatment” (Leupold, 348), as meaning to be “robbed of its usefulness” (Ehrlich, 146), and that it should be rendered with “was rejected” (Montgomery, 336; Delcor, 175; who refer to Neh 9:26), “was degraded” (Bentzen, 56), “was desecrated” (Young, Daniel, 172; Miller, Daniel, 227).
Second, the text in Dan 8:7-12 uses the root שָׁלַל three times. In vs. 7 describes how the male goat threw the ram down to the ground and then trampled on it. Immediately following, in vs. 12b, שָׁלַל refers to the throwing down of truth to the earth. This represents the degrading of an abstract principle, that is, truth. Verse 11c would therefore describe a similar activity in relation to principles involved in the sanctuary.

Third, the previous clauses in vss. 10 and 11 describe in a metaphorical or symbolic way the activities of the little horn, which all take place in a vertical dimension. It would be consistent to understand vs. 11c accordingly, namely that the metaphorical foundations of the sanctuary are thrown down by the horn.

To conclude the analysis of Dan 8:11c, the clause describes an action by which the metaphorical foundations of the sanctuary of the prince of the host, consisting of the principles upon which the sanctuary and the cultic system are based, are thrown down by the horn. This is presumably accomplished in a direction from heaven to earth.

Clause 12a

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

12a שָׁלַל [כָּלָה] [כָּלָה] [כָּלָה] waw+noun/sgc/ Niphal-IPF/3sgf prep art+adv prep+noun/sgm/
waw+noun/sgc/ Niphal-IPF/3sgf PWG(prep ArtWG(art+adv)) PWG(prep+noun/sgm/)
1.Sy +P.Sy +4.Sy +C.Sy subject +predicate +prepositional object +prepositional phrase indicating modalization

Clause-type: x-yiqtol.
This clause is syntactically and semantically the most intricate in Dan 8:9-14, and, according to some exegetes, probably in the whole book of Daniel. In order to understand the syntax and the meaning of vs. 12a each phrase is first discussed separately, then the results of each investigation are combined and again critically evaluated in a detailed analysis of the clause as a whole. The analysis of the individual phrases and clause constituents considers mainly syntactic and semantic functions. It is especially important to identify the correct syntactic place and function of אֱֶלָה, the function of the preposition לָ in שֶׁחָיָה and the preposition כֶּ in שֶׁכֶּ, for which several different translations have been given. In the clause analysis, the syntactic and semantic functions of the constituents as well as the semantic meaning of the clause and the semantic relations to the immediate context are also taken into account.¹

The verb נִטְנָה

The Niphal form of the verb נִיטְנָה occurs eighty-three times in the Hebrew Bible (inclusive Dan 8:12a). It has a passive sense² and its basic translation equivalent is "to be

¹The following syntactic discussion on vs. 12a supersedes my earlier, preliminary linguistic analysis of Dan 8:12a in Pröbstle, “Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12,” 86-93. Though the present discussion follows to some extent this earlier presentation, it is more comprehensive and adds substantially to it.

²Two other voices of the verb have been suggested: a reflexive and an active meaning. The reflexive sense of the Niphal of נִיטְנָה (“and it set itself . . .”) can only be proposed in conjunction with the excision of נִטְנָה (Redditt, 139) or with the adjoining of נִטְנָה to vs. 11c (Gese, 409). In addition, the Niphal of נִיטְנָה (83 times) is found nowhere else in a reflexive sense. Adjoining נִטְנָה to vs. 11c, L. Dequeker reads the verb in vs. 12a as active without discussing any discussion of his emendation (“The ‘Saints of the Most High’ in Qumran and Daniel,” in Syntax and Meaning: Studies in Hebrew Syntax and Biblical Exegesis, ed. A. S. van der Worde, OtSt, no. 18 [Leiden: Brill, 1973], 176). Goldstein suggests that the verb should be vocalized as active נִטָנָה with unassimilated nun so that the subject could be the horn (J Maccabees, 145-146 n. 251). However, the non-assimilation of nun in the imperfect of נִיטָנָה, which is apparently an Aramaism (see נִיטָנָה in Dan 2:16; cf. Ezra 4:13; 7:20), does
given" or "to be placed." Interestingly though, when the verb נnett occurs in combination with the preposition לשם, it is often used in a similar sense as the verb בשם "to set."  

Besides the translation "a host was given (over)," the phrase לשםי |n3n in 8:12a could therefore very well have the meaning expressed by the translation "a host/army is set against." The best translation of the phrase will be discussed later.

The tense of the verbs in vs. 12 has been described as "puzzling." 헹 is a yiqtol or imperfect form. The sudden shift from wayyiqtol and perfect forms (past tense) in vss. 9-11 to the yiqtol/imperfect |n3n in vs. 12a and the following w'yiqtol |n3n calls for explanation. Several suggestions can be distinguished, apart from proposing textual emendation of the verbs to past tense forms (wayyiqtol or simple perfect). First, the yiqtol forms in vs. 12a and 12b are regarded as referring to past tense. Most translations and commentaries opt for such an interpretation, probably in order to continue the past

---

1P. A. Siebesma, The Function of the Niph'al in Biblical Hebrew: In Relationship to Other Passive-Reflexive Verbal Stems and to the Pu'al and Hoph'al in Particular, SSN, no. 28 (Assen: Van Gorcum, 1991), 63, 84.

2The phrase לשם |n3n occurs in close, sometimes even in paradigmatic relation with לשם |n3n in Gen 41:42; Exod 29:6; 40:20; Lev 2:15; 5:11; Num 16:18; Deut 17:15; 1 Kgs 18:23; 2 Kgs 18:14; Ezek 4:2.

3See DCH, 5:813 ("be placed, set").

4Goldingay, Daniel, 197-198.

5For example, both imperfect forms in 12a and 12b are emended to wayyiqtol forms (Marti, Daniel, 59; Charles, 208; Bentzen, 56) or in the case of |n3n to the Niphal perfect |n3n (Kamphausen, 33; Prince, "On Daniel viii. 11, 12," 204; Obbink, 65, 110; Ploeger, Daniel, 122) or to the Qal perfect |n3n (C. G. Ozanne, "Three Textual Problems in Daniel," JTS 16 (1965): 446).
tense of vs. 11. To be sure, the option exists to explain a yiqtol form in past context, but since such a form is usually associated with customary or incipient activity, it is difficult to interpret יִיהֶלָּה and the activity expressed in vs. 12a along such lines. The recent suggestion by Jan Joosten, that Dan 8:12a should be explained as prospective yiqtol form, deserves special mention. He argues that the use of yiqtol in past tense contexts “is best described in terms of modality: yiqtol presents an action as not (yet) real.” This means that the action is “neither ongoing nor yet performed.” He then classifies different uses of yiqtol referring to the past: prospective (21 cases), prospective in an object clause (21 cases), modal (20 cases), and iterative (no inventory taken). A prospective yiqtol functions as a future-in-the-past, “indicating action as future from the point of view of the past time frame defined or implied in the context.” He regards the use of the yiqtol form in Dan 8:12 as one of several difficult cases, but he is certain that one could ascribe it to a

1See, e.g., Hitzig, 132 (with reference to Dan 7:14-16 and 8:5); Driver, Daniel, 117; Lacocque, Daniel, 158; Collins, Daniel (1993), 334.

2On the uses of yiqtol in reference to the past see, e.g., S. R. Driver, Treatise, 31-36 (§§27, 30, 31); GKC, 314-315 (§107b-e); Waltke and O’Connor, 502-504 (§31.2); Joüon and Muraoka, 367-370 (§113e-k).


4Ibid., 15. Jan Joosten builds upon his previous thesis that the main function of w’qatal is the expression of modality and that yiqtol, which mechanically replaces w’qatal whenever the verb cannot take the clause-initial position, would express the same main function (“Biblical Hebrew w’qatal and Syriac hwā qātel Expressing Repetition in the Past,” ZAH 5 [1992]: 1-14, esp. 12-13).


6Ibid., 17.
prospective use nonetheless. The question, however, is whether the yiqtol form really does occur in a past tense context. On the one hand, if vs. 12 is indeed still part of the description of the vision Daniel had seen, Joosten’s suggestion is a good option. On the other hand, if vs. 12 is not narrative but discourse, a future tense context is likely, especially in view of the following w’yiqtol form (vs. 12b).

There are also other suggestions for a past tense use of the yiqtol forms in vs. 12. The explanation that “the use of the past tense [in translation] is legitimate, since in an apocalyptic vision the events are at the same time past (in the vision) and future (in reality)" is unsatisfactory. The problem is that, based on such a view, one could use imperfect forms and perfect forms interchangeably in a vision report, which would make it difficult for an interpreter to use verbal syntax as an argument at all. Another option proposed is that the tense in vs. 12 should be regarded as historical present (praesens historicum) in order to describe the last part of the vision “with gripping concreteness.” This suggestion still places vs. 12 in a past tense context, but supposes a different narrative character to vs. 12, attributing a specific rhetorical effect to the verbal forms used in it. Such an interpretation is difficult to either prove or disprove, and one wonders if this is truly the best explanation available.

1Ibid., 24.

2Péter-Contesse and Ellington, 213.

3So König, 3:61 (§159). Hartman and Di Lella explain the imperfect forms in vss. 12a and 12b as being translated from an Aramaic original; and “in Aramaic, the yiqtol forms are sometimes used after q’tal forms with the force of historical presents or to express contemporaneity (cf. 4:2, 31, 33; 7:16, 28)” (221-222). For such a use see also H. B. Rosén, “On the Use of the Tenses in the Aramaic of Daniel,” JSS 6 (1961): 183.
Yet another solution is to see an essential difference in description between vs. 11 and vs. 12. Verse 11 is still the report of the vision, while vs. 12 refers to a prophetic description. The *yiqtol* forms in vs. 12 are then taken either in a modal sense1 (and Joosten’s prospective *yiqtol* fits into this category, too) or in present or future tense to express reality instead of the imagery of the vision.2 The future tense of vs. 12 is “proper to an interpretative vision.”3 This type of solution is closest to the MT and its vocalization, and attributes a syntactic function customary to the *yiqtol* form. The consistent use of *yiqtol* forms in the visions and auditions of Daniel lends support that these forms set 8:12 apart from the previous verses.4 Thus, Stahl’s assessment of vs. 12b is correct. If the Masoretic vocalization is accepted, “a certain special position of this statement could be suspected.”5 However, not only does vs. 12b have a surprising tense, but so do all clauses of vs. 12.

---

1The jussive imperfects נָדְעַ and נָדַע (as in Dan 11:4, 10, 16, 17, 18, 19, 25, 28, 30; cf. in BA Dan 7:17) express modification (should, may, etc.), and, in terms of content, the divine pre-determination or orders. They are not identical with the future (Kranichfeld, 294; followed by Keil, 301; Tiefenthal, 269). Schindele understands the text as projected state of affairs (*projektiertter Sachverhalt*)—translating the verbal forms in modal sense, “should be mobilized . . . should cast down”—which are then reported to be carried out in vss. 12c and 12d (“Textkonstituierung,” 9, 13).

2Von Lengerke translates the *yiqtol* forms in Dan 8:12 in present tense (378-379) and comments that until vs. 12 events have been described as seen in vision, but in vs. 12 the events are described as those which will happen (380). He is followed by Zöckler, for whom the text in vs. 12 is “predicted . . . permitted by God” (176). König mentions the possibility that the *yiqtol* forms in Dan 8:12 may be a real present tense insofar as the vision passes automatically into the description of the contemporary realization (3:61 [§159]). For a translation in future tense see, e.g., Behrmann, 54; Aalders, *Daniël* (1962), 177; Bauer, *Daniel*, 170; Lucas, *Daniel*, 206.

3Goldingay, *Daniel*, 211.

4For a brief investigation of the use of *yiqtol* forms in the book of Daniel see the interclausal analysis below.

5Stahl, *Weltengagement*, 174, who himself regards vs. 12b to be originally narrative.
In sum, the *yiqtol* forms in vs. 12a and 12b—and by extension the verbal forms in vs. 12c and 12d should be interpreted as *wqaṭal* forms—indicate that vs. 12 no longer belongs to the vision report proper that ends in vs. 11. It appears to me that in the light of the use of *yiqtol* forms elsewhere in Daniel’s visions in discourse-type texts, the most likely form for this verse is direct speech. The exploration of this claim, including the question of who is speaking, will be pursued later (see the analysis of vs. 13a below).

Both the syntactic place and the meaning of *מִלְחָה* have received a host of explanations.\(^1\) They can be grouped into five basic, sometimes overlapping kinds of interpretation:\(^2\)

1. *Excision of מִלְחָה*. The missing subject of vs. 12a is supplied by either emending מִלְחָה, so it can function as the subject,\(^3\) or by emending the verb to an active form,

\(^1\) Collins points to the fact that “both the meaning and the placement of the word for host, מִלְחָה, have baffled commentators and given rise to a multitude of proposed solutions, none of which has commanded a consensus” (*Daniel* [1993], 334). He distinguishes four kinds of interpretation: (1) excision of “host” as a gloss which was imported from vs. 13; (2) textual emendation of מִלְחָה; (3) reinterpretation of “host” in a different sense from vss. 10 and 11; and (4) the interpretation “a host was given over” (334-335).

\(^2\) After reviewing different interpretations, some believe that there is no satisfactory solution available (Bevan, 132-133; Montgomery, 336-337).

\(^3\) Bertholdt excises מִלְחָה and reads מִלְחָהוֹת לָעַל הַנַּחַמִי וְלִמְדַּקְתָּהוֹת “and the transgression (which desolates) will be erected instead of the daily burnt offering” with reference to vs. 13 (522). Von Gall deletes מִלְחָה and, following OG and Theodotion, emends the rest to מִלְחָהוֹת לָעַל הַנַּחַמִי וְלִמְדַּקְתָּהוֹת “and it was placed the transgression on the daily sacrifice” (48, 51; followed by Linder, 337). Marti (*Daniel*, 59) and Bentzen (56) follow von Gall, only that they read מִלְחָה for von Gall’s מִלְחָה. Thomson also excises מִלְחָה, omits the preposition of מִלְחָה: “and transgression was upon the sacrifice” (243).
thereby making the horn the subject of vs. 12a.\footnote{Moore regards אֲנִיָּה as gloss and reads [אֲנִיָּה] (for [אֲנִיָּה]) with the horn as implied subject: “and it [the horn] put on the daily sacrifice the iniquity” (196). Niditch excises אֲנִיָּה and suggests reading vs. 12a as [אֲנִיָּה], and it (the horn) set sin upon the continual offering” (220; following Ginsberg and Hartman). Redditt excises רַעַם and reads the verb as reflexive: “And [] it set itself above the daily sacrifice in rebellion” (139). Riessler regards אֲנִיָּה as a later insertion and reads the passive verb as impersonal active: “and one will take action against the daily sacrifice in wantonness” (Daniel [1902], 72). Here, too, the implied agent is the horn.}

2. Textual emendation of אֲנִיָּה. It has been suggested to either emend אֲנִיָּה within vs. 12a,\footnote{Graetz suggests emending אֲנִיָּה to באֲנִיָּה on the basis of the Greek versions’ rendering of the end of vs. 11 with καὶ τὸ ἐπιτραπέζιον ἐπιτραπεζιαῖ (equivalent to דָּשָׁנָה). Verse 12a then reads באֲנִיָּה “and the desecration (devastation) will be given upon the daily sacrifice” (386-387). Jahn believes that באֲנִיָּה “and excrement” was original, which then would have been changed “for natural reasons” (79). On the basis of Elias Bickermann’s studies on litholatry, and in particular homolatry (The God of the Maccabees: Studies on the Meaning and Origin of the Maccabean Revolt, trans. H. R. Moberg, SJLA, no. 32 [Leiden: Brill, 1979], 69-71), Plöger suggests the possibility that באֲנִיָּה originally read באֲנִיָּה “pillar,” though he does not introduce this option into his translation (Daniel, 126).} to emend אֲנִיָּה and divide vs. 12a into two clauses,\footnote{Ozanne suggests to read פְּלָדָה רַעַם “and hosts he delivered up” with redivision of the consonantal text and change of vocalization. The now missing verb in vs. 12a is either elliptical and must be supplied by vss. 10a and 11a (“it magnified itself”), or it has fallen out by haplography and should have read פְּלָדָה “it rose up” (“Three Textual Problems,” 446; cf. Baldwin, 158.).} or to adjoin אֲנִיָּה in emended form to vs. 11c (see interpretation 4).

3. Emendation of the verb to a masculine passive perfect נִשְׂדָה with or without emendation of אֲנִיָּה.\footnote{Kamphausen suggests to emend the beginning of vs. 12a to פְּלָדָה רַעַם “and his host was given over” with אֲנִיָּה (referring to God’s army) (33). Prince emends to פְּלָדָה רַעַם “and its (the horn’s) host was appointed” by changing פ to an original ח which formed the suffix of אֲנִיָּה and redividing the words (“On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; cf. Daniel, 242). Obbink suggests to read פְּלָדָה אֲנִיָּה with אֲנִיָּה in the sense of “host” (= Israel) (65, 110), whereas Plöger reads פְּלָדָה אֲנִיָּה and understands אֲנִיָּה as trouble or tribulation: “and tribulation was laid” (Daniel, 122).}

4. Adjoining of אֲנִיָּה to vs. 11c, either in original or in emended form.\footnote{Nelis takes אֲנִיָּה with vs. 11c, where he excised פְּלָדָה in analogy to vs. 13c and translates “to throw down sanctuary and host” (96). Goldingay links אֲנִיָּה with the end of vs. 11 and understands it...}
5. Taking the MT as is, with קֹצָע belonging to vs. 12a. In this case, קֹצָע is understood either in the same or a different sense from its use in vss. 10 and 11.1

This brief overview also shows that one emendation may make another necessary.

In order to obtain another grammatical subject for an excised, emended or dislocated קֹצָע, the phrase נִשְׁבַּע usually needs to be emended.2

---

1Since these options are discussed in detail below under the section on the meaning of קֹצָע in vs. 12a, references are given there at the appropriate places.

2Instead of נִשְׁבַּע it is suggested to read נִשְׁבַּע (Bertholdt, 522; Moore, 197; Marti, Daniel, 59; Charles, 208; Benzten, 56; Saydon, 636; Nelis, 96; Stahl, Weltengagement, 174), נִשְׁבַּע (von Gall, 48, 51; Linder, 337), נִשְׁבַּע (Bludau, 66; Ginsberg, Studies in Daniel, 49; Thomson, 243; Niditch, 220), or either נִשְׁבַּע or נִשְׁבַּע (Hartman and Di Lella, 222; cf. Di Lella, Daniel, 155).
In the face of this "multitude of proposed solutions" the following analysis first determines the syntactic place and function of נַחַל, while making sure that the text at hand is fully taken into account, and then focuses on the lexical meaning and the referential identity of נַחֲל by considering its lack of a definite article, its feminine gender (as indicated by the feminine verb form), and its relation to its other occurrences in the immediate context.

**Syntactic place and function of נַחֲל.** Grammatically, there are only two possibilities for the syntactic place and function of נַחֲל without altering the text. Either נַחֲל is the first element of the clause in vs. 12a and נַחֲל is the grammatical subject of the verb נִתָּן (option #1 below), or נַחֲל belongs to vs. 11c—being part of the grammatical subject in that clause together with דָּוד הַמֶּלֶךְ—and נִתָּן starts the new clause in vs. 12a.

---

1The suggestion to interpret נַחֲל as the direct object of the verb נִתָּן, to take the horn as subject of נִתָּן, and to translate vs. 12a with "It [the little horn] was given a host over..." (so suggested by Shea, "Spatial Dimensions," 516; possible for Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" [1986], 417-418) has to be linguistically abandoned since it overlooks basic active-passive transformation rules. Because the Niphal stem of the verbal root נִתָּן has passive meaning, the clause in vs. 12a is passive. The passive sentence is a transformation or transposition of the corresponding active sentence. In general, in transformations from active to passive the direct object of the active sentence becomes the subject in the passive sentence, the prepositional phrases are retained, and the subject of the active sentence is dropped in the passive sentence or becomes the so-called logical subject of a passive verb which in Biblical Hebrew is expressed by means of a prepositional word group with the preposition בו, בו, or ב. It is recognizable that, due to the active-passive transformation of the direct object into the subject, a passive sentence has no direct object. Hence, נַחֲל cannot function as direct object in Dan 8:12a. A brief look at the 81 BH clauses in which נִתָּן occurs in the Niphal (נִתָּן occurs 83 times in the Niphal, twice in the construction נִתָּן נִתָּן) confirms this general linguistic rule: No direct object appears in any of these clauses.

2The majority of scholars suggest that נַחֲל is the grammatical subject in vs. 12a (e.g., Montgomery, 336; Lacocque, 163; Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" [1986], 416-417; Collins, Daniel [1993], 335).
12a (option #2 below). The first option retains the traditional Masoretic verse and sentence demarcation, whereas the latter ignores this division.

1. אֱלֹהִים as grammatical subject in vs. 12a and its gender. The interpretation of אֱלֹהִים as grammatical subject of קְרָא (#1) is the more likely explanation. Whenever a word occurs in a קְרָא-N clause (נְחַל in the Niphal) without a preceding preposition (52 times), it functions as the subject. An indefinite subject (a subject without article or pronominal suffix and no proper name) in sentence-initial position, as in Dan 8:12a, is found eight more times in קְרָא-N clauses. Hence, the indefinite אֱלֹּהִים in sentence-initial position in Dan 8:12a is not an unusual phenomenon in the syntax of קְרָא-N clauses.

The objection usually raised to this interpretation is the alleged gender incongruence between subject and verb. The noun אֱלֹּהִים in the singular is usually

\[1\text{Goldingay, } \textit{Daniel}, 195, 197; \text{Gese}, 409.\]

The word may be a nominal form with or without the article, a pronoun, or a text deictic (ךָע): Gen 38:14; Exod 5:16, 18; Lev 10:14; 19:20; 24:20; Num 26:62; 1 Sam 18:19; 2 Kgs 19:10; 22:7; 25:30; Isa 9:5; 29:12; 33:16; 35:2; 36:15; 37:10; 51:12; Jer 13:20; 32:24, 25; 38:3, 18; 51:55; 52:34; Ezek 11:15; 16:34; 31:14; 32:20, 23, 25; 33:24; Job 9:24; 15:19; Ecc 10:6; Esth 2:13; 3:14, 15; 5:6; 6:8; 7:2, 3; 8:13, 14; 9:12, 14; Dan 8:12a; 11:11, 16; Neh 13:10; 1 Chr 5:1, 20. קְרָא-N clauses with elliptical subject or with relative pronoun as subject are not considered in this reference list.

2


3 Regarding the gender of אֱלֹּהִים, Moore remarks: “Its gender forbids us to take it as the subject of the verb; yet no other construction is possible” (195); and Montgomery assumes that “gender agreement between subj. and vb. is most improbable” (336).
regarded as masculine, but the verb נָשָׁה is feminine in gender. Two different observations may explain this construction, whereas an interpretation using a construction *ad sensum* is neither necessary nor convincing.

First, while a feminine verbal form is indeed highly unusual with נָשָׁה, there is another occurrence in Isa 40:2. Dan 8:12a may therefore well be a second example for the use of נָשָׁה with a feminine gender. To be sure, whether the gender of נָשָׁה in the

The plural formation of נָשָׁה is almost always the feminine נְשָׁה. The feminine plural נְשָׁה occurs 311 times in the Hebrew Bible of which it is used 285 times as divine epithet, whereas the masculine plural form of נָשָׁה is only used twice (Pss 103:21; 148:2 qere). The noun נָשָׁה then belongs to that group of nouns which have in the singular a zero-ending and in the plural the ending -ot. Of course, the feminine plural ending does not indicate a feminine gender of the singular נָשָׁה, but could have been used to indicate a *Gruppenplural*, a plural which is thought to consist of individual entities (see Michel, *Grundlegung*, 40, 46).

It has been suggested to interpret the feminine gender of נָשָׁה as *ad sensum*, that is, the feminine should be influenced by the fact that נָשָׁה would designate the people of God. In a similar way several, usually masculine, nouns which could stand for the people seem to be feminine in some places, such as מָשָׁה "people" (Exod 5:16; Judg 18:7; Jer 8:5), זָרָה "multitude" (Job 31:34), זָרָה "seed" (Deut 31:21). So Keil, 299; Tiefenthal, 269; cf. Ewald, *Lehrbuch*, 453 (§174b) who, however, does not list נָשָׁה. Several difficulties arise with such an explanation. In contrast to the examples given, נָשָׁה is always masculine, with only one exception (Isa 40:2c). A construction *ad sensum* is thus based on the premises that one would understand נָשָׁה as referring to the people of God and that the people are considered to be feminine, although usually they are masculine (e.g., מָשָׁה). These assumptions are hard to prove. One needs to be aware that a reading *ad sensum* should only be regarded as a possible option if the referent of the expression is clearly identifiable and if there are no syntactic explanations for the unusual gender available. In the case of Dan 8:12a it is better to refrain from enlisting the argument *ad sensum* for there seem to be good syntactic and literary explanations for the feminine gender of נָשָׁה.

In commenting on Dan 8:12a some refer to Isa 40:2 as a precedent for the feminine gender of נָשָׁה: Berthold, 521; van Lengerke, 381; Maurer, 144; Hitzig, 133; Rohling, Daniel, 239; Meinhold, "Daniel," 309; Terry, 60; Behrmann, 54; Tiefenthal, 269; Driver, Daniel, 117; Montgomery, 340; Delcor, 174; Hasselberger, 9 n. 28; Lacocque, *The Book of Daniel*, 159; Goldingay, Daniel, 197; Collins, Daniel (1993), 335; Lucas, Daniel, 206. Interestingly, all scholars, except for Young, who argue for a feminine gender of נָשָׁה in Isa 40:2 refer to the apparent feminine gender of נָשָׁה in Dan 8:12a. See August Dillmann, *Der Prophet Jesaia*, 5th ed., Kurzgefasstes exegetisches Handbuch zum Alten Testament, no. 5 (Leipzig: Hirzel, 1890), 366; Bernhard Duhm, *Das Buch Jesaia: übersetzt und erklärt*, 4th ed. Göttinger Handkommentar zum Alten Testament, section 3, vol. 1 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1922), 288; Edward J. Young, *The Book of Isaiah: The English Text, with Introduction, Exposition, and Notes; Volume III: Chapters 40 through 66* (Grand Rapids:
The point in question is the phrase נַּחֲלֶת נַחֲלֶת and the relation of the two words to each other. If נַּחֲלֶת functions as subject, it is regarded as feminine (נַּחֲלֶת would then be intransitive); if נַּחֲלֶת functions as object, it can be interpreted as masculine (נַּחֲלֶת would then be transitive). Five different scholarly proposals on the syntax of Isa 40:2c have been suggested (see Jean M. Vincent, *Studien zur literarischen Eigenart und zur geistigen Heimat von Jesaja, Kap. 40-55*, BBET, no. 5 [Frankfurt/Main: Lang, 1977], 218 n. 78). First, a number of scholars argue for a feminine gender of נַּחֲלֶת in Isa 40:2 (most commentators, as is obvious from their translation and comments, assume that נַּחֲלֶת is the subject of Isa 40:2 without mentioning its gender). Second, other scholars argue that in Isa 40:2 נַּחֲלֶת is transitive (cf., e.g., Isa 6:1) and נַּחֲלֶת should be regarded as object having its usual masculine gender. See Karl Albrecht, “Das Geschlecht der hebräischen Hauptwörter,” *ZAW* 15 (1895): 319; Paul Volz, *Jesaja II: übersetzt und erklärt*, KAT, vol. 9 (Leipzig: Scholl, 1932), 1; Lars G. Rignell, *A Study of Isaiah Ch. 40-55* (Lund: Gleerup, 1956), 10; Christopher R. North, *The Second Isaiah: Introduction, Translation and Commentary to Chapters XL–LV* (Oxford: Clarendon, 1964), 70; cf. also Hans Joachim Stoebbe, “Überlegungen zu Jesaja 40, 1-11: Zugleich der Versuch eines Beitrages zur Gottesknechtfrage,” *TZ* 40 (1984): 105; David Noel Freedman, “The Structure of Isaiah 40:1-11,” in *Perspectives on Language and Text: Essays and Poems in Honor of Francis I. Andersen’s Sixtieth Birthday July 28, 1985*, ed. E. W. Conrad and E. G. Newing (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1987), 175-177. Third, in order to avoid a feminine gender of נַּחֲלֶת, some suggest to point נַּחֲלֶת נַּחֲלֶת “she has fulfilled (her warfare)” with a Piel form of נַּחֲלֶת and with נַּחֲלֶת as object (Bevan, 133 n. 1 [notes that the Masoretes understood נַּחֲלֶת נַּחֲלֶת as “she is filled with her host”]; Karl Marti, *Das Buch Jesaja*, KHC, vol. 10 [Tübingen: Mohr, 1900], 270; W. Thomas in *BHS*). Such a vocalization is mentioned as a possibility by König, 3:168 ($249m$) and Klaus Baltzer, *Deutero-Isaiah*, trans. M. Kohl, Hermeneia (Minneapolis: Fortress, 2001), 49, 51. Fourth, the versions read slightly different from the MT. 1Qlsa reads נַּחֲלֶת (preferred by Joseph Blenkinsopp, *Isaiah 40-55*, AB, vol. 19 [New York: Doubleday, 2000], 177, 178), apparently to create gender concord with the usually masculine נַּחֲלֶת; LXX and Vulgate render the verb as passive (for a comprehensive survey of versions and codices of Isa 40:1-2 see Rosario Pius Merendino, “Is 40,1-2: Un’analisi del materiale documentario,” *RivB* 37 [1989]: 1-64). It is evident that all versions take נַּחֲלֶת as subject. Finally, Mitchell Dahood suggests to understand נַּחֲלֶת as archaic Canaanite third singular masculine qatala, “employed here for the sake of symmetry and assonance with נַּחֲלֶת in the second colon” (*Ugaritic-Hebrew Philology: Marginal Notes on Recent Publications*, BibOr, no. 17 [Rome: Pontifical Biblical...
40:2c, רֶפֶס הַשְׁלֵיהַ "her compulsory service" should, however, be understood as subject of the feminine verb לְפַלְטָה and, hence, as a feminine noun. This is evident from the syntactic and semantic parallelism in Isa 40:2c-d between "her warfare has been ended" (2c) and "her iniquity has been removed" (2d) in which both לְפַלְטָה and הֵרַע function as subject of their respective clause (note that vss. 2a and 2b are also parallel lines). Both clauses are introduced by the particle יָרָא and consist of a perfect verb in the singular followed by a singular noun with the pronominal suffix /3sgm/ referring to the city Jerusalem; both lines exhibiting assonance of the ending sound -ah: 

Isa 40:2c יָרָא לְפַלְטָה הַשְׁלֵיהַ "that her warfare has been ended"

Isa 40:2d יָרָא הֵרַע הַשְׁלֵיהַ "that her iniquity has been removed"

Since in 2d הֵרַע cannot possibly be the object of the Niphal לְפַלְטָה, one should not destroy the syntactic-semantic parallelism between 2c and 2d by arguing that in 2c לְפַלְטָה is the object and Jerusalem is the subject. This poetic device in Isa 40:2c-d strongly

\[\text{Institute, 1965], 20}.\]

\[\text{For the meaning of לְפַלְטָה in the sense of military service with the extension "compulsory labor/service" see also Job 7:1; 10:17; 14:14.}\]

discourages the use of נֵכְבִּים as a masculine object. Thus, though as an exception, נֵכְבִּים can be attributed a feminine gender.

Interestingly, when comparing the different uses of נֵכְבִּים in Dan 8:10-13, the feminine gender of נֵכְבִּים in vs. 12a does not create any inconsistencies since its gender is syntactically not further defined in this passage. The argument that the masculine plural pronominal suffix in נֵכְבִּים (vs. 10c) signifies that the author would regard the referent נֵכְבִּים as masculine ignores the fact that the suffix refers back to both נֵכְבִּים and נֵכְבָּה, with נֵכְבָּה determining the masculine gender of the suffix. Also, the deverbal noun נֵכְבָּה, which in 8:13c stands in relationship with נֵכְבִּים, does not indicate the gender of נֵכְבִּים since it appears to be invariable in form, regardless of whether it refers to a feminine (Mic 7:10), masculine (Isa 5:5; 7:25; 10:6; Ezek 34:19) or plural noun (Isa 28:18). Thus, a syntactic argument concerning the semantic meaning of נֵכְבִּים in Dan 8:12a that is solely based on its feminine gender, usually proposing that נֵכְבִּים in vs. 12a is different from נֵכְבִּים in vss. 10-11 because of its feminine gender, is not valid. As will be discussed later, however, the unusual gender serves to attract attention to נֵכְבִּים and its referential identity.

A second observation, which may lead to a different interpretation of the alleged gender incongruence, is that in clauses with the Niphal of נִשָּׁה the gender of the verb and

---

1So argued by Hasslberger, 9 n. 28, and Vincent, Studien, 207; pace Bevan, 133 n. 1.
2At the only other place in Daniel where נֵכְבִּים occurs (10:1), it is marked as masculine.
3See Hasslberger, 9 n. 28, 106.
4Pace Terry, 61.
of its subject does not always agree. An examination of the eighty-two נֶ-N clauses
finds three possible cases of gender incongruence: Lev 19:20;¹ Num 26:62;² and Josh
24:33.³ At first sight, a possible gender incongruence between נֶ and נֶ in Dan
8:12a would not seem exceptional for a נ-נ clause. However, and this is important, the
gender incongruence in these three clauses is of a different category than the one in Dan
8:12a for in the former the Niphal form of the verb נֶ is a perfect /3sgm/ whereas in the
latter it is an imperfect /3sgf/. It is evident that in Lev 19:20, Num 26:62 and Josh 24:33
the default verb form /3sgm/ was used, which happens not infrequently in Biblical
Hebrew,⁴ but it is by far more difficult, if not impossible, to explain the verb form in Dan
8:12a, which is specifically marked as feminine, as an inadvertent lapse of the writer, and
the feminine verb is certainly not the default verb form. Thus, to reason that Dan 8:12a
somehow shows an acceptable gender incongruence is nothing short of a cul-de-sac.

To sum up the discussion on the alleged gender incongruence in נֶ, the
reference to Isa 40:2 and the non-indication of the gender of נֶ in its other occurrences
in Dan 8:10-13 evinces that in Dan 8:12a נֶ could indeed be feminine and that an
argument or emendation based on gender incongruence seems unconvincing. In other

¹The hapax legomenon נֶ “freedom” seems to be a feminine subject, as the ending -ah
usually indicates, but the verb נ is a masculine form.

²The subject נֶ “inheritance” is feminine, but the verb נ is masculine in gender.

³The relative pronoun נ, which is the subject of the masculine verb form נ, refers to
נֶ, a construct of the feminine נֶ “Gibeah.” In Biblical Hebrew, cities are usually feminine in
gender, probably because the headword נ “city” is feminine. See J. C. L. Gibson, Syntax, 16
§17a); and Waltke and O'Connor, 104 (§6.4.1d).

⁴For the verb /3sgm/ with a following singular feminine as subject, see p. 92 n. 1 (above).
words, אַנִּים could be the grammatical subject of נָשְׁר (suggestion #1 above) and without a necessity to link it to vs. 11c. The question still needs to be asked why the verb נָשְׁר is used in the feminine gender whereas the masculine gender would grammatically have fit better to its subject. ¹ The answer to this conundrum cannot be found in a syntactic analysis and must therefore await semantic and literary considerations.

2. אַנִּים as part of vs. 11c. As mentioned above, the second option for the syntactic place of אַנִּים is that it belongs to vs. 11c and נָשְׁר starts the new clause in vs. 12a (suggestion #2 above). Verse 11c would be translated “the foundation of his sanctuary and a host were throw down.” The basic reason for this rearranged allocation of the syntactic place for אַנִּים is to avoid the alleged gender incongruence in vs. 12a, which, as was shown above, does not present a grammatical problem beyond explanation. Another reason advanced for linking אַנִּים with vs. 11c is of a stylistic nature. The question in vs. 13 juxtaposes שָׁלֹשׁ and אַנִּים and if אַנִּים in vs. 12a belongs to vs. 11c instead, a very similar construction would occur here: נָשְׁר מָכֵּא וְנָשְׁר עָשָׂה אַנִּים. Since אַנִּים is indeterminate both times, it could denote a possible link between אַנִּים שָׁלֹשׁ (vs. 13c) and מָכֵּא וְנָשְׁר (vs. 11c). ² However, this stylistic argument appears to ignore the function of the question in vs. 13. The different content parts of this question take up language from vss. 9-12: שָׁלֹשׁ from vss. 11a and 12a, נָשְׁר from vs. 12a, שָׁלֹשׁ from vs.

¹The argument that the author could have used the masculine verbal form נָשְׁר to make clear that אַנִּים is its subject, does not take the fact into account that the author could well have thought of אַנִּים as feminine in gender or that he might have used the feminine gender for a specific purpose.

²Dequeker ("The 'Saints of the Most High,"" 176) and Stahl (Weltengagement, 174, 175 n. 298) suggest a link between the two phrases.
11c, אֶלֶגָּן from vss. 10a, b, 11a, and, lexically only, from 12a, and מֵרָשָׁה from vs. 10c.

The combination of the root יָשָׁמ with אֶלֶגָּן as found in vs. 13c is thus only found in vs. 10c, where the pronominal suffix attached to יָשָׁמ refers to מְרָשָׁה. The lexical links of יָשָׁמ in vs. 13c to vs. 10b-10c thus seem to be stronger than the proposed link between מְרָשָׁה (vs. 13c) and a supposed מְרָשָׁה (vs. 11c).

A minor problem placing אֶלֶגָּן with vs. 11c is that the subject of vs. 11c would be plural but the verb is singular. This phenomenon could be explained by the use of the default verb form /3sgm/ with a plural or compound subject to follow, or as the verb agreeing with the first part of a compound subject, though the grammatical number appears to be always used congruently throughout Dan 8 and the whole book of Daniel.

Another problem transferring אֶלֶגָּן to vs. 11c arises regarding the informational value of אֶלֶגָּן in vs. 11c. How is the throwing down of a host (vs. 11c with אֶלֶגָּן) different from the falling down of some of the host (vs. 10b) and their being trampled (vs. 10b)? Why would the writer restate the same idea in vs. 11c as in vs. 10b? A satisfying answer cannot be given.

Yet, the major problem linking אֶלֶגָּן with vs. 11c is that vs. 12a would lack an explicit grammatical subject. In regard to this problem, two different types of

---

1 Though in vs. 11c מְרָשָׁה is used, and not מְרָשָׁה, both stem from the same root יָשָׁמ. On the other hand, the word מְרָשָׁה cannot be simply equated with the expression מְרָשָׁה (their difference in meaning is investigated later on) as is suggested in the stylistic argument in favor of the reallocation of מְרָשָׁה.

2 So Goldingay, *Daniel*, 197, with reference to GKC, 465 (§145o). For this phenomenon see also König, 3:451-452 (§345); GKC, 468 (§146f); R. J. Williams, 41-42 (§228, 230); Jotion and Muraoka, 556 (§150q); BHRG, 250 (§35[xi]).

3 So also argued by Hasslberger, 9 n. 28.
suggestions have been offered, but both are unconvincing and unsupported by the Hebrew text at hand. The first suggestion to obtain a subject by means of emendation rests solely on hypothesis as no manuscript or version indicates any such alteration of the text. The second suggestion is to supply the grammatical subject from the context, which would be the “horn.” Syntactically, the feminine gender of נַחֲלָתָה would fit the feminine gender of נַחֲלָתָה, but the resulting clause, whatever option one chooses—“the horn is given in control over the tämi d” or “the horn is given against the tämi d,” or “the horn is given over together with the tämi d”—would semantically be very problematic. For in this instance, the only suitable agent for the passive verb would be God, and it is rather difficult to imagine that God, the opponent of the horn, should actively set that horn against or in control over something belonging to the commander of the host. On the contrary, vs. 11 clearly shows that it is the horn which attacks the commander of the host, and thereby God, and the tämi d. The alternative suggestion to understand the Niphal of נַחֲלָתָה with reflexive meaning (“and it set itself . . .”) is purely hypothetical and should be rejected since such a reflexive meaning of the Niphal of נַחֲלָתָה cannot be found elsewhere.

Finally, the poetic-stylistic analysis in chap. 3 below shows that vs. 11 consists of a balanced tricolon, which would be disrupted if נַחֲלָתָה does not belong to vs. 12a.

---

1 Usually נַחֲלָתָה is emended and נַחֲלָתָה is read instead so that vs. 12a is translated with “And the transgression was placed upon the tämi d” (so Stahl, Weltengagement, 174, 175 n. 298; Di Lella, Daniel, 155).

2 Ratner regards it as possible that the feminine noun נַחֲלָתָה is missing by ellipsis. He refers to other examples of ellipsis in the book of Daniel in 8:8 and 9:23 (186 n. 124).

3 Gese, 409; cf. Redditt, 139.

4 So also argued by Lucas, Daniel, 217.
Although this argument comes from the literary analysis, it still needs to be taken into account here.

Hence, to reallocate נֵבְרָע to vs. 11c and taking the horn as the grammatical subject of vs. 12a does not fit into the meaning of the immediate context. These considerations confirm the previous conclusion that נֵבְרָע is the grammatical subject of vs. 12a.

Meaning of נֵבְרָע. The meaning of נֵבְרָע in vs. 12a is at least as much disputed as its syntactic place and function. Table 7 presents an overview of the different interpretations (of course, keeping in mind that the various interpreters decided differently on the syntactic place and function of נֵבְרָע).

The question regarding the meaning of נֵבְרָע is twofold. First, what is its lexical meaning here: Does it mean “host” or “warfare” or “service” or something else? And second, if נֵבְרָע indeed means “host,” what is its referential identity: Does it refer to the “host of heaven” mentioned in the immediate context (vss. 10, 11, 13) or to another host, maybe a counter-host, only mentioned here in vs. 12a? The discussion of the meaning of נֵבְרָע revolves around three textual factors which should be considered here: the indefiniteness of נֵבְרָע, its feminine gender, and the relationship between נֵבְרָע in vs. 12a and the other occurrences of this word in vss. 10-13. The interrelation between syntax and semantics is especially apparent in this section of the analysis.

1This is probably the reason why Goldingay, who takes נֵבְרָע with vs. 11, remarks at the end of his textual notes on vs. 12a that “most difficulties stem from the relationship of v 12a to its context” (Daniel, 197).
Table 7. Interpretations of the Meaning of פֶּה

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning of פֶּה in vs. 10</th>
<th>Meaning of פֶּה in vs. 12a</th>
<th>Author</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>People of God</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>Jerome, 855; Rosenmüller, 263; van Lengerke, 381; Maurer, 144; Kranichfeld, 294; Caspari, 137; Fausset, 1:637; Meinhold, &quot;Daniel,&quot; 309; Knabenbauer, 213; Terry, 60 (as option); Stokmann, 128; Obbink, 110; Wambaag, 126-127; Barnes, 2:112 (or host refers to priest and rulers); Walvoord, 186; Lacocque, <em>The Book of Daniel</em>, 163 (close association with angels); Hardy, 277, 279; Archer, 7:100; Pétier-Contesse and Ellington, 213, 216; Miller, <em>Daniel</em>, 227; Bauer, <em>Das Buch Daniel</em>, 170-171; Di Lella, 155, 160; P. B. Petersen, 205.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>part of God’s people</td>
<td>Hävernick, 279; Kliefoth, 257-258; Keil, 300; Knabenbauer, 212; Tiefenthal, 269; Leupold, 348; Young, <em>Daniel</em>, 171; Wood, 216; Treiyer, 352-353.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heathen idols/gods</td>
<td>Israelites</td>
<td>Lattey, 86; Porteous, 125.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Host of the horn: army, priesthood

| people of God           | anti-host (army)         | Ewald, *Daniel*, 262; Terry, 60 (as option); Rose and Fuller, 344; Driver, *Daniel*, 117 (preferred option); Goettsberger, 62; Saydon, 636 (as option). |
| Jewish troops           | enemy troops             | Buchanan, 245. |
| priests                 | anti-host (army)         | Beck, 84. |
| kings                   | anti-host (army)         | Baldwin, 157-158. |
| heathen idols/gods      | anti-host (army)         | Delcor, 174. |
Table 7—Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning of נְכוֹנָה in vs. 10</th>
<th>Meaning of נְכוֹנָה in vs. 12a</th>
<th>Author</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warfare, military campaign</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>warfare, military campaign</td>
<td>Hitzig, 133; Rohling, Daniel, 239; Zöckler, 176; Driver, Daniel, 117 (optional); Maier, 306.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celestial beings</td>
<td>celestial beings</td>
<td>Towner, 121; Collins, Daniel (1993), 335; Smith-Christopher, 114 (in vs. 12a the celestial host is associated with earthly Jews); Longman, Daniel, 204.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temple service/priestly service</td>
<td>temple service</td>
<td>Behrmann, 54; Aalders, Het boek Daniël, 164-165; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 178; Howie, 125.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavenly host</td>
<td>priestly service</td>
<td>Gese, 409.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heathen idols/gods</td>
<td>temple service</td>
<td>Jeffery, 475.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribulation</td>
<td>celestial beings</td>
<td>Plöger, Daniel, 122.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>time period, appointed time</td>
<td>Rashi (in Rashi and Alshich, 382; or Goldwurm, 225), Calvin, 100-101; Coccejus (in Hävernick, 278).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strength, power</td>
<td>strength, power</td>
<td>Vulgate; Luther (cited, e.g., in Keil, 298).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The page references in the “Author” column are to the identification of the נְכוֹנָה in vs. 12a only.
1. **Indefiniteness of נָּשִׁים.** It is striking that the word נָּשִׁים in vs. 12a is without the article, though it occurs three times before and is always definite (vss. 10a, 10b, 11a). The indefiniteness of נָּשִׁים has been explained in two different ways. The most apparent explanation is that the absence of the definite article may indicate that a new entity is introduced in the text. As the host of heaven is introduced in vs. 10a and referred to in vss. 10b and 11a by the definite נָּשִׁים one would expect נָּשִׁים in vs. 12a again to have the article if the host were to refer to the same entity as before. The sudden appearance of an indefinite נָּשִׁים therefore serves to differentiate between this host and the “host of heaven” previously mentioned.

The other explanation forwarded is that the absence of the article in front of נָּשִׁים in vs. 12a would suggest that only that part of the host of heaven is in view that the horn caused to fall to earth in vss. 10b and 10c. This is usually argued with reference to a supposedly similar function of the indefinite נָּשִׁים in vs. 13c, which is said to refer to that part of the host of heaven being trampled down. However, it is not clear why the indefiniteness of an entity that was mentioned before with the definite article should refer

---

1In the majority of commentaries the indefiniteness of נָּשִׁים is not discussed or commented on. To regard it for whatever reason as irrelevant cannot be considered a viable option. For example, the hypothesis that the article is omitted because of the poetic character of the text (so von Lengerke, 381; Kranichfeld, 295) does not explain why the article occurs with נָּשִׁים in vss. 10b and 11a, except if one supposes a different, prosaic, literary character of vss. 10-11, which is rather unlikely (see the literary analysis below).

2See, e.g., Hitzig, 133; Hasslberger, 102; Roy Gane, “The Syntax of Tet Ve . . . in Daniel 8:13,” 381; Seow, Daniel, 124.

3Suggested by Hävernick, 279; Kliefoth, 257-258; Keil, 300; Knabenbauer, 212; Tiefenthal, 269; Leupold, 348; Young, Daniel, 172; Wood, 216; Treier, 352-353; and presented as an option in Pröbstle, “A Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12,” 90.
to a part of this entity. And the indefiniteness of אָבֶן in vs. 13c, suggested to be
influenced by the indefiniteness of אָבֶן in vs. 12a, could also be explained by an
adjustment to the indefinite שְׁמֹרְקָה, or it could point to a host different from the host
previously mentioned in vs. 12a.

2. Feminine gender of אָבֶן. Since the gender of אָבֶן is usually masculine, the
feminine gender in Dan 8:12a is sometimes said to indicate a host different from the “host
of heaven,” or altogether a different meaning from “host.” In parallel to the only other
explicitly feminine occurrence of אָבֶן in Isa 40:2b, some have suggested that אָבֶן in Dan
8:12a means “war/warfare,” “(compulsory) service,” or “tribulation.” However, as
noted above, the gender of אָבֶן is not indicated in its other occurrences in vss. 10-13.

1So Hasslberger, 102 n. 26 (cf. Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309). In my research, I have not found
any grammar in which indefiniteness is said to have the function of referring to a part of an entity that
has been previously definite. In fact, to refer to a part of an entity is never mentioned as one of the
functions of indefiniteness. Interestingly, the sources mentioned in the previous footnote also do not
refer to any other text where such a function of indefiniteness would be detectable. Hence, the
proposed function of the indefiniteness of אָבֶן is not based on grammatical reasoning, but is solely
surmised by the fact that only some of the host are affected by the horn in vs. 10b. Two other reasons
for indefiniteness mentioned in grammars cannot be employed either. First, one should not propose
that the indefiniteness of אָבֶן is for the sake of amplification (i.e., “such a host”), for all examples
listed by GKC for such a function (401 [§125c]) are words which do not occur previously in their
contexts and which referential identity is absolutely clear. Second, the article is often omitted in
poetry, particularly in archaic poetry (Walke and O’Conner, 250 [§13.7.a], Joüon and Muraoka, 507
[§137f]), but it is difficult to understand vs. 12 as poetry (see the poetic analysis in chap. 3 below).

2See Hasslberger, 106.

3See Gane, “The Syntax of טֵט וָא . . . in Daniel 8:13,” 381. Of course the specification that
this host in vs. 13c is for a trampling proves that the host of heaven is in view here (cf. vs. 10c).

4Hitzig, 133; Rohling, Daniel, 239; Zöckler, 176; BDB, 839; Driver, Daniel, 117 (optional);
Maier, 306.

5Ewald, Lehrbuch, 456 (§174g).

6Plöger, Daniel, 122, who besides Isa 40:2 also refers to בְּדֵי אָבֶן “great tribulation” in Dan
10:1.
Therefore, because a contrasting masculine gender of נְברָשׁ is missing in vss. 10-13, the feminine gender in vs. 12a does not seem to function as an explicit indicator for a different host or for something other than a host. Furthermore, if the feminine gender of נְברָשׁ is the means by which to identify a different meaning for it, this would create an inconsistency with the use of a masculine נְברָשׁ in Dan 10:1 where it refers to something other than a host—namely to conflict or warfare. It appears that the unusual feminine gender of נְברָשׁ in 8:12a serves a different purpose rather than to help identify syntactically the meaning of נְברָשׁ (see the literary analysis).

3. Other occurrences of נְברָשׁ in Dan 8:10-13. The term נְברָשׁ occurs five times in vss. 10-13. In vss. 10, 11, and 13 it refers to an entity negatively affected by the activities of the horn. In fact, נְברָשׁ falls victim of the horn’s aggression. In vs. 10a נְברָשׁ is connected with heaven. It is called the “host of the heaven,” and some of the host are thrown down to earth (vs. 10b), implying a heavenly setting for the host. In vs. 11a the host in the construct chain the “commander of the host” again refers to a heavenly setting for the host. The lexical link between vs. 10b-c, namely, some of the host are caused to fall to earth and the horn trampling (רַבְמָה) them, and a “host of trampling (רַבְמָה)” in vs. 13c leads to the conclusion that the same host is addressed in vss. 10b-c and 13c.

These other occurrences of נְברָשׁ, in which it always refers to a host, indicate that נְברָשׁ in vs. 12a should have the same lexical meaning, since there are no valid reasons for it to mean “warfare” or “service.” נְברָשׁ as host therefore designates a military entity, which fits into the context of the military-type activities of the horn. It is interesting to note that נְברָשׁ can also attain the notion of “sacredness.” Inasmuch as the host fights a
holy war, the army also has a "sacred" function. Herein lies the use of אֱלֹהִים describing the service of the Levites (Num 4:3, 23, 30, 35, 39, 43; 8:24, 25). Considering the blend of military and cultic terminology in Dan 8:9-12 the term אֱלֹהִים qualifies perfectly to represent both notions.¹

The question remaining is whether or not the host in vs. 12a refers to the host of heaven mentioned in vss. 10, 11, and 13. Or: What host is referred to in vs. 12? On the one hand, the uniform use of אֱלֹהִים in vss. 10, 11, 13 with reference to the host of heaven, and to a lesser degree the grammatical similarity between אֱלֹהִים in vss. 12a and 13c, could suggest that אֱלֹהִים in vs. 12 refers to the same entity as in its other occurrences.² On the other hand, the indefiniteness of אֱלֹהִים in vs. 12a could signify that a different host is being considered. A hostile host under the leadership of the horn would match the entities under attack, namely the "commander of the host" and the "host of heaven." The noun אֱלֹהִים in vss. 10-13 could without any problem refer to two opposing hosts.

In weighing the evidence, it crystallizes that neither the other occurrences of אֱלֹהִים nor its feminine gender alone can ultimately decide the issue of the referential identity of אֱלֹהִים in vs. 12a, while its indefiniteness suggests that it refers to a different host from that in vss. 10-11. It appears the word אֱלֹהִים itself simply does not provide enough unambiguous information about its referential identity. In the end, only by analyzing the

¹ For the cultic notion of אֱלֹהִים see especially the section on "Cultic terminology" in chapter 3. In contrast to אֱלֹהִים, the term לְשׁוֹן is used in the book of Daniel to designate specifically an army in the military sense only (11:7, 10, 13, 25 [2x], 26). The use of לְשׁוֹן and אֱלֹהִים in Daniel is then consistent: the former refers to a military army, the latter in addition to the military sense can also have a cultic association.

meaning of the entire clause is it possible to determine which entity נְסָע in vs. 12a refers to.

The preposition בַּעֲלָה in דְּנֵא

A variety of translations have been suggested for the preposition בַּעֲלָה in the phrase דְּנֵא: those with comitative function—"along with,"1 "together with,"2 "in addition to,"3 "beyond,"4 or simply the general indication that בַּעֲלָה is comitative5— and others such as "against,"6 "(in charge) over,"7 "(control) over,"8 "because,"9 "instead of,"10 "(to be laid) on,"11 or "as a despite of."12 The versatility of the preposition בַּעֲלָה is well known, yet

1Barnes, 2:112; Archer, 7:100.
2Kranichfeld, 295; C. P. Caspari, Zur Einführung in das Buch Daniel (Leipzig: Dörrfling and Francke, 1869), 136-137; Keil, 300; Meinhold, "Daniel," 309; Knabenbauer, 213; Tiefenthal, 269; Obbink, 56, 110; Leupold, 348; Young, Daniel, 172; Wood, 216; Péter-Contesse and Ellington, 214.
3Van Lengerke, 381; Maurer, 144; Charles, 335; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 171.
5Rosenmüller, 264; Kliefoth, 257; Walvoord, 188.
6Hävernick, 279; Hitzig, 133; Rohling, Daniel, 239; Zöckler, 176; Prince, "Daniel viii. 11, 12," 204; Driver, Daniel, 117; Aalders, Het boek Daniël, 164; Goettsberger, 62; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 178; Hasselberger, 103; Baldwin, 157-158; Maier, 306; Lebram, Daniel, 94; Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 417; Haag, Daniel, 64; Gane, "The Syntax of Tēt Ve . . . in Daniel 8:13," 382; DCH, 5:813.
7Beek, 84; possibility mentioned by Buchanan, 245.
9Possibility mentioned by Buchanan, 245.
10Bertholdt, 522; Jeffery, 475 (in combination with interpreting נְסָע as "temple service").
11HALOT, 2:735.
12Goldstein, 1 Maccabees, 146.
it is surprising to find that almost the whole spectrum of possible translations has been suggested for Dan 8:12a. It appears that most of the translations suggested have been arrived at almost solely by considerations which originate from a pre-proposed understanding of the sentence and its context. Syntactic and semantic features are rarely given the thoughtful study they deserve.¹

In analyzing a preposition it is necessary to bear in mind that it does not only governs the following entity but in its semantic function is also dependent upon the preceding phrase to which the preposition relates, which could be a verb,² a noun, or even the whole nucleus of a clause (sometimes called "core"). E. Jenni has convincingly demonstrated that prepositions have these two relations and that the semantic model upon which an investigation of prepositions should be based could be abstracted as $X \rightarrow r \rightarrow Y$, in which $r$ stands for the relation in which $X$, the core of the preceding phrase or the referee, stands to $Y$, the core of the following phrase or the referent.³

While in general this semantic model refers to semantic functions and not to a

¹Unfortunately, Max Budie does not include Dan 8:12a in his study on the preposition יָעַל that is based to some extent on syntactic consideration (Die hebräische Präposition 'al [יָעַל] [Halle: Niemeyer, 1882]).

²BHRG points out that "some semantic functions that are attributed to prepositions are largely due to the verbs that govern those prepositions" (276). As a matter of fact, the closer the relation is between a preposition and a verb the more one is inclined to speak of "prepositional verbs," that is, verbs which occur with certain prepositions in a relationship which may almost be called a lexeme (ibid., 275).

³In Ernst Jenni's terminology the "x-Seite" and "y-Seite" (Die hebräischen Präpositionen, vol. 1, Die Präposition Beth [Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 1992], 14-16).
syntactic structure, this model can successfully be connected to the syntactic elements of
the sentence in most of the מָנָסָר clauses with the preposition בְּלא. Most of these clauses
exhibit the following basic syntactic structure:

Verb (מָנָסָר) + subject + X (direct object) + בְּלא + Y

In other words, in clauses with מָנָסָר the preposition בְּלא relates the first correlate (X), which
most often is the direct object, to the second correlate (Y), the entity governed by the
preposition. For identifying the semantic function of בְּלא in clauses with מָנָסָר it is therefore
important to take the semantic qualities of both the first and the second correlate into
consideration. For the passive sentence in Dan 8:12a this implies that בְּלא establishes a
relation between מָנָסָר and מָנָסָר and that its semantic function is dependent upon the
semantic qualities of these two words.

One may argue that in Dan 8:12a the preposition בְּלא is not governed by the verb
מָנָסָר but rather relates the whole מָנָסָר-clause (מָנָסָר מָנָסָר) to מָנָסָר. If that would be the
case, any function that בְּלא exhibits in BH needs to be considered as a possible function of
its use in Dan 8:12a. However, there are several reasons to regard מָנָסָר as
constituent part of the מָנָסָר clause and not as relating to the whole clause. First, sentences
with מָנָסָר tend to take an additional constituent besides the direct object. In Dan 8:12a the
direct object is מָנָסָר (after the passive-active transformation) and the additional
constituent would be מָנָסָר. Second, the prepositional phrase מָנָסָר is

1Jenni emphasizes this important point correctly (ibid., 14). Furthermore, the model says
nothing about word order in a sentence or clause.

2The verb מָנָסָר is considered to be a double transitive verb which takes a noun phrase and a
prepositional phrase or two noun phrases, respectively. In terms of valency, מָנָסָר is a trivalent verb.
juxtaposed to the verb, which is a usual position for a prepositional object considering the unmarked word order in the main field of a verbal clause.\textsuperscript{1} The phrase is thus in a marked position and should be connected closely with the verb. Third, the Masoretes marked מֵאִי with the conjunctive accent מַּטְּלַה, which is the same accent connecting אָמַר and מַמִּים, and thus joining מֵאִי with מַמִּים, whereas מַמִּים is accented with the disjunctive accent תִּפְּשֶׁה marking separation between מַמִּים and מֵאִי. According to the Masoretic accents, the words in Dan 8:12a are grouped in two parts: the phrase מֵאִי מַמִּים and the prepositional phrase מֵאִי מַמִּים which apparently relates to the first three words. All these facts indicate that מֵאִי מַמִּים is closely connected to the verb מַמִּים so much so that “the two words can hardly be interpreted independently.”\textsuperscript{2}

Therefore, the combination of the verb מַמִּים and the preposition מֵאִי therefore needs to be analyzed together.

\textbf{Semantic functions of מֵאִי in clauses with מַמִּים.} In order to determine the semantic function of מֵאִי in Dan 8:12a, it is indispensable to have a closer look at the use of מֵאִי in מַמִּים-sentences and what kind of relations it establishes between the two correlates. It will be determined which of the semantic functions obtained by this procedure might be applicable to the preposition מֵאִי in Dan 8:12a. Thereafter the proposed translations for מֵאִי can be evaluated. The analysis includes both sentences with

\textsuperscript{1}For word order in the main field of verbal clauses see Groß, \textit{Satzteilfolge}, 257-295 (esp. 286-287 for the position of objects); for a simplified summary of Groß's research see \textit{BHRG}, 342 (§46.1/3[iii]).

According to the analysis and classification of the semantic functions of בְּ in clauses with בְּ (see Appendix 1), the basic function of בְּ in these clauses is to indicate spatial position (195 times). Thus, בְּ most often denotes simple locational function (“on,” “upon,” “over”) or metaphorical locational function indicating incumbency and rank (“over,” “in control of”) or value and supremacy (“over,” “above”). Other and more infrequent semantic functions of בְּ in בְּ-clauses are to indicate disadvantage (“against”), and even more rarely, goal (“to,” “for”) and comitative (“along with,” “together with,” “in addition to”). Although the uses of בְּ in the book of Daniel (65 times in BH, 70 times in BA) appear to play only a minor role in determining the function of בְּ in Dan 8:12a, an investigation shows that בְּ is used in similar fashion.¹

¹For my purposes the following distinction of semantic functions of the preposition בְּ in the book of Daniel (leaving Dan 8:12a aside) is sufficient, although certainly more study on בְּ is necessary—e.g., the locational and metaphorical locational use of בְּ could be presented in a more nuanced way—and the criteria for identifying specific uses should be explained in detail—e.g., at times, the metaphorical locational use of בְּ and its use indicating dis/advantage or its referential use are not easy to distinguish and may indeed overlap to a certain extent (cf. the classification of translation equivalents of בְּ in HALOT 2:825-827; 5:1946-1947). The preposition בְּ, occurring in the book of Daniel 65 times in BH and 70 times in BA:

(1) Indicates spatial positioning as simple locative or metaphorical locative (“on,” “over”): in BH in 1:11; 2:1 (marks indirect object); 8:2, 5, 17, 18 (2x); 9:1, 11, 12, 13, 14, 17, 18, 19 (2x); 27 (2x); 10:4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 16 (2x); 11:5 (comparative?), 20, 21 (2x), 27, 36, 36a (comparative?), 37b (comparative?), 38; in BA in 2:10, 28, 29, 34, 46, 48 (2x), 49; 3:12a; 4:2, 7, 10, 13, 14, 20, 21, 22, 25, 26, 29, 33; 5:5, 7, 9, 16, 21, 29; 6:2, 4b, 11, 15a, 18, 19; 7:1, 4, 6, 28.

(2) Seems to mark the direct object and functions as metaphorical locative and/or indicates dis/advantage with verbs referring to an activity of the mind: in BH in 1:8 (with יָדַע); 9:14a (with יָדַע); 11:30b, 37a, g, h (all with the verb יָדַע); in BA in 3:12b; 6:14 (2x) (all with יָדַע); 3:28 (with יָדַע in the Hitpael); 4:24 (with יָדַע); 6:24 (with יָדַע).

(3) Indicates advantage (“for,” “on behalf of”): in BH in 9:20, 24 (2x); 12:1.

(4) Indicates disadvantage (in a hostile sense: “against”): in BH in 1:1 (marks direct object);
Semantic function of by in Dan 8:12a. These categories of the semantic function of by, especially in sentences with קָנָה, can now be used to identify the semantic function of by in Dan 8:12a. Here, the preposition by relates קָנָה (X) to רֹדֶה (Y). The X-part קָנָה refers to a personal entity, whereas the Y-part רֹדֶה is a nominalized adverb and seems to refer to an abstract entity. According to the classification in Appendix 1 the preposition in Dan 8:12a may function as a metaphorical locative, or may indicate disadvantage, or it indicates a comitative relationship. The simple locational sense seems less probable here, since רֹדֶה does not have the semantic feature "locative," which is required for a locational sense. Furthermore, to interpret the preposition as an indicator of either goal, instrument, comparison, cause, reference, or norm does not result in a meaningful sentence.

The three possible semantic functions of by identified by the means of the classification in Appendix 1 lead to the following array of meanings and translation equivalents for Dan 8:12a. First, if by functions in a metaphorical-locational sense ("over"), it indicates that “a host” is set in a position of rank and/or control over the רֹדֶה. In this case the clause would be translated as “a host is given/set (into control)
over the tamid.\(^1\) Second, if יָבֶל indicates disadvantage ("against"), it would signify that "a host" is to the disadvantage of the tamid. The clause would then read "a host is given/set against the tamid."\(^2\) In either case the object of the giving, "a host" (אֲרֻמָּה), would stand in opposition to the tamid (דַּעַת) which belongs to the commander of the host (vs. 11b). The third possible semantic function of יָבֶל would lead to a fundamentally different meaning of the clause. If יָבֶל indicates comitative function ("along with," "together with"); "to," "in addition to"), it combines "a host" and the tamid, either by accompaniment ("a host is given over together with the tamid") or by addition ("a host is given over in addition to the tamid").\(^3\) In this option, "a host" is exposed to the same action as the tamid: both are given over, probably into the power of the horn.

For the following reasons, however, it is rather unlikely that in Dan 8:12a the preposition יָבֶל is used with comitative function.\(^4\) These observations are based on an

\(^{1}\)Daniel 8:12a would not be the sole occurrence in the book of Daniel where יָבֶל would have such a specific metaphorical locative function. Several times יָבֶל indicates incumbency or rank ("over," "in control over"): over persons (1:11; 2:48), over an area/administrative entity (Dan 2:48a ["province of Babel"]; 4:14; 5:21 [both: אֲרֻמָּה תַּל מִסְבָּל "kingdom of mankind"]; 6:2, 4b [אֲרֻמָּה תַּל מִסְבָּל "kingdom"]; and over an administrative system (Dan 2:49; 3:12a [both: אֲרֻמָּה תַּל מִסְבָּל "the administration"]).

\(^{2}\)In the book of Daniel יָבֶל indicates disadvantage in BH in 1:1 (marks direct object); 8:25; 9:12 (2x); 10:21; 11:14, 24, 25 (2x), 28, 30, 36, 40; in BA in 3:19a, 29; 4:30 (referential?); 5:23 (metaphorical locative?); 6:5, 6 (both metaphorical locative?).

\(^{3}\)The comitative function of יָבֶל occurs in the book of Daniel in 11:34, but there with the Niphal of יָבֶל II "join" which several times takes a comitative יָבֶל (Num 18:2, 4; Isa 14:1; 56:6; Esth 9:27; Dan 11:34). Cf. Budde, 38. In these instances, the comitative function of יָבֶל is rather dependent on the verb יָבֶל II "join" than it is an independent function of יָבֶל.

\(^{4}\)It should not be argued that the singular verb יָבֶל excludes a comitative function of יָבֶל on the grounds that the two entities joined by יָבֶל should be regarded as plural in number (as it is in Jer 3:18; Job 38:32), for it is possible that the verbal predicate is singular when its subject consists of two entities joined by יָבֶל (cf. Hos 10:14). In Dan 8:12a the singular verb would indicate just that the premier subject is אֲרֻמָּה.
examination of all the verbal clauses listed in GKC, BDB, and HALOT as references for 

First, when two entities are joined together by לָעַל they are part of the same 

semantic group in which these entities can be distinguished, for example, both are either 

personal or physical objects. However, in Dan 8:12a the two entities are of a different 
nature since נֵיתֵו is personal and יְחֵיָה is certainly not personal. Furthermore, the 

following clauses show נֵיתֵו to be on the side of the horn (on the basis that נֵיתֵו is the 

subject throughout vs. 12), whereas יְחֵיָה is on the side of the prince of the host. A 

comitative function of לָעַל should therefore be rejected, unless one assumes that Dan 

8:12a is an exception to the general observations.

Second, regarding word order, when two entities are combined by לָעַל, they almost 

always appear next to each other. This is the case with the לָעַל of accompaniment as well 

1In all cases of a לָעַל-clause with לָעַל comitantiae the two entities joined together both are parts 
of a slaughtered animal (Exod 29:17), or cities (Num 35:6), or people (Ezek 25:10).

2To read לָעַל as “together with” means that there should be “a community of nature between 

the things linked together by the לָעַל” (Charles, 207). Therefore, לָעַל cannot be rendered here “together 

with” (ibid., 207; Hasslberger, 101; cf. Driver, Daniel, 117; Aalders, Daniel [1962], 178). Ozanne 

judges the rendering “together with” as “difficult if not impossible” (“Three Textual Problems,” 445).

3With לָעַל of accompaniment, X and Y stand next to each other as subject in Exod 35:22; Jer 

3:18; Hos 10:14 (passive verb); as object in Gen 32:12; Deut 22:6; 1 Kgs 15:20; Amos 3:15; Job 

38:32. Note that in Hos 10:14 both the grammatical subject לָעַל “mother” and the prepositional phrase 

לָעַל לְבֵנֵי with the children” occupy the preverbal field of the clause; they are not separated by another 

constituent (cf. similarly Exod 12:8; Num 9:11; 19:5 with לָעַל indicating addition). In comparison, in 

Dan 8:12a only נֵיתֵו occupies the preverbal field, but יְחֵיָה stands after the verb in the main 

field. In the only instance where a preposition לָעַל indicating accompaniment occurs in the book of 

Daniel the noun לָעַל and the prepositional phrase with לָעַל stand also next to each other (Dan 11:34; 

not listed in GKC, BDB, or HALOT). The exception to the above observation is Num 31:8. Here the 

object stands in the preverbal field in focus position, whereas the prepositional phrase occurs in the 

main field.
as with the נֵּלֶּה of addition. In Dan 8:12a, however, נֵּלֶּה occurs in the preverbal field, whereas נֵּלֶּה stands after the verb in the main field. Unless again, Dan 8:12a belongs to the category of exceptional cases.

Third, when נֵּלֶּה is indicating addition, it also indicates a sequence of events in relation to the entities X and Y, namely the activity concerning Y happens before the activity concerning X. This seems to be the very reason why an entity can be added in some way to another entity. To interpret the function of נֵּלֶּה in vs. 12a as indicating addition (and as a consequence to regard the host in vs. 12a as the same host mentioned in vss. 10-11) would therefore reverse the sequence of events as they were mentioned before in vss. 10-11. In this scenario the host is given over in addition to the giving over of the tamid, that is, the host is given over after the tamid had been given over. Such an interpretation is contrary to the explicit sequence of events in vss. 10-11, where the horn first acts against the host (vs. 10) and then acts against the tamid (vs. 11b).

Fourth, a more serious problem yet for interpreting the semantic function of נֵּלֶּה as

---

1With נֵּלֶּה of addition, X and Y stand next to each other in Exod 12:8, 9; 23:18; 34:25; Lev 2:2, 16; 4:11 (pendensed); 7:12; 10:15; 14:31; 23:18, 20; Num 9:11; 19:5; Deut 16:3 (2x). Of these references, in Exod 23:18; 34:25; Lev 23:18; Deut 16:3 (2x) the noun and the prepositional phrase change places so that the prepositional phrase comes before the noun, but still they stand next to each other. In Lev 3:4, 10, 15; 4:9; 7:4, 30 the object, which is mentioned in a pended construction, is referred to by means of a pronominal suffix attached to the verb whereas the prepositional phrase stands before the verb. In Lev 19:26; 1 Sam 14:32, 33; Ezek 33:25 where the direct object is omitted by ellipses, only the prepositional phrase with נֵּלֶּה of accompaniment occurs. The only cases where the noun is separated from the prepositional phrase is in Lev 7:13, in Num 6:17, and in Num 35:6 (the construction in Lev 7:13 may be easily explained by the fact that the verb נֵּלֶּה and its accompanying object נֵּלֶּה stem from the same root and form a fixed expression—e.g., Lev 2:1, 4; 7:13, 38; 9:15; 17:4; 22:18; Num 6:14; 7:11, 19; 9:7; 15:4; 31:50—and thus tend to occur next to each other). The function of נֵּלֶּה in Mic 5:2 is taken by Caspari, Keil, and Kuenen as נֵּלֶּה of accompaniment (the clause would be another instance of separation between X and Y regarding word order), but others take it as expressing direction which seems to better fit the meaning of the clause (thus Mic 5:2 is listed in BDB under the function of accompaniment but with reference to the function of direction [755]).
comitative is that such an interpretation does not give due attention to the immediate context of vs. 12. When יָנָא indicates accompaniment the entity governed by the preposition undergoes the same action as the one which it is placed in accompaniment with (see the references listed above). This means that if the preposition יָנָא in Dan 8:12a is interpreted as indicating accompaniment, the תַּמְּדִ (the entity governed by יָנָא) undergoes the same action as the host, namely to be given over. To argue that God is the one “giving over” the host is to say that the תַּמְּדִ also is “given over” by God. However, the context is clear that the תַּמְּדִ is not given over by God but rather removed by the horn (vs. 11b). The תַּמְּדִ is affected by the activity of the horn, not by an activity of God. In vss. 9-11, as well as in the angelic interpretation in vss. 24-25e, the sole agent is the horn, or the king respectively. The interpretation making God the implied agent of vs. 12a giving over host and תַּמְּדִ does not fit the immediate context which mentions solely the aggressive activity of the horn. Of course, this is not to deny the concept that in the end God may be the one who “allows” the horn to act in this way (cf. Dan 7:25), especially since 8:14 puts the vision into a time frame set by God.

To sum up the discussion on יָנָא, it can be concluded with a high degree of probability that the preposition יָנָא in Dan 8:12a is used either in a metaphorical-locational sense (“over,” “control over”) or used to indicate disadvantage (“against”). However, the possibility that יָנָא could function as comitative indicating accompaniment or addition, though per se one of the semantic functions of יָנָא, should not be chosen
based on the syntax in vs. 12a and considering the meaning of the immediate context.\textsuperscript{1}

The preposition יָנֵס in יָנֵס יָנֵס

In regard to methodological considerations for the analysis of prepositions, it is self-evident that what has been set forth at the beginning of the discussion of יָנֵס יָנֵס is equally valid for the discussion of the phrase יָנֵס יָנֵס.\textsuperscript{2}

Like the function of יָנֵס, the function of the preposition יָנֵס in Dan 8:12a (יָנֵס יָנֵס) seems to be difficult to interpret. A glance at the different translations testifies to this matter. The preposition יָנֵס has been interpreted as causal יָנֵס ("on account of," "by reason of," "because of"),\textsuperscript{3} as יָנֵס יָנֵס ("on account of," "because of"),\textsuperscript{4} as modal יָנֵס or יָנֵס of accompaniment ("unlawfully," "in an illegal, criminal manner," "wickedly,"

\textsuperscript{1}The analysis of the function of the preposition יָנֵס is then a good example to illustrate the relation between syntax and semantics. Here is a case in which the semantic meaning of a term (נָבֶע) influences the process of determining the syntactic function of a preposition.

\textsuperscript{2}The following discussion on the semantic function of יָנֵס in Dan 8:12a uses as a source of information Jenni's groundbreaking work on the preposition יָנֵס (Jenni, Die Präposition Beth). Jenni's exhaustive study and close attention to minute detail combined with a refreshing methodology—so that one reviewer praises it as "careful, competent, and imaginative analysis" which "has made a most significant contribution of lasting value to Classical Hebrew semantics and lexicography" (T. Muraoka, review of Die hebräischen Präpositionen, vol. 1, Die Präposition Beth, by Ernst Jenni, BO 53 [1996]: 761, 763)—though sometimes in danger of overdoing, is of great help when examining the function of יָנֵס in the difficult clause of Dan 8:12a.

\textsuperscript{3}Von Lengerke, 379; Kranichfeld, 294; Meinhold, "Daniel," 309; Prince, "On Daniel viii. 11, 12," 204; Lattey, 86; Barnes, 2:112; Baldwin, 158; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 163; Archer, 7:100; Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 417-418, 441; Miller, Daniel, 227; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 171.

\textsuperscript{4}Maurer, 144; Kliefoth, 257; Keil, 300; Tiefenthal, 269. The difference in interpretation between causal יָנֵס and יָנֵס יָנֵס in Dan 8:12a is not always clear in the literature.
“in/through/with transgression”)¹ as temporal beth (“in the course of”),² as indicating purpose (“in order”),³ substitution (“for transgression”),⁴ or a metaphorical location (“into”),⁵ or even as indicating the agent of the passive (“by wantonness”).⁶ Jenni lists Dan 8:12a among seventy occurrences of ב (out of 15,570) of which a lexicographic investigation is not possible “because of textual corruption or other exegetical difficulties.”⁷

In contrast to Tp rin 'S y , the phrase במ is not, or at least to a lesser degree, governed by the verb מ , since it is an adjunct or an optional phrase in vs. 12a. This is clearly indicated by the position of the prepositional phrases: י琨 close to the verb and במ distant to it. For this reason, to investigate the function of ב only in clauses with מ and thereupon to decide its function in vs. 12a is not enough. Other verbal

¹Zöckler, 176; Behrmann, 54; Driver, Daniel, 117; Beck, 84; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 178; Hasselberger, 103; Maier, 306; Lebram, Daniel, 94; Shea, “Spatial Dimensions,” 516; Haag, Daniel, 64; as one of two options mentioned in Bader, “Reale und gedachte Welt,” 45; DCH, 5:813.

²Collins, Daniel (1993), 335; mentioned as possibility by Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 171: “during the time of wantonness (of the desolator).”

³Walvoord, 188: “in order to permit him [Antiochus] to transgress.”

⁴Leupold apparently believes that במ belongs to מ and then expresses that “the transgression took the place of the daily offerings” (349). In his interpretation, the transgression refers to the heathen altar.

⁵Rosenmüller in referring to the expression מ הר “give into the power of,” believes that the abstract במ “rebellion” stands for the concrete “rebellious ones” so that vs. 12a means that the host, together with the śami d, are given into the power of the rebellious ones (263).

⁶Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 9; as one of two options mentioned in Bader, “Reale und gedachte Welt,” 45.

clauses with a similar prepositional phrase using ב need to be considered as well. The crucial question is, What is the function the preposition has when it governs an abstract entity (Y-component), or more exactly an abstract entity referring to sin or transgression, and how does the preposition relate this entity to the verbal clause (X-component)?

**Semantic functions of ב.** The profile of the semantic function of ב in clauses with יָּנוּל in the Niphal and in the Qal stem is found in detail in Appendix 2 and is briefly summarized here. In יָּנוּל-clauses the preposition ב (a) can realize an action (circumstantial sense) by indicating referential identity (beth essentiae), movement of a body part (beth gesticulationis), cause (beth causae), instrument (beth instrumenti), or price (beth pretii); (b) it can indicate different kinds of localization (often followed by ד, “hand” used in the figurative sense meaning “control/power/authority”); (c) it can indicate a temporal frame; (d) it can be used in a modal sense; and (e) it can indicate nominalization of a sentence predicate as a whole. It is obvious that in יָּנוּל-clauses ב shows the same basic spectrum of functions as are attributed to it in general.¹ The verb יָּנוּל is thus not the premier factor which determines the semantic function of ב.

The decisive factor in determining the semantic function of ב is the semantic quality of the Y-component, the entity governed by the preposition ב. Table 8 distinguishes the different uses of ב according to Jenni.²

¹Jenni calls these functions Lokalisation, Temporalisation, Realisation, Modalisation, and Parallelisation.

²Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 64-68. The percentages of the use of ב in the Hebrew Bible are supplied by Jenni and are based on a total of 15,570 occurrences (69); Jenni did not classify seventy occurrences of ב, that is, 0.4% of the total.
Table 8. Semantic Function of ב (according to Jenni)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semantic Function of ב</th>
<th>Semantic Quality of Y-Component</th>
<th>Frequency in BH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Circumstantial sense</td>
<td>Y = physical object (person, animal, thing)</td>
<td>18.7 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locational sense</td>
<td>Y = location</td>
<td>57.9 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal sense</td>
<td>Y = time</td>
<td>15.9 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modal sense</td>
<td>Y = abstract entity</td>
<td>5.7 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominalizing sense</td>
<td>Y = sentence predicate ([proj]nominalized)</td>
<td>1.4 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not classified</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.4 %</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An abstract entity may, of course, be hypostatized functioning like a physical object, a location, or a temporal entity and the governing ב in such cases may be used in a circumstantial, locational, or temporal sense. An abstract entity may also be a nominalized sentence predicate and in such instances ב functions in a nominalizing sense. This is important to keep in mind for the analysis of ב in Dan 8:12a since the Y-component is the noun ב which refers to an abstract entity.

**Semantic functions of ב in front of a word for sin.** The next and crucial step in determining the function of ב is an analysis of those occurrences of ב in which it governs an abstract entity referring to crime or sin. For this purpose not only the occurrences are considered in which ב is connected with ב but also those in which ב

¹Within the scope of a tradition-historical analysis of the term ב, Rolf Knierim examines the combination of ב with the preposition ב (Die Hauptbegriffe für Sünde im Alten Testament, 2nd ed. [Gütersloh: Mohn, 1967], 131-133). He concludes that this combination “serves as explanation of
is connected with lexemes of the semantic field of הָוֵת, namely with עִיִּנָּה “iniquity,” אָרְעָה “sin,” מַעְאָה “sin,” and רַאֲשָׁה “sin,” the major terms for sin in the Hebrew Bible. In the
lists below, each occurrence of ב with one of these terms occupies a line with the following information given: 1) the text reference, (2) the semantic function of ב as classified by Jenni, (3) Jenni’s classification number for ב, (4) any additions to the abstract noun—the attachment of a pronominal suffix (pron. sf.), the appearance in a construct phrase (CsP), the expansion by a relative clause (relative cl.) or by a prepositional phrase (PP)—, and (5), in case of a verbal clause, the root of the verbal predicate of the clause.

The preposition ב in connection with הָוֵת “crime” (9 times)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Reference</th>
<th>Semantic Function</th>
<th>Jenni’s Classification Number</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
<th>Root of Verbal Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 14:11</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1676 pron. sf.</td>
<td>נָטֵב hitp. “be unclean”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 37:23</td>
<td>beth instrumenti</td>
<td>1785 pron. sf.</td>
<td>נָטֵב hitp. “defile oneself”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 50:1</td>
<td>beth pretti</td>
<td>1873 pron. sf.</td>
<td>הָוֵת pu. “be sent off”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mic 1:5</td>
<td>beth constitutionis</td>
<td>1396 CsP</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

correlating consequences which are announced or requested, or alternatively have already taken place" (131).

1For the semantic field of הָוֵת, see HALOT 3:981-982; Seebass in Helmer Ringgren and Horst Seebass, "הָוֵת paša,” TDOT, 12:145. See the study of the main terms for sin by Knierim, Hauptbegriffe für Sünde. Lexemes which are not so prominent in the semantic field of הָוֵת are not considered here (e.g., הָוֵת "apostasy," הָוֵת "wickedness," הָוֵת "uncleanness").

2Included are those instances in which between ב and the abstract noun the indefinite pronoun בָּי “all” (with הָוֵת in Ezek 14:11; 37:23; with הָוֵת in Deut 19:15; with הָוֵת in Num 16:26; 1 Kgs 15:3; 2 Kgs 17:22; Isa 40:2; Jer 15:13) or the noun הָוֵת “multitude” is inserted (with הָוֵת in Ps 5:11; with הָוֵת in Jer 13:22). There are no occurrences of the combination ב + רַאֲשָׁה.

3Here is an example that shows the classification of the function of ב is not always clear. Jenni identifies ב in Ezek 14:11 as beth causae (Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 116) whereas ב in the identical clause construction in Ezek 37:23 is identified as beth instrumenti (ibid., 145; the text reference is mistakenly given as “Ez 37,25”). This is probably due to the Hitpael form of רָאֲשָׁה which could be understood as intransitive (“be unclean”), in which case ב is beth causae, or as reflexive (“make oneself unclean”), in which case ב is beth instrumenti.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Textual Form</th>
<th>Hebrew Meaning</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen 19:15</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 CsP</td>
<td>נִסָּה</td>
<td>nif. “be swept away”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lev 26:39a</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מָכַק</td>
<td>nif. “rot away”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lev 26:39b</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 CsP</td>
<td>מַפֹּק</td>
<td>nif. “rot away”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Josh 22:20</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>נָשֵׁה</td>
<td>“perish”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Sam 3:13</td>
<td>beth pretti</td>
<td>1871 relative cl.</td>
<td>שׁפַד</td>
<td>“judge”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 14:21</td>
<td>beth pretti</td>
<td>1871 CsP</td>
<td>הָכַח</td>
<td>hif. “prepare”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 43:24</td>
<td>beth instrumenti</td>
<td>1783 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מָכַק</td>
<td>nif. “make weary”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 50:1</td>
<td>beth pretti</td>
<td>1871 pron. sf.</td>
<td>נָשָׁב</td>
<td>nif. “be sold”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 57:17</td>
<td>localization:</td>
<td>2638 CsP</td>
<td>נִפְלָה</td>
<td>“be angry”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>social contact</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>נִפְלָה</td>
<td>nif. “be defiled”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jer 13:22</td>
<td>beth pretti</td>
<td>1871 pron. sf.</td>
<td>נָשֵׁה</td>
<td>nif. “be removed”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jer 31:30</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מָכַק</td>
<td>“die”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jer 51:6</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מַפֹּק</td>
<td>“be destroyed”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 3:18</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מָכַק</td>
<td>“die”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 3:19</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מָכַק</td>
<td>“die”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 4:17</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מַפֹּק</td>
<td>nif. “rot away”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 7:13</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>הָכַח</td>
<td>htp. “become powerful”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 7:16</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>נִפְלָה</td>
<td>“mourn”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 18:17</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 CsP</td>
<td>נָשָׁב</td>
<td>“be sold”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 18:18</td>
<td>beth causae</td>
<td>1647 pron. sf.</td>
<td>מָכַק</td>
<td>“die”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Though Jenni does not classify יִפְלָה in Prov 29:6 (Die Präposition Beth, 49), its parallel to Prov 12:13 gives reason to regard ב also as beth causae.


3Note that יִפְלָה (ketib) in 2 Sam 12:16 should be read as בָּטָה (qere), and, therefore, is not listed here.

4This construction could also be interpreted as beth pretti.
In Ezek 18:19 and 20 (2x), ב is used in a local sense for it indicates participation in carrying a burden (verb כARRY; cf. Num 11:17; Job 7:13; Neh 4:11). Previously, this function of ב has been regarded as partitive (see Jenni, *Die Präposition Beth*, 266-273).
The data of these seventy-three clauses show that when ב occurs in combination with one of the major words for sin (שָׁם, בַּשָּׂם, בָּשָׂם, חֶשְׂמִית) the preposition can be used in a circumstantial sense (as beth causae, beth instrumenti, beth pretii, beth constitutionis).¹

¹Jenni regards the preposition in יָּשַׁב נָּחַב as beth instrumenti (1787) because he takes this phrase together with the verb יָּשַׁב נָּחַב-Piel “mediate (for)” (Die Praposition Beth, 146). However, יָּשַׁב נָּחַב is rather the beginning of the next clause (cf. Masoretic accents), which has as verb the intransitive יָּשַׁב נָּחַב “be righteous,” and thus ב functions as beth causae.

²The pronominal suffix in יִבְּרָה refers back to יִבְּרָה “his trespass” and יִבְּרָה “his sin,” both being specified by pronominal suffix.

²See Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, for definitions of the different circumstantial uses of ב (71-78), for beth causae (100-101), for beth instrumenti (118), for beth pretii (150), and for beth constitutionis (78). The beth causae indicates the cause when an agent is missing; the clause is marked by an intransitive verb, e.g., יָּשַׁב נָּחַב “die” (Ezek 3:18). The beth instrumenti provides the agent of bivalent transitive verbs—verbs which require a subject and an object, e.g., יָּשַׁב נָּחַב-Piel “annoy” (1 Kgs 14:22)—or causative intransitive verbs, e.g., יָּשַׁב נָּחַב “make weary” (Isa 43:24), with a helping agent, the instrument, by which the activity is carried out. The beth pretii occurs with trivalent verbs—verbs which require a subject, an object and a prepositional object; these are the verbs of giving and taking, e.g., יָּשַׁב נָּחַב “sell” (Isa 50:1) or יָּשַׁב נָּחַב “give” (Jer 15:13)—and indicates the price of a transaction that is the means for the realization of that reciprocal transaction. The beth constitutionis specifies or limits the predicate of a nominal clause, usually an adjective, and is closely related to the beth causae (see Mic 1:5) In regard to the X-component and Y-component Jenni expresses the different functions as follows (ibid., 78):
in a local sense,\(^1\) in a modal sense,\(^2\) or to indicate nominalization of a sentence predicate.\(^3\)

In table 9 the texts (except Dan 8:12a) are grouped according to the semantic function of the preposition ב.

**Semantic function of ב in Dan 8:12a.** Having identified the possible semantic functions of ב in combination with an abstract noun for sin, the specific function of ב in Dan 8:12a can be further determined by paying attention to the verbal root מנה. The verb מנה in Dan 8:12a does not require ב to indicate localization. Also, being a trivalent verb, מנה allows ב to be interpreted neither as *beth causae*, which occurs with intransitive or monovalent verbs, nor as *beth instrumenti*, which occurs with bivalent verbs, nor as indicating nominalization of a sentence content. In other words, a comparison of the מנה-clause in Dan 8:12a with the possible functions of “ב + abstract for sin” in other clauses

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><em>beth causae</em>: Y independently affecting X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><em>beth instrumenti</em>: Y in substitution acting directly for X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><em>beth pretii</em>: Y in substitution acting indirectly for X,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><em>beth constitutionis</em>: Y characteristic of X.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\)The preposition ב is followed by a hypostatized abstract which now designates a place or space. This function of ב is also dependent upon the verbal element, for example, it is easily recognizable with the verb "walk" (1 Kgs 15:3).

\(^2\)In a modal sense the prepositional phrase with ב is always followed by an abstract that is not hypostatized. This construction expresses abstract of quality or abstract of activity (see Ps 51:7).

\(^3\)Nominalization of a sentence predicate means that the entire sentence content (Y) is paralleled to the sentence on the X-side. This is achieved by nominalization with an infinitive, with a verbal noun *dicendi* (commanding or authorizing), or with the relative pronoun נון / כ, by nominalization of an existence clause or a nonexistence clause, or by pronominalization with ל, with ה / כ or pronoun suffix, or with הב / כ (Jenni, *Die Präposition Beth*, 353-354). In Ps 5:11 and Prov 28:2, ב indicates the nominalization of an existence clause with causal function, which is closely related to *beth causae*; in Deut 19:15 ב indicates pronominalization with ל.
Table 9. Semantic Function of 3 in Combination with Major Terms for Sin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Semantic Function of 3</th>
<th>יִשָּׁם “Crime” (9 times)</th>
<th>יִשָּׁמ “Iniquity” (35 times)</th>
<th>יִשָּׁמ “Sin” (7 times)</th>
<th>יִשָּׁמ “Sin” (22 times)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beth instrumenti (5 times)</td>
<td>Ezek 37:23</td>
<td>Isa 43:24</td>
<td>1 Kgs 14:22; 16:2; Isa 43:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beth pretii (14 times)</td>
<td>Isa 50:1</td>
<td>1 Sam 3:13; Isa 14:21; 50:1; Jer 13:22; Ezek 39:23; Dan 9:16; Ezra 9:7</td>
<td>Dan 9:16</td>
<td>2 Kgs 24:3; Isa 40:2; Jer 15:13; 17:3; Neh 9:37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beth constitutionis (2 times)</td>
<td>Mic 1:5</td>
<td>Mic 1:5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localization (12 times)</td>
<td>Isa 57:17; Ezek 18:19, 20 (2x)</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Kgs 15:3, 26, 34; 16:19, 26, 31; 2 Kgs 3:3; 17:22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modal sense (2 times)</td>
<td>Ps 51:7</td>
<td>Ps 51:7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominalization (3 times)</td>
<td>Ps 5:11; Prov 28:2</td>
<td>Deut 19:15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
shows that the preposition ב can only be used either as beth pretii or in a modal sense.

Regarding the function of a beth pretii, Jenni remarks that “in figurative speech, a retaliating activity of a human or (often) of God is depicted by means of beth pretii as a kind of payment for an offence.” This means that if the preposition ב in Dan 8:12a is understood as beth pretii, the crime or transgression (טפיה) would refer to one committed by the host for which, in an act of retaliation or abandonment, it is given over. The analysis given above shows that the usual phrase to express retaliation for sin or guilt seems to be ב in combination with תפל נ “iniquity” (7 times) or with תפיה / נפש “sin” (6 times). Nevertheless, the concept of retaliation is expressed once by ב + נפש (Isa 50:1), perhaps indicating a plausible alternative for Dan 8:12a as well. Possible translation equivalents for a beth pretii in Dan 8:12a are:

1. “and a host will be given over . . . on account of [its] rebellion”
2. “and a host will be given over . . . for [its] rebellion”
3. “and a host will be given over . . . in exchange for [its] rebellion.”

The function of a modal use of ב is to give answer to the question “how? / in what

1Here, the definitions of the different functions of the preposition ב follow those by Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 71-78, 100-101, 118, 150.
3The terms תפל נ as well as תפיה / נפש, especially in the formulaic phrases with ב, indicate particularly the reality of the act and its consequences. For the holistic concept of offense and consequence with regard to תפיה / נפש see Knierim, Hauptbegriffe für Sünde, 73-75, 89-91, 131; and with regard to תפל נ see ibid., 131, 238, 242, 251.
4In addition the beth pretii for retaliation for sin and guilt is also found in combination with the terms נפש ד “wickedness” (Deut 4:4, 5), תפל י “unfaithful deeds” (Dan 9:7; 1 Chr 9:1), רע נפש תפל “guilt” (Ezra 9:13b; 2 Chr 24:18), תפל י ושם נפש “our evil deeds” (Ezra 9:13a), תפל י ושם נפש “provocation” (1 Kgs 15:30), and הני נפש “blood-guilt” (2 Chr 24:25). See Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 157-158.
manner? / under what circumstances?" The prepositional phrase thus functions as an
adverbial circumstantial phrase. If the preposition ַ in Dan 8:12a indeed indicates
modalization, the phrase ַ would express an abstract of a negative activity (from ַ
"to rebel"), functioning like an adverb. This would mean that the activity described in
Dan 8:12a is carried out rebelliously. The giving of a host is an act of rebellion. To put it
differently, it is said of the host that it is placed (נ) against the tamid or set in control
over the tamid in such a manner that a crime has occurred.

The modal function of ַ can be translated in a variety of ways, differing only in
minor ways. In an attempt to start from broad to specific, at least the following
translations suggest themselves:

1. “and a host will be set against the tamid in rebellion”
2. “and a host will be set against the tamid with rebellion”
3. “and a host will be set against the tamid in a rebellious act”
4. “and a host will be set against the tamid rebelliously”
5. “and a host will be set against the tamid whereby rebellion takes place”

Jenni admits that some of the modal uses may be close to a beth instrumenti and thus the
abstract entity may function as a helping agent (ibid., 330). However, in Dan 8:12 it is not the crime
which sets a host against or in control over the tamid.

The modal use of ַ is found several times in clauses with ַ (see Appendix 2). The
prepositional phrase with ַ can express an abstract of quality (Isa 61:8 and 2 Chr 31:15: “in truth” >
“faithfully”), or an abstract of outer activity (Gen 45:2: “in weeping”) or inner activity expressed by an
intransitive verb (Ezek 36:5: “with wholehearted joy”), or an abstract of an activity which is expressed
Prov 13:10: “through insolence”). Since ַ “to rebel” is a transitive verb, ַ in Dan 8:12a is an
abstract of an activity, not an abstract of quality.

For the purpose of comparing the different translation options of a modal ַ I have chosen to
translate the other clause elements consistently, although other translation equivalents are possible.
6. “and a host will be set against the tāmīd (by the horn), while (the horn is) being rebellious”

7. “and a host will be set against the tāmīd with rebellious intent.”

Translation number 1 is preferable as it represents the broad meaning a modal 3 could have in this clause, and at the same time encompasses the different meanings of the more specific translations.

Which of the two functions of 3 should be favored? Is it modal or a beth pretii?  

Assessing the two options for the function of 3 in Dan 8:12a, it is interesting to note that the term for sin is specified in most of the cases in which it is combined with 3 (69 out of 73). This specification is accomplished either by a pronominal suffix (49 times), by a construct relation (17 times), or by expansion with a relative clause (twice) or a prepositional phrase (once). With a beth pretii the term for sin is specified in all fourteen occurrences, obviously to make clear that it is the offense committed by the person(s) referred to for which retribution is inflicted upon. When the term for sin is used in the absolute without any specification, 3 functions in a modal sense with a transitive verb (twice in Ps 51:7) or in a causal sense with an intransitive verb (Isa 59:3 and, perhaps, Prov 29:6). This observation is important for Dan 8:12a where 3 occurs in the

---

1 The previous conclusion that the verbal root 3l is not the premier factor which determines the semantic function of 3 is important to remember. The consequence at this point is that though the verb 3l occurs often with a beth pretii (cf. Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 150-160), especially in legal and commercial contexts (cf. E. Lipiński, and Heinz-Josef Fabry, "3l nātan," TDOT, 10:96-101), this does not at all mean that the preposition 3 in a 3l-clause has to be a beth pretii.

2 The pronominal suffix refers to the person/s whose sin/s are spoken of. In a construct phrase the word for sin is always in the construct state and the respective absolute designates the person/s who sinned. Similarly an expansion by relative clause or by a prepositional phrase describes or specifies the sin spoken of.
absolute state without any addition or specification. If the preposition ב functions as beth pretii one would expect a pronominal suffix attached tolops or another addition in order to indicate for whose or what sin retaliation is carried out. The absolute use oflops without any specification or addition therefore seems to indicate that ב functions in a modal sense. Indeed, in all the twenty-five occurrences listed in Jenni, in which a modal ב is followed by an abstract referring to deceit or severity (lops belongs to this category), the abstract noun does not have a pronominal suffix. This observation, combined with the conclusion that the verb יָֽשֶׁר is not the primary factor in determining the semantic function of the preposition ב, proves that cases of יָֽשֶׁר with beth pretii (Esth 7:3; Ezra 9:7) are not syntactic parallels to Dan 8:12a.

1The tentativeness of this conclusion is justified by a few cases where a ב functioning in a modal sense is followed by an abstract with a pronominal suffix, for example, in the eight יָֽשֶׁר-clauses with modal ב this occurs once (Hos 13:11).

2Jenni lists the following words and occurrences (Die Praposition Beth, 347): יָֽשֶׁר “deceit” (Gen 27:35; 34:13); יָֽשֶׁר “shrewdness” (Exod 21:14; Josh 9:4); יָֽשֶׁר “craftiness” (2 Kgs 10:19); יָֽשֶׁר “crime” and יָֽשֶׁר “sin” (both Ps 51:7); יָֽשֶׁר “wickedness / evil device” (Prov 21:27); יָֽשֶׁר “injustice” (Isa 61:8, if יָֽשֶׁר is read with a few manuscripts, LXX, Peshitta, and Targum as יָֽשֶׁר; יָֽשֶׁר “wickedness” (Ps 141:4); יָֽשֶׁר “unfaithful act” (Job 22:22a; Ezra 9:2); יָֽשֶׁר “rebellion” (Josh 22:22a); יָֽשֶׁר “oppression” (Ezek 22:7, 12); יָֽשֶׁר “severity” (Exod 1:13, 14; Lev 25:43, 46, 53; Ezek 34:4).

3Pace P. B. Petersen who claims that Ezra 9:7 is “a syntactically parallel example” (206). A comparison of Dan 8:12a with Ezra 9:7 shows some similarities:

Ezra 9:7 יִנְּשָׁכֵת נַהֲרָה יִשֶּׁר נַעֲרֵי נָרִי מְלֹן מָלֵךְ מְלָכֵי אֲשֶׂרֶת הַמַּלְכִּים נַהֲרָה יִשֶּׁר נַעֲרֵי נָרִי מְלֹן מְלָכֵי אֲשֶׂרֶת הַמַּלְכִּים

“and on account of our iniquities we, our kings and our priests have been given into the power of the kings of the lands”

Dan 8:12a יִנְּשָׁכֵת נַעֲרֵי נָרִי מְלָכֵי אֲשֶׂרֶת הַמַּלְכִּים יְשָׁכֵת נַעֲרֵי נָרִי מְלָכֵי אֲשֶׂרֶת הַמַּלְכִּים

Both clauses use the verb יָֽשֶׁר and a prepositional phrase consisting of ב with an abstract noun for sin. However, the prepositional phrase in Ezra 9:7 (נַעֲרֵי נָרִי מְלָכֵי אֲשֶׂרֶת הַמַּלְכִּים) has a pronominal suffix, which I believe is the decisive factor in distinguishing the different function of ב in Ezra 9:7 (beth pretii) from the function of ב in Dan 8:12a (modal beth). Syntactically different are of course the different prepositional phrases with ב (Ezra 9:7) and על (Dan 8:12a). The distinct prepositional phrase ב + figurative יִנְּשָׁכֵת “into the power” in Ezra 9:7 adds to the verbal idea the semantic notion of “giving over” or “handing over.” Such a notion is absent in Dan 8:12a (see further below). In the case of Esth 7:3...
In conclusion, the occurrence of the absolute of בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת without further specification suggests that בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת should be regarded as modal phrase ("in rebellion," "rebelliously").

This inference however is not reached without due caution. The use of ב as בֵּית הַפְּרָטִית ("on account of transgression") as an exceptional case cannot be entirely excluded, though it certainly is the less likely option.

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Meaning of בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת

בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת is one of several Hebrew terms for sin. But what kind of sin does it designate? The scholarly discussion about the exact connotation of בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת centers around the question whether it designates rebellion, crime, legal offense, or covenant treachery.¹

¹Based on the analysis of Exod 22:8, Ludwig Köhler suggested that בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת is a protest or contestation, which then led to the translation "dispute, rebellion" ("Zu Ex 22:8: Ein Beitrag zur Kenntnis des hebräischen Rechts," ZAW 46 [1928]: 213-218). Köhler's view of בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת as rebellious or disputative attitude has initially gained acceptance in later studies. Štefan Porúbčan argues that the noun בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת "indicates an act (or state?) of 'rebellion, revolt', always in moral and religious sense" (Sin in the Old Testament: A Soteriological Study, Slovak Studies, no. 3 [Rome: Herder, 1963], 25). "The root pes', then, presents sin as an act of rebellion, revolt against (or defection from) God's rule and domination over the world and mankind, an insubordination against his laws and commandments" (ibid., 26). Cf. similarly Stanislas Lyonnet and Léopold Sabourin, Sin, Redemption and Sacrifice: A Biblical and Patristic Study, AnBib, no. 48 (Rome: Biblical Institute, 1970), 13: The verb and the noun "designate sins offending man, for example the king, or, more frequently sins offending God, especially when more grievous sins are involved. In their proper sense these terms designate a rebellion of man against God, but sometimes also a rebellion against man or a human institution." Köhler's understanding has been challenged by Rolf Knierim (Hauptbegriffe für Sünde, 143-160). For Knierim, בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת "does not describe the attitude but the criminal act," and "whoever commits בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת does not merely rebel or protest against Yahweh but breaks with him, takes away what is his, robs, embezzles, misappropriates it" ("בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת" crime," TLOT, 2:1036). בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת is then equivalent to crime; the term "fundamentally applies to all types of legally definable criminal acts" (ibid.; cf. Hauptbegriffe für Sünde, 176-184). Knierim's suggestion is reflected in the definition and translation equivalents in HALOT, 3:981-982. There, the verbal root בֵּיתֵי נַעֲדוּת is translated with "break with, break away from,
It seems that the consensus tends to regard יַעַטְס, correctly, as an offensive act (of breaking a relationship or law) that signals a rebellious attitude. It is a “willful, knowledgeable violation of a norm or standard.”\(^1\) יַעַטְס is generally the term used to describe sin as a rebellious act against God and should thus be defined as an “inexpiable, defiant sin.”\(^2\) In most contexts יַעַטְס “is a theological term because the deeds it describes affect Yahweh or his sovereignty and consequently require his judgment or forgiveness.”\(^3\) This is especially true for how יַעַטְס is used in Dan 8.

In the context of Dan 8:12a and 8:13c, יַעַטְס should be understood as referring to a violation of a divine norm, as a rebellious act against God. The cry for divine intervention and judgment in vs. 13c uses among others the term יַעַטְס, which is one of the offenses that demand a divine response.

Seebass concludes that יַעַטְס is best designated as legal offense (Rechtsbruch), “a general term for various offenses arousing outrage or indignation” (Ringgren and Seebass, 12:141). Robert Koch understands יַעַטְס as a “covenant term” designating relational breaches, especially with the covenant lord (Die Sünde im Alten Testament [Frankfurt a. M.: Lang, 1992], 27-28, 43). In like manner and building on the analysis of Seebass, Carpenter and Grisanti argue for a definition of יַעַטְס in the context of covenant: “it occurs most frequently to designate the disruption of an alliance through violation of a covenant” so that “in a fundamental sense pēdā‘ represents covenant treachery” (Eugene Carpenter and Michael E. Grisanti, “יַעַטְס [# 7322],” NIDOTTE, 3:707). In the recent TRE article on sin, Knierim still maintains his former position, though he appears to bring the concepts of crime (act) and rebellion (attitude) closer together. Accordingly, יַעַטְס describes an intentional breaking away which then acquires the sense of rebellion and revolt. “A breach is primarily not to be understood as temporary behavior but as its fact that has taken place, been carried out and completed” (“Sünde II. Altes Testament,” TRE [2001], 32:366). Here, Knierim’s position is much closer to the positions of Seebass and of Carpenter and Grisanti.

---

1 Robin C. Cover, “Sin, Sinners (OT),” ABD, 6:32.
This brings up whether ἁμαρτίαι in Dan 8:12-13 refers to the sins or the apostasy of the host, which then is identified with the host of heaven, God’s people,1 or to the rebellious offense of the horn.2 The term itself does not offer much help. Although ἁμαρτίαι often refers to serious offenses committed by people who are in a relationship with God, it can also refer to those committed by foreign cities and nations (e.g., Amos 1:3, 6, 9, 11, 13: 2:1) or by the unrepentant in Israel (e.g., Pss 5:10; 37:38; 89:33).

There are two reasons advanced for linking ἁμαρτίαι with the host of heaven so that it refers to the sins of God’s people. First, the prepositional phrase ἁμαρτίαι in vs. 12a is said to consist of a ὑπὲρ ἀποκαταστάσεως of a ὑπὲρ ἀποκαταστάσεως. In this instance the clause would mean that a host (God’s people) is given over for the sake of or because of its transgression. However, as shown above, in such a construction with a transitive verb the term for sin always carries a pronominal suffix to identify the person or group who is acting in violation. In Dan 8:12a this is not the case. For this reason it is better not to attribute ἁμαρτίαι to the host of heaven. A second argument proposed is that the relation between Dan 8 and Dan 9 should also extend to include the nature of the sins. In other words, since the sins mentioned in the prayer of Dan 9, and maybe also the ἁμαρτίαι in 9:24, seem to refer to the sins of God’s people, ἁμαρτίαι in Dan 8 should be interpreted similarly. By doing so, the

1So, e.g., Jerome, 855; Keil, 300; Behrmann, 54; Prince, “On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; Lattey, 86; Young, Daniel, 172; Barnes, 2:112; Baldwin, 158; P. B. Petersen, 207-208. Though Hasel offers the possibility that the prepositional phrase could describe the host’s action (“in” or “with” transgression), he believes that the preposition expresses cause in the sense that the host’s action causes transgression among God’s people (“The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 417-418, 441). For a few scholars the transgression can refer to the wickedness displayed by the horn or hostile host or to the transgressions of God’s people (so Terry, 61-62, Rose and Fuller, 344; Slotki [1951], 67).

covenant context of the prayer in Dan 9 is transferred to the vision in Dan 8. However, whereas the sins in Dan 9 are correctly identified as the sins of God’s people, in Dan 8 such a relationship is not stated at all.¹ In chap. 8 “little evidence” exists for attributing the rebellion to God’s people.² The idea therefore to infer the concepts of the prayer in chap. 9, where God’s people are responsible for the Babylonian exile, into chap. 8 without any specific evidence should be rejected.

The יָשָׁב mentioned in Dan 8:12a and 8:13c should rather be regarded as the horn’s violation. First, the immediate context describes only activities of the horn. No activities of the terrorized host of heaven are mentioned, which in the text is completely passive. The passage is solely concerned with the horn and its presumptuous and rebellious attitude and behavior, and the term יָשָׁב fits well with such a portrait of the horn. Second, the syntactic analysis of vs. 13c in combination with the comparison of Dan 8:13c with 11:31 and 12:11 will show that the devastating sin (גֵּיאָב יָשָׁב) is given or set up in replacement of the tämi’d.³ The use of יָשָׁב with the definite article refers back to its occurrence in vs. 12a and there seems to designate the transgression or rebellion of the logical subject of vs. 12a, that is, the horn. In vs. 13c it is extremely difficult to regard the host of heaven as the agent of the transgression or rebellion,⁴ considering that the other elements in vs. 13c all point to activities of which the horn is

¹For the intertextual relationship between Dan 8 and Dan 9 see chapter 4 (below).
²So Longman, Daniel, 204; cf. 209.
³See below.
⁴So also Collins, Daniel (1993), 335.
the agent. And third, a comparison of the phrase נִצָּפָה תְּלֵם in 8:13c with similar phrases in both 11:31 (תְּרָגֵה מְשֻׂפָּה) and 12:11 (וְנִצָּפָה מְשֻׂפָּה) shows that the term נִצָּפָה stands in paradigmatic relationship to the term נִצָּפָה “abomination.” The replacement has anything to do with the transgression of God’s people. Hence, נִצָּפָה in 8:13c should not be linked to rebellious sins of the host of heaven or God’s people.

In sum, the term נִצָּפָה in Dan 8:12a and 8:13c is used in reference to the criminal activity of the horn and its host. Since the term occurs in a cultic context it signifies the religious-cultic dimension of the horn’s “high-handed” offense. In Dan 8, נִצָּפָה is frequently considered as an equivalent to נִצָּפָה and is interpreted in light of the supposed historical context of the Antiochus era. The majority of translations offered in lexica as well as the explanations in a number of commentaries reflect this tendency to interpret נִצָּפָה as referring to the heathen altar and worship as well as to the unclean sacrifices

---

1One is reminded of the Hebrew idiom נִצָּפָה “high-handedly” (Num 15:30; cf. 33:3; Exod 14:8) that describes a person’s deliberate defiance and “conveys the sense of brazen or blatant behavior” (Levine, Numbers 1-20, 398). In the cultic context in Num 15:30, the phrase is used for the transgressor who rebels against God consciously or wantonly, in opposition to the inadvertent sinner (לְכָל הָאָדָם; Num 15:24-29).

2There is a subtle difference between viewing נִצָּפָה and נִצָּפָה as parallel terms (as argued above) and viewing נִצָּפָה and נִצָּפָה as equivalents. One should avoid conflating the meaning of נִצָּפָה with the meaning of נִצָּפָה. In Dan 8, the term נִצָּפָה is probably used for the specific reasons. See the literary and thematic analysis (below).

offered instead of the daily sacrifices. Here the interpretative meaning is being preferred over the semantic meaning. However, it seems better to understand הָעֵבָדִים as designating the specific transgression of setting up a host against the תֶּמֶד (vs. 12a), referred to as the devastating, rebellious sin (vs. 13c), as well as the horn’s rebellious attitude in doing so. Such an offense desecrates God and defiles his sanctuary.

**Meaning of the Clause**

The analysis above has demonstrated again the close interrelation of syntax and semantics. It is now possible to combine the analyses of the individual clause elements in order to determine the meaning of the clause as a whole. Due mainly to the multi-functional character of the prepositions () and b, but also due to the non-designation of the logical subject and the indefiniteness of הָעֵבָדִים, two different understandings of vs. 12a seem to be possible. The analyses of the individual clause elements provide the following two sets of functions and translation equivalents:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>הָעֵבָדִים</th>
<th>לָעֵבָדָה</th>
<th>הָעֵבָדִים</th>
<th>הָעֵבָדִים</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>modal beth</td>
<td>disadvantage</td>
<td>agent: horn</td>
<td>counter-host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in rebellion</td>
<td>against the תֶּמֶד</td>
<td>will be given</td>
<td>and a host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with rebellion</td>
<td>metaphorical locative</td>
<td>will be set</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(rebellion of the horn)</td>
<td>in control over . . .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. beth pretti</td>
<td>comitative</td>
<td>agent: God</td>
<td>host of heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on account of rebellion</td>
<td>together with . . .</td>
<td>will be given over</td>
<td>and a host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because of rebellion</td>
<td>in addition to . . .</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(rebellion of “a host”)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first understanding of vs. 12a is that the horn as agent sets a host, which is not the host of heaven, either against the ūmād or in control over the ūmād. The activity of the horn is marked by rebellion against God, that is, the activity itself is a rebellious act and/or the horn, while acting, is in a rebellious state.¹ I call this view the “horn’s counter-host understanding” (patient = host of the horn/counter-host; agent = horn). This view could also be altered insofar as the anti-host is permitted by God upon the ūmād.²

The second understanding of vs. 12a is that God as agent gives a host over into the power of the horn together with the ūmād that God also gives over. The handing over of the host by the initiative of God is an act of judgment or retaliation for the transgression committed by some of the host of heaven.³ I call this view the “divine retaliation understanding” (patient = host of heaven; agent = God). Here, it should be noted that this view could be altered insofar as the host of heaven is still being handed over, probably with God’s permission, but that the transgression or violence is attributed to the horn.⁴


²So Seow, Daniel, 124.

³Jerome, 855; Kliefoth, 257; Caspari, 137, 139; Wordsworth, 39; Fausset, 1:637; Knabenbauer, 213; Prince, “On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; idem, Daniel, 141, 147; Stokmann, 127-128; Young, Daniel, 172; Barnes, 2:112; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 163; Péter-Contesse and Ellington, 213-214; Miller, Daniel, 227; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 171; Carpenter and Grisanti, NIDOTTE, 3:709; P. B. Petersen, 207; cf. Rohling, Daniel, 239 (with subject “war, warfare”).

⁴So Wambacq, 126-127; Collins, Daniel (1993), 335; Lust, “Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 291; Longman, Daniel, 204.
Before one can decide which one of the two suggested meanings of vs. 12a is more plausible, the following arguments need to be considered, some of which have already been investigated by the analyses of the individual clause elements above.

The divine retaliation understanding

There are several reasons brought forward to argue that the host is given over and that God is the agent of vs. 12a. First, the passive form רָפָא is regarded as passivum divinum, that is, the passive is used exactly because it is God who should be understood as the agent. However, immediately before vs. 12a another passive form is used—the Hophal רָפָא—which has the horn as agent: “the foundation of his sanctuary is thrown down” (vs. 11c). Obviously it has to be determined by the immediate context if a passive functions as divine passive which would indicate that God is the agent. For instance, out of seventy-one Niphal forms in the Hebrew sections of Daniel only eleven appear to have God as logical subject. The ratio of divine passives in the Aramaic section of Daniel is higher. Still, a divine passive always has to be determined contextually.


2Dan 8:1 (2x), 14, 25; 9:24, 26e (?); 27 (?); 10:1a, 12; 11:36g; 12:10 (?).

3In the Hebrew sections of Daniel, in addition to the Niphal forms, the only Pual form has God as logical subject (10:11), and the four Hophal forms seem not to have God as logical subject (8:11c; 9:1, 21; 12:11). In the Aramaic section of Daniel, 23 Peil forms have God (2:19, 30; 4:30; 5:21 [2x]; 5:24 [2x], 25, 27, 28 [2x]); 7:4 [3x], 6, 9, 10, 11 [2x], 12, 14, 22, 27) and 7 Peil forms have
Second, it could be argued that the verb הָנַה in the book of Daniel is associated with divine action. In the BH section this is less evident, since only in four of seventeen cases God clearly functions as the subject of the verb הָנַה. In BA, however, the picture is different. There, it could be argued that God is the agent of הָנַה or בָּהֵן “give” in nineteen of twenty-four occurrences. Interestingly, for each passive verbal form of בָּהֵן God is the implied agent, because it is always used expressing divine predictions (Dan 4:13; 5:28; chap. 7) that are based on a God who is lord of history, who removes and establishes kings. Nevertheless, the passive forms of הָנַה in the prediction in Dan 11:6, 11 do not appear to have God as agent. It is again the immediate context which determines whether God is actually doing the giving. And the question אָמַר הָאָנָא “how long?” posed by a celestial being in Dan 8:13c followed by a list of horrors caused by the horn implies rather clearly that in vss. 9-12 God is not perceived to be in control of the events.

Third, the act of giving is said to imply “delegation of power in history” and thus human beings as logical subject (3:21 [2x], 29; 4:3; 5:30; 6:11, 18, 27); 6 Hophal forms have God (4:33 [2x]; 5:20; 7:4, 5, 11) and 3 Hophal forms have human beings as logical subject (5:13, 15; 6:24). Though it may be disputable, I take the passive verb forms in the vision and interpretation of Dan 7 with God as logical subject.

1The Niphal of הָנַה occurs in the Book of Daniel only in 8:12a; 11:6, 11. The Qal form occurs in 1:2, 9, 12, 16, 17; 8:13; 9:3, 10; 10:12, 15; 11:17, 21, 31; 12:11. In BA הָנַה occurs in 2:16; 4:14, 22, 29. The BA בָּהֵן, a replacement for the perfect of הָנַה, occurs in the Peal in 2:21, 23, 37, 38, 48; 3:28; 5:17, 18, 19; 6:13; as Peal passive in 5:28; 7:4, 6, 11, 12, 14, 22, 27; and as Hitpeel in 4:13; 7:25.

2Dan 1:2, 9, 17; 9:10.

3God is the agent of giving in 3 out of 4 occurrences of Peal imperfect forms of הָנַה (Dan 4:14, 22, 29), in 6 out of 10 occurrences of a Peal perfect forms of בָּהֵן “give” (2:21, 23, 37, 38; 5:18, 19), in all 8 occurrences of a Peal passive or Peal form of בָּהֵן (5:28; 7:4, 6, 11, 12, 14, 22, 27) and in the 2 occurrences of a Hitpeel form of בָּהֵן (4:13; 7:25).
seems to point to God as the one who delegates power in 8:12a.¹ It is indeed true that the verb $\text{ласт}^4$ can suggest “a shift in the delegation of power,”² but by the same token the “delegation of power” could be initiated by the horn giving it to a counter-host also.

Fourth, the other occurrences of $\text{לָטָר}$ in vss. 10-13 all refer to the host of heaven and thus “an abrupt change from the meaning of $\text{לָטָר}$ elsewhere in the chapter can hardly be accepted.”³ In this statement Collins refers to the referential meaning or identity of $\text{לָטָר}$ since its lexical meaning in both suggested interpretations is the same, namely, “host.” The indefiniteness of $\text{לָטָר}$ in 8:12a however seemingly indicates that in this instance $\text{לָטָר}$ refers to another host rather than the host of heaven.

Fifth, if Dan 8:13 were to link the terms $\text{לָטָר}$ and $\text{לָטָר}$ to the verb $\text{לָטָר}$ it would have a similar meaning as in vs. 12a if “a host” were to refer to the host of heaven.⁴ Careful analysis of vs. 13c however shows that the infinitive $\text{לָט}$ (from $\text{לָט}$) should not be connected with the following $\text{לָט}^1$ but rather with the preceding $\text{לָט}^1$.⁵ Thus, there is no combination of the terms $\text{לָט}$ and $\text{לָט}$ in vs. 13 to function as a possible parallel to vs. 12a.

¹P. B. Petersen, 208; see also André LaCocque, “Allusions to Creation in Daniel 7,” in The Book of Daniel: Composition and Reception, ed. J. J. Collins and P. W. Flint, VTSup, no. 83, FIOTL, no. 2 (Leiden: Brill, 2001), 1:123. Both authors cite Dan 1:2; 2:21, 37, 38; 7:6, 12b; 8:12a; LaCocque adds 8:13.
²LaCocque, 123 n. 34.
³Collins, Daniel (1993), 335.
⁴So P. B. Petersen who translates vs. 13c with “until when . . . the sin, causing desolation and the giving over (from $\text{לָט}$, the infinitive used nominally) of both sanctuary and host (לָט) to be trampled down” (208, emphasis his).
⁵See the analysis of vs. 13c below.
Sixth, the idea that God’s people are “given over” is found in Dan 7 and 9. In chap. 7 it is clearly stated that the saints are given over into the power of an enemy king—as in chap. 8 symbolized by a horn—after he is active against the Most High and against the holy ones (Dan 7:25). One may even point out that the Aramaic verb used in 7:25 (נָתַן “to give”) is the equivalent to BH כָּנֵן in 8:12a. However, the two texts should not be considered to express the same thought on the basis of syntactic (different prepositions) and semantic considerations (different logical subjects). Whereas in 7:25 the passive verb, an impersonal or a divine passive, is used with the preposition ב and the noun יד, expressing in a figurative sense the idea of might or power, to designate the giving over of the holy ones of the Most High “into the power” of the horn, in 8:12 the passive verb with the horn as logical subject is used with the preposition לְ to designate the establishing of a host against or in control of the יָדִים.

The difference in prepositional word groups is indeed significant. The idea of persons giving into the power of other persons is expressed by the preposition ב followed by the noun יד or יד in a figurative sense. Jenni counts 214 occurrences of such constructions. The verb predominantly used with figurative יָד “into the power” is כָּנֵן (163 times): 129 times with God as subject, 11 times with humans as subject, and 23 times in intransitive or passive clauses. Since the construction כָּנֵן with figurative יָד is

1Jenni, *Die Präposition Beth*, 198-199.

2Ibid. (this count includes the two passages of ב + יד in Judg 6:13 and Jer 12:7). See also *DCH*, 4:90, which lists 165 passages of ב + יד with כָּנֵן qal and 23 passages with כָּנֵן nif., however, with a slightly different semantic categorization (cf. *DCH*, 5:798, 812). For the other verbs used with figurative יָד “into the power” see Jenni, *Die Präposition Beth*, 199, and *DCH*, 4:90.
also known in the Hebrew of Daniel (1:2; 11:11), and in the Aramaic in the form of בָּרֹאֶה “to give” + יִמָּן (2:38; 7:25) as well,¹ one can infer that the clause in 8:12a, in which יִמָּן is not used, indeed does not designate the giving over of a host into the power of the horn but has a different meaning.²

Moreover, thematically nothing in chap. 7 suggests that the giving of the holy ones into the power of the king happens because of some misbehavior or sin on the part of the holy ones. Since in the vision in Dan 7 the holy ones are not imputed with transgression or rebellion, one should be extremely hesitant to ascribe such things to the host of heaven in the parallel vision in Dan 8. In contrast, in chap. 9 the sins (from אָשֶׁר) and iniquities (from עָשָׂר) of the people which kindled God’s anger and wrath were the reason for the desolation of Jerusalem and God’s people (9:16) as well as the sanctuary (9:17).³ The covenant and the breaking of the covenant are certainly a major theological theme in chap. 9. Whether it is hinted at in Dan 8:12a is however another question. That the covenant concept is foundational to the prayer in Dan 9 should not lead one at any rate to infer that the covenant idea, in particular the breaking of the covenant, must also

¹In BA figurative יִמָּן “in the power” occurs with the verb בָּרֹאֶה also in Ezra 5:12. Moreover it is used in nominal clauses in Dan 5:23; Ezra 7:14, 25.

²This is also the reason why Ezra 9:7 should not be regarded as syntactic parallel to Dan 8:12 (pace P. B. Petersen, 206). Although the prepositional phrase קָנָה לַחֲטָאִיהֶן “on account of our iniquities” in Ezra 9:7 appears to be close to יִמָּן “in transgression” in Dan 8:12a—however, note the significant difference that יִמָּן carries the pronominal suffix, whereas יִמָּן does not (see p. 283 n. 3)—the clause in Ezra 9:7, unlike Dan 8:12a, is also construed with figurative יִמָּן “into the power.”

³Importing the covenant theme from Dan 9, P. B. Petersen detects in 8:12a a covenantal pattern of cause and effect, whereby the sin of God’s people would be the cause and the giving over of God’s people the effect (204, 209-211).
be present in Dan 8:12, even though chap. 9 is closely linked to chap. 8 for a number of other reasons.¹

Seventh, the other two passive forms of נָתַן in Daniel (11:6, 11) describe the activity of the giving up/over of persons. Yet, they do not form a parallel to 8:12a since the clause structures are decisively different: subject + verb (11:6)² and subject + verb + prepositional phrase with ב and figurative י (11:11) as opposed to subject + verb + prepositional phrase with ב (8:12a).

A major problem with the “host given over” view is that the preposition ב needs to be attributed comitative function (“together with” or “in addition to”). This is hardly possible in Dan 8:12a in light of the above presented reasons which shall be briefly restated here: (1) the host and the tamî’d do not share the same semantic group and (2) they do not stand next to each other, both of which would usually be the case with ב comitative; and more importantly, (3) the sequence of events in vss. 10-11—attack on the host, then attack on the tamî’d—is contrary to what would be expressed in vs. 12a if ב had comitative function; and (4) it is inconceivable that God gives the tamî’d (as understood in the analysis of vs. 11b above) over to the horn.

Furthermore, such an interpretation would necessitate a change of agent from vs. 12a to vs. 12b without any indication, which raises another major problem. According to the proposed understanding of vs. 12a the agent in this clause is God, whereas the agent

¹See the analysis of textual relations between Dan 8:9-14 and Dan 9 in chapter 4 (below).

²The use of נָתַן with personal object and without any prepositional phrase appears to have the meaning of “hand over,” “deliver up,” “surrender” (DCH, 5:786, 812).
in vs. 12b would be the horn. The difficulty is that there is no agent mentioned in vs. 12b and that the verb הָנְלָכָה neither with an indicative nor with an optative meaning indicates a change of agent but rather indicates sequential action to vs. 12a. Thus, if God would be the agent of vs. 12a one cannot really explain a sudden change to another agent in vs. 12b. Neither is the sense of the text increased if one would assume that the grammatical subject of vs. 12a (i.e., “a host”) would be the agent in vs. 12b, since why would some of the host of heaven throw down the truth?

And finally, the context of vs. 12, in fact the entire chap. 8, carries no clear sign that the host of heaven would engage in sin or transgression. There is just no clear evidence that God would hand over some of the host of heaven to that power which is attacking him, that is, to the horn.

The horn’s counter-host understanding

In addition to the considerations refuting the “host given over” view, which do not need to be repeated here, several other reasons point to the fact that in vs. 12a a counter-host is set in place by the horn. The foremost reason in vs. 12a itself is the indefiniteness of נָצַע, which in all probability indicates that another host is in view here rather than the host of heaven mentioned previously in vss. 10-11.

Second, it is crucial to put vs. 12a into the context of vss. 9-11 and 12-13. The horn as agent in vs. 12a fits better following the text in vss. 9-11 in which the horn is the sole agent. Also, as far as the agent or the subject is concerned, the succession from vs. 12a to vs. 12b is smooth. Both the horn or a counter-host fit well as subject in vs. 12b-d.
Third, if according to the analysis of vs. 13c below the words הָנָּה שָׁמַשׁ בָּשָׁם in vs. 13c indeed form a unit (as opposed to the view that הָנָּה belongs to דַּרְכֶּנָּה מַרְכֶּבָּה), the giving of the transgression in vs. 13c has rebellious characteristics and the activity in vs. 12a, to which vs. 13c obviously refers, should be regarded as the activity of the horn. The textual relationship between בּוֹשָׁה in 8:13c and בּוֹשָׁה in 11:31 and 12:11 underscores such an interpretation.

The fourth argument originates from the structural analysis of Dan 8:9-14 (see below). It shows that vs. 12a serves as an audible explanation or expansion to vs. 11b, explaining how the horn removes the תָּםִיד from the commander of the host of heaven, namely, by setting another host against the תָּםִיד. The “host given over” meaning would be difficult to incorporate in any structure of Dan 8:9-14 since there seems no obvious reason why the text, after portraying the horn’s attacks on the commander, his תָּםִיד, and the foundation of his sanctuary, would advert to God’s giving over the host and after such a brief interlude turn back to the activities of the horn. The “host given over” understanding interrupts the flow of the text and its information structure. From this viewpoint, the counter-host meaning should be preferred.

Fifth, the preposition בּ is best understood as having metaphorical-locational sense or as indicating disadvantage. In contrast to the comitative function (see above) there cannot be forwarded any counterarguments against these functions.

One should point out that some aspects are not decisive in determining the clausal meaning. For example, the prepositional phrase בּ can be subjected to two different interpretations, either using beth pretii or modal ב, although from syntactic considerations
the latter is much more likely. Using the former it indicates God giving over a host in retaliation for transgression. Using modal  ה the phrase indicates that the horn’s giving of a host has criminal intent and is a rebellious act against God. For such a modal use of the preposition argues the fact that the noun for sin, מְפֹרֶה, is used without a pronominal suffix in the absolute state. Also, the ensuing interpretation by the angel does not shed further light on the meaning of vs. 12a. Neither a counter-host nor the retaliating or permissive giving of the heavenly host into the power of the king is mentioned in 8:23-25.

In the further analysis, other arguments for the counter-host understanding will be detected, which should be mentioned at this place. They are connected with the structural place of vs. 12. Without anticipating the analysis, the poetic elements in vs. 11 show that this verse is the climax of the vision proper, and the change of tense in vs. 12 indicates that the vision proper came to an end in vs. 11 and that vs. 12 starts the audition. This structural arrangement leads to the conclusion that one of the holy beings explains in vs. 12a how the horn takes away the tamî d from the commander of the host of heaven: by setting up a host against the tamî d. Finally, although the unusual feminine gender of נָּקַש in vs. 12a cannot serve as a syntactic argument to determine the referential identity of the host, it does serve a rhetoric function by surprising the readers, who might have regarded נָּקַש as masculine, and thus heightening their attention to the introduction of a new agent.

Conclusion

Two different interpretations for vs. 12a try to do justice to the syntactic-semantic features of the clause: the divine retaliation understanding and the horn’s counter-host
understanding. Since many features of the text can be satisfied by either interpretation, it is evident that those aspects of any analysis which clearly tend towards one or the other solution are the crucial factors in deciding the meaning of vs. 12a. Such unambiguous features are the agent in the clauses preceding vs. 12a (the horn), the agent of vs. 12b (the horn or the host) which according to the feminine w’yiqtol form רְשֵׁם is linked to the agent or subject of vs. 12a, the indefiniteness of נָבָנִי, the unlikeliness of the preposition בַּי functioning as comitative, and the association of נַעֲשֶׂה in vs. 13c with the horn's rebellious activities and with עֲשָׂרָה in 11:31 and 12:11, and the structural function of vs. 12. All these suggest that in vs. 12a the agent is the horn and that the host mentioned in this verse is not the host of heaven but a different host, thus supporting the “horn’s counter-host understanding.”

A condensed description of the most likely syntactic arrangement of vs. 12a with its respective meaning can now be given. Daniel 8:12a is a x-yiqtol clause. The Niphal verb יִנָּשׁ has passive meaning, the noun נָבָנִי is the subject of the passive verb and refers to a host different from נָבָנִי in vss. 10 and 11. Regarding the function of the prepositions in vs. 12a it can be stated that (1) בַּי is used in metaphorical-locational sense (“control over”) or with the semantic function of disadvantage (“against”), and (2) ב is used in a modal sense so that either the activity is criminal and rebellious or the agent is in a condition of rebellion and transgression. A proper translation of vs. 12a would therefore be as follows: “And a host was set against the tamid in rebellion.”
Clause 12b

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

12b  וָֽיַּקְּטַ֣ל הַמֶּֽכֶּרֶסֶתּוֹ

waw+Hiphil-ipf/3sgf/ noun/sgf/ noun/sgf/+he locale

w'yiqtol(waw+Hiphil-ipf/3sgf/) noun/sgf/ noun/sgf/+he locale

predicate [+subject] +direct object +description of change of location

Clause-type: w'yiqtol.

The short imperfect form וָֽיַּקְּטַ֣ל הַמֶּֽכֶּֽרֶסֶתּוֹ with conjunctive waw invites two discussions.

The first concerns the subject of the verbal form: Is it the host or the horn? The second discussion revolves around the form of the verb itself: Does מֶּֽכֶּֽרֶסֶתּוֹ have a perfective or an imperfective aspect, and, if it is imperfective, does it have optative or indicative mood? It is exactly because of these two areas of discussion that suggestions for different vocalizations arise.

Subject of מֶּֽכֶּֽרֶסֶתּוֹ

The view enjoying the widest acceptance maintains that the subject of vs. 12b, and thus also of vs. 12c and 12d, is the horn.² The reasoning usually goes as follows. If the

---

¹The analysis here supersedes my earlier tentative analysis where I was inclined to view the horn as the subject of vs. 12b-12d (Pröbstle, “A Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12,” 88-89).

²Most scholars argue that the subject of vs. 12b-d is the horn: Hävernick, 280; van Lengerke, 383; Kliefoth, 258; Kranichfeld, 295; Keil, 301; Zöckler, 176-177; Tiefenthal, 269; Prince, “On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; idem, Daniel, 147, 242; Rose and Fuller, 344; Obbink, 110; Leupold, 349; Young, Daniel, 173; Bentzen, 56; H. Schneider, Daniel, 54; Plöger, Daniel, 122; Wood, 216; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 158; Maier, 306; Anderson, Signs and Wonders, 96; Hassel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 418; Haag, Daniel, 64; Miller, Daniel, 228; Stahl, Weltengagement, 174; Bauer,
horn is indeed the logical subject of vs. 12a, that is, the agent of the passive היעד, it could function as the subject and the agent of the next three sentences (8:12b-d). All the activities described in vss. 9-12a can be attributed to the horn which is introduced in vs. 9a. In the passive sentences of this section (11c, 12a) the grammatical subject is not the horn, but it still is the logical subject, the one who is the understood agent even though not explicitly mentioned. This function of the horn as agent could be extended in vss. 12b-d. However, the shift of verbal gender with the horn as subject, from masculine verb forms in vs. 11a-b to feminine ones in vs. 12b-d, would be difficult to explain.\footnote{From a text-oriented viewpoint, it is unsatisfactory to suppose (with Lebram, 
Daniel, 95, and Stahl, 174) that there is a textual discontinuity between vs. 12a and 12b and to regard vss. 11-12a as a later interpolation, so that 12b continues vs. 10 and returns again to the horn as subject.} There is no apparent reason for such a shift. Put differently, the feminine verbal gender in vs. 12a-d should not be understood as referring to the horn since the horn was just previously associated with masculine verbs in vs. 11a-b. Moreover, the word היעד (vs. 9a), after two passive clauses (vss. 11c, 12a) and without being reiterated again, seems too far away (vs. 9a) to be understood as the subject of vs. 12b-d. To identify the subject of vs 12b-d as the horn becomes even more difficult if one holds to the position that the agent of vs. 12a is God,\footnote{Scholars who believe that God is the logical subject of vs. 12a and the horn is the subject of vs. 12b-d include Kliefoth, 257-258; Prince, “On Daniel viii. 11, 12,” 204; idem, 
Daniel, 147; Leupold, 348-349; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 158, 163; Miller, 
Daniel, 227-228; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 171; P. B. Petersen, 206-207.} since there would be an abrupt change in agent between vs. 12a (God) and vs. 12b

Das Buch Daniel, 171; P. B. Petersen, 206-207. The same position is expressed when some suggest that the subject of vs. 12a-12d is the horn (in vs. 12a the horn is of course the logical subject or agent): Niditch, 217, 220; Shea, “Spatial Dimensions,” 516-517; Redditt, 139. Some take the horn as subject of vs. 12c-12d but consider vs. 12b as passive like vs. 12a (Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Montgomery, 337; Charles, 202-203) or leave the subject of vs. 12b unidentified (Langer, 91).
(horn) without any indication whatsoever.

The other possibility, one that is argued by only a few scholars, is that the subject in 12b-12d is אֶפֶם which is the grammatical subject in vs. 12a.\(^1\) The syntactic evidence supports this view. Verse 12 shows a sequence of four verbal forms which all have the same gender and number, that is, feminine singular. Further, no subject is introduced in 12b-d. One would usually expect that the subject of the feminine singular verb in vs. 12a is also the subject of the singular feminine verbs in vs. 12b-d. Thus, אֶפֶם “a host” may not only be regarded as the subject of vs. 12a but also as the subject of the following three sentences. Additional support for this view is received by the sentence-initial position of “a host” in vs. 12a indicating argument focus, that is, after the horn was the subject of the verbs in vss. 9-11b, a new entity is introduced by means of placing אֶפֶם in the preverbal field. This new subject will be the topic in the following three clauses (vs. 12b-d). As a consequence, the noun אֶפֶם, as subject of 12a-d, differs in meaning from אֶפֶם in vss. 10a, 10b, and 11a, designating a counter-host which is hostile to the truth.\(^2\)

The lexical relation between Dan 8:12 and 8:24 also plays a role regarding the subject in vs. 12b. The verbal forms of אֶפֶם and אֶפֶם hif. in vs. 12c-d occur again, albeit

\(^1\)So Kliefoth, 257; Rohling, Daniel, 239 (אֶפֶם “war, warfare” is subject of 12a-12d because of the feminine verb forms); König 3:506 (§364f); Goldstein, I Maccabees, 145 n. 250; Hasslberger, 102 (the fronting of אֶפֶם in vs. 12a introduces a new topic); Gane, “The Syntax of Tet Ve... in Daniel 8:13,” 381; Lucas, Daniel, 202, 206. Aalders believes that the subject of 12a-b is אֶפֶם “worship service,” whereas with the two perfects in 12c-d the description of the vision is resumed and the horn is again the subject. Verse 12a and 12b is then an insert by about the counter worship service (Daniël [1962], 178-179; earlier, Aalders interpreted the two perfects as wqatal forms with future time reference naturally following the yiqtol forms in 12a-b [Het boek Daniel, 165]). Hasel allows for the possibility that the host is the subject of vs. 12b, but on contextual reasons (referring to vss. 24-25) he decides to take the horn as subject (“The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 418).

\(^2\)So similarly Hasslberger, 102.
in different sequence, in the interpretation of the vision in 8:24d-e. This establishes an indisputable textual and thematic relation between 8:12c-d and 24d-e. In 8:24, the subject of נִמְשָׁה and נָבַש hif. is the “king” (vs. 23), which is the interpretive equivalent to the horn in the vision.

For some, this link is the key to identifying the subject in vs. 12b. Just as the subject of נִמְשָׁה and נָבַש hif. in Dan 8:24 is the king, the subject of נִמְשָׁה and נָבַש hif. in Dan 8:12 can be the horn, and as a consequence, the subject of the yiqtol form נַמְשָׁה can be the horn, too. In other words, the sequence of the verbal forms in vs. 12 together with the interpretive key of vs. 24d-e may suggest that the horn is the subject of vs. 12b-d.

However, it is equally possible that the horn by setting up the host is acting by means of this host so much so that the acts of the host and the horn are one and the same. This way the angelic interpretation would clearly reveal that the counter-host is nothing else but a medium of the horn. When the counter-host performs and prospers (vs. 12c-d) the horn prospers and performs (vs. 24d-e). Thus, vs. 12b-d describes the activity of the host acting under the control and leadership of the horn.

In summary, it is grammatically better to regard the four feminine singular verb

1In the book of Daniel, נִמְשָׁה and נָבַש hif. occur together only in Dan 8:12, 25 and 11:36, which again shows the intertextual importance of Dan 11:36 for Dan 8:12, 25. Outside the book of Daniel, נִמְשָׁה and נָבַש hif. occur beside each other in Ps 1:3 and 2 Chr 31:21, in a parallelism in Ps 37:7, in close proximity in Josh 1:8 and 1 Chr 22:13[12], and נָבַש occurs in an object clause to the verb נִמְשָׁה in Gen 39:3, 23 and 2 Chr 7:11.

2Hasslberger does not feel the strength of this argument, because he views Dan 8:11-14 as a later interpolation (17-20). However, his argument that the different sequence of נִמְשָׁה and נָבַש hif. shows that different authors had been at work is not convincing.

3I took this view previously (Pröbstle, “A Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12,” 88).
forms in vs. 12 as having the same grammatical subject, namely, the host. The lexical relation between Dan 8:12 and 8:24 makes it sufficiently clear that this host acts as an instrument for and in the interest of the horn.

Aspect and mood of יִקְתֹּל

The function of the short יִקְתֹּל יִקְתֹּל depends upon the temporal setting of the context, and particularly on how one understands the יִקְתֹּל verb יִקְתֹּל in vs. 12a since it provides the setting for all of vs. 12. Two different aspects have been suggested for יִקְתֹּל: a perfective or a non-perfective (imperfective) aspect. First, if vs. 12 shows a past setting יִקְתֹּל has a perfective aspect (“and it cast truth to the ground”). It is then either revocalized as active וַיִּקְתֹּל or the passive וַיִּקְתֹּל form יִקְתֹּל, or the וַיִּקְתֹּל form יִקְתֹּל is regarded in past contexts as alternative to the וַיִּקְתֹּל form, which is certainly a possible function of וַיִּקְתֹּל forms. In these suggestions the יִקְתֹּל

---

1 Driver, Treatise, 216 (§174); Moore, 197; Driver, Daniel, 117. Driver suggests that יִקְתֹּל is a false vocalization of יִקְתֹּל due to false exegesis, originating in the preceding verb יִקְתֹּל being referred incorrectly to the future (Treatise, 216 [§174]). Accordingly, the following two וַיִּקְתֹּל forms are regarded by him as simple perfects (ibid., 162-163 n. 3, supplemented by the correction on p. xvi). Interestingly, later Driver notes that the word as it stands in the MT “ought strictly to be construed as a future.” However, because he believes that “the rest of the description is in the past time” he suggests changing the punctuation. The two verbs וַיִּקְתֹּל (vs. 12c-d), which “may denote either future or past time,” are then understood according to the supposed past tense of the previous two verbs (Driver, Daniel, 117).

2 Hitzig, 132; von Gall, 48 n. 4; Kamphausen, 33; Marti, Daniel, 59; Montgomery, 337; Charles, 208; Obbink, 65; Linder, 337.

3 Gibson implies that in Dan 8:12b יִקְתֹּל occurs in past context and is perfective in aspect and thus should be translated as “and it cast truth to the ground” (Syntax, 71 [§62a]). He employs Dan 8:12 as comparison to the יִקְתֹּל form יִקְתֹּל “I brought you up” in Judg 2:1 which describes narrative action (other examples of יִקְתֹּל forms in narrative past contexts cited by Gibson are Pss 80:9-13; 116:3-4; Hab 3:3-5; Job 4:12-16 or Job 3:3; 15:7, 8; Isa 51:2). Gibson lists יִקְתֹּל under instances where the simple וַיִּקְתֹּל is an alternative to וַיִּקְתֹּל (Isa 43:28; 1 Kgs 14:5; Ps 18:43; Dan 8:12b) and thus is consecutive (ibid., 105 [§85c]). Furthermore he distinguishes the...
n3D needs to be interpreted as referring to the past. However, to attribute an imperfect aspect to n3D in a future time setting better fits the function of vs. 12 and its setting in this context.

Second, if vs. 12 shows a non-perfective setting, n3D has a non-perfective or imperfective aspect. Two moods are suggested. On the one hand, the short form may indicate a jussive/optative meaning ("and it shall cast truth to the ground") which is thought to be the usual meaning of a short imperfect form. On the other hand, the short imperfect form can have an indicative meaning ("and it will cast truth to the ground"), which would follow the imperfect indicative meaning of n3D in vs. 12a.

There are several different explanations as to why there is a short form for the consecutive function of the yiqtol form in Dan 8:12 from the non-consecutive function of yiqtol forms in other passages (ibid., 104 [§85b]) which are partly used by Ewald, GKC, and Davidson to infer an imperfect aspect to the short yiqtol. For the use of n3D in Dan 8:12 this means that Gibson argues that Dan 8:12 should not be compared with these other passages. Similarly, Josef Tropper includes n3D (Dan 8:12b) in a list of short imperfect forms that have, contextually justified, a perfective-preterite meaning (Deut 32:8b, 18a; 2 Sam 22:14; Isa 12:1b; 42:6a; Hos 6:1b; 11:4b; Ps 18:12; 47:4a; 68:15b; 90:4a; 107:29a; Job 23:11b; 29:3b; 33:11; 40:19b; Dan 8:12b) ("Althebraisches und semitisches Aspektysystem," ZAH 11 [1998]: 169-171).

1 Meinhold suggests a revocalization of the active n3D into the passive n3D with present meaning ("Daniel," 309). However, a change of voice from active to passive is not necessary.

2 For König the jussive form n3D after the yiqtol (n3D) shall cast" (3:506 [§364f]). A. B. Davidson cites among other texts (e.g., Dan 11:4, 10, 16-19, 25, 28, 30 etc.) Dan 8:12 as example for the use of jussive forms which are "full of difficulty" (Hebrew Syntax, 3d ed. [Edinburgh: Clark, 1901], 93 [§65 remark 6]).

3 Ewald cites Dan 8:12 as an example that a modified imperfect with waw is used instead of the imperfect (Syntax, 249 [§343c]). E. J. Revell, "The System of the Verb in Standard Biblical Prose," HUCA 60 (1989): 30 n. 26: "Short imperfect forms are also used at the beginning of a clause with (apparent) indicative meaning in Dan. 8:12, 9:25." Lucas takes n3D as a "simple waw + jussive" being "future in tense" (Daniel, 206) and translates "it will throw truth to the ground" (ibid., 202).
indicative imperfect in Dan 8:12b, but only one is convincing. As Qimron has demonstrated, in poetry and late biblical prose “the conjunctive waw engenders the shortened form of the imperfect.” Hence, according to Qimron’s observations, the short imperfect after a waw conjunctive in Dan 8:12b does not necessarily indicate an optative mood; it is merely triggered by the preceding waw. In light of the data for Dan 8–11 the short imperfect form $\text{יִלְלָשׁ}$ in 8:12b can very well be used indicatively.

In summary, as required by the temporal setting established by $\text{יִלְלָשׁ}$ in vs. 12a and based on the tendency in Late BH where a short imperfect form is used after conjunctive

---

1The explanations given by GKC and Joüon and Muraoka are not satisfactory. GKC states that “the jussive is used, without any collateral sense, for the ordinary imperfect form” (323 [§109k]). Though, according to GKC, the jussive in Dan 8:12 may be a misunderstanding of the defective writing, it should be “explained on rhythmical grounds” so that the jussive is “a simply rhythmical shortening due to the strong influence of the tone” (ibid.). However, the consideration of rhythm seems rather doubtful, since vs. 12 with its extra-long first clause (vs. 12a), medium second clause (vs. 12b), and ultra-short final clauses (vs. 12c and 12d) does not exhibit a clearly recognizable rhythmic pattern. Joüon and Muraoka conjecture that the *scriptio defectiva* occasioned the incorrect jussive vocalization and the form was then originally the indicative $\text{יִלְלָשׁ}$ (377 [§114k]).

2This is the basic thesis of Elisha Qimron, “Consecutive and Conjunctive Imperfect: The Form of the Imperfect with Waw in Biblical Hebrew,” JQR 77 (1986-1987): 149-161, citation on p. 153, which of course, applies to II Waw and II Yod verbs, to III He verbs (originally III Yod / III Waw), and to all Hiphil verbs. Qimron finds this phenomenon especially in poetry or late biblical prose (ibid., 158) and explains it by the fact that “the forms with waw were repatterned after the cohortative jussive system” (ibid., 161). As part of his argumentation, Qimron presents data of simple imperfect and conjunctive-imperfect forms occurring in Dan 8–11 (ibid., 156): the simple imperfect form occurs always in the unabridged, long form (22 times: in Dan 8:19, 24, 25 [2x], 9:25, 26, 27; 11:2 [2x], 8, 17, 18, 23, 25, 29 [2x], 33, 37 [2x], 39 [2x of which one is qere], 42), which means that there is no shortened simple imperfect; the imperfect form with waw occurs four times in the long form (Dan 11:10 [qere]; 12:4, 12, 13) and eleven times in the shortened form (Dan 8:12; 9:25; 11:5, 10, 16, 17, 18 [qere], 19, 25, 28, 30). Cf. already Elisha Qimron, *The Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls*, HSS, no. 29 (Atlanta: Scholars, 1986), 46; idem, “A New Approach to the Use of Forms of the Imperfect without Personal Endings,” in *The Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls and Ben Sira: Proceedings of a Symposium Held at Leiden University, 11-14 December 1995,* ed. T. Muraoka and J. F. Elwolde, STDJ, no. 26 (Leiden: Brill, 1997), 174-181.

3One needs to be aware that the term “Late Biblical Hebrew” is not yet clearly defined on linguistic grounds (see Sverrir Ólafsson, “Late Biblical Hebrew: Fact or Fiction?” in *Intertestamental Essays in Honour of Józef Tadeusz Milik,* ed. Z. J. Kapen, Qumranica Mogilanensia, no. 6 [Kraków: 

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
waw, I judge it most plausible to attribute to the short imperfect לַאֱלֹהָי an imperfect indicative meaning.

**Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases**

**Meaning of תﱠור**

In vs. 12b the noun תﱠור is used in the absolute state without the article. The abstract meaning which is obviously intended here is "truth." But is it possible to define more closely what is meant by תﱠור in Dan 8:12b? Several suggestions have been made, of which the main ones are interrelated and just illustrate the complex semantic range of the term: divine truth, Torah, law, true religion, true worship. Based on the text in Dan Enigma, 1992]. It is here used to refer to those writings of the Hebrew Bible that are generally assumed to have an exilic or a postexilic origin.

1The lack of the article is not unusual for תﱠור which occurs 127 times in the Hebrew Bible, of which 7 times it is used with the article and 23 times with preposition and article. See already Hasslberger, 103-104; and Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 419 n. 102.

2Apparently, the versions faced the same question. In Dan 8:12b the Greek versions and the Syriac differ from MT. OG and Theodotion render תﱠור with δικαίωμα "righteousness," as also in 9:13. Elsewhere in Daniel, תﱠור is rendered with the noun אָלָה "truth" (8:26; 10:21; 11:2) and with the adjective אָלָי "true" (10:1). The Peshitta reads in Dan 8:12b קַדְשׁוֹ "righteousness" which could refer to the abstract holiness, or to holy things, sacrifice, or to the holy place, sanctuary (the same Syriac word is used in vs. 13c for the Hebrew הָלָה). Elsewhere in Daniel, the Syriac renders תﱠור with אָלָה "truth" (8:26; 10:21; 11:2), אָלָה "truth" or "firmness, faithfulness" (9:13), and אָלָה "truth" (10:1). R. A. Taylor explains the Syriac in 8:12b as "either an interpretive rendering of תﱠור, or more probably an inner-Syriac corruption of קַדְשׁוֹ," the Syriac for "truth" that is also used in 8:26 for תﱠור (The Peshitta of Daniel, 225).

3The abstract meaning "truth" (Hasslberger, 103-104) has been further differentiated in "truth, correctness of words, statements, etc." (DCH, 1:330) or divine truth (Baldwin, 158; HAHAT, 1:79) as revealed in the word of God (Hāvernick, 280; van Lengerke, 383; Maurer, 144; Kliefoth, 258) and in divine, salvific promises (Kranichfeld, 295, for whom the horn overthrows the promises of salvation). Often תﱠור is regarded as synonymous for the law or the Torah; see Pss 43:3; 119:43 (Rashi; Ibn Ezra [both cited in Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 163]; Calvin, 103; Bertholdt, 491; Rohling, Daniel, 239; Walvoord, 188; Hartman and Di Lella, 226; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 163; Goldwurm, 225; Russell, 146; Maier, 306; Goldingay, Daniel, 211; Collins, Daniel (1993), 335; Redditt, 140; Doukhan, Secrets, 124; Lucas, Daniel, 217), or the Jewish religious law that is understood to be the...
8:12b and its immediate and wider context, two different lines of argumentation are possible. First, the throwing down of הַמִּדְנָה (vs. 12b) is linked terminologically (by בָּשַׁל) and structurally to the throwing down of the foundation of the sanctuary of the heavenly commander (vs. 11c).1 If vs. 12b is parallel or explanatory to vs. 11c, "truth" refers to the metaphorical foundation of the sanctuary. In other words, the foundation of the sanctuary is "truth." In this sense, truth involves the principles upon which rest the very things (i.e., the tami'd and the sanctuary) that the horn attacks.

Second, regarding the use of הַמִּדְנָה, it is interesting to note that in all the other

“true universal law of the world” (Heinrich Hoffmann, *Das Gesetz in der frühjüdischen Apokalyptik*, SUNT, no. 23 [Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1999], 98, 102). Another suggestion, which is closely related to the previous one, is that הַמִּדְנָה stands for true religion and true worship: the true religion (Driver, *Daniel*, 117; BDB, 54; Stokman, 128; Linder, 338; Slotki [1951], 67) that is revealed by God and preserved in the law (Montgomery, 338; Saydon, 636; Porteous, 125; Delcor, 175; Wood, 216; Péter-Contesse and Ellington, 214) or in the law and prophecy (Zöckler, 177; Rose and Fuller, 344), or in all teachings and Hebrew Scriptures (Miller, *Daniel*, 228). הַמִּדְנָה is then said to refer to the true religion as manifested in the cult and its institutions and in the observance of the law and true worship (Hitzig, 133; Keil, 301; Meinhold, "Daniel," 309; Tiefenthal, 269; Aalders, *Het boek Daniel*, 165; Obbink, 110; Young, *Daniel*, 173; Barnes, 2:112; Neils, 97; Jeffery, 475; Aalders, *Daniel* [1962], 178). Hence, for Diethelm Michel, הַמִּדְנָה designates human actions in his conduct toward God, in Dan 8:12b the fulfilling of God's regulations for sacrifices (“‘Aמ A T: Untersuchung über ‘Wahrheit’ im Hebräischen,” *Archiv für Begriffsgeschichte* 12 [1968]: 45). It is clear that the true religion is often understood to be the Jewish religion. For example, Rudolf Bultmann argues in a study on the meaning of הַמִּדְנָה in the Old Testament that in Dan 8:12b the term means “the Jewish religion” and is used in this absolute sense (“the truth”) under the influence of Iranian concepts (“Untersuchungen zum Johannesevangelium,” *ZNW* 27 [1928]: 118-119); cf. also HALOT 1:69: “the true, Jewish religion”; and H. Wildberger, "Hebrew 'mn firm, secure," *TLOT*, 1:156: “the truth of Judaism.” Most of these understandings of the term הַמִּדְנָה in Dan 8:12b are apparently based on the interpretation that Dan 8:11-12 refers to the abolition of the Jewish cultic system by Antiochus Epiphanes. Closer to the immediate context is the suggestion that הַמִּדְנָה refers to the truth about the ministry of the prince of the host in his sanctuary (Shea, “Spatial Dimensions,” 517). Finally, Lebram considers הַמִּדְנָה to be the translation equivalent for the Egyptian Maat so that the throwing down of truth is equivalent to “the dethronement of Maat, the cosmic-ethical Weltordnung of the Egyptians” (“König Antiochus,” 769). Similarly, Bauer believes that הַמִּדְנָה designates neither philosophical truth nor the Jewish cultic law but the Weltordnung (cf. “the times and the epochs” in Dan 2:21, or “times and law” in Dan 7:25) (*Das Buch Daniel*, 171).

---

1See Hardy, 282-284.
occurrences of נְצִים in the book of Daniel it is connected with a revelation by God and denotes its truthfulness and reliability, and in this sense the use of נְצִים in the book of Daniel is unique. The divine revelation or prophecy is נְצִים “truth”: the vision of the evenings and mornings (8:26), the warnings and commandments spoken by God, designated as “your truth” (9:13), and the divine message revealed to Daniel (10:1) existing in written form and revealed by the angel (10:21; 11:2), obviously comprising what was heard in chaps. 11 and 12. נְצִים in the book of Daniel therefore is always linked with God, never with humans. נְצִים is divine truth only, not human truth.

In the light of the other uses of נְצִים in the book of Daniel, נְצִים in 8:12b


2 Freer notes that נְצִים is used in Dan 8-12 “to describe the truthful nature of the information communicated to Daniel” (33). Only in Dan 8:12, Freer connects the destruction of truth to the establishment of an abomination and suggests that here נְצִים means something else. That נְצִים is used in Dan 8:26; 10:1, 21; 11:2 for the truthfulness and reliability of God’s revelation is also recognized by Michel, “‘אמא,’ 39; H. Wildberger, 1:156; Alfred Jepsen, "הָאִל " TDOT, 1:314. Cf. also the designation of God’s promises as being נְצִים in 2 Sam 7:28; Jer 23:28; Ps 132:11 (Diethelm Michel, “הָאִל" וָא מ טבע," in Studien zur hebräischen Grammatik, ed. A. Wagner, OBO, no. 156 [Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag; Göttingen: Vandenhoek & Ruprecht, 1997], 79).

3 Wildberger, 1:156. However, while Wildberger upholds that in the other Danielic occurrences נְצִים means truth in the sense of revelation, he believes that in Dan 8:12b נְצִים “refers to the truth of Judaism, with its individual legal regulations” and then follows Bulmann, who suggested a foreign influence upon Dan 8:12b (118-119). However, the meaning of נְצִים in Dan 8:12b should not be detached from the meaning of its occurrences in Dan 8–11.

4 The phrase “not . . . giving attention to your truth” in Dan 9:13 stands in parallel to the other phrases in the section of Dan 9:4-14 which describe the unfaithfulness of God’s people as not heeding the messages of God: “turning aside from your commandments and your ordinances” (vs. 5), “not listened to your servants the prophets who spoke in your name” (vs. 6), “we have not obeyed the voice of יהוה our God to walk in his teachings” (vs. 10), “all Israel has transgressed your law” (vs. 11), “not obeying your voice” (vs. 11), “we have not obeyed his voice” (vs. 14).

5 Those explanations that relate נְצִים to humans do not pay attention to this terminological use of נְצִים in the book of Daniel.
designates the truth of God's revelation, his prophecy or commandment.¹ According to this line of argumentation it is the truth of the divine message, given by a prophet, which is thrown down by the counter-host. With regard to 8:26a one is tempted to suggest that the divine revelation of the evenings and mornings itself belongs to that truth. If the noun נַסְחוּת is not rendered with an English adjective but with a noun—as in vs. 12b—the clause in 8:26a could be translated with "the vision of the evenings and mornings which has been told is (the) truth." The two passages in Dan 8:12b and 26a may indeed be connected since נַסְחוּת occurs only here in chap. 8, in the audition in vs. 12b and in the auditive interpretation in vs. 26a.

The two observations above—one based on the structural link between vs. 12b and vs. 11c, the other based on the terminological use of נַסְחוּת in the book of Daniel—do not exclude each other but when combined promote the idea that "the foundation of his sanctuary" is the truth—the sanctuary is, so to speak, built upon the truth—that is, the divine word as given through prophetic revelation. Thus, when the horn throws down the foundation of the sanctuary and the host throws down the truth, they actually cast down the divine prophetic word. Based on the terminological link between 8:12b and 26a, it is conceivable that the author wants to indicate that this attack on the truth is directed at the very same prophetic word just revealed in chap. 8.

¹In a similar way Hasel understands "truth" in 8:12b "to refer to God's revelation in its comprehensive sense, including both 'the law of Moses' and the prophetic-apocalyptic revelation contained in the book of Daniel itself" ("The 'Little Horn'") [1986], 419).
The two clauses in vs. 12c and 12d can be considered together because of their identical syntax. Both are *w'qatal* clauses. The verb forms הָשַׁבֵּל and נַעֲשֶׂה are sequential to the clauses 12a and 12b and should be understood in the same future sense.¹ All other suggestions are less convincing.² Since no other subject is introduced the agent


²Behrmann assumes that the perfect is introduced because the formula-like expression of הָשַׁבֵּל and הַעֲשֵׂה נַעֲשֶׂה נַעֲשֶׂה נַעֲשֶׂה (Gen 39:3, 23) or imperfect form (Ps 1:3) jeopardizes such a view. For Moore, the perfects נַעֲשֶׂה

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
is the same as in vs. 12b, that is, the host of vs. 12a. The two clauses could be translated paratactically (“and it will do and it will prosper”) or the second verb may be understood as adverbially modifying the first one (“it will act successfully”).

Meaning of the Clauses

At first sight, vs. 12c and 12d seem to use anticlimactic terms when compared to the previously mentioned attack on the truth and the removal of the ℓαμσδ, which are expressed in pithy language. However, the significance of the use of נָבְלוּא should not be underestimated. First, a statistic of its occurrences in the Hebrew Bible (see table 10) shows a comparatively frequent use of נָבְלוּא in the book of Daniel where it is found seven times (3:30; 6:29; 8:12, 24, 25; 11:27, 36).

and was prospering” (337). This suggestion may be supported by Joosten’s thesis that the main function of w ’qatal is the expression of modality and that an “important subsidiary function . . . is the expression of iterativity in a past-tense, usually narrative, context” (“Biblical Hebrew w ’qatal,” 4), although he does not refer to Dan 8:12c and 12d. The problem with an iterative sense of the w ’qatal forms is that one is required to attribute a past-tense meaning to vs. 12a-d, which has been proven to be rather unlikely (see the comments on לַעֲבִי [vs. 12a] above). According to Gotthelf Bergstrasser, the first w ’qatal of the two connected w ’qatal in Dan 8:12c and 12d marks a conditional sentence and both w ’qatal have past-tense meaning (Hebräische Grammatik: mit Benutzung der von E. Kautzsch bearbeiteten 28. Auflage von Wilhelm Gesenius’ hebräischer Grammatik [Leipzig: Hinrichs, 1929, reprint, Hildesheim: Olms, 1962], 2:44 [§9k]). In this case, the best translation of לַעֲבִי would be “when it performed it prospered.” Unfortunately, in the texts cited by Bergstrasser to prove such a construction, the two w ’qatal forms follow after previous wayiqtol forms (Exod 16:21; Num 10:17; 2 Sam 12:16; 2 Kings 6:10) or qatal forms (1 Sam 17:34; 1 Kings 18:10). Therefore, these passages do not constitute parallels and thus are not relevant for the case in Dan 8:12, where the two w ’qatal forms are preceded by a yiqtol (vs. 12a) and a w ’yiqtol form (vs. 12b).

1Gzella opts for the second alternative (60).
Table 10. Occurrences of the Verbal Root בָּדֵל in the Hebrew Bible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Gen-Deut</th>
<th>Josh-2 Kgs</th>
<th>Isa-Ezek</th>
<th>Hos-Mal</th>
<th>Dan</th>
<th>1+2 Chr</th>
<th>Others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qal</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiphil</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haphel</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second, the root בָּדֵל "bears a marked theological imprint in the vast majority of its occurrences." Particularly in the Hiphil the verb often indicates that YHWH is at work who provides progress and success and that there is a connection between what a person does and what happens to that person, a direct or an indirect relationship between piety or faithfulness and success. In other words, "success or nonsuccess depends on the conformity with the will of God, and on his support." The use of בָּדֵל with this theological implication is already well established in the Pentateuch and occurs also in the prophets and writings. This theological idea is similarly suggested by the absolute use of

1M. Sæbo, "שָׁלָה to succeed," TLOT, 3:1079.
3Baltzer, Deutero-Isaiah, 423. Cf. also Sæbo, "שָׁלָה," 3:1079: "success comes—directly or indirectly—from God"; Alex Luc, "שָׁלָה (# 7502/7503)," NIDOTTE, 3:804: "Theologically, шл emphasizes that God alone is the one who gives success"; and Merten Rabenau, Studien zum Buch Tobit, BZAW, no. 220 (Berlin: de Gruyter, 1994), 103-106, who in his brief survey on the use of בָּדֵל in the OT points to the "close relationship of the divine guidance and the thus achieved success with the person’s behavior and deeds that are pleasing to God," as well as to the link of בָּדֵל with the concept of "God’s being with" (‘Mit-Sein’ Gottes) (105).
4In the Torah, בָּדֵל occurs in the encounter of the oldest servant of Abraham with Rebekah (Gen 24:21, 40, 42, 56), in the Joseph narrative (Gen 39:2, 3, 23), in Moses’ warning to the people not
of God in the Psalms.¹

The combination of הָנַשָּׁה and לֹאֵלֶה echoes those passages in which הָנַשָּׁה and לֹאֵלֶה are used to express that someone is acting and having success: Gen 39:3, 23; Ps 1:3
(רָכַב וְנָשָּׁה הָנַשָּׁה לֹאֵלֶה); Dan 8:12, 24; 2 Chr 31:21 (רָכַב וְנָשָּׁה לֹאֵלֶה).²

In the book of Daniel, first the three friends (3:30) and then Daniel (6:29) prosper with God’s help. Thus, the use of לֹאֵלֶה in the narrative section of the book of Daniel reflects its usual theological implications. However, in the occurrences in chap. 8 it is the horn, respectively its host, which prospers. Despite the fact that the horn’s host does not have God on its side, it still prospers.³ This is incongruent with the theological meaning of לֹאֵלֶה.⁴

The comment given by a holy one in vs. 12d,⁵ stating that the host prospers, is
to go up to Canaan because יהוה is not with them (Num 14:41 Qal); and in the covenantal blessings and curses (Deut 28:29). In all these occurrences it is explicit that success depends on the will of God. In the prophets and writings, see Josh 1:8; Judg 18:5; 1 Kgs 22:12, 15; Isa 48:15; Jer 2:37; Ps 1:3; Neh 2:20.

¹Pss 22:32; 37:5; 52:11. So pointed out by Driver, Daniel, 118.

²Cf. the use of הנשה and לאל in close relation in Josh 1:8; Isa 55:11 (the only example which refers to the activity of God); Ezek 17:15; Ps 37:7; Dan 11:36; 1 Chr 22:13; 2 Chr 7:11; and the combination of בְּאָדָם וְנָשָּׁה in 2 Chr 31:21; 32:30.

³Pace Kranichfeld, 295; Zöckler, 177; Prince, Daniel, 147; and Rose and Fuller, 344, who believe that the use of הנשה and לאל indicates that the enemy prospered “by God’s permission.”

⁴Hävernick points out: “that which otherwise can only be said about the pious (Ps 1:3), seems to apply here with just as much right to the tyrant” (281). Von Lengerke even suggests that the words in Dan 8:12c-d are borrowed from Ps 1:3 (383).

⁵See the analysis of vs. 13a and the text-grammatical analysis below.
therefore all the more so incomprehensible. Why should an aggressor and enemy of God be successful if real success “depends on the conformity with the will of God, and on his support”? Seen from its theological implications “and it will do and it will prosper” represents a fitting climax to the attack on the tamid and truth. The “how long” question by another holy one appears as a logical reaction and raises the question about the (non)involvement of God. “How long will the prospering of the horn and its host last?” implies “When will God bring to an end the success of the horn?” This question is well justified, since, as can be concluded from Dan 11:27 and 11:36, God does set an end to the prospering of evil forces. The success of the wicked lasts only for a limited time (cf. Ps 73:17). Thus, the question in 8:13c expresses the desire to know the time of the predetermined end of the horn’s and its host’s success.

In light of the above the use of יָבָל in Dan 8:12d is pregnant with theological meaning. It reminds the reader of יהוה who is the grantor of success and prosperity, but who is seemingly absent here. At the most, יָבָל may indirectly indicate that God is still present and allows the horn and its host to prosper, but only for a limited time. However, the limitation of the horn’s success is only explicit through the answer in 8:14b-c. More probable, יָבָל is another indication of the divine prerogatives which the horn takes. As God grants success to those in conformity with his will, so the horn gives success to the host which acts according to the horn’s will.

Pföger comments that vs. 12c and 12d by stating that the horn’s activities have success express the incomprehensibility of the events (Daniel, 126).
Clause 13a

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

13a [אֲחָרֶנָּם, הַכֹּרֶשׁ נְבוּךְדֶרֶם]

waw+Qal-ipf/1sgc/+he-ending num/sgm/ adj/sgm/ Piel-ptc/sgm/

wayyiqtol(waw+Qal-ipf/1sgc/+he-ending) NumWG(num/sgm/ adj/sgm/) Piel- ptc/sgm/

P.Sy [+1.Sy] +2.Sy
predicate [+subject] +object

Clause type: wayyiqtol.

The verbal first person form נַחֲשֹׁמִיהַ refers to the narrator Daniel (8:1; cf. vss. 15, 27). The paragogic ה- can be added to the wayyiqtol form; a phenomenon that occurs ten times in the book of Daniel and should not be considered as an argument of discontinuity or even different authorship in this instance.¹ It is not necessary to detect a specific function of the cohortative, though in light of the meaning of the clause, which will be discussed later, Schindele’s suggestion is intriguing that נַחֲשֹׁמִיהַ “designates an intensive form of hearing” that could be translated with “to hear exactly” (genau hören).²

The numeral may precede its accompanying noun as it does in תָּנִית נַחֲשֹׁמִיהַ, though

¹Pace Hassberger, 104. Wayyiqtol forms with paragogic ה- occur in Dan 8:13, 15, 17; 9:3, 4 (2x); 10:16 (2x), 19; 12:8; whereas the wayyiqtol /1sgc/ does not have the ending ה- in Dan 8:3, 16, 27 (2x); 10:5, 9, 16; 12:7. The wayyiqtol /1sgc/ with paragogic ה- occurs predominantly in the first person narrative portions of Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah (Driver, Treatise, 74-75 [§69]), but it should not be considered a feature of “late” BH (Robert Rezetko, “Dating Biblical Hebrew: Evidence from Samuel–Kings and Chronicles,” in Biblical Hebrew: Studies in Chronology and Typology, ed. I. Young, JSOTSup, no. 369 [London: Clark, 2003], 227-228).

this is rare.\textsuperscript{1} Here the numeral יֶהוָה could indicate indefiniteness,\textsuperscript{2} and with the occurrence of a second יֶהוָה in vs. 13b it is best to take the יֶהוָה...יֶהוָה construction as being used with antithetical function, meaning “one...another” or “the one...the other.”\textsuperscript{3} Thus, the two phrases יֶהוָה יֶהוָה “a holy one” and יֶהוָה יֶהוָה “another holy one” in vs. 13a-b show that two distinct holy ones are engaged in conversation.\textsuperscript{4}

\textsuperscript{1}Also in Num 31:28, 30 and Cant 4:9. Cf. König, 3:317-318 (§310b); Davidson, Hebrew Syntax, 50 (§35 R. 1); Lambert, Grammaire hébraïque, 216 (§621 n. 2). Ewald notes that the place of the numeral יֶהוָה before the accompanying noun is also found in Aramaic (Syntax, 40 [§278a]; thus also Zimmermann, “Aramaic Origin,” 257).

\textsuperscript{2}See Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 179.

\textsuperscript{3}So König 3:317-318 (§310b); followed by Marti, Daniel, 59; Charles, 209-210. The translation “one...another” is chosen by Driver, Daniel, 118; Montgomery, 344; Goldingay, Daniel, 198; Lucas, Daniel, 206; the translation “the one...the other” by Bevan, 134; Hasslberger, 104. Thus, יֶהוָה is in apposition with יֶהוָה so that יֶהוָה יֶהוָה means “one, a holy one” (so GKC, 401 [§125b]; Montgomery, 344; Charles, 210). It is not necessary to explain an omission of the definite article before יֶהוָה (cf. Paul Riessler, Das Buch Daniel: textkritische Untersuchung [Stuttgart: Roth, 1899], 31, who supposes such an omission and explains it as a late Hebrew feature).

\textsuperscript{4}Three unique suggestions are questionable. First, Behrmann proposes that יֶהוָה יֶהוָה should be understood as a divine name, viz. “the Only-Holy-One” (Einzig-Heilige) (54). This proposal fails for two reasons. For one, יֶהוָה is not determined by the article which would have been expected if Behrmann’s suggestion has credit (so König, 2:417 [§122.5b]; 3:318 [§310b]). And then there is another יֶהוָה in the following clause (vs. 13b) whose identity is clearly different from the first holy one, since the article in יֶהוָה has anaphoric function and refers to the holy one speaking in vs. 13a (so Hasslberger, 104). The second suggestion is that the holy one in vs. 13a and the holy one in vs. 13b refer to the same being. Lacocque suggests that יֶהוָה יֶהוָה singles out “one of the Saints” of the host in vss. 11-13 and that the second יֶהוָה designates the same individual as before: “and this particular Saint spoke to the individual (named Daniel) who had asked...he told me: for 2,300 evenings and mornings, etc.” (The Book of Daniel, 163-164). Also Maier believes that the holy one in vs. 13a and 13b is the same, but in contrast to Lacocque he regards the one spoken to (נַתי יֵהוָה) as being Gabriel (308). However, both Lacocque’s and Maier’s proposal are highly hypothetical and cannot explain adequately the function of second יֶהוָה (vs. 13b), which refers to יֶהוָה in vs. 13a. Finally, Archer regards as possible that even three “holy ones” are involved in conversation: the second angel (“another holy one”) posed the question to the third angel (נַתי יֵהוָה) who answers in vs. 14 (7:102). Again, the relation between יֵהוָה יֵהוָה (vs. 13b) and יֵהוָה יֵהוָה (vs. 13a) creates a problem.
and the syntax of object clauses to שמע = שמע + object clause after the predicate

The phrase שמע legis functions as object clause after the predicate

a verb of perception. Such a participial object clause following the verb שמע, with the participle being a verb of utterance, occurs sixteen times in BH. These clauses express an acoustic perception of someone who is speaking, whereby “the person speaking is only perceived through its word. The person itself is not object of the perception, rather its word, respectively its words.” The focus of perception in Dan 8:13 therefore is not so much on the appearance of a holy one but on the speaking of a holy one. Schult regards the form of Dan 8:13a as unclear whether the indeterminate participle שמע functions as verbal predicate (“I heard a holy one speaking”) or as nominal attribute to שמע ("I heard a speaking holy one"). Syntactically speaking, Schult’s undecisiveness is supported. However, a comparison with all the other references of the verb שמע + object clause with participle of שמע always

---

1 Object clauses with indeterminate participle occur after verbs of perception. See König 3:597-598, §410; for the verb שמע + participle object clause see §410d; GKC, 365 (§117h); Hermann Schult, “Akkusativ mit Partizip bei Verben der Wahrnehmung im Bibelhebräischen,” DBAT 12 (1977): 7-13, who provides a list of references of this construction with the verbs of perception שמע = "see," שמע = "hear," andnip = "find"; and for שמע see Jesús Arambárrí, Der Wortstamm "hören" im Alten Testament: Semantik und Syntax eines hebräischen Verbs, SBB, no. 20 (Stuttgart: Katholisches Bibelwerk, 1990), 218-222. Schult formulates the grammatical rule: “After the verbs שמע ‘see,’ שמע ‘hear,’ andnip ‘find’ stands the accusative with participle when it should be expressed that a ‘subject’ together with its ‘predicate’ is the direct object of the perception” (7).

2 Gen 27:6; 37:17; Num 7:89; 11:10; Deut 4:33; 5:26 (cf. vs. 23); 1 Sam 2:24; Isa 6:8; Jer 20:1; 26:7; 31:18; Ezek 1:28; 2:2; 43:6; Eccl 7:21; Dan 8:13. Participial object clauses after שמע in which the participle is not a verb of utterance occur only in Gen 3:8 and 1 Kgs 14:6 (cf. Schult, 8-9).

3 Arambárrí, 200; cf. 220.

4 Schult, 8.
functions predicatively. Thus, בָּרָא in Dan 8:13a may assumed to be a predicative participle also.¹

The question to be considered is whether the participle “speaking” in Dan 8:13a is used without any reference to the content of what was spoken. The syntax of the object clause to שָׁמַע that contains a predicative participle of uttering sheds light on this issue.

The extended form of שָׁמַע + object clause is “כָּל + object (person or + person in a construct relation)² + indeterminate participle of uttering” which can be translated “to hear someone/a voice uttering.” The object clause to שָׁמַע can be transformed into a clause by itself with the participle as predicate. For example, the object clause (in italics) in “The priests . . . heard Jeremiah speaking these words in the house of YHWH” (Jer 26:7) can be transformed into the clause “Jeremiah was speaking these words in the house of YHWH.” The participle of the object clause, a verb of utterance, becomes the verb of the transformed clause. The question here, as well as for Dan 8:13a, is whether and how often an object to the verb of utterance occurs in such a transformed clause.³ Table 11 illustrates the findings (Dan 8:13a is included).

¹Arambarri, 220.

²Arambarri differentiates between clauses in which the object is a person and clauses in which the object is כָּל (219-222). The distinction has semantic value as the addition of כָּל appears to emphasize the audibility. Syntactically, however, there is no difference between the two, as Arambarri himself admits: “Syntaktisch bleibt der Satz unverändert, nur wird jetzt die Höhrbarkeit betont. Das geschieht, weil der Vorgang in den konkreten Belegen ausschließlich durch כָּל sinnlich hörbar wird” (220). U. Rütersworden has the impression that כָּל as object of שָׁמַע functions as expletive, affirming its syntactic insignificance (“כָּל שָׁמַע”, ThWAT, 8:261). It is therefore not necessary to distinguish in my syntactic presentation between the semantic nuances of a person as object and of כָּל + person as object.

³Such an object of a verb of utterance can be a direct object in the clause itself, or indirect speech that constitutes a clause, or direct speech that can consist of a number of sentences.
Table 11. Syntax of Object Clauses to שמעה with Predicative Participles of Uttering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbal Root of the Participle</th>
<th>With Object</th>
<th>Content of Utterance Supplied by the Context¹</th>
<th>Without Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>שומע say</td>
<td>Gen 37:17</td>
<td>F²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Isa 6:8</td>
<td>F²</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עצה weep</td>
<td></td>
<td>Num 11:10 P³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דיבור speak</td>
<td>Gen 27:6</td>
<td>F⁴</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jer 26:7</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ניב prophesy</td>
<td>Jer 20:1</td>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קומת lament</td>
<td>Jer 31:18</td>
<td>F¹⁰</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ערב circulate</td>
<td>1 Sam 2:24</td>
<td>P¹¹</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מילים curse</td>
<td></td>
<td>Eccl 7:21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The table also indicates whether the mention of the content of what is uttered and heard precedes the clause (P) or follows the clause (F)—There may be a slight difference between the object (a syntactic term) and the content of the utterance (a semantic term). For example, in Jer 26:7 the direct object “these words” is expressed in the clause itself. However, it still can be asked whether the content of what is said, the actual words spoken, is found in the text preceding or following the clause.

¹In these cases it may be argued that strictly on a syntactic level there is no object in the transformed object clause (especially with the verb עצה “weep”). However, the context mentions the content of what is spoken and heard, and which is therefore referred to and implied by the verb of utterance in the object clause שמעה.
²The object of the “saying” is the direct speech immediately following.
³The content of the “weeping” is found in Num 11:4-6. In vs. 13, Moses refers to the people’s weeping (掌柜) which he heard and states that the content of the weeping was “Give us meat that we may eat.” This weeping is expressed in 11:4: “the sons of Israel wept (掌柜) again, and said ‘Who will give us meat to eat?’”
⁴The object of the “speaking” follows immediately as direct speech in vs. 7 after the introductory לאמר.
⁵The content of the “speaking” (Num 7:89) is given in 8:2 after the introductory (and transitory) clause in vs. 1.
⁶The “speaking” of God mentioned here does not refer to a specific utterance in the immediate context.
but to the people's past experience of multiple utterances of God out of the fire. The content of speaking is therefore marked as "preceding the clause" in Deut 4:33, respectively 5:26(23).

The content of the speech is reported in the next verse after the introductory סְפִּיקָה "and he spoke to me" (Ezek 2:1).

Again, the content of what is spoken is reported in the next verse, Ezek 2:3, after the introductory סְפִּיקָה "and he spoke to me."

For a third time in the book of Ezekiel, the content of the "speaking" is reported in the next verse, Ezek 43:7, after an off-line remark ("while a man was standing beside me," vs. 6) and the introductory סְפִּיקָה "and he spoke to me."

The object of the "grieving" follows immediately as direct speech.

In fourteen out of fifteen object clauses to ספיקה with a participle of utterance, excluding Dan 8:13a, the content of what is spoken is provided by the context. For the verbal root דבר the results are even more compelling: In all eight instances, besides Dan 8:13a, a direct object is expressed or can be supplied from the context.

It seems then possible to draw the following conclusion: When stated that someone hears an utterance it is implied that the utterance is not merely a sound but has content and is indeed heard as an utterance with content. Therefore, it is likely that the clause "and I heard a holy one speaking" in Dan 8:13a implies a specific content that may be known by reviewing the context. The use of the cohortative הנחתה to possibly indicate an intensive form of hearing or listening provides additional support for this idea.

That the content of what the holy one was speaking is syntactically missing in Dan

---

1 Only the verb הָלַע "curse" (Eccl 7:21) does not take a direct object. This exception can be explained by the fact that the verb הָלַע expresses a performative utterance, that is, the verb denotes an activity which is performed by just saying that one does it (e.g., "I curse you" or "I bless you"). A verb of performative utterance does not require an object that states what is said.


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
8:13a is also illustrated by a transformation of the clause into a main clause with a relative clause. Such a transformation of vs. 13a results in “and I heard [something] that a holy one was speaking.” Obviously, the content of the speech is left out or not provided (maybe because Daniel did not clearly understand what was said by the holy one?) or that which is spoken has to be supplied by the context.

Interestingly, when takes the nominal object "word, speech" the perception of the content of the words is emphasized. As has been found before, the same kind of "reception of words and their content" applies to cases where takes an object clause with the verbal element .

1The possibility of this transformation process is easily recognized. A comparison of Jer 26:7 with Jer 38:1 suggests that the object clause “heard Jeremiah speaking these words” (26:7) can be transformed into a main clause with a relative clause: “heard the words that Jeremiah was speaking” (Jer 38:1). In this transformation the predicate and the subject of the object clause become the predicate and the subject of the relative clause, and the object of the object clause becomes the object of the main clause. See also Deut 5:1; Jer 28:7; Ezek 2:8 and 44:5 for constructions in which the main clause has the predicate and an object that is extended by a relative clause with a participle of (with a participle of in Mic 6:1). In three instances, what was said follows the clause (Deut 5:1; Jer 28:7; Ezek 44:5; also Mic 6:1). In Ezek 2:8 the speaking may refer to what the man figure said before (2:3-7), and/or to what he said after his command (2:8; 3:1-11), or it even may be a general call for the prophet at the beginning of his commission. The similar command in 3:10 may indicate that the commands in 2:8 and 3:10 are each given at the end of a speech in order to emphasize and affirm what has just been said.

2Arambarri points out that “aside from a perception relating to sound, there is also a perception relating to content. Such a perception occurs with the object . The perception is not dependent on sense but mainly on content. The reception of words occurs in reference to content, so that with this object there exists an activity of speaking that is different from the sense perception. The object extends the sphere of perception, and the verbal action widens. Thus, hearing is not only a reception of sounds, but also a reception of words and their contents” (230, cf. 202). Cf. W. H. Schmidt in J. Bergman, H. Lutzmann, and W. H. Schmidt, “dabhar,” TDOT, 3:107: “dabhar is also used as the object of verbs of hearing, which depict the word as intelligible, understandable.”

3Obviously the root has a slightly different semantic notion when it stands in dependence of the verbal root —namely, it refers also to the content of the words spoken—as when it occurs alone as the main predicate of a sentence. In the latter case can also be found without referring to what was spoken and then it just focuses upon the activity of speaking and not upon the result or content of the speech. For this semantic notion of , which is often pointed out in comparison with
Since the syntactic-semantic construction in Dan 8:13a implies that the content of the speech of the holy one is heard, the context may possibly supply the content. Here, another observation from the findings in table 11 above becomes important. The content of what is spoken may precede\(^1\) or may follow\(^2\) the clause where it is said that someone heard the utterance. In the case of Dan 8:13a it is the preceding text which should be explored for the content of the speech because the following text (vs. 13b) mentions that another holy one is speaking. The suggestion then is that the content of what is spoken by the holy one in vs. 13a is supplied in vs. 12a-12d, which is marked by the discourse type style of the verbal forms in vs. 12. Put differently, vs. 12 contains the words of the holy one who is mentioned in vs. 13a as being heard speaking by Daniel.

**Wayyiqtol**

It seems that the wayyiqtol form ישמע is a major obstacle for the suggestion that vs. 12 expresses what the holy one of vs. 13a said. Usually, this wayyiqtol form is

the semantic meaning of רצון, see G. Gerleman, "דיבר word," *TLOT*, 1:327-328; Bergman, Lutzmann, and Schmidt, 3:98-100; Mats Eshkult, "Über einige hebräische Verben des Sprechens – Etymologie und Metapher," *Orientalia Suecana* 38-39 (1989-1990): 32; Samuel A. Meier, *Speaking of Speaking: Marking Direct Discourse in the Hebrew Bible*, VTSup, no. 46 (Leiden: Brill, 1992), 141-144; Cynthia L. Miller, *The Representation of Speech in Biblical Hebrew Narrative: A Linguistic Analysis*, HSM, no. 55 (Atlanta: Scholars, 1996), 373. *DCH* notes that the verb רצお勧め occurs "usu[ally] in a particular situation; with or without referent to the content of what is spoken" (2:387-388). Contrarily, it seems that רצ옮 in the Piel "has a great capacity for taking objects" (Gerleman, 1:328; cf. the entry of "דיבר I" in *DCH*, 2:387-396). On the resultative use of the Piel, Jenni suggests that רצErrMsg means "to utter specific words" with the object already implied. For him, the resultative always has in view a specific content of words, whether it is mentioned or just implied. The infinitival and participial use of רצErrMsg designates the event of speaking, respectively the agent, and therefore the object can be unspecified (Jenni, *Das hebräische Piel*, 165).

\(^1\) With רצErrMsg: Deut 4:33; 5:26(23); Jer 26:7; with other verbs: Num 11:10; 1 Sam 2:24; Jer 20:1.

\(^2\) With רצErrMsg: Gen 27:6; Num 7:89; Ezek 1:28; 2:2; 43:6; with other verbs: Gen 37:17; Isa 6:8; Jer 31:18.
understood like the majority of wayyiqtol forms: as a sequential wayyiqtol indicating progression in time. The hearing in vs. 13a then follows in the past after Daniel had seen the events described in vs. 12; and המן is attributed perfective aspect.¹

The above suggestion however raises the question whether it is possible that the object clause after the wayyiqtol form of הרמך can refer to what was said previously. In such a case vs. 13a would describe the act of hearing, which in chronological sequence should precede the report of what was being said given in vs. 12. The question therefore is: Can a wayyiqtol form have pluperfect meaning? To this end, the major steps in the scholarly discussion on the pluperfect use of wayyiqtol are first briefly outlined. Then, attention is directed to possible occurrences of a wayyiqtol form of הרמך with an object clause that refers to what was uttered previously.

Wayyiqtol with pluperfect sense. S. R. Driver’s Treatise (1892) was highly influential throughout the end of the nineteenth and the first half of the twentieth century.² He denied a pluperfect use of wayyiqtol except for instances expressing “the continuation of a plupf.”³ or instances “occurring at the beginning of a narrative, or paragraph.”⁴ Blake, Davidson, and Bergsträsser follow Driver in that a wayyiqtol with pluperfect sense

¹So, e.g., Gzella, 143.
²Driver, Treatise, 84-89 (§76).
³Ibid., 84 (his emphasis).
⁴Ibid., 88.
occurs apparently only in continuance of a preceding perfect with that meaning.¹

Similarly, for König the wayyiqtol is only sequential, and there is no independent pluperfect use of the wayyiqtol.²

In the second half of the twentieth century this previously accepted and dominant view has been seriously challenged. In a 1968 paper, W. J. Martin studied dischronologized narration and observes that the pluperfect sense of a verb form is demanded by the situation or context.³ According to Martin the motives for “dischronologization” vary:

In some cases nothing more seems to be involved than the reversal of the chronological order as a concession to memory. Or the purpose might be to arrange incidents according to their geographical distribution. A writer, on the other hand, might wish to subordinate and arrange incidents according to their relative importance. The major consideration with any writer of literary talent would be to present his material so organized as to stimulate attention and to communicate it effectively.⁴

The most extensive argumentation against Driver and in support of the use of wayyiqtol as pluperfect is D. W. Baker’s 1973 master’s thesis.⁵ To him, the pluperfect sense is dependent upon any context and situation “where the temporal relationship


²König, 3:51-53 (§142).


⁴Ibid., 186.

between an event in the past and another event which preceded it must be expressed.¹

Baker argues that there are wayyiqtol forms used as pluperfect which do not follow another verbal form with the same sense. He refers to thirty-eight texts in which a pluperfect wayyiqtol is used.² Though one has to admit that not all of Baker’s examples are equally convincing, the category of wayyiqtol functioning as pluperfect has been well established. Since Baker, the pluperfect use of wayyiqtol has been recognized by several other grammatical and linguistic works.³

The next contribution is R. Buth’s linguistic analysis of “unmarked temporal overlay” in 1994.⁴ He mentions cases in which a wayyiqtol form is used but the

¹Ibid., 100 (cf. 4).

²Baker, 54-99. He lists Gen 19:29 (יִהְיֶה), 29:12 (יִהְיֶה), 24 (יִהְיֶה), 29 (יִהְיֶה); 35:7 (יִהְיֶה), 15 (יִהְיֶה); Exod 2:10 (יִהְיֶה), 14:8 (יִהְיֶה); Josh 2:16 (יִהְיֶה); 8:4 (יִהְיֶה); 13:24 (יִהְיֶה), 29 (יִהְיֶה); 18:8 (יִהְיֶה); 1 Sam 7:13 (יִהְיֶה); 9:25 (יִהְיֶה), 26 (יִהְיֶה); 14:6 (יִהְיֶה), 17:13 (יִהְיֶה), 26:4 (יִהְיֶה); 2 Sam 4:3 (יִהְיֶה), 4 (יִהְיֶה), 7 (יִהְיֶה); 12:27 (יִהְיֶה), 13:28 (יִהְיֶה), 34 (יִהְיֶה); 1 Kgs 7:13 (יִהְיֶה); 9:14 (יִהְיֶה); 11:15 (יִהְיֶה); 18:3 (יִהְיֶה), 21:9 (יִהְיֶה), 22:57 (יִהְיֶה); 2 Kgs 6:29 (יִהְיֶה); 7:7 (יִהְיֶה), 19 (יִהְיֶה), 13:14 (יִהְיֶה), 24 (יִהְיֶה), 17:13 (יִהְיֶה). Under the category “problem passages” Baker refers to six wayyiqtol forms of which he is not certain whether they have pluperfect sense (106-111): Gen 6:1 (יִהְיֶה); 25:20 (יִהְיֶה); 1 Sam 18:3 (יִהְיֶה), 8 (יִהְיֶה); 20:16 (יִהְיֶה); 23:18 (יִהְיֶה). Previously, the pluperfect sense of the wayyiqtol forms in 2 Sam 4:4; 12:27; Josh 2:16; 1 Kgs 9:14; 18:3 has been argued also by Martin (“‘Dischronologized’ Narrative,” 181-186), who furthermore cited 1 Kgs 1:7 as example. Sporadically, grammars had also identified pluperfect wayyiqtols, e.g., in 1 Sam 17:13 by Ewald, Syntax, 254 (§346c n. 3).

³Waltke and O’Connor tend to regard the use of wayyiqtol to represent pluperfect situations “as a subvariety of exegetical use” and give Exod 4:19 (יִהְיֶה), Num 1:48 (יִהְיֶה), 1 Kgs 13:12 (יִהְיֶה) as examples (Waltke and O’Conner, 552-553). Similarly, Gibson, Syntax, 96 (§78 n. 1), who adds 1 Sam 14:24; Isa 38:12,22; 39:1; Jer 39:11; Zech 7:2; Neh 2:9; Jan P. Lettinga, Grammaire de l’hébreu biblique (Leiden: Brill, 1999), 169 (§72d), who refers to Jonah 2:1; 3:6 (vss. 6-9 are previous to vs. 5); and 4:5 (vss. 5-8 are previous to vss. 1-4); and BHRG, 168 (§21.2.3). Now and then, another pluperfect wayyiqtol is detected, for example, Winther-Nielsen recognizes a past perfect wayyiqtol in narration in Josh 10:8 (278).

"temporal development of the story pauses and retreats." Buth calls this phenomenon "grammatically unmarked temporal overlay" in contrast to a temporal overlay that is grammatically marked by the waw-x-qatal structure. At a juncture of unmarked temporal overlay a pluperfect wayyiqtol may occur. Such unmarked temporal overlay may be noticed by two different methods: "through lexical reference and/or repetition" (e.g., compare Lev 16:11 with 16:6-7, or Judg 20:36-39 with 20:31-33) or "based on culturally natural semantic relationships with the previous sentence" (e.g., דָּרֵשׁ in Judg 11:1, or מָרֵס in Isa 39:1). As motivation for unmarked temporal overlay, Buth submits the communicative effect such a structure might have. He observes cautiously that a "wayyiqtol cannot be allowed to indiscriminately refer to any tense situation. There were strong restrictions that made the structure quite rare and these must be part of a grammatical description."

The last contribution to the discussion thus far is by C. J. Collins who builds on Buth’s observations and applies them to a larger corpus. Collins suggests that an unmarked pluperfect use of wayyiqtol can be detected when one of three conditions are met (the first two correspond to Buth’s two conditions): When “some anaphoric reference explicitly points back to a previous event,” or “the logic of the referent described requires that an event presented by a wayyiqtol verb form actually took place prior to the event.

---

1Ibid., 142.
2Ibid., 143.
3Ibid., 142.
4Ibid., 152 n. 6.
presented by a previous verb,” or “the verb begins a section or paragraph.”

Though the pluperfect or past perfect use of *wayyiqtol* as discussed has been controversial, at the present time it seems best to allow for a pluperfect use not as a general option for the *wayyiqtol* form but under specific circumstances.

**Pluperfect use of *wayyiqtol* in Dan 8:13a.** The pluperfect use of *nispṭtfNI* in Dan 8:13a can be identified by the second criteria suggested by Buth and Collins. From the natural semantic relationship one expects that the event of hearing someone speaking (vs. 13a) is mentioned before the content of the speech (vs. 12) is reported—on the basis that the verbal forms of the clauses in vs. 12 and the construction “to hear someone speaking” indicate that vs. 12 is direct speech and reports what the holy one said.

In fact, there are three other cases in BH where after a *wayyiqtol* form of *nispṭtf* the object clause refers to what was said previously, and the *wayyiqtol* should be translated with pluperfect sense: Jer 26:7; Jer 20:1; and Num 11:10. In this sense, Dan 8:13a is not a unique case.

In Jer 26:7 the words Jeremiah was speaking are found in the immediately preceding verses (Jer 26:2-6). Regarding time, the *wayyiqtol* form *nispṭtf* in vs. 7 refers to an activity which is contemporary to Jeremiah’s speaking mentioned in vss. 2-6. In other words, the *wayyiqtol* *nispṭtf* does not indicate a strictly sequential action, an action

---


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
that follows in time to the activity mentioned previously. The basic structure of this passage is as follows:

26:2-6 The word from the Lord
26:7  *wayyiqtol* (וַיַּקְרָא)
    subject
    object clause: subject + participle (יָרָא) + object (refers back to vss. 2-6)
26:8  נִשְׂרַף + temporal adjunct/clause + *wayyiqtol*

The same construction is found in Jer 20:1. As Pashur was chief officer in the house of the Lord (Jer 20:1), the “words” or “things” Jeremiah had prophesied certainly refer back to Jeremiah’s words of prophecy spoken “in the court of the Lord’s house” (19:14) which are reported in 19:15. The structure is:

19:15  prophecy of Jeremiah in the court of the Lord’s house
20:1  *wayyiqtol* (וַיַּקְרָא)
    subject
    object clause: subject + participle (יָרָא) + object (referring back to 19:15)
20:2  *wayyiqtol*

The third occurrence of a *wayyiqtol* form of נָשְׁרַף with pluperfect sense is in Num 11:10. After the expressive weeping of the Israelites, which extends from vs. 4 to vs. 6, background information is given in vss. 7-9, so that the *wayyiqtol* נָשְׁרַף in vs. 10 takes up the mainline narrative. In the primary storyline vs. 10 follows the words of weeping in vss. 4-6 so that the weeping which was heard (vs. 10) had already been described in vss. 4-6. The structure is:

---


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
11:4-6 weeping of the Israelites
11:7-9 background information
11:10 wayyiqtol (ועוֹמֶהוֹן)
subject
object clause: subject + participle (יִבְשָׁם) (weeping refers to 11:4-6)
11:10 wayyiqtol

The three texts presented show that a wayyiqtol form of נֶאֶפֶךָ can have pluperfect meaning if the context requires it. As argued, the pluperfect meaning is also the best way to interpret נֶאֶפֶךָ in Dan 8:12-13a. The structure is:

8:12 the speech of a holy one
8:13a wayyiqtol (וַיִּקְרָא)
subject (implied in the verbal form)
object clause: subject + participle (יָשָׁם) + elliptical object (vs. 12)
8:13b wayyiqtol

To sum up, the arguments in favor of vs. 12 being a discourse and vs. 13a containing a pluperfect wayyiqtol are: (1) To hear somebody speaking (ךָך) implies that the content of the speech is understood; (2) discourse-type verbal forms in vs. 12a-12d indicate direct speech; (3) the context suggests that a holy one is speaking to Daniel (vs. 14a and also vs. 12); (4) the vision ends structurally with vs. 11. As a result, the wayyiqtol in Dan 8:13a has a pluperfect or past perfect sense. The clause represents an "unmarked temporal overlay" and should be translated with "And I had heard a holy one speaking."

This rare construction in Dan 8:13a raises two further questions regarding the motives for the use of a wayyiqtol pluperfect. First, Why does the narrator prefer not to be strictly sequential in Dan 8:12-13a? And second, Why does the narrator not indicate the pluperfect sense with the more common x-qatal clause type? Though we cannot

1For the last point see the analysis of the structure in the literary analysis in chapter 3 (below).
exactly know the intentions of the narrator, it seems possible to suggest some explanations based on the effect of the *wayyiqtol* pluperfect construction.

The placement of the content of the speech in vs. 12 without any hint before the narrative introduction to the speech in vs. 13a produces an abruptness in the speech of the holy one. The impression is that while Daniel was observing with his eyes (vss. 2, 3, 4, 5, 7), probably being absorbed by the vision, he all of a sudden heard an exclamatory statement. Such an abrupt interruption by a holy one seems to connect what he said more closely to the visionary movements just seen by Daniel. The obvious reason for this is that vs. 12a-12b is an explanatory comment on the horn’s actions against the heavenly commander in chief mentioned in vs. 11b-11c. Daniel may not even have seen the holy ones, since no description at all is given of them.

In a supplementary way the *wayyiqtol* as pluperfect adds the mention of the speech while at the same time, in contrast to a *x-qatal* clause, it serves as narrative main line introduction of the short narration of the audition. The communicative effect would be to add the factual detail that the just mentioned clauses in vs. 12 had been heard without placing this narrative comment on the narrative offline.¹ In this regard it is important to note that “the backbone of the narrative . . . does not have to correlate with the actual course of events in time.”² While the main narrative is carried on in vs. 13a, the prior report of the speech in vs. 12 emphasizes that the content of the speech is more

---

¹For the suggestion that “the constraint of adding details to a passage without also demoting them off the mainline” may motivate a nonsequential use of the *wayyiqtol* see Buth, “Methodological Collision,” 147-148.

²*BHRG*, 167 (§21.2.3).
important than its introduction.

At the same time the direct speech in vs. 12 and the wayyiqtol pluperfect use in vs. 13a provide an explanation for the puzzling יָניָן "to me" in 8:14a. If vs. 12 and vs. 13 are structurally separated so that vs. 12 belongs to the visionary part and vs. 13 is the beginning of the audition, the two holy ones are talking to each other and Daniel merely listens to their conversation. Herein lies the reason why some scholars suggest emending יָניָן to "to him." However, the celestial being has already spoken to Daniel in vs. 12. One can imagine that this being addresses Daniel again after another celestial being asked a question that may have been on Daniel’s mind, too. In other words, the first holy being speaks to Daniel in vs. 12 and, after being asked a question by another holy being (vs. 13b-c), the first one continues his speech toward Daniel in vs. 14. Table 12 illustrates the flow of the audition and why in vs. 14a it is said that the holy one speaks to Daniel.

Table 12. Structure of the Audition in Daniel 8:12-14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Speaker</th>
<th>Addressee</th>
<th>Content of Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:12-13a</td>
<td>13a: a (first) holy one</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>12a-12d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:13b-c</td>
<td>13b: another holy one</td>
<td>the first holy one</td>
<td>13c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>14a: he=the first holy one</td>
<td>Daniel (&quot;to me&quot;)</td>
<td>14b-14c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus, both the vision and the audition are directed towards Daniel, making him the addressee of both. In this structure, vs. 12-13 form a small concentric pattern:
Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

The only semantic issue in 8:13a concerns the referential meaning of בֵּיתָם. There is no question that the holy one mentioned in vs. 13a is a celestial being.1 A more specific identification goes beyond the limit of this text.2 This verse constitutes the first and only time in the Hebrew Bible that the singular “holy one” is used for a heavenly being. Elsewhere, the plural בֵּיתָם is used for celestial beings (Psalms 89:6, 8; Zechariah 14:5), also בֵּיתָם (Deuteronomy 33:2), and in BA the singular בֵּיתָם (Daniel 4:10, 20) and the plural בֵּיתָם (Daniel 4:14).3 The referential meaning of the plural בֵּיתָם in Dan 7 (vss. 18, 21, 22, 25, 27) is disputed.4 And the interpretation of the בֵּיתָם “people of holy ones” in Dan 8:24 not only depends upon the interpretation of the host of heaven and the stars in Dan 8:10 but also to some extent upon the interpretation of the holy ones of the Most High in Dan 7.

1All commentators agree that בֵּיתָם refers to a heavenly being, celestial spirit, or angel. For Lacocque this person is “an ‘angelized’ Saint” (The Book of Daniel, 163).

2Some identify these holy ones as members of the host of heaven in vss. 10-11 (so Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 163; Towner, 121). It has also been proposed that the first holy one is Gabriel (von Lengerke, 384-385; Maurer, 144-145; von Gall, 84-86) or Christ (Calvin, 105-106; Hävernick, 286; Ford, Daniel, 160).


4The question is whether the “holy ones of the Most High” in Dan 7 refers to angels or to human beings or to both. For this discussion see, e.g., Koch, Das Buch Daniel, 234-239; and Collins, Daniel (1993), 313-317 (in particular the bibliographic references in notes 320-323); cf. John J. Collins, “Saints of the Most High בֵּיתָם,” DDD, 720-722.
Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

Clause 13b

After the first holy one had spoken "another holy one" addresses the first one.

The first holy one, already mentioned in vs. 13a as speaking, is again specified as the one who was speaking (by the adjectival participle ֹלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר). Since speaking is the single characteristic mentioned for this holy one, it is apparently important and lends credit to the view that the speaking is actually recorded in vs. 12.

The hapax legomenon which refers back to the holy one in vs. 13a, has

1It is needless to suppose that the second ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר is a gloss (Delitzsch, 136) or, together with ֹלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר, is an accidental repetition that should be excised (Moore, 197).

2Lacocque suggests that "the second ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר should be understood as designating the same individual as before" and that ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר refers to Daniel. He compares ֹלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר with ֶלפָּלְפַל וּמָרָבֶּר "this one" which occurs as an imprecise designation for Daniel in Dan 8:16 (cf. also Judg 6:20; 1 Sam 17:26; 2 Kgs 4:25). He translates ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר in vs. 13b with "to the individual (namely Daniel) who had asked" and regards vs. 13c as Daniel’s question (Daniel, 163-164). However, Lacocque’s suggestion is problematic. First, the designation of the first holy one in vs. 13a as ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר “speaking” and the repetition of ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר in vs. 13b as designation of the same person indicates that the same person is meant. Up to vs. 13, it has not been mentioned that Daniel was speaking. In fact, in the whole of chap. 8, Daniel never speaks. He is simply portrayed in the position of the visionary who sees, hears and experiences the celestial revelation and explanation. It is therefore difficult to claim that in vs. 13b the attribute ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר “the speaking one” could have been given to Daniel. And second, there is no compelling reason to translate ָלפְּלִפּוּת וּמְרָבֶּר as “who had asked,” particularly since the same participle...
been correctly explained as an extremely syncopated form of "a certain one" or "so-and-so." To give this expression any name-like qualities seems to be far-fetched.

Clause 13c

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

13c


nominal predicate +subject +attributive list to the subject

Clause type: Nominal clause.

Interrogative phrase

In BH the interrogative phrase "עַדְּכַּפֶּר הָאָלָלִין" “how long?” or “until when?” occurs

1 Cf. 1 Sam 21:3; 2 Kgs 6:8; Ruth 4:1; and הָאָלָלִין for an unknown place in 1 Chr 11:27, 36; 27:10. For this explanation see most commentators and grammars, e.g., Ibn Ezra (cited in Judah J. Slotki, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah: Hebrew Text & English Translation with Introductions and Commentary, 2d ed., ed. E. Oratz, Soncino Books of the Bible, vol. 13 [London: Soncino, 1992], 68); Bauer and Leander, Historische Grammatik, 276 (§34a). The simple הָאָלָלִין (m.) or הָאָלָלִין (f.) is not found in BH but in Middle Hebrew; see under "הָאָלָלִין" in Marcus Jastrow, A Dictionary of the Targumim, the Talmud Babli and Yerushalmi, and the Midrashic Literature, 2 vols. (New York: Title, 1943), 2:1178. Thus, it is unlikely that in Dan 8:13b הָאָלָלִין was original, and ה was inserted artificially to identify with the classical term” (Montgomery, 344).

2 הָאָלָלִין has been regarded as name or designation of a significant personage (Rose and Fuller, 344) or heavenly being, either an angel (R. Körber, “Eine alte Erklärung von ‘palmoni’ [Dan. 8, 13],” Bib 35 [1954]: 270-272) or Christ (Calvin, 105-106; Hävernick, 286; tentatively Wordsworth, 40). However, it would be strange that the name or designation is not already mentioned in vs. 13a where this person is introduced (so Hasslberger, 105).
twenty-nine times and always asks about the end of something, almost exclusively referring to a negative attitude or negative activity. The emphasis of the question “how long?” is regarding the ending of an untenable situation. Thus such questions frequently imply lament over continuous distress and the plea for change. These somewhat impatient questions, which are often found in the Psalms and in prophetic discourse, have the purpose “to be heard as petitions: act, intervene!” The one who asks as well as the addressee of the question could be human, divine, or another celestial being. In sum, “how long?” is the ultimate question of the terrorized and distressed believer.

1Exodus 10:3, 7; Num 14:27; 1 Sam 1:14; 16:1; 2 Sam 2:26; 1 Kgs 18:21; Neh 2:6; Pss 6:4; 7:10; 80:5; 82:2; 90:13; 94:3 (2x); Prov 1:22; 6:9; Isa 6:11; Jer 4:14, 21; 12:4; 23:26; 31:22; 47:5; Dan 8:13; 12:6; Hos 8:5; Hab 2:6; Zech 1:12. Nehemiah 2:6 could be the only exception to the negative aura of the question, although for the king it may indeed be negative that his faithful cupbearer Nehemiah will be gone away for a long trip.

2See Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 429: “The emphasis is not duration (how long) but termination (until when) and what follows” (his emphasis).

3Ernst Jenni observes that “the vast majority” of הָיִּֽים questions are “rhetorical questions expressing unwitting or impatient accusations in various degrees” (“’ kı nay when?” TLOT, 2:691) and that “the reproachful and agonizing question to God” occurs “in the community lament . . . and in the individual lament” (2:692).


5A question headed by הָיִֽים is directed by God to humans (Exod 10:3; Num 14:27; 1 Sam 16:1; Jer 23:26), by a prophet (as YHWH’s spokesperson) to fellow humans (1 Kgs 18:21; Jer 4:14; 31:22; 47:5; Hos 8:5; Hab 2:6), by a prophet to God (Isa 6:11; Jer 4:21; 12:4), by the praying psalmist to God (Pss 6:4; 7:10; 80:5; 82:2; 90:13; 94:3 [2x]), by humans to fellow humans (Exod 10:7; 1 Sam 1:14; 2 Sam 2:26; Prov 6:9; Neh 2:6), by wisdom to humans (Prov 1:22), by a celestial being to another celestial being (Dan 8:13; 12:6), and by the angel of YHWH to YHWH himself (Zech 1:12). Compare the similar question הָיִֽים “how long?” directed by a prophet to humans (Num 24:22), by a human to humans (Pss 4:3; 74:9), by the praying psalmist to God (Pss 79:5; 89:47), and the question הָיִֽים “how long?” directed to God (Ps 13:2 [2x], 3 [2x]; Jer 47:6; Hab 1:2) or to man (Exod 16:28; Num 14:11; Josh 18:3; Ps 62:4; Job 19:2). Both הָיִֽים and הָיִֽים have a similar function to הָיִֽים in that they ask for the end of an untenable situation.

6The importance and impact of the question הָיִֽים are reflected in the various ways it is succinctly described: “question of impatience” (Meinhold, Daniel, 309), “an antique expression of
What is the function of this question in Dan 8:13? A holy being is inquiring how long the operations of God's adversary will last without divine intervention, when will their end come, and, perhaps, if there may be hope at the end. The question expresses the belief that the crimes of the horn and of the counter-host are not the end yet. In this way, the celestial being asks indirectly for God's mercy and intervention. He urges God to limit the triumph of evil and set things right. There must be hope!

The answer to the question "how long?" directed toward God is prophetic in nature. Only the prophet knows how long, and only if it were revealed to him by God. This is expressed in the parallelism in Ps 74:9, which is immediately followed by the question "How long, O God?" in vs. 10:

"There is no longer any prophet,
Nor is there any among us who knows how long [םלוע הירבע]"

Thus, the answer to the question in Dan 8:13c, which is given in vs. 14b-14c, should be regarded as a prophetic answer.

Definiteness and referential meaning of "the vision."
The concern of the question is "the vision." The noun derives from the

---

religion" (Montgomery, 341), "a prayer for divine intervention and judgment" (Ford, Daniel, 177), "the question par excellence of the apocalypse, the reason the Author [sic] wrote chapter 8" (Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 164), "cry of anguish" (Russell, 147), "popular plea in later apocalyptic writings" (ibid., 150), "plaintive cry of prophet and psalmist" (Anderson, Signs and Wonders, 97), "traditional refrain in penitential literature" (Collins, Daniel [1993], 335), "lament" (Longman, Daniel, 204; Gzella, 144), "perennial apocalyptic question" (Redditt, 140), "the cry of the oppressed" (Doukhan, Secrets, 127).

1See Baldwin, 158; Redditt, 140.
root GeneratedValue “see” and designates “first of all a vision” or “revelatory vision.” In Dan 8 and in the rest of the book of Daniel, GeneratedValue “designates revelatory vision with special emphasis on the visionary element.” The question “Until when the vision?” is therefore about the end of the vision, and not about the length of the activities of the horn. In fact, the question wants to obtain an answer regarding the temporal limit of the vision.

But what is meant by “the vision”? Some argue that the vision is identified by the items following GeneratedValue as the section about the horn (vss. 9-11, respectively vss. 9-12), so that the question asks about the length of time of the activities of the horn. Since the items in vs. 13c occur previously only in vss. 9-12, such an interpretation certainly has some credit. It is obvious, however, that these items mentioned in vs. 13c do not exhaustively represent the visionary part of vss. 9-11 or 9-12. Missing are terminological connections to vss. 9a, 9b, 11a, 12b, 12c, 12d. The items in vs. 13c then have to be regarded as a selective list, which has probably been given because the climax of the vision, that is, the activities of the horn, represents the most vivid impression, and also the last, of the whole vision.

The hypothesis has to be examined whether GeneratedValue refers to the whole vision and

---

1Hans F. Fuhs, *Sehen und Schauen: Die Wurzel hzḥ in Alten Orient und im Alten Testament. Ein Beitrag zum prophetischen Offenbarungsempfang*, FB, no. 32 (Würzburg: Echter, 1978), 227; cf. 101. Pace A. Jepsen, “ gevah,” *TDOT*, 4:283-284, who believes that prophetic GeneratedValue denotes “a revelation of the divine word” in which “visual manifestation, however, plays no role, or at most a minor one” (ibid., 284), so that  InputDecoration is “not a visual image, but a word from God” (ibid., 283).

2Fuhs, 233. See also Jepsen, who has to admit that 内马尔 in Dan 8 refers to “a clear image,” also in Dan 10:14 (内马尔, 4:288). Cf. Hartman and Di Lella, 226: In Dan 8:13b; 9:24; 10:14b,内马尔 “refers to the substance of the vision, the things seen in a vision.”

the items in vs. 13c present just a selection of the most important part(s) of this vision. The word ἡ ἀναντία “vision” occurs seven times in Dan 8 (vss. 1, 2 [2x], 13c, 15, 17, 26). In Dan 8:1-2, which is the introduction to the vision, ἡ ἀναντία refers to the whole vision. It makes little sense to argue that here the term ἡ ἀναντία would refer only to the activities of the horn starting in vs. 9; and in fact to my knowledge this has never been done. It is most sensible that the next occurrence of ἡ ἀναντία in vs. 13c refers equally to the same entire vision in vss. 3-11. The references to the vision in 8:2 and 8:13c appear to frame the vision report.

The other occurrences of the term ἡ ἀναντία in chap. 8 confirm the conclusion that it refers to the entire vision seen by Daniel, starting from vs. 3. In vs. 15, Daniel recounts what happened after he had seen the vision. Here again the vision refers to all that he had seen before. Verse 15 forms an inclusio with vs. 1. Also, the verb ἰδὼν “see,” which is used here in vs. 15 with the object ἡ ἀναντία “vision,” is used elsewhere in the chapter to describe the entire visionary experience of Daniel (8:1, 2) or his seeing of different elements or entities of the vision (8:1 [2x], 2 [3x], 4, 6, 7, 20). The indication that Daniel had seen the vision in vs. 15 therefore encompasses all of what he had seen before.

In vss. 17 and 26 Gabriel frames the interpretation of the vision by the comment that “the vision is for the time of the end” (vs. 17) and to “keep secret the vision for (it pertains to) many days” (vs. 26). In both instances ἡ ἀναντία refers to the entire vision, which is also evident by the fact that Gabriel’s interpretation starts with the ram (vs. 20).

1Outside Dan 8, ἡ ἀναντία occurs in the Hebrew part of the book in 1:17; 9:21, 24; 10:14; 11:14 (a total of 35 times in the Hebrew Bible); in the Aramaic part 30 times as verb ἰδὼν “see,” 12 times as noun ἀναντία “vision,” and twice as ἀναντία “sight.”
Furthermore, the use of the article with תּוֹלַע in Dan 8 indicates that תּוֹלַע in Dan 8 refers always to the entire visionary experience of Daniel. In vs. 1, תּוֹלַע is indefinite, because there the term is introduced for the first time. In all subsequent occurrences תּוֹלַע is definite (vss. 2 [2x], 13c, 15, 17, 26). The article with תּוֹלַע in vs. 13c must have an anaphoric function and refers back to תּוֹלַע in vss. 1-2. Finally, there is no indication in the course of the vision report that the vision should be divided at vs. 9a. The entire vision report in vss. 3-11 is given in "continuous fashion."

For these reasons the mention of תּוֹלַע "the vision" in Dan 8:13c refers to the entire vision report given in vss. 3-11.

Syntactic function of תּוֹלַע

Before the words and phrases following תּוֹלַע are analyzed individually, their syntactic function should be clarified. The substantives mentioned after תּוֹלַע—i.e., תּוֹלַע, עֲשֵׂרִים, וְשָׂרֵך—and לָמַז—stand in apposition to it. They identify in a selective manner important elements of the vision. In fact, the whole question in vs. 13c takes up the events referred to in vss. 10-12 by the means of "keywords." These keywords are solely connected with the activities of the horn, which again show that the focal point of

1Shea, Selected Studies (1982), 81 = (1992), 96.

2So Hävernick, 287; von Lengerke, 385; Maurer, 145; Kliefoth, 259; Keil, 301; Meinhold, "Daniel," 309; Behrman, 55; Tiefenthal, 270; Driver, Daniel, 118; Charles, 210; Leupold, 351; Hassberger, 105, 106; Shea, Selected Studies (1982), 80 = (1992), 95-96; Collins, Daniel (1993), 326, 336. Montgomery uses the term "epexegetical" to characterize the relation between "the vision" and the subsequent items (341).

Montgomery, 342 (who regards the terms after דַּגָּל as a series of glosses that have accumulated from terms in vss. 10-12); Obbink, 111; Aalders, Daniel (1962), 180, 183; Plöger, Daniel, 126; Lebram, Daniel, 95.
the whole vision is the horn and its destructive activities. The identification of the
specific structure of how these keywords are linked with each other and with the previous
verses is the task of literary analysis.

The syntactic function of יבשנ, in particular its relationship to וי, has
received some attention. All attempts to link יבשנ with another word remain
unconvincing. The explanation that the two nouns function in a construct relationship
fails because of the definite article before וי, which despite futile attempts cannot really
be accounted for in a construct relationship, except if the article were to be deleted by
textual emendation. Equally improbable is to take יבשנ in co-ordination with the

1It is beyond doubt that the additional items of the question condense the contents of vss. 10-
12 (see also Kranichfeld, 296; Keil, 301; Hasslberger, 105). However, to conclude therefore (with
Kliefoth, 260, and others) that the question asks only about the length of the events mentioned in vss.
10-12, and not about the length of time of all the events seen in the vision (or about the horn’s lifetime
or the length of the horn’s reign) is not legitimate.

2For Driver, Treatise, 252 (§190); König, 3:302 (§303f); Davidson, Hebrew Syntax, 25 (§20
R. 4); GKC, 412-413 (§127f); and Lambert, Grammaire hébraïque, 105 (§233 n. 2), וי and יבשנ
should expected to be in construct relationship (so also Rosenmüller, 265; Hitzig, 133-134; Zöckler,
177; Freer, 36, 163; cf. the translation by Haag, Daniel, 64), although Driver counts Dan 8:13 to texts
in which a compound idea is expressed by two terms standing in apposition. The problem with
interpreting יבשנ וי as construct relation is that the noun וי is preceded by the article. A noun
in the construct state, however, does not take the article (if the noun וי would be in the construct
state, the construct relation would already be determined by the following יבשנ). A construct
relation would have been expressed by יבשנ וי, similar to יבשנ יבשנ יבשנ יבשנ “the vision of the
evenings and mornings” (Dan 8:26). In order to explain the article in וי, GKC regards יבשנ as
“a subsequent insertion,” whereas König and Lambert argue that the placement of the article with וי
may have been influenced by the occurrences of וי with the article in vss. 2 (2x), 15, and 17.
Davidson finds the text to be seriously faulty. Ewald observes only the phenomenon: “When the first
member of the series, which should be in construct state, thus becomes more detached through its
assumption of the article, it sometimes even returns to the absolute state. The article may then be
likewise repeated with the second word” (Syntax, 108 [§290e]). For a number of construct relations in
which the nomen regens takes the article see König, 3:298-304 (§303).

3Prince assumes that the article וי could have been caused by “dittography with the preceding
ג [sic]” (Daniel, 243). Alexander Reid Mayers suggests as “the easiest, and probably best, solution”
that the article וי is caused by dittography with the following וי (“A Comparative Analysis of the
Greek Translations with the Masoretic Text and the Qumran Texts of Daniel 8” [M.A. thesis,
following noun (ךֵּסֶף) since it could be neither object nor subject of the infinitive verb נֵס. Some try to insert a verbal form after הָרֹעַ, obviously in order to align it with the other keyword elements which supposedly show a similar formal structure consisting of a nominal form and a verbal form.¹

Instead, the structure of the question in vs. 13 shows that after the initial question ("For how long is the vision?")² several specifications of the vision follow. The first of these is the noun רְשִׁית which specifies the vision in a non-phrasal manner as the vision dealing, among other things, with the tāmīl.³ In the framework of such an explanation the definite article preceding both רְשִׁית and רְוֹעַ is not at all unusual.

Syntactic function of רְשִׁית. The syntactic function of רְשִׁית is certainly the major syntactic difficulty in the question of the holy one in vs. 13c. Besides a number of

Andrews University, 2001], 91).

¹Thus, in analogy to vs. 11 and based on the Greek and Syriac versions, either the Hophal participle נָּשַׁל (Bevan, 135; von Gall, 52; Mari, Daniel, 59; Driver, Daniel, 119; Montgomery, 341; Charles, 210 [who erroneously writes "insert תֶּפֶלֶת after וַיָּשָׁל"]; Niditch, 220), the Hophal perfect נָּשַׁל (Graetz, 388; Bentzen, 56; Nelis, 97), or the Hiphil infinitive absolute נָּשַׁל "taking away" or נָּשַׁל "removing" is inserted after רְוֹעַ (Hartman and Di Lella, 222).

²The question is literally "Until when the vision?" (Hartman and Di Lella, 226) or "unto how long?" (Leupold, 351). Thus, linguistically, the question is not concerned with the duration of the horn's activities but with the end of the vision.

³See Schindele, "Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8," 9. This non-phrasal specification should not be mistaken as an appositional relationship of two nouns, in which both nouns refer to the same referent while the second noun qualifies the first in some way, since וַיָּשָׁל and רְשִׁית do not have the same referent. One cannot translate: "How long the vision, [which is] the tāmīl?"
solutions which prefer emendation(s), there are only two suggestions in which the text is left unchanged. Either לְהִיא belongs to the previous words (לְהִיא עָשׂ יְהוָה נְאָעָרָה) or it belongs to the following words (נְאָעָרָה לְהִיא הִיא).

According to the first suggestion the infinitive construct לְהִיא relates to the preceding עָשׂ יְהוָה נְאָעָרָה and functions as a verbal element of this phrase. This allows two options for the analysis of the phrase and especially the function of the noun עָשׂ יְהוָה. On the one hand, עָשׂ יְהוָה can function as the object of לְהִיא: “the setting up of the
devastating crime . . .” or “the setting up of the crime of a devastator.” On the other hand, "עַבְרָה can function as subject and מֵעָקָר as object of רָתַח: “the crime giving the devastation . . .” This latter option is obviously based on a specific understanding of vs. 12a in which מֵעָקָר is regarded as the agent of the passive. However, it has been shown to be unlikely that מֵעָקָר in vs. 12a functions as agent. There is therefore no reason to suppose that מֵעָקָר in vs. 13c is the subject of רָתַח. Moreover, if מֵעָקָר מַרְאֵה or מַרְאֵה מַרְאֵה with the apparent sequence “object–verb” is constructed in parallel to מַרְאֵה מַרְאֵה, the phrase מַרְאֵה מַרְאֵה should also be regarded as the object.

Whether מַרְאֵה מַרְאֵה (option 1: likely) or only מַרְאֵה (option 2: unlikely) is taken as object of רָתַח, one has to account for the inverse word order, for the infinitive מַרְאֵה follows its object. An infinitive construct following its object seems to be a possible but rare construction in BH. J. Carmignac refers to sixteen instances, of which nine are not contestable, in which the infinitive follows its object, with a number of instances in which

---

1 So both Greek versions; Hitzig, 134; Graetz, 389; Moore, 196; Charles, 210; Nelis, 97; H. Schneider, Daniel, 54; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 180; Hassberger, 105-106; Hartman and Di Lella, 222, 226-227; Niditch, 220; Lebram, Daniel, 94; Haag, Daniel, 64; Beyerle, 34 n. 41. Hitzig emphasizes that one should not understand the phrase in the sense “den Frevel zum Entsetzen zu machen” so as if מַרְאֵה were a double object, because the question asks about the duration of the crime and not about how long the crime is given as horror (134).


3 Schindele translates: “und der Frevel, eine <verwüstende Macht> aufzubieten” (Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 14) or “Frevel, der ein Verwüstendes aufbietet” (ibid., 9). The latter is preferred by Langer, 91.


5 So already argued by Hitzig, 134.
such a word order is more or less doubtful. Interestingly, only in one of the instances listed by Carmignac is the object introduced by the object marker נָּא (Judg 20:5); in all the other instances the object is not specifically marked, as in Dan 8:13c. It is more difficult to find object+infinitive clauses with the infinitive construct of בָּאָר. Sometimes reference is given to בָּאָר "when he utters his voice" in Jer 10:13 which itself is a disputed phrase. Here, the object ("the voice") precedes the Qal infinitive construct of בָּאָר. Though there are minor differences to Dan 8:13c—the preposition יָּרָא before the noun object and the pronominal suffix attached to the infinitive construct—in Jer 10:13 there is a precedent for the inverse word order in Dan 8:13c. Another example can be found in Ps 78:20. It should also be mentioned that a pre-infinitive object is quite common in

1Jean Carmignac cites as examples for object-infinitive word order in BH Deut 28:56; Judg 9:24; 2 Sam 11:19; 21:4; Isa 49:6; Ps 32:9; Prov 20:25; Esth 8:11; 2 Chr 31:7 and, with the infinitive functioning as complement to another verb, Gen 42:12; Num 28:2; Deut 13:1; Judg 20:5; Ezek 36:37; 2 Chr 28:10, as well as the apocryphal Sir 6:34 (“Un aramaïsme biblique et qumrânien: l’infinitif placé après son complément d’objet,” RevQ 5 [1966]: 512-515).

2On the intricacies of the phrase בָּאָר in Jer 10:13 see the commentaries. On the whole, there is a tendency to regard it as an example of inverse word order with the object preceding the infinitive. After surveying various solutions David J. Reimer proposes the reading בָּאָר יַעֲנָה יִנָּה לְהָבָה יִנָּ�

3However, I found in none of the discussion on בָּאָר in Jer 10:13 a reference to Dan 8:13.

Gane suggests in addition to Jer 10:13 three other close analogies for the infinitive construct of בָּאָר following its object: (1) Ps 78:20: בָּאָר תָּלְמָד שְׁלָמָה "can he give bread also?”; (2) Deut 7:13: בָּאָר תָּלְמָד שְׁלָמָה "in the land which He swore to your forefathers to give you”; and (3) Num 11:13: בָּאָר תָּלְמָד שְׁלָמָה "Where am I to get meat to give to all this people?” (“The Syntax of תָּבָא . . . in Daniel 8:13,” 374-376). However, the last two texts do not appear to be analogies to Dan 8:13c. In Deut 7:13, the infinitive clause נָּבַל נָּבַל הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה הָאֲמָה h

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Aramaic dialects (including BA) and appears in a number of cases in the Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls. The numerous instances in the Aramaic of Daniel lead to the suspicion that Dan 8:13c could have been formed in accordance with the Aramaic practice.

Whether it is a true BH phenomenon or was influenced by the Aramaic, there must be a cause for the pre-infinitive object. The reason for such an object-infinitive word order is certainly that the object is emphasized in one way or the other. In Dan their very function requires them to be placed at the beginning of a relative clause. Hence, in Deut 7:13 there is not an inverse word order since the usual word order is followed. In Num 11:13, the infinitive construct with preposition \( ? \) introduces a purpose clause which is added to the nominal clause question. Again this is the usual way to add a purpose clause—the infinitive follows the interrogative clause which it expands—and there is no case of inverse word order here. Gane recognizes that the infinitive constructions in Deut 7:13 and Num 11:13 could be explained by an ellipsis of the object: "it could be argued that the object of \( ? \) [respectively \( \text{nn} \)] here is an implied pronoun 'it'..." (ibid., 374-375). The example in Ps 78:20 is closer to Dan 8:13c. The infinitive \( \text{nn} \) completes the verb \( \text{bDV} \) "he is able" and has as its object \( \text{Dn1 ?} \) "bread," which is placed in front of both verb and infinitive. The difference to Dan 8:13c is that the object \( \text{Dn1 ?} \) is modified by the focus particle \( \text{D} \) to indicate that "bread" is added to "water" and "streams" which are referred to in the preceding clauses. Since it would have been possible to place \( \text{Dn1 ?} \) after the infinitive, there is indeed an intentional object-verb word order here.

1See Carmignac, 503-520, and Quimron, The Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls, 74. For BA see especially Randall John Buth, "Word Order in Aramaic from the Perspective of Functional Grammar and Discourse Analysis" (Ph.D. diss., University of California, 1987), 266-327.

In the Aramaic of Daniel, the object precedes the infinitive 22 times (2:9, 10, 16, 18, 27, 46; 3:16, 32; 4:15, 34; 5:8 [2x], 15 [2x], 16 [4x]; 6:5 [2x], 16, 24), whereas 19 times an explicit object follows the infinitive (2:12, 14, 24, 26, 47; 3:2a, 2b [prepositional object], 13, 19, 20; 4:3, 23; 5:2, 7, 12; 6:8 [2x], 21a; 7:25) and 3 times the object is attached to the infinitive as pronominal suffix (6:4, 15, 21b). In the Aramaic of Ezra, the object precedes the infinitive 9 times (4:14, 22a; 5:3 [2x], 9 [2x], 13; 7:18, 24) and follows the infinitive 9 times (4:21, 22b; 5:2, 17; 6:8a, 12; 7:13 [prepositional object], 14 [prepositional object], 15). For brief analyses of these infinitive clauses see Buth, "Word Order in Aramaic," 285-320.

3So, e.g., Hartman and Di Lella, 226-227.

4For various functions that could explain the object-infinitive order in BA see Buth, "Word Order in Aramaic," 271-285, 321-327.
8:13c, the object-infinitive order appears to be used specifically in contrast to the
infinitive-object order, which in the same book is used in Dan 12:11. The emphasis is on
 Majesty, thus, focusing more on the effect of the activity than on the activity itself,
amely that it is a crime with devastating consequences. Interestingly, such a focus fits
with the other elements of the question in vs. 13c. The holy one who is doing the asking
mentions the šāmî d but not the removal of the šāmî d, he mentions the devastating sin but
not the setting up of a host, he mentions the holy but not the attack on the holy, and he
mentions the trampled host but not the trampling of the host.1

The second suggestion for the syntactic function of הָנַת in Dan 8:13c is to place it
with the following: הָנַת אֲרוֹב אֱלֹהִים הָנַת “to give both (a) holy (place) and a host to
trampling.”2 According to this option, two rare constructions need explanation. First, the

1An inconclusive argument is that the placement of הָנַת after its object could be for structural
reasons, that is, to create a chiastic balance: Only if הָנַת were to follow 우리 could one possibly make a
case that the elements in vs. 13c occur in exactly reverse order to the words and roots they recapitulate
from vss. 10-12 (as suggested by Gane, “The Syntax of Tet Ve. . . . in Daniel 8:13,” 377-378).
However, since such a chiastic structure involves at least two assumptions and thus cannot be proven
beyond doubt (see my analysis of the structure of vs. 13c in chapter 3 [below]), one should avoid
employing it as an argument for the placement of הָנַת.

2Hävernich, 288; Rosenmüller, 266; von Lengerke, 386; Kliefoth, 260; Kranichfeld, 296;
Kell, 301; Zöckler, 177; Ewald, Daniel, 263; Meinhold, Composition, 79; Terry, 63; Behrmann, 55;
Tiefenthal, 270; Prince, Daniel, 243; Driver, Daniel, 119 (emends to שָׁמֶד לֵז); Stokmann, 128;
Montgomery, 341-342 (emends to שָׁמֶד לֵז); Friedrich Nötscher, Daniel, EB: AT, pt. 6 (Würzburg:
Echter, 1948), 43 (“die Preisgabe des Heiligtums”); Leupold, 352; Young, Daniel, 173; Thomson, 243
(omitting the conjunction before בַּשָּׁמֶד); Slotki (1951), 68; Plöger, Daniel, 122 (omitting conjunction
before בַּשָּׁמֶד); Porteous, 119; Delcor, 175; Goldwurm, 227; Russell, 147; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’”
(1986), 444; Goldingay, Daniel, 195; Collins, Daniel (1993), 326, 336 (reading שָׁמֶד לֵז instead of
שָׁמֶד לֵז); Peter-Contesse and Ellington, 215, Mayers, 91-92 (tentatively; following Collins in
reading שָׁמֶד לֵז); Lucas, Daniel, 206. König finds “how long . . . the giving up” (“wie lange . . . das
Preisgeben”) more probable than to take הָנַת as an attribute to “vision,” and regards the infinitive הָנַת
functioning as an abridged subject clause (3:575 [§397c]). For him, הָנַת takes two objects (first object:
_hashאָרֹב אֱלֹהִים; second object: וּסְפָד), of which the second designates the effect that the respective
activity had on the first object (3:370 [§327]). Apparently, König prefers a translation such as “the
giving up of both a holy and a host as a trampling place.”
object of וְהָיָה, namely סֵפֶר, would start with a conjunction וָאָמַר which can be explained by the use of וְאָמַר in the sense of "both ... and" (see below). Second, the noun סֵפֶר has no preposition, but it is expected to have one if it is governed by the infinitive וְהָיָה. However, in Isa 10:6 the noun סֵפֶר is used without preposition after an infinitive construct of שֵׁלֶש, a verb that is semantically paradigmatic to וָאָמַר.

To sum up the syntactic observations, the infinitive construct וְהָיָה relates either to the preceding דָּן וְהָיָה or to the following דָּן וְהָיָה. Both options are syntactically possible, but each is marked by a rare, however not unexplainable, syntactic construction. If וְהָיָה relates to the preceding words the resulting וְהָיָה סֵפֶר is marked by an inverse word order in which the infinitive follows after its object, which may have precedents in Jer 10:13 and Ps 78:20. If וְהָיָה relates to the following words the resulting phrase דָּן וְהָיָה סֵפֶר is marked by an object to וְהָיָה which starts with the conjunction וָאָמַר, to be explained by the use of וְאָמַר in the sense of "both ... and,” and by the omission of a preposition before סֵפֶר, a construction which is also found in Isa 10:6. Consequently, after the syntactic analysis the function of וְהָיָה remains ambiguous.

Furthermore, neither the Masoretic accentuation nor the obvious contextual

---

1 So Hasslberger’s (105-106) counter-argumentation to the view that וְהָיָה belongs to the following words.


3 At first glance, the Masoretic accentuation appears to favor the view that וְהָיָה belongs to the following words. The disjunctive שָׁגֵד/שָׁגְדָו n on סֵפֶר seems to separate the following וְהָיָה strongly from וְהָיָה. However, it is also possible that the disjunctive accent indicates emphasis so that the focus lies on דָּן וְהָיָה and not on the giving. It is of interest to note that וְהָיָה also carries a disjunctive accent, פֶּר, which would separate it from the following וְהָיָה. For a rather negative assessment of the importance of accentuation for the interpretation of biblical texts see Sperber, Historical Grammar, 462-465.
The crucial factor in analyzing the syntactic function of הָלַע is the textual relationship of Dan 8:13c with regard to other passages in the book of Daniel. The clause analysis is here decisively influenced by terminological links inside the book of Daniel. A comparison between Dan 8:13c, 11:31c-d, and 12:11 displays several similarities (see table 13): a sequence of three words consisting of the verbal root הָלַע and a two-word phrase with a participle of בָּמָש and a noun which semantically designates a negative entity (שִׁפְרוּ or רִירָן). In all three texts this sequence of three words is preceded by a phrase or clause in which the word תַּמִּיד is prominent and which refers to the taking away of the tamid. Syntactically, Dan 8:13c and 11:31d show further affinity in that after a noun with the definite article the following participle of בָּמָש lacks the article.

Terminologically, these passages present the only occurrences of קְרַבְר (Dan 8:11-13; 11:31; 12:11), three of five masculine participles of בָּמָש (Dan 8:13c; 9:27 [2x]; 11:31; 12:11), and the only two infinitive constructs of הָלַע in the book of Daniel (Dan 8:13c; 12:11). It is then quite safe to conclude that Dan 11:31d and 12:11 are functionally in...
parallel to Dan 8:13c—only the noun is different (טֵלָה instead of מָשָׁה), which may lead to a different interpretation.¹

Table 13. Terminological Comparison of Daniel 8:13c; 11:31c–d; and 12:11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dan 8:13c</th>
<th>Dan 11:31c–d</th>
<th>Dan 12:11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>הנָהָר</td>
<td>הנָהָר</td>
<td>הנָהָר</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>object</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb (inf-cs)</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>verb (inf-cs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In comparison with Dan 11:31c–d and 12:11 it becomes thus evident that in 8:13c the object of the infinitive נָהָר is מָשָׁה מָּשָׁה, since in both 11:31 and 12:11 the verbal root נָהָר, following immediately after the mention of הנָהָר, has as its object a combination of a noun referring to a negative entity (מָשָׁה) and a participle of מָשָׁה. The close relation between these texts decides quite conclusively both the syntactic place of הנָהָר in Dan 8:13c, namely that it belongs to the previous words, and the identification of its object, that is, מָשָׁה מָּשָׁה.

Phrase מָשָׁה מָּשָׁה and its meaning. The article of מָשָׁה certainly refers back to vs. 12b where מָשָׁה is used for the first time.² The form מָשָׁה has been analyzed as either

---

¹For further similarities between these passages see the intertextual analysis. The role of Dan 11:31 and 12:11 in analyzing the syntactic function of הנָהָר in 8:13c has been recognized by Graetz (389) and Gane ("The Syntax of Tet Ve... in Daniel 8:13," 379), although both draw attention only to the terms הנָהָר and מָשָׁה.

²So already Hävernick, 288; von Lengerke, 385-386; Kliefoth, 259. It is not clear to me why Ginsberg hypothesizes that the letter ה after מ functions as vowel-letter—similar to מ after ד (Lam 5:18; Eccl 6:10)—so that מָשָׁה in Dan 8:13c should be understood as מָשָׁה מָּשָׁה (Studies in Daniel, 81
Qal participle\(^1\) or as a shortened or mistaken form of the Poel/Polel \( \text{דღָלט} \),\(^2\) both with transitive meaning “ravage” or “devastate.”\(^3\) Some scholars are undecided and offer both verbal stem options.\(^4\) The occurrence of both \( \text{דღָלט} \) and \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) in Dan 9:27 leads however to the conclusion that \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) should be analyzed as a Qal participle and not as a shortened Poel participle.\(^5\) It is difficult to regard one form as the abbreviation of the other when both forms are used in the same breath. Therefore, in the book of Daniel the use of the Qal \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) (Dan 8:13; 9:27; 12:11; also the feminine participle in Dan 9:18, 26) should not be blended with the use of the Poel \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) (Dan 9:27; 11:31).

The phrase \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) with a definite and an indefinite term has given rise to a

\(^{1}\) Rosenmüller, 266; Aalders, Daniël (1962), 180; Goldingay, Daniel, 198; I. Meyer, “דָלְּתְּךָ,” ThWAT, 8:243.

\(^{2}\) See König, 1:349 (§34, 4b); Terry, 63; Behrmann, 55; Prince, Daniel, 243 (Pilpel participle); Marti, Daniel, 59; Bergsträsser, 1:113 (§20 n. e); Charles, 210; Leupold, 352-353; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 159; F. Stolz, “דָלְּתְּךָ smm” to lie deserted,” TLOT, 3:1374. A similar construction would be the Poel/Polel participle \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ smm} \) (Isa 2:6; 57:3; Jer 27:9) for \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ smm} \) to lie deserted (“der zur Verwüstung bestimmte Frevel”), while Keil translates the phrase with “the wickedness which consists in laying waste.” However, it is not clear whether there is an intransitive/transitive opposition between Qal and Poel (the two Poel forms outside the book of Daniel in Ezra 9:3, 4 are intransitive). Also, their translations are not convincing. Kliefoth even fails to appreciate the character of the desperate question in Dan 8:13c when he assumes that the wantonness itself is designated for desolation and will “exist only a short time.”

\(^{3}\) Hasslberger, 105; HALOT, 2:1564-1565. The transitive meaning is doubted by Kliefoth (259) and Keil (302). They both refer to Dan 9:27 where the Qal participle of \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) occurs with its Poel participle form, arguing that since the Poel participle is clearly transitive in meaning the Qal participle must be intransitive. Kliefoth then translates \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ smm} \) with “the wantonness determined for desolation” (“der zur Verwüstung bestimmte Frevel”), while Keil translates the phrase with “the wickedness which consists in laying waste.” However, it is not clear whether there is an intransitive/transitive opposition between Qal and Poel (the two Poel forms outside the book of Daniel in Ezra 9:3, 4 are intransitive). Also, their translations are not convincing. Kliefoth even fails to appreciate the character of the desperate question in Dan 8:13c when he assumes that the wantonness itself is designated for desolation and will “exist only a short time.”

\(^{4}\) Hasslberger, 105; HALOT, 2:1564-1565. Riessler seems to be the only one to suggest that \( \text{דָלְּתְּךָ} \) could be a Poel or Pilpel infinitive (Daniel [1902], 73).

\(^{5}\) See I. Meyer, “דָלְּתְּךָ,” 8:246.
number of suggestions, the least attractive of which is the excision of one term.⁴ One possible explanation of the relationship of the two words is that the participle מָשַׁהַ is in apposition to מְשָׁהַ and specifies this word ("the transgression, a devastating/an appalling one").⁵ The other and probably better option is that the participle מָשַׁהַ is used in an attributive sense to מְשָׁהַ ("the devastating/appalling transgression").⁶ The obvious problem with the latter view is that the participle lacks the definite article though it relates to a definite noun. However, if the indefinite participle is in attributive relation to the definite noun מְשָׁהַ, the omission of the definite article can be explained either as a rare possible construction in BH⁴ or as characteristic of the spoken dialect of Hebrew.⁵ In fact, besides Dan 8:13c the definite article before the participle is also omitted in 11:31 מְשָׁ (דְּשָׁרַדְו) which gives us reason to believe that at the time of the composition of

---

¹For Montgomery (342) and Hartman and Di Lella (226), מָשַׁהַ is a gloss from 9:27 on מְשָׁה ("the iniquity.")

²So Hitzig, 134; Kranichfeld, 296; Zöckler, 177; Obbink, 111. The article stands only in front of the first word (as in 1 Chr 27:5; 1 Sam 31:3).

³So von Lengerke, 386; Meinhold, "Daniel," 309; Tiefenthal, 270; Behrmann, 55; König, 3:403 (§334m); Hasslberger, 105. Examples cited for such a construction (noun with article and an attributive adjective without article) are Jer 2:21 and Ezek 39:27.

⁴Regarding the construction "definite noun + indefinite attribute" Ewald cites a few examples (Jer 2:21; 22:26; Ezek 39:27; Dan 8:13; 11:31) (Syntaxis, 119 [§293a]); König notes several cases of an indefinite adjectival attribute in relation with a determinate noun (Num 6:19; 1 Sam 15:9; 2 Sam 6:3(?); 22:18; Jer 2:21; Ezek 34:12(?); 39:27; 42:12(?); Ps 18:18; 143:10; Esth 2:14; Dan 8:13; 11:31; 1 Chr 27:5) (3:403 [§334m]); and GKC finds no apparent reason for the lack of the article (410 [§126z]).

⁵Rendsburg explains the omission of the definite article before the attributive adjective as a peculiar feature of the spoken Hebrew dialect, referring especially to Dan 8:13; 11:31; 1 Chr 27:5; and 2 Chr 26:15 (Diglossia, 111-112).
the book of Daniel such a construction, although rare, was indeed possible.1 Another, interesting suggestion is to regard the participle אָפָם as designating the one who carries out the transgression or crime, a “desolator.”2 This suggestion supposes that אָפָם אֲבָדָה functions like a genitive relation, which, however, is unlikely, foremost since אָפָם carries the article.3 Further, in case אָפָם אֲבָדָה would be a genitive/construct relation, one should expect אָפָם to be definite since in the text the desolator, that is, the horn, has already been clearly designated.

The phrase אָפָם אֲבָדָה can then be translated with “the devastating crime/transgression” or the like. On the basis of its other uses in the book of Daniel, אָפָם points to an extremely negative effect of the אֲבָדָה on the sanctuary. In at least six of its nine occurrences אָפָם is related to the sanctuary or temple.4 Usually scholars believe that

---

1The omission of the article should therefore not be used to argue that אָפָם cannot be the attribute to אֲבָדָה and that for this reason אָפָם is reminiscent of the divine name אֵל (pace Junker, 78).

2Lust maintains that in 9:27; 11:31; 12:11 the participle אָפָם (or אָפָם) is a “genitive of possession or belonging” to the one who imposed the abomination (“Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 297), that is, a reference to “the desolator or appaller” (ibid., 298). He points out that אָפָם “abominable thing” is often accompanied by the name of “those who use or venerate the abomination in question” (“detestable idol of the Ammonites” in 1 Kgs 11:5; “detestable idol of Moab” in 1 Kgs 11:7; “abomination of the Sidonians . . . abomination of Moab” in 2 Kgs 23:13). Accordingly, in אָפָם אֲבָדָה, and in like manner in אָפָם אֲבָדָה, the participle אָפָם is a designation of a person and should be translated with “(the wantonness) of the desolator.” Although Lust does not explicitly state that אָפָם in Dan 8:13c has the same function, it appears that he infers this (ibid., 296 n. 34). Lust is followed by Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 172-173; cf. Nötcher, Daniel, 43 (“Frevel des Verwüsters”). I. Meyer differentiates the Poel participle אָפָם אֲבָדָה “what causes desolation” from the Qal participle אָפָם which he translates with “desolator” (“אָפָם אֲבָדָה,” 8:246).

3For the same reason it is not possible that אָפָם אֲבָדָה are in a construct relation, all the more so since the first noun (אֲבָדָה) is not a construct form.

4In the Hebrew of Daniel אָפָם is used nine times (8:13c, 27; 9:17, 18, 26, 27 [2x]; 11:31; 12:11): once in the Hithpolel to describe Daniel’s psychological condition in regard to the vision, the interpretative spectrum of which ranges from astonishment to shocking horror (8:27; cf. 4:16), once as
the different expressions with the root בָּשָׁם in Dan 8:13; 9:27; 11:31 and 12:11 refer to
the same entity.1 Even so, it needs to be emphasized that there is a difference between

adjective בָּשָׁם to describe the desolate state of the sanctuary (9:17), as participle noun “desolations” in
regard to the people, possibly connected with the sanctuary since its desolate state was just mentioned
before (9:18), and as participle noun “desolations” (9:26) and “desolator” (9:27), both in relation to
the sanctuary, and as participle in relation to בָּשָׁם (11:31 Poel; 12:11 Qal) or בָּשָׁם (9:27 Poel) and
to בָּשָׁם (8:13 Qal). In the latter four the sanctuary context is obvious. See, e.g., Nickelsburg, for
whom בָּשָׁם occurs in 8:13; 9:17, 18, 27; 11:31; 12:11, as well as in Isa 63:18; 64:10-11, in the context
of desolation of the temple (Nickelsburg, Resurrection, 20). Conceptually, it may even be possible to
detect a double meaning of בָּשָׁם: it would then describe that the בָּשָׁם desolates the sanctuary and at
the same time, in view of 8:27 (cf. 4:16), it would indicate that the בָּשָׁם shocks the faithful ones (so
suggested already by Rowley who in addition would regard בָּשָׁם as also pointing to the madness of
the desolator [“The Bilingual Problem,” 264-265]). The very fact of the exclamatory question in vs.
13c is indication enough that the events, including the בָּשָׁם, were very much appalling, at least in the
eyes of the holy one who is inquiring here.

1The suggestion by E. Nestle that in the phrases in Dan 9:27, 11:31 and 12:11 the first word
(בָּשָׁם) is a distortion of בָּשָׁם and the second word (בָּשָׁם) of בָּשָׁם so that these phrases represent a
Semitic name (“Baal-samem”) for Zeus, based on the Syriac translation of Zeus in 2 Macc 6:2 with
“Baal-samin” (“Zu Daniel,” ZAW 4 [1884]: 248; cf. the equation of Baal-samem and Zeus in Philo
Byblios and in some inscriptions from Syria [Niehr, Der höchste Gott, 56]), has been followed by
most scholars (on Baal-samem see the comprehensive study by Herbert Niehr, Ba’al-samem: Studien zu
Herkunft, Geschichte und Rezeptionsgeschichte eines phonizischen Gottes, OLA, no. 123, Studia
Interestingly, Nestle does not include the phrase בָּשָׁם בָּשָׁם (Dan 8:13) in his references. Later
commentators, however, do so. Montgomery believes that בָּשָׁם בָּשָׁם is “the exact equivalent” to
בָּשָׁם בָּשָׁם (388). The list of scholars who follow Nestle and usually regard the horror-causing crime
as a cult object of Zeus (a statue/image or an altar) erected on the Temple altar of Jerusalem is long;
see, e.g., Driver, Daniel, 188; Junker, 78; Otto Eissfeldt, “Ba’al-samem und Jahwe,” ZAW 57 (1939):
24, who calls the Danielic phrases with מ’למ‘ “Rätseldoppelworte”; Bentzen, 56, 70; Nelis, 96-97; R.
of the title Baal-samem); Hartman and Di Lella, 236; Archer, 7:98, 100; Goldingay, Daniel, 212; Tyler
F. Williams, “מ’למ‘ (# 9037),” NIDOTTE, 4:169; Day, Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of
Canaan, 83-85; Niehr, Ba’al-samem, 201-202. Others even more precisely identify the מ’למ‘ מ’למ‘
with a cultic stone that was built upon the altar of burnt offering for the purpose of sacrifices to Zeus
Olympius. So Bickermann, The God of the Maccabees, 69-71, who believes that this was done by
hellenizing Jewish religious leaders (followed by Porteous, 126; Russell, 148; Niehr, Der höchste
und biblischer Monotheismus im Kontext der israelitischen und altorientalischen Religionsgeschichte,
ed. W. Dietrich and M. A. Klopfenstein, OBO, no. 139 (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht;
Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag, 1994), 320-321); Di Lella, Daniel, 161; for the hellenizing
Jewish party see the discussion in Martin Hengel, Judaism and Hellenism: Studies in Their Encounter
in Palestine during the Early Hellenistic Period, vol. 1, Text [Philadelphia: Fortress, 1974], 267-303,
esp. 294-298 [cf. Martin Hengel, “Judaism and Hellenism Revisited,” in Hellenism in the Land of
function and meaning of these phrases with בֵּית קָרְיָא. Functionally, the phrases are similar—the first word is a noun referring to a negative abstract entity, which relates to sin, and the second word is a participle form of בֵּית קָרְיָא—but this does not necessarily imply that their meaning is the same. The similarity or distinctiveness of meaning of these phrases depends upon the relation between בֵּית קָרְיָא “crime” or “transgression” and בֵּית קָרְיָא “abomination” or “abhorrence,” as well as upon the particular context. Although there is a relationship between 8:13c and 9:27; 11:31; and 12:11, it has to be pointed out that “the

Israel, ed. J. J. Collins and G. E. Sterling, Christianity and Judaism in Antiquity Series, no. 13 (Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press, 2001), 16-22], and the counter-argumentation by J. C. H. Lebram, “Apokalyptik und Hellenismus im Buche Daniel: Bemerkungen und Gedanken zu Martin HENGELS Buch über ‘Judentum und Hellenismus,’” VT 20 [1970]: 507-515, who regards the conflict in Daniel as originating in a priestly-cultic conflict). A second interpretation of the Danielic phrases with בֵּית קָרְיָא is that they refer to astral cult items (so Goldstein, I Maccabees, 145-147; and tentatively Koch, Das Buch Daniel, 139-140). A third interpretation is to identify בֵּית קָרְיָא with some kind of decoration on the construction that was built on the altar (so Erhard Blum, “Der ‘Schiqquz Schom em’ und die Jehud-Drachme BMC Palestine S. 181, Nr. 29,” BN 90 [1997]: 13-27, who takes בֵּית קָרְיָא as polemical designation for the god Baal-Šamem who is said to be iconographically illustrated on the new altar superstructure). Cf. the selective overview of research on the interpretation of בֵּית קָרְיָא בֵּית קָרְיָא (8:13) and בֵּית קָרְיָא בֵּית קָרְיָא (12:11; cf. 11:31; 9:27) by Koch, Das Buch Daniel, 136-140; and especially the overviews by Lust, “Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 283-299 (who provides a critique of each interpretation and suggests himself that the abomination “is a sacrifice replacing the Tamid, or the altar upon which this sacrifice is offered” [298]); Othmar Keel, “Die kultischen Massnahmen Antiochus IV: Religionsverfolgung und/oder Reformversuch? Eine Skizze,” in Hellenismus und Judentum: Vier Studien zu Daniel 7 und zur Religionsnot unter Antiochus IV, by O. Keel and U. Staub, OBO, no. 178 (Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätverlag; Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 2000), 103-112; and Niehr, Ba’alšemem, 199-204. Nestle’s basic suggestion has been disputed by Keel who maintains that Zeus Olympios is the Greek interpretation of YHWH and, more importantly, the abomination of desolation simply refers to the altar construction on which swine had been repeatedly offered. Beyerle is correct when he points out that the Danielic tradition, in contrast to the Maccabean tradition, does not itself refer to the setting up of a statue for Zeus Olympios (30 n. 27). The state of the discussion on possible anagrams or allusions to Baal-Šamem in the book of Daniel, including 8:13, is perhaps adequately depicted by Wolfgang Röllig when he summarizes that “all these allusions are debated and far from being evident” (“Baal-Shamem בֵּית קָרְיָא בֵּית קָרְיָא, DDD, 151).

1Bauer is also cautious about equating בֵּית קָרְיָא בֵּית קָרְיָא (8:13c) with בֵּית קָרְיָא בֵּית קָרְיָא (11:31) and בֵּית קָרְיָא בֵּית קָרְיָא (12:11), though for interpretative reasons. For him, the latter two are the heathen headpiece on the altar of burnt offering (like an erected Massebe), whereas the former could refer to the stationing of troops against the temple cult (Das Buch Daniel, 172).
more immediate reference is to the קֶדֶם of 8:12, which seems to refer more broadly to all the actions of the little horn."

In a text-oriented analysis, two possibilities present themselves regarding how to interpret קֶדֶם and its conjunctions וָאָכְלָה: either as a word chain or as independent elements of an enumeration. First, קֶדֶם could be a word chain in which the conjunction וָאָכְלָה precedes both entities and then has the sense “both . . . and.” The first וָאָכְלָה then indicates another element of the vision’s specification in the question in vs. 13c and the second וָאָכְלָה links the host to the holy and indicates that both are related to the noun פִּסָּה. In this case, מִלתָם קֶדֶם וָאָכְלָה is one phrase, and thus one element of


2 Textual emendations have been suggested as follows. Some scholars read "beauty" instead of קֶדֶם (Rudolf Smend, “Anmerkungen zu Jes. 24-27,” ZAW 4 [1884]: 201 n. 1; followed by H. Schneider, Daniel, 54 [with question mark]; and Porteous, 119). Others excise which is said to be in its original form a gloss to יִשָּׂרֵא (Moore, 195; Marti, Daniel, 60; Jahn, 80; Montgomery, 340, 341, 342; Bentzen, 56). Charles follows the Old Greek, which reads instead of קֶדֶם the verb נִשָּׂרֵא (אֲפִּנָדָה), and reads as original text פִּסָּה נִשָּׂרֵא מִלְּתָם (and the sanctuary laid waste to be trodden under foot) (210-211).

3 The use of † . . . † in the sense of “both . . . and” is noted for Dan 8:13c by König, 3:543 (§376a); Davidson, Hebrew Syntax, 184 (§136); GKC, 484 (§154a n. 1b); Lambert, Grammaire hébraïque, 421 (§1235 n. 2). Though such a construction is rare, other examples cited (see in addition Joüon and Muraoka, 653 [§177p]; Gibson, Syntax, 37 [§38a]; BHRG, 238 [§31.1/1(ii); 31.1/3], 298 [§40.8/1(i)]) are Dan 1:3; 11:20 ("Neither . . . nor") and Gen 36:24; Exod 9:30; Num 9:14; Jer 13:14; 21:6; 32:20; 40:8; Ps 76:7; Job 34:29; Neh 12:28, 45; 1 Chr 5:24; 16:4; 2 Chr 20:25; 26:10; 27:5; similarly, the construction † . . . † may be used in the sense of “whether . . . or,” respectively “either . . . or,” in Lev 5:3; Num 9:14.

4 Hävernick, 289; Rosenmüller, 266; von Lengerke, 386; Maurer, 145; Ewald, Daniel, 263; Keil, 301; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Terry, 63; Behrmann, 55; Driver, Daniel, 119; Marti, Daniel, 59; Young, Daniel, 173; Barnes 2:113; Lebram, Daniel, 94; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 444, 447 n. 89; Haag, Daniel, 64; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 172.
the vision’s specification in the question in vs. 13c, and can be translated with “and both holy (place) and host to be a trampling/to be trampled.” Second, each of the two waw could introduce a new element of the vision’s specification. The noun נֵֽרָאֹּ is then only related to the host. In this case, נֵֽרָאֹּ is one phrase and נֵֽרָאֹּ אָמָּ is another phrase, and the sequence could be translated with “and (the) holy, and a host to be a trampling/to be trampled.”

The two possibilities are not too far apart since in both options we have the enumeration of two entities, the holy and the host. The only difference is that in the first option the noun נֵֽרָאֹּ is also related to the holy, and thus the holy is connected to the idea that it is trampled, whereas in the second option the holy stands alone and could be connected to whatever activity is suggested by the context. In the end, it is the analysis of the structure of the question in vs. 13c that will decide which option should be preferred.¹

Indefiniteness of נֵֽרָאֹ. The omission of the article from before נֵֽרָאֹ has been explained in different ways.² The indefiniteness of נֵֽרָאֹ appears to indicate that it refers

¹See the discussion on the structure of vs. 13c under the literary analysis (below).

²Five suggestions can be distinguished:
(1) The indefiniteness is due to the artificially terse style of these verses (Ewald, Syntax, 30 [§277b]). This could also explain why the article is omitted with נֵֽרָאֹ, but it does not explain why the article is used with נֵֽרָאֹ אָמָּ, וְנֵֽרָאֹ אָמָּ, and נֵֽרָאֹ אָמָּ.
(2) The word is intentionally indefinite (König, 3:286 [§294c]; Marti, Daniel, 59; both do not explain the underlying intention).
(3) נֵֽרָאֹ is indefinite because of the influence of Aramaic (König, 3:286 [§294c], compares with הַנֶּפֶשׁ “the indignation” in Dan 11:36).
(4) The indefinite נֵֽרָאֹ indicates that BH starts to use it as a proper noun (König, 3:286 [§294c], refers to a similar indefinite use of הַנֶּפֶשׁ “the end” [Dan 8:17, 19; 9:26; 11:27, 35, 40; 12:4, 9] as terminus technicus for the apocalyptic end).
(5) Since נֵֽרָאֹ is the name of the only sanctuary it does not need to have the definite article (so Behrmann, 55; Charles, 211). But then the question has to be asked, Why is this sanctuary defined

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
to something other than the sanctuary mentioned in vs. 11c by שְׁכִינה. The omission of the article is indeed intentional so that שְׁכִינה should be understood as an abstract term denoting “holiness” or “holy (things)” which could include different institutions1 or different entities designated as holy. This brings us to the meaning of שְׁכִינה which will be discussed in the analysis of vs. 14c.

What is the relationship between קַדְרֵן and בְּרִיתוֹ? Is it a host which is trampled upon or becomes a trampling place (“and a host, a trampling place”), or is it a host which is trampling (“and a host, a trampling”)? In other words, is “a host” in an object or in a subject relation to בְּרִיתוֹ? The use of בְּרִיתוֹ in the Hebrew Bible supports the first view. The noun בְּרִיתוֹ refers to a place where trampling occurs or occurred and is thus figuratively used for an entity which is trampled. The entity which is trampled or becomes a trampling place can be either the ground (Isa 5:5; 7:25; Ezek 34:19) or people (Isa 10:6; 28:18; Mic 7:10).

To express the agent of trampling, בְּרִיתוֹ is used in a construct phrase in which the

---

1 As “his sanctuary” in vs. 11c (so Hasslberger, 106)?
2 Although a relation between קַדְרֵן and בְּרִיתוֹ is well established in the text (see vs. 10), Delcor, 175, 178, reads נַפּוֹת instead of נַפּוֹת and thus takes this word as an item of its own in the list of vision elements.
3 All commentators take קַדְרֵן in an object relation to the trampling, except Nötscher who regards the host as the subject of the trampling: “trampling by the host” (Daniel, 43).
4 An entity becomes a trampling place or an overtrodden land (termination לִפְרֵד: Isa 5:5; 7:25; 28:18; Mic 7:10), or is put as a trampling place (termination לִפְרֵד: Isa 10:6). לִפְרֵד refers to something trampled in Ezek 34:19.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
agent of the trampling is the postconstructus or nomen rectum (Isa 7:25; Ezek 34:19). However, this is not the case in Dan 8:13d. Therefore, in Dan 8:13d refers to something that is being trampled. It is therefore clear that the noun אָפָס “host” refers back to the host of heaven in vs. 10 where it is mentioned that some of the host are being trampled. Of course, there are different interpretations for the meaning of אָפָס in Dan 8:13c, which reflect the diversity of interpretations of the same term in vs. 10a. The omission of the article from before אָפָס could match either the indefiniteness of שֵׂם, or it could be an indication that this host in its referential meaning is different from the last mention of אָפָס in vs. 12a and therefore should be identified with the host of heaven. Quite contrary would be the suggestion that the indefiniteness of אָפָס in vs. 13c links this term to the indefinite אָפָס in vs. 12a, both having the same referential meaning.

However, since אָפָס in vs. 12a can be identified as the subject of the other clauses in vs. 12, it is apparent that the description of a trampled host (בְּלֵי אָפָס in vs. 13c) cannot

---

1 The function of the construct group בְּלֵי אָפָס in “the trampling place of your feet” (i.e., “what your feet have trampled”) in Ezek 34:19 is clearly paralleled in the accusatory question in vs. 18: הַלְּחַמָּה יָמַע הַמָּנָה יָמַע, which clearly “but you must trample with your feet the rest of your pastures?”

2 To indicate that אָפָס is the agent of trampling, Dan 8:13d could have read בְּלֵי אָפָס or בְּלֵי אָפָס, or a participle of רָמָה could have been used in appositional relation: יָמַע רָמָה אָפָס.

3 It has however been suggested that the term אָפָס in vs. 13c should not have the same meaning as in vs. 10a but rather should be interpreted differently: “levitical priests” (Bertholdt, 525), army which is figurative of the Israelites (Driver, Daniel, 119), “temple service” (Thomson, 243-244; Jeffery, 476), “tribulation” (Plöger, Daniel, 120, 122; Delcor 177), “war” (Maier, 308), “pious worshipers” (Péter-Contesse and Ellington, 216). Behrmann, 55, believes that the use of אָפָס is an intentional double entendre: next to שֵׂם it is reminiscent of the אָפָס in vs. 12a, and next to רָמָה it is reminiscent of the אָפָס in vs. 10.

4 So Hassberger, 106.

5 Suggested also by Gane, “The Syntax of Tet Ve... in Daniel 8:13,” 381.
possibly refer to the successful host mentioned in vs. 12.

Clause 14a

**Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis**

14a  יָנָךָלָו יְנָךְ

   waw+Qal-ipfl/3sgm/  prep+ePP/lsgc/

   wayyiqtol(waw+Qal-ipfl/3sgm/)  PWG(prepp+ePP/lsgc/)

P.Sy [+1.sy] +3.sy +2.sy (= vs.14b-14c)

predicate [+subject] +indirect object +direct object (= vs. 14b-14c)

Clause type: wayyiqtol.

The subject of the verb is the “holy one who was speaking” who was addressed by another holy one in vs. 13. The first holy one who was speaking now gives the answer to the question posed (vs. 14b-14c), but directs the answer to Daniel as expressed by the first person pronominal suffix in יָנָךָלָו “to me.” It is not surprising that Daniel is the addressee. Since the holy one already addressed Daniel in vs. 12 he now continues to speak to Daniel and addresses him again in vs. 14. Even if vs. 12 is considered to be part of the vision, it is quite conceivable that the holy one speaking turns to Daniel, who listened intensely to both holy ones, and addresses him directly; all the more so since the apocalyptic cry in vs. 13c certainly was on the mind of Daniel, as it probably is on any

---

1The similarity to other vision reports is obvious. Gerhard von Rad observes that “in the fairly large number of visions which occur in the Old Testament there is no instance where a vision is not immediately followed by an audition and where it does not culminate in God’s addressing the prophet” (Old Testament Theology, vol. 2, The Theology of Israel’s Prophetic Traditions, trans. D. M. G. Stalker [New York: Harper & Row, 1965], 59).
reader's mind. Whatever the psychological situation may be, there is no need to emend with OG, Theodotion, and Peshitta to יִנְהָרָה "to him."!

Clause 14b

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

14b יִנְהָרָה בְּכָל אַלְפֵּיָהּ וּפִלְשָׁשׁ מְאָה

prep noun/sgm/ noun/sgm/ num/dum/ waw+num/cssgf/ num/plf/
PWG(prep NumWG(NP(noun/sgm/ noun/sgm/)) num(num/dum/ waw+CsWG(num/cssgf/ num/plf/)))

C.Sy[temporal]
adverbial expression of time

Clause type: nominal clause.

The preposition יִנְהָרָה in vs. 14b repeats the preposition יִנְהָרָה from the question “until when?” in vs. 13c and thus signals that vs. 14b-14c constitutes the answer to that question. As in vs. 13c, the preposition “indicates temporal positioning: a point in time up to which events occur.” The adverbial expression of time marks the end point of a time period of “2300 evening-morning,” prior to which the events of this vision occur.

The phrase can be rendered with additions such as “until (there have passed) 2300

---

1Pace Bertholdt, 526; Hitzig, 134; Ewald, Daniel, 321; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Bevan, 136; Behrmann, 55; Kamphausen, 34; Moore, 197; Prince, Daniel, 148; Driver, Daniel, 119 (emendation “is probably right”); Marti, Daniel, 60; Riessler, Daniel (1902), 73; Jahn, 80; Montgomery, 342; Charles, 211; Obbink, 65; Linder, 339; Thomson, 244; Nötscher, Daniel, 43; Bentzen, 56; Nelis, 97; Jeffery, 476; Plöger, Daniel, 122; Delcor, 178; Hasselberger, 10 n. 31; Hartman and Di Lella, 222; Niditch, 220; Mayers, 93; Lucas, Daniel, 206; Gzella, 40-41.

2BHRG, 291 (§39.18). König, 3:347 (§319s), remarks that the preposition יִנְהָרָה involves the verbal idea of “it will last/take.”
evenings (and) mornings.\(^1\)

The adverbial expression of time here should not be considered as a *pendens* or a dislocation construction.\(^2\) The reason for this decision is not that vs. 14c does not have an element that refers to the *pendens* construction. Groß has shown that dislocated temporal expressions are usually not taken up in the main clause.\(^3\) The reason lies rather in the fact that 14c is an independent clause from vs. 14b.\(^4\) A comparison with other constructions in which a temporal expression or clause with יַעֲשַׁה is followed by a *weqatal* clause shows that the temporal element always designates a time period before the activity described by the *weqatal* form takes place: The *weqatal* clause designates a sequential action.\(^6\)

**Syntactic-Semantic Analysis of “2300 Evening-Morning”\(^7\)**

Three features of the expression יַעֲשַׁה 2300 вечер–ран(и)ше маа הָאָרֶץ

\(^1\)DCH, 2:254.


\(^3\)Groß, *Pendenskonstruktion*, 44-60.

\(^4\)So also Hasslberger, 10 n. 32, 107.

\(^5\)The syntactic relation is different when the *weqatal* clause is preceded by a temporal expression governed by ז or ב. In such cases the temporal phrase is indeed a *pendens* construction (see the examples listed by Groß, *Pendenskonstruktion*, 50).

\(^6\)For an adverbial expression of time with יַעֲשַׁה before a *weqatal* clause see Judg 16:2; for temporal clauses with יַעֲשַׁה see Gen 29:8; Josh 1:15; 6:10; 1 Sam 1:22; 2 Sam 10:5; 1 Chr 19:15. For a somewhat fuller treatment of the relation between vs. 14b and vs. 14c see my analysis of the syntactic function of יַעֲשַׁה in vs. 14c.

\(^7\)The English coinage “evening-morning” is here and in the following an attempt to reproduce the peculiar Hebrew phrase יַעֲשַׁה 2300 вечер–ран(и)ше маа הָאָרֶץ with its singular, asyndetic nouns in such a way as to retain its conspicuous character.
morning" require explanation: the word order "noun + numeral," the singular and
asynthetic use of the nouns רָעָה עָבוֹדָה, and the sequence "evening-morning." The first
two concern the syntax of the time phrase and the last has implications for its meaning.

Sequence: noun + numeral

In BH, the numerals higher than "one" usually precede the item counted. The
word sequence "numeral + noun" is hence the classical order. The reverse order "noun +
umeral" is found frequently in enumerations, lists, and administrative documents
(synchronic explanation by genre). It occurs increasingly in later BH texts—mainly in
Daniel (see table 14),2 Ezra, Nehemiah, and 1 and 2 Chronicles—and in BA.

Table 14. Phrases with Cardinals (Higher than One) in the Book of Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word Order</th>
<th>Time Phrases</th>
<th>Other Phrases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Numeral + Noun</td>
<td>BH: 9:2 (נני sg.); 10:2, 3, 13 (דיו sg.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22 times)</td>
<td>BA: 4:13, 20, 22, 29.</td>
<td>BH: 1:20; 8:7, 8b, 22; 11:2, 4; 12:5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BA: 7:2, 3, 5, 6b, 17, 24b, 24y.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28 times)</td>
<td>BA: 4:26; 6:1, 8, 11, 13, 14.</td>
<td>BH: —</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BA: 3:1a, 1b, 24, 25; 5:1; 6:2, 3; 7:6a, 7, 20, 24a.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1The decreasing order of elements in counting expressions is common (GKC, 434 [§134i]).

2Cf. Herner, 63-66 (for BH) and 70-71 (for BA). The phrases in Dan 1:17 ("the four of
them") and in Dan 3:23 ("the three of them") are not listed here since the numerals are augmented
with a pronominal suffix. The phrase רָעָה עָבוֹדָה "conspicuous four" (8:8a)—which is taken as
"noun + numeral" by König ("Zur Syntax der Zahlwörter," 130)—cannot be assigned to a specific
word order, because the noun to which רָעָה עָבוֹדָה "four" stands in apposition, either "horns" or the
nominal adjective "others," is clearly elliptical. The use of the dual in רַעָה עָבוֹדָה "ten horns" in Dan
7:7 has been explained by the fact that the dual occurs more often (Segert, Altaramäische Grammatik,
346 [§6.4.2.8.1]).

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Diachronically, it could be explained by the increasing adjectival behavior of the numerals. Hence, the word sequence “noun + numeral” in the time phrase “2300 evening-morning” in Dan 8:14b is not exceptional.

Yet, the uniqueness of the time unit “evening-morning” in BH could suggest that the order “noun + numeral” is intentional in order to focus attention on the time unit “evening-morning” before the actual number is given. The emphasis of the whole time phrase is on the semantic notion being conveyed by “evening-morning,” which, suggested by its intertextual relation (see below), is creation. This creates a powerful rhetorical effect: After the question until which point in time the destructive situation will continue, the first thought triggered by the answer is regarding creation. Thus, the idea is that

---

1 For the diachronic explanation see Sven Henner, Syntax der Zahlwörter im Alten Testament (Lund: Berling, 1893), 54, 68, 140; Davidson, Hebrew Syntax, 52 (§37); Eduard König, “Zur Syntax der Zahlwörter im Alten Testament,” AJSL 18 (1901–1902): 135-136; GKC, 434 (§134h); Robert Polzin, Late Biblical Hebrew: Toward an Historical Typology of Biblical Hebrew Prose, HSM, no. 12 (Missoula: Scholars, 1976), 58-60; Qimron, The Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls, 85-86; Jouon and Muraoka, 526-527 (§142d). Extensive lists for the word sequence “noun + numeral” are found in Henner (53-71) and König (“Zur Syntax der Zahlwörter,” 129-136). Even with the numerals 100 and 1000 the item counted can precede the number (e.g., Num 31:32-34, 38-40, 44-46; 1 Kgs 8:63; 1 Chr 5:21). Hence, BHRG claims incorrectly that “these numerals [100 and 1000] always precede the noun” 268 (§37.2/2[vi]) (emphasis theirs). One should however be careful not to take the order “noun + numeral” as a clear unmistakable characteristic of late Hebrew. At best, there is an increasing tendency for the postnominal position of the numeral. See Arno Kropat, Die Syntax des Autors der Chronik verglichen mit der seiner Quellen: Ein Beitrag zur historischen Syntax des Hebräischen, BAZW, 16 (Gießen: Töpelmann, 1909), 50-53, esp. 51; Gary Rendsburg, “Late Biblical Hebrew and the Date of P,” JANESCU 12 (1980), 71; Qimron, The Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls, 86; Gibson, Syntax, 48 (§46 rem. 3); Steven Weitzman, “The Shifting Syntax of Numerals in Biblical Hebrew: A Reassessment,” JNES 55 (1996): 179-181. Though Qimron believes that we do not know whether the order “noun + numeral” came from Aramaic or from a Hebrew dialect and thus assuming a late development of that order (The Hebrew of the Dead Sea Scrolls, 86), Weitzman summarizes the state of research correctly when he points to the fact that “the numeral’s vacillating position in Biblical Hebrew . . . reflects a more generalized development which occurred repeatedly in the Canaanite and Aramaic branches of Northwest Semitic” (181) and therefore “does not reflect a single historical change” (182). Instead Weitzman suggests that the shifting position of the numeral is dependent on the increasing adjectival behavior of numerals (182-185).
creation counters destruction.

Singular and asyndetic use of נִמְנָר

Somewhat striking is the singular use of נִמְנָר. In BH and BA, the item counted should be in the plural when it stands before the number. The item counted is singular only in cases in which a collective noun is used or a noun which, when combined with numerals, usually occurs in the singular.¹

The book of Daniel reflects this usage (see table 14). In the order “numeral + noun” (11 times in BH; 11 times in BA) the noun is always plural, except for וַיָּמַר “year” in 9:2 and וַיְבִר “day” 10:13, both common words which typically can be used in the singular when combined with numerals. Whenever the order is “noun + numeral” the noun is plural (10 times in BH; 17 times in BA), except for לַמְדִיעַר מַר in Dan 8:14b.

The singular of לַמְדִיעַר can be explained by the fact that both לַמְדִיעַר and מַר are used in the singular elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible, and only when found in a specific meaning are they used in the dual or in the plural. לַמְדִיעַר (135x in the OT) is used 124 times in the singular (“evening”) and 11 times in the dual in the phrase מִרְבָּא לַמְדִיעַר “at twilight” (Exod 12:6; 16:12; 29:39, 41; 30:8; Lev 23:5; Num 9:3, 5, 11; 28:4, 8). מַר (214x in the OT) is used 209 times in the singular (“morning”) and 5 times in the plural in

¹Herner provides a list of occurrences where singular nouns stand before numbers, including numbers consisting of the numerals לְוַיָּמַר or לַמְדִיעַר (85-88). For the phenomenon of collective singular nouns with numerals—without regard to the word order—see the extensive list by König, “Zur Syntax der Zahlwörter,” 138-148. See also GKC, 433 (§134g); Brockelmann, 76 (§84c); Rudolf Meyer, Hebräische Grammatik, De-Gruyter Studienbuch (Berlin: de Gruyter, 1992), 380-381 [§99.6]; Waltke and O’Connor, 281-283 (15.2.5); Foison and Muraoka, 527 (§142eg); Gibson, Syntax, 50 (§47 rem. 1) and BHRG, 268 (§37.2/2). Gibson provides a selective list of nouns which are not considered to be collective singulars but do occur once or twice in the singular when combined with a number (Syntax, 50 [§47 rem. 1]).

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
the phrase לֵילָה-בְּשָׂרָה or לֵילָה-בְּשָׂרָה "every morning" (Isa 33:2; Pss 73:14; 101:8; Job 7:18; Lam 3:23). Further, בְּשָׂרָה and בְּשָׂרָה are nowhere else found in combination with a numeral, except in 1 Sam 20:5 where is used with the cardinal לֵילָה in the temporal expression לֵילָה "until the third evening." For the typical singular use of בְּשָׂרָה and the lack of any syntactic parallel it is doubtful whether the singular use of בְּשָׂרָה in Dan 8:14b should be regarded as exceptional; rather it could be demanded by the typical singular use of these two words in BH. The nouns may even be considered as collective singulars.

At the same time the singular and asyndetic use of בְּשָׂרָה indicates that the measuring unit of the time phrase is "evening-morning" and not separately counted evenings and mornings. The singular בְּשָׂרָה strengthens the impression that each time unit is one "evening-morning," two time units are two "evening-morning," and so on.

---

1If "2300" in Dan 8:14b were an ordinal, which can be neither proved nor disproved conclusively, the temporal construction in 1 Sam 20:5 would constitute a parallel to it.

2Pace Schwantes who concludes that "the expression ereb böger stands exceptionally in the singular in contrast to all the other enumerations in the book [of Daniel]" (473). Nonetheless, he argues, in my view correctly, that the singular of בְּשָׂרָה is evidence that the expression represents a unit of time" (ibid.).

3For a collective understanding of בְּשָׂרָה in Dan 8:14c see HALOT, 2:878. While not commenting on Dan 8:14c in particular, Herner groups בְּשָׂרָה and בְּשָׂרָה together with other nouns—e.g., בְּשָׂרָה, בְּשָׂרָה, and בְּשָׂרָה—and observes that these nouns "stand in the singular because of their collective meaning" (86).

4Ewald takes the two nouns בְּשָׂרָה as a compound expression that is equivalent to the Greek νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέραν “a night and a day,” a span of 24 hours (no LXX occurrence; in the NT only in 1 Cor 11:25) (Lehrbuch, 666 [§270d]). For König בְּשָׂרָה is a word pair that expresses a unit (2:416 [$122.5b$]). Consequently, the phrase "evening-morning" serves as a single unit, and the time period has a length of 2300 times this unit. The fact that the two words form a combination that stands for the period of a day is also pointed out by Trix Gretler, Zeit und Stunde: Theologische Zeitkonzepte zwischen Erfahrung und Ideologie in den Büchern Kohelet und Daniel, TVZ Dissertationen (Zürich: TVZ, 2004), 231.
forth. In other words, one item counted is one “evening-morning” rather than one evening or one morning. Two items counted are two “evening-morning” rather than one evening and one morning, and so forth.¹

At this point, the asyndetic use of the two nouns בֵּכָר and וַיָּרָם deserves comment. Why is the expression וַיָּרָם בֵּכָר in 8:14b asyndetic, whereas in 8:26 the two nouns are coordinated in the construct phrase פָּרָא אִיתָא הָעַבְרָבָא וְזָיָמְהוּ בֵּכָר “the vision of the evening and the morning”?² It has been argued that the conjunctionי in vs. 26 shows that וַיָּרָם should not be understood as a single unit, but rather evenings and mornings should be understood in their individual meanings and be counted separately, not as day, but as one evening and one morning.³ This is hardly convincing for several reasons. First, in vs. 26 there is no temporal phrase in which evening and morning need to be used as a unit. Second, both the conjunction and the article before each term are likely due to the construct relation פָּרָא אִיתָא הָעַבְרָבָא. Third, the anaphoric use of the definite article for both בֵּכָר and וַיָּרָם in vs. 26 referring back to בֵּכָר וַיָּרָם seems to demand the use of the conjunction. Fourth, one could on the contrary argue that the conjunction in vs. 26 clarifies the unit “evening-morning” in vs. 14b to be understood exactly as the unit “evening and morning” and not separated as individual evening or morning. Finally, one

¹If the daily tāmiḏ is regarded as “two-phased” (so Levine, Numbers 21-36, 370, 395-403; see also below p. 384 n. 2), it would be indeed difficult to see how the combination of “evening-morning” could represent the unit “part of the daily tāmiḏ” so that a single morning sacrifice and a single evening sacrifice would count as two “evening-morning.”

²Apparently to harmonize the two phrases, Montgomery suggests that in vs. 14b “an orig. 1 may easily have fallen out before the following labial” (344).

³Hitzig, 136; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Bevan, 136; Prince, Daniel, 148; Marti, Daniel, 60; Charles, 212; Hasslberger, 393.
could also argue that the lacking ו in the asyndetic בֹּקֶר וַיָּמִרב in vs. 14b is sign enough that the phrase functions as a single measuring unit.

There is no other temporal unit which consists of two asyndetic elements like "evening-morning." The time phrases consisting of בֹּקֶר "day" and לילה ליל "night" cannot function as comparison to determine the nature of the time phrase with the measuring unit בֹּקֶר וַיָּמִרב because of two major differences. First, the phrases with day and night always have the order "daylight period + dark period" whereas "evening-morning" has the order reversed. Second, the phrases with day and night always have a numeral in front of each item and thus both day and night function as individual units. In Dan 8:14b, however, evening and morning serve as one unit and the number 2300 refers to the unit as a whole. Thus, regarding the relationship between time phrases using day and night and the phrase "evening-morning" one should argue neither for similar nor for contrasting expressions.2

The argument that 2300 days should have been expressed by "2300 evenings and 2300 mornings" overlooks the fact that the expression "evening-morning" alludes to creation in a more pithy way and emphasizes the creation idea more strongly than if evening and morning were separated by repetition of the long number יָמִרב וַיָּמִרב וַיָּמִרב יָמִרב יָמִרב.

1In BH the following time phrases with בֹּקֶר "day" and לילה ליל "night" are found: "three days and three nights" (1 Sam 30:12; Jonah 2:1), "seven days and seven nights" (Job 2:13), "forty days and forty nights" (Gen 7:4, 12; Exod 24:18; 34:28; Deut 9:9, 11, 18, 25; 10:10; 1 Kgs 19:8).

2For example, Tiefenthal argues for similarity and believes that the "2300 evening-morning" designate 2300 days (271), whereas Hasslberger argues for contrast and believes that the "2300 evening-morning" designate 1150 days (392-393).
Word order and meaning of "Ip 2 3 "1 1 7

Though are sometimes considered to be “obscure words,” the phrase as found makes sense and emendations are not advisable. The considerations above show that the grammatical-syntactic features of the phrase “2300 evening-morning” have direct implications for its meaning. The close connection between syntax and semantics is even more obvious with regard to the word order of the phrase. Before the order of the expressions and is examined and its significance assessed, an overview of the different understandings of the time phrase might be helpful.

The time phrase “2300 evening-morning” has received various interpretations based on how one understands the expression . There are basically two main suggestions how to interpret the meaning of this time phrase.

The first is to understand the “2300 evening-morning” as 2300 days. The main

1Von Lengerke, 387 (“dunkle Worte”).

2For example, Knabenbauer assumes that the text read originally “until days 2300” with the letters of as numeric value for 2300. Later, scribes wrote out the numeral, took as noun, added , and finally dropped (214-215). Montgomery hypothesizes that “an orig. 1 may easily have fallen out before the following labial” (344).

3For a detailed overview of interpretations of the “2300 evening-morning” given between 1700 and 1900 see Núñez, The Vision of Daniel 8, 83-100, 207-229, 358-372, 413-423.

4Old Greek, Theodotion (both read καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ἡμέρας καὶ πρωΐ ἡμέρας διασχίζαι [Theodotion adds: καὶ] τριακόσια “until evening and morning, days 2300”); Jerome, 856; medieval Jewish commentators (cited in Montgomery, 343); Calvin, 108; Bertholdt, 501-502; Havernick, 294; von Lengerke, 388-390; Maurer, 146; Keil, 302-304; Faussa, 1:638; E. B. Pusey, Daniel the Prophet: Nine Lectures Delivered in the Divinity School of the University of Oxford, 3d ed. (Oxford: Parker, 1876), 221-222 n. 12; Rohling, Daniel, 241-242; Knabenbauer, 213-215; Tiefenthal, 271; Riessler, Daniel (1902), 73, 76; Stokmann, 129; Beek, 85; Linder, 339-343; Leupold, 354-358; Young, Daniel, 174-175; Barnes, 2:114; Walvoord, 190; Schwantes, 375-385; Goldingay, Daniel, 213; Miller, Daniel, 228-230; Lucas, Daniel, 218 (tentatively); Robert I. Vasholz, “‘Evening and Morning’ in Genesis 1,”
argument for this view is that the phrase יַנְיָשׁ יַנְיָשׁ reflects creation language and thus refers to an entire day. Most adherents of this view interpret the time period as literal 2300 days referring to a specific time period in the time of the Maccabees, some suggest that the 2300 days signify 2300 years according to a supposed prophetic year-day principle,\(^1\) one believes that they are 2300 days times 49 according to a prophetic ratio of 1:49,\(^2\) still others regard the 2300 days as a fixed period without necessarily giving it a chronological significance in history.\(^3\)

The second major view is to regard יַנְיָשׁ יַנְיָשׁ as cultic language referring to (part

---

\(^1\) Ford, *Daniel*, 189, 196-197 (later, however, Ford argues for a period of 1150 days [Daniel and the Coming King (Newcastle: by the author, 1996), 105]); Shea, *Selected Studies*, 80-83 (= rev. ed., 95-99); Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 435; Doukhan, *Daniel*, 31-36. Anderson admits that "there could be some warrant" for this interpretation "in light of the Danielic reinterpretation of Jeremiah's seventy years of exile." He finally decides that "if, however, the interpretation is limited to certain events within the reign of Antiochus IV, a satisfactory and eminently sensible solution is possible" (*Signs and Wonders*, 98).

\(^2\) W. S. Auchincloss, *The Only Key to Daniel's Prophecies* (New York: Van Nostrand, 1903), 138, 140-141. Auchincloss sees a 1:49 ratio in the 49 days between Passover and the Feast of Weeks and in the 49 years between Jubilee years. He calculates the “2300 evening-morning” (for him 112,700 days) on the basis of the sidereal year from October 14, 450 BC (supposedly the date of God’s commandment to restore and rebuilt Jerusalem) to May 4, 141 BC (National Independence Day).

\(^3\) Leupold does not compute the 2300 days but regards this time period with “ideal prophetic value” (a term borrowed from Zöckler) to signify that the 2300 days are "not even a full period of divine judgment," which, for Leupold, would be seven years (356-357). "The fact that it is expressed in days reminds the troubled Israelites that the Lord will not let this period extend a day beyond what they can bear" (ibid., 357). See already, Keil, 307 (followed by Young, 174-175); Wordsworth, 40. Goldingay attributes on the basis of 1 Enoch 90:5—twenty-three shepherds pastured the Jews during the Hellenistic period—symbolic significance to the “2300 evening-morning” and concludes that “the 2300 days may, then, suggest a fixed ‘significant’ period, which might or might not denote a chronological period in the region of six or seven years” (*Daniel*, 213; cf. Lucas, *Daniel*, 218, 224).
of) the daily sacrifice defined as being a morning or an evening sacrifice. In this case the
"2300 evening-morning" would refer to 2300 times of offering either a morning or an
evening sacrifice which would equal a time period of 1150 days. Arguments brought
forward for this view are as follows. First, the use of sacrificial language in vss. 11-12, in
particular the expression יְהַבֶּל עַל מָעָן taken as reference to the daily sacrifice, suggests that
עַל מָעָן refers to the evening and the morning offering. Second, the phrase in vs. 26
(הֹלַךְ לְפָנָיו הָעִיר “the evening and the morning”) suggests that evening and morning in vs.
14b should be counted separately. Third, a comparison with the other time periods which
the "2300 evening-morning" are said to correspond to shows that they all designate a time
period between 1260 and 1335 days, with which 1150 days would fit much better than
2300 days. Finally, there are historical considerations. The interpretation that “2300
evening-morning” are 2300 days is usually rejected by reference to the alleged historical
context of the time of Antiochus IV in which there is no period of approximately six and

---

1Ephraim of Syria cited in Montgomery, 343; Ibn Ezra cited in Anderson, Signs and Wonders,
98; Kirmss, 38 (cited in Hitzig, 135); Hitzig, 135; Kliefoth, 260; Caspari, 138; Zöckler, 178; Ewald,
Daniel, 263; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 309; Bevan, 136; Terry, 64; Behrmann, 55 (who opts for 1150 days,
though he admits it to be more natural that עַל מָעָן designates a day and the whole phrase would
then designate 2300 days); von Gall, 52; Prince, Daniel, 148; Driver, Daniel, 119; Marti, Daniel, 60;
Jahn, 80; Montgomery, 343; Aalders, Het boek Daniel, 167; Goettsberger, 62; Charles, 212; Obbink,
111; Ginsberg, Studies in Daniel, 82 n. 42 (on p. 77 he assumes that “2300” originally read “2330”;
Nötscher, Daniel, 43; Steinmann, 124; Bentzen, 71; Saydon, 636; Nelis, 97; H. Schneider, Daniel, 56;
Jeffery, 475-477; Aalders, Daniel (1962), 181; G. R. Driver, “Sacred Numbers and Round Figures,”
in Promise and Fulfilment: Essays Presented to Professor S. H. Hooke in Celebration of His Ninetieth
Birthday, 21st January 1964, ed. F. F. Bruce (Edinburgh: Clark, 1963), 77-81; Claus Schdel,
“Mystische Arithmetik,” 101-105; Ploeger, Daniel, 127; Porteous, 126-127; Delcor, 177; Hammer, 86;
Baldwin, 158; Hartman and Di Lella, 227, 237; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 164, 250; Russell,
151; Maier, 309; Anderson, Signs and Wonders, 98; Lebram, Daniel, 95; Towner, 122; Archer, 7:103;
Collins, Daniel (1993), 336; Haag, Daniel, 65; Ford, Daniel and the Coming King, 105; Bauer, Das
Buch Daniel; Di Lella, Daniel, 161; Buchanan, 248; Gowan, Daniel, 120-121.
a half years during which the temple was desecrated. Rather the period of Antiochus IV’s profanation of the temple in Jerusalem was three years, that is, 1080 days (see 1 Macc 1:54, 59; 4:52), which is roughly equivalent to 1150 days.\(^1\) Caution, however, is indicated when the meaning of the text is being shaped by a presupposed fulfillment in history or by a historic event which is presumed to be equivalent to the text.

In this view, the time period of 1150 days is understood to refer to a specific period during the time of the Maccabees. Two kinds of approaches are most often taken in explaining the 1150 days. One is to regard the 1150 days as a true, but mistaken prediction or calculation of the length of the temple desecration under Antiochus IV. The other is to understand the 1150 days as a prediction after the event, referring to a specific period in the time of the Maccabees. The placement of the exact beginning and end date of the 1150 days for the latter approach varies among scholars.\(^2\) Still others regard

\(^{1}\)See, e.g., the reasoning by Porteous, 126-127. A historical analogy, which would support that the time phrase in Dan 8:14b designates the time period of Antiochus’s desecration of the Jerusalem temple, is considered by Plüger, Daniel, 127-128. The “exciting parallel!” (ibid., 128) is found in the time period of Belshazar’s desecration of the temple instruments (539 B.C.E.) ending with the return of the first Jews from exile under Cyrus (536 B.C.E.), which is approximately three years or 1150 days.

\(^{2}\)See Hasslberger (385-396) and Gese (400-402) for overviews of some of the different suggestions on how to understand the time elements in Daniel. The main suggestions regarding the “2300 evening-morning” are the following:

1. Successive postponements: The awaited end of the oppression had been deferred so that new calculations had become necessary. In this view, the first time calculation was the “2300 evening-morning” period which is understood to designate 1150 days (Hermann Gunkel, *Schöpfung und Chaos in Urzeit und Endzeit: Eine religionsgeschichtliche Untersuchung über Gen 1 und Ap Joh 12* [Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1895], 267-269, esp. 269 n. 1; Gustav Hölscher, “Die Entstehung des Buches Daniel,” *TSK* 92 [1919]: 132-133; Hasslberger, 396; Collins, *Daniel* [1993], 336, 400-401; Rainer Stahl, “‘Eine Zeit, Zeiten und die Hälfte einer Zeit,’” 491-493). Similarly, but with exact historical dates, Martin Thilo explains that each of the different time periods (1150, 1290, and 1335 days) is being part of a different calculation of the last week of years, a 7-year period of trouble (2555 days). In each of the three calculations the predicted time period would represent the final part of these seven years and end at a different date—the 1150 days would end October 1, 165;
the 1290 days end February 15, 164; and the 133 days end April 1, 164—so that the 7-year period would end, as well as start, at different dates (Die Chronologie des Danielbuches [Bonn: Schmidt, 1926], 21-27).

(2) Guesswork: The time periods in 7:25; 8:14; 9:27; 12:7, 11, 12 all designate a period of more or less 3½ years and refer to the same time. The writer was himself not clear about the time period or wanted to leave the readers guessing at the time period of oppression (J. Meinhold, “Das Buch Daniel,” 309-310, 338).

(3) From temple desecration to city fortification: Claus Schedl suggests the time from the desecration of the temple (Kislev 15, 167 = December 6, 167) until the fortification of Mount Zion which he hypothetically dates to Shvat 15, 163 (= January 31, 163) (“Mystische Arithmetik,” 101-105). For the hypothetical character of Schedl’s suggestions see Sydney Allen, “On Schedl’s Attempt to Count the Days of Daniel,” AUSS 4 (1966): 105-106.


(5) Intentionally ambiguous: Burgmann basically holds the position that the time period in Dan 8:14b evolved from the intention to combine three tendencies: the half-year tradition in the book of Daniel, the three years of the temple desecration in 167-164 B.C.E., and the possibility that God’s intervention could happen at a still later time. Thus, the 2300 evening and morning period was intentionally ambiguous so that it could be interpreted as 2300 half days—which, if reckoned according to the moon calendar, would be exactly between the 3 years of the temple desecration and the 3½ years mentioned elsewhere in Daniel (7:25; 9:27; 12:7)—or as 2300 full days if the final restoration should take longer (544-545). However, Burgmann has to go a long way to explain the other time periods in Daniel for which he supposes different Maccabean and Hasidic influences and then reckons with both moon and sun calendars and the respective intercalary periods. “Calculations of such kind verge on arbitrariness” (Gese, 401).

(6) From temple desecration to Antiochus’s death: Jonathan A. Goldstein reckons all time periods in Daniel from 25 Kislev (December 16), 167 (II Maccabees, AB, vol. 41A [Garden City: Doubleday, 1983], 113-123), so that the 2300 half days end for him on February 8, 163, with the possible event that “Jews at Jerusalem . . . receive a copy of a letter from Antiochus V announcing the death of Antiochus IV and restoring the temple to the Jews and thus ‘vindicating the Holy’” (ibid., 118; cf. idem, Peoples of an Almighty God, 462).

(7) From temple desecration to the reestablishment of the temple sacrifices: Gabriele Boccaccini argues that Daniel used a 360+4-day Zadokite sabbatical calendar and thus calculated the 1150 days (including 13 intercalary days) from the fall equinox of 167 B.C.E., which marks the beginning of Antiochus’s persecution (i.e., the interruption of the daily sacrifices) to the 27th of the eighth month of 164, on which according to the Megillat Ta’anit “they began again to bring the offerings of fine flour upon the altar,” which Boccaccini takes as indicator for the restoration of the daily sacrifices and the cleansing of the temple. The expression “evening-morning” is regarded as intentional to avoid “days,” which in the Zadokite calendar would not have included the intercalary days between the seasons (“The Solar Calendars of Daniel and Enoch,” in The Book of Daniel: Composition and Reception, ed. J. J. Collins and P. W. Flint, VTSup, no. 83, FIOTL, no. 2 [Leiden: Brill, 2001], 2:311-328; Roots of Rabbinic Judaism: An Intellectual History, from Ezekiel to Daniel [Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2002], 191-193).

(8) Principal measurement: Gese proposes that the “2300 evening-morning” is a time period given with a principal measurement of 2 and 3 (2 thousands and 3 hundreds). In that way the time period could indicate anything between 2201 and 2300 evenings and mornings. Gese then calculates
the 1150 days as a fixed period without necessarily giving it chronological significance in history.1 Another, recent suggestion is to find the symbolic meaning of 1150 by means of Pythagorean plane numbers.2

Of course, there are also other suggestions besides the two major views (2300 days or 1150 days), but they have not received much support.3

In order to enhance the understanding of the time phrase “2300 evening-morning,” one should recognize that the differences of the two major views rest on one issue in particular.4 That is, the various interpretations of the meaning of the “2300 evening-morning” by the solar calendar 2217 evenings and mornings (= 1109 days) from the desecration of the altar (15 Kislev 167) to the end of the reconsecration ceremony (seven days after 25 Kislev 164) and thus assumes that the prediction of some 2300 evenings and mornings found its adequate fulfillment in history (Gese, 410-411).

For the purpose of dating the 1150 days, it is a secondary question, and thus does not really matter here, whether one accepts the view that the temple desecration by Antiochus IV dates 167-164 B.C.E. (presently the majority position) or rather dates 168-165 B.C.E. (recently argued again by Lester L. Grabbe, “Maccabean Chronology: 167-164 or 168-165 BCE,” JBL 110 [1991]: 59-74).

1Kliefoth (264-265) and Kranichfeld (298, 300) believe that the number of “2300 evening-morning” (which for them means 1150 days) is given exactly for the reason to suggest that the horn’s (Antiochus’s) aggression does not even reach the duration of a divine judgment (cf. Behrmann, xiii).

2Susan Fournier Mathews, “The Numbers in Daniel 12:11-12: Rounded Pythagorean Plane Numbers?” CBQ 63 (2001): 630-646. She proposes that the number 1150 is a specific kind of symbolic number. It approximates the 1156 of the 34th square number, that is, the sum of all successive odd whole numbers up to and including the 34th number in the series (1 + 3 + 5 + . . . + 65 + 67). The 1150 days in Dan 8:14 would then designate the first half-week of years as the “bad” half-week of desecration on the basis that 1150 plus 1335 (from Dan 12:12) equal 2485, the triangle number of the 70th place which stands for the final week of the 70 weeks of years.

3Some of the ideas are that the phrase “2300 evening-morning” needs to be interpreted with the help of gematria (Rashi and Alshich, 384, that הָלְלָה הַבָּרוּךְ בְּהַמָּשָׁא refers to an unspecified period of time (Maayenei Hayeshuah 9:7 cited in Slotki [1992]), 68), or that “the number was sufficiently vague that it could designate anywhere from just over three to about seven years” (Redditt, 141; cf. H. Schneider, Daniel, 56, who regards it as likely that “the answer is formulated intentionally ambiguous”).

4It is deemed legitimate to exclude two lines of argumentation from the discussion. First, the relation of הָלְלָה הַבָּרוּךְ in Dan 8:14b to הָלְלָה הַבָּרוּךְ in vs. 26 has been shown above to be indecisive. Second, historical considerations that try to find a specific historical fulfillment of the “2300 evening-
morning” are based on how one understands the terminological background of the expression שֵׁלְשָׁלֹם. Three different possibilities, in part mentioned already, can be thought of (see table 15).

Table 15. Interpretations of “2300 Evening-Morning”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language Background</th>
<th>Reference of שֵׁלְשָׁלֹם to</th>
<th>Time Indicated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Creation</td>
<td>Day: night and daylight hours</td>
<td>2300 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cult</td>
<td>Daily ṭamī d: evening and morning sacrifice</td>
<td>2300 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Cult</td>
<td>Daily ṭamī d: evening or morning sacrifice</td>
<td>1150 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First, שֵׁלְשָׁלֹם is considered to be creation language referring to an entire day. “2300 evening-morning” would then be 2300 days. Second, שֵׁלְשָׁלֹם is taken as cultic language which refers to one daily sacrifice defined as consisting of the morning and the evening sacrifice. In this case, “2300 evening-morning” would be 2300 daily sacrifices equaling a time period of 2300 days. And third, שֵׁלְשָׁלֹם is regarded to be cultic language referring to (part of) the daily sacrifice defined as being a morning or an evening sacrifice. In this instance, “2300 evening-morning” would refer to 2300 times of offering either a morning or an evening sacrifice equaling a time period of 1150 days.

morning” should not be used initially to understand the time period. Textual considerations have priority.
There is no doubt that the expression נִּמְנָאָד has special significance, otherwise the time unit דָּעַי “day” or יָמִים “days” could have been used (as in Dan 12:11, 12). The word order “evening” and then “morning” and the absolute use of the two nouns which are not combined with any other words are conspicuous. An investigation of all the instances in the Hebrew Bible in which נִּמְנָאָד and נָפָר occur together leads to the following observations.1

Besides Dan 8:14b, 26, the absolute use of נִּמְנָאָד and נָפָר (i.e., without being in construct relation and without preceding preposition) in close proximity to each other is found only in Gen 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; Exod 16:6-8; Deut 28:67; and Ps 55:18. The order is always first נָפָר and then נִּמְנָאָד.2 The contexts of these occurrences show two basic themes which could also be present in Dan 8: the one is God’s creative power and the revelation of his presence, the other is the being or feeling of being distant from God as experienced by the people of God and their complaints about the situation.3

1 The use of the dual נִּמְנָאָד “twilight” together with נָפָר in the same context (Exod 16:12; 29:39, 41; Num 28:4, 8) is not considered here.

2 In Deut 28:67 both sequences—“morning - evening” and “evening - morning”—are present in chiastic-like arrangement. The introduction in vs. 66 clearly has the sequence “night and day.”

3 In Gen 1, evening and morning are part of the day formula which concludes the account of God’s creative activity on each day. In Exod 16, after the Israelites grumbled again (vss. 2-3), Moses and Aaron assured them that God will reveal himself to them (vss. 6-7): “evening (נָפָר), and you will know that יְהֹוָה has brought you out of the land of Egypt; and morning (נִּמְנָאָד), and you will see the glory of יְהֹוָה, for he hears your murmurings against יְהֹוָה” (Exod 16:6-7: cf. vs. 8). “Evening” and “morning” are connected to each other in a similar way as in Dan 8:26, and both terms are combined with the revelation of the glory of יְהֹוָה which proves God as the lord over creation (cf. Num 16:5, where syntactically the same construction occurs with נִּמְנָאָד only). Here, the use of נִּמְנָאָד and נָפָר could be idiomatically for “soon” (see H. Niehr, “נִּמְנָאָד ‘ereh,” TDOT, 11:337). At the end of the covenant curses in Deut 28:66-67 one consequence for the disobedient partner is given as the fear and dread “night and day,” evening and morning. And the Psalmist, complaining “evening and morning and noon” and calling upon God to rescue from the wicked and from the enemy, assures the reader that יְהֹוָה will hear and save (Ps 55:18).
basis of the absolute use alone, it is difficult to know with certainty whether מָבְרֵשׁ in Dan 8:14b draws from such a background, but it could definitely be possible since both themes fit the train of thought in Dan 8:12-14. The experience of the absence of God and the indirect call for his intervention is expressed in the question in vs. 13. And the revelation of God’s presence and his creative power is alluded to by the time limitation of the destructive activities and the mention of the holy being restored in vs. 14. Interestingly, in none of these texts do מָבְרֵשׁ and מָבְרֵשׁ occur in relationship to the daily offering or the sacrificial system.1

A more important factor for the meaning of מָבְרֵשׁ in Dan 8:14b is the word sequence “evening - morning.”2 In the Hebrew Bible, both the sequence “evening - morning” and the sequence “morning - evening” can be found in either a loose or closer type of connection.3

1The absolute of מָבְרֵשׁ and the absolute of מָבְרֵשׁ also occur alone, that is, not in the same context. In these instances they function as the subject of a verb and always denote the beginning of the day or daylight, respectively the beginning or extension of the night hours. מָבְרֵשׁ is used with רָאָה “be light” (Gen 44:3; cf. 2 Sam 23:4; Mic 2:1), רָאָה “come” (Isa 21:12); רָאָה “be” (Exod 10:13; 19:16); and מָבְרֵשׁ “turn” (Judg 19:26). Мָבְרֵשׁ is used with מַלְאָכָה “turn” (Gen 24:63; Deut 32:12); מַלְאָכָה “continue” (Job 7:4). Again, in these texts there is no reference to sacrifices.

2On the word sequence of “evening - morning,” respectively “morning - evening,” see Schwantes, 381-384. Vaschoz concludes that “in almost every instance where the Old Testament uses these two words [evening and morning] consecutively, they refer to a twenty-four hour day” (110).

3The sequence “evening - morning” is found in Gen 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; Exod 16:6-7, 8, 13 (cf. vs. 12 with מָבְרֵשׁ נַחֲלָה “at twilight” and מָבְרֵשׁ); 27:21; Lev 24:3; Num 9:15, 21; Deut 16:4; 28:67; Isa 17:14; Ezek 33:22; Zeph 3:3; Pss 30:6; 55:18; Esth 2:14; Dan 8:14, 26. The sequence “morning - evening” is found in Gen 49:27; Exod 18:13, 14; Lev 6:13; Deut 28:67; 1 Kgs 17:6; 2 Kgs 16:15; Pss 65:9; 90:6; Job 4:20; Eccl 11:6; Ezra 3:3; 1 Chr 16:40; 23:30; 2 Chr 2:3; 13:11; 31:3. And there is the sequence “morning - evening - morning” in Ezek 24:18. The only sequence occurring in the Dead Sea Scrolls is “evening - morning” in 4Q320 1.1.3 (= 4QCalendrical Doc A 1.1.3) and 4Q502 27.2 (= 4QpapRitMar 27.2) or 4Q Ritual of Marriage 27.2. See, e.g., Florentino Garcia Martinez and Eibert J. C. Tigchelaar, eds., The Dead Sea Scrolls Study Edition (Leiden: Brill, 1998), 2:678-679, 996-997.
The only texts which have בְּכֶרֶב and לֹא in the absolute state, without prepositions, and in the sequence “evening - morning” are Gen 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; Exod 16:6-7; Ps 55:18; and Dan 8:14, 26. In Ps 55:18 the time phrase לֹא בְכֶרֶב is extended by לֹא עָלָיִם “and (at) noon,” making it the only time in BH that these three words occur together. Thematically, Ps 55:18 may have affinities to Dan 8:13-14—the continual supplication to יהוּד three times a day (cf. Dan 6:11) in complaining and moaning (Ps 55:18a) and the imprecation or plea for the destruction of the enemy (vss. 10, 16, 24) could be expressed in the question in Dan 8:13c, whereas the affirmation of confidence that יהוּד rescues (Ps 55:17b, 18b, 19a) finds its parallel in the answer in Dan 8:14b-c. However, Dan 8:14 does not take up the unique triad of terms found in Ps 55:18. Exodus 16:6-7 describes that the Israelites will recognize that salvation is from יהוּד when he supplies his people miraculously with quail in the evening and manna in the morning. There might be a relation to Dan 8:14, especially since the verb forms following לֹא בְכֶרֶב and לֹא בְכֶרֶב in Exod 16:6-7 are wqatal forms, like the verb form in Dan 8:14c. In that case, לֹא בְכֶרֶב in Dan 8:14b would prepare for God’s salvific activity, maybe even to another Exodus experience. However, לֹא בְכֶרֶב and לֹא בְכֶרֶב in Exod 16:6-7 each designate a time for a different activity and are separated by a sentence. With such a construction it is, however, difficult to prove that Dan 8:14bc alludes to Exod 16:6-7. Rather, it seems best to infer that both Exod 16:6-7 and Dan 8:14bc refer intertextually to the occurrence of בְּכֶרֶב and לֹא בְכֶרֶב in Gen 1. Therefore the conclusion is inescapable that terminologically the expression בְּכֶרֶב לֹא in Dan 8:14b, respectively לֹא בְכֶרֶב in Dan 8:26, is based on language present in Gen 1 (i.e., absolute state, without preposition, and
particularly the sequence “evening - morning”). Furthermore, there is even similarity in the sequence “evening - morning - numeral” between Dan 8:14b and the day formulas in Gen 1. Of course, the numerals in Gen 1 refer to בָּאָר or בָּאָר. Also, in Dan 8:14b the number is a cardinal whereas in Gen 1 the numbers are ordinals except for בָּאָר “one day” in Gen 1:5. Since the word order of בָּאָר in Dan 8:14b contains a strong emphasis on creation, the word בָּאָר should be understood to refer to the night hours, beginning in the evening and extending through the night, whereas בָּאָר refers to the daylight hours, beginning in the morning and extending through the day. The expression בָּאָר designates one day, its dark and light period; a day that begins with


2For בָּאָר with reference to the entire period of daylight see DCH, 2:252 (citing as examples Gen 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; 49:27; Isa 21:12; Dan 8:14); L. Dekat, “Zum hebräischen Wörterbuch,” VT 14 (1964): 8; Barth in J. Bergman, Helmer Ringgren, and Ch. Barth, “בָּאָר bōqa" TDOT, 2:225. For בָּאָר with reference to the night hours see, besides Genesis 1, e.g., Ps 30:6.
the evening. In a cultic context, a day beginning explicitly with the evening is only found in combination with the festival of Unleavened Bread (Exod 12:18), which could be explained in association with Passover with its nocturnal ritual, and with the Day of Atonement (Lev 23:32). So, if the cultic terminology in the vision of Dan 8 leads to the belief that the phrase “evening-morning” should denote a day from evening to evening and have cultic significance, one would have to opt for a reference to the Day of Atonement which explicitly runs from evening to evening, since the activity described by

1 Basically all those scholars who argue for a link between Dan 8:14b and Gen 1 take the expression נָשָׁבִי יָמִים in Dan 8:14b as designating one day. Gershon Brin, who does not explicitly link Dan 8:14b to Gen 1, observes that “generally speaking this [רָאֵשׁ בּוֹתֵן] is understood in the sense of יָמִים, i.e., a (full) ‘day.’ . . . But it is also possible that . . . it may refer to something entirely different, and not to the totalities of days, evening and morning” (Gershon Brin, The Concept of Time in the Bible and the Dead Sea Scrolls, STDJ, no. 39 [Leiden: Brill, 2001], 165 n. 13). However, he does not indicate what such an entirely different meaning could be. It is not necessary here to discuss the question of the beginning of the day (evening/nightfall or morning/daybreak). For this see P. J. Heawood, “The Beginning of the Jewish Day,” *JQR* 36 (1945-1946): 393-401 (morning); Solomon Zeitlin, “The Beginning of the Jewish Day during the Second Commonwealth,” *JQR* 36 (1945-1946): 403-414 (morning); H. R. Stroes, “Does the Day Begin in the Evening or Morning? Some Biblical Observations,” *VT* 16 (1966): 460-475 (evening, though morning is sometimes possible); Schmidt, *Schöpfungsgeschichte*, 68 (evening); Roger T. Beckwith, “The Day, Its Divisions and Its Limits, in Biblical Thought,” *EvQ* 43 (1971): 218-227 = idem, *Calendar and Chronology, Jewish and Christian: Biblical, Intertestamental and Patristic Studies*, Arbeiten zur Geschichte des antiken Judentums und des Urchristentums, no. 33 (Leiden: Brill, 1996), 1-9 (co-existence of the two reckonings); Milgrom, *Leviticus* 23-27, 1967-1970 (morning; although Esth 4:16; Dan 8:14, and Jdt 11:17 “possibly indicate a shift to the evening” in a later period); Brin, 153-166 (generally morning reckoning; the Holiness school introduced the reckoning from evening); Jan A. Wagenaar, “Passover and the First Day of the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the Priestly Festival Calendar,” *VT* 54 (2004): 262-266 (original reckoning of the day from sunrise to sunset; adoption of the Babylonian custom to reckon the days from sunset to sunset in the 5th cent. BC). Brin hypothesizes that “perhaps a different system [i.e., from evening to evening] was used in the realm of the holy and of appointed times than that observed in ordinary life” (163). If such a speculation could be sustained, which is of course difficult, the phrase נָשָׁבִי יָמִים in Dan 8:14b could also signify that what is happening here pertains to the realm of the holy.

2 See H. R. Stroes, 471-473 (to him Exod 12:6, 8, 10, 18; Lev 23:32 and Gen 1:5 are the only “obvious evening texts”); Beckwith, “The Day,” 221-224 = idem, *Calendar*, 4-6. Beckwith mentions also passages where the uncleanness of a person ends at evening, that is, at sunset (Lev 11 passim; 14:46; 15 passim; 17:15; 22:6; Num 19 passim; Deut 23:12)” (“The Day,” 223 = Calendar, 6).
In 8:14b seems to be very closely related to what happened on that day when נָּהַ֨ר קַרְקֵרָּ֣ה is the place and object of purgation (Lev 16:16, 17, 20, 33; all with the verb כָּפֹ֖ר piel).

One should also point out that the order “evening - morning” is never used to designate the daily sacrifice. In a cultic context the order of these two words is only used with reference to the kindling of the lamp in the holy place,1 the pillar of cloud/fire over the tabernacle,2 and the sacrifice on the evening of the first day of Passover.3 To use these texts to argue that an “evening-morning” comprises a “sanctuary day,” and therefore the “2300 evening-morning” in Dan 8:14b express 2300 “sanctuary days,”4 is tenuous at best. At best these texts may indicate that the sequence “evening-morning” in Dan 8:14b could also have some cultic associations. Interestingly, in one text found at Qumran “evening and morning” is used in apposition to נָּהַר קַרְקֵרָּ֣ה to designate the continuity of service by eternal spirits.5 Conversely, the reverse order “morning - evening” is never used in the

---

1 לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה “from evening to morning” in Exod 27:21 and Lev 24:3.
2 לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה . . . עָרְבֵּרְכָה “and in the evening . . . until morning” in Num 9:15; לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה “from evening until morning” in Num 9:21.
3 לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה . . . עָרְבֵּרְכָה “on the evening . . . until morning” in Deut 16:4.
4 So Shea, “Unity of Daniel,” 196-197; idem, Daniel 7-12, 112.
5 In 4Q Ritual of Marriage (4Q502 27:2 = 4QpapRitMar 27:2) לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה is used in apposition to נָּהַר קַרְקֵרָּ֣ה in the line לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה פָּרֹּ֖שֶׁת מֶֽלֶֽאכְּיָֽה לָבַ֤ת מְדִידִים֨ “[... who serve] you continuously, evening and morning” (Martinez and Tigchelaar, 2:996-997). Here, נָּהַר קַרְקֵרָּ֣ה does not refer to the daily sacrifice but is used adverbially to express that the service of possibly the “eternal spirits” (line 1) is continuous or regular, without ceasing. The following appositional phrase לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה “evening and morning” then means all periods of the day, or daily. In comparison to Dan 8:11-14 it is interesting to note that in 4Q Ritual of Marriage (1) even with the term נָּהַר קַרְקֵרָּ֣ה in immediate context the expression “evening and morning” designates the day, and (2) the term לַעֲבוֹת עָרְבֵּרְכָה does refer to continual service (or worship?) but not to the daily sacrifice.
context of creation, but often in relationship to the continual offering and other sacrifices. The sacrificial day began in the morning, following the routine of daily life. By now it is clear that in Dan 8:14b does not refer to the daily sacrifice, but rather designates one day. And the “2300 evening-morning” are a time of 2300 days. One should add that even if the “2300 evening-morning” were to refer to daily sacrifices, the time span indicated by this expression would most likely be 2300 days, too, since the

In Ps 65:9b should not be understood as creation language (as, e.g., NASB: “You make the dawn and the sunset shout for joy”) but is a spatial reference to the ends of the earth (“the outgoings of the morning and of the evening”) and thus designates in parallelism to “dwellers in the ends [of the earth]” (vs. 9a) the whole world. One can only speculate what the reason behind the order “evening - morning” in the context of creation could be. Maybe such a specific order reflects the general progression of creation from darkness to light (see the completion of the first daily cycle by the creation of light/daylight in Gen 1:2-3), perhaps not only physically but also qualitatively from chaos to order, or it could just indicate that the author reckoned the day from the evening if one holds that the author’s view influenced the creation account.

So in Exod 29:39; Lev 6:13; Num 28:4; 2 Kgs 16:15; Ezra 3:3; 1 Chr 16:40; 2 Chr 2:3; 13:11; 31:3; and also in 1 Esdr 5:50 (see Schwantes, 381; cf. Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 431; and Vogel, “Cultic Motif,” 175-176). The term is used with in the phrase “burnt offering of the morning” in Lev 9:17; Num 28:23; 2 Kgs 16:15; 2 Chr 31:3; is used with in the phrase “evening offering” in 2 Kgs 16:15; Ps 141:2; Dan 9:21; Ezra 9:4, 5. A note is necessary for the text in Num 28:23: “besides the burnt offering of the morning which is for the continual burnt offering.” This does not mean that the morning offering exclusively constitutes the continual offering. Rather the burnt offering of the morning is part of the continual burnt offering.

J. B. Segal, “Intercalation and the Hebrew Calendar,” VT 7 (1957): 254 n. 5. Milgrom observes that “... the sacrificial service at the Temple never changed; until the destruction of the Temple in C.E. 70, the day began in the morning (m. Yoma 3:1; b. Hal. 83a)” (Leviticus 23-27, 1968).

The “surprising” order of “evening-morning” in Dan 8:14b has been recognized by Beckwith who holds that the expression refers to the daily sacrifice. After pointing out that the daily sacrifice is described in the order of the morning sacrifice before the evening sacrifice, Beckwith continues: “What is surprising is that Dan. 8:14, 26 tells us that the period for which the continual burnt offering is to be interrupted will extend to 2,300 ‘evening-mornings’ ... The order here is not natural, and seems to imply something about the hour at which the day begins, i.e., at the hour of the evening sacrifice and evening prayer” (“The Day,” 222-223 = idem, Calendar and Chronology, 5).
daily תְּפִלֵי was two-phased and consisted of both the morning and the evening sacrifice.¹

The function of יָדוּ בַּחֲרֵי in Dan 8:14b can now be defined. While taking up language from the creation account and signifying a day, יָדוּ בַּחֲרֵי implies that God will

¹The terminology of “two-phased תָּמִיד” is borrowed from Levine, Numbers 21-36, 370, 395-403. However, most of the scholars, including Levine, have noted a diachronic development of the daily תָּמִיד concept. They assert on the basis of 2 Kgs 16:15 and Ezek 46:13-15 that a two-phased תָּמִיד did not exist in the First Temple period—there was only a morning תָּמִיד; the evening offering was a meal offering—but came into force only in postexilic times (referring to Num 28-29 and Exod 29:38-42 which are regarded as postexilic). So, e.g., Roland de Vaux, Ancient Israel: Its Life and Institutions, trans. by J. McHugh (London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1961), 468-469; Rolf Rendtorff, Studien zur Geschichte des Opfers im alten Israel, WMANT, no. 24 (Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1967), 74-76, 196-197; D. Kellermann, “תְּפֵלָה/תְּפִלֵי,” TDOT, 11:102; Levine, Numbers 21-36, 397-399. Interestingly, Milgrom holds that the תָּמִיד was offered twice daily during the First Temple period; though not in the form of a two-phased burnt offering but rather of the morning burnt offering and the evening meal offering (for the association of the meal offering with the evening sacrifice see Ezra 9:4, 5; Dan 9:21). For Milgrom, the mention of “the morning burnt offering” (Lev 9:17; Num 28:23) “clearly implies that there was a regular evening offering as well” (Numbers, The JPS Torah Commentary [Philadelphia: The Jewish Publication Society, 1990], 487; Leviticus 1-16, 456-457). Contrary to the opinion of most scholars, Schwantes argues at length against the assumption that the תָּמִיד refers to each of the daily sacrifices taken separately (376-380). By referring to Exod 29:42; Num 28:3, 6 (and the 14 occurrences of וּלְעִנָּה in Num 28 and 29); and Ezra 3:5, Schwantes observes that “תָּמִיד is a technical term in the language of the ritual to designate the double burnt offering of the morning and the evening” or, in other words, “the double offering of the morning and the evening formed one unit contained in the expression ‘ולעינה תָּמִיד’” (376). For the term מִיתִפְקָר in Dan 8 he concludes that it “signifies the double sacrificial ceremony of the morning and the evening” (380). He also discusses three texts which apparently contradict his conclusion and seem to indicate that the morning offering alone could be designated as the daily sacrifice (377-380) and which scholars use to attest that there is no two-phased תָּמִיד in the First Temple period. For Schwantes, (1) the phrase לְעִנָּה וּלְעִנָּה תָּמִיד “which is for a continual burnt offering” in Num 28:23 is probably inserted later; (2) Ezekiel’s ritual prescription and as such is “no more than an outline”; and (3) מִיתִפְקָר in the expression “evening offering” in 2 Kgs 16:15 does not necessarily mean only a meal offering, but can also include the burnt offering (cf. 1 Kgs 18:29, 36; 2 Kgs 3:20). His explanation of the last two texts is satisfactory, whereas the one of Num 28:23 lacks support. Nevertheless, that Num 28:23 regards the burnt offering of the morning as being “for a continual burnt offering” is according to Schwantes a “lone exception” which “does not invalidate the rule that in this long text [Num 28-29], ‘וּלְעִנָּה תָּמִיד’ means technically the double burnt offering of the morning and evening” (377). Schwantes’s argumentation can be strengthened, however. The preposition ב in the clause מִיתִפְקָר וּלְעִנָּה תָּמִיד (Num 28:23) can certainly mean “for” in the sense of “being part of” so that Num 28:23 can be translated “Apart from the burnt offering of the morning, that is part of the regular burnt offering” (Levine, Numbers 21-36, 369). The assumption of a textual insertion is then unnecessary.
counter the destructive activities of the horn and its host using his own creative force.

The creator causes a change of situation, which is actually called for by the question in Dan 8:13c.¹

This function of רֵעַבָּלֵשׁ—to emphatically introduce the expectation of an intervention by the creator—is significant and differs from most explanations submitted previously.² It explains why the expression “evening-morning” is used, and not “day” as in Dan 12:11, 12. The question in Dan 8:13c asks for the end to the destructive activity.

The answer given points to the end of a time period measured in terminology reminiscent of creation. The notion of creation fits as counterpart to the destruction carried out by the horn and its host. Thus, the singular “evening-morning” raises the expectation of a creative act. However, this creative act will come only after a period of “2300 evening-morning.”

¹Some texts with the sequence “evening - morning” refer to a specific event/situation in the evening and another event/situation in the morning to express that there is a change of situation or status over night or at the end of the night (Num 9:15, 21; Deut 16:4; Isa 17:14; Ezek 33:22; Zeph 3:3; Ps 30:6; Esth 2:14; cf. also 4Q320 1.1:3). In these texts בָּלַק and רֵעַבָּלֵשׁ are used with prepositions (ב “in,” בֵּרָא “before,” ב “until” or “at,” בּ “from,” בּ “until”) or in construct relation (Isa 17:14; Zeph 3:3) to designate a specific point in time or a specific time period. This is also true for the texts in which בָּלַק and רֵעַבָּלֵשׁ occur together. The expression רֵעַבָּלֵשׁ in Dan 8:14b may then imply a similar idea, namely that there will be a change of situation, though not over night, but rather after a specific point in time.

²Doukhan, Secrets of Daniel, 130, is the exception. After having established that the cleansing of the sanctuary is related to the Day of Atonement which strongly carries the idea of creation, respectively of re-creation, Doukhan believes that the expression רֵעַבָּלֵשׁ is used intentionally to prepare for the following reference to Kippur. Besides Doukhan, the textual relation to Gen 1 has been used only to define the expression “evening-morning” as one day, which is correct but not the main function of “evening-morning.” It has been also argued that the expression רֵעַבָּלֵשׁ indicates that the time phrase should be interpreted symbolically according to the year-day principle because it is an unusual time unit (so Shea, Selected Studies [1992], 74-75). However, the expression “evening-morning” itself does not seem to have this function, although it is certainly possible that the entire time phrase employed (“2300 evening-morning”) has such a symbolic meaning.
Furthermore, because of the cultic terminology used in the context of Dan 8:14, there is a possibility that מָרָכָה refers to the Day of Atonement, the only cultic day that starts in the evening and on which the בַּשֶּׁמֶשׁ plays a major role. If that should be the case, the divine act of creation, which certainly is the primary association of the phrase מָרָכָה, also involves Day of Atonement activity.

Beyond the issue of how the “2300 evening-morning” should be understood, it has been recognized that the purpose of such a specific time period is not only to foretell the future but to “denote a fixed time, the limits of which the persecutor is unable to exceed.” The time periods in Daniel “are meant to comfort God’s people in persecution and encourage them to persevere: the oppression and the suffering of God’s people do not occur for one moment without his knowledge or his saving will.” The use of a time period to limit the duration of the vision certainly implies divine control of the time of oppression and points toward divine intervention and salvation at the end of that specific period.

---

1 On the association between creation and Day of Atonement see chapter 3 (below).


3 According to Kranichfeld the special mentioning of parts of the day (i.e., evening and morning) suggests divine supervision of the times of trouble which pays attention to each day in its entirety (301). A similar idea of divine control and final intervention is conveyed by the rabbinic explanation for the terminology of “evening-morning” in which evening marks the time of suppression, whereas morning marks the time of salvation (see Beate Ego, “Daniel und die Rabbinen: Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des alttestamentlichen Kanons,” Judaica 51 [1995]: 22).
Clause 14c

Grammatical-Syntactic Analysis

14c [וְשָׁנֶה] 

waw+Niphal-pf/3sgm/ noun/sgm/ 

ConjWG(waw+Niphal-pf/3sgm/) noun/sgm/ 

P.Sy +1.Sy 

c_predicate +subject 

Clause type: w’qatal.

Syntactic function of הפוך

The w’qatal corresponds in temporal aspect to the yiqtol form and should be translated as future: “up to 2300 evening-morning, and the holy will be restored.” But why is a w’qatal used and not a yiqtol or w’yiqtol form? First, after an adverbial expression of time the w’qatal form has a (con)sequential notion (e.g., Judg 16:2).1 Thus, 

---

1See Bergsträsser, 2:42 (§9g); Waltke and O’Connor, 538 (§32.2.6b), who suggest that the w’qatal in Dan 8:14c marks sequentiaility in a case where the future character of the statement is self-evident (cf. Driver, Treatise, 135 [§115]; König, 3:517 [§367p]). These grammarians cite the following examples: temporal expressions followed by w’qatal in Exod 16:6-7; Deut 4:30; Judg 16:2; Isa 16:14; 21:16; temporal expressions, which can be transformed into temporal sentences, followed by w’qatal in Gen 3:5 (the w’qatal sentence can also be interpreted as apodosis; R. J. Williams, 72 (§440)); Exod 32:34; Lev 26:26; Josh 6:10; 1 Sam 1:22; 10:2; 1 Kgs 14:12; Ezek 18:23; 24:24; Amos 3:14 should be added to this list. Note especially Judg 16:2 where the adverbial expression of time is introduced by the same preposition רָבָא as in Dan 8:14b:

1. “until the morning light, then we will kill him” (Judg 16:2); and several cases where a temporal clause governed by רָבָא or רָבָא is followed by a w’qatal form (a comparison between the otherwise identical clauses in 2 Sam 10:5 and 1 Chr 19:5 shows that there seems to be no difference between רָבָא and רָבָא):

2. “until the day I tell you, ‘Shout!’ Then you shall shout!” (Josh 6:10);

3. “until the child is weaned, then I will bring him” (1 Sam 1:22);
the \( w'qatal \) which comes after an adverbial expression of time refers to a time after
the period of “2300 evening-morning” has been concluded. It is sequential, maybe even
consequential, to the events during that period.

Second, an additional explanation of the \( w'qatal \) form can be given on the basis
that vs. 12 is direct discourse. The holy one speaking in vs. 12 is the same one who gives
the answer in vs. 14b-14c. The \( w'qatal \) form of vs. 14c resumee the \( w'qatal \) forms in vs.
12c and 12d, which makes perfect sense if the same holy one were speaking. After an
interim question by another holy one (vs. 13b-c), the one speaking continues his speech
and at the same time answers the question.

With regard to narrative technique, the only positive statement in the audition
(\( w'qatal \) vs. 14c) is delayed first by the intervening question (vs. 13) and then by the
adverbial expression of time (vs. 14b). By such a technique the tension is built up until
the marked climactic statement \( w'qatal \) closes the audition effectively.

Passive mood of \( w'qatal \)

After the question “how long?” which is a plea for divine involvement, the
passive mood of \( w'qatal \) certainly indicates that the agent is God. \( w'qatal \) is a divine passive.\(^1\)

---

\(^{1}\)So Porter, *Metaphors*, 59-60. Cf. Joachim Jeremias, who coined the term *passivum divinum*:
"There is a limited section of the literature of Palestinian Judaism of the time of Jesus in which the
'divine passive' is firmly established: apocalyptic literature. It occurs frequently for the first time in
the book of the prophet Daniel" (New Testament Theology: The Proclamation of Jesus [New York:
The general function of divine passives, as described by Jeremias, is certainly applicable to Dan 8:14c: The divine passive "was not only used out of reverence . . . but served above all as a way of describing in veiled terms God's mysterious activity in the end-time." Furthermore, the "how long" question is directed to God so that one could expect that the work of "reintegration" can only be carried out by God.

Semantic Analysis of Words and Phrases

Meaning of מַשָּׁרֵשׁ

Though the general sense of the Niphal form מַשָּׁרֵשׁ is clear, the different translations show that its exact meaning is far from certain. The major suggestions for translating מַשָּׁרֵשׁ are "be made right," "be restored to its right," "be justified," "be

Scribner, 1971], 13). Recently, Christian Macholz argued that the passivum divinum is evidenced in the entire Hebrew Bible, especially in the later parts, and in intertestamental literature, and that it originated not in apocalyptic language but from the passivum regium used in court language (Hofstil) in reference to the king or in the speech to the king ("Das 'Passivum divinum', seine Anfänge im Alten Testament und der 'Hofstil,'" ZNW 81 [1990]: 247-253).

1Jeremias, 13.

2Iuris Krašovec, La justice (SDQ) de Dieu dans la Bible hébraïque et l'interprétation juive et chrétienne, OBO, no. 76 (Freiburg, Schweiz: Universitätsverlag; Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1988), 203.

3Pace Bucher-Gillmayr, 63 n. 23, who believes that it is not possible from the context to infer who the logical subject in vs. 14b is.

4"Put right" (BDB, 842); "set right" (Collins, Daniel [1993], 336); "made right, righteous, or just" (Buchanan, 248).

5"Placed in the right state" (Keil, 305); "in rechten Stand gesetzt, seiner Bestimmung zurückgegeben werden" (Meinhold, "Daniel," 310); "wird sich als im Rechte erweisen" (Marti, Daniel, 60); "shall be restored to its rightful state" (Porteous, 119); "re-established within its rights" (Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 158); "restored," "restored (to its rightful state)," or "have its rights restored" (Niels-Erik Andreasen, "Translation of Nisdaq/Katharisthesetai in Daniel 8:14," 495-496); "will emerge in the right" (Goldingay, Daniel, 198); "wieder sein Recht erhalten" (Haag, Daniel, 65).
vindicated,” or “be legitimate (again)” (these three translations are intimately related so that it is somewhat artificial to draw clear-cut semantic distinctions between them), and “be cleansed.” Before I focus on the use and meaning of הָרַבָּה in the specific context of Dan 8:14c, the notion of the verb הָרַבָּה in the Hebrew Bible will be examined first, together with an overview of parallel terms to הָרַבָּה and their meaning.

The verb הָרַבָּה in the Hebrew Bible. The verbal root הָרַבָּה occurs forty-one times, but in the Niphal it occurs only in Dan 8:14c. The meaning of this verb, which is of course closely linked to the meaning of its nouns הָרַבָּה and הָרַבָּה, is significantly rich. Its basic rendition is given as “to be in the right, be right.” But what is the meaning of the

1“Justified” in the sense of restoring its right (Calvin, 110-111; Thomson, 244; Jeffery, 477); “to be manifested as just” (Bevan, 136); “vindicated” (Montgomery, 343); “vindicated and restored” (Charles, 212); “brought to its justice, justified” (HALOT, 3:1003).

2Seow, Daniel, 125.

3“Cleansed” (Old Greek, Theodotion: both καθάρισθεν; Vulgate: mundabitur; KJV, Geneva Bible, etc.). The reading of the versions led to various speculations about the original reading of Dan 8:14c: הָרַבָּה “and it shall be cleansed” (Jahn, 80), an original Aramaic נֶפֶל “and it shall be cleansed” (Frank Zimmermann, “The Aramaic Origin of Daniel 8-12,” 262); an underlying Aramaic רֹפֵא “will be purified” of the root יָפָא “cleanse” that was then confused with יָפָא “triumph” (Ginsberg, Studies in Daniel, 42, 54; Hartman and Di Lella, 227, who point out that the Hebrew “should mean ‘will be justified’” but that “this can hardly be said of the sanctuary”); and an original Aramaic נֶפֶל (?) “shall be cleansed” (Nelis, 97, who apparently confuses the previous suggestions). For a refutation of the theory of an Aramaic original behind וּרְפֶל see Bruce Chilton, “Aramaic and Targumic Antecedents of Pauline ‘Justification’,” in The Aramaic Bible: Targums in Their Historical Context, ed. D. R. G. Beattie and M. J. McNamara, JSOTSup, no. 166 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1994), 392-395, who suspects “that וּרְפֶל in Dan. 8.14 is to be preferred as the lectio difficilior” (394).

4The distribution of the verbal root הָרַבָּה shows a higher concentration in the poetic books of Job, Psalm, Proverbs (22 times, thereof 17 times in Job), as well as in the major prophets (10 times). It occurs only six times in the section Genesis to 2 Kings, twice in Daniel, and once in 2 Chronicles.

5HALOT, 3:1003.
Niphal form? An analysis of the forty-one clauses with the verb פָּרֹץ in its different verbal stems helps to better understand the meaning of the Niphal form in Dan 8:14c. The analysis is displayed in table 16 (the passive clause in Dan 8:14c has been transformed in an active clause in order to facilitate comparison).

Glancing over the table, one will quickly recognize the difference between, on the one hand, verbal stems of פָּרֹץ that take no direct object—the intransitive Qal (22 times), in which the verb is stative and expresses the right status of a person, and the reflexive Hitpael (once)—and, on the other hand, verbal stems that take a direct object—Niphal¹ (once), Piel (5 times), and Hiphil (12 times). This feature indicates that the Niphal form of פָּרֹץ should be compared with its Piel and Hiphil forms. In the Piel and in the Hiphil, the object of פָּרֹץ is without exception personal. In both stems, the verb designates an activity by which someone is declared in the right, justified or vindicated. It may be difficult to discern nuances that would explain why in some instances the verb is used in the Piel while in others it is used in the Hiphil. A viable solution is put forward by Jenni. He regards the Piel of פָּרֹץ to be declarative-estimative, that is, “a subjective assessment in regard to an abstract, generally not discernable quality.”² The Hiphil of פָּרֹץ is in most instances declarative, rarely causative (Isa 53:11; Dan 12:3). However, the declaration in the Hiphil is of a different character from the declaration in the Piel. In the Hiphil the object of being declared righteous is a person who by means of the context is already

¹The subject of the passive Niphal clause is equivalent to the direct object of the transformed active clause.

²Jenni, *Pf el*, 41-42.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Direct Object</th>
<th>Prepositional Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen 38:26</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>than (ָם) I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 43:9</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 43:26</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 45:25</td>
<td>all seed of Israel</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>in (ך) YHWH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 16:52a</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>than (י) you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 19:10</td>
<td>judgments of Y.</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 51:6</td>
<td>you [God]</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 143:2</td>
<td>all living</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>before (מש) you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 4:17</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>before (ך) God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 9:2</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>with (ך) God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 9:15</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 9:20</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 10:15</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 11:2</td>
<td>man of lips</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 13:18</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 15:14</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 22:3</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 25:4</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>with (ך) God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 33:12</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 34:5</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 35:7</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 40:8</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>נָּשָׂא qal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan 8:14c</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>נְשָׂא nif.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jer 3:11</td>
<td>Faithless Israel</td>
<td>נְשָׂא pi.</td>
<td>her soul</td>
<td>more than (ך) ... Judah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 16:51</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>נְשָׂא pi.</td>
<td>your sisters</td>
<td>by (ך) all your abominations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezek 16:52b</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>נְשָׂא pi. inf</td>
<td>your sisters</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 32:2</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>נְשָׂא pi. inf</td>
<td>his soul</td>
<td>before (ך) God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job 33:32</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נְשָׂא pi. inf</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exod 23:7</td>
<td>[God]</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif.</td>
<td>criminal</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deut 25:1</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif.</td>
<td>righteous</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Sam 15:4</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif.</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Kgs 8:32</td>
<td>[God]</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif. inf</td>
<td>righteous</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 5:23</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif. ptc</td>
<td>wicked</td>
<td>[for] a bribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 50:8</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif. ptc</td>
<td>me [God]</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isa 53:11</td>
<td>the righteous . . .</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif.</td>
<td>the many</td>
<td>by (ך) his knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ps 82:3</td>
<td>[God]</td>
<td>נְשָׂא hif. imp</td>
<td>afflicted, poor</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
characterized as righteous. The object does not need to be categorized as righteous—as is the case when the Piel of הַרְשָׁד is used—but is dealt with according to its already right status.¹

If Jenni’s analysis is taken into account, it becomes apparent that the Niphal form of הַרְשָׁד in Dan 8:14c should be regarded as more closely related to the Hiphil,² since from the context it is clear that יְרֵשׁ belongs to the category of righteousness. In fact, the question in vs. 13c is asking for the time when the unrighteous treatment of righteous objects comes to an end and when these righteous objects will be treated properly. The Niphal יְרֵשׁ should therefore be regarded as designating an activity by which יְרֵשׁ is justified and dealt with properly as it should be. In other words, יְרֵשׁ is brought (back) to

¹Ibid., 44-45. Delbert R. Hillers prefers to use the term “delocutive” instead of “declarative” for the Piel and Hiphil of הַרְשָׁד, which then still means “to say someone is in the right” (“Delocutive Verbs in Biblical Hebrew,” JBL 86 [1967]: 320-324).

²Already Mayer Lambert, who in 1900 attempted to list all the usages of the Niphal in Biblical Hebrew, enters יְרֵשׁ nif. under the category of Niphal as passive to the Hiphil (“L’emploi du Nifal en Hébreu,” REJ 41 [1900]: 209). However, he provides no reasons at all for his choice.
the status of rightness which it deserves.1

It is also noticeable that the Hiphil forms of פּוּסֶה are used in the context of judgment. In fact, פּוּסֶה in the Hiphil is used for God’s intervention in judgment when the righteous are vindicated/justified or declared to be righteous (Exod 23:7; 1 Kgs 8:32; Isa 50:8; 2 Chr 6:23) and in God’s ultimate admonition to vindicate the afflicted and poor (Ps 82:3). It is in the same way also used to describe human judgment (Deut 25:1; 2 Sam 15:4; Isa 5:23; Prov 17:15).2 Thus, the use of פּוּסֶה in Dan 8:14c, with God as implied agent, indicates that God acts as judge. The verb points to a divine judgment which will justify the шַׁפַּס.3

Of course, these conclusions for פּוּסֶה, which are based on the analysis of verbal clauses with פּוּסֶה, have to remain somewhat tentative for two reasons. First, because there is only one Niphal form of פּוּסֶה, we do not have enough data for comparison and for

1 As suggested by Bevan (136) and Marti (Daniel, 60), it seems legitimate to compare פּוּסֶה with the Niphal of שָׁפַּס which is translated with “show oneself as holy” or “be treated as holy” (Exod 29:43; Lev 10:3; 22:32; Num 20:13; Isa 5:16; Ezek 20:41; 28:22, 25; 36:23; 38:16; 39:27). In analogy, the Niphal פּוּסֶה could then mean “be treated as right/righteous.” The suggestion that it should properly mean “prove oneself just” or “be manifested as just” (so Bevan, 136; Marti, Daniel, 60) is undermined by the fact that the agent of the activity to which פּוּסֶה refers is personal in 39 cases and abstract in only one case (Ps 19:10: מִזְכָּר שָׁפַּס “judgments of YHWH”). The agent of the passive פּוּסֶה in Dan 8:14c should therefore also be understood as personal, particularly since the question “how long?” in vs. 13c pleads for divine intervention.

2 Johnson observes on the Hiphil of פּוּסֶה: “The subject is generally a judge or persons who by virtue of their office are able to confirm that someone is in the right or can help such a person establish that right” (Helmer Ringgren and Bo Johnson, “פּוּסֶה sâdaq,” TDOT, 12:250). Pietro Bovati points out the pairing of פּוּסֶה hif. and שָׁפַּס hif. in “legislative texts concerning the activity of judges” and provides a table of these instances (Re-establishing Justice: Legal Terms, Concepts and Procedures in the Hebrew Bible, trans. M. J. Smith, JSOTSup, no. 105 [Sheffield: JSOT Press, 1994], 348-349). Cf. Nigel M. Watson, “Some Observations on the Use of דֶּרֶך קָדֹשֶׁה in the Septuagint,” JBL 79 (1960): 255-256.

3 For contextual reasons, Krásová suggests that the Niphal draws attention to the Hiphil forms (Exod 23:7; 1 Kgs 8:32; Isa 50:8) where God in a legal context vindicates the righteous (254).
drawing more definite conclusions. The uniqueness of this single passive form of נָכלָה is surprising in light of the fact that the Hebrew rarely uses technical terminology expressing judicial activity in the passive. Second, and this is striking, Dan 8:14c presents the only case where the affected object of the verb נָכלָה, the noun השָׁמַע, appears to be impersonal. In all other clauses in which נָכלָה takes a direct object (i.e., in all Piel and Hiphil clauses), the direct object is personal. This specific feature of Dan 8:14c needs to be addressed in the analysis of the meaning of השָׁמַע.

**Meaning of the root נָכלָה.** After the syntactic analysis of clauses with נָכלָה, the meaning of נָכלָה itself needs to be discussed. Many scholars have undertaken a semantic study of נָכלָה and its derivatives, even with specific reference to its Niphal use in Dan

---

1 Bovati notices that the “Hebrew does not make frequent use of the passive meaning ‘to judge’ (špt, dyn, etc.); and the technical terminology that we translate as ‘acquit’ and ‘condemn’, represented in Hebrew by the Hiphil form of sdq and ṣ pants, has no precise parallel in the passive sense” (363).


---

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
8:14c, testing to the multivalence of the term. Others contributed to the understanding of while they studied the concept of justice and/or righteousness without pursuing an in-depth semantic study of . It is hardly necessary to repeat their analyses. Generally speaking, there are two different conceptions of what includes and , means. One is that has a judicial-legal notion and is understood as conformity with a (divine) norm. In this forensic concept, designates legal righteousness, judgment, justification, and vindication. The other is that has a relational notion and often expresses a relationship to God. Here, designates salvation, shalom, “communal


3See Johnson in Ringgren and Johnson, 12:243-246. Johnson also presents a survey of the research on the meaning of .
faithfulness," and fulfillment of the demands of a relationship. Further along this line,ו
is said to express the “synthetic concept of life” or a comprehensive world order that
encompasses every aspect of life. Of course, all these semantic notions do not need to
exclude each other but overlap significantly.

Hence, the verbal idea of can describe both “a judicial and soteriological
process of judging, acquitting and saving.” The recipient of a action “becomes
equated with perfection, innocence, and moral purity. The vindicated party has been
cleared from guilt and has been cleansed,” and/or it has been restored to its right state or
its right relationship with God.

A collection and analysis of synonymous and antithetic terms to illustrates
the broad semantic range of and indicates its “extended meanings.” Such a

---

1Koch, “”, 2:1046-1062.
2Achtemeier, 222.
3Fahlgren, 50-54; idem, “Die Gegensätze von s’daqā im Alten Testament,” 126-129.
4Schmid, 163-172.
5For example, Achtemeier suggests that in a forensic context is still “a concept of
relationship,” since for her the function of the Hebrew legal system was to preserve communal
relationships (96). And Dünner concludes that and are terms of relationship and relation,
which in the forensic, ethical, and religious sphere point to the right position in the relation to God and
in the relation between humans” (130).
6Justesen, 61.
7Ibid.
8As Andreasen correctly points out, parallel terms “cannot be considered identical in
meaning.” Rather, they are related in meaning so that terms in parallel to וו, such as וו or וו, represent “extended meanings” of וו. Andreasen gives examples for the difference between וו.
compilation and analysis has been undertaken several times. According to Koch's statistics, the most often used related terms to "justice" (62/20), "faithful, true"/faithfulness"/steadfastness"/truth" (31/11), "right, pure" (25/8), "save"/"salvation" (18/15), "faithfulness" (13/6), "good" (8/6); "be complete" (7/6), "complete"/"peace" (6/4). The most often used antithetic terms are "(be) guilty, wicked" (107/14), "sin" (19/4), "injustice" (11/3), "evil" (7/7), "transgression, rebellion" (5/2), "guilt" (4/3). The relational and the forensic notions of these terms are easily recognizable.

In regard to the verbal form in Dan 8:14c, it is interesting to collect only those terms that occur in parallelism to or in sequence or enumeration with a verbal form of "justice". An investigation shows the following results. Synonymous and related terms are "blameless" (Exod 23:7), "glory" (Isa 45:25), "truth" (Ps 19:10), "be clean, pure" (Ps 51:6; Job 15:14; 25:4), "judge, vindicate" (Ps 82:3), "be clean, pure" (Job 4:17), "complete, perfect" (Job 9:20), "be complete, perfect" (Job 8:14c), and its parallel terms by analyzing Job 4:17 and 25:4 more closely ("Translation," 482-485).

1Synonymous, related, and opposite terms to סדא have been studied by Fahlgren, "S’daq, 1-77, 120-157; cf. idem, "Die Gegensatze von S’daq im Alten Testament," 87-129. For analyses of the semantic field of סדא and its derivatives (i.e., verb סדאם, nouns סדאם and סדאם, adjective סוֹדַם) see Koch, "S’daq im Alten Testament"; Achtemeier, 59-81; Justesen, 58-61; and Ringgren and Johnson, 12:246-250.

2Koch's comprehensive, tabulated compilation of data regarding the related and opposite terms of סדאם, though not complete (see additional terms listed by Achtemeier [63] and by Johnson [Ringgren and Johnson, 12:246-250 passim]), illustrates in a lucid way the fluidity of connotation of סדאם (Koch, "S’daq im Alten Testament," 2; Koch's table is also found in Achtemeier, 60-61). He lists 43 related and 16 antithetic word stems to סדאם and groups the occurrences of each term in close relations (in parallelisms or in enumeration), and in distant relations (which, of course, is a matter of discretion).

3"justice" occurs 62 times in close relation and 20 times in distant relation to סדאם.
“have insight” (Dan 12:3), and the phrases הָיָהּ בְּשַׁלֹּם “without transgression” (Job 34:6) and בֵּית הָאֱלֹהִים “bear iniquity” (Isa 53:11). Antithetic terms are בַּשָּׁם הָאֱלֹהִים “guilty, wicked” (Exod 23:7; cf. Isa 5:23; Job 9:20-22; Prov 17:15), רָשָׁע qal “be guilty, be wicked” (Job 10:15), הבשׁ hif. “condemn” (Deut 25:1; 1 Kgs 8:32; Job 9:20; Prov 17:15; 2 Chr 6:23), מִשְׁרַשׁ “wickedness” (Job 35:7-8), הבשׁ hif. “to declare guilty” (Job 9:20), מָשַׂד “sin” (Job 35:6-7), בְּשַׁשׁ “transgression” (Job 35:6-7), and the phrases מִשְׁרָשׁ hif. “take away righteousness” (Isa 5:23) and מִשְׁרָשׁ hif. “take away justice” (Job 34:5). Once again, these terms show relational and forensic notions. The forensic aspect is particularly obvious with the antithetic pair מִשְׁרָשׁ and הבשׁ.1 In addition, one can detect a cultic notion in such terms as יִכְּרֹץ הָאֱלֹהִים “be clean, pure,” which denotes ethical and religious purity and is used most often in parallel to the verb מִשְׁרָשׁ,2 and especially to מִשְׁרָשׁ “be clean, pure,” which is often used for religious purity or ceremonial cleanliness.3

The cultic/religious and ethical connotation is also apparent in some parallel terms to non-verbal forms of הבשׁ, such as הָאֱלֹהִים “cleanliness” (2 Sam 22:21, 25; Ps 18:21, 25) and

---

1See Hans Jochen Boecker, Redenformen des Rechtstums im Alten Testament, 2d ed., WMANT, no. 14 (Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1970), 122-132, 135-137, who shows that מִשְׁרָשׁ and הבשׁ designate the two parties in a lawsuit. It was the task of the judge to determine which party is the righteous and which is the guilty (cf. Ringgren and Johnson, 12:260).

2With only eight occurrences in the Hebrew Bible the root הָאֱלֹהִים is used three times in parallel to מִשְׁרָשׁ (Ps 51:6; Job 15:14; 25:4). In Prov 20:9, הָאֱלֹהִים stands in parallel to מִשְׁרָשׁ, which is another parallel term to מִשְׁרָשׁ.

3The term מִשְׁרָשׁ is a typical term used for cleansing rites at the sanctuary. For example, it is used for the cleansing of the people and of the “altar which is before YHWH” on the Day of Atonement (Lev 16:9, 30).
This analysis lends support to the conclusion drawn by Davidson. He surveys the semantic range of נִדַּשַּׂא by parallel terms and identifies three major extended meanings of נִדַּשַּׂא which are generally, but not exclusively, connected to specific contexts: in a relational context נִדַּשַּׂא denotes restoration; in a cultic context it denotes cleansing or purification (parallel terms: מָכלֶךָ “be clean, pure,” מָזָּה “be clean, pure,” and בָּר “cleanliness”); and in a legal context it denotes vindication (parallel term: נִדַּשַּׂא “justice”).

1 It has also been suggested that נִדַּשַּׂא is related to מָכָה “make atonement” in Dan 9:24 (Doukhan, The Vision of the End, 29).

It should suffice to point out that one should be careful in uncritically applying all different semantic notions that נָצְרִי could carry to its occurrence in Dan 8:14c. Neither should the multivalence of the term be neglected by arbitrarily picking just one of the possible nuances. Instead, the meaning of נָצְרִי in Dan 8:14c must be established by a careful study of the term in its context. Thus the use of נָצְרִי in the book of Daniel in general and its use in Dan 8:14c in particular needs to receive close attention in determining the meaning of נָצְרִי.

The root נָצְרִי in the book of Daniel. The root נָצְרִי occurs seven times in the BH part of Daniel: the verb נָצְרִי (8:14; 12:3), the nouns נָצְר (9:24) and נָצְרִי (9:7, 16, 18), the adjective נָצְרִי (9:14). The meaning of נָצְרִי seems to differ slightly according to the context in which it is used.

In a historical context, the root נָצְרִי is used to describe God and his judgments upon Israel in the past. In the prayer in Dan 9, which reflects on the covenantal history, נָצְרִי is ascribed to God, in contrast to the Israelites who lack it (9:7, 18). God is described as righteous in all his deeds with Israel (9:14) and these divine deeds are called נָצְרִי “your righteous acts” (9:16).

In a prophetic context, the root נָצְרִי is used to describe the eschatological salvation. Righteousness is established by God for eternity. In Dan 9:24, it is promised

---

1The different occurrences of the root נָצְרִי in the book of Daniel are briefly discussed in Schmid, Gerechtigkeit als Weltordnung, 143-144; Krašovec, 203-205; Ho, 100-101, 134-136.

2The root נָצְרִי occurs in BA once as noun נָצְרִי (Dan 4:24).

3Vincent develops the contrastive use of the root נָצְרִי in Dan 9:15-18 in more detail (“Un regard sur la ‘justice,’” 325-326).
that God brings "eternal righteousness." The bringing of everlasting righteousness follows the finishing of the transgression (יִשְׁפַּת), the sealing of sin, and the atonement for iniquity. The meaning of נְדֵגָה is clearly in opposition to the terms for sin: פֶשֶׁן, וְאָפָם, and פָּשָׁן. Thus, both in Dan 9:24 and in Dan 8:13-14 the opposite words פֶשֶׁן and נְדֵגָה occur in the same context. In both texts, and of course elsewhere in Scripture, פֶשֶׁן and נְדֵגָה are mutually exclusive. Where נְדֵגָה exists, פֶשֶׁן cannot be. This is important since it shows that the answer in 8:14c directly or indirectly takes care of the transgression (יִשְׁפַּת) which is set up in place of the tämi d (vs. 8:12a, 13c). In Dan 9:24 the transgression is ended and righteousness is established. Similarly in Dan 8:13-14, to bring rightness to the פֶשֶׁן implies that the transgression will be finished. In Dan 12:3, נְדֵגָה is again used in an eschatological context: the many (טְהוֹם) are led to righteousness which means that they are "brought to salvation." The occurrences of the root נְדֵגָה in an eschatological context in Dan 9:24 and 12:3 confirm Koch’s assessment: "For apocalypticism, sedaq becomes a fundamental term for eschatological salvation."

The use of נְדֵגָה in Dan 8:14c is another example of this eschatological

---

1Besides Dan 9:24, the concept of God’s eternal righteousness is found in Ps 119:142, 144, 160. Righteousness and eternity are also linked in Hos 2:21 and Dan 12:3.

2Interestingly, in both Dan 8:13 and Dan 9:24 the transgression is definite: פֶשֶׁן, though the other terms in the six infinitive clauses in 9:24, including the other terms for sin, are all indefinite.

3Schmid, Gerechtigkeit als Weltordnung, 144.

dimension of the root פָּרָשָׁה since it marks that divine act which occurs at the end of the “2300 evening-morning” period, that is at “the end of time” (8:17) or at “the time fixed for the end” (8:19).\(^1\) Chilton underscores such a connotation by observing that פָּרָשָׁה in 8:14c is “associated with the eschatological vindication which involved the sanctuary... Dan 8.14 suggests that the verbal usage of פָּרָשָׁה could also be associated with the ultimate ‘justification’ of the Temple.”\(^2\) The idea that פָּרָשָׁה functions as an eschatological and apocalyptic term is also found in Jewish literature of the intertestamental period.\(^3\)

Furthermore, the close relationship between God and פָּרָשָׁה in Dan 9, in which God is the source of righteousness and of righteous acts,\(^4\) confirms that פָּרָשָׁה in Dan 8:14c should be understood as God’s deed. It is God who brings righteousness for the שִׁמְךָ.

**Immediate context of פָּרָשָׁה in Dan 8:14c.** Andreasen is right when he regards the context of the occurrence of Dan 8:14c as decisive in determining the particular meaning of פָּרָשָׁה.\(^5\) He draws attention to the question in vs. 13c to which vs. 14c is the

---

\(^1\) For the phrases פָּרָשָׁה (8:17) and פָּרָשָׁה (8:19) see Gerhard Pfandl, *The Time of the End in the Book of Daniel*, ATSDS, no. 1 (Berrien Springs: Adventist Theological Society Publications, 1992), 244-246, 257-268.

\(^2\) Chilton, 395.

\(^3\) For example, in 1 Enoch righteousness (דִּיקָאֹתוּת) is used in general with a constant view toward the eschatological events. “The ‘apocalyptic’ (in the vision already realized) end time will bring ‘righteousness.’ And this eschatological righteousness is very clearly understood as ‘salvation’” (Martin Johannes Fiedler, “דִּיקָאֹתוּת in der diaspora-jüdischen und intertestamentarischen Literatur,” *JSJ* 1 [1970]: 136).

\(^4\) According to Chilton “God within this section of Daniel is literally both righteous and making righteous” (392).

answer. There, he sees three activities: (1) the taking away of the tāmiḏ, which for him refers to the abrogation of the sanctuary ministry; (2) a horrible sin perpetrating in the sanctuary; and (3) the ruin of sanctuary and saints alike. “Nisdaq assures in a general and comprehensive way that in God's time the wrongs of verse 13 will be 'put right.'” Thus, for Andreasen, פַּשְׂרַק contains several associated ideas that lie within the extended meaning of פַּשְׂרַק: “make right” (the “restoration” of the ministry in the sanctuary), “cleanse” (the “purification” of the sanctuary from horrible sin), and “vindicate” (the “vindication” of sanctuary and the saints). Independently, Davidson comes to the same conclusion. He shows how the question in vs. 13c summarizes the activities described in vss. 10-12 (the tāmiḏ refers to vs. 11, “the transgression of desolation” refers to vs. 12, and the trampling of the sanctuary and the host refers to vss. 10 and 11c) and then suggests that פַּשְׂרַק “is uniquely suited in its breadth of semantic range to encapsulate the solution to all three of the sanctuary-related situations summarized in vs. 13.”

Furthermore, the attack on פַּשְׂרַק “truth” forms another backdrop to the meaning of פַּשְׂרַק for there is a close relationship between judicial activity and truth in that the re-establishment of justice can only be realized by the upholding of truth. In such a context, the question in vs. 13c appears to be a device for emphasizing the importance of the truth of God's word in the fulfillment of the promises given through the prophet. The question in vs. 14c serves as a reminder that the truth of God's word is the foundation upon which all the promises of the Bible are built, and that it is only by upholding this truth that the promises will be fulfilled.

---

1 Already Hitzig notes that the meaning of vs. 14c is dependent mainly upon the question in vs. 13c (135).

2 Andreasen, “Translation,” 494. Cf. Norman H. Snaith who, after concluding that the “original meaning” of the root פַּשְׂרַק is “to be straight” in the sense of a norm to which human beings and things should conform, renders the passive in Dan 8:14c with “shall be put right,” that is, “into proper order” (The Distinctive Ideas of the Old Testament [London: Epworth, 1944], 74).

3 It is interesting to note that Fahlgren regards מָשָׂש as one of the opposite terms to פַּשְׂרַק (פַּשְׂרַק, 19-24; “Die Gegensätze von s'daq im Alten Testament,” 106-111).

context, the root \( \text{יָנָא} \) means "to declare innocence in a juridical confrontation."\(^1\)

Both Andreasen and Davidson have to be commended for focusing their attention on the immediate context. At the same time, it is surprising that, in determining the meaning of \( \text{יָנָא} \) in Dan 8:14c, it has for the most part been ignored that the object affected by the activity described by \( \text{יָנָא} \) is \( \text{נִשָּׁעַד} \), which relates to just one of the terms of the question in vs. 13c. The answer to this question indicates that the immediate response takes care only of the problem with \( \text{נִשָּׁעַד} \). However, this is not to conclude that the problems with the \( \text{תָּמִית} \), the transgression, and the trampled host are not being addressed also. The dynamics between the question and the answer suggest a different solution. Of the three or four specific problems listed in the question, the answer gives the assurance that one will be made right. Since the revelatory audition ends with this assurance, one is strongly impressed to regard the making right of the \( \text{נִשָּׁעַד} \) "holy" as encompassing the solution to the other problems as well. In other words, in vs. 14c the assurance of the making right of the "holy" includes without specific mention the restoration of the \( \text{תָּמִית} \), the ending or cleansing of the transgression, and the vindication of the trampled host. \( \text{נִשָּׁעַד} \), though directly referring to the making right of the "holy," is therefore an answer to the whole question posed in vs. 13c, with all the different elements.\(^2\)

This conclusion is naturally dependent on the analysis of the meaning of \( \text{נִשָּׁעַד} \), which is the next step in my investigation. Before such an analysis is taken up, a note on

\(^{1}\)Bovati, 104, cf. 105, 345 n. 4.

\(^{2}\)Cf. Hävernick, 290-291; Kliefoth, 261; and Zöckler, 178, who see the answer including the solutions to some or even to all of the problems that are mentioned in the question.
the versions’ rendering of פֶּן יֵרֵד is in order. The legitimacy of an excursus on the versions in a text-oriented study is given by the fact that the Niphal of נָרֵד is singular in the Hebrew Bible and the versions could provide additional help in grasping the meaning of this form.

The versions on פֶּן יֵרֵד. Both Old Greek and Theodotion render פֶּן יֵרֵד with καθαροθήσεται “will be cleansed,” a term which occurs much more often in Leviticus than in any other book and is also used in Lev 16:19, 20, 30 (2x). The verb καθαρίζω is used as rendition for נָרֵד only in Dan 8:14c. Usually נָרֵד is rendered with δικαίος. The fact that Theodotion agrees with OG in reading καθαροθήσεται over against the typical rendition with δικαίος could indicate that καθαροθήσεται indeed expresses best the conceptual idea of פֶּן יֵרֵד.1 The only other similar rendition of the verb נָרֵד in the LXX occurs in Job 4:17 where the Qal נָרֵד is translated with καθαρὸς ἔσται “be pure.” In Job 4:17 the verb נָרֵד stands in parallelism to the verb φυλή “be clean,” which is rendered with ξύμεπτος “blameless” in the LXX:

ןָרֵד Can mankind before God be righteous?

ץָרֵד Can before his maker be clean/pure a man?2

Interestingly, in the majority of its uses καθαρίζω renders the verbal root שָׁרֵד, that is

1Cf. Mayers, 94.

2As important for discerning the meaning of פֶּן יֵרֵד in Dan 8:14c, the parallelism in Job 4:17 has been pointed out by Justesen, 60, and Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 451. Cf. the critical comments by Andreasen, “Translation,” 483, 489.
seventy-one out of ninety-four times when it renders a BH word. Thus, the rendition of \( \text{καθάρος} \) and the auxiliary verb \( \varepsilon\iota\mu\nu \) in Job 4:17 and the parallelism between 

and \( \text{καθάρος} \) in this text indicates that the rendition of \( \text{καθάρος} \) with \( \text{καθάρος} \) in Dan 8:14c is based on the notion that in this context the meaning of \( \text{καθάρος} \) overlaps with the meaning of \( \text{καθάρος} \). Furthermore, the two words used to render \( \text{καθάρος} \), \( \text{καθάρος} \) and \( \text{καθάρος} \), are two key terms used in the LXX’s prescription of the Day of Atonement procedures in Lev 16 in the context of cleansing/purifying the sanctuary and the people (e.g., Lev 16:20).

The Syriac renders \( \text{καθάρος} \) with the Peal imperfect \( \text{καθαρ} \) from the root \( \text{καθαρ} \) “conquer,” “justify” or “be free from guilt, be clear, be pure.” Though there seems to be no obvious reason why the verb \( \text{καθαρ} \) “justify” is used, rather than the cognate verb \( \text{καθαρ} \) “justify, declare righteous” (in the Pael), a noticeable difference in the distribution of these two roots in the Pentateuch can be demonstrated (\( \text{καθαρ} \) occurs ten times, whereas \( \text{καθαρ} \) is only used once). This may be a hint that there is a relationship between the


\[2\] The possibility that the translator(s) of the Octateuch and Theodotion chose to render \( \text{καθαρ} \) in Dan 8:14c with \( \text{καθαρος} \) in light of the cleansing of the temple by the Maccabees (1 Macc 4:36, 41) cannot be excluded. See S. Horn’s editorial comment in Justesen, 60-61 n. 28; and Andreasen, "Translation," 487-490.

\[3\] For R. A. Taylor, it is difficult to find a reason why the Syriac would have preferred the verb \( \text{καθαρ} \) “justify” over the cognate verb \( \text{καθαρ} \) “justify, declare righteous” (in the Pael). He thinks “it is possible that \( \text{καθαρ} \) here is an inner-Syriac corruption of an original \( \text{καθαρ} \) “be made pure/clean” (*The Peshitta of Daniel*, 224).

\[4\] In the Pentateuch the verb \( \text{καθαρ} \) is only used once (Deut 21:17 for \( \text{καθαρ} \)), while \( \text{καθαρ} \), which is used in Dan 8:14c, occurs ten times (Gen 44:16; Exod 20:7; 21:19; 23:7; 34:7 [2x]; Num 14:18 [2x]; Deut 5:11; 25:1), thereof three times for the root \( \text{καθαρ} \) (for the verb \( \text{καθαρ} \) in Gen 44:16 and Deut 25:1; for the adjective \( \text{καθαρ} \) in Exod 23:7) and seven times for \( \text{καθαρ} \) “be clean, be pure.”
Syriac rendering of Dan 8:14c and the Pentateuch. More interesting yet is the fact that the two words of Dan 8:14c ("and the right will be justified") occur close together in the Syriac only in one other text: in the judicial procedure text of Deut 25:1-2 ("according to his wickedness" in vs. 1 and "for the verb רדמ in vs. 2) in which a legal dispute is ended by the judgment declaring one party in the right and the other in the wrong. The judicial procedure described in this text could function as legal background to the vision and audition in Dan 8:9-14 in which a righteous judgment is called for by a holy being (the "how long" question) so that the righteous will be declared in the right and the guilty in the wrong and both are treated accordingly. Though hypothetical, this observation could explain the strange rendering of the Syriac in Dan 8:14c.

Although there is no Targum available, Read argues that the Aramaic הָדָאָב with the meaning of "cleansing" is a synonym of רדמ, and that a form of הָדָאָב would have been used for הָדָאָב if a Targum to Daniel had been produced. However, the meaning of the Aramaic הָדָאָב is similarly broad and cannot be confined to "cleanse." Zimmermann believes that הָדָאָב comes from the original Aramaic יְדֹר or יִדּוּר: יְדֹר or יִדּוּר: (1) justify, hold guiltless; (2) cleanse, purify. For him, the translator into Hebrew followed the first meaning

---

1The Syriac renders תְּפִלָּה by כְּפֶרֶת רַדְמִי "right." Thus the Syriac of Dan 8:14c reads כְּפֶרֶת רַדְמִי "and the right will be justified." R. A. Taylor regards the preference of כְּפֶרֶת over יְדֹר as intentional: "the translator has preferred here כְּפֶרֶת ("right"), perhaps understanding the reference to the cleansing of the שִׁפַּחַת to refer to a purification of religious 'rite' or 'service,' as opposed to merely a cleansing of the temple locale" (The Peshitta of Daniel, 225-226).

2Read, 31-36.

3See the plethora of renditions for חָדָא in non-biblical Aramaic in HALOT, 5:1864-1865; cf. also the cautious observation by Andreasen, "Translation," 490-491.
instead of the second which was intended.¹

In sum, the Greek versions suggest that ὄμορφον in Dan 8:14c carries the idea of cleansing and purification and should be rendered “shall be cleansed” or “shall be purified.” These versions single out one of the extended meanings of ὄμορφον which has been established by parallel terms (ὁμορφός “be clean, pure,” σωφρόν “be clean, pure,” and ἁμαρτία “cleanliness”) and so uphold that ὄμορφον expresses an act of purification in a cultic context. There is the possibility that such a rendering of ὄμορφον was historically influenced by the cleansing of the temple by the Maccabees. The Syriac version seems to view the phrase in a more legal context, indicating that judgment was held that declared the right as just and pure. Again, the evidence of the versions testifies to the semantic versatility of the phrase in Dan 8:14c.

Meaning of שְׁרוּפָה

The noun שְׁרוּפָה in the Hebrew Bible. Similar to ὄμορφον, the noun שְׁרוּפָה (c. 477 times in the Hebrew Bible²) has an equally broad semantic range.³ Its basic rendition

---

²So the count by Even-Shoshan, 1003-1005. H.-P. Müller (“שְׁרוּפָה qds holy,” TLOT, 3:1106-1107) and HALOT (3:1076) each count 469 occurrences.
³See, for example, Wolf Wilhelm Graf von Baudissin, Studien zur semitischen Religionsgeschichte, vol. 2 (Berlin: Reimer, 1911), esp. 1-142; Ulrich Bunzel, Der Begriff der Heiligkeit im Alten Testament: Eine ideologische Untersuchung (Lauban: Baumeister, 1914), which is only the first section of the first part of his 1914 dissertation at the University of Breslau; Franz J. Leenhardt, La notion de sainte dans l’Ancien Testament: Étude de la racine QDS (Montpellier: Causse, Graill and Castelnau for Faculté Libre de Théologie Protestante de Montpellier, 1929); Helmer Ringgren, The Prophetic Conception of Holiness, UUA, 1948, no. 12 (Uppsala: Lundequistiska; Leipzig: Harrassowitz, 1948); J. Muilenburg, “Holiness,” IDB, 2:616-625; Berkovits, 141-223; H.-P. Müller, “שְׁרוּפָה,” 3:1103-1118; W. Kornfeld and Helmer Ringgren, “שְׁרוּפָה qds,” TDOT,
“holiness” can refer to persons, objects, places, and time in their relationship or association with God. Holiness can also be associated with God himself.  


Wright presents a good overview of the major loci or bearers of holiness, and identifies the following carrier of holiness: (1) Divine beings: God, lesser divine beings [better: celestial beings]; (2) humans: priests, Israelites, Nazirites, Levites and firstborn humans, prophets; (3) objects: offerings, sanctuary furniture, priestly clothing, real estate, money and precious metals and stones, mixtures, oil, incense, water; (4) places: sanctuaries, places of theophany, land of Israel and Jerusalem, Ezekiel’s רֵאֵית, heaven; (5) time: Sabbath, holidays, Jubilee and Sabbatical Year; (6) miscellaneous: war, covenant (“Holiness [OT],” *ABD*, 3:237-244). The entry of ‘םָני in *HALOT* (3:1076-1078) also illustrates the rich application of ‘םָני (though the classification in specific divisions and subdivisions is questionable from a semantic point of view):

1. something with which holiness is associated, which is to be treated carefully, something holy (8 texts cited)
2. people and things that are holy (50 texts)
3. pl. פָּטְלִים votive offerings (40 texts)
4. holiness associated with God (5 texts)
5. holiness associated with a thing; and so פָּטְלִים etc. holy as an attribute of one of God’s possessions (193 texts)
6. a. פָּטְלִים holy area (5 texts)
   b. פָּטְלִים sacred object . . . meaning the sanctuary (37 texts)
   c. i. פָּטְלִים the holy shrine of the temple (also meaning sanctuary) (19 texts)
      ii. פָּטְלִים sanctuary (4 texts)
      iii. פָּטְלִים his (והלך) sanctuary etc. (7 texts)
7. פָּטְלִים something extremely holy (46 texts).
primarily a divine term that "indicates a relationship more than a quality,"\(^1\) a relationship to the source of all holiness. The distribution of נְחֵל in the Hebrew Bible—with most of its occurrences in Leviticus, Exodus, Numbers, and Ezekiel—shows clearly that it is a term closely related to the cult in Israel, in which God is at the center.\(^2\) Interestingly, the book of Daniel belongs to those books that show the highest density of נְחֵל occurrences. Its thirteen occurrences in five chapters (Dan 8-12) are surpassed only by the book of Leviticus.\(^3\)

**The term נְחֵל in Dan 8:14c.** The majority of commentators agree that נְחֵל in Dan 8:14c refers to the sanctuary or the temple.\(^4\) It designates that space which represents the deity's abode and a place of his worship. This opinion is supported by two contextual considerations. First, Dan 8:9-14 is saturated with cultic terminology. It is easy to see that the noun נְחֵל, if it were to indeed refer to the sanctuary or if it were closely related to it, is another term that fits this cultic context. Second, inasmuch as the question in vs.


\(^{2}\)See the table of distribution in H.-P. Müller, "נְחֵל," 3:1106-1107. Those books in which נְחֵל occurs more than ten times are the following: Leviticus (92x), Exodus (70x), Numbers (57x), Ezekiel (57x), Psalms (45x), Isaiah (23x), 2 Chronicles (30x), 1 Chronicles (17x), Daniel (13x), and 1 Kings (12x).

\(^{3}\)The average number of occurrences of נְחֵל per chapter (starting with the highest): Leviticus (3.41), Daniel 8-12 (2.6), Obadiah (2.0), Exodus (1.75), Numbers (1.58), Ezekiel (1.19), 2 Chronicles (0.83), Joel (0.75), Zephaniah (0.67), Ezra (0.6), 1 Chronicles (0.59), 1 Kings (0.55), Nehemiah (0.54), Jonah (0.5), Haggai (0.5), etc.

\(^{4}\)If the previous verses are interpreted as having happened at the time of Antiochus IV, נְחֵל is almost always regarded as the sanctuary. The suggestion by von Gall, 53, that נְחֵל only could designate the altar, with reference to Exod 29:37; 30:20, 29; 40:10, is unconvincing since in these texts the word for altar is נב, and the texts declare only that the altar shall be נְחֵל "holy."
13c takes up previous language, it is conceivable that the noun שֵׁם echoes the noun שֵׁם in vs. 11c that stems from the same root. And as שֵׁם clearly refers to the sanctuary, שֵׁם could also refer to the same—an opinion usually held by scholars. It is however possible to challenge such a viewpoint. Since the unambiguous term שֵׁם, which clearly refers to the “sanctuary,” has been used in vs. 11c, the multifaceted term שֵׁם appears to be used intentionally to refer to something more or to something other than the sanctuary.1 A more detailed investigation of the relationship between the two terms is undertaken in the literary analysis in chapter 3.

An additional reason for understanding שֵׁם as the sanctuary is supplied by the terminological relationship of Dan 8:12-14 to Dan 9:24, which comprises the words שֵׁם, and the root פָּרַשׁ. An analysis of the phrase פָּרַשׁ שֵׁם, which occurs in 9:24, shows that it designates the sanctuary itself or offerings or cultic objects used in the sanctuary service. Based on the terminological links between 9:24 and 8:12-14, it is possible to understand שֵׁם in 8:14c as the sanctuary/temple, and beyond that its reference could extend to the holy things that are essential for the sanctuary service.2

In Dan 8:14c, as well as in vs. 13c, the nominal use of an indeterminate שֵׁם in

---

1See the suggestions by Keil, 305 (“שם means all that is holy”); Knabenbauer, 215 (“holiness,” i.e., the worship of God, the observation of the law, the ritual ceremonies belonging to the holy); Thomson, 244 (“holiness” or “holy thing, offering”); Hassberger, 106 (“‘holy things’... intending possibly different facilities and institutions that fall under this category”).

2For a more detailed analysis of the intertextual relation of 8:12-14 and 9:24 see chapter 4.
the absolute is rather unique. Such a usage is found elsewhere only in Ps 134:2, where it clearly designates the sanctuary.

There are however several hints that נַפְלַכ could be linked to a personal dimension. First, the analysis of clauses with the verb פָּרַשׁ has shown that if an object to פָּרַשׁ occurs in such clauses, that object is always personal. This observation leads to the strong suspicion that נַפְלַכ in Dan 8:14c could also carry the semantic notion of being personal.

Second, the other occurrences of the root נַפְלַכ in Dan 8, except for נַפְלַכ in vs. 11c, are in reference to personal beings: נַפְלַכ “holy being” (vs. 13a, 13b) and נַפְלַכ “holy people” or “people of holy ones” (vs. 24; cf. 12:7 where the same group is referred to by נַפְלַכ with the noun that is used in 8:14c). And third, the structural analysis of the question in vs. 13c suggests that נַפְלַכ could semantically be more closely linked to נַפְלַכ (see the literary analysis): inasmuch as the first two items are linked—in relationship to נַפְלַכ—

---

1That means נַפְלַכ is neither used in a construct group or with pronominal suffix, nor collectively (e.g., in נַפְלַכ נַפְלַכ), nor predicatively or as verbal complement (e.g., in combination with the verbal root הַיָּלָל, expressing “be holy,” or in the phrase הַיָּלָל נַפְלַכ “[be] holy to YHWH”).

2The use of נַפְלַכ in Prov 20:25 (“a man speaks rashly, ‘holy (נַפְלַכ)!’”) cannot be regarded as similar to Dan 8:13c and 14c. In Prov 20:25 the call נַפְלַכ is a vow, meaning that something is declared to be consecrated to YHWH. The noun נַפְלַכ therefore functions as predicate of the clause “(it is) holy!”

3 נַפְלַכ נַפְלַכ (Ps 134:2a). Both vs. 3 (“May YHWH bless you from Zion”) as response to vs. 2 (“Lift up your hands to the sanctuary [נַפְלַכ] and bless YHWH”) and a possible chiastic structure of vss. 1-2 (“bless the Lord all servants of YHWH” // “who serve by night in the house of YHWH” // “lift up your hands to the sanctuary [נַפְלַכ]” // “and bless YHWH”) imply that נַפְלַכ refers to the sanctuary.

4Fahlgren hypothesizes that the unique Niphal form of פָּרַשׁ in Dan 8:14c could suggest that the object is not personal but inanimate (s’dag, 116 n. 1). However, such a function of verbal stems, viz. to indicate a semantic aspect of the object, is to my knowledge unattested, if at all possible. Rather, the Niphal functions semantically in an oppositional relationship to other active verbal stems (cf. Siebesma, The Function of the Niphal in Biblical Hebrew). As argued above, the Niphal of פָּרַשׁ should be understood in a passive-active relationship to its Hiphil forms.
the tami d, the devastating crime is set up—so the next two items could be linked—in relation to שַׁמְרָנ, a host is figuratively turned into a trampling-place.

An overview of the use of the root שָׁמַר in the book of Daniel confirms that it can be used in relationship to the sanctuary as well as in relationship to persons. The noun שָׁמֵר occurs besides Dan 8:13c and 8:14c eleven more times in the book of Daniel. It is used referring to the sanctuary in the expressions בְּשֶׁמֶר שֶׁמֶר "holy of holies (9:24a) and שֶׁמֶר (9:26; the only Danielic absolute use of שֶׁמֶר with the article). It also occurs in the expressions “holy mountain” (9:16, 20; 11:45) and “holy city” (9:24a) which may be said to refer in extension to the sanctuary since God’s dwelling-place is the obvious reason for the holiness of the mountain and the city Jerusalem. The noun שֶׁמֶר is also used in reference to persons in the expression שֶׁמֶר "holy people" (12:7); and the phrase “holy covenant” (11:28; 11:30d; 11:30g) also has by extension associations with the holy people since a covenant involves two sides, in this case God and his people. The adjective שֶׁמֶר "holy" (3 times) is always associated with persons (8:13a, 13b, 24). The noun שֶׁמֶר "sanctuary" (3 times) refers always to the sanctuary (8:11c; 9:17; 11:31). In BA, the root שָׁמַר occurs only in the adjective שֶׁמֶר "holy" (13 times) and is always associated with persons.¹

To sum up the discussion on שָׁמַר, it is clear that in the book of Daniel שָׁמַר is

¹The Aramaic שָׁמַר occurs four times in the phrase שַׁמְרָנ "spirit of holy gods" (4:5, 6, 15; 5:11), three times referring to celestial beings in parallel to יָרֵד "watcher" (4:10, 14, 20), and six times in referring to the holy ones of the Most High (7:18, 22b, 25); יָרֵד "holy ones of the Most High" [7:18, 22b, 25]; יָרֵד "holy ones" [7:21, 22d]; and יָרֵד "holy people of the Most High" or "people of the holy ones of the Most High" [7:27].
used both in association with the sanctuary and with holy persons.¹ There are enough reasons to find תֶּנֶפ in 8:14c a clear reference to the sanctuary and to what the sanctuary stands for, in essence God’s character. However, the indicators of a personal aspect of לְהָפ should not be disregarded and need to be taken into account when the meaning of this clause is to be determined.

In conclusion, there are basically two ways to understand the relationship between the answer in vs. 14c and the question in vs. 13c. First, the answer encompasses in a direct way the solution to all problems mentioned in the question. In this case, תֶּנֶפ in vs. 14c comprises more than the sanctuary or the temple and would also refer to the trampled host. Second, the answer declares the solution for one of the problems in the question, and by solving this one, everything else is taken care of, too, since the different problems are all interrelated. Then, תֶּנֶפ in vs. 14c refers primarily to one specific item, most likely to the sanctuary.² The analysis above has shown that these two options are fairly close to one another. The occurrence of תֶּנֶפ as one of the items mentioned in the question in vs. 13c and its relationship to the term לְהָפ, whatever it may be exactly, lead to the conclusion that תֶּנֶפ is primarily associated with the sanctuary. At the same time, the

¹Hasel concludes a brief study of the usage of תֶּנֶפ in the book of Daniel by identifying the term’s associations with sanctuary (9:24), saints or holy ones (7:18, 21, 22, 25, 27; 8:24; 12:7), and judgment (7:21-22): “In the book of Daniel these terminological and conceptual associations of qôdeš with sanctuary, saints (holy ones), and judgment can hardly be accidental. Evidently the term qôdeš in 8:13 is aimed to bring to mind terminological and conceptual links as keys to the high points of the vision of chapters 7, 8-9, and 11-12” (“The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 447). In spite of these associations, Hasel regards the term תֶּנֶפ in 8:13c and in 8:14c as designating the sanctuary only (ibid., 447, 454-455). Thus תֶּנֶפ is generally interpreted to refer to the temple or sanctuary.

²"Since everything centers about the sanctuary, it alone is mentioned" (Leupold, 357), or “the central feature in the act of deliverance would be not the destruction of an enemy but the fate of a sanctuary” (Goldingay, Daniel, 220).
results of the semantic study of שֶׁפֶר—it refers to the sanctuary but also has associations to the holy ones—corroborate the conclusion that the answer שֶׁפֶר in Dan 8:14c encompasses the solution to all the different elements stated in the question in vs. 13c. Thus, the particular use of both שֶׁפֶר and בְּנוֹי יָהָה in 8:14c strongly suggests that the restoration of the holy to its right includes both the vindication of the sanctuary as well as of the host.

**Interclausal Analysis**

The interclausal analysis extends the linguistic description onto the text level, and thus is part of a text-grammatical or text-linguistic analysis that analyzes those linguistic features that function on the text level.¹ For this reason the connections of the clauses are delineated (interclausal syntax), mainly by the use of verbal forms (clause relationships are foremost dependent upon the clause types) and the interrelation of the agents. The procedure will be as follows: At first, the clause types of Dan 8:9-14 are identified and their function is determined. A comparison with the use of these clause types elsewhere in the book of Daniel assists in determining their function in 8:9-14.

**Clause Types in Daniel 8:9-14 and Their Function**

It is striking that all fourteen clauses in vss. 9a-13b are verbal clauses. In the rest, the question in vs. 13c and the first part of the answer in vs. 14b are nominal clauses, whereas the narrative remark in vs. 14a and the second part of the answer in vs. 14c are

¹The term “text-linguistics” refers to the way in which sentences are organized and relate to each other linguistically so that they form texts.
verbal clauses. This means that in the vision/audition there is an interesting change from verbal clauses (vss. 9-11 and vs. 12) to non-verbal clauses (vs. 13c and vs. 14b), and finally back to a verbal clause again (vs. 14c). The verb in vs. 14c then follows the last verb in vs. 12 after a break in the auditive activity.

These verses are packed with activity on the part of the horn and its host. Indeed, all the specific clause types in vss. 9a, 9b, 10a, and 10b include a description of change of location, that is, a clause constituent with dislocative function.

Daniel 8:9-14 exhibits the following clause types as shown in table 17.

Table 17. Clause Types in Daniel 8:9-14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metanarrative (First-person)</th>
<th>Vision Report Proper</th>
<th>Predictive Discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9a</td>
<td>\textit{x-qatal}</td>
<td>9a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9b</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>9b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>10a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10b</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>10b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10c</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>10c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11a</td>
<td>\textit{x-qatal}</td>
<td>11a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11b</td>
<td>\textit{x-qatal}</td>
<td>11b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11c</td>
<td>\textit{qatal-x}</td>
<td>11c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13a</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>13a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13b</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>13b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14a</td>
<td>\textit{wayyiqtol}</td>
<td>14a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b</td>
<td>\textit{wyiqtol}</td>
<td>14b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14c</td>
<td>\textit{wyiqtol}</td>
<td>14c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There are four main verbal forms: *qatal* (in the forms *x-qatal* and *qatal-x*), *wayyiqtol*, *yiqtol* (in the forms *x-yiqtol* and *w*yiqtol*), and *wqatal*. Their function needs to be determined.\(^1\) I base my arguments on the foreground/background or main-line/off-line distinction of discourse according to certain verbal forms, as displayed in table 18.\(^2\)

Table 18. Verbal/Clausal Forms and Discourse Constellation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Narrative Discourse</th>
<th>Predictive Discourse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Verbal form</strong></td>
<td><strong>Function</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary Verbal / Clausal Form</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>qatal</em></td>
<td>Basic past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>Continuative past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary Verbal / Clausal Form</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbless</td>
<td>Off-line status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>יִירָך</em> Verbal</td>
<td>Off-line status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participial</td>
<td>Off-line action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>yiqtol</em></td>
<td>Off-line ongoing action</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\)Cf. Hasselberger's analysis of verb syntax (377-384); however, he does not deal with 8:11-12.

These discourse constellations are expected to operate also within the book of Daniel, so that the kind of verbal/clausal forms used in the text indicates to which discourse type the text should be attributed. In fact, the primary verbal/clausal forms for continuative action (wayyiqtol and w’qatal) in the Hebrew parts of the book of Daniel fit perfectly into the pattern of discourse constellation.

The wayyiqtol form occurs ninety-eight times in the Hebrew parts of Daniel.\(^1\) It is used mostly in narrative, but seven times it is used in direct speech, however only when successive past events are narrated (2:3; 8:22; 9:11, 12, 14 [twice], 15). For example, the wayyiqtol נְמַלֵּךְ in 8:22 refers back to what Daniel had seen in the vision.\(^2\)

The w’qatal form occurs seventy-seven times in the Hebrew parts of Daniel, almost always in direct speech.\(^3\) If there is no compelling reason to argue otherwise, the w’qatal can be considered as a sign for direct speech, that is, often for predictive discourse. The only exception to the rule is the two w’qatal forms in Dan 8:4, which usually are considered to have a generalizing character, expressing a frequentative, or even durative, activity with past time reference.\(^4\)

\(^1\)Wayyiqtol forms occur in Dan 1:1, 2 (2x), 3, 5, 6, 7 (2x), 8 (2x), 9, 10, 11, 14 (2x), 16, 18, 19 (2x), 20, 21; 2:1, 2 (2x), 2 (2x), 4; 8:2 (3x), 3 (2x), 6 (2x), 7 (5x), 8, 9, 10 (3x), 13 (2x), 14, 15 (2x), 16 (3x), 17 (3x), 18 (2x), 19, 22, 27 (3x); 9:3, 4 (3x), 11, 12, 14 (2x), 15, 22 (3x); 10:5 (2x), 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 16 (3x), 18 (3x), 19 (2x), 20; 12:6, 7 (3x), 8, 9.

\(^2\)N מַלֵּךְ in Dan 8:22 is the only symbolic act of the vision that is mentioned by the angel, and is also the only wayyiqtol in the angelic interpretation in 8:19-26.

\(^3\)W’qatal forms occur in Dan 1:10; 8:4 (2x), 12c, 12d, 14c, 24 (4x), 25; 9:25, 27; 11:3 (3x), 5, 7 (3x), 9 (2x), 10 (4x), 11 (4x), 12 (2x), 13 (2x), 14, 15, 17, 18 (2x), 19 (2x), 20, 21 (3x), 23 (2x), 24, 26, 28 (2x), 29, 30 (6x), 31 (3x), 32, 33, 34, 36 (2x), 39 (2x), 40 (3x), 41, 43, 44, 45; 12:1, 10.

\(^4\)Schindele, “Textkonstituierung,” 8; cf. GKC, 335-336 (§112dd).
Turning our attention to Dan 8:9-14, it is readily seen that vss. 9-11 show typical features of narrative discourse (as does the first half of the vision report in 8:3-8). The text exhibits the primary verbal/clausal forms of narrative discourse: *qatal* (vss. 9a, 11a-c) and four *wayyiqtol* (vss. 9b-10c). Thus, all verbal/clausal forms in vss. 9-11 have clearly to be considered as narrative discourse. Similarly, in vss. 13b and 14a two *wayyiqtol* mark a progression of reference time in the past.

Verses 12 and 14b-c belong to the category of predictive discourse and show the typical verbal/clausal forms of discursive speech. The main verbal/clausal form in texts with future time reference are *yiqtol* for the basic future (vs. 12a-b) and *we qatal* depicting continuative future (vss. 12c-d, 14c). Again, all verbal/clausal forms in vs. 12 fit the predictive discourse constellation.

Gzella argues that the *we qatal* forms in vs 11c and vs. 12c-d have the same function as the two *we qatal* in vs. 4, that is, depicting the resulting situation or the summary of the logical consequences of the preceding action in the past.1 Gzella believes that in the vision report in Dan 8 *we qatal* represents the narrator’s comment on the factual outcome of the preceding verses, “a summary of the new status quo,”2 and thus serves as a structural marker in the vision report. Gzella’s hypothesis is supported by the use of *ךְלֵיא* in 8:4 which in 11:3, 16, 36 also has a structuring function. Also, the use of the same verbal forms *ךְלָי* and *ךְלֵיא* in 8:4 and 8:11c-d seems to provide some reason for such an argument. In fact, the use of *we qatal* *ךְלָי* in 8:11c may indeed have a

---

1Gzella, 116, 119.

2Ibid., 101.
resultative function, for it follows two qatal clauses, and thus occurs in the same temporal reference context of the past as are the two \textit{w}qatal in vs. 4.\textsuperscript{1}

However, the situation in vs. 12 is distinctly different from vs. 4, for the time frame expressed by the verbal forms is future, that is, the \textit{yiqtol} form in vs. 12a has prospective function and indicates future perspective.\textsuperscript{2} The \textit{w}yiqtol form in vs. 12b is another future time reference. The following two \textit{w}qatal in vs. 12c-d would then be the usual way to depict succession in the future. They express a future activity in a generalizing way, maybe even with a frequentative function—"and (customarily) it will do and will succeed"—and could quite likely describe the resulting future situation.

In sum, the use of the four verbal forms in Dan 8:12 in a predictive discourse constellation is another indicator that this verse constitutes indeed the direct speech of the holy being mentioned in vs. 13a.\textsuperscript{3}

Besides the specific discursive nature of vs. 12, which by itself is a strong argument, other reasons support such a conclusion. First, the \textit{wayyiqtol} \textit{n}y\textit{pctol} in vs. 13a does not necessarily imply that vs. 13a follows vs. 12 in a logical or temporal sense, as there is no text-grammatical connection between the past continuative \textit{wayyiqtol} of vs. 13a and the \textit{yiqtol} of vs. 12a.

\textsuperscript{1}The \textit{w}qatal forms in 8:4 occur after a participial clause, which is preceded by a verbal clause with a \textit{yiqtol} functioning as volitive (or modal: Schindele, "Textkonstituierung," 8) or \textit{potentialis} (Hassberger, 47, who correctly observes that the \textit{w}qatal forms have successive function).

\textsuperscript{2}See, e.g., Niccacci, \textit{The Syntax of the Verb}, 74.

\textsuperscript{3}Max Rogland demonstrates that one utilizes past tenses when narrating events which occurred in a dream or vision, while using future tenses when referring to the (future) realization of what is symbolically depicted in the dream or announced in a vision. Thus past tenses are used in description and recounting; future tenses are used in explanations and interpretations (\textit{Alleged Non-past Uses of Qatal in Classical Hebrew}, SSN, no. 44 [Assen: Van Gorcum, 2003], 65-71). This is important for Dan 8:12a where the \textit{yiqtol} \textit{m}y\textit{shn} has exactly such a function.
13a and the future continuative *w*qatal of vs. 12d. It rather continues the first-person narrative in which the visionary describes his experience, and hence follows qatal-*x נָרָאָה (vs. 7) or wayyiqtol *אֶזְכַּר (vs. 3). As suggested in the clause analysis, nyptti XT may be translated with pluperfect meaning (“And I had heard a holy one speaking”), particularly since the hearing of someone speaking (*דְּבַר) implies the transmission of content.¹ Second, the only discursive texts with future time reference found in Dan 8 are angelic speeches (vss. 13c, 14b-c, 19-26).² Verse 12 should therefore also be understood as angelic speech. Third, if a holy being uttered vs. 12, the same holy being would give the answer in vs. 14b-c. These verses are linked by the same verbal form: The *w*qatal of vs. 14c would resume nicely the *w*qatal forms in vs. 12c-d, hinting at the idea that the same holy one is speaking, who is now expressing the consequence of the activities described in vs. 12. Fourth, vs. 12 may not be visualized as easily as vss. 9-11 are. This concurs with the impression that vss. 9-11 are part of Daniel’s description of the vision, whereas vs. 12 may belong to an audition.

**Word Order**

This section examines the positioning of nonverbal sentence constituents in the

---

¹See the analysis of wayyiqtol הִשְׁמַרְנִי under clause 13a (above).

²In Dan 9-12 the verbal forms yiqtol and continuative *w*qatal appear in 9:25-27 (direct speech of the angel Gabriel); 10:14 (direct speech of a heavenly being); 10:17 (direct speech of Daniel); 10:20-12:4 (direct speech of a heavenly being); 12:7e (oath of a heavenly being); and 12:10-13 (direct speech of a heavenly being). In all instances these verbal forms mark discursive texts. There are two more yiqtol forms in the corpus of Dan 8-12, but they occur in a narrative text following the negation לֹא (8:4; 12:8b). Therefore, they do not belong to the category of verbal forms marking discursive texts. Rather they indicate a durative activity (“I was not understanding”) in a narrative discourse.
preverbal field, for which the term “fronting” is used, and delineates the pragmatic function of such constructions.1 Fronting of nonverbal elements before the verb forms (marked by x in the clause type designations) occurs in vss. 9a, 11a, 11b, and 12a.

These instances of marked word order are structurally significant.2 The fronting of בָּעָר הָאֵזֶם in vs. 9a is disjunctive in character and marks vs. 9 as a new scene.3 The reference to the origin of the horn shows it to be a new entity. The next clauses have unmarked word order (i.e., verb-subject-object). Verse 11a, where the “commander of the host” is located in sentence-initial position, highlights that the activities of the horn are directed even against the “commander of the host,” in comparison to vs. 10 where the “host of heaven” was attacked by the horn. The fronting in vs. 11a is for the sake of

---

1In recent years the study of BH word order and related subjects, such as focus, has greatly flourished. Besides a number of articles (for references see Martin Probstle, “Deixis and the Linear Ordering of Sentence Constituents in Biblical Hebrew Verbal Clauses” [paper presented at the annual meeting of the SBL, Denver, Colorado, 18 November 2001], 10-15; and Christo H. J. van der Merwe and Eep Talstra, “Biblical Hebrew Word Order: The Interface of Information Structure and Formal Features,” ZAH 15/16 (2002/2003): 68-86, 101-104), several monographs have been published. Walter Grob’s Die Satzteilfolge im Verbalsatz altestamentlicher Prosa (1996) is groundbreaking inasmuch as it represents a careful systematic research on Biblical Hebrew word order with clearly formulated criteria based on a modern linguistic framework. Grob bases his research on the dependency grammar model and uses Richter’s nomenclature for the different syntagmemes, though with modifications. After Grob, the more important monographs on BH word order include Michael Rosenbaum, Word-Order Variation in Isaiah 40-55: A Functional Perspective, SSN, no. 35 (Assen: Van Gorcum, 1997); Diße (1998); Goldfajn (1998); Jean-Marc Heimerdinger, Topic, Focus and Foreground in Ancient Hebrew Narratives, JSOTSup, no. 295 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1999); Walter Grob, Doppelt besetztes Vorfeld: Syntaktische, pragmatische und übersetzungstechnische Studien zum althebräischen Verbalsatz, BZAW, no. 305 (Berlin: de Gruyter, 2001); Katsuomi Shimasaki, Focus Structure in Biblical Hebrew: A Study of Word Order and Information Structure (Bethesda: CDL, 2002).

2Pace James H. Breasted, who claims in reference to Dan 8:1, 2, 5, 8, 12, 22, 27 that there is "but little difference to the writer whether the subject or predicate precedes," inferring that such a phenomenon indicates a late stage in the development of Hebrew syntax and thus a late date of Daniel ("The Order of the Sentence in the Hebrew Portions of Daniel," Hebraica 7 [1890-91]: 245-252).

3Hasslberger, 379 n. 10.
topicalization. The use of a pro-element in sentence-initial position in vs. 11b in reference to the “commander of the host” underscores the horn’s hostility to this heavenly being. The fronting here is not for topicalization, for the commander has already been introduced, but rather the argument is the focus, that is, the enmity brought against the commander of the host is amplified by repeating that the activities of the horn are directed against the heavenly prince.

The final fronting occurs in vs. 12a (חֹדֶש). If the host is not identical with the host of heaven but rather is a different power, as argued above, the fronting functions as topicalization. It introduces a new topic, which becomes the subject for the next clauses.

Interclausal Relations

After the clause types and the word order have been examined, the interclausal relations can now be described in table 19. Only formal features are listed here (e.g., verbal/clausal form, text phora, fronting). For a fuller description of the syntactic- and stylistic-structural features see the structural analysis in chapter 3.

---

For the Aramaic of Daniel, Randall Buth concludes that subject-verb (SV) clauses with animate subjects constitute a foreground construction in which the narrative topic has been placed in preverbal position (“Word Order in Aramaic,” 197). Buth lists the following foregrounded SV clauses (interestingly, all clauses with material after the verb—marked with a “+”—are foregrounded, except for 4:1): Dan 2:12, 14+, 16, 19+, 24+, 46+, 49+; 3:1+, 2+, 4+, 13, 19+, 21+, 24, 30+; 4:16+, 34; 5:1+, 2+, 13+; 6:1+, 4+, 4+, 5+, 6+, 7+, 10+, 12, 16+, 17, 26+, 29+; backgrounded SV clauses: 2:13; 4:1+; 5:9 (177-178). Apart from the two clauses where the foreground/background status is unclear (3:23+; 5:5+) thirty-two SV clauses with animated subject are foreground clauses, but only three are background clauses. In contrast, SV clauses with inanimate subjects in pre-verbal position are usually (in twelve out of fourteen cases) background clauses, i.e., the subject is not marked as topic (Buth, “Word Order in Aramaic,” 197-199).
Table 19. Interclausal Relations in Daniel 8:9-14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Clausal Form</th>
<th>Interclausal Relation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9a</td>
<td><em>x-qatal</em></td>
<td>disjunctive: introduction of a new protagonist (“horn”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9b</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>sequential action to 9a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>sequential action to 9b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10b</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>sequential action to 10a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10c</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>sequential action to 10b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11a</td>
<td><em>x-qatal</em></td>
<td>topicalization (“commander of the host”); focus of argument (activity against the commander of the host); non-sequential; ePP connects vs. 11b to vs. 11a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11b</td>
<td><em>x-qatal</em></td>
<td>focus of argument (activity against the commander of the host); non-sequential; ePP connects vs. 11b to vs. 11a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11c</td>
<td><em>qatal-x</em></td>
<td>non-sequential; ePP connects vs. 11c to vs. 11a;1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12a</td>
<td><em>x-yiqtol</em></td>
<td>topicalization (“a host”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12b</td>
<td><em>w</em>yiqtol*</td>
<td>non-sequential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12c</td>
<td><em>w</em>qatal*</td>
<td>sequential to vs. 12b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12d</td>
<td><em>w</em>qatal*</td>
<td>sequential to vs. 12c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13a</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>pluperfect (before vs. 12); connects sequentially to qatal in vs. 7 or wayyiqtol in vs. 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13b</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>sequential action to vs. 13a2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c</td>
<td>nominal clause</td>
<td>object clause to vs. 13b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14a</td>
<td><em>wayyiqtol</em></td>
<td>sequential action to vs. 13b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b</td>
<td>nominal clause</td>
<td>object clause to vs. 14a; adverbial expression of time indicating the starting point of activity in vs. 14c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14c</td>
<td><em>w</em>qatal*</td>
<td>object clause to vs. 14a; connects sequentially to vs. 12c-d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Verse 11b and 11c are not connected with each other, however, both by pronominal suffix refer back to 11a. This indicates that 11b and 11c “concretize” 11a that functions almost as a heading for the following two clauses (so Hasslberger, 98, 100; cf. Aalders, Daniel, 176; Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 409).

2Goldingay takes הָלֹא in vs. 13b as a waw consecutive which continues the participle construction begun by רָמַשׁ: “I heard one holy one speaking, and another holy one saying . . .” (Daniel, 198). However, it is difficult to regard vs. 13b as continuation of the object of hearing, especially since the sequential wayyiqtol הָלֹא follows more naturally the wayyiqtol הָלֹא in vs. 13a than the participle בְּרָמַשׁ.
Andrews University

Seventh-day Adventist Theological Seminary

TRUTH AND TERROR: A TEXT-ORIENTED ANALYSIS OF DANIEL 8:9-14

A Dissertation
Presented in Partial Fulfillment
of the Requirements for the Degree
Doctor of Philosophy

by
Martin Pröbstle
July 2006

Volume 2
CHAPTER 3

LITERARY ANALYSIS

Preliminary Remarks

Texts are works of art. As such they have to be approached with due care:

There is only one way that gives hope of eliciting the innate conventions and literary formations of a piece of ancient literature, and that is by listening to it patiently and humbly. The critic must curb all temptations to impose antecedent judgments on the text; he must immerse himself in it again and again, with all his sensors alert to catch every possible stimulus—mental-ideational, aural, aesthetic, linguistic, visual—until its features begin to stand out and their native shape and patterning emerge.¹

Literary analysis discloses the style and structure of the text, that is, the way and manner in which the means of expression are used in the text and influence the entire text and its understanding. It attempts to discern the many different devices by which the text is ordered in a unified, indivisible whole. Thus, it provides access to the text as a work of literary artistry. Whereas linguistic analysis deals with the “what” of a text, literary analysis addresses the “how” of a text. Similar to the common but mistaken assessment that its linguistic quality is poor, Dan 8 has also been attributed as having a “markedly inferior literary quality.”² However, such an assessment is up for discussion, and the following analysis will show how the text, at least vss. 9-14, is skillfully wrought in

²Anderson, Signs and Wonders, 91.
various ways.

In this chapter, the literary quality of Dan 8:9-14 is studied from the perspective of form (surface structure), of subject matter or content (deep structure), and of the interplay of form, content, and linguistic features with regard to structure.¹ Hence, the literary analysis pursued here comprises three parts. First, the analysis of form focuses on the literary style and literary devices of the text, with a basic feature being the prosaic or poetic style of the language. Second, the analysis of the text’s subject matter focuses on the thematic distribution and arrangement in the text by paying close attention to the specific usage of semantic fields, Leitwörter and keywords, and the characterization of the main actor(s). Finally, the analysis of the literary structure of Dan 8:9-14, building upon the previous two steps, focuses on how the individual elements of a text show a complex inner structure and composition that is accompanied by thematic variety and thematic progression within the text. At the same time, it reveals the dimensions of the text’s cohesion and coherence.

**Literary Style**

In the analysis of literary style, it first needs to be decided whether parts of the language used in Dan 8:9-14 show poetic characteristics. The technique of narrative and poetic composition cannot be underestimated with regard to creating both the form and the expressiveness of the text. Recognizing poetic structures will help to appreciate both features. After this, the specific use of gender as a stylistic device is examined. The

¹"Surface structure" and "deep structure" are used in a linguistic sense to refer to the form and the content of the text and should not be confused with the meaning they have in structuralism.
gender shifts in Dan 8:9-14, which not infrequently perplex the exegete, contribute to the
text's literary style and should be explained as creating cohesion rather than incoherency.

There are also other literary devices that, however, do not function primarily on the
formal level, and therefore will be discussed in the thematic or structural analysis.

Prose or Poetry in Daniel 8:9-14?

Introduction

Are there any poetic parts in the last section of the vision report and the
immediately following audition, that is, in Dan 8:9-14? While scholars have found that
the book of Daniel exhibits several poetic passages in significant places, they usually do
not regard any clauses or verses in Dan 8:9-14 as poetic, a fact mirrored in the printed

---

1The poetic parts that have been identified in the book of Daniel include passages interspersed
throughout narrations (2:20-23; 3:31-33; 4:3:1b-32; 6:26/27-28), throughout vision reports (4:7b-9, 11-
13/14; 7:9-10, 13-14), and throughout the angelic interpretations (7:23-27; 8:23-26; 9:24-27; 12:1-3).
Some even find it probable that parts of 9:4b-19 could be poetic. See Koch, Das Buch Daniel, 82.

2Beside the commentators there are several analyses of the various poetic sections in Daniel;
however, none of them deals with Dan 8:9-14: W. Sibley Towner, “Poetic Passages of Daniel 1-6,”
Background,” in Mélanges bibliques et orientaux en l'honneur de M. Henri Cazelles, ed. A. Caquot
and M. Delcor, AOAT, no. 212 (Kevelaer: Butzon & Bercker; Neukichen-Vluyn: Neukirchen,
3:31-33, and 6:26b-28,” in Studia Hierosolymitana III: Nell’ottavo centenario Francescano (1182-
1982), ed. G. C. Bottini, Studium Biblicum Franciscanum: Collectio maior, no. 30 (Jerusalem:
Franciscan Printing Press, 1982), 91-96; Daud Soesilo, “Translating the Poetic Sections of Daniel 1-
6,” The BT 41 (1990): 432-435; James W. Watts, Psalm and Story: Inset Hymns in Hebrew Narrative,
JSOTS, no. 139 (Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1992), 145-154 (on Dan 2:20-23); G.T.M.
of Jonas C. Greenfield, ed. Z. Zevit, S. GITIN, and M. Sokoloff (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1995),
261-275; Géza G. Xeravits, “Poetic Passages in the Aramaic Part of the Book of Daniel,” BN 124
(2005): 29-40. Bayer's attempt to present the whole book of Daniel in rhythmic structure of strophe
and anti-strophe has failed (Edmund Bayer, Danielstudien, ATA, vol. 3, pt. 5 [Münster: Aschendorf,
editions of the Hebrew Bible in which no portion of these verse is typographically marked as poetic. There are only a few exceptions. Ewald lists vs. 11 among passages that "exhibit a purely poetic style of speech," Zöckler attributes poetic character to vs. 13c because of the lack of article and the lack of conjunctions, and Meinhold believes that בְּכֵן in vs. 14b without an article indicates poetic briefness. It is clear, however, that Dan 8:9-14 has never been systematically analyzed in regard to poetic features. This deficiency needs to be addressed. Another reason to investigate the style of Dan 8:9-14 in view of poetry is that other vision reports and angelic explanations in Daniel display a shift from prose to poetry, usually at their high point. One may therefore suspect that a similar shift from prose to poetry may occur in the vision report and audition in 8:3-14. Last but not least, poetic style indicates authorial intention and is an effective vehicle for highlighting the message. As K. Koch stated, "To recognize the poetic character is therefore of importance when it comes to the intention of the authors."

To anticipate the conclusion, on close scrutiny Dan 8:11 exhibits a number of poetic features that in turn accentuate the specific function of this verse at the end of the
vision report. Realizing the poetic-like style of vs. 11, one can appreciate the full rhetorical force of this text.

**Concept of Biblical Hebrew Poetry**

Before directing attention to Dan 8:9-14, basic methodological considerations about BH poetry, or BH verse, need to be kept in mind. It is not always easy to distinguish poetry from prose. In fact, there is no consensus on what exactly constitutes BH poetry, though the dominant features of parallelism, rhythm (meter), and other stylistic elements are well recognized. Hence, without entering the debate over the nature of BH poetry in depth, the relation between poetry and prose needs to be clarified and the possible poetic features determined.¹

The reality is that “poetry is notoriously difficult to define.”² Furthermore, in addition to the extremes of highly poetic language and language almost completely lacking in poetic features, there are often cases in which features of prose and features of


poetry overlap, so that a precise distinction between prose and poetry is difficult. This has led to skepticism regarding the validity of the poetry-prose dichotomy. In the old view of polarization, prose and poetry are two totally separate categories, and any text could be rigidly divided into poetry or prose. It has become increasingly clear that such a distinction cannot do justice to the wide variety of biblical styles. Rather there is a poetry-prose continuum with a gradual fade-over of the two categories in the middle ground where biblical poetry and prose are overlapping categories:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prose</th>
<th>Poetry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absence of ornamentation</td>
<td>High style</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A continuum of styles from highly structured, ornamental language (maximum) to an absence of ornamentation (minimum) does not abandon the distinction between poetry and prose, since the difference between the two is frequently clear. Such a concept

---


points out that the extremes at either end are easily distinguished, but also that there are
texts that have an intermediate status, exhibiting features found on both sides. For such
texts the distinction between poetry and prose is not always easy, and perhaps should not
be drawn altogether.

The question as to what, exactly, poetic elements are is closely related to the
debate over the poetry-prose relation. In recent years it has become evident that there is
no single key characteristic by which biblical poetry may be identified. As a matter of
fact, poetic features are not restricted to poetic texts. However, the more that these
features are present in combination or used with greater intensity within a biblical text,
the more likely it is that this text may be classified as poetry. A poetic text is then present
when different poetic elements form "a complex of heightening effects."

So, what are the different poetic features? There are various lists of poetic
elements. Inasmuch as they often describe the same features in more or less detail, they
do not differ too much from one another. For instance, Watson specified nineteen poetic
indicators divided into four groups: broad features: (1) presence of established line-
forms, (2) ellipsis, especially verb-gapping, (3) unusual vocabulary, (4) conciseness, (5)
unusual word-order, (6) archaisms, (7) use of meter and rhythm, (8) regularity and
symmetry; structural features: (9) parallelism in various forms, (10) word pairs, (11)

\[1\] Kugel believes that "what is called biblical 'poetry' is a complex of heightening effects used
in combinations and intensities that vary widely from composition to composition even within a single
'genre'" (The Idea of Biblical Poetry, 94). In regard to parallelism, rhythm, and style, Petersen and
Richards remark "that all three of these features occur prominently in poetry, though in a more
intense, denser, or more compact way than they do in prose. Neither rhythm/meter, parallelism, nor
other poetic techniques can, in and of themselves, serve as a hallmark for identifying poetic
expression" (14).
chiastic patterns, (12) envelope figure, (13) break-up of stereotyped phrases, (14) repetition in various forms, (15) gender-matched parallelism, (16) tricolon; other features: (17) rhyme, (18) other sound patterns; and the negative feature of (19) absence/rarity of prose elements.¹ According to an introductory list by A. Berlin, the basic features of BH poetry are terseness, parallelism, rhythm, repetition and patterning, imagery, figures of speech, motifs and themes, the infrequent recourse to such particles as the definite article ה, the direct object marker נ, and the relative pronoun יְ, as well as BH poetry’s reluctance to establish explicit connections between lines (consecutive waw is rarely used).² P. D. Miller’s list of BH poetic indicators includes terseness, ellipsis (particularly of the so-called prose particles), balance or symmetry, parallelism, word pairs, line length, rhythm, figuration, the syntactic features of less predictable tense sequences and word order, parataxis, fronting, and the tendency for decontextualization.³ Though there are other lists, these three shall suffice.⁴ Poetic features then cover aspects of phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics. Having sketched the conceptual background for BH poetry, I can proceed to the poetic analysis of Dan 8:9-14.

¹Watson, Classical Hebrew Poetry, 46-54.


⁴For example, see the 12 particular characteristics of Hebrew verse listed by Gillingham (23-28). For an overview of the various answers given to the question “How does biblical poetry and prose differ?” see Kuntz, “Biblical Hebrew Poetry in Recent Research, Part II,” 44-47.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Poetic Analysis of Daniel 8:9-14

The first task is to identify any poetic features present in Dan 8:9-14. Table 20 shows the results of a rhythm count of Dan 8:9-14. The syllables, words, units, and accentual units per syntactic line are counted to examine if they could coincide anywhere.

The position that "Hebrew poetry possesses rhythm, not meter" (Petersen and Richards, 47), and therefore one should speak of rhythmic patterns instead of metrical patterns, is gaining more and more adherents (see Alonso Schökél, A Manual of Hebrew Poetics, 34-47). Note should especially be taken of Donald R. Vance (The Question of Meter in Biblical Hebrew Poetry, Studies in Bible and Early Christianity, no. 46 [Lewiston: Mellen, 2001]), who in an extensive and comparative study of the question of meter in the alphabetic acrostic poems in the Hebrew Bible comes to the conclusion that "the poetry of the Hebrew Bible does not contain meter," although it possesses rhythm (496-497).

The counting of pre-Masoretic syllables follows the system established by D. N. Freedman (Prolegomenon to The Forms of Hebrew Poetry, by George Buchanan Gray [N.p.: Ktav, 1915; reprint 1972], xxxii, xxxv [page citations are to the reprint edition]; cf. Howard, The Structure of Psalms 93-100, 28-30) and refined by J. P. Fokkelman (Major Poems of the Hebrew Bible: At the Interface of Prosody and Structural Analysis, vol. 2, 85 Psalms and Job 4-14, SSN, no. [41] [Assen: Van Gorcum, 2000], 13-17). The pre-Masoretic syllable count of Dan 8:9-14 takes the following into consideration: the masculine singular segholates are reduced to monosyllables (p j? in vs. 9a, 223 and "in' in vs. 9b, 2I2 and "Ip2 in vs. 11b, 2I2 and 2I2 in vs. 14b), and resolved diphthongs are counted as one syllable (D'EtoH in vs. 10a and D's b x  in vs. 14b). The syllable count includes the conjunctive waw at the beginning of each line, while sometimes such a waw is not counted (so Frank Moore Cross, Jr., and David Noel Freedman, Studies in Ancient Yahwistic Poetry, SBIDS, no. 21 [Missoula: Scholars, 1975], 126-127, and Stephen A. Geller, Parallelism in Early Biblical Poetry, HSM, no. 20 [Missoula: Scholars, 1979], 46). Since in Dan 8:9-14 the conjunction waw occurs regularly at the beginning of a clause, as either consecutive or conjunctive, except for the start of direct speech in vs. 13c and vs. 14b, the waw should be regarded as original. With regard to the possibility that vs. 11 is poetic it should be noted that according to O'Connor's system of analysis the biconsonantal preposition * 1 J? in vs. 11a does not count as a unit, whereas the two nouns 2IP and 2IP in vs. 11a count as two units, because the mqqf does not play a role in his analysis.

The counting of units follows O'Connor's syntactic approach to BH poetry: M. O'Connor, Hebrew Verse Structure (Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1980); reissued with the essay "The Contours of Biblical Hebrew Verse: An Afterword to Hebrew Verse Structure" in 1997; cf. William L. Holladay, Hebrew Verse Structure Revisited (I): Which Words 'Count'?' JBL 118 (1999): 19-32. Regarding the possibility that vs. 11 is poetic, it should be noted that according to O'Connor's system of analysis the biconsonantal preposition 2IP in vs. 11a does not count as a unit, whereas the two nouns 2IP and 2IP in vs. 11a count as two units, because the mqqf does not play a role in his analysis.

The method of counting stresses or accentual units that is used here is to assign one stress to every content word, regardless of length (cf. Howard, The Structure of Psalms 93-100, 31). Secondary accents are not counted as stress or metric accent, e.g., in w 2IP (vs. 11b), and two words joined by mqqf form a single tone unit, e.g., 2IP in vs. 11a receives only one stress.
with rhythms typical of poetic cola.\textsuperscript{1}

Table 20. Rhythm Count of Daniel 8:9-14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Syllables</th>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Accentual Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pre-MT (MT)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9a</td>
<td>16 (17)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9b</td>
<td>17 (19)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td>9 (10)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10b</td>
<td>15 (15)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10c</td>
<td>4 (4)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11a</td>
<td>8 (8)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11b</td>
<td>9 (9)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11c</td>
<td>8 (8)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12a</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12b</td>
<td>7 (7)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12c</td>
<td>4 (4)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12d</td>
<td>4 (4)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13a</td>
<td>11 (11)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13b</td>
<td>15 (15)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c</td>
<td>22 (24)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14a</td>
<td>5 (5)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b</td>
<td>10 (13)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14c</td>
<td>4 (5)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of all the verses and units of direct speech, only vs. 11 shows a rhythmic structure, its three lines forming a tricolon. However, if the syntactic unit of a clause is not considered to be the norm for a colon, the following alternative counts could be suggested for vss. 9a (divided after דַּגְּלוּ), 12c-d (taken together), 13c (divided after פָּה נִא).

\textsuperscript{1}The colon is a single line of poetry. As such, the terms "line" and "colon" are used interchangeably.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
and after מיה, and 14b (divided after טפב)\(^1\) (see table 21).

Table 21. Alternative Rhythm Count of Daniel 8:9-14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Syllables pre-MT (MT)</th>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Accentual Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9a1</td>
<td>7 (7)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9a2</td>
<td>9 (10)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9b</td>
<td>17 (19)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td>9 (10)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10b</td>
<td>15 (15)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10c</td>
<td>4 (4)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11a</td>
<td>8 (8)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11b</td>
<td>9 (9)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11c</td>
<td>8 (8)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12a</td>
<td>12 (13)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12b</td>
<td>7 (7)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12c-d</td>
<td>8 (8)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13a</td>
<td>11 (11)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13b</td>
<td>15 (15)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c1</td>
<td>6 (6)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c2</td>
<td>9 (10)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c3</td>
<td>7 (8)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14a</td>
<td>5 (5)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b1</td>
<td>3 (5)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b2</td>
<td>7 (8)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14c</td>
<td>4 (5)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

According to the alternative analysis not only vs. 11 shows rhythmic features but also vss. 13c, 14b.c, and vs. 12 (with an overlong vs. 12a) seem to have symmetrical

---

\(^1\)The suggestion to divide the syntactic lines in vss. 9a, 13c, and 14b at the indicated places is based on Masoretic accentuation (except for the first division in 13c which was placed syntactically; the accentuation divides after מיה and symmetrical considerations. The latter one is also the reason to take vs. 12c and 12d together.
features, all forming tricola. The major number of (accentual) units per line is then 3.

Verse 11 is particularly striking, presenting itself as a tricolon. First, the syllable count results in a symmetrical 8 + 9 + 8 pattern (syllables per word: 2.1.3.2 / 4.2.3 / 3.2.3). To speak of concentric regularity may stretch the minimal evidence provided by just one tricolon. It is, however, interesting to see that the length of the three lines in vs. 11 concurs exactly with the average length of cola in BH poetry, which is about 8 syllables. Second, the word and unit count (4 + 3 + 3) as well as the stress/accent count (3 + 3 + 3) is symmetrical, too. This again corresponds to the major BH poetic unit,

Interestingly, Lucas refers in passing to vs. 11 as “tricola [sic]” (Daniel, 217), but he does not explore this any further nor does he engage in any poetic analysis.

Asymmetry in syllables exists between lines that exhibit an imbalance of two or more syllables (Geller, Parallelism, 371-372). Daniel 8:11 can therefore be considered as symmetrical since the difference in the number of syllables per line is only one.

Already Freedman argued that the average BH colon consists of about 8 syllables. Howard observes a “normal” syllable count for the line, in the range of 7-8 syllables,” in Psalms 93-100 which establishes a pattern of roughly 8 syllables and 3 stresses (The Structure of Psalms 93-100, 31). A major study in this respect has been undertaken by Fokkelman. On the basis of full syllable counts for 85 psalms and Job 4-14, Fokkelman comes to the conclusion that the BH poets themselves did most assuredly count syllables (Major Poems of the Hebrew Bible, 2:383; and idem, Major Poems of the Hebrew Bible: At the Interface of Prosody and Structural Analysis, vol. 3, The Remaining 65 Psalms, SSN, no. [43] [Assen: Van Gorcum, 2003], 325-327; whereas earlier Freedman held that syllable count is merely descriptive of the phenomena [Freedman, prolegomenon to The Forms of Hebrew Poetry, xxxii]). Of the cola in all 150 Psalms, 65.1% are seven, eight, or nine syllables long, with eight being the central norm figure (Major Poems of the Hebrew Bible, 2:383 and 3:326 [cf. the matrix of frequency of colon lengths per Psalm in 3:412-416]; Reading Biblical Poetry, 47-49). Fokkelman therefore maintains that “the numbers 7-8-9 are . . . essential, and demonstrate that the colon is the fundamental building block of Hebrew prosody” (ibid., 47 [emphasis his]). A preliminary analysis of the book of Proverbs shows that the average number of syllables per colon is 8.019, which “confirms the honorary title rightly granted to the number 8: the central norm figure for the prosody in classical Hebrew poetry” (Major Poems of the Hebrew Bible, 3:16).

A schematic representation of the scansion indicating syllables (“o”) and stress (accents) of vs. 11 is the following:

11a  o o o o o o o
11b  o o o o o o o
11c  o o o o o o o.
word, or stress number per colon, which is 2 or 3. In comparison with other poetic passages in the book of Daniel, the stress pattern $3 + 3 + 3$ of Dan 8:11 is not unusual.\(^1\) In the poetic passage in the same chapter, that is, Dan 8:23-26, the predominant stress number per colon is 3.\(^2\) And third, the fact that Dan 8:11 is a tricolon in which each syntactic clause coincides with a poetic colon (vs. 11a, 11b, 11c) strengthens its poetic characteristic.\(^3\) The use of tricola is quite common in BH poetry, though bicola occur more often, certainly because of the extensive use of parallelism.\(^4\) Indeed, one of the poetic features listed by Watson and also by Gillingham is the use of tricola.\(^5\)

Furthermore the specific tricolon in Dan 8:11 is not exceptional since there are also other tricola of the accentual unit type $3 + 3 + 3$ in Daniel: in the Hebrew parts in 9:24c; 12:1a, 12:1b; and in the Aramaic part in 2:20, 22; 4:8, 9b, 21, 24b.\(^6\)

\(^1\)According to Bentzen, who offers an accent count for the poetic passages in Daniel, the number of accents per line that occurs most in Daniel is 3 (passim).

\(^2\)Bentzen presents the following number of accents for Dan 8:23-26: 23: $2 + 2, 3 + 2$; 24: $2 + 2, 2 + 2$; 25: $3 + 3, 2 + 3, 3 + 3$; 26: $3 + 3, 3 + 3$ (67). However, he deletes נבה of vs. 24 and counts ש Applying the method of alternation prosody, that is, stressed and unstressed syllables alternated regularly without regard for natural word stress, Segert observes that in the vision in 8:23-26 “the most frequent prosodic features are bicola with three accented syllables, alternating with unstressed syllables in each colon” (“Poetic Structures,” 267).

\(^3\)Segert notes that “the coincidence of prose units—cola and combinations of cola (= poetic verses)—with syntactic units is the most objective criterion of poetry and is the first test to be applied to a passage” (ibid., 273).

\(^4\)Of 2,695 verses in all the Psalms, Fokkelman identifies 346 as tricola (12.8%), 2,329 as bicola (86.4%), and 20 as monocola (0.7%) (Major Poems of the Hebrew Bible, 3:417-421; a slightly revised list of the one published in 2:522-525; the number of 2,795 verses in the Psalms given in Reading Biblical Poetry, 233 n. 4, is a mistake).

\(^5\)Watson, Classical Hebrew Poetry, 53; Gillingham, 27.

\(^6\)Bentzen, 23, 39, 73, 77.
In summary then, vs. 11 clearly has the poetic characteristic of rhythm. Verses 12, 13c, and 14b.c do not show such a clear rhythmic feature.

Poetic features also include devices involving sound. Possible sound devices can be detected in vs. 9b/10a, vs. 12b-d, vs. 14c, and clearly in vs. 11. The use of נְכֶלָה (vs. 9b) followed by the construct בָּשִׁיר (vs. 10a) after two intervening words could constitute a play of sound. The three clauses in vs. 12b-d—in fact, three successive words (יִרְאָה, הַנִּירֵי, and הַנִּירֵי)—end with the sound נ, which could be an intentional rhyme. The two words in vs. 14c, מַעְטַר, display a chiastic sound pattern that exists between their roots: מַעְטַר / נְעַטָּר.

Daniel 8:11 exhibits a number of clear instances of alliteration and assonance. In 11a.b.c the letter נ occurs five times at the beginning of a word (out of 10 words). In 11b.c the letter ה occurs three times at the beginning of a word (out of 6 words). The six words in 11b and 11c show an alliterative pattern of נ- and ה-sounds at their beginning: נ-נ-נ // ה-ה-ה. Some minor play on sounds that still create cohesion includes the following: The last vowel of the final two words in 11b (יִרְאָה and מַעְטַר) is a long /i/-sound (י), whereas the last vowel of the final two words in 11c (מַעְטַר and מַעְטַר) is the long /o/-sound (ו). In 11c each word contains a /k/-sound (כ and ק), which is then the dominant in-word sound. The last two words in 11c start with the similar double sound -

1The assonance/alliteration between יִרְאָה (vs. 9b) and בָּשִׁיר (vs. 10a) is observed by Hitzig, 131; Kranichfeld, 293; Zöckler, 175; Meinhold, "Daniel," 308; Prince, Daniel, 241; Goettsberger, 61; Stahl, Weltengagement, 173.
Also the sound combination of the first and second syllable in the last word in 11a (ד"ג) and in 11c (ד"ג, ד"ג) is alike. On the whole, the high density of sound patterns in vs. 11 suggests that the nature of the three lines of this verse is poetic rather than prose.

Another feature that places a text closer to the poetic end of the poetry-prose continuum is the tendency to omit the definite article -ֹ (i.e., the consonantal article, not the vowel article under an inseparable preposition), the relative pronoun ר'ג, and the particle רנ, which have been called the “prose particles” by Andersen and Forbes. Sometimes the consecutive waw is included. Of these the most prosaic particle is רנ, whereas the article is relatively the least prosaic, while ר'ג comes in between. However, Segert finds these particles “significantly represented in postexilic poetry” and thus suggests that they “cannot serve as criteria to distinguish it [BH poetry] from prose.” The best way to determine whether the prose particles have any value in determining the

---

1It is of course clear that ו and פ need to be distinguished since they belong to different phonetic groups, ו being a palatal and פ being a velar. Nevertheless, the similarity of the sound pattern with the previous letter ו could indicate a play on sound.


3See also Freedman and Geoghegan, 231-232.

4Segert, “Poetic Structures,” 265, 272. Segert’s questioning of the applicability of prose particle counts for late Biblical Hebrew seems to be supported by the fact that, according to Andersen and Forbes (“Prose Particle’ Counts,” 177, 179), Dan 11 receives a score of 7.692% (47 out of 611 words are prose particles), which would make that chapter squarely poetic (close to some Psalms and to poetic chapters in prophetic books), which, however, is not the case when other poetic features are considered.
prosaic or poetic character of Dan 8:9-14 is to analyze the text accordingly.¹

There is no occurrence of the direct object marker בְּ in Dan 8:9-14, though there are two direct objects in vss. 11b (דְּרֵית) and 12b (רָדַע).² A short analysis of the direct objects in Dan 8 proves to be interesting. Direct objects occur thirteen times in Dan 8. Seven times they are preceded by the object marker בְּ (vss. 4, 7 [2x], 15, 16, 19, 27), all in prose language. Six times the direct object stands without the object marker בְּ: four times clearly in poetry (vss. 24, 25 [2x], 26), and then once in vs. 11b and once in vs. 12b. Before arguing that there is an indication of poetry here, it is important to know that whenever בְּ is the direct object it is never preceded by the object marker, either in poetry or in prose.³ The omission of בְּ before יִרְדָע in Dan 8:12b is therefore not unusual and has no bearing at all on identifying the style of language. Likewise, it can be argued that the direct object יִרְדָע in the apparently prose Dan 11:31 is not preceded by בְּ.

¹Andersen and Forbes counted the three prose particles—definite article, relative pronoun, and direct object marker—for every chapter of the Hebrew Bible and concluded that in general, chapters with a score of less than 5% for these particles are wisdom, lyrical poetry, and oracular prophecy, most chapters with a score of 5-10% are poetic, chapters with a score of 10-20% are mixed, and chapters above 20% are prose. For Dan 8 they counted 6 relative pronouns, 57 articles, 7 direct object markers out of 383 words. The score of the three particles is then 18.277% which would suggest that Dan 8 is mixed in character, but closer to prose than to poetry (ibid., 177). If the same count is limited to Dan 8:9-14 the results are 14 articles (no relative pronouns or direct object markers) out of 75 words, that is, a score of 18.667% (for Dan 8:11-14 only the score is 14.286%, that is, 7 of 49 words). For the poetic sections of the Hebrew parts of Daniel such a prose particle count results in a score of 7.692% for 8:23-26 (4 out of 52 words), 7.292% for 9:24-27 (7 out of 96 words), and 22% for 12:1-3 (11 out of 50 words).

²These two cases should be added to Hoftijzer’s statistical analysis of objective complements without בְּ in Dan 8. J. Hoftijzer, “Remarks Concerning the Use of the Particle בְּ in Classical Hebrew,” in Hebrew: 1940-1965, ed. P.A.H. de Boer, OtSt, no. 14 (Leiden: Brill, 1965), 78.

³Gen 24:27, 49; 32:11 (as direct object of the following relative clause); 47:29; Josh 2:14; 2 Sam 2:6; Ezek 18:9; Mic 7:20; Zech 8:16 (2x), 19; Pss 30:10; 40:11; 51:8; 57:4; 61:8; 146:6; Neh 9:33; 2 Chr 31:20.
either, and so the absence of קָנָה before דַּעְתִּיְךָ in Dan 8:11b does not necessarily indicate poetry.¹

The relative pronoun כַּשֶּׁם does not occur in Dan 8:9-14. However, there is no place where it has been omitted and so its absence cannot function as an indicator of poetry.

The definite article occurs at expected places in the text. There are only three instances where one could argue for an omission of the article. However, they can be interpreted on grounds other than identification as poetic feature. In the first case, the subject אֶבְרִי in vs. 12a has no article, though a host was mentioned before. As put forth in the syntactic analysis, the indefiniteness of the host in vs. 12a implies that this host is different from the host in vss. 10 and 11a. In the second case, the indefiniteness of אֶבְרִי (vs. 12b) does not pose any problem since this noun is frequently indefinite in the Hebrew Bible. And in the third case, the indefiniteness of כַּשֶּׁם points to the encompassing dimension of the term. Thus, the lack of the definite article with these words does not constitute a poetic feature, although the possibility of a poetic indication cannot be ruled out per se.

In addition to the so-called “prose particles,” the directional ר-ending has been identified as a prose indicator by Hoftijzer. He observes that in Dan 8 the directional ר occurs seven times (with מַמֵּר “sea,” פַּסְלִי “north,” and נְוֵב “south” in 8:4, and with מַמַּר in

¹Hoftijzer observes that in the book of Daniel the density of קָנָה in chaps. 1:1-2:4a, 8, and 10 is in agreement with the findings in narrative material and in chaps. 9, 11, and 12 is similar to that of poetic material (“Particle ‘ו,” 79). In general, Hoftijzer is correct, but he fails to distinguish between different parts within a chapter, for example, between the poetic Dan 8:23-26 and the rest of chap. 8.
"earth" in 8:7, 10, 12, 18), whereas there are no zero-instances. Such a use of directional

nis completely in agreement with what is found in prose texts and in contradiction with
the poetic material."1 Again, vss. 11, 13, and 14 show no tendency since they contain
neither a directional n nor a zero-instance. Thus, the absence of prose particles cannot be
regarded as an indicator of prose language in verse 11.

However, there is another prose indicator. Verbal forms with waw consecutive

(wayyiqtol and wqatal) can function as indicators of the style of language. All ninety-

eight occurrences of the wayyiqtol in the Hebrew parts of Daniel are in prose texts. There

is no single occurrence of a wayyiqtol in the poetic parts. The wayyiqtol can therefore be

regarded as an unambiguous indicator of prose material. For Dan 8:9-14 this means that

the clauses in vss. 9, 10, 13a.b, and 14a are clearly prose. The presence of three

wayyiqtol forms in the three clauses in vs. 10 and their absence in the three clauses in vs.

11 is one of the most decisive factors to distinguish the style in vs. 10, which is narrative

prose, from the more elevated style in vs. 11. The wqatal form occurs seventy-seven
times in the Hebrew parts of Daniel, with the exception of two cases (8:4), always in
direct speech. Since the syntax of direct speech often reflects a certain correspondence
with poetry, it is not surprising that wqatal forms do occur in poetic sections (8:24 [4x],
25; 9:25, 27; 12:1). Hence, the wqatal forms in 8:12c.d and 14c do not preclude a poetic
style of these clauses.

Table 22 displays the number of instances of “nonpoetic” particles and of

1J. Hoftijzer, A Search for Method: A Study in the Syntactic Use of the H-locale in Classical
wayyiqtol and w’qatal forms in the different verses of 8:9-14, in the poetic parts of 8:23-26, 9:24-27, and 12:1-3, and in the Hebrew parts of Daniel (1:1–2:4a; 8–12). From such a statistical comparison it is clear that vss. 9, 10, 13a.b, and 14a are certainly prose, whereas vss. 11, 12, 13c, and 14b.c exhibit only a minimal number of prose particles. These verses could be in poetic style. In the end, it appears that Segert’s observation that prose particles do not help in identifying poetry or prose in the book of Daniel has to be qualified. It is true that the relative absence of prose particles in Daniel does not clearly identify a poetic section. However, the relative density of prose particles still indicates the prose character of a text.

Table 22. Nonpoetic Particle and wayyiqtol/w’qatal Count in the Hebrew Parts of Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are two words in Dan 8:9-14 that are used in the Hebrew Bible predominantly in poetry. The first is יִשְׁבְּעָ (Dan 8:11c) that occurs elsewhere eight times in poetry (Exod 15:17, 1 Kgs 8:13=2 Chr 6:2; Pss 33:14; 89:15; 97:2; 104:5, Isa 18:4)
and eight times in prose (1 Kgs 8:39, 43, 49=2 Chr 6:30, 6:33, 6:39; Isa 4:5; Ezra 2:68). If the eight references in the parallel texts of 1 Kgs 8 and 2 Chr 6 are only counted as four, it is understandable why for Driver וַיִּֽעַמֵּשׁ is a “chiefly poetical” word. The second word is the noun יִֽשְׁרָאֵל (Dan 8:13c), which is elsewhere used five times in poetry (Isa 5:5; 7:25; 10:6; 28:18; Mic 7:10) and only once in prose (Ezek 34:19). One should be careful not to deduce too much from these two words. Yet, they do provide additional support for the more poetic nature of vss. 11c and 13c.

Clear instances of syntactic or semantic parallelism, that is, “repetition of similar or related semantic content or grammatical structure in adjacent lines or verses,” are not found in Dan 8:9-14. At the most, vs. 11b and 11c could work on Kugel’s “A, what’s more, B” pattern. Since parallelism is one of the dominant features of biblical poetry, its relative absence in Dan 8:9-14 appears to be a major weakness of the suggestion that Dan 8:11 may be poetic. However, as Segert pointed out, in contrast to preexilic prosody “syntactic and semantic cohesion, expressed most obviously by parallelism, is considerably weakened in postexilic poetry,” and thus becomes a decreasing factor in identifying poetic language.

---

1 Of the more recent commentators only John D. W. Watts considers Isa 4:2-6 to be poetry (Isaiah 1-33, WBC, vol. 24 [Waco: Word, 1985], 47-49).

2 Driver, Daniel, 117; followed by Aalders, Daniël (1962), 176.

3 One is tempted to add the nominal use of the absolute and indeterminate ויֲִיָֽהִ בֵּיה (Dan 8:13c, 14c) since such a form occurs elsewhere only in Ps 134:2. However, a single instance of comparison cannot provide enough evidence to decide whether ויֲִיָֽהִ בֵּיה reflects poetic usage or not.


5 Segert, “Poetic Structures,” 263.
Variation in word order may be typical for poetry. Again, vs. 11 attracts attention. The verb occurs at the end in vs. 11a, in the middle in vs. 11b, and in clause-initial position in vs. 11c. Thus, the verb moves from the third position (vs. 11a), to the second (vs. 11b), and then to the first position (vs. 11c). Hence, the verb position forms a nice pattern if vs. 11 is a tricolon.

Further below, I suggest that the sudden occurrence of masculine gender of the verbs in 11a and 11b, which appear to have the feminine horn as the subject, could serve as another indicator for a switch from prose to more elevated language. The masculine gender in vs. 11 would then corresponds to the (grammatically correct) masculine gender in the poetic text in vss. 23-26.

Finally, the position of vs. 11 at the end of the vision report suggests by analogy to the position of the other poetic parts in the second half of Daniel, that 8:11 could be of poetic nature. Shifts from prose to poetry are attested at the high points of the visions and epiphanies in Dan 7-12. In BA such a phenomenon appears in the vision of 7:2-14 (7:9-10, 13-14) and its angelic interpretation (7:23-27). In BH one finds climactic poetry at the end of the angelic interpretation in chap. 8 (8:23-26), and at the end of the angelic discourses in chap. 9 (9:24-27) and in chaps. 11 and 12 (12:1-3). Since 8:11 is the conclusion of the vision report, the poetic character of this verse, perhaps even of the following audition in vss. 12-14, fits into such a prose-poetry pattern.2


2In like manner, Segert argues in regard to Dan 12:1-3: "Though there are relatively few poetic features in 12:1-3... the function of this passage as the conclusion of the vision in chaps. 10-11 supports its characterization as poetry" ("Poetic Structures," 271).
To summarize, in a poetry-prose continuum most of the clauses in Dan 8:9-14 range closer to the prose end. However, vs. 11 shows a combination of several poetic features that, when taken together, make the conclusion almost inevitable that this verse is intentionally composed in poetic-style language. The correspondence of syntactic units with colon length creates a tricolon with the following poetic features: (1) rhythm as exhibited in a symmetrical syllable, word, unit, and accent count; (2) sound devices by assonance and alliteration with the letters mem and he; (3) absence of prose particles and absence of wayyiqtol or qatal forms; (4) use of the chiefly poetic word הָיָה; (5) pattern of positioning the verb differently in all three lines; (6) masculine gender of the verbs in 11a and 11b matching the masculine gender of verbs in the poetic interpretation in 8:23-26; and (7) position of vs. 11 at the end and climax of the vision report in conformity with the other poetic parts in Dan 7-12 that are located at the end of a vision report (Dan 7:9-10, 13-14) or interpretation (8:23-26; 9:24-27; 12:1-3). Other parts in the passage (vs. 12, 13c, and 14b-c) also show some poetic features, but they are too few to allow for any intelligent decision whether these parts are poetic or prosaic. Maybe these verses should be placed somewhere in the middle of the poetry-prose continuum.

The occurrence of a poetic inset in Dan 8:11, as well as its shortness, comprising only one verse or three lines, should not be surprising. Poetic insets in prose are not an

---

1Verse 12 shows prosodic regularity, with the exception of vs. 12a, correspondence of syntactic units with colon length creating a tricolon, assonance in endings, and a relative absence of prose particles. Verse 13c exhibits prosodic regularity and a relative absence of prose particles. And vs. 14b.c shows prosodic regularity, assonance, and a total absence of prose particles.
unusual phenomenon, and they can be very short.\textsuperscript{1} Naturally, the shorter a poetic inset is, the more important it becomes that its poetic features can be clearly detected, as is the case for Dan 8:11.\textsuperscript{2} The question that remains to be answered concerns the reason and function of the poetic style in vs. 11.

**Function of Poetic Style in Daniel 8:11**

In the book of Daniel one can find a number of poetic insets.\textsuperscript{3} In the stories in Dan 1–6 they are interspersed throughout narrations (2:20-23; 3:31-33; 4:31b-32; 6:26/27-28) and vision reports (4:7b-9, 11-13/14a). In the visions in Dan 7–12 they are placed in vision reports (7:9-10, 13-14) and in angelic interpretations (7:23-27; 8:23-26; 9:24-27; 12:1-3). In order to determine the function of poetic language in 8:11, it is necessary to summarize the purpose and function of the other poetic parts in Daniel.

Poetry in Dan 1–6 highlights a narrative climax.\textsuperscript{4} It is furthermore “a focusing technique to point out the main themes of the narrative.”\textsuperscript{5} The poetic parts have a

\textsuperscript{1}Fokkelman observes that “the prose writers like to vary their prose with poetry at well-chosen moments. We regularly come upon a fragment of poetic art, maybe just a single verse or strophe, and sometimes even poetry of a sizable length is inserted” (Reading Biblical Narrative, 175).

\textsuperscript{2}If in Dan 8 the distinction between prose in vs. 10 and poetry in vs. 11 seems for some not that obvious, a further remark by Fokkelman could be helpful: “It also regularly happens that the language used by the writer condenses during narration, somehow becomes more compact, and suddenly proves capable of being scanned” (ibid., 175).

\textsuperscript{3}Koch speaks of “poetic interspersions” (poetische Einsprengsel) and even claims that “it belongs apparently to the apocalyptic genre that hymnic parts in elevated language are interspersed at significant places” (Das Buch Daniel, 81).

\textsuperscript{4}Cf. ibid. After analyzing the poems in Dan 2:20-23 and 6:27-28, Prinsloo concludes that “the author of the narrative uses poetry exactly at the crucial stages in his story, either to slow the pace or underline the message, but always to catch the attention” (107).

\textsuperscript{5}Venter, 1009.
theocentric perspective, emphasizing God’s power and control. “In Daniel then, poetry is used intermittently to make explicit the book’s theological message.”

The function of the poetic sections in the visionary part of Daniel does not seem to be different from their function in the stories. The same heightening effect and theological import of the poetic insets is evident in the visions of Dan 7–12. Segert claims that “all three allegedly poetic passages in the second part of the book of Daniel (8:23-26, 9:24-27, and 12:1-3) have the same function: they serve as the climax of the vision. In this position they attract attention by their effective, compact structuring.” Not only do the poetic insets in Daniel mark the climax of a symbolic or epiphany vision, they also “emphasize the most relevant messages in a vision,” specifically the theme of God’s control and reign, involving divine intervention and judgment (see table 23).

At first sight, the poetic character of Dan 8:11 seems to break the theocentric pattern of the poetic passages in Daniel. In spite of the fact that vs. 11 exhibits poetic features it does not mention God’s power and control. Rather, on the contrary, this verse recounts the activities of the horn demonstrating its power and control. However, exactly herein could lie the reason for the use of elevated language in vs. 11. The message is underscored by its form. The horn presumptuously attributes divine prerogatives to itself.

---


2Segert, “Poetic Structures,” 265.

3So Segert (ibid., 274), without explicating what the most relevant messages in the different visions are.
and acts like a god. It brings heaven on earth. Such a message is pointedly draped in poetic style that is otherwise used for emphasizing God's supremacy and that in the context of 8:9-11 effectively sharpens the horn’s attack on God and what belongs to him.

Table 23. Poetic Insets in the Visions and Angelic Interpretations in Daniel 7–12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Poetic Text</th>
<th>7:9-10</th>
<th>7:23-27</th>
<th>8:11 (12, 13c, 14bc?)</th>
<th>8:23-26</th>
<th>9:24-27</th>
<th>12:1-3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Climax of Vision</td>
<td>Vision</td>
<td>Angelic interpretation</td>
<td>Vision (8:3-11 (3-14))</td>
<td>Angelic interpretation</td>
<td>Angelic discourse</td>
<td>Angelic discourse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antagonistic Power (AP)</td>
<td>[Horn, 7:8, 11]</td>
<td>Fourth beast</td>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>King</td>
<td>Desolator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ten kings</td>
<td></td>
<td>Desolator</td>
<td>[North King, 11:40-45]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affected Personage</td>
<td>Peoples, nations, and languages</td>
<td>Holy ones of the Most High</td>
<td>[Host of heaven, 8:10]</td>
<td>People of the holy ones</td>
<td>Your people</td>
<td>Your people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celestial Personage</td>
<td>Ancient of days Son of man</td>
<td>Most High</td>
<td>Commander of the host</td>
<td>Prince of princes</td>
<td>Anointed one</td>
<td>Michael</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final Activity</td>
<td>Divine</td>
<td>Divine</td>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>Divine</td>
<td>Divine</td>
<td>Divine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1In 9:24-27 there is, of course, more divine activity mentioned than only divine judgment, but it is clear that all the activities are in favor of God’s people.
In the case that vss. 12, 13a, and 14b-c are considered to be more poetic than prose—a possible option, yet difficult to prove (see above)—the element of divine intervention and judgment is present. The passage in Dan 8:11-14 would then fit into the theocentric pattern of Danielic poetry and in theme follows closely the poetic passages in 8:23-26 and 7:23-27.

The function of poetry in 8:11 can now be defined: (1) It indicates the climax of the vision in Dan 8; (2) catches attention, (3) heightens the tension in describing the ultimate madness of the horn, and (4) conveys a strong substantial, even theological statement: the horn exalts itself to a divine level and attempts to usurp the role of God. The thrust of the vision report, as underlined by its climax in elevated language, is to present the presumptuous usurpation of divine power and control.

Conclusion

In summary, the three lines in 8:11 should be regarded as very short, embedded poetry in the prose narrative of the vision report. From a structural perspective, vs. 11 forms the climax of the vision report. Set at such a crucial location, this verse highlights the climactic act of the horn’s presumptuousness when it exalts itself to the position of the commander of the host assaulting his (high) priestly role and assuming divine status itself. The writer accentuates and charges this climax by means of poetic devices.

Gender

Gender Difficulties

The passage in Dan 8:9-12 is peculiar for its use of gender. In no other passage in
the book of Daniel is there such a density of apparent cases of gender incongruence and
shifts of verbal gender. No less than five gender-related difficulties appear in these verses
(there are none in vss. 13-14). In sequence of their occurrence these are: First, in vs. 9a
the masculine pronominal suffix in □□□ refers to a feminine antecedent, independent of
whether the suffix refers to the four winds or to the four horns since both are feminine in
gender. Second, in vs. 9a the feminine subject □□□□□ “one horn” takes a masculine
verb □□□. Third, in vs. 11, an unexpected transition to masculine verb forms occurs.
Whereas vs. 10 exhibits feminine verbs in congruence with the feminine subject “horn,”
the verb □□□□□□ in vs. 11a is suddenly masculine without any apparent change of subject.
The verbs in the following two clauses continue the masculine gender (vs. 11b-c). Of
course, □□□□□□ in vs. 11c, being a passive, has the regular gender in congruence with the
masculine subject □□□□□□□. Fourth, in vs. 12 seemingly another transition occurs in verbal
gender since feminine verbs are used without reintroducing the horn as subject. Fifth, in
vs. 12a the usually masculine □□□□□ is the grammatical subject of the feminine verb □□□□□.

So far, commentators have provided some syntactic explanations for the
unexpected gender in vs. 9a, but it has been difficult to provide convincing explanations
for the gender shifts in vs. 11a (masculine verb) and in vs. 12a (feminine verb). It is then
no wonder that Dan 8:11-12 in particular has often been regarded as a convoluted

passage.\footnote{For example, after pointing out that there are three difficulties in 8:11-12, all related to
gender (our difficulties 3, 4, and 5), Prince concludes that the text is obviously corrupt and "if the
Masoretic text of this passage be allowed to remain unaltered, a satisfactory translation is impossible"
("On Daniel viii. 11, 12," 203-204).} However, the syntactic analysis of these verses has shown that four of the

apparent difficulties can be explained satisfactorily. Let us recapitulate the essential points.

With regard to the first difficulty, the masculine plural pronominal suffix in בְּבִנָּו
(vs. 9a) obviously replaces the feminine form, and such a replacement has to be regarded as grammatically possible. This phenomenon not only occurs frequently in the Hebrew Bible, but also in the book of Daniel itself. The masculine plural suffix appears instead of the feminine form once more beside Dan 8:9a in the Hebrew (Dan 1:5) and in five places in the Aramaic (Dan 2:33, 41, 44; 7:8, 19). In fact, because of these replacements it happens that the feminine plural pronominal suffix is never used in Daniel, either in the Hebrew or in the Aramaic.

With regard to the second difficulty, the gender incongruence between subject and verb in vs. 9a can be explained as a case where the verbal inflection is omitted when the verb precedes the subject. After the subject has been introduced (the feminine יְהוֹ), the verbal gender in vs. 9b is feminine, as expected.

With regard to the fourth and fifth difficulties, אֲנוּס can have the feminine gender, though extremely rarely (elsewhere only in Isa 40:2), and thus is the grammatical subject of the feminine בְּבִנְו. If the gender of אֲנוּס in Dan 8:12a is indeed feminine, then the feminine verb forms in the four clauses of vs. 12 all have this host as subject. There is no sudden recurrence of feminine forms with the unmentioned horn as subject,¹ especially in light of the fact that the last gender attributed to the horn was the masculine in vs. 11a and

¹For Ratner, Dan 8:8, 12 in comparison with vss. 9-11 exhibits “ambiguity caused by multiple referents” (124.) Unfortunately, Ratner does not elaborate which multiple referents occur in the text and how an appropriate referent selection should be carried out.
11b and that meanwhile a new grammatical subject has been introduced in vs. 12a.

**Masculine Verbal Gender in Daniel 8:11**

The only gender shift that remains to be explained is the third difficulty, that is, the sudden occurrence of masculine verb forms in vs. 11a and 11b that appear to have the feminine horn as the subject. Several proposals have been made to account for the shift from feminine verbs in vs. 10 to masculine verbs in vs. 11. It is obvious that some of these suggestions involve also the other gender-related difficulties in vss. 9-12, and yet, their focus is on vs. 11.

First, in regard to vs. 11, the use of masculine verb forms instead of the feminine has been explained simply by the "tendency to ignore the feminine." Such an explanation cannot satisfy for the obvious reason that the verbs in the four clauses prior to vs. 11a have been used in the correct feminine gender. Why would the "tendency to ignore the feminine" occur only in vs. 11?

Second, Buschhaus proposes that the he-goat is the subject of the masculine gender in vss. 9a and 11a. This suggestion is far from convincing. For one, Buschhaus needs to revocalize נַעֲשֵׂה into Hiphil imperfect נַעֲשֵׂה, which does not really fit the syntax or the context. More importantly, to take the he-goat as the agent of the magnification to the commander of the host in vs. 11a would disrupt the flow of the increasing magnification of the horn in the previous clauses and thus would destroy the literary magnification

---

1 So Aalders, Daniël (1962), 175, who in support of his explanation cites this general grammatical observation by Joüon (cf. Joüon and Muraoka, 552 [§150b]).

2 Buschhaus, 28.
pattern with the keyword הַגָּן that is applied to the ram, the he-goat, and now to the horn.

It is also clear that the last occurrence of the he-goat in vs. 8a lies too far back to be understood as the subject in vs. 11a without mentioning the he-goat again.

Third, Slonim suggests as a principle that irregular gender is used intentionally to heighten the reader’s attention and to mark specific passages as climax.\(^1\) Dan 8:9a with its masculine verb is among the texts that he lists,\(^2\) but according to his principle vss. 11 and 12 could also be included. However, Slonim overstates his case because his explanation cannot account for all passages in which gender disagreement occurs. The best advice is to treat each and every passage separately on its own terms.\(^3\) Unless a passage is marked as particularly important or as climax by some other features, one should be extremely careful to propose that an irregular gender in the same text is used to attract the reader’s attention to it.

Fourth, the explanation of the irregular gender in Dan 8:11 that has received the widest scholarly support is the suggestion that the masculine gender of the verbs would

\(^1\) Slonim, “Masculine Predicates,” 297-302. Slonim regards in general the deliberate use of irregular gender “to attract the reader’s attention to an aspect of the scriptural text” (297), “to force the reader to notice hidden meanings . . . by shocking him through anomalous constructions” (302), to increase the impressiveness (302), and in the case that both genders in two or more predicates refer to the same feminine noun “this irregularity served to mark a crescendo, a climax” (299, emphasis his). Slonim holds the same view of deliberate gender incongruence for the sake of heightened attention in regard to the use of masculine pronominal suffixes with reference to feminine nouns, as is exemplified in Dan 8:9a by הַגָּן. Such a use of masculine suffixes instead of the feminine forms is deliberate and serves the purpose “to attract the attention of the reader and to indicate elusive shades of meaning” (idem, “The Substitution of the Masculine,” 401) and “to force the reader, through the shock of ungrammatical endings, to ponder some hidden meaning of the text” (idem, “The Deliberate Substitution of the Masculine,” 158).

\(^2\) Slonim, “Masculine Predicates,” 300.

\(^3\) So Ratner (150) in his critique of Slonim.
refer to the masculine reality behind the feminine symbol used in the text. In other words, the author drops the symbolic speech about the horn, which is feminine in gender, and allows a glimpse of the concrete reality behind the horn symbol. “The king himself, too, becomes momentarily visible in v 11a.” The use of the masculine verbs in vs. 11 would then be in accordance with the use of masculine verbs in the angelic interpretation in vss. 23-25, where the hom symbol is deciphered as “king,” which is masculine in gender, and, of course, masculine verb forms are used to describe the activities of that king. Bevan rejects this explanation because “in the second half of vs. 12 the feminine gender reappears, although the horn has not again been mentioned.” This argument should not be overlooked by those who hold that the hom is the subject in vs. 12b-d. However, Bevan’s objection cannot be maintained if it is realized that the subject in the four clauses of vs. 12 is understood to be the host (vs. 12a), and that vs. 12 reports the

---

1The explanation of the irregular masculine gender as referring to the reality behind the symbol is also known as constructio ad sensum. The following scholars believe that the masculine gender in vs. 11 is constructed ad sensum (those scholars who apply such an interpretation both to the masculine pronominal suffix and the masculine verb in vs. 9a are marked by an asterisk): *Rosenmuller, 258, 261; von Lengerke, 379; *Maurer, 142, 143; *Kranichfeld, 292, 294; *Zöckler, 175, 176; Kamphausen, 33; Moore, “Daniel viii. 9-14,” 195; König 3:166 (§249e); Montgomery, 335; Hubert Junker, Untersuchungen über literarische und exegetische Probleme des Buches Daniel (Bonn: Hanstein, 1932), 70; Obbink, 109; Lattey, 85; Bentzen, 56; Nötscher, Daniel, 43; Plöger, Daniel, 122; Delcor, 174; Lebram, “König Antiochus,” 768 (cf. idem, Daniel, 93, 95), for whom the change of gender also indicates that vss. 11-12a constitute an interpolation; Hasselberger, 17, 98; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 159; Süring, 415; Maier, 305 n. 107; Niditch, 219-220 (as possibility); Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 86 (cf. idem, Daniel [1993], 328); Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 401; Goldingay, Daniel, 210; Gese, 408 n. 26; Lust, “Cult and Sacrifice in Daniel,” 290; *Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 5; *Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 171; Lucas, Daniel, 206; Beyerle, 31 n. 29. There are also commentators who use such an interpretation explicitly only for vs. 9a, but do not mention it with vs. 11: Hävernick, 267; Kliefoth, 251, 268-269 (for him the gender shift indicates a shift from vision to prediction); Keil, 294; Leupold, 344.


3Bevan, 132.
words of the holy one mentioned in vs. 13a.

A fifth suggestion is similar to the previous one insofar as the explanation for the irregular gender is sought in the realm of the reality to which the symbolic language refers. Hasel, who also believes that vs. 11 could be constructed *ad sensum*, proposes that the "change in gender may reflect change in the phases of the two entities which the metaphor-symbol represents."\(^1\) As a historicist interpreter, Hasel refers here to the two phases of Rome: the political-pagan phase as described in vss. 9-10 and the religious-papal phase as described in vss. 11-12. The problematic aspect of this interpretation is that there is an apparent inconsistency in the use of verbal gender. For if the change in vs. 11a indicates a different phase of the symbolic reality, it is difficult to explain why the verb in vs. 11b is still in masculine gender but the verbs in vs. 12, which for Hasel have the horn as subject, revert to the feminine gender.

Finally, Erbes and Petersen interpret the different genders as indicators of weakness and greatness of the subject. In explaining the gender shift from vs. 10 to 11 and from vs. 11 to 12, Petersen believes:

The most simple solution may be found in the phenomenon of syntactical gender shift in accordance with the masculine gender as indicating strength, the feminine gender expressing weakness, as suggested to me in class by Johann Erbes; see also the grammar by Nyberg (§ 79e, 231). It fits perfectly with the context in Dan 8:9-12 and explains the gender shifts of these verses. When growing great (or acting greatly, understanding the *hifil* adverbially), the horn becomes masculine; when the host of God is given over, the feminine gender is used.\(^2\)

Yet, what Nyberg avers by his examples is that a word can have masculine gender in one

---

1 Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 401.

2 Petersen, 205 n. 5. Erbes confirmed his view in personal communication.
text, to express something “big, mighty, strong, and the like,” and feminine gender in
another text, to express something “little, weak, dependent, contemptible, and the like.”1
Nyberg’s examples do not illustrate that such a gender shift can occur within a specific

text unit in regard to the same referent, as Erbes and Petersen suggest for Dan 8:9-12. If
their suggestion of a qualitative value of gender in relation to strength is correct, one
would expect that at least the immediate neighboring clauses would be compatible with
such a concept. However, the fact that in vss. 9b, 10a.b.c, 12b.c.d the feminine gender is
used while describing powerful activities of the horn and its host precludes the idea that
gender expresses a quality of strength. In these clauses the feminine gender certainly
does not signify weakness.

In summary, two of the previously suggested ideas could serve as possible
explanations for the irregular masculine gender of the verbs in Dan 8:11a and 11b. The
masculine gender could refer to the reality behind the symbolic horn. At the same time
the irregular gender may heighten the attention of the reader to what the text in vs. 11
says. An interplay of these two factors is very likely. However, more can be said
regarding gender.

**Gender as Stylistic Device**

It is striking that the verbal gender shifts so often in such a small passage. Not
denying the syntactic intricacies of the various gender-related issues, the number of
gender incongruities and gender shifts leads to the suspicion that in Dan 8:9-12 the

---

1For example, Yhwh riding on a אֲרוֹם “swift cloud” [m.] in Isa 19:1 and רַעַמ עֹלֶם “little
cloud” [fem.] in 1 Kgs 18:44 (Nyberg, 231 [§79e]).
gender could be used intentionally for stylistic or literary purposes. In fact, the sophisticated use of grammatical gender, in particular the interplay of opposite genders, can be an efficient means to achieve literary coherence and to create structure in a passage.¹ Thus, I propose that the gender in 8:9-12 is used stylistically, in addition to and not contrary to the syntactic explanations for the gender in vss. 9 and 12 and the two possible factors for the masculine gender in vs. 11 identified above. The author appears to have consciously “played” with the opposition between masculine and feminine gender. There is a gender balance in vss. 9-11 in that the different verbal genders match each other: one masculine verb form followed by a feminine one in vs. 9 and three feminine verb forms in vs. 10 followed by three masculine forms in vs 11.²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>9a</th>
<th>m.</th>
<th></th>
<th>fem.</th>
<th>9b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10b</td>
<td>fem.</td>
<td></td>
<td>m.</td>
<td></td>
<td>11b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10c</td>
<td>fem.</td>
<td></td>
<td>m.</td>
<td></td>
<td>11c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The arrangement of opposite gender of verbal forms creates a coherence in vss. 9-11. Verse 12 is remarkably set off because all four verbal forms are feminine. This may be additional support for the view that vs. 12 is not part of the vision proper but in fact belongs to the audition.

There is still more to consider. The discrepancy between verb and subject in vs.

---

¹Ratner affirms that there is an intentional use of gender and that it may be regarded as a “stylistic device” (136). He observes the possibility of "playing" with the opposition between masculine and feminine in Biblical Hebrew (151), but he does not state that Dan 8:9-12 exhibits the use of gender as stylistic feature.

²The gender balance is also noted by Delcor (174).
9a could very well be intentional serving as an additional pointer to the importance of the new subject, that is, the horn, which from now on takes center stage in the vision. The introduction of the new agent is highlighted by the strange gender of the verb. The same function of highlighting a new agent seems to be intended in vs. 12a, where a different "host" from the previous host of heaven is introduced as the new agent and is combined with a feminine verb, although הַיָּלִים is usually masculine. The literary effect of introducing the horn and the host by the same stylistic feature of unusual verb gender is that the correspondence on a stylistic level signifies association on an interpretative level. One may even hypothesize that the feminine gender itself that is used for הַיָּלִים in vs. 12a aligns that host ingeniously with the horn, which is feminine in gender.  

Also, the unusual feminine gender of הַיָּלִים in vs. 12a could be occasioned by the intention to refer here to a different host from the one mentioned in vss. 10-11. Though there is no gender identification for the host of heaven, readers may have regarded הַיָּלִים as masculine until they would be surprised by a הַיָּלִים with feminine gender in vs. 12a. In summary, the possible reasons why הַיָּלִים in vs. 12a is marked as feminine are (1) to differentiate it rhetorically from the הַיָּלִים mentioned in vss. 10 and 11 and (2) to align it in gender with the horn so that it becomes clear that this host belongs to the horn.

A further observation regarding gender has to do with an additional explanation of

---

1A suggestion also proposed by Gane, "The Syntax of Tet Ve... in Daniel 8:13," 381-382.

2The feminine gender in vs. 12a is of course not the main reason why הַיָּלִים in vs. 12a refers to a different host from הַיָּלִים in vss. 10a and 11a (see the linguistic analysis to הַיָּלִים in vs. 12a).

3In fact, this is exactly what happens to modern readers (see the different commentators).
the masculine verbs in vs. 11. As argued above, one has to reckon with the possibility that the sudden shift in verbal gender, with the same subject, is one of several indications for elevated language. Such an “ungrammatical” construction is certainly more easily acceptable in a poetic section than in a prose text. The masculine gender in vs. 11 also corresponds to the masculine gender in the interpretation in vss. 23-26, a text that is poetic, though there the masculine דָּרַךְ function as subject and the masculine gender of the verbs is therefore expected. However this may be, the switch from prose to more poetic language in vs. 11 could very well be a reason for the shift of verbal gender from feminine to masculine.

Finally, the masculine דָּרַךְ in vs. 11a strengthens the literary link to the use of the masculine דָּרַךְ in vss. 4 and 8. As I will argue below, these three Hiphil forms of the keyword דָּרַךְ serve as an important structural device in the vision. A feminine form would have weakened such a Hiphil pattern of דָּרַךְ.

Conclusion

After examining the use of gender in Dan 8:9-12 it becomes obvious that there is an interplay of various functions. Syntactic explanations can be given for the apparent gender incongruities in vs. 9a and the feminine gender in vs. 12. The incorrect or unusual gender of the verb forms in vss. 9a and 12a heightens the reader’s attention to the introduction of a new agent, that is, a horn and a host. The similar introduction of these two agents links them interpretively together—the host of vs. 12a and the horn are on the same side—whereas the unusual gender for the host in vs. 12a effectively distinguishes it
in the reader's mind from the host of heaven in vs. 10. Finally, the masculine verbs in vs. 11 direct the attention to the attack on the commander of the host of heaven by the power behind the symbolic horn, pointing to the climax of the vision, a climax that is portrayed in an elevated style of language.

In conclusion, the use of gender does not convolute the text, but is a stylistic device on a formal level that creates coherence in vss. 9-10 and heightens attention for the important message in vs. 11, consistent with the poetic-like character of this verse. The poetic character of vs. 11 and the specific use of gender are thus the most important formal devices of literary style in vss. 9-14.1

Thematic Distribution and Arrangement

The focus in this section is on how specific words and expressions play semantically together to create the themes in the text, and how these themes are skillfully arranged and linked with each other to convey the message of the text. As such, this section represents a text-semantic analysis that carefully studies the text as a whole and as

1Another formal literary device is suggested by Shea, who proposes a deliberately intended literary construction which he calls "overhanging verb": In vs. 9 there is no overhanging verb; in vs. 10 there is one overhanging verb (יִלְאָכְתָּם); and in vss. 11-12 there are two overhanging verbs (יִלְעַשֵׁהוֹת). This supposed construction should indicate "progression." By "overhanging" Shea means that the verb does not describe an action "that took place on the vertical dimension and in heaven" ("Spatial Dimensions," 518, cf. 512). By "overhanging verb" Shea apparently means a verbal clause that consists of only one word. However, it is not unusual at all that a clause consists just of a verb with its inherent subject. The clause יֵלְכָתָם in vs. 11c actually contains verb, subject and object. Furthermore, to assume such a "literary structure" places undue structural force on the vertical dimension in this part of the vision. The vision is not so much about the vertical activity of the horn—though this is present—as about the horn's activities per se. Also, the function of "progression" is rather unclear, since Shea does not specify what the progression is and what its function could be. Finally, this literary construction does not account for the fact that vs. 11 is the endpoint and climax of the vision and vs. 12 is part of the audition.
a structured entity. This section is naturally based on the semantic analysis of the vocabulary of Dan 8:9-14 as undertaken in chapter 2 of this study. Therefore, the analysis of the meaning of the different words and expressions will not be repeated in this section.¹

Two different but related avenues of analysis are pursued here. First, a semantic investigation focuses on the vocabulary of 8:9-14 and groups the terminology used in this text according to thematic fields. Then, a Leitwort investigation focuses on the more frequent words and word stems in the whole of Dan 8 and groups these Leitwörter into thematic fields. The first avenue is particular in that it limits its interest to only a part of Dan 8, namely vss. 9-14, encompassing all vocabulary used in that part, whereas the second avenue is particular in that it is interested only in the vocabulary that occurs more often, encompassing the entire chapter. The purpose of the terminological analysis is evident: Both the thematic fields and the Leitwörter bring out the key points in the text.

Semantic Fields of Daniel 8:9-14

Introduction

The following terminological investigation seeks to uncover the rich tapestry themes and motifs in Dan 8:9-14.² They will be established by grouping semantically

¹I refrain from referring to the specific sections in chapter 2 (above), for the reader will easily find there the discussion of the semantic meaning of a particular word or phrase under the analysis of the clause in which it occurs.

²The “exceptional high information value” of the first half of Dan 8, designating the distribution and frequency of different words, has been observed by Schweizer, “Die Sprache der Zeichenkörper,” 27-30. See especially the table on p. 28 that lists the text length, vocabulary and information value for each of the illocution units of Dan 8.
related words and expressions that are used in the text into semantic fields or isotopies.

It is relatively easy to identify themes and motifs that are supported by a number of different expressions, for example, the military theme or the cultic theme. Expecting that in a brief vision report themes and motifs could be referred to in a condensed way, it also becomes necessary to pay attention to those themes and motifs that are pointed to by only a few but very explicit expressions. One must distinguish between words that exclusively refer to a specific motif, words that primarily refer to a specific motif but do have additional, secondary connotations, and words that can refer to different motifs. Overemphasizing terms and phrases that are ambiguous in their interpretation should be avoided.

The terminological analysis consists of several steps. First, an inventory of the vocabulary in Dan 8:9-14 that forms a particular semantic field is provided. Expressions that belong to the same semantic field are presented in a list, ordered according to their occurrence in the text, together with additional comments. Some of the terms are marked as secondary, which means that in the specific terminological context they may have an additional association, though they usually have another, primary association. For example, the term תֶּבֶרֶך primarily has a cultic association, but in addition it can also have an administrative, royal connotation that fits into the semantic field of power and control as referred to by other terms in Dan 8:9-10. It has to be admitted that the choice between primary and secondary association is not always easy to make, but contextual considerations usually provide a sure guide.

After the inventory has been taken, the distribution of the terminology in the text
is examined and its structural value determined. Finally, the interplay of the different isotopies is demonstrated in the characterization of the horn figure.

### Military Terminology: Power, Control, Violence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יגוע</td>
<td>9a</td>
<td>“go forth to battle”; used as a technical military term (often with נגוע); cf. its military connotation in three of the other five Danielic occurrences (10:20; 11:11, 44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נגוע</td>
<td>9a</td>
<td>horn as symbol for a power active on the earthly level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צין</td>
<td>10a, 10b, 11a, 12a, 13c</td>
<td>army; sometimes used for warfare or military service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שלד</td>
<td>10c</td>
<td>stepping down forcibly upon: “is one of the verbs used to describe conquest,” implying destruction or ruin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מלאך</td>
<td>11a</td>
<td>military rank: commander-in-chief of the army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ניס</td>
<td>11c, 12b</td>
<td>to throw with considerable force; fits together with דותא in the word field of destructive activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קרמנת</td>
<td>13c</td>
<td>state of destruction after a conquest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In light of the militant activities of the ram and of the goat that are previously described in the vision, the continuation of military activity occasions no surprise. Terminology from the semantic field of war appears especially in vss. 9-11 and reflects the violent nature of the horn.

---


2 Smith-Christopher, 113.

3 For the notions of power, control, and violence in Dan 8 see Langer, “Die Isotopie der Macht,” 87-102.

4 Ewald notes the “frequent mention of martial matters” here (Daniel, 262).
Royal Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>תֵּית</td>
<td>9a</td>
<td>horn as symbol for king or kingdom (cf. 8:23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>תַּנִּים</td>
<td>11b, 12a, 13c</td>
<td>secondary: תַּנִּים belongs to the royal administrative vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קֹצֶל</td>
<td>11c</td>
<td>often refers to the foundations of the throne of YHWH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Royal terminology is closely related to military terminology since both are found in the semantic field of power. The term תֵּית is the primary evidence of royal language, whereas both תַּנִּים and קֹצֶל show royal connotations only in a secondary sense. The term תַּנִּים is essentially a cultic term, but it also occurs in the context of the kingly court. It is used in an administrative context for the loyal retainer who is eating at the king’s table “perpetually” (2 Sam 9:7, 10, 13; 2 Kgs 25:29; Jer 52:33) and receives the “regular” allowance by the king (2 Kgs 25:30; Jer 52:34) and also for the king’s servants who serve in his presence “continually” (1 Kgs 10:8). On the basis of these texts, a royal connotation of the term תַּנִּים has been suggested by Paran, arguing that תַּנִּים originated in royal contexts. Whether royal administrative vocabulary has influenced cultic vocabulary or vice versa, the common denominator of the use of תַּנִּים in these contexts is that תַּנִּים expresses the basis on which a lasting relationship between unequal partners, a

1Meir Paran, דֶּרֶךְ הַפִּישְׁלִית הַפַּרְשָׁתָה בְּהֶדֶנֶּה, הַפַּרְשָׁתָה (Jerusalem: Magnes, 1989), 293 n. 68. Milgrom follows Paran and acknowledges the possibility that the term תַּנִּים "may have been borrowed from royal vocabulary" (Leviticus 1-16, 389). For Levine, תַּנִּים shows "that the vocabulary of cult was part of the scribal lexicon of government agencies" and thus is another indication for "the administrative matrix of cultic terminology" (Numbers 21-36, 372). One might also point out that the Akkadian ginû refers to regular offerings to the gods as well as to dues to an official or king (CAD, 5:80-81), and thus seems to represent an equivalent to תַּנִּים.
superior and those in his service, can exist. In the royal court it is the continual service by
the king’s servants on the one hand and the king’s unfailing sustenance on the other hand.
In the cultic court it is the continual service of God by the people and priests on the one
hand and God’s perpetual presence and sustenance on the other hand. Thus, transferring
the administrative, royal connotation into a cultic context, דיבוש expresses that a number
of cultic acts were to be performed as a perpetual service of God, suggesting that God, to
whom these acts were directed, could be regarded as king. דיבוש, too, is usually associated
with the sanctuary. It also relates to the divine throne (often in a cultic context),
designating its foundations.

Cultic Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נָבִי</td>
<td>9a</td>
<td>secondary: priestly activity of going out from the sanctuary (Lev 16:17, 18, 24; 1 Kgs 8:10; 2 Chr 5:11; often in combination with נב [see below])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דִּבָּשָׁה</td>
<td>9a</td>
<td>secondary: horns of the altar (Exod 27:2; 29:12; Lev 4:7; 16:18)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1The cultic terminology in Dan 8:9-14 has been examined by Rodriguez, who identifies the following terms as related to the sanctuary worship system: דִּבָּשָׁה “place”; שֵׁםֶן “sanctuary”; שָׁנַק “sanctuary”; מָקָה “host”; מֶשֶׁה “was taken away”; לָנֶק “horn”; דִּמְצַן “truth”; דִּבָּשֶׁה “rebellion”; דִּבָּשֶׁה “continuance”; and נָבִי “be declared righteous, be vindicated, be purified” (“Cultic Language,” 527-549). Shea also noted several cultic elements in the vision of Dan 8: (1) the use of sacrificial animals as symbols for the nations; (2) the reference to four horns in 8:8 is reminiscent of the four horns of the sanctuary altars; (3) the reference to the sanctuary in 8:11, 13, 14; (4) the use of the term תָּמִּית; (5) the expression “evening morning” in 8:14 not only refers to creation but in particular to “sanctuary days”—Shea sees a connection of “evening-morning” to the lighting of the lamps “from evening to morning” (Exod 27:20-21; Lev 24:2-3) and to the pillar of fire and cloud (Num 9:15-16, 21—and (6) the designation of the two conversing angels in 8:13 as “holy ones,” using as background the imagery of the two cherubim within the sanctuary (“Unity of Daniel,” 196-198). In a later work, Shea no longer mentions (2) and (6) as possible links to the sanctuary (Daniel 7-12, 111-112).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>לְבָנָה</th>
<th>9b</th>
<th>“beauty” in connection with God’s presence; can refer to the sanctuary or temple mount (cf. Dan 11:45)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>10a, 10b, 11a, 12a, 13c</td>
<td>secondary: used in cultic context in relation to the service of the Levites (Num 4:3, 23, 30, 35, 39, 43; 8:24, 25);¹ as participle, it refers to the women serving at the entrance of the sanctuary (Exod 38:8; 1 Sam 2:22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>11a</td>
<td>secondary: refers in cultic context to leading priests or officers of the sanctuary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>11b</td>
<td>used in cultic context as a technical term for the priestly activity of setting aside something that belongs to God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>11b, 12a, 13c</td>
<td>(1) regular cultic tāmīḏ activity performed by the (high) priest and (2) continual cultic worship/service of God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>11c</td>
<td>used in association with the dwelling place of God, either on earth (sanctuary/temple) or in heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>12a, 13c</td>
<td>critical offense against God that had to be dealt with on the Day of Atonement (Lev 16:16, 21) or to be directly forgiven by God; סֵסָמָע (Dan 8:13c) functions as substitution for the distinctly cultic הָרָאשׁ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>13a, 13b</td>
<td>attribution of holiness to a person is found frequently in the cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה</td>
<td>13c, 14c</td>
<td>concept of “holiness” is essential to the cult; שִׁירַךְ can refer to the sanctuary (holy place, most holy place, or as a whole) as well as to holy people or holy things</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Van der Woude argues that in accordance with the verbal usage of הָרָאשׁ, which for him in the sacred realm “never refers to cultic, but always to profane, service” (“N 2S,” 2:1041), the substantive הָרָאשׁ “can also refer to the profane labor by the Levites at the sanctuary” (ibid., 2:1042). With that he obviously refers to the physical labor performed by the Levites for the sanctuary, which elsewhere is expressed by the term נָא (Milgrom, Studies in Levitical Terminology, 1, 61). Ringgren, however, believes that the six instances of הָרָאשׁ in Num 4 refer “to the cultic service performed by the Levites in the tent of meeting” (“N 2S,” 12:214; cf. Tremper Longman III, “N 2S [# 7371],” NIDOTTE, 3:733).
There is no question that Dan 8:9-14 exhibits cultic terminology. In fact, the
cultic imagery in Dan 8, which especially appears in vss. 9-14 and has its highest
concentration in vss. 11 and 14c, belongs without doubt to the most prominent
characteristics of the vision in Dan 8. In relation to the horn’s religious actions, which
culminate in the desecration of the temple, Gese goes so far to say that “all in chapter 8 is
grounded to this cultic viewpoint.”

The cultic motif is central at least in the visions. “Altogether, the visions of
Daniel 7–12 are permeated with priestly imagery, symbolism, and concepts.” In
addition, however, the cultic motif may very well be at the heart of the whole book of
Daniel.

---

1 The festival of Unleavened Bread also begins in the evening (Exod 12:18), but it is not
possible to detect any other terminological or conceptual links between this festival and Dan 8.

2 *Pace* Hasselberger who after excising Dan 8:11–14 declares that cultic elements do not play a
decisive role in chap. 8 (400 n. 11).

3 Gese, 409. See also Langer, 96.

4 Marvin A. Sweeney, “The End of Eschatology in Daniel? Theological and Socio-Political
cultic motif as central in the second part of Daniel: “The forms in which Daniel’s visions are
expressed and their use of symbolic imagery is [sic] deeply indebted to priestly tradition and the
Jerusalem temple, even when they employ motifs derived from pagan mythology” (135).

5 A point forcefully argued in the dissertation by Vogel, “The Cultic Motif.”
### Creation Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נָאָרָא חֵשֵׁם</td>
<td>10a</td>
<td>host of heaven (e.g., Gen 2:1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲרוֹם</td>
<td>10b, 12b</td>
<td>earth (e.g., Gen 2:1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פָּלָעְפָּעְמ</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>stars (e.g., Gen 1:16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אִשָׁה</td>
<td>12c</td>
<td>secondary: designates in creation texts creational work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וּרְאֵב בְּקָר</td>
<td>14b</td>
<td>“evening and morning” used in Gen 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The words נָאָרָא “host,” חֵשֵׁם “heaven,” פָּלָעְפָּעְמ “stars,” and אֲרוֹם “earth,” all of which appear in just one verse (8:10), are used in close proximity only in Deut 4:16-19 and in Jer 31:35-37, both passages that refer to creation. Further, all these terms, including אִשָׁה, are also found in the creation account in Gen 1:1–2:4a where the combination of וּרְאֵב אֲרוֹם is prominent, providing at least part of the background for וּרְאֵב בְּקָר in Dan 8:14b.

### Judgment Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נַרְקָם/נַרְקָם</td>
<td>10c/13c</td>
<td>secondary: used above all in the prophetic announcement of judgment (Isa 1:12; Ezek 34:18) and in the narrative description of the fulfillment of a prophetic warning (2 Kgs 7:17, 20; 9:33)¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַר ל</td>
<td>11a</td>
<td>secondary: יַר can have judicial function²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר hif.</td>
<td>11a</td>
<td>to have an exaggerated self-evaluation (cause for judgment)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


²See, e.g., Fox, In the Service of the King, 161.
The vocabulary of pride or arrogance used in the description of the horn’s activities clearly indicates the presumptuous character of the horn power. It is noteworthy that the notion of presumption appears only when the description of what the horn is doing introduces strong cultic imagery. Hence, one gets the strong impression that it is war against the cult that marks the horn’s character as arrogant and haughty.

It is also important to note that the terminology of presumption belongs to the author’s repertoire to express his own conceptual or ideological point of view. The passage in Dan 8:9-11 is certainly not a neutral record of events. In searching for elements that express the subjective opinion of the author of Dan 8, Bader recognizes a first indication of the horn’s arrogance in its growing toward “the beauty” in vs. 9b. If heaven is considered reasonably to be positive, then the horn’s growth against heaven (vss. 10 and 11) can only signify a negative attitude of the horn. The horn even goes against the heavenly system of values as represented in the cult. And finally it is said that the activities are directed against תינוקות “truth” (vs. 12b). The horn and its host destroy everything that is truth. In other words, “that which Daniel considers to be true is at

\[1\] Bader, “Reale und gedachte Welt,” 53-54.
stake.” In the light of this extremely negative portrayal of the horn and its host, the positive assessment in vs. 12d, וְאֶלֶף תְּרָם בָּלָא, “and it will do and succeed,” sounds like sheer mockery.¹

The presumptuous activity of the horn leads naturally to the question of judgment. In the book of Daniel, as well as in prophetic oracles, presumption and judgment are closely linked, presumption being portrayed as almost always inevitably leading to judgment.² In fact, the thematic structural pattern in the vision of Dan 8 established by the key term הַנִּרְגָּרָה, which will be discussed later, points exactly to such a “hubris leads to a great fall” motif.³ The entire vision of Dan 8 draws such a pattern and reads like an illustration of the proverb “Pride goes before destruction, and a haughty spirit before stumbling” (Prov 16:18).

Judgment is also associated with eschatology. In a vision that pertains to the end (8:17, 19), judgment as the final thought needs to be understood as an eschatological event. In fact, as noted in the semantic analysis, the root כְּפָר is typically used in prophetic material in eschatological contexts, and itself points to eschatological כְּפָר that will be established at the final time, not infrequently in the Messianic kingdom.

¹Ibid., 54.
²Bergman, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:405.
³Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 88.
Covenant Terminology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>מַעֲכְסִים</td>
<td>10b</td>
<td>secondary: stars as simile for the numerous covenant people (Gen 22:17; 26:4; Exod 32:13; Deut 1:10; 10:22; 28:62; Neh 9:23; 1 Chr 27:23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֶשֶׁת</td>
<td>12a, 13c</td>
<td>offensive act that willfully breaks relationships with YHWH (covenant breach) or is directed against YHWH as his people's suzerain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַמָּת</td>
<td>12b</td>
<td>secondary: often denotes God's continual favor and faithfulness in the covenant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָרִיִית</td>
<td>13c</td>
<td>appeal for intervention and judgment by the covenant God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁמָּה</td>
<td>13c</td>
<td>secondary: used for the desolation of the land as a result of covenant disobedience (Lev 26:22, 31, 32, 34, 35, 43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שְׂכָר בָּקָר</td>
<td>14b</td>
<td>secondary: evening and morning used in context of covenant breaking (Deut 28:67; note מַעֲכְסִים הָלֹךְ בְּשֵׁם &quot;as the stars of heaven&quot; in vs. 62)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The term מַעֲכְסִים needs further explanation. As argued in the semantic analysis, מַעֲכְסִים in the book of Daniel has a specifically unique connotation and refers to the truthfulness and reliability of the divine revelation, that is, God's word and prophetic message. This has to be regarded as the primary meaning of מַעֲכְסִים in Dan 8:12b. However, elsewhere מַעֲכְסִים is often used in relationship to the covenant to denote the faithfulness of God,¹ so that it has even been qualified as a term expressing covenantal relations.² In 8:12b, a

¹See the use of מַעֲכְסִים in relation to בְּרִית in Isa 61:8; Jer 32:40-41; Mal 2:5-6; Pss 25:10; 111:7-9; 132:11-12; Neh 9:33-34. Cf. Mic 7:20; Ps 146:6; and especially the formula מַעֲכְסִים with its variants (Gen 24:27; 32:11; etc.).

secondary association of נֵבֶן with the covenant should therefore not be excluded.

Cult and covenant are inextricably connected. The cultic center of the sanctuary or temple is the visible symbol for the presence of the covenant God and thus of the covenant bond itself. It is the covenant that ensures God's presence. An attack on the cult is therefore nothing else than an attack on the covenant God. Likewise, an attack on God's covenant people should provoke God as suzerain into action for his covenant partners. God is bound by the covenant to defend his sanctuary and his covenant people. If for some time he does not react to attacks on either or both, the urgent question "until when?" that implores his intervention becomes more than legitimate. The cry in 8:13c can be understood as the cry to the suzerain to do something about those who trample the covenant. Since here the beseeching is directed toward God, not toward humans, it is also apparent that the question of unfaithfulness to the covenant is God's. God is apparently not fulfilling his part of the covenant, that is, protecting as suzerain his people and his cult. In other words, the anguished cry to God in 8:13c implies that the covenant problem is not on the side of God's people in the sense that they would have transgressed the covenant. Rather the source of perplexity is God's silence toward the attack on the covenant by the horn power. The deus otius is in danger of becoming the

---

1Cf. Gregory Stevenson: "Since the covenant bond between God and Israel ensures the presence of God among faithful Israelites, the temple thus serves as central, unifying symbol of that covenant bond. This function of the temple is clear beginning with the tabernacle traditions. As a physical repository for the Ark of the Covenant, the tabernacle represented God's covenant" (Power and Place: Temple and Identity in the Book of Revelation, BZAW, no. 107 [Berlin: de Gruyter, 2001], 129; cf. also James Valentine, "Theological Aspects of the Temple Motif in the Old Testament and Revelation" [Ph.D. diss., Boston University, 1985], 27-30). The interconnectedness between the ark and the covenant is readily seen in expressions such as תִּבְנֵי ה' נֵבֶן "the ark of the covenant" (43 times), נֵבֶן ה' נֵבֶן "the ark of the covenant of YHWH" (32 times), and נֵבֶן ה' נֵבֶן "the ark of the testimony" (Exod 25:22: 26:33, 34; 30:6, 26; 31:7; 39:35; 40:3, 5, 21; Num 4:5; 7:89; Josh 4:16).
It has to be emphasized that in Dan 8:9-14 the covenant theme is not taken up in order to point to the breaking of the covenant on the part of God’s people. First of all, such a notion is not clearly expressed in the text, in spite of those commentators who see it in vs. 12a. Second, it is very difficult to regard the secondary associations of the terms יָשָׁם, בָּקָר, and הָמָכָבָה with the covenant as intended allusions.1

### Terminology of Perception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>שמע</td>
<td>13a</td>
<td>to hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דבר</td>
<td>13a, 13b</td>
<td>to speak or talk, with the possible implication of conveying information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אמר</td>
<td>13b, 14a</td>
<td>to speak or talk, with focus on the content of what is said (usually following in direct speech)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sensory events in vss. 13a.b, and 14a are easily recognized. They all involve

1It is mere speculation to establish a link between Dan 8:9-14 and the covenant curses in Deut 28. Among the numerous consequences of disobedience mentioned in Deut 28 one finds the following two: “Then you shall be left few in number, whereas you were as numerous as the stars of heaven (כֹּל כָּלָמִים), because you did not obey YHWH your God” (vs. 62). “In the morning (בּוֹר) you shall say, ‘Would that it were evening (בּוֹר)!’ And at evening (בּוֹר) you shall say, ‘Would that it were morning (בּוֹר)!’ because of the dread of your heart which you dread, and for the sight of your eyes which you will see” (vs. 67). The link to Dan 8 could be construed along these lines: The falling of some of the stars to earth and thus the diminishing of the number of stars in Dan 8:10 may allude to the consequence of breaking the covenant stated in Deut 28:62. And the idea that a long number of evenings and mornings have to go by in which the horn acts against everything which is divine and the question “How long?” is asked sounds similar to the yearning of those who experience the consequences of the covenant breaking and wish that evening and morning would go by faster. Yet, such an argument for a covenant breach of God’s people in Dan 8:9-14 is at best hypothetical and can only function as support of a primary reference to such a theme in the text, which, however, is not present. The term דָּמָם in vs. 13c is syntactically connected with בָּקָר—a term that designates here the rebellious sin of the horn and its host—and thus does not make primary reference to the covenant curses on the land in Lev 26.
the sense of hearing on the part of Daniel and the act of communication on the part of the holy ones.

Distribution of Semantic Fields

Table 24 illustrates the distribution of the different terminological groups in Dan 8:9-14.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cult</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creation</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judgment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covenant</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perception</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The distribution of the semantic fields adds to the structure of the passage. The two main isotopies are “power and violence” and “cult and holiness.” The military terminology expressing power and violence, which is used in vss. 3-8, continues to be used strongly in vss. 9-11a and to a lesser extent in vss. 11b-13. Cultic associations are already found in vss. 3-8 and vss. 9-10. These prepare the reader for the climax of the vision and the audition when the language shifts to a predominance of cultic terms in vss. 11-14.

At the point of transition of the two semantic themes the author ingeniously
employs words that have both military and cultic connotations. As in Dan 8 the cultic associations grow increasingly stronger as the military associations get increasingly weaker. Such a literary device can already be perceived in the introductory clause for the horn. The verbal roots נֵב (8:5, 6) and נָבֶל (8:9a), which are used to describe the first activity of the goat (נֵב) and of the horn (נָבֶל), are used as a word pair in technical military language for going out to battle and coming (back) in, relating to the success of the commander and his army, but also in cultic language for (mostly priestly) activity in the sense “perform cultic acts” (Exod 28:35; 33:7-11; 34:34; Lev 9:23; 16:17-18, 23-24; Num 27:17, 21; 2 Kgs 11:9; Ezek 42:13-14; and in the context of worship in Ezek 44:3, 46:2, 8-10). In fact, in Num 27:17, 21 the military and cultic sense are very close to each other, and it is difficult to distinguish between the two.

The symbol of the “horn” takes up several connotations. It adequately comprises different semantic fields or isotopies present in the passage. As a symbol, horn is used

---


2 J. G. Plöger, 178-181; Preuss, נָבֶל, 6:229, 236; van der Lingen, 59-66. Both Plöger and Preuss further refer to the word pair נֵב and נָבֶל as an inclusive pair of antonyms to indicate totality in the sense of “being able to do something/everything” (so esp. Boccaccio, 178-190) and also as word pair referring to the rising and going down of the sun and the stars, to which Preuss (נָבֶל, 6:230) even attributes military overtones.

3 J. G. Plöger, 175-178; Preuss, נָבֶל, 6:229; van der Lingen, 64-65. J. G. Plöger (176-177) and van der Lingen (64) allow also for the possibility that the blessing and curse in Deut 28:6, 19 with the word pair נֵב and נָבֶל has its Sitz im Leben in the cultic language describing the undertaking of the crossing of the threshold of the sanctuary by the high priest that was regarded as particularly dangerous.

4 So J. G. Plöger, 178-179; and Preuss, נָבֶל, 6:229.
for kings or kingdoms. It thus has a symbolic royal connotation. Horn, of course, is also used for strength and power, and as such refers to military might and dominion. The context of cultic imagery in the vision further suggests attributing a cultic connotation to the horn, reminiscent of the horns of the altar.

The occurrence of יָבוֹא "the beauty" in vs. 9b is surprising. The horn comes forth from a compass point and grows toward different geographical directions. As the third term after "toward the south, toward the east, toward the . . ." one would expect either "north" or "west." This is also suggested by the structural parallel to the first activities of the ram and the goat, especially to the threefold geographical directions in vs. 4. However, instead of a compass point the noun יָבוֹא appears. As already noted, יָבוֹא is often regarded as the short form of the fuller יָבוֹא יָשָׁב "land of beauty" (11:16, 41), a geographical term. Yet יָבוֹא is not just any geographical designation but the designation for the promised land (Jer 3:19; Ezek 20:6, 15). The term יָבוֹא is therefore another indicator that the activity of the horn turns to a non-military, religious level, as the term combines the geographical aspect (military level) with the idea of the promised land in the midst of which God's temple resides (cultic and covenantal level).

Another case of intentional word choice is the use of בְּנֵי over against יָבוֹא. The term בְּנֵי is used in the Hebrew of Daniel exclusively in chap. 11 (vss. 7, 10, 13, 25 [2x], 26). In the context of the warfare in that chapter, יָבוֹא is the proper term to employ since

---

1In the Aramaic chapters the noun בְּנֵי is used in the sense of "army" in 3:20aR and 4:32, and perhaps also in the construct phrase in 3:20a, although it could designate the characteristic of the warriors, and in an adverbial sense in 3:4; 4:11; 5:7 (בְּנֵי בָּרֶךְ "cry loud"). Interestingly, in Nebuchadnezzar's reflection in 4:32, which is filled with royal terminology, the heavenly host or celestial army is designated by the construct phrase בְּנֵי בָּרֶךְ "army of heaven."
it refers to an army and has the connotation of power and strength. However, in the
vision of Dan 8, the military פלך is not used. Instead ניצק is used, which occurs five
times in 8:10-13 (and only once more in Daniel, in 10:1, in the sense of conflict). The
reason for choosing the term ניצק seems obvious. In the passage of Dan 8:9-13, which is
laden with cultic terminology, the use of ניצק fits significantly better since it has both
military and cultic connotations and is able to interrelate war and cult.1

Finally, in vs. 11a the term פלך in the primary military expression ניצק also
has a cultic notion, since it can refer to leading personnel at the sanctuary: priests (Isa
43:28; Ezra 8:24, 29; 10:5; 1 Chr 24:5; 2 Chr 36:14) or Levites (1 Chr 15:5-10, 16, 22,
27; 2 Chr 35:9; Ezra 8:29?).

In taking up expressions from the previous verses the question in vs. 13c again
reflects the two main motifs. It uses mainly cultic terms (גנן, וחיה, and מדבר),
but with ניצק also employs military terms, of course keeping in mind that ניצק has
a secondary cultic association. The main focus of the question then is the horn’s attack
on the cult.

In conclusion, through the thematic movement from war to cult and through the
deliberate use of words that have both cultic and military associations the activities of the
horn are effectively portrayed as an attack on the cult, a cultic war. To be sure, this does

---

1In relation to the use of ניצק, or נבנ, Tremper Longman III emphasizes the interrelation of
war and cult: “According to the OT, Yahweh made his presence known in a special and personal way
in the tabernacle-temple, on the one hand, and on the battlefield, on the other. Yahweh’s presence is
symbolized by the ark of the covenant, which was present in the Holy of Holies except at times of
warfare, when it was carried into battle. . . . The connection between Yahweh and war is also noted
by the frequent title (lit.) ‘LORD of Hosts’ (yhw ’sḥa ’āt, from the nom. sb)” (“Nבנ,” 3:733).
not mean that the war is a “holy war,” a religious or sacred warfare, or a war with religious dimensions.¹ It is rather a war in the realm of the cult, since the main terminological field in this passage is the cultic one. The essence of the horn’s activities is not so much military in nature, but cultic. Hence, the central goal of the horn, as portrayed here, is not to win a military war, but to take over the cult.²

The semantic fields that are primarily present in the solution to this attack on the cult—creation and judgment—emphasize once more the centrality of the cult in the horn’s warfare, since these themes play important roles in the cult much more than in warfare. It is exactly in the final part of the cultic section that the clearest allusions to creation and judgment are given (vs. 14b and 14c), suggesting that judgment and creation are embedded in the cultic motif and, even more so, form its climax.

Macrotheme: Day of Atonement

It is the thematic progression and development in the vision report in Dan 8 that suggests most strongly that the divine intervention utilizes the concept of an

¹On the religious character of warfare in ancient Israel and the ancient Near East and the debated concept of “holy war” see, e.g., Gerhard von Rad, Holy War in Ancient Israel, trans. M. J. Dawn (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1991), who argues that the war in ancient Israel was indeed an eminent cultic act, not simply a war with religious dimensions; Miller, “Holy War and Cosmic War in Early Israel”; idem, Divine Warrior; Charles Sherlock, The God Who Fights: The War Tradition in Holy Scripture, Rutherford Studies in Contemporary Theology, no. 6 (Edinburgh: Rutherford; Lewiston: Mellen, 1993), esp. 4-10; John A. Wood, Perspectives on War in the Bible (Macon: Mercer University Press, 1998), cap. 9-34.

²The background imagery alluded to here seems to be the enemy attack on the Israelite sanctuary, which at least in the narratives of the wilderness wanderings and the conquest was as much a military headquarters as a cultic center and appears as a cradle of the cultic-military leadership. For such a role of the tabernacle see Myung Soo Suh, The Tabernacle in the Narrative History of Israel from the Exodus to the Conquest, StBL, no. 50 (New York: Lang, 2003), 56-60, 146-147.
eschatological Day of Atonement. Both the themes surfacing in the answer (vs. 14) and the logical consequence of what requires vindication point to such an encompassing macrotheme.

First, the combination of the themes of creation, judgment, and cult is clearly found in the Day of Atonement, both in biblical and post-biblical Jewish tradition. In his study of Lev 16 in its literary context, Jürgens demonstrated the creation-theological roots of the Day of Atonement and of its process of permeating holiness starting from the sanctuary. The cessation of all work on the Day of Atonement, which is unique for an Israelite yearly festival, places the day squarely within the Sabbath concept and marks it

---

1See Doukhan, *Daniel: The Vision of the End*, 60-64. As an example for the biblical tradition Doukhan refers to Ps 103, which besides “the whole catechism of ancient Israel’s covenant faith” (Samuel Terrien, *The Psalms: Strophic Structure and Theological Commentary*, The Eerdmans Critical Commentary [Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 2003], 703) presents YHWH as Creator (vss. 21-22) and Judge (vss. 6, 19) in the context of his dealings with his people’s and (vss. 3, 9-12; cf. Lev 16:21). Although this psalm is usually not attributed a Day of Atonement setting, John Eaton imagines it “as intended for the assembly at the autumn festival” (*The Psalms: A Historical and Spiritual Commentary with an Introduction and New Translation* [London: Clark, 2003], 358). One may also point to the connection of Rosh HaShanah, the first day of Tishri, which remembers creation, and Yom Kippur, the tenth of Tishri, which as the culmination of the penitential period of ten days (Ros Has. 18a) signifies the climax of the judgment. Milgrom even suggests that originally the tenth of Tishri was the climax of a New Year festival that began on the first day, pointing, among other things, to Ezek 40:1, where Rosh HaShanah is said to be on the tenth of the month (*Leviticus* 1-16, 1067-1070; *Leviticus* 23-27, 2164-2165; cf. Simon Landersdorfer, *Studien zum biblischen Versöhnungstag*, ATÄ, no. 10/1 [Münster: Aschendorff, 1924], 44-54; Jonathan D. Safren, “Jubilee and the Day of Atonement,” in *Proceedings of the Twelfth World Congress of Jewish Studies, Jerusalem, July 29–August 5, 1997, Division A: The Bible and Its World*, ed. R. Margolin [Jerusalem: World Union of Jewish Studies, 1999], 107*-113*).

2Benedikt Jürgens, *Heiligkeit und Versöhnung: Levitikus 16 in seinem literarischen Kontext*, HBS, no. 28 (Freiburg: Herder, 2001), 425-429 (cf. the remark on the front flap: “Leviticus 16 proves to be the central text of the book Leviticus. Its ritual symbolism is open toward the prehistory and serves the partial restitution of the original creation order in the real world”). See also Doukhan, *Daniel*, 61-64; idem, *Secrets of Daniel*, 130-131 (includes references to rabbinic literature).
as a totally consecrated day of rest in the enjoyment of full cultic re-creation. The Day of Atonement is also closely associated with judgment, as Gane convincingly argued, for only on this day the two themes of purification of the sanctuary and the people and of judgment coalesce. Hence, the crucial denouement of the vision report in Dan 8 should be understood in terms of an eschatological Day of Atonement.

Second, since the horn’s war within the realm of cult assaulted the people of God as well as the sanctuary, the priestly commander, and the continual cultic service of YHWH, the divine action described in vs. 14 requires all of them to be restored to their right place. There is only one cultic ritual by which all these entities come rightfully into their own again: the Day of Atonement. In other words, the objects of purification on the Day of Atonement—the sanctuary and the people of God—and the vindication of God himself correspond conceptually to both the target of the horn’s assault in Dan 8 and the intended goal of what is restored to its right place in 8:14c, that is, the sanctuary, the host, and God himself.

Besides thematic reasons, there are also structural, intertextual, and terminological reasons to regard the Day of Atonement as the macrotheme for Dan 8:14. With regard to structure, it is important to point out that the vision report ends with the concise but thematically rich allusion to the Day of Atonement. As Collins observes, “the ensuing

---

1Jürgens, 425-429; Gane, Cult and Character, 315.
2Ibid., 305-309.
3For Gane, the concept that “God’s justice, represented by his sanctuary, must be justified” seems to be expressed by the terminology of Dan 8:14c (Cult and Character, 342 n. 27).
state is not described." This is especially evident in the interpretation which ends with
the king being broken "without human hand" (vs. 25). The end of the revelation in Dan 8
therefore coincides with the eschatological Day of Atonement, the importance of which is
not reduced by any further explanations.

The intertextual web of 8:9-14 in the book of Daniel brings to light time and again
the concept of an eschatological Day of Atonement. Particularly the intertextual
relationship with chap. 7 prepares for the extensive use of cultic imagery in the vision
report of Dan 8 and sets the tone for the Day of Atonement theme. The vision in chap. 7
is permeated by cultic allusions to the Day of Atonement. Also the intertextual relation to
9:24, which shows Day of Atonement language, is compatible with the idea that 8:14
should be interpreted within the parameters of the Day of Atonement.2

Against the backdrop of a Day of Atonement setting, several terminological
allusions to it are recognizable in Dan 8:9-14. First, the horn acts in הָּֽ֤שָּׁ֙וּבַּהּ֑ הנֵּ֣בָּ֝֘וּר הָּֽ֤שָּׁ֙וּבַּהּ֑"rebellion"
(Dan 8:12a, 13c). The term הָּֽ֤שָּׁ֙וּבַּהּ֑ occurs only twice in Leviticus: in 16:16, 21.3 It
describes an inexpiable, defiant sin that falls into the same category as the "high-handed"
sins of Num 15:30-31. הָּֽ֤שָּׁ֙וּבַּהּ֑ automatically defiles the sanctuary, and the sanctuary can

1John J. Collins, “The Meaning of 'the End' in the Book of Daniel,” in Of Scribes and
Scrolls: Studies on the Hebrew Bible, Intertestamental Judaism, and Christian Origins Presented to
Tobin (Lanham: University Press of America, 1990), 94.

2On the intertextual relations of Dan 8:9-14 with other texts in Daniel see chapter 4.

3הָּֽ֤שָּׁ֙וּבַּהּ֑ is a term of the poetic books and the prophets and occurs only nine times in the
Pentateuch (Gen 31:36; 50:17 [2x]; Exod 22:8; 23:21; 34:7; Lev 16:16, 21; Num 14:18).
only be purified from נַעֲרָה on the Day of Atonement.¹ Thus, if נַעֲרָה in Dan 8 is dealt with in a cultic way, and the context does suggest it, נַעֲרָה has to be set right by a Day of Atonement activity, the only cultic ritual that deals with נַעֲרָה.²

The expression נַעֲרָה (Dan 8:14b) with its specific sequence of “evening-morning” is reminiscent of the only cultic day, next to the feast of Unleavened Bread, that explicitly begins in the evening: the Day of Atonement (Lev 23:32).

The key root נַעֲרָה surfaces in Dan 8 in the terms נַעֲרָה (vs. 11c) and נַעֲרָה (vss. 13c, 14c). That נַעֲרָה is restored to its rightful place in vs. 14c is reminiscent of the Day of Atonement when נַעֲרָה is purified from נַעֲרָה (Lev 16:16). In Lev 16, נַעֲרָה occurs seven times designating the sanctuary or parts of it (vss. 2, 3, 16, 17, 20, 23, 27), once in the phrase נַעֲרָה נַעֲרָה “sanctuary of holiness” (16:33), and twice in connection with a special linen garment to characterize it as holy (16:4, 32). The inner sanctum of the sanctuary is uniquely called נַעֲרָה “the holy” in this chapter (16:2, 3, 16, 17, 20, 23, 27, 33). The verb נַעֲרָה piel “sanctify” occurs once in Lev 16 (vs. 19). Hence, נַעֲרָה seems to be an “explicit terminological link between Daniel 8:14 and Leviticus 16.”³

¹Gane, Cult and Character, 294-298. Offenders committing נַעֲרָה cannot receive expiation by means of noncalendric sacrifices.

²A connection between נַעֲרָה in Dan 8 and Lev 16 is suggested by Thomson (243) and Hasel (“The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 440).

³Ibid., 455; Vogel, “Cultic Motif,” 82. The apparent change from נַעֲרָה to נַעֲרָה in Dan 8:11-14 has received some attention and has been attributed either to reflect a design that follows the structure from vision to audition (Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” [1986], 454) or from sanctuary language in general (נַעֲרָה) to language of the Day of Atonement ritual when the נַעֲרָה is purified (Vogel, “Cultic Motif,” 87-88). Both options seem possible. What is clear, however, is that the indefinite term נַעֲרָה is employed to encompass both the sanctuary and the people (as explained in chapter 2 [above]).
These are the terminological links to the Day of Atonement in the Hebrew language of Dan 8:9-14. Yet, there is possibly another connection in the Greek language. The macrotheme of the Day of Atonement could very well be the reason why the Greek versions render θύτευσεν in vs. 14c with καθαρισθησαν τῷ ἁγιόν, two terms that feature prominently in the prescription of the Day of Atonement rituals in Lev 16. The verb καθαρίζω—thirty of its ninety-four occurrences are found in Leviticus and there it always means to render ritually clean—is used to describe the process of purification of the holy (ἅγιον), the tent of meeting, the altar, and the people (Lev 16:19, 20, 30 [2x]), and throughout Lev 16 the adjectival noun τῷ ἁγιόν or ὁ ἅγιος “is uniquely used to designate the adytum” or ἱερόν “(most) holy place” (Lev 16:2, 3, 16, 17, 20, 23, 27, 33).

At this point it is important to consider another cultic concept that is usually suggested to serve as background for the activity mentioned in 8:14c: the concept of rededication. The question is whether Dan 8 refers to the Day of Atonement or to

1Not a terminological but a conceptual link could be established by the term רִאִיתוֹן. The use of רִאִיתוֹן indicates that the assault of the horn is directed against the regular and continuous cultic service. If this is the case, it seems reasonable to infer that the desecration of the regular cultic service must be restored to its right place by the purification wrought at an eschatological Day of Atonement.

2Doukhan points out that καθαρίζω in Dan 8:14 is “a technical word used to refer to Kippur” and that Rashi in the MItroat Gdolot suggested to read this Danielic passage in light of the Day of Atonement (Secrets of Daniel, 127). Cf. Hasel, “The ‘Little Horn’” (1986), 455.

3John William Wevers, Notes on the Greek Text of Leviticus, SBLSCS, no. 44 (Atlanta: Scholars, 1997), 241. Elsewhere, καθαρίζω and ἅγιος are used in the same context only in a short note on the Day of Atonement in relation to the altar of incense (Exod 30:10), in the prescription of the consecration of the altar (Exod 29:37), and in the instructions for priests eating sacred food (Lev 22:4).

4In the historical interpretation of most commentators, Dan 8:14 is seen as the rededication of the temple after its desecration by Antiochus IV Epiphanes (1 Macc 4:36-59; 2 Macc 1:8; 10:1-8).
Both concepts, rededication and the Day of Atonement, share several themes occurring in Dan 8 with which they are closely connected: the preceding sin and transgression that led to the violation of the laws of purity of the sanctuary/temple, the required purification of the sanctuary/temple, and the theme of creation. Therefore, the cultic allusions in Dan 8 could often be interpreted both ways. Likewise, the animal terms used in Dan 8, which will be discussed below, could be understood as referring not only to the Day of Atonement but also to rededication, since they are mentioned in the context of (re)dedication in Num 7; 2 Chr 29:20-24; and Ezek 43.

However, several features in Dan 8 uniquely point to a Day of Atonement setting, and are either absent or cannot be detected in the concept of rededication. First and foremost, the theme of judgment does not play a role at rededication, but is at the heart of

---

1 It is necessary to differentiate between inauguration/dedication and rededication (cf. the distinction of rituals of founding, rituals of maintenance, and rituals of restoration by Frank H. Gorman, “Priestly Rituals of Founding: Time, Space, and Status,” in History and Interpretation: Essays in Honour of John H. Hayes, ed. M. P. Graham, W. P. Brown, and J. K. Kuan, JSOTSup, no. 173 [Sheffield: JSOT, 1993], 47-64). The concept of inauguration or dedication does not comply with the evidence in the vision report in Dan 8, for there is no sanctuary that is inaugurated or initially dedicated, but rather a sanctuary that is restored to its right place after it has been desecrated.

2 The biblical data for rededication are rather sparse. A rededication of the temple occurs under Asa (2 Chr 15) and under Hezekiah (2 Chr 29), and by the Maccabbees in the Second Temple period. Since the actual procedures for rededication seem to reflect the dedication procedures, the latter ones could also be taken into account to find out what happened at a rededication. Major passages dealing with the dedication of cultic place and status are the prescription for the consecration of the priesthood and the tabernacle (Exod 29 and 40; cf. the prescription for the consecration of the outer altar in Ezek 43:18-27), the consecration of the priesthood and the inaugural service (Lev 8 and 9), the consecration of the tabernacle (Num 7), the dedication of the Solomonic temple (1 Kgs 8; 2 Chr 7:1-11), and the dedication of the Second Temple (Ezra 3:1-6; 6:16-18). In fact, the dedication ceremonies were also continued, as it were, through the yearly ritual of consecration on the Day of Atonement (Lev 16:19 with יָסָר piel).
the Day of Atonement.1 Second, the restoration of the people to their right, which is one of the two main aspects expressed by הַנְוָכֵי יֶרֶם יִרְמֵי לְהוֹד (8:14c), is not a focus of the temple rededication, but again is central to the Day of Atonement. Third, the evoking of a day starting in the evening by the phrase יִרְמֵי לְהוֹד אֵשׁ עָסַי (8:14b) is not an idea associated with rededication, but it is in conformity with the Day of Atonement. Fourth, there is also a distinction in the fact to whose activity the attention is directed. The rededication is carried out by the king, priests, and people, and signifies that they cleanse the temple from the desecration that has occurred and rededicate it for a renewed cultic service. The emphasis lies on the human effort and prostration. The purification rituals on the Day of Atonement are carried out by the high priest, signifying what YHWH would do for his people and “to preserve the justice of YHWH’s administration.”2 Here, the emphasis is put clearly on YHWH. Inasmuch as the assault of the horn in Dan 8:9-12 is directed against God, the question in 8:13c is addressed to God, and the solution in 8:14c refers to a divine activity, the concept of a Day of Atonement suggests itself as better qualified to meet the divine-centered perspective of the end of the vision report. Fifth, the close intertextual link to the vision in Dan 7 with its Day of Atonement setting of the judgment scene provides additional evidence for such a setting in Dan 8:14.3


2Gane, Cult and Character, 300-302, 318-323.

3See the intertextual analysis of the relationship between Dan 8:9-14 and Dan 7 (below).
In sum, while many cultic features of the vision report in Dan 8 could be understood also in terms of rededication, other significant features make such an association unlikely and discredit rededication as the macrotheme of this passage. Rather, the macrotheme of the vision report should be seen in the Day of Atonement.

Finally, allusions to cultic terminology and the Day of Atonement already appear in the first part of the vision report and prepare the reader to encounter these themes in its second, highly dramatic part. Therefore, I will turn to the terminology of 8:3-8 that anticipates the themes of 8:9-14.

Semantic Fields in Daniel 8:3-8 in Anticipation of Daniel 8:9-14

Some of the themes and motifs in the vision report about the horn are found also in the first part of the vision (Dan 8:3-8). Particularly prominent is, of course, terminology in the semantic fields of power, control, and violence. Almost every clause contains lexemes from these: נשים "stand" or "withstand" (8:3, 4, 6, 7); קיום "horn" (8:3 [2x], 5, 6, 7, 8); יז "gore" (8:4); י and "hand" or "power" (8:4, 7); יב燊 "come" (8:5, 6); יבש "rage" (8:6), יבש "strength" or "power" (8:6, 7); יבש היס "hitpalpel "become furious" (8:7); יבש יבש hif. "strike" (8:7); יבש יבש "smash" (8:7, 8), יבש hif. "throw (to earth)" (8:7); יבש "trample" (8:7); יבש יבש "be powerful" (8:8). The use of lexemes of the same semantic fields in vss. 9-10 is therefore a continuation of the thematic development in vss. 3-8.¹

Cultic terminology, however, is also present in the first part of the vision report and can be found in the use of specific animal terms. The distinct use of animal imagery

¹For example, the keywords that describe in vss. 10-12 the activity of casting down (לעון) and trampling ( ללכת) link the section of the horn with the previous section of the he-goat (vs. 7).
in Dan 8 demands an explanation. In modern times, the animal imagery in Dan 8, and also in Dan 7, has been interpreted against the background of astrological geography in which signs of the zodiac represent specific countries. However, the weaknesses of this theory—for example, the problematic use of sources for astrological geography, or the questionable assigning of the symbols ram and goat to their supposed countries—provide a reason to look for a better explanation.

A suggestion with some plausibility is that the animal terms in Dan 8 are used as metaphorical representations, as elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible. The animal כבש “ram” is probably the most common animal term to metaphorically designate leaders, princes, nobles, and similar personnel. However, the terms that are employed for the goat in Dan

---

1 An astrological background to the use of the animal imagery of Dan 8 was first proposed by Franz Cumont (“La plus ancienne géographie astrologique,” *Klio* 9 [1909]: 263-273, esp. 273) at the suggestion of F. C. Burkitt, and elaborated with regard to Dan 7 by André Caquot (“Sur les quatre bêtes de Daniel VII,” *Semitica* 5 [1955]: 6-13). Several commentators have taken up this idea (for Dan 8 see, e.g., Bentzen, 69; Lacocque, *Daniel*, 157; Goldingay, *Daniel*, 203, 208-209).

2 John Day shows that Teucer’s zodiacal system, which Caquot used, is questionable as background to Dan 8, since in Teucer’s system the goat stands for Syria whereas Dan 8:21 states that the goat represents Greece (*God’s Conflict with the Dragon and the Sea: Echoes of a Canaanite Myth in the Old Testament*, University of Cambridge Oriental Publications, no. 35 [Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1985], 154-155). Ernest C. Lucas points out several weaknesses of the astrological geography theory: (1) One needs to draw on different schemes of astrological geography to explain Dan 8 for no one scheme explains the links of animals and countries in Dan 8 (and in Dan 7); (2) none of the sources for astrological geography is earlier than the first century AD (the fragmentary text attributed to Teucer of Babylon is from that time); and (3) the likelihood of the ram as astrological symbol in Babylon is extremely doubtful (“The Sources of Daniel’s Animal Imagery,” 177-182; *Daniel*, 168, 213-214; cf. also idem, “Daniel: Resolving the Enigma,” *VT* 50 [2000]: 70-71). Gzella follows Lucas and Day and discusses in addition why the ram as an astrological symbol for Persia is highly doubtful (130-133). Cf. Behrens, 319 n. 18.

3 “Ram” as a symbolic designation for political and military dignitaries is found in Exod 15:5; 2 Kgs 24:15; Jer 4:22; Ezek 17:13; 30:13; 31:11, 14; 32:20; 39:18; Pss 2:5; 58:2; Job 41:17 (see Patrick D. Miller, Jr., “Animal Names as Designation in Ugaritic and Hebrew,” *UF* 2 [1970]: 181-182; cf. also Robin Wakely, “כֹבֶשׁ [# 380],” *NIDOTTE*, 1:373-375). Judg 5:8 and Ps 29:1 could be further possible examples, though only after text-critical decisions (Miller, “Animal Names,” 186).
8 are not utilized in such a metaphorical way anywhere else in the Hebrew Bible. And the term הָבָשׂ "male goat," which can stand metaphorically for rulers (Isa 14:9; Zech 10:3), does not occur in Dan 8, which raises the question as to why it was not used in this chapter if the animal imagery was intended to refer to rulers and nations. The metaphorical usage of animal imagery for worldly powers does present a plausible yet not a completely sufficient explanation for the specific use of animal imagery in Dan 8.

The proposal forwarded here is that the animal imagery of Dan 8 functions on the basis of inner-biblical allusions evoking cultic imagery. In contrast to the unclean hybrid creatures of the vision of Dan 7 the usage of clean animals in the vision of Dan 8 could be understood as an intentional reference to cultic activity, particularly since the “central element” of the vision is “the profanation of the sacred” and the perversion of the cult. In fact, all the animal names mentioned in Dan 8 belong to the group of sacrificial animals: לֵוָא “ram” (8:3, 4, 6, 7 [4x], 20), הָבָשׂ “he-goat” (8:5 [2x], 8, 21), גָּז “goat” (8:5, 8), and דִּבָּר “hairy one” > “he-goat” (8:21).

The word לֵוָא “ram” is a sacrificial term. Out of 155 times in the Hebrew Bible, it

Following Miller, Gzella stresses that against the biblical background the animals of Dan 8 function in general as metaphors for rulers or worldly powers, expressing strength and leadership (133-138).

4גָּז “goat” is used once in a simile in 1 Kgs 20:27 to describe the small number of Israelite warriors as “two little flocks of goats” in comparison with the large Aramaean army.

2Other animal terms can also stand metaphorically for leaders but are not used in Dan 8 (see Miller, “Animal Names,” 180-186).

3Gzella, 8.

occurs 59 times in cultic contexts. The expression דְּמַיִם "a/one ram," with which the ram is surprisingly introduced in Dan 8:3, occurs 21 times. In these texts “a/one ram” is always, together with other animals, destined to be a burnt offering. Thus, דְּמַיִם in Dan 8 “conceals a massive allusion to the Old Testament sacrificial cult, which is explicitly mentioned for the first time in Dan 8:1b.” Perhaps there is even an allusion to the Day of Atonement via Gen 22:13, but this requires a text-critical decision. That the expression דְּמַיִם is used intentionally can also be seen in the difference between

1 Péter-Contesse fails to mention that this term appears also in Dan 8.

2 Seventeen times as דְּמַיִם (Num 7:15, 21, 27, 33, 39, 45, 51, 57, 63, 69, 75, 81; 28:27; 29:2, 8, 36; Dan 8:3) and four times as דְּמַיִם (Lev 16:5; Num 6:14; 28:11, 19). There is a text-critical variant in Gen 22:13 which also could be taken into consideration, for the MT דְּמַיִם is often read as דְּמַיִם by the versions (Samaritan Pentateuch, LXX) and most commentators.


4 If דְּמַיִם in Gen 22:13 indeed should be read as דְּמַיִם, one could argue for an intertextual relation between this text and Dan 8:3 (suggested to me by Jacques Doukhan and David Resendes), for Abraham and Daniel share a similar experience of sight that is expressed in corresponding terminology: “Then Abraham raised his eyes and looked, and behold, one ram,” and Daniel reports “Then I lifted my eyes and looked, and behold, one ram”:

   דְּמַיִם אֲשֶׁר הֵרֵאשׁ (Gen 22:13)
   דְּמַיִם אֲשֶׁר הֵרֵאשׁ (Dan 8:3).

Further in both accounts the attention is drawn immediately to the horns of the ram. It is of course intriguing that the Akedah (Gen 22) is connected to the Day of Atonement (Lev 16) by terminological links. דְּמַיִם “burnt offering,” לֵוַי “ram,” and לֵוַי ניֵף “appear” appear together only at the end of the Akedah (Gen 22:13-14), the ordination of priests (Lev 8-9; esp. 9:2-4), and the Day of Atonement (Lev 16; esp. 16:1-5) (Stanley D. Walters, “Wood, Sand, and Stars: Structure and Theology in Gn 22:1-19,” TJS 3 [1987]: 305-306, 309-310). This would be an indication that לֵוַי in Dan 8:3 is in fact alluding to the Day of Atonement, of course bearing in mind that this argument is dependent upon a text-critical decision in Gen 22:13. However, there are also plausible explanations to keep לֵוַי in Gen 22:13 intact, understanding לֵוַי as “when” to express “temporal immediacy” so that Abraham saw the ram the instant it was snagged (Marvin H. Pope, “The Timing of the Snagging of the Ram, Genesis 22:13,” Biblical Archaeologist 49/2 [1986]: 114-117), or similarly as “immediately after” (Gordon J. Wenham, Genesis 16-50, WBC, vol. 1B |Dallas: Word, 1994], 99), or as “another” to refer to “another ram” in comparison to Isaac who virtually was to be the first ram (Victor P. Hamilton, The Book of Genesis: Chapters 18–50, NICOT |Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1995], 113).
the introduction of the ram as an indeterminate entity and the introduction of the he-goat as a determinate entity (8:5).¹

The term מָעָלָה "goat" occurs six times in the Hebrew Bible. In Dan 8 it occurs as מָעָלָה מָעָלָה (8:5) as well as in the phrases מָעָלָה מָעָלָה "male goat" (8:5, 8) and מָעָלָה מָעָלָה "the shaggy goat" (8:21). מָעָלָה is the main term used for the designation of the second animal of the vision. Outside of Dan 8, מָעָלָה occurs only in 2 Chr 29:21 and Ezra 8:35, both in sacrificial contexts.² Thus the term can be designated as sacrificial language.³

The word מָעָלָה "(shaggy) goat," which occurs in Dan 8:21 together with מָעָלָה "goat," is a cultic word par excellence. It occurs fifty-nine times in the Hebrew Bible, of which forty-four times are in cultic contexts (seven times for the goat for Azazel in Lev 16).⁴

Note that the distribution of the terms מָעָלָה "ram," מָעָלָה "goat," and מָעָלָה "goat" shows its highest density in the Pentateuch—particularly in Lev 16, Num 7 and 29—and

¹Schindele, "Möglichkeiten und Grenzen." 37. Gzelka, with many commentators, regards מָעָלָה as "an explicit marker of indetermination" and perceives an intentional contrast between the ram, which is indeterminate, and the attacking he-goat, which is determinate (94-95), but he fails to recognize the allusive force of the phrase מָעָלָה מָעָלָה.

²On the cultic context of 2 Chr 29:21 see below. The other text in Ezra 8:35 mentions that after Ezra and the exiles arrived safely in Jerusalem, they offered burnt offerings to YHWH: "12 bulls for all Israel, 96 rams [מְלָאכֶת], 77 lambs, 12 male goats for a purification offering [מְלָאכֶת מְלָאכֶת]" (cf. מְלָאכֶת מְלָאכֶת "goat for a purification offering" in Num 29:22, 28, 31, 34, 38; and the fuller versions in Num 28:15, 22, 30; 29:5, 11, 16, 19, 25). This is the same combination of sacrifices as offered at the dedication of the second temple (Ezra 6:17) and at the rededication of the first temple by Hezekiah (1 Chr 29:21).

³Péter-Contesse, 70.

⁴Ibid.
in Ezekiel. Hence, possible allusions of the animal imagery in Dan 8 might be to the Day of Atonement (Lev 16; Num 29:7-11), the consecration of the tabernacle (Num 7), or the cultic calendar in general (Num 28 and 29).

It is worthwhile to take a closer look at 2 Chr 29:21, since this is the only passage in the Hebrew Bible where all of the three terms used for the animals in the vision of Dan 8 appear. Second Chronicles 29 describes the cleansing of the temple and its rededication under the rule of Hezekiah. The prescription of the preparations and the ritual itself is “different from anything prescribed or described elsewhere in the Bible.”

Still, there are several possible allusions in 2 Chr 29:20-24 to the Day of

---

1 “ram” occurs at least four times per chapter in Lev 8, 9; Num 7, 23, 28, 29; Ezek 40, 46; Dan 8; “goat” occurs at least four times per chapter in Num 7, 29; Ps 59; and “goat” occurs at least four times per chapter in Gen 36; Lev 16; Num 7, 29; Deut 2; Ezek 35. “goat” also appears often in the Psalms, whereas “ram” is rarely used in the Psalms and the Wisdom literature, and “goat” not at all in this section of the Hebrew Bible. In Lev 16 all terms occur: “ram” in Lev 16:3, 5; “goat” in Lev 16:5; and “goat” in Lev 16:5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 18, 20, 21 [2x], 22 [2x], 26, 27 (i.e., 14 times in Lev 16; that is the highest number of occurrences of “goat” in any chapter [13 times in Num 7]).

2 (2 Chr 29:21, 22, 32), (29:21), (29:21). “goat” occurs two verses later in vs. 23.

3 After the Levites had carried out the cleansing and all the preparations for the consecration, Hezekiah and the princes of the city (Hebrew: שבעים) went up to the house of Yhwh (vs. 20). In their presence the Aaronite priests offered “seven bulls, seven rams (סבטי כבשים), seven lambs, and seven male goats (סבטי הובילים, נגניבים) for a sin offering for the kingdom, the sanctuary, and Judah” (vs. 21). Only the goats were for the sin offering, the others were for burnt offerings. Particularly the offering of the male goats is described in more detail. It is mentioned that the priest brought the goats before the king and the assembly and then laid their hands on them (vs. 23). After slaughtering the goats the priests purified (סבטי piel) the altar with the blood of the goats “to atone for all Israel!” (Lev 16:24). After this central sacrificial rite the king ordered to offer the burnt offering (vs. 27). The text is closed with “and the service of the house of Yhwh was established (again)” (vs. 35).

4 Japhet, 924. It is probably paralleled the closest by the sin offerings described in Ezekiel as a component of the cleansing rituals for the altar (43:18-27; cf. Num 7:87-88) and the sanctuary (45:18-20), of the purification of the priests (44:27), and of the preparation for Passover (45:21-23).
Atonement. First, the sacrificial animals used in 2 Chr 29 are similar to those prescribed in Lev 16, although their number is different. Second, as on the Day of Atonement and on other calendric festivals, the sacrificial animals, at least the goats for the נָחַן (2 Chr 29:24), are killed by the priest, whereas for the other sin offerings, the animals are killed by the one who brings the offering. Third, the sin offering explicitly is for the sanctuary (2 Chr 29:21; Lev 16:16, 20). Fourth, the laying of both hands (dual) upon the goats occurs in the Hebrew Bible only in 2 Chr 29:23 and Lev 16:21. And fifth, the goats are intended to atone for the sins of all the people (2 Chr 29:24; Lev 16:17, 33, 34): lexical links are the use of the phrase יָשָׁר יְדִי with “Israel” as object (2 Chr 29:24; Lev 16:34), and the all-inclusiveness in regard to the people which is expressed by יִשְׂרָאֵל (2 Chr 29:24; Lev 16:17, 33).

Whatever ritual 2 Chr 29:20-24 exactly describes, the terms used in 2 Chr 29:21

1 A potential connection between the ritual in 2 Chr 29 and the Day of Atonement ritual, or a modeling of the one after the other, is noted by Martin J. Selman, 2 Chronicles: A Commentary, TOTC (Downers Grove: Inter-Varsity, 1994), 490; Richard L. Pratt, Jr., 1 and 2 Chronicles (Feam, Ross-shire: Mentor, 1998), 427; Steven S. Tuell, First and Second Chronicles, IBC (Louisville: John Knox, 2001), 214.

2 See Johannes Hänel, “Das Recht des Opferschlachtens in der chronistischen Literatur,” ZAW 55 (1937): 46-47. Some argue that the plural third-person “they” in vss. 21, 22, and 23a is impersonal and should be rendered by the passive (so Japhet, 926).


for the sacrificial animals and the reminiscences of the Day of Atonement reinforce the
idea that the specific use of animal imagery in the vision of Dan 8 has a cultic connotation
and, more specifically, prepares the reader of the vision report for the encounter of
thematic connections with the Day of Atonement.

The animal imagery in Dan 8 also shows a more direct link to the Day of
Atonement. In Lev 16, the two male goats that should be offered for a sin offering
(אַרְּמָה) are called "two male goats," and there is also "one ram"
for a burnt offering (16:5).¹ Later the goats are called "two goats" (16:7, 8),
or, when only one of the goats is referred to, "the goat" (16:9, 10, 18, 21, 22a, 22b,
26). The goat to be sacrificed is called "the goat of the sin offering" (16:15,
27), and the goat to be sent into the wilderness is called "the live goat"
(16:20, 21). Interestingly, the goat in the vision of Dan 8 is called in the interpretation
"the goat, the goat" (Dan 8:21), as if the angel Gabriel clarifies that the
goat of the vision is a "live goat," the designation used for the goats at the Day of
Atonement.²

In summary, the specific use of the imagery of ram and he-goat should be
interpreted as cultic and is in accordance with and anticipates the cultic terminology that
becomes much more prominent later in the vision report. The animal terms allude to the

¹The connection between the animal terms in Dan 8 and Lev 16:5-6 has been noted by
Doukhan (Daniel: The Vision of the End, 26).

²Since שֵׁנָּה appears to be a loan-word from Aramaic, it is suggested that שֵׁנָּה is added as the
Hebrew equivalent by way of explanation (e.g., Charles, 216 [{"some scribe added the Hebrew
synonym"}; Lucas, Daniel, 207).
Day of Atonement, arguably in a subtle way, but they stand out particularly in light of the cultic climax in Dan 8:11-14.

**Spatial Imagery**

Another literary feature is the shift in movement of the horn from the horizontal (earthly) to the vertical (heavenly) sphere. Staying within the symbolic imagery, the horn extends horizontally on earth until it comes to the beauty (גַּלְגַּל, vs. 9b), and then it rises up vertically to the host of heaven, the stars, and to the commander of the host.\(^1\)

The spatial allusions in Dan 8 convey a strong sense of "aggressive movement between earth and heaven."\(^2\) References to earth and ground (vss. 10b, 12b) stand in contrast to references to heaven ("host of heaven" in vs. 10a; "stars" in vs. 10b) and occur always in combative context, usually when an opponent is thrown to the ground in defeat (cf. 8:5 [2x], 7). The horn throws some of the host and the stars to earth and tramples them, it throws the foundations of the sanctuary down—"to the earth" seems to be implied—and it throws truth to the ground. The horn is therefore correctly designated as *Himmelsstürmer* who interferes with the celestial realm and causes disorder.

Lebram observes an alleged disharmony in vss. 11-12a in which the horn is back on earth, removing the sacrifice, after it was already acting in heaven (vs. 10). Besides the gender change, for Lebram this is reason enough to decide that vss. 11-12a must be an

---

\(^1\)Such a shift of movement between vs. 9b and vs. 10a has been detected by Lebram ("König Antiochus," 768) and by Shea ("Spatial Dimensions," 497-526; cf. Rodriguez, "Daniel 8, 9," 4), while Hasel identifies a horizontal expansion of the horn in vss. 9-10 and a vertical movement of the horn into heavenly realities in vs. 11-12 ("The ‘Little Horn’" [1986], 381-383).

The problem with such an assumption is, however, that Lebram interprets completely earthly. Yet, if is understood to refer to the continual service and worship of God and to the high priestly activity of the commander of the host, as shown above, then its removal in vs. 11b does not interrupt the vertical movement in the activities of the horn. Thus, it is not necessary to pose a recurring up-and-down movement by the horn with changing spheres of action. Rather the horn increasingly develops vertically into a colossus that bridges the earthly and heavenly realms.

Formally the horn’s development is marked by the keyword that identifies three dimensions of the growing of the horn: the horizontal dimension (qal in vs. 9b), the vertical dimension (qal in vs. 10a), and the inwardly vertical dimension (hif. in vs. 11a). The prepositions used for the development of the horn emphasize the different spatial aspects: is employed for horizontal movement (vs. 9b) and for vertical development, be it outwardly or inwardly (vss. 10a, 11a).

In sum, vss. 9-11 are both formally and thematically structured in a horizontal (vs. 9) and vertical movement (vss. 10-11), which once more creates the dramatic effect that vs. 11 needs in order to be considered as the presumptuous zenith of the horn.

“Leitwörter” and Keywords in Daniel 8:9-14

“Leitwörter”

Another avenue to trace the key themes of a passage is to look for its Leitwörter and to establish the semantic fields these Leitwörter can be assigned to. Paying attention

1Lebram, Daniel, 95.
to those expressions that appear several times in a text enhances the delineation of the

The semantic concept of the *Leitwort*, which is based on emphatic repetition, was formulated by Martin Buber. According to Buber, the *Leitwort* is “a word or word root that is meaningfully repeated within a text or sequence of texts or complex of texts; those who attend to these repetitions will find a meaning of the text revealed or clarified, or at any rate made more emphatic.” The *Leitwort* has two functions: to emphasize and clarify the content or central themes of a passage and to establish a relationship between two or more passages within a text.

An investigation of the *Leitwörter* in Dan 8 has been undertaken by D. Bauer. Bauer defines a *Leitwort* as a root that occurs at least three times in a specific text. This definition is more formal and in a sense more practical than Buber’s, since it provides an objective criteria to isolate the *Leitwörter* of a text. It lacks, however, the notion of emphasis and so each root that occurs at least three times is considered to be a *Leitwort*, although not every one may play a significant role in the text. However, if necessary, the

---

1 The German term *Leitwort* (plural: *Leitwörter*) is kept untranslated here as a technical term. Different renditions used elsewhere are “guiding phrase,” “leading word” or “leadword,” “keyword,” and “catchword.”


3 Ibid., 744.


5 Ibid., 78.
differentiation according to emphatic repetition could still be drawn after all the words
and word stems with at least three occurrences have been singled out.¹

In following Bauer, the vocabulary in Dan 8 contains forty-five Leitwörter, which
are listed according to their first occurrence in table 25.²

The distribution of these Leitwörter is such that all of them are introduced in the
first half of Dan 8, the last Leitwort being introduced in vs. 13b. Most of their
occurrences are found in 8:1-14: 134 occurrences over against 88 occurrences in 8:15-27.
Obviously, the author of Dan 8 “shows his crucial point, his interest of statement, within
the first half of the text.”³

The Leitwörter can be classified in basically four semantic fields or isotopies that
concentrate in different parts of Dan 8.⁴ The semantic field “first-person narrator” is
found at the beginning (vss. 1-2), in the middle (vs. 15), and at the end (vs. 27). The
semantic field “perception” shows equal distribution, with a concentration at the
beginning (vss. 1-3). The semantic field “power, control, and violence” concentrates in
the vision report and the audition (vss. 3-13). And the semantic field “holiness,
sanctuary” shows a high concentration in vss. 11b-14c (ten of the twelve occurrences of
טִירָא, the root שִׁירָא, and וְעָֽיֵר). What the inventory of vocabulary and the thematic

¹A difference in nomenclature is that the study of Leitwörter belongs for Buber to stylistic
analysis, while for Bauer it comes under semantics and text-grammatical pragmatics.

²Bauer, “Daniel 8,” 78-79. For the sake of coherence with my work, I substituted Bauer’s
text references to vs. 13 (he follows Schindele’s division in 13a-13f [Schindele, “Textkonstituierung
zu Daniel 8,” 13-14]) with my own references according to a division into vs. 13a-13c.

³Bauer, “Daniel 8,” 79.

Table 25. *Leitwörter* in Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leitwort</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Leitwort</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>פַּ בּ (9x):</td>
<td>1a, 1a, 20c, 21a, 21d, 22c, 23a, 23a, 27d</td>
<td>ד (4x):</td>
<td>4c, 7h, 22d, 24b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נוֹ (7x):</td>
<td>1a, 2a, 2e, 13c, 15c, 17g, 26e</td>
<td>נֶהֶל (8x):</td>
<td>4e, 8a, 8b, 9b, 10a, 11a, 21b, 25c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר (15x):</td>
<td>1a, 1c, 2a, 2b, 2e, 3b, 4a, 6b, 7a, 15a, 15f, 16e, 20b, 26a, 27c</td>
<td>נִוֹ (6x):</td>
<td>5a, 15d, 16e, 17e, 23a, 27f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר (6x):</td>
<td>1b, 2c, 2f, 5a, 15b, 27a</td>
<td>נֶה (3x):</td>
<td>5c, 5e, 8a, 21a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר (4x):</td>
<td>1b, 2d, 15b, 27a</td>
<td>נֶחֶ (4x):</td>
<td>5c, 6a, 17a, 17b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר (4x):</td>
<td>1c, 3h, 19e, 23a</td>
<td>נֶה (3x):</td>
<td>5e, 14b, 26a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר (8x):</td>
<td>2b, 2f, 5a, 7e, 7h, 15a, 19c, 27a</td>
<td>נֶה (6x):</td>
<td>5c, 5d, 7f, 10b, 12b, 18a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵר (6x):</td>
<td>2d, 6b, 19c, 20b, 21c, 26b</td>
<td>נֵר (3x):</td>
<td>5d, 7a, 18b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>2f, 3d, 6b</td>
<td>נ (5x):</td>
<td>6c, 7e, 22d, 24a, 24b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>3a, 5f, 21c</td>
<td>נ (4x):</td>
<td>7d, 8b, 22a, 25f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (4x):</td>
<td>3c, 5b, 15e, 19b</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>7f, 11c, 12b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (8x):</td>
<td>3d, 4a, 6a, 7a, 7e, 7h, 20a</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>7g, 10c, 13f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>3d, 13a, 13b</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>8b, 24a, 24f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (12x):</td>
<td>3d, 4b, 6b, 7e, 15f, 17a, 18c, 18c, 22b, 22c, 23a, 25e</td>
<td>נ (4x):</td>
<td>8c, 8c, 22b, 22c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (8x):</td>
<td>3d, 4b, 5c, 6b, 7e, 17c, 18a, 23a</td>
<td>נ (5x):</td>
<td>10a, 10b, 11a, 12a, 13c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (9x):</td>
<td>3e, 3f, 5f, 6a, 7d, 8b, 9a, 20c, 21b</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>11a, 25e, 25e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>3f, 3g, 3h</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>11b, 12a, 13d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>3g, 9a, 9a</td>
<td>נ (6x):</td>
<td>11c, 13a, 13b, 13f, 14c, 24f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>4a, 26f, 27b</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>12a 13c, 23a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (5x):</td>
<td>4b, 7e, 7h, 22d, 24b</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>12d, 24b, 25b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>4c, 5d, 27f</td>
<td>נ (3x):</td>
<td>13a, 13b, 18a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: *Leitwörter* occurring in Dan 8:9-14 are highlighted.

The distribution in 8:9-14 has shown is therefore also evident in the distribution of the *Leitwörter* in Dan 8. Verses 9-14 contain mainly *Leitwörter* in the semantic fields of power/control (vss. 9a-13c: נֵר, נוֹ, נֵר, נו) and holiness (vss. 11b-14c: נוֹ, נוֹ, נוֹ, נו, נוֹ, נו), with a few *Leitwörter* of perception ( Afro, לְוֹ, נו, נו, נו), in vss. 13-14.
Thus, the *Leitworter* effectively create a thematic movement in Dan 8:1-14 that Bauer describes aptly as follows:

After an introduction, in which the narrator introduces his own person and his "perception," he gets onto the subject of "power, control, and violence." Towards the end of the exposition of this theme emerges as new theme "holiness." It stands quite massive, like a "drumbeat," at the end of the first part of the text. This movement from the "I" of the narrator and his "perception" over the theme "power, control, and violence" to the theme "holiness" forms a climax with its culmination between 11b and 14c.¹

The thematic goal of the vision report is naturally to be found in that semantic field to which the thematic progression leads up: holiness.

**Keyword בַּיִת and the “Hubris-Fall” Pattern**

The concept of the keyword (*Schlüsselwort*) is closely associated with the concept of the *Leitwort*. The term "keyword" is used in this study to refer to words that contribute significantly to the understanding of the text’s structure and meaning. Such a keyword may be a *Leitwort* (e.g., the verbal root בַּיִת in 8:4, 8, 9b, 10a, 11a, 25), but it may also be an expression that occurs less than three times but is strategically placed at a crucial point in the text (e.g., בַּיִת in 8:14c).

The meaning of the individual keywords in Dan 8:9-14 has already been analyzed in chapter 2 in the various semantic analyses of words and phrases. It is therefore not necessary to repeat these analyses and their conclusions. Going beyond them, in the present section the keyword בַּיִת is examined with regard to both its structural and thematic purpose.

¹Ibid., 80.
An extremely important literary function can be assigned to the verbal root בִּנְדֵל which, without doubt, is the keyword in Dan 8. It is inserted at various points in Dan 8, having as its subject the different agents mentioned in the vision as well as the king in the interpretation: in vss. 4 (ram), 8 (he-goat), 9b, 10a, 11a (all: horn), and 25c (king). The occurrences of the verbal root בִּנְדֵל in the vision report of Dan 8 line up to an intentional literary crescendo of boastful activity by adding stronger dimensions to בִּנְדֵל, with its climax appropriately at the end of the vision report in vs. 11, as shown in table 26.

### Table 26. Literary Crescendo of the Verbal Root בִּנְדֵל

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Actor</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Extension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:4</td>
<td>ram</td>
<td>בִּנְדֵל hif.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:8</td>
<td>male goat</td>
<td>בִּנְדֵל hif.</td>
<td>exceedingly (literal: up to very)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:9b</td>
<td>horn</td>
<td>בִּנְדֵל qal</td>
<td>exceedingly toward the south and toward the sunrise and toward the beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:10a</td>
<td>horn</td>
<td>בִּנְדֵל qal</td>
<td>up to the host of heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11a</td>
<td>horn</td>
<td>בִּנְדֵל hif.</td>
<td>even* up to the commander of the host</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The emphatic position of בִּנְדֵל before the verb is here expressed by “even.”

1 Note also the adjective of the root בִּנְדֵל in the phrase בִּנְדֵל nֶפֶר nֶפֶר in Dan 8:8, 21.

2 See Pröbstle, “Linguistic Analysis of Daniel 8:11, 12,” 85. A progression related to the verb “magnify itself” is also noted by Collins who locates the delayed climax of the pattern in vs. 25 (Daniel, FOTL, 85, 88). For Goldingay and Bucher-Gillmayer the בִּנְדֵל-pattern works toward a climax in vs. 11, where בִּנְדֵל is used for the last time in the vision (Goldingay, Daniel, 197; Bucher-Gillmayer, “Gedankenverlauf,” 63), whereas for Lucas the keyword בִּנְדֵל enhances the building up to a climax of the vision in vs. 12, which for him is the end of the vision report (Daniel, 210). However, Lucas agrees with Collins that the climax of the whole chapter is the description of the referent of the horn and its downfall in vss. 23-25.
Although the verbal root ניל is constructed in different stems (Qal in vss. 9b and 10a; Hiphil in vss. 4, 8, and 11a), the literary crescendo still functions, because ניל in the Qal with human subject is very close to the inwardly transitive use or the reflexive use of ניל in the Hiphil.¹ The difference between Qal and Hiphil forms is, however, not “purely stylistic,”² because the Hiphil forms have a specific structural function. It is the Hiphil of ניל that expresses most poignantly the idea of self-magnification and thus ניל is used to describe all three powers—ram, he-goat, and horn—at the height of their arrogant activities.

There is more to it. The arrangement of the keyword ניל is intentional to create a triple pattern of the theme “hubris leads to a great fall” (see table 27). The Hiphil of ניל is used at specific places in the description of the ram’s and the goat’s activities, namely to designate their final activity just before their fall into ruin. The last activity of the ram is ניל “and he made himself great” (vs. 4), after which immediately follows the description of the he-goat who puts an end to the ram’s power. As the he-goat reaches his might, the last verb used is again ניל “he magnified himself” exceedingly (vs. 8a), after which immediately the large horn of the goat is broken (vs. 8b). The “hubris leads to a great fall” theme is highlighted in vs. 8b by two additional features: first, by the phrase ניל “but as soon as he was mighty,” indicating the sequential relation between making oneself great and the breaking of the power, and second, by giving the horn to be broken, which was formerly designated as conspicuous (vs. 5), now the adjectival

¹Bergmann, Ringgren, and Mosis, 2:403-404.
²Pace Goldingay, Daniel, 197.
attribute “great” (קדוש), repeating the root חלך and thus again emphasizing the insolent greatness of the goat’s horn.

Table 27. “Hubris Leads to a Great Fall” Theme in Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Main Actor</th>
<th>Hubris</th>
<th>Fall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ram</td>
<td>magnified himself (יֶלֶד hif., vs. 4)</td>
<td>Fall immediate:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>end of the ram (vs. 5-7) whose horns are broken (שבב in vs. 7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goat</td>
<td>magnified himself exceedingly (יֶלֶד hif., vs. 8a)</td>
<td>Fall immediate:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>large horn broken (שבב) (vs. 8b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>grew exceedingly (יָרֵת hif., vs. 9b)</td>
<td>Fall delayed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grew up (יָרֵת, vs. 10a)</td>
<td>holy restored (vs. 14c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>magnified himself (יֶלֶד hif., vs. 11a)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King</td>
<td>in his heart he magnified himself (יֶלֶד hif., vs. 25c)</td>
<td>Fall immediate:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>king broken (שבב) (vs. 25f)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After the “hubris leads to a great fall” theme has been clearly demonstrated two times, and thus is established as a pattern, it is launched once more in the description of the third power, the horn. The haughtiness of the horn is vehemently increased by the triple use of יָרֵת.

Regarding content, the יָרֵת-pattern that structures the vision thematically culminates in vs. 11 with the use of the keyword יָרֵת (vs. 11a). The structure of this pattern is shown in table 28.
Table 28. נֵרַד Pattern in Daniel 8:9-11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Affected Object</th>
<th>Spatial Dimension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Verse 9</td>
<td>נֵרַד qal + בָּשׂ south, east (peers?), beauty</td>
<td>horizontal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse 10</td>
<td>נֵרַד qal + הָעַד host of heaven/stars</td>
<td>vertical</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verse 11</td>
<td>נֵרַד hif. + בּוֹד commander of the host</td>
<td>vertical &amp; inward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is readily seen that the development of the horn described by the keyword נֵרַד takes place in three dimensions: vs. 9b describes the geographical greatness, vs. 10 the religious actions against the host of heaven, and vs. 11 the self-magnification unto the commander of the host.¹

However, only the last occurrence of נֵרַד is in the Hiphil stem, as it has been used at the end of the activities of the ram and of the he-goat. Verse 11a describes the ultimate "making oneself great" because the prince of the host, up to which the horn makes itself great, appears to be the highest measure available. It apparently is impossible to make oneself higher than this. Hence, there needs to be a fall. In other words, the use of the keyword נֵרַד in vs. 11a demands by its strategic placement previously at the end of the description of the ram and of the he-goat an inevitable downfall of the arrogant horn.

In fact, the horn moving into heaven conforms to the "Lucifer pattern” as found in

¹Gese, 408; Vogel, “Cultic Motif,” 84-87.
Isa 14:12-15. 1 If Dan 8:10-11 builds upon such a pattern, and there appears to be enough evidence to suggest it, the horn is anticipated to fall. For God brings down the haughty one(s), and whoever exalts himself up to heaven will inevitably experience defeat. The fate of some of the host or stars is expected to become the fate of the horn, namely to fall down from heaven to earth.

The question raised is, When will the power of the horn be broken? The brief but effective description of the success of the horn’s host in vs. 12c and 12d heightens the tension, for it is the first time that hubris does not lead to an immediate fall, but indeed appears to have divine-like success. 2 The interposing question in vs. 13 asks exactly...

1 Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 88 (cf. idem, Daniel [1993], 332). Many see a connection of some sort (allusion, elaboration) between Dan 8:10-12 and Isa 14:12-15. See, e.g., von Lengerke, 377; Kranichfeld, 293; Behrmann, 53-54; Prince, Daniel, 146; Driver, Daniel, 116; Montgomery, 334-335; Linder, 355; Jeffery, 474; Porteous, Daniel (1965), 124; Delcor, 173; Nickelsburg, Resurrection, 70, 75 n. 12; Baldwin, 157; Hartman and Di Lella, 236; Koch, Das Buch Daniel, 8 (idem, “Visionsbericht,” 422); Maier, 304; Niditch, 228-229; Goldingay, Daniel, 201, 210; Bartelmus, "םולימ ליהביו," 8:219 (cf. idem, "םולימ ליהביו," 101-102); Haag, Daniel, 67 (cf. idem, "Menschensohn," 180-182); Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 169-170; Smith-Christopher, 113; Buchanan, Daniel, 239; Redditt, 140; Day, Yahweh and the Gods and Goddesses of Canaan, 183-184; Gowan, Daniel, 120; Beyerle, 36-37. Terminological links between the two passages are found in Dan 8:10-11 and Isa 14:12-13 and consist of ה"考验" (vs. 12), י"י ה"earth" (vs. 12), י"י נלע ה"stars" (vs. 13), י"י ה"heaven" (vs. 13), and יד ה"rise" (vs. 13). Although there is "no significant reuse of vocabulary that unambiguously points back to Isaiah" it seems that "the use of Isaiahic texts elsewhere in Daniel" makes it "probable that there is a direct allusion to Isa 14" (Michael A. Knibb, "'You Are Indeed Wiser Than Daniel': Reflections on the Character of the Book of Daniel," in The Book of Daniel in the Light of New Findings, ed. A. S. van der Woude, BETL, no. 106 [Leuven: Leuven University Press, 1993], 410). More importantly, however, seems to be the thematic pattern for both passages show a common rebellion theme against the highest God accompanied with usurpatory intentions. Frequently, Isa 14:12-15, and hence also Dan 8:10-11, is considered to reflect traditional ancient Near Eastern myths of rebellion against the chief god, examples of which are suggested to be the Ugaritic myth of the morning star Athtar’s attempt to take over Baal’s throne, the Mesopotamian myth of Zu, the Hurrian-Hittite Kumari and Ullikummi texts, the Greek Titanomachis in Hesiod’s Theogony, Greek myth in Nonnos of the revolt of Typhon against Zeus (cf. Gowan, Daniel, 117). The horn’s hubris in Dan 8 has also been compared with the “Ezekiel’s Eden myth” of the fall in Ezek 28 (Margaret Barker, The Older Testament: The Survival of Themes from the Ancient Royal Cult in Sectarian Judaism and Early Christianity [London: SCPK, 1987], 236, 239).

2 Gzella notes the “novelty” that the horn’s “hybris has some initial success” (140).
about the end of the horn’s activities and thereby still intensifies the structural imbalance. This is rhetoric of suspense at its best.

The tension is resolved only by the positive statement of the last two words in vs. 14 (םִלֵּי הַגָּגָה), and finally by the negative statement of the last words of the actual interpretation in vs. 25. Indeed, vs. 25 again uses the keyword דֹּלֶה for the hubris of the king and then the keyword שֵׁבֶר “break” which was employed in the description of the fall of the ram (vs. 7) as well as of the fall of the he-goat’s mighty horn (vs. 8b). In this regard, Collins is correct when he finds the fulfillment of the fall of the horn delayed, not only by the angelic dialogue in vss. 13-14 but also by the epiphany of the angelic interpreter and most of his interpretation until in vs. 25 it is said that the king who magnified himself will finally be broken by no human hand.1 However, Collins obviously does not attribute to the positive פַּלַּק (vs. 14c) the crucial place which it merits in light of the arrangement of vss. 9-14, where it serves as divine countermeasure to the activities of the horn.2 The restoration of פַּלַּק certainly implies the downfall of the horn, which is then explicitly mentioned in vs. 25. If a literary function can be attributed to the absence of any reference to the horn’s fall in the vision report, it certainly is that it increases the emphasis on the positive activity expressed by פַּלַּק.

Characterization of the Horn Figure

The one fairly full-fledged character in 8:9-14 is the horn. Both the host of

1Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 88.

2Gzella also recognizes that vs. 14c describes the end of the horn in parallel to the end of the ram and of the he-goat (146).
heaven and the commander of the host are passive figures that are not at all characterized, though it is obvious that they belong to the good side. The character of the horn is expressed only through its action. There is no description of its character, nor any utterance by it in the vision. Therefore, the semantic fields that can be recognized in this passage play a significant role in the characterization of the horn figure.

Horn as King

One can easily recognize that the horn is presented as a powerful king. After the previous animals and horns, which symbolically stand for kingdoms and kings, the horn is naturally understood as another king or kingdom. Later in Dan 8, the interpretation of the vision substitutes the symbolic horn with בְּלֹא "king" (8:23). The military and royal terminology used in 8:9-12 confirms that the horn functions as king and royal leader of its army (ץִכְנֵה, vs. 12a).

Horn as Priest (Anti-Priest)

The involvement of the horn with the cultic matters suggests that it shows an intense interest in the cult. It is in its cultic interest that the horn differs from the previous kings and kingdoms in whose description the cultic element is almost totally absent. Whereas the activities of the ram and of the he-goat, as well as their collision, are described in military terms only, which point undoubtedly to the militaristic nature of the

---

To be sure, the angelic interpretation in Dan 8 contains such characterizing material: The king, which the horn symbolizes, is described as בְּלֹא אֲמִינוֹת יְדֵיהו "insolent and skilled in intrigue" (vs. 23), he acts with בָּשָׂד "shrewdness" and בָּשָׂד "deceit," and the psychological view reveals that בָּשָׂד "he will magnify himself in his heart" (vs. 25). Cf. the intertextual analysis of 8:23-26 (below).
events, the activities of the horn are described first in military language, but then in increasingly clearer cultic terminology. The horn not only interferes with the cult and the priestly function of the אָדֶּה הַוָּעַד. On top of that, the horn acts as priest itself. As the subject of the verb הָוָּעַד, the horn is presented as an official of the cult, since the subject of הָוָּעַד hif. + נ with the meaning “to set aside from, remove from” in a cultic context is typically an official of the cult, usually a priest. Furthermore, by magnifying itself to the נָעַד the horn obviously has ambitions to take the position of the commander of the host. It is then reasonable to assume that the horn takes away the tãmi’d from the commander of the host only to be itself in charge over it. Since the agent of a cultic tãmi’d activity is a priest, often the high priest, the horn takes the position of a (high) priest. And finally, if the preposition ב in vs. 12a is understood to mean that the horn sets a host “in control over” the tãmi’d (but probably בְּ should better be understood in the sense of “against”), the horn functions as the high priest who commands his own priestly host.

From the viewpoint of the book of Daniel, the horn oversteps its boundaries as a king when it gets involved in cultic matters. Such an offense must earn God’s disapproval and provoke divine punishment.

**Horn as God (Anti-YHWH)**

The motif of the Himmelsstürmer is expressed in that the horn rises toward the

---

1Whenever in the book of Daniel a king is involved in matters of cult and worship it is presented in a negative light and earns divine disapproval and judgment: Dan 1:2; chap. 3; 5:2-4, 20, 23; chap. 6; 9:26-27; 11:31, 36.
stars of heaven and even magnifies itself up to the commander of the host. The horn personifies arrogance, presumption, and usurpation of the prerogatives of the divine commander of the host. In striving for that commander's place, the horn is portrayed as presumptuously trying to be divine.

That the horn plays God is discernible in two other places as well. The first hint is the Niphal form חֶלֶק (8:12a), for the following reasons: A Niphal passive without explicit agent frequently indicates that God is the agent (passivum divinum), and the verb חֵלֶק is not seldom associated with divine action. The context, however, does not point to God as agent of חֶלֶק. This is not to say that the divine associations of the passive חֶלֶק should not receive attention, but they must be applied to the horn. Probably intentionally

Commentators agree that the horn represents an extremely arrogant, god-despising character or power, and the variety of designations for this figure and its actions is endless. For example, the horn is portrayed as "Himmelsstürmer" (Koch, Das Buch Daniel, 8; idem, "Visionsbericht," 421-422), "the antagonist of God in the vision [who] is an aggressor of the powers of cosmic order who charges into heaven, full of arrogance and adept in secret knowledge" (Lebram, Daniel, 93), "the arch villain" (Anderson, Signs and Wonders, 91), "archetype of arrogance" (Reid, Enoch and Daniel, 98), a person with an "excessively exaggerated urge for power" (Haag, Daniel, 11), or in a conscious anachronism as "the Antichrist" (Behrens, 331). The actions and the attitude of the horn are designated, for example, as "acts of pride and presumption" (Driver, Daniel, 116), "arrogant assault" (Lattey, 86), "sacredigious presumption" (Nötscher, Daniel, 43), "immeasurable arrogance" (Bentzen, 69), "iconoclastic campaign" (Saydon, 636), "God-defiant hubris" (Nelis, 96), "self-aggrandizement" (Kraeling, 57), and "megalomania" (Archer, 7:100).

Delcor uses the term "deification" (173), and Davies takes Dan 8:8-12 as "a picture of a king who aspires . . . ultimately to a divine status" (Daniel, 98).

From 71 Niphal forms in the Hebrew parts of Daniel the following function as divine passives: Dan 8:1 (2x), 14, 25; 9:24, 26e (?), 27 (?); 10:1a, 12; 11:36g; 12:10 (?).

The verb חֶלֶק is associated with divine action in 4 out of 17 cases in the Hebrew parts of Daniel (1:2, 9, 17; 9:10.), and in 19 out of 24 occurrences of חֶלֶק or חֵלֶק "give" in the Aramaic of Daniel (2:21, 23, 37, 38; 4:13, 14, 22, 29; 5:18, 19, 28; 7:4, 6, 11, 12, 14, 22, 27; 7:25).

See the comments in the section "The divine retaliation understanding" in chapter 2 above.
they suggest that the horn usurps the position of God and simulates his doing. In the act of giving a host against/over the tämîd, the horn delegates power, as God usually does, and demonstrates that it is the lord over the cult.

The second indication is the prospering of the host of the horn, the anti-host (ֹהַנְגִּלָה, 8:12c and 12d). As elaborated above, the theological significance of the verb נבָחַל hif., particularly when it occurs in sequence after the verb נָשָׁתָה (Gen 39:3, 23; Josh 1:8; Ps 1:3; 2 Chr 31:21), is that it frequently denotes God as the one who provides success to those in conformity with his will. However, in Dan 8:12 the horn is the reason why the host that conforms to the horn’s will prospers (in 8:24 it is the king himself who succeeds). The text portrays the horn as guarantor of the counter-host, exercising the divine role of providing success.

In sum, the text in Dan 8:9-12 characterizes the horn as arrogantly assuming the role of God. Because of such usurpation, the horn has correctly been designated as an “anti-YHWH.”

Horn as Chaos Force (Anti-Creator)

Finally, the horn seems to be portrayed as chaos force. In the symbolic language of Dan 8:10 it appears that the horn takes command over the whole creation, over heaven, earth, and the stars. It grows up to the host of heaven and throws down some of the stars to the earth. By bringing stars to earth the language implies on the symbolic level that the horn goes against the creation order and throws it into chaos. In light of this kind of

\[^{1}\text{Haag, Daniel, 11.}\]

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
“anti-creation language” in 8:9-12 the expression בֵּיתַר “evening-morning” in vs. 14b, being a clear allusion to creation, receives deeper significance. It signals that the destructive activities of the horn and its host are countered by an activity that is associated with creation.¹ Thus, the activity expressed by שִׁבְדֵי יָדִיע in vs. 14c is expected to restore or re-create what has been damaged by the horn. Here, the typical apocalyptic imagery that the end time resembles the primeval time (Endzeit gleicht Urzeit), or the end is like the beginning, proves to be true. Creation motifs are projected into the future.²

Summary

In summary, the horn is another נֶגֶרֶד. The horn is not only portrayed as a power in military terms but also as a power in priestly or cultic terms. It fulfills the role of a king and of a priest. Having its own host, it acts as another נֶגֶרֶד. The climax of the vision in Dan 8 describes an attack on the cult and the cultic personnel. The horn wages a cultic war. However, the grandiose pretensions of the “divine” horn should lead to an inevitable downfall.

With such a characterization it should not be surprising at all that the horn can be described as the earthly embodiment of the evil forces and of the ultimate opposition to the divine. Behind the reality symbolized by the horn stands nothing else than the

---

¹A similar creation motif is found in the Hurrian-Hittite song about Ullikummi in which the heaven-threatening diorite Ullikummi, who has violated the creation order of the separation between heaven and earth, is cut off by the same primordial copper cutting tool that had separated heaven and earth in creation (cf. Volkert Haas, Geschichte der hethitischen Religion, HO 1,15 [Leiden: Brill, 1994], 88-96). The conceptual similarity to Dan 8 is recognized by Roy E. Gane, “Hurrian Ullikummi and Daniel’s ‘Little Horn,’” in Shalom Paul’s Festschrift (Leiden: Brill, in press).

archfiend, the satanic figure.¹

**Literary Structure of Daniel 8:9-14**

**Introduction**

The structure of the text is derived from its own structural signals. The individual elements of the text join together in a network of relations to form the structure of the text. Structural features may function on different levels: on the surface structure or the level of form to create cohesion (e.g., deictic elements, elements of junction, repetitions), on the deep structure or the level of meaning to create coherence (e.g., semantic fields that comprise themes, thematic variety and progression), and on the level of pragmatics, that is, how text elements work together for a unified effect on the reader.² In the following analysis such features of Dan 8:9-14 will be identified in order to recognize the structure of the composition more clearly.

At first, the form or genre of Dan 8 is established. After an overview of different structures suggested for chap. 8—in scholarly literature, the structure of 8:9-14 has always been integrated in the overall structure and form of chap. 8—the focus will be

¹Nickelsburg suspects that the "chief demon" (*Resurrection*, 15) "is envisioned as the demonic power behind the king," which for him represents Antiochus Epiphanes (ibid., 31 n. 100). Similarly, Haag suggests that the vision in Dan 8:9-12 describes "enigmatically . . . the appearance of the anti-YHWH as the earthly expression of a revolt against God that takes place in heaven to which a part of the host of stars fall victim" (*Daniel*, 11). Haag even goes so far to regard the horn as a symbol for the anti-YHWH of the end time of which Antiochus IV is a historical embodiment (ibid., 64).

²Gzella argues that the vision report in Dan 8 reveals "the cosmic universal pattern of a power-struggle in the transcendent realm in the way the angels see it" (156).

specifically on 8:9-14. Major tasks of the literary-structural analysis that I will pursue are to establish the place of 8:9-14 in the vision of chap. 8, to determine the individual structural units of 8:9-14, including the question as to where the vision proper ends and the audition starts, to give a justification for the delimitation of this passage, and finally to describe the interplay of structural features in the text. In the course of discussing the text’s structural features, I will also deal with the question of unity. As an extended summary of the findings I will offer a structural commentary of 8:9-14 that concentrates attention on the individual structural devices.

Genre of Daniel 8

The genre of Dan 8 is that of a symbolic vision report. Of course, genre can only be determined by means of comparative material. For Dan 8, as well as for Dan 7, such comparative texts have been searched in the biblical corpus as well as in the ancient Near Eastern traditions. Niditch, Koch, and Behrens all studied the development of the form of vision reports in biblical tradition and concluded that the vision reports in Daniel are in

---

1 Slightly different terms are used to designate the same conceptual form, such as “symbolic vision” (Niditch, 215-216, 232; Goldingay, Daniel, 200, who argues that Dan 8 is not a dream vision by pointing out that the characteristic terminology, as used in Dan 7:1, 2, 7, 13, is absent in chap. 8 [201]), “symbolic dream vision” (Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 86; idem, Daniel [1993], 54-55, 342; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 166), “symbolic vision report” (Lucas, Daniel, 31-35, 208), or “prophetic vision report” (Behrens, 317), or just “vision report” (Freer; Koch, Visionsbericht,” 413-446). The designation as “apocalyptic narrative” (Redditt, 135), however, is too general, whereas to regard Dan 8 as a symbolic “animal vision” (Porter, 6-8, 12) or even as “theriomorphic historical allegory” (Reid, 95) appears too specifically focused on the use of animal imagery and the allegorical mode of the vision proper and loses sight of the other elements in Dan 8 (on literary allegories of the Danielic visions see Collins, The Apocalyptic Vision, 110-115).
continuity with the visions in the prophets, presenting a late stage of development.\(^1\) Collins agrees, but also would like to “allow for influence from Near Eastern dream interpretation and possibly from Persian sources too.”\(^2\) However, there is no question that formally Dan 8:9-14 is bound into the biblical tradition.

What is a “vision report”? According to Collins, the symbolic dream visions in historical apocalypses, to which he also counts Dan 7 and 8, show a typical pattern: an indication of the circumstances, a description of the vision introduced by a term such as “behold,” a request for interpretation, an interpretation by an angel, and concluding material that may include the reaction of the seer, instructions, or parenesis.\(^3\) Daniel 8

\(^1\)Niditch identifies three stages in the development of what she defines as “symbolic visions”: the simple and short visions of pre-exilic prophets (Amos 7-8; Jer 1; 24), the more complex and longer early post-exilic visions (Zech 1-6), and the even more complex “baroque” visions of Dan 7 and 8 (The Symbolic Vision in Biblical Tradition). Independently, Koch argues also that the apocalyptic vision report goes back to a prophetic language pattern. According to Koch, the continuity between prophetic and apocalyptic vision report is seen in the constant pattern of a two-part division, a vision followed by a dialogue of a celestial being and the visionary. Especially within the second element the pattern varies, which shows a development from Amos over Zechariah to Daniel. Still, for Koch the vision report constitutes a specific Gattung, despite the fact that there are major points of discontinuity: The vision report in the apocalyptic book (1) is essential, whereas in the prophets visions are exceptional; (2) includes the dismay of the visionary; (3) portrays a hierarchical angelic world; and (4) is in need of an interpretation that is indispensable (“Vom profetischen zum apokalyptischen Visionsbericht,” 425-430). Behrens argues that from a formal point of view the vision reports in Dan 8:3-14, Dan 10:5-14, and Dan 12:5-7 do not differ from other prophetic vision reports (314-345, esp. 333-345). Thus, language, form, and genre show no real difference between prophetic and apocalyptic texts of vision reports (337). For Behrens, the development of apocalyptic out of prophecy manifests itself only in elements of discontinuity that are rooted in the world view of the writers—pseudonymity, broad historical overview, radical end—but not in literary phenomena (339-342); therefore his designation of Dan 8:3-14 as “prophetic vision report” (317). This challenges Koch’s and Collins’s literary-historical and form-critical approach to the apocalyptic phenomenon.

\(^2\)Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 6-8 (citation from p. 8).

\(^3\)Ibid. (cf. Daniel [1993], 54-55). Collins lists under the genre of symbolic dream visions Dan 7-8; 1 Enoch 83-84 (Book of Dreams); 85-91 (Animal Apocalypse); 4 Ezra 11-12; 13; 2 Apocalypse of Baruch 35-47; 53-77.
indeed exhibits all elements of such a pattern (see the next section); not surprisingly so, since Dan 8 is part of the texts that are used to establish the category of the genre “symbolic dream vision.” According to Behrens, the principal pattern of a “prophetic vision report” consists of two parts, a vision proper and a dialogue, with their peculiar linguistic features. The vision opens with מְנָא נַר followed by a nominal clause introduced by וְהִיא, which starts the description of the vision. The dialogue opens with a wayyiqtol-form of וַיֶּבֶן. The first speech act to follow is always direct speech in the form of a question or an imperative. The dialogue ends with a comment by יהוה or his messenger.¹ For Behrens, therefore, 8:3-14 is a clear example of a vision report, since it shows all constituent elements of such a genre, and the inclusion of the reaction of the seer (vss. 15-19) and the interpretation (vss. 20-25) under the vision report is form-critically not legitimate.² Gzella defines 8:3-12 as a “vision report” but not as a “symbolic” vision report, for the designation “symbolic,” he argues, would convey the idea that the vision report is allegoric and was invented to illustrate a specific political situation. Gzella demonstrates quite convincingly that Dan 8 should not be understood as an invented allegory, but as “a revelation of transcendent reality.”³ However, the term

¹Behrens, 32-60, 377-378.
²Ibid., 320-321. The designation of vss. 3-14 as a complete vision report is pace Koch (“Visionsbericht”) who presents the vision in vss. 2a-14 and the interpretation in vss. 15-26 as two main parts of one vision report (see Behrens, 320 n. 22).
³Gzella, 38, 63-68, 82, 111, 143. Gzella’s reasons for the unallegorical nature of the vision in Dan 8 include the following: (1) the impression of an eye-witness is created by the “I, Daniel” formula; (2) the repetitive use of the verb וַיִּשָּׁק (vss. 3, 4, 6, 7) emphasizes the visual perception; (3) transcendent beings are described in vss. 13-14 as independently beholding the vision, giving an objective perspective to it; (4) these angels and their dialogue are not understood as allegorical by the narrator, and therefore the other elements of the vision, some of which are referred to in the angelic
“symbolic” should neither be mistaken to express that the text is allegorical of a contemporary historical situation, nor be understood in a way that the text does not offer an account of a true visionary revelation.

If the term “symbolic” by definition means that the vision conveys a meaning that goes beyond the lexical meaning of its words but does not need to be identical with its interpretative, historical application—as was suggested in chapter 2 above—it is indeed possible to designate Dan 8 as a symbolic vision report.

Daniel 8:9-11 is permeated by symbolic language: an inanimate, concrete entity—a horn—is combined with active verbs and functions like a living agent. The horn is thus personified. Similarly, that stars can be caused to fall from heaven and be trampled upon is clearly to be understood as symbolic. It is interesting to note that such symbolic language appears to be absent from vs. 12, as well as from vss. 13-14. This might again be evidence that vs. 12 does not belong to the vision proper.

Structure of Daniel 8

There is general agreement among scholars on the basic structure of Dan 8. The identification of the main parts of the chapter is unproblematic: an introduction (vss. 1-2), dialogue, are probably not allegorical either; (5) the point of contact between the realm of the vision and the historical reality (e.g., the sanctuary) cannot be understood as allegorical. For the view that the vision report describes a true manifestation, see also Behrens, 331-33; and Agustinus Gianto, “Some Notes on Evidentiality in Biblical Hebrews,” in Biblical and Oriental Essays in Memory of William L. Moran, ed. A. Gianto, BibOr, no. 48 (Rome: Pontifical Biblical Institute, 2005), 145-149.

1The inanimate horn is the subject of the verbs הִצָּה (vs. 9a), הָלַע (vss. 9b, 10a, 11a), נָבַמּ הַיִּפ (vs. 10b), יָדַח הַיִּפ (vs. 10c), and נָבַמּ הַיִּפ (vs. 11b), and also the logical subject of the verbs חָלַמַ (vs. 11c) and לָס (vs. 12a). All these activities of a horn are unique to Dan 8:9-11 and do not occur elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible. In fact, horns occur as an agent only in symbolic visions in Zechariah and Daniel (Zech 2:2, 4; Dan 8:3, 8, 9).
a vision report including an audition (vss. 3-14), an epiphany of an interpreter (vss. 15-18), an interpretation (vss. 19-26), and a conclusion (vs. 27). Minor differences are found in determining the end of the introduction (usually vs. 2a or vs. 2b),¹ the beginning of the actual interpretation (usually vs. 19 or vs. 20),² and the end of the interpretation (vs. 25, vs. 26a, or vs. 26b).³

In the following, I parallel eight structural outlines of Dan 8 (see table 29) that are based on a more detailed observation of formal structural devices—that is, discourse formulas (superscriptions, formulaic introductions or conclusions), discourse markers (לי), linguistic markers (תנין), rhetoric markers (comment, summary, time or geographic indicators), shifts (time, place, person, etc.), length of units, etc.—of the terminological device of repetition, and of thematic devices (similar type of content between units, progression of thought, spatial relations etc.). These outlines stand out against the majority of outlines that solely use thematic criteria and often are merely a structured description of the content. The parallel columns in the table are arranged

---

¹It is the exception to assign to the introduction only vs. 1 (Hall, 197-198; Redditt, Daniel, 135), or vss. 1-3 (Niditch, The Symbolic Vision, 222), or even vss. 1-4 (Hasslberger, 79).

²Apart from those who do not distinguish between the epiphany of the interpreter and the interpretation proper and thus regard the beginning of the interpretation in vs. 15, the actual interpretation is perceived to begin with vs. 18 (Smith-Christopher, 115), vs. 19 (Prince, Daniel, 142; Marti, Daniel, 61; Plöger, Daniel, 123-129; Delcor, 168; Freer, 38; Towner, 118; Collins, Daniel [1993], 328 [earlier, Collins included the indication of circumstances in vs. 18 under the interpretation (Daniel, FOTL, 84)]; Bauer, Das Buch Daniel, 166), or vs. 20 (Keil, 316; Obbink, 55-56; Hall, 197-198; Hasslberger, 81; Goldingay, Daniel, 203-204; Redditt, 142-145).

³For most commentators the conclusion comprises vs. 27 only. Some prefer a structure with a two-part conclusion and include the whole of vs. 26 (Marti, Daniel, 63; Jeffery, 354; Freer, 39, 52; Smith-Christopher, 117; Gowan, Daniel, 116) or only vs. 26b in the conclusion (Koch, "Visionsbericht," 416).
### Table 29. Structural Division of Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1-4</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2b-8a</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2b</td>
<td>2b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5-7</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5-9</td>
<td>5b-8a</td>
<td>5b-8b</td>
<td>5b-8b</td>
<td>5b-8b</td>
<td>5b-8b</td>
<td>5b-8b</td>
<td>5b-8b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8-12</td>
<td>8c-12</td>
<td>9-12</td>
<td>9-12</td>
<td>8-12</td>
<td>8-12</td>
<td>8-12</td>
<td>8-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>13a</td>
<td>13b-14</td>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>13-14</td>
<td>13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>19b</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19-25</td>
<td>19-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20-22</td>
<td>20-25</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22-25</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22-25</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>26b</td>
<td>26b</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26b-27</td>
<td>26b-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>26a</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>26b</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The synoptical analysis of Dan 8 reprinted in 1996 (in Klaus Koch, Von der Wende der Zeiten: Beiträge zur apokalyptischen Literatur, ed. U. Gleßner and M. Krause, Gesammelte Aufsätze, vol. 3 [Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1996], 172-173), which I follow here, differs from the one published in 1983 ("Visionsbericht," between pp. 432 and 433) in that it takes 8:15-19a as one of the main parts of Dan 8 ("Interaction by the seer"), whereas earlier Koch regarded the interaction as part of the section of the interpretation. Collins's outline of Dan 8 is the one provided in his 1993 commentary. Only for Dan 8:3-14 and 8:19-25 do I follow Collins's more detailed outline in Daniel, FOTL, 84-85. Note also that Collins slightly altered his outline of vss. 15-26: While in his previous FOTL commentary the epiphany of an interpreter (vss. 15-17) and the interpretation (vss. 18-26) are separate units on the same structural level (Daniel, FOTL, 84), in his 1993 commentary the interpretation comprises all of vss. 15-26 and is subdivided by the epiphany (vss. 15-18), the interpretation proper (vss. 19-25), and the conclusion (vs. 26) (Daniel [1993], 328).

2Bucher-Gillmayr, 60-61. The subunits of the vision are vss. 3-8a (numerous relations: between "I" and ram in vss. 3-4 and between "I," ram, and he-goat in vss. 5-8a), vss. 8b-12d (relations are all to the horn), vss. 13-19 (different relations: between "I" and Gabriel), vss. 20-22 (limited relations), vss. 23-25 (relations are all to the king), and vs. 26 (almost no relations).
main areas of disagreement are the structural status of the horn passage—whether it belongs to the vision of the he-goat or is a structural entity of itself—and the structural placement of the audition—whether it belongs to the first or to the second half of the chapter.

**Vision of the Horn (Daniel 8:9-11)**

The first question concerns the structural status of the vision of the horn (vss. 9-11). Two different suggestions exist. The description of the horn has been understood as a subsection of the description of the he-goat, or it has been placed structurally on the same level as the descriptions of the he-goat and of the ram. Five of the seven structural outlines presented above for comparison agree that the horn passage belongs to the vision of the he-goat starting with vs. 5, the exception being Bucher-Gillmayr and Behrens. To be sure, Hasslberger and Goldingay appear to present a combination of the two different opinions when they take the horn passage as an entity separate from vss. 5-8 but place it

---

1 Of course, all exegetes listed in the structural comparison above take the vision of the horn until vs. 12 inclusively (except Hasslberger who excises vss. 11-14), but I have already shown that vs. 12 should be regarded as part of the audition.


3 Prince, Daniel, 142; Marti, Daniel, 57; Plöger, Daniel, 126; Jeffery, 354; Freer, 37-39; Hasel, "The 'Little Horn'" (1986), 380; Reid, Enoch and Daniel, 93; Smith-Christopher, 111-117.

4 In the structural outlines of Hasslberger, Koch, Collins, and Goldingay the division of the interpretation into the main actors usually parallels the one of the vision. In the outline of Lucas the structural status of the horn is not the same in vision and interpretation (Daniel, 209). Whereas in the vision report he takes the small horn as a subunit to the vision of the he-goat, in the interpretation he regards "the small horn interpreted" (vss. 23-25) as a unit on its own on the same hierarchical level as the different interpretation of the ram (vs. 20), the he-goat (vs. 21) and the breaking of the horn (vs. 22).
together with the he-goat passage in the same structural unit.\textsuperscript{1} Behrens regards vss. 8-12 structurally as a unit on the same level as the previous one on the he-goat (vss. 5-7), continuing thematically the he-goat section by focusing on the successors of the he-goat from which one horn is singled out.\textsuperscript{2}

The reasons for taking the vision of the horn as a continuation of the vision of the he-goat and its horns are of two different kinds. The first is based on the content; more precisely, on the supposed relation of the horn and the he-goat. Since it is usually assumed that the horn mentioned in vs. 9 goes forth from one of the four horns of the he-goat (vs. 8), the horn passage is naturally seen as an extension of the description of the he-goat. However, it is syntactically not clear whether the horn goes forth from one of the four horns or from one of the four winds, and beyond syntactic considerations there are several reasons that can be advanced for each of these two options.\textsuperscript{3} It seems therefore best not to decide the structural placement of vss. 9-11 on the grounds of the horn's disputed starting point.

The second reason is based on form; more precisely on the absence of any formulaic introduction of the horn in vs. 9a. Whereas both the ram and the he-goat are introduced formally by a verb of perception in the first-person singular (יָרָא “see” in vs. 3b; יָהַן “gain understanding” in vs. 5a) followed by הֹלָל + participle (vss. 3c and 5b), the horn in vs. 9a is not. Verse 9a does not use any formal introduction for the horn. The

\textsuperscript{1}Hasslberger, 79-80 (after excising vss. 11-14); Goldingay, \textit{Daniel}, 203.

\textsuperscript{2}Behrens, 319.

\textsuperscript{3}See chapter 2 (above).
best case in point for the formal argumentation is Koch’s detailed structural analysis with its discussion of structural signals. As a result, for Koch, as for others, the text material in vss. 9-12 is a subentity of the great horn (vs. 8b). Yet, such a structural division is not without problems. First, the two main entities of the ram and the he-goat—in Koch’s outline sections A1, A2, B1, and B2—are referred to throughout their respective sections: the ram (vss. 3c, 4a, 6a, 7a, 7c, 7e, 7h), its proforms (vss. 3d, 4b, 4c, 4d, 6b, 7b, 7d, 7f, 7g), and the verbal forms with the ram as subject (vss. 4d, 4e); and the he-goat (vss. 5b, 5d, 8a), its proforms (vss. 5d, 6b, 7a, 7eI, 7h, 8bd), and the verbal forms with the he-goat as subject (vss. 6a, 6b, 7b, 7c, 7d, 7f, 7g). In light of these formal and thematic features, which naturally give cohesion to the respective text sections, it is rather strange to designate the horn in vss. 9-12 structurally as a subentity of the great horn in vs. 8b or of the he-goat in vs. 8a, while both the great horn and the he-goat are never mentioned or referred to in vss. 9-14, either by proforms or as subjects. A second and minor point is that the passage in vss. 9b-12, which Koch designates as movement and result, presents a comparatively large amount of text: a total of eleven clauses with thirty word combinations. Compared to Koch’s other three sections of movement and result (vss. 4b-e, 6, and 7d-8a), which at the most comprise six clauses with nineteen word combinations (vss. 7d-8a), one wonders whether vss. 9-12 should not be better regarded as a separate section than as an out sized subsection. Third and finally, Koch himself appears to be not quite sure about the formal criteria of the supposed introduction of a new entity in vs. 8b.

and calls on the possibility of dramatization.¹

To be sure, the horn in vs. 9a is formally neither introduced by an expression of perception (לָהֵנה, נָמָא, רָאָה), nor by perception (לָהֵנה), nor by a nominal phrase (with participle), as is the case with the ram and the he-goat. However, as Collins observed in another context, "apocalyptic writers do not necessarily have the same concern for formal purity as some form-critics."² Are there any reasons why a formal introduction to the description of the horn could be missing? Perhaps the introduction is absent in order to avoid any static aspect. The horn is right from the beginning portrayed as very agile. The introduction of a new entity, the horn, in immediate relation to an activity should be regarded as intentional, especially since all clauses in vss. 9-11 are verbal clauses, and thus characterize the horn as extremely active. Perhaps the lack of any formal structural signal in vs. 9a is intended to move the person of the seer, who is referred to in such formulas, completely into the background and to solely focus on the climax of the vision. Or perhaps, it is for the rhetorical effect of not allowing a breather at the beginning of the vision's dramatic end. Of course, all this remains speculation since there are no clear indications in the text.

¹After Koch observes the unusual sequencing of seven verbal clauses in vss. 11-12, he remarks: "Therefore I assume that the time reference התבלנוט vs. 8b marks a similar incision as is usually marked by the retrospective reference to the first person of the visionary, only that here, for the sake of dramatization, there is no reference to the act of perception" ("Visionsbericht," 418; emphasis mine). Koch then recognizes that pejorative expressions have so far been avoided in the text but suddenly appear in the section of vss. 8b-12, such as rebellion (נללע) and the throwing to the ground of the sanctuary and the truth. This is another reason for him to attribute special significance to this section (ibid.). However, it has to be pointed out that these pejorative expressions do not indicate that the section should start in vs. 8b. Rather, since they describe activities of the horn, one could easily argue that the section should start with the introduction of the horn in vs. 9a.

²Collins, Daniel (1993), 328.
I would like to argue an alternative position, namely that the horn passage is a structural unit on its own, and that several features mark vs. 9a as a new section, in spite of the fact that there seem to be no explicit formal structural markers present in vs. 9a. The following reasons substantiate such a viewpoint.

The strongest indication that the vision of the horn (vss. 9-11) functions structurally on the same level as the visions of the ram (vss. 3-4) and of the he-goat (vss. 5-8) is the structure of the whole vision and the pattern in each of these parts. The structural parallels between these sections are outlined in table 30.1

All three subsections of the vision in Dan 8 show the same pattern: an introduction of the main actor describing its location or starting point in geographical terms, then the movement of the main actor which results in absolute power (doing as one pleases) and self-magnification, and the inevitable downfall. Noteworthy are the terminological links in the introduction (ram, horn: רם / נגמ"ט, the geographical starting point (he-goat, horn: preposition י), the movement (he-goat, horn: prepositions י andجل), the description of total power (ram, host of the horn: עשה), and the self-magnification (ram, he-goat, horn: יבגרא). The use of the verb עשה in vs. 9a underlines subtly the structural status of the horn. First, the clauses with which the actants of the vision (ram, he-goat, horn) are introduced use verbal roots in an order which exemplifies gradual increase in movement and vigor: standing (root יבר in 8:3), coming (root קב in 8:5), going forth (עשה in 8:9). Second, עשה stands in contrast to the verb עשה that, being the natural term to describe developing

1Cf. Koch’s outline in which he uses similar categories ("Visionsbericht").
Table 30. Structural Pattern of the Vision in Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Main Actor</th>
<th>Ram (8:3-4)</th>
<th>Goat (8:5-8)</th>
<th>Horn (8:9-11, 12-14)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>&quot;one ram&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;a male goat&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;one horn&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location/Starting Point</td>
<td>standing (לְבַד) before (לְפַע) the canal</td>
<td>coming (אֶבו) from (גו) the west</td>
<td>came forth (אַל) from (גו) one of them from (גו) smallness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement</td>
<td>butting westward (וּלָּד)</td>
<td>came up to (וּל) the ram</td>
<td>grew toward (וּל) the south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>northward (וּל)</td>
<td>which I had seen standing before the canal</td>
<td>toward (וּל) the east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>southward (וּל)</td>
<td>rushed toward him (וּל)</td>
<td>toward (וּל) the beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vs. 4)</td>
<td>(vs. 4)</td>
<td>(vs. 9b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>threw down to earth</td>
<td>to earth</td>
<td>threw down to earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(וְשָׁם hif. + נַע)</td>
<td>(וְשָׁם רֹד +sf.)</td>
<td>(וְשָׁם מִי +sf.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>trampled (וְשָׁם כָּנָה +sf.)</td>
<td>trampled on (וְשָׁם רֹד +sf.)</td>
<td>(וְשָׁם מִי +sf.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(vs. 7a)</td>
<td>(vs. 10b-c)</td>
<td>(vs. 12b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result:</td>
<td>total power (vs. 4)</td>
<td>total power (vs. 7b-8a)</td>
<td>total power (vs. 12c,d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Power &amp; Magnification</td>
<td>- יֵשָׁם כָּנָה נִי</td>
<td>- יֵשָׁם כָּנָה נִי</td>
<td>- יֵשָׁם כָּנָה נִי (horn’s host)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>magnified himself (וְשָׁם hif. + נַע, vs. 4)</td>
<td>magnified himself (וְשָׁם רֹד +sf., vs. 8a)</td>
<td>magnified himself (וְשָׁם מִי +sf., vs. 11a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fall</td>
<td>immediate fall</td>
<td>immediate fall</td>
<td>delayed fall (חָדַד, vs. 13c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>מַעָּל (vs. 7)</td>
<td>מַעָּל (vs. 8)</td>
<td>מַעָּל (vs. 14c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>next actor: goat</td>
<td>next actor: horn</td>
<td>next actor implied: God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(divine passive, vs. 14c)</td>
<td>(divine passive, vs. 14c)</td>
<td>(divine passive, vs. 14c)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
horns, is used in the vision for the coming up of horns (vss. 3 and 8). The horn is therefore not presented as a horn growing up from another horn. And third, נב has a close relation to the antonymحم that is used for the introduction and the first activity of the goat (vss. 5-6).1 Thus the description of the horn’s first activity in vs. 9a as going forth (נזר) relates it more to the description of the goat in vs. 5 than to the description of the other horns in the vision.

In fact, the horn acts like an animal. What the horn does is similar to what the previous two animals (ram and he-goat) were doing.2 How can one explain such a phenomenon? One option is that the horn is portrayed as the sole focus of the he-goat, for the he-goat is never mentioned in vss. 9-14. More probable, however, is that the horn is portrayed on the same level as the ram and the he-goat, and thus is not connected to the he-goat. Rather, it is a totally independent entity, which either, at least on the level of imagery, would be connected to a different animal not mentioned in Dan 8, or has to be considered entirely by itself. Even though in Dan 8, and also in Dan 7, horns are usually attached to an animal, the appearance of a horn by itself in 8:9, as surprising as it may be, should not be ruled out as illogical, for in light of Zech 2:1-2 it is possible that in a vision horns appear by themselves.

With regard to the different observations above, the conclusion is inescapable:

---

1For the relation between נב and כב see Boccaccio, 178-190; J. G. Plöger, 174-184; Preuss, " payable, 6:229-230, 236-237; and van der Lingen, 59-66 (cf. p. 477 under the section “Semantic fields of Dan 8:9-14” [above]).

2Goldingay suggests that the horn is “portrayed by synecdoche in terms appropriate to earthly leaders also symbolized by animals” (Daniel, 210).
The description of the horn in vss. 9-11 is a structural unit on the same structural level as the previous two sections, the descriptions of the ram and of the he-goat.

At the same time, it is clear that the section of the he-goat ends in vs. 8 and does not extend beyond this verse. This is evident by the use of the keyword נָדָל hif. which is followed by the root צֶב. After the he-goat magnified himself, his great horn is broken, which signals, in comparison with the ram (vss. 4, 7), the end of the description of the he-goat. The four horns that come up toward the four winds of heaven are nothing more than an aftermath of the breaking of the great horn. There is only movement described here—probably dispersion, not powerful expansion—but neither a result of the movement, nor the (self)-magnification of these horns, nor any fall. The four horns simply vanish from the vision. Their relative insignificance would also explain why the noun הַנָּעָן, or the plural נַעֲנַת הָנָעָן, is not used in either the vision (vs. 8) or in the interpretation (vs. 22).

Audition (Daniel 8:12-14)

The second area of difference in the structural outlines of Dan 8:9-14 is found in the placement of the audition.1 The majority of scholars include the audition as the final part of the entire vision report, being a distinct unit separate from the previous description of the horn.2 A few take the audition together with all or parts of the description of the

---

1 The discussion on the placement of the audition is independent from the question whether the audition comprises vss. 12-14 or vss. 13-14.

2 For example, Koch, “Visionsbericht,” 417-419, 441-445; Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 84; idem, Daniel (1993), 328; Goldingay, Daniel, 203; Lucas, Daniel, 208-209.
horn, apparently because many elements in the audition incorporate elements from the
description of the horn. Indeed, the audition continues the line of thought of the vision of the horn, and is strongly linked to it by the repetition of בָּשָׂר and סְפִּיר in vs. 12a-b, if vs. 12 is regarded as belonging to the audition, and by the expressions used in vs. 13c. Yet, the different mode of perception (hearing), the narrative wayyiqtol clause in vs. 13a, the introduction of two holy ones (vs. 13a-b), and the reintroduction of the “I” after vs. 7 in vs. 13a all point to the fact that the audition is structurally separate from the horn vision. The reference to הַנְחָל in vs. 13c links the audition through the occurrence of הָרֶך in vs. 2 to the entire vision. Hence, the audition is structurally part of the entire vision report (vss. 3-14). It is not part of the vision of the horn. Nevertheless, the audition has many connections with the horn vision.

A quite different structural arrangement is proposed by Bucher-Gillmayr and Bauer who take the audition together with the following verses. Bucher-Gillmayr regards vss. 13-19 as a textual unit in which the semantic relations are distinct and complex, involving the “I” (vss. 13-19) as well as “I” and Gabriel (vss.16-19), in contrast to vss. 8b-12d in which only the horn is referred to. Bauer takes vss. 13-18 as a narrative introduction to the interpretation proper without, however, providing any reasons for it.

However, there are strong arguments against the view that the audition belongs

---

1Obbink, 55-56; Leupold, 344; Baldwin, 156-158; Smith-Christopher, 113-114.
2Bucher-Gillmayr, 61, 70.
3Bauer, Daniel, 166. Interestingly, while Goldingay places vss. 13-14 in his outline under the symbolic vision (Daniel, 203), he also mentions in passing that the celestial dialogue in vss. 13-19 introduces the interpretative part of the vision (ibid., 202).
structurally to the subsequent verses. First of all, the phrase נִיהָדְרָה יִהְיֶה + ב + infinitive, which introduced in vs. 2 the first main part of Dan 8, introduces in vs. 15a the second main part.\(^1\) Although Bucher-Gillmayr is certainly correct in observing that vs. 15 continues the perception of Daniel,\(^2\) one also has to take note of נָאָב הָבָה יִהְיֶה in vs. 15b, which describes a non-perceptive activity of Daniel and, as such, briefly interrupts the perception to introduce a reaction on the part of the seer. It is unnecessary to reason, as Bucher-Gillmayr does, that the continuation of perception precludes the possibility that vs. 15a is a structural signal for a new main text unit. The formulaic nature of נִיהָדְרָה יִהְיֶה + ב + infinitive with a subsequent נָאָב + participle cannot be disputed, and the statement "When I, Daniel, had seen the vision [נִיהָדְרָה יִהְיֶה] (vs. 15a) clearly frames with the occurrence of נִיהָדְרָה יִהְיֶה in vs. 2 the revelatory experience in vss. 3-14. The first perception in the two parts is also similar: in the vision report Daniel saw a ram standing (רָמִים , vs. 3) and in the interpretation he saw a man standing (רָמִים , vs. 15). Furthermore, both main parts end with a reference to the vision of the evening and morning (vss. 14, 26).\(^3\) If the interpretation concludes in vs. 26a with a statement about "the vision of the evening and morning" right after the activities and downfall of the king, the section on the evening and morning in vss. 13-14 should be taken as following the previous description of the horn and not as opening the interpretative section. For these reasons, the audition belongs to the vision report in vss. 3-14, and vs. 15 starts the second main part in Dan 8.

\(^1\) Koch, "Visionsbericht," 416.

\(^2\) Bucher-Gillmayr, 64.

\(^3\) Koch, "Visionsbericht," 416.
Delimitation of Daniel 8:9-14

In addition to the arguments stated above, several other reasons can be put forward as to why the vision of the horn and the audition in Dan 8:9-14 can be delimited beginning in vs. 9a with the vision of the horn and ending in vs. 14c with the conclusion of the audition.

First, there is a disjunction in vs. 9a. The sequential wayyiqtol clause in vs. 8c is not followed in vs. 9a by another wayyiqtol clause, but instead by an x-qatal clause. Since the preverbal הָגֵג הָרַע in vs. 9a does not introduce a new topic, this construction has to be regarded at least as a slight disruption in the textual flow. The beginning of the next major text unit in vs. 15 is distinctively marked. In vs. 15a there is a clear disjunction with the temporal construction יִרְאוּ + ב + infinitive (רֲוֹאִי לֶבֶן), which provides a new reference time, namely after the vision, and introduces a new scene in the course of narration. This structural formula introduces the first main part of Dan 8, the vision, in vs. 2b, and it introduces the second main part, the interpretation, in vs. 15a.

Second, thematically the focus and the actors change in vs. 9a. This clause introduces a new protagonist, and from now on the horn and its activities—the horn is the logical subject in each clause until vs. 11c—are the goal and focus of the vision.1 As soon as the horn has been introduced in vs. 9a, there is no more mention of anything from the previous part of the vision. The only reference back is the phrase “from one of them,”

---

1For Caspari the horn is “the goal and the actual subject-matter of the vision” and all that was said about the ram and the goat “is only a mere passage” to the horn (140); Hassberger calls the activities of the horn the “goal of the symbolism” (402); and for Porteous the horn and its activities are “of supreme interest” (124).
which occurs just before the mention of the horn, and links vs. 9a to vs. 8c. Thus, vs. 9a is certainly the continuation of the vision report, but the lack of any anaphoric elements that would refer to previous parts suggests strongly that a new subunit of the vision begins in vs. 9a. by introducing a new main actor.\(^1\) As the new main protagonist, the horn has to be placed structurally on the same level as the ram and the he-goat.\(^2\)

Third, the selected elements mentioned in the question in vs. 13c are all found in the part of the vision that deals with the horn, which gives the impression that the text from vs. 9 (the introduction of the horn) to vs. 14 (the answer to the question) is thematically closely related.

Fourth, with the mention of the horn and its activity, expectations are created that are only solved in vs. 14c. In fact, the question in vs. 13c puts these expectations into words that are then met in the answer in vs. 14c.

Fifth, a literary argument is that the shifts of gender, which apparently serve as literary device, start with vs. 9a. Moreover, there are changes in terminology, for example, from vs. 10a on, the heavenly sphere is introduced in the symbolic language.

\(^1\) A new subunit in vs. 9a is also recognized by Hassilberger: “For here [vs. 9a] comes to an end what has been described in vs. 8, and a new sub-sequence of events starts, which is syntactically expressed by the same subject in the clauses 9a-10c” (53).

\(^2\) In his structural analysis, Koch places the horn in vs. 9a on the same level as the horns mentioned in vss. 3, 5, 8 and regards them as subtopic, whereas he regards the ram (vs. 3), the he-goat (vs. 5) and the broken great horn (vs. 8b) as the main topic (“Visionsbericht,” chart inserted after p. 432). However, it is rather difficult to see why the broken great horn (vs. 8b) should be considered as the main topic of vss. 8-12. The great horn does not function even once as an actant in these verses. On the contrary, the horn introduced in vs. 9a is the major actant in vss. 9-12 and its activities are referred back to by the question in vs. 13. This horn has to be regarded as the main topic and, therefore, should be placed on the same structural level as the ram and the he-goat, but not on the same level as the four horns.
Sixth, the angelic interpretation of the vision (8:20-26) suggests a demarcation between vs. 8c and vs. 9a in the vision. In the angelic interpretation the ram and its two horns, and the he-goat with its large horn and the subsequent four horns are mentioned briefly in prose style and only simple identifications are provided (vss. 20-22; 30 words). The goal of the interpretation is the poetically marked section on “a king,” here as reference to the horn and his activities (vss. 23-25; 39 words). It appears that vss. 3-8 are an extended introduction to the horn and its activities. The specific status of the horn appears also to be indicated by the way the different powers are introduced in the interpretation. Whereas the vision imagery of the different powers preceding the horn is always repeated in the interpretation before the identification is given (“ram” and “two horns” in vs. 20, “he-goat” and “large horn” in vs. 21, and the “four” in vs. 22), the interpretation of the horn breaks this pattern by not mentioning the “horn” and immediately speaking about a king (vs. 23).

A comparison of the reasons mentioned above with the criteria for the end and for the beginning of texts specified by Schicklberger confirms that the text of Dan 8:9-14 shows several characteristics of a small text unit. In sum, all considerations lead to the

---

1 Cf. Maier who points to the length of the interpretation as argument that the horn is the goal and at the same time the center of the prophetic vision (303).

2 See Franz Schicklberger, “Biblische Literarkritik und linguistische Texttheorie: Bemerkungen zu einer Textsyntax von hebräischen Erzähltexten,” TZ 34 (1978): 69-71 (cf. the introduction to literary/stylistic criteria and dramatic criteria for the text delimitation in Jean Louis Ska, “Our Fathers Have Told Us”: Introduction to the Analysis of Hebrew Narratives, SubBi, no. 13 [Rome: Pontifical Biblical Institute, 1990], 1-3). In pursuing the question how one determines the beginning and the end of a text, Schicklberger identifies the following criteria and elements that can indicate the beginning of a BH text: (1) exposition, (2) entry of a new theme or new activity, (3) presentation of a new situation or naming of new actors, (4) accumulation of nominal sentences, (5) text opening signals, such as """, (6) cataphoric nature of the text while anaphoric elements are
conclusion that Dan 8:9-14 can be delimited as a passage. Verse 9a is the beginning of the last part of the vision in Dan 8, which then transfers to an audition that is closely related to and continues perfectly this final visionary description. The end of the audition is in vs. 14c, and a new text unit starts in vs. 15a.

Unity of Daniel 8:9-14

The unity of Dan 8 has been challenged at several places. Later interpolations have been suggested mainly for vss. 11-12, 13-14, and 23-25, 26.¹ There are also more lacking, (7) expectation of a continuation of the text, and (8) entities which are later on referred to by pro-forms (70-71). These criteria are formulated in view of larger narrative texts but apply also for smaller texts, though some smaller texts do not show them. For the end of a BH text Schickberger specifies the following criteria: (1) the fulfillment of the expectations raised in the beginning of the text or during the text, in other words, the text leads to a goal, and (2) the anaphoric nature of the text while cataphoric elements are lacking (71). It goes without saying that the end of a text is indicated indirectly by the following beginning of a new text which can be recognized by its representative criteria. Applying these criteria to Dan 8:9-14 it is evident that vs. 9 fulfills criteria (2), (3), (6), (7), and (8) for the beginning of a text and vs. 14 shows both criteria for the end of a text.

¹A few examples need to suffice. Junker argued that the whole vision of the horn (vss. 9-14) is an interpolation on the basis that the audition in vss. 13-14 does not refer at all to the vision described in vss. 3-8 (68-69; so also A. Jepsen, “Bemerkungen zum Danieltuch,” VT 11 [1961]: 390). Lebram considers vss. 11-12a to be a later interpolation and vss. 13-14 to be a still later interpolation (Daniel, 93, 95). Verses 13-14 have been considered secondary by Ginsberg (Studies in Daniel, 32; cf. “Book of Daniel,” 518) and Martin Noth (“Zur Komposition des Buches Daniel,” TSK 98/99 [1926]: 160 = “Zur Komposition des Buches Daniel,” Gesammelte Studien zum Alten Testament II, ed. H. W. Wolff, TB, no. 39 [Munich: Kaiser, 1969], 26). Noth assumes that the audition is not part of the vision for two reasons: vss. 13-14 are only loosely connected with the vision, and יָנָכָֽר in vs. 15 should prove that the preceding material is the vision only without any audition. However, Freer points out that there are many auditory elements in Dan 9 and 10:1-12:4 (35-36). Hartman regards vss. 13-14 as interpolation since the “holy ones” in vss. 13-14 refer to angels whereas elsewhere in the book of Daniel the term refers to the saints (230). However, there is no need to suppose that one writer can use a term only in a single way and, on the other hand, some argue that the term “holy one” in Daniel always designates the same (as suggested by Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 85-86). Freer suggests a later origin of vss. 13-14, 26 because for him the vision is complete without vss. 13-14 and the phrases “vision of the tamid” and the “vision of mornings and evenings” might be later labels for the vision in Dan 8 (36-37). Contrary to Freer, one has first of all to point out that the vision indeed awaits a final solution, which is given only in the audition. The activities of the horn and its host by necessity give rise to the question about the (silent) role of God in the described events. The question in vs. 13 is a natural continuation of the comment in vs. 12. Therefore, the vision cannot be complete
elaborate suggestions of the composition history of Dan 8, for example, by Stahl and by Kratz. That parts or the whole of vss. 11-14 are said to interrupt the vision has been argued on the basis of form and often on the basis of content (e.g., Stahl and Kratz). Of course, to reason on the basis of content is more susceptible to subjectivity.

In the following discussion, the suggestion by Hasslberger that vss. 11-14 constitute a later interpolation is examined more closely. His analysis is chosen for critical consideration since it focuses mainly on formal aspects, and at the same time is one of the most elaborate argumentations of its kind. Hasslberger provides six reasons for his viewpoint. First, vss. 11-12 differ from vs. 10 in that they no longer employ symbolic language but rather describe the reality, which can also be recognized by the switch from feminine to masculine gender in vs. 11 for the same subject. Second, the vocabulary in vss. 11-12 is different from vs. 10. Third, without vss. 13-14 which are an essential part to it. And second, since vs. 12 belongs to the audition, as I have suggested, one needs to exclude also vs. 12 if the audition is excluded. However, vs. 12 is (in my view correctly) considered very closely connected to vs. 11 and a redactional incision between vs. 11 and vs. 12 is unlikely.

1Stahl believes that Dan 8 went through several redactional stages and for vss. 9-14 only vss. 9, 10, and 12b-d are original. According to Stahl, the following four stages can be detected in the development of 8:9-14 (note that Stahl’s reference system is transferred into the one used in this study): (1) vss. 9, 10a, 10b (without נְפָּא הָעֲדָם), 10c, 12b, 12c, 12d; (2) vss. 11a, 11b; (3) נְפָּא הָעֲדָם (vs. 10b), vss. 11c, 12a; (4) vss. 13-14 (Stahl, Weltengagement, 91, 100, 108, 114, 121).

2For Reinhard G. Kratz, the original layer of chap. 8 consists of vss. 1, (2), 3-8, 15, 17, 20-22, 26b, 27a. Secondary are the additions to the vision reception (vss. 16, 18-19, 27b) and the addition of the little horn (vss. 9-12, 23-25) together with the calculation of the end (vss. 13-14, 26a). Thus, the whole passage of the little horn is later inserted. In the little horn section, vss. 11-12a are again a later insertion because of the masculine gender of verbs with feminine subject (“The Visions of Daniel,” in The Book of Daniel: Composition and Reception, ed. J. J. Collins and P. W. Flint, VTSup, no. 83, FIOWL, no. 2 [Leiden: Brill, 2001], 1:99-105).

3Hasslberger, 17-20.
vss. 11-12 are seen as an interpretation of vss. 9-10 and are therefore not referred to in the
angelic interpretation (vss. 20-25), as is also the case with vss. 13-14. Characteristic
expressions of vss. 11-12 are missing in the angelic interpretation (דְּרֹר נַעַמָּה, הַנָּפֶשׁ, and
ךָא). Fourth, the change in word order of נַעַמָה הַנָּפֶשׁ in vs. 12c-d and vs. 24
cannot be ascribed to the same author. Fifth, vss. 13-14 refer especially back to vss. 11-
12, and there is no motivation for the dialogue at this place. Sixth, the different forms of
doָס נָא (vs. 13a) and הַנָּפֶשׁ (vs. 16a) cannot stem from the same author.

However, none of Hasslberger's arguments is conclusive. Each of his
observations can be explained differently and, as it appears, in a more satisfactory way
than arguing for a second author. His reasons for interpolation are taken up in the same
order: First, since in my analysis vs. 12 is part of the audition it is expected to be less
symbolic than the previous verses. Contrary to Hasslberger's opinion, vs. 11 does
employ symbolic language when it describes the magnification of the horn up to the
prince of the host—it is not conceivable how this should be a description of the
reality—or uses the expression "foundation of the sanctuary" for the basic abstract
principles upon which the sanctuary of God is built. Koch also pointed out that symbolic
language and literal language are mixed throughout the vision.\(^1\) The verbal gender switch
in vs. 11 to the masculine is probably intentional, but even if that is not the case, the
gender switch is at the most a minor slip which "does not require us to posit a second

\(^1\)Koch, "Visionsbericht," 417. For example, the "trampling" is certainly symbolic language
(8:7, 10c, 13c), whereas the geographical directions appear to have a literal application (8:5, 8, 9b).
Second, different vocabulary may be employed to express a different content, and the content in vss. 11-12 describes the attack on the commander of the host and on the cult, which is naturally different from the geographical attack in vs. 9 and the attack on the host of heaven in vs. 10. Furthermore, the important keyword דוד links vs. 11 with vs. 10, as does the preposition יִשְׁרֵי (vss. 10a, 11a). Third, vss. 11-12 should not be regarded as an interpretation of vss. 9-10. In fact, different areas of the magnifying of the horn are described, and therefore the words used in vss. 11-12 have to differ to some extent from those used in vss. 9-10. And there are expressions in the angelic interpretation that take up language from vss. 11-14. Though Hasslberger argues against it, it is difficult to avoid the impression that אַשְׁרֵי רֹאשׁ and are parallel expressions that refer to the same being. The “formula” רַבִּים is also taken up in vs. 24. Fourth, there is no reason why the same writer cannot change the word order of וָּשֽׁעַת. Fifth, it is true that vss. 13-14 refer especially to vss. 11-12. The reason for this lies in the fact that vs. 11 describes the culmination of the actions by the horn. And it is specifically this climax in vs. 11 which triggers the dialogue of the holy beings. However, vss. 11-14 cannot be regarded as an entity in themselves, for at least the root רָדָם in vs. 13c appears to refer to vs. 10c, and also רָדָם in vs. 13c refers to the host in vs. 10. Sixth, the syntactic analysis has shown that the cohortative form, such as

---

1Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 85-86.

2So also Collins, Daniel (1993), 328.

3This is why Behrens correctly observes that the question of the holy one in vs. 13c takes up keywords from vss. 10-12 (321).
in vs. 13a, is used at several other places in the book of Daniel, often for apparently no specific reason. On the one hand, such a usage seems to be due to the range of flexibility which the writer needs to be granted. On the other hand, Koch regards it as possible that the cohortative נַיְּפֵתָה in vs. 13a, which marks the brief audition within the first main part of Dan 8, is intentionally different from the נַיְּפֵתָה in vs. 16, which in macrosyntactic manner introduces the audition of the second main part of Dan 8.¹ In conclusion, Hasslberger's elaborate argument for an interpolation of vss. 11-14 is not convincing. Verses 11-14, or vss. 13-14, naturally fit into the vision report in vss. 3-14. To regard them as later insertions is not only unnecessary, but fails to pay attention to the textual course of description and its rhetorical effects.

One of the most important and versatile devices to create textual cohesion is repetition. The same element recurs at different places in the text. The symmetry of the thematic structural pattern observed above (see table 30) shows that the whole of vss. 9-14 should be accepted as original. In addition to the repetitive terms used in this pattern, there are a number of other recurring terms in vss. 9-14. Table 31 contains all the Leitwörter of Dan 8 that occur in vss. 9-14.

The effect of these words, besides intensifying and attracting the reader's attention, is that they bind together vss. 9-14 and vss. 3-8 as well as the first half of the chapter with the symbolic vision and the second half of the chapter with the

¹Koch, "Visionsbericht," 416.
interpretation.¹ No doubt the recurring expressions demonstrate that Dan 8:9-14 is an integral part to the chapter.

Besides repetition, the linguistic means of proforms and conjunctions also create cohesion. The two proforms in דָּרַךְ and לָעַת establish a relation between vs. 9a and vs. 8c. The numeral, the article before the numeral, and the pronominal suffix all refer to elements of the previous clause (vs. 8c). Similarly, the article in דָּרַךְ in vs. 13c refers to the previous mention of לָעַת in vs. 2. Verses 9-14 then do not hang in the air.

A careful consideration of all arguments leads to the conclusion that one cannot argue on formal grounds, that is, by mainly examining the language, that any part from vss. 11-14 constitutes an interpolation. In fact, vss. 11-12 as well as vss. 13-14 should be

¹That is also the conclusion of Goldingay who considered only a few of the recurring expressions of Dan 8 that appear in Dan 8:9-14: דָּרַךְ “become great” (vss. 4, 8, 9, 10, 11, 25), לָעַת “throw” (vss. 7, 11, 12), לָעַל “trample” (vss. 7, 10, 13), and שָׁעָר “do” (vss. 4, 12, 24) (Daniel, 205).
regarded as an original and integral part of the vision report. In addition, a thematic analysis provides the same result. Especially the question "until when?" in vs. 13c cannot be excised from the original layer of chap. 8 since it is central to the chapter's theological message.

Structural Commentary of Daniel 8:9-14

The text of Dan 8:9-14 can now be analyzed in a structural commentary. The structural commentary is based on the results of the structural analysis so far, and of the text-grammatical analysis in chapter 2.

Daniel 8:9-14 consists of two closely connected subunits of the vision report in vss. 3-14: the description of the hom (vss. 9-11) and the audition (vss. 12-14), which is mainly concerned with the climactic last part of the vision, the vision of the hom.

Vision of the Horn (Daniel 8:9-11)

Verse 9a introduces a new main actor, the hom. The four clauses that follow (vss. 9b-10c) constitute a wayyiqtol chain that expresses progression of events. This section is marked by the keyword that occurs twice to indicate the different dimensions of the growing of the hom: first the horizontal dimension (vs. 9b) and then the vertical dimension (vs. 10a). The spatial dimensions are underlined by the use of the prepositions

---

1This confirms the conclusion by Collins that "there is no adequate reason for excising them as secondary" (Daniel [1993], 328). So also Odil Hannes Steck, "Weltgeschehen und Gottesvolk im Buche Daniel," in Kirche: Festschrift für Günther Bornkamm zum 75. Geburtstag, ed. D. Lührmann and G. Strecker (Tübingen: Mohr, 1980), 65 n. 49; Koch, "Visionsbericht," 433; Gese, 409.

2See Redditt, 134-135.
for the horizontal (vs. 9b) and for the vertical movement (vs. 10a). The vertical movement of the horn continues inwardly in vs. 11, when the preposition יָאָר is used again with דָּנוּר in the Hiphil, and it vaunts itself against the commander of the host.

The climax of the entire vision, and not only of the description of the horn, comes in vs. 11 and is marked as such by both form and content. First, vs. 11 is set apart from vss. 9-10 by several formal features. Most visible is the shift of verbal gender from feminine to masculine with the same subject. The horn took feminine verbs in vss. 9-10 but in vs. 11a-b it suddenly takes masculine verb forms. Another signal for the markedness of vs. 11 is the nonverbal עֲרַי רַע in the initial position in vs. 11a. This breaks the wayyiqtol sequence in vss. 9b-10c, obviously to lay emphasis on the ultimate dimension of the horn’s self-magnification which now reaches the commander of the host of heaven, the being to whom all clauses in vs. 11 are related (see the pronominal suffixes in vs. 11b and 11c). The “staccato description” of the horn’s actions and their effects in vs. 11 create “a sense of violence and hostility.”¹ As has been demonstrated, vs. 11 is also set apart from the previous clauses by its poetic-like style of language.

With regard to content, vs. 11 is marked as the culmination of the הָיְל hif.-pattern that divides the entire vision in three parts, and it is also marked as the culmination of the הָיְל-development of the horn in three dimensions in vss. 9b-11.²

Verse 11a is not followed by wayyiqtol clauses but by an x-qatal (vs. 11b) and a qatal-x clause (vs. 11c). Both of these clauses have nonsequential character. The x-qatal

¹Niditch, 225.

²See the section “Crescendo of the verbal root הָיְל and the ‘hubris-fall’ pattern” above.
clause in vs. 11b could describe either a simultaneous or a circumstantial activity to vs. 11a. The qatal-x clause in vs. 11c describes an activity simultaneous to vs. 11b. The simultaneous activities of the removal of the ūmād and the throwing down of the foundation of the sanctuary are most likely a description of how the horn magnifies itself up to the commander of the host. The self-magnification in vs. 11a describes an inward attitude (cf. vs. 25c), while the activities of removing and throwing down in vs. 11b-c are the corresponding outward activities of the horn.

Audition (Daniel 8:12-14)

Different nature of verse 12

Verse 12 is distinct from the previous verses. The primary factor here is that vs. 12 exhibits a different tense. By no longer using wayyiqtol or qatal forms (past tense) for the narration of what has been seen but yiqtol and w'qatal forms (future tense) typical for discourse, vs. 12 marks a sudden shift from vision to audition. Second, once more a nonverbal element occupies the clause initial position and introduces here a new actor, the host, which is used by the horn. Thus, in vs. 12 the horn, which was the main actor in vss. 9-11, is no longer directly in view. This change in subject is underlined by the different gender of the verbs in vs. 12, which are now feminine, whereas the gender in vs. 11a-b (with the horn as subject), as well as in vs. 11c, is masculine. Finally, the לֶבַנ- pattern came to its climax in vs. 11. Verse 12 does not contribute to the development of the pattern, which would require the downfall of the horn after its self-magnification, but creates tension by recounting the deeds and the success of the horn's host.
Connection between verse 11b-c and verse 12a-b

In principle, the audition is formally different from the vision, and as such has to be understood as a separate structural unit. However, thematically the audition and the climactic part of the vision, the description of the horn, are closely related. Two features link the final part of the vision (vs. 11b and 11c) with the beginning of the audition (vs. 12a and 12b). First, there is the repetition of the Leitwörter and in the same sequence. is used in vss. 11b and 12a, and the verbal root occurs in vss. 11c and 12b. Second, the clause types parallel each other:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11b</th>
<th>x-qatal</th>
<th>12a</th>
<th>x-qiqtol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11c</td>
<td>qatal-x</td>
<td>12b</td>
<td>w'qiqtol (or qiqtol-x)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of course, the tenses/aspects are different—vs. 11 uses perfect and vs. 12 imperfect forms—but the function of the clauses is identical. In both cases, the first clause has a nonverbal element in initial position and is followed by a nonsequential clause in the same tense. These clauses do not continue the sequence of events, but describe two, most likely simultaneous, events. In vs. 12 the setting up of a host against the and the throwing down of truth (vs. 12b) occur at the same time or may even describe the same event. With such a semantic function, vs. 12a-b corresponds to vs. 11b-c.

In view of these connections, the possibility suggests itself that in vs. 12a and 12b the celestial being provides an explanation for vs. 11b and 11c.1 When in the book of

---

1Hardy notes the parallelism in syntax and regards “truth was thrown to the ground” in vs. 12b as in parallel to “the place of his sanctuary was brought low” in vs. 11c, concluding that the truth about the sanctuary is under attack (282-284). Cf. also Goettsberger who notes that vs. 12 “seems to repeat in part verse 11” (62).
Daniel a celestial being enters into discourse and refers to something in a vision, the comments are usually of an explanatory nature. Verse 12 does not indicate a subsequent action, but an expansion of what was described before in the vision. The final two clauses in the description of the vision are commented upon by the celestial being who suddenly speaks. In other words, to remove the tamid from the commander of the host (vs. 11b) means to rebelliously place another host against, or in charge over, the tamid (vs. 12a). And when the horn throws down the foundation of the commander’s sanctuary (vs. 11c), it means that truth is thrown down to earth (vs. 12b). The structural relationship may be outlined as follows:

---

1One should take note of Ps 89:15 where in the parallel lines הושívelו התמים "faithfulness and truth" correspond to עמדו התמים "righteousness and justice" which are המים "the foundation" of יהוה’s throne. At least here, הושים is conceptually connected with המים in the divine realm.

2Some of these structural links have been recognized by Langer who suggests a concentric structure of vss. 10-12 with a small concentric substructure of 10a-11a (91):

A 10a: great – host of heaven — a
B 10bc: cause to fall to the earth (host, stars) 
C 11a: great – prince of the host — a'
D 11b: daily sacrifice
E 11c: place of sanctuary
D' 12a: daily sacrifice (host)
C' 12a: wantonness
B' 10bc: cast down to the earth (truth)
A' 12cd: act – successful

However, this proposal is not convincing. The structure does not seem to be based on verbal repetition. The only lexical correspondences are המים (10b, 12b) and התמים (11b, 12a) for the larger, and התמים (10a, 11a) for the smaller concentric structure. Less than obvious is the supposed connection between 10a and 12cd and between 11a and 12a, for which Langer gives no explanation.
The two statements in Dan 8:12a and 12b employ רעה and אמת as opposite terms (cf. Isa 59:12-15; Mic 7:18-20) to express that what is done in רעה “rebellion” runs counter to אמת “truth.”

Structure of the question in verse 13c

After the holy being has commented upon the successful activity of the horn’s host, another holy being poses the inevitable question רעה to the former one (vs. 13c). Although this angelic cry asks for the temporal limitation of the entire vision, the individual elements mentioned selectively in apposition to רעה focus on the climax of the vision and take up different parts of the description of the horn (vss. 10-11) and of what the first holy being has said (vs. 12).

The structural question about vs. 13c is in how many parts or small thematic units the seven words after רעה should be divided, and how these parts are connected with each other and with the previous verses. There is general agreement that רעה and שמש each form a unit. However, the opinions vary widely on how the rest of the words should be divided. A brief overview of suggestions testifies to the difficult nature of structuring the question in vs. 13c. In order to facilitate a comparison of the different
suggestions it is helpful to number the seven words all the way through: $T \leftarrow n n = 1$; $P \leftarrow n n = 2$; $n n = 3$; $T \leftarrow n n = 4$; $\leftarrow n n = 5$; $\leftarrow n n = 6$; and $\leftarrow n n = 7$.

Several scholars suggest that the words in apposition to $n n$ form three thematic units, by either taking $\leftarrow n n$ as one unit ($1+234+567$ or $1+23+4567$),\(^1\) or by excising one unit, usually $\leftarrow n n$ ($1+234+57$).\(^2\) Others divide the seven words into four units\(^3\) by taking $\leftarrow n n$ as two units ($1+234+5+67$)\(^4\) or taking $n n$ as one unit and $\leftarrow n n$ as another unit ($1+23+4+567$).\(^5\) Still others suggest five thematic units, taking $\leftarrow n n$ as two units referring to tribulation and trampling ($1+23+45+6+7$)\(^6\) or taking $\leftarrow n n$ as one unit and $n n$ as a separate unit.

---

\(^1\) Three elements and taking $n n$ with the preceding words ($1+234+567$) have been suggested by Marti, Daniel, 59; Charles, 210-211; Nelis, 97; H. Schneider, Daniel, 54; Alders, Daniël (1962), 181; Hassberger, 105-106; Hartman and Di Lella, 226, 227 (in following Moore [see the next note], Hartman analyzes vs. 13c as three groups, each consisting of a noun with following infinitive, the infinitives being $\leftarrow n n$ and $n n$, and another infinitive $\leftarrow n n$ “taking away” or $n n$ “removing”) supplied after $n n$; Schindele, “Textkonstituierung zu Daniel 8,” 9, 14; Bauer, Daniel, 172. Three elements and taking $\leftarrow n n$ as one element ($1+234+567$) have been suggested by Hävernick, 288; von Lengerke, 383-386; Kliefoth, 260; Bevan, 135 (with serious emendations); Driver, Daniel, 118; Montogmery, 341-342; Leupold, 352; Young, Daniel, 173; Slotki (1951), 68; Porteous, 119; Lacocque, The Book of Daniel, 158; Russell, 147; Goldingay, Daniel, 195; Gese, 408-409; Collins, Daniel (1993), 326, 336; Lucas, Daniel, 202. It goes without saying that the individual translations of vs. 13c differ to a large extent.

\(^2\) Moore, “Daniel viii. 9-14,” 196; Bentzen, 56. Moore analyzes vs. 13c as three infinitive clauses in apposition to $n n$. He thus prefers to insert $\leftarrow n n$ ($\leftarrow n n$ could also be possible) after $n n$.

\(^3\) Shea, Selected Studies (1982), 80 = (1992), 96. Shea does not decide on the position of $n n$, whether it belongs to the preceding or to the following words.

\(^4\) Niditch, 217, 220. Niditch reads after each item a participial modifier, where there is none, she assumes one.

\(^5\) Obbink, 111.

\(^6\) Plöger, Daniel, 120, 122 (with emendation so that the conjunction $\text{waw}$ stands before each unit); Delcor, 175.
or even six thematic units (1+23+4+5+67).\textsuperscript{1}

So far, the linguistic analysis in chapter 2 has shown it to be syntactically possible
that the infinitive construct \( \text{נְוַיִּמְנֵו} \) refers either to the preceding \( \text{תַּמָּתָמ} \) or to the
following \( \text{נְוַיִּמְנֵו} \), while the terminological relation between Dan 8:13c,
11:31c-d, and 12:11 decides in favor of the phrase \( \text{נְּנֹמִי} \), with \( \text{נְּנֹמִי} \) as
object to \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \). Still undecided is whether \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) is one thematic unit of the
vision’s specification (“and both holy and host to be a trampling”) or two (“and holy, and
a host to be a trampling”). Hence, the seven last words in vs. 13c either form three parts
(1+234+567) or four parts (1+234+5+67).

The division into four parts is preferable for several reasons. First, the different
phrases in vs. 13c clearly recapitulate elements of vss. 10-12. The phrase \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) refers back to vs. 10, where some of the host (\( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) of heaven are trampled (\( \text{רָמָה} \)) by the
horn. While in the vision \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) is linked with the root \( \text{רָמָה} \), the root \( \text{שָׁמַר} \) is not. Thus, if
\( \text{שָׁמַר} \) is linked with \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) it would express something that has not been mentioned as such
before. In fact, the recapitulation of the trampling of the host in vs. 10 by \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \)
and the connection of the sanctuary in vs. 11 with \( \text{שָׁמַר} \) suggests that \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) in
vs. 13c refers to two incidents and should therefore be understood as two parts. Second,
the conjunction \( \text{וָא} \), occurring three times in vs. 13c, could be a structural device to

\textsuperscript{1}Zöckler, 177. At least, this is the grammatical construction for Zöckler. He continues,
however, that “\( \text{נְיִמְנֵו} \) thus qualifies all the last three nouns, the latter two directly as an adjective,
and the former as an equivalent for the infinitive.”

\textsuperscript{2}Except for \( \text{נְיִמְנֵו \שָׁמַר} \), Maier regards each word as an individual reference to something
before (308).
divide the seven words into four phrases. After the conjunction is used twice before a new thematic part—before קֵרֶּד and before שׁוֹפֵר—it would be consistent if it had the same function before אֶלֶף. Finally, the division into four parts creates the pattern “single noun + phrase + single noun + phrase” in which the single noun expresses a positive entity (תֹּהֶם and שָׁם), whereas the phrase expresses a negative entity (רִכְשׁוֹן שָׁמַשׁ and מַעֲרָבָה).

The recapitulation of word and roots from vss. 10-12 is a striking feature of the appositional items in vs. 13c. Each of the seven words following the initial question, except for שָׁם, corresponds to one or more words of the same root in the description of the horn in vss. 10-11 and in the audition in vs. 12:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10c</th>
<th>10a</th>
<th>11c</th>
<th>12a</th>
<th>—</th>
<th>12a</th>
<th>11b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>מְרָכָה</td>
<td>קֵרֶד</td>
<td>שָׁמַשׁ</td>
<td>תֹּהֶם</td>
<td>קֵרֶד</td>
<td>שָׁמַשׁ</td>
<td>מַעֲרָבָה</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Interestingly, these words refer exclusively to the activities of the horn (vss. 10a-12a), but not to those of the horn’s host (vs. 12b-d). Also, none of the words in vs. 13c refer to anything in vs. 9, whereas they recapitulate at least one word or root of each of the seven clauses in vss. 10a-12a. The inference may be that the holy being who poses the question in vs. 13c is especially concerned with the vertical dimension of the horn’s activity, which starts in vs. 10a. Thus, the question emphasizes the horn’s attack on the host of heaven, on the commander of the host, and on the cult (strongly expressed by cultic language in vss. 11a-12a).
In general, vs. 13c recapitulates words and roots of vss. 10-12 in reverse order.\(^1\) A chiastic arrangement might be possible. Shea notes the reverse order of the four parts cited in the question, taking the first two parts together, as follows: קְדֹשׁ + desolation (vs. 13c1), sanctuary (vs. 13c2), and host (vs. 13c3) in the question correspond to קְדֹשׁ + desolation (vs. 12), sanctuary (vs. 11), and host (vs. 10) in the preceding verses.\(^2\) Likewise, Gane recognizes the reverse order and suggests the following chiastic arrangement:\(^3\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vss. 10-12</th>
<th>vs. 13</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>קְדֹשׁ + desolation</td>
<td>קְדֹשׁ + desolation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanctuary</td>
<td>sanctuary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>host</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The chiastic structure functions, however, only under two conditions. Since קְדֹשׁ and נָגַד occur more than once in vss. 10-12, one has to choose a specific occurrence that allows for a reverse order of the words in vs. 13c. For קְדֹשׁ this is vs. 12a (but not vs. 11b) and for נָגַד it is vs. 10a or vs. 10b (but not vs. 11a). Furthermore, if the words in the question are taken individually, the order is not perfectly chiastic, since in vs. 13c as well as in vss. 10-12, קְדֹשׁ occurs before פָּנָי and נָגַד occurs before רָמוֹ. That is probably the reason why both Shea and Gane put קְדֹשׁ and פָּנָי together, and also קְדֹשׁ and רָמוֹ.

\(^1\) A reverse sequence of words in vss. 11-12 and in vs. 13c is noticed by Langer (91-92).


\(^3\) Gane, “The Syntax of Tet Ve . . . in Daniel 8:13,” 377-378, with the graphic on p. 378.
and נַעֲרָא, in order to obtain a chiastic structure, which then consists of phrases and words.

Besides a chiastic structure, two other structural arrangements are possible. First, the four parts appear to be arranged in a double pair of “single noun (positive) + noun phrase (negative),” as mentioned above. Thematically, each pair lists an entity under the horn’s attack followed by a result of the horn’s activities. In the case of the first pair, the tamî d is attacked, which results in the establishment of a devastating rebellion. The continual service of God is removed and possibly replaced by a rebellious service. If the second pair functions similarly, one would have to conclude that the holy is under attack, which results in a trampled host. The implication would be that שַׁכְרָא is somehow associated with the host of heaven. To be sure, this does not mean that the only association of שַׁכְרָא is with the host of heaven. The root association to שַׁכְרָא in vs. 11c is evident and links שַׁכְרָא to the sanctuary as well. The association of שַׁכְרָא with נֶעָר, however, helps one to understand why it is possible for the holy being to answer the question with the single statement in vs. 14c that שַׁכְרָא is going to be restored, for שַׁכְרָא relates not only to the sanctuary, but also to the host of heaven. In fact, whatever is

1Another structural proposal, which however does not take into account the Masoretic text as it stands, is forwarded by Gese who suggests that vs. 11b-12b and the question in 13c (vs. 13bbg for Gese) show a double structure with the tamî d sacrifice on the one side and the sanctuary/priestly service on the other side (408-409):

Vs. 11b-c And from him (God) is taken away the tamî d sacrifice, and thrown down is his sanctuary place and priestly service.

Vs. 12 It (the horn) places itself over the tamî d sacrifice in sin and throws down truth to earth (+ conclusion formula).

Vs. 13c (Until when is the vision, namely) the tamî d sacrifice and the sin סְבָּלָשׁ,

Setting (asyn denton!) of sanctuary and priestly service for trampling.

As well-balanced as this structure is, it is problematic that Gese takes נֶעָר with the meaning “priestly service” and that he relocates נֶעָר (vs. 12a) to the end of vs. 11.
connected to the commander of the host appears to be שַׁלֹּחַ, as illustrated by the intertextually relevant passage in Josh 5:13-15.¹

Second, if each part of the question relates specifically to one of the activities of the horn, a slightly different arrangement is possible in which שַׁלֹּחַ refers to the removal of continual service (vs. 11b), נַחֲלָה מִשְׁפָּת to the rebellion of setting up a counter-host (12a), שֶׁרֶף to the destruction of the sanctuary (vs. 11c), and נַחֲלָה to the destruction of God’s people (vs. 10). The obvious difference between the two suggestions is that in the one with four individual parts שַׁלֹּחַ refers more clearly to the sanctuary, while in the one with two double pairs it appears to be connected with the host of heaven.

In the end, one has to admit that there is no unambiguous structural arrangement of the seven words in apposition to the question in vs. 13c. In basic agreement with Shea and Gane, I regard a reverse order of these words as likely. A reverse order is also compatible with the suggestion of two double pairs, but does not work equally well with the suggestion of four individual parts, for the first two parts, נַחֲלָה מִשְׁפָּת and נַחֲלָה, are not in reverse order to the respective activities in vss. 11b and 12a.

It is quite possible that the difficulty to structure the question is a sign of another, rhetorical purpose of this series of appositions, that is, to communicate the confusion and the utter astonishment of the holy being over the divine silence in face of the successful activities of the horn. Such an emotional reason for the staccato of appositions cannot be

¹The site where the celestial שַׁלֹּחַ appears to Joshua is holy: “The captain of YHWH’s host מַעֲבָד [מַעֲבָד מְאַבָּד] said to Joshua, ‘Remove your sandals from your feet, for the place where you are standing is holy [שַׁלֹּחַ]’” (Josh 5:15; cf. Exod 3:5). The cultic overtones cannot be missed. It goes without saying that the sacredness of the ground is not a quality of the ground itself but is brought about only by the presence of the heavenly commander.
excluded and should be seriously taken into account.¹

Cohesion within the audition

The audition consists of three parts: vs.12, vs. 13c, and vs. 14b-c. These parts are linked formally by the use of w'qatal forms and the preposition יד.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Holy being A:</th>
<th>w'qatal</th>
<th>12c-d</th>
<th>statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Another holy being B:</td>
<td>יד</td>
<td>13c</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy being A:</td>
<td>יד</td>
<td>14b</td>
<td>question answered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>w'qatal</td>
<td>14c</td>
<td>statement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The effect of this patterning is that vs. 14b-c connects to both of the previous parts of the audition. Verse 14b answers the question of vs. 13c, וירד יד ריב מ "until when?" with "until יד 2300 evening-morning." At the same time יד with w'qatal form in vs. 14c takes up the verbal forms that the same holy being used in vs. 12c-d.

Function of the audition

The dialogue at the end of the vision report serves several purposes.² First, the sudden entry of the audition in vs. 12 almost interrupts the vision proper and prolongs the dwelling on the activities of the horn. The rhetorical function is to heighten the tension, since the success of the horn and its host has not yet met its fall, contrary to the expectations raised by the hubris-fall pattern in the vision proper.

¹An emotional explanation for the cry in vs. 13c is also put forward by Seow, who regards it as a "stammering" or "sputtering question" with many ellipses between its words (Daniel, 125).

²For dialogue as stylistic technique, see Alonso Schökel, A Manual of Hebrew Poetics, 170-177.
Second, the question of the second holy being (vs. 13c) expresses the thoughts of Daniel, and also of the reader. Thus the answer (vs. 14b-c) can be directed toward Daniel. Daniel, as it were, is pulled into the prophetic revelation.\(^1\) In this way the answer in vs. 14 gains importance.

Third, the central position of the vision report is occupied by the directive speech act. It is here in the vision report that one finds the decisive statement of the entire chapter. However, it is not so much the question that is the center of the audition, although “the imagery speech of 8:3-12 serves only to provoke the ‘how long?’ of 8:13,”\(^2\) which then comes along with full rhetorical force as the central question in chap. 8.\(^3\) Rather, the thematic center of attention is the answer in vs. 14b-c. Its extreme brevity, in contrast to the lengthy expatiation of the horn’s activities, serves a literary function: Emphasis is added by extreme brevity.\(^4\) Hence, the audition in the vision report of Dan 8 attests once more to the preeminence of hearing over seeing.\(^5\)

---

\(^1\)Already Gerhard von Rad notes that the visions in the OT merge regularly into an audition and culminate in a personal address to the prophet (Old Testament Theology, 2:59).


\(^3\)Bader, “Reale und gedachte Welt,” 49-50.

\(^4\)In regard to Dan 12:1-4 as climax in contrast to the overblown wordiness of chap. 11, James L. Lindenberger explains: “It is a rhetorical trick of ancient Hebrew writers to add emphasis by extreme brevity” (“Daniel 12:1-4,” Int 39 [1985]: 182).

General Conclusion

As the subunits of the vision in Dan 8 follow one another, they build to a climax as the vision report nears its end. The climax consists of two parts: the vision of the horn (vss. 9-11) and the audition (vss. 12-14). Both parts are closely connected by the occurrence of several bridging keywords and Leitwörter, as well as by the fact that the beginning of the audition (vs. 12a-b) provides explanatory information to the end of the vision (vs. 11b-c). Hence, the passage in vss. 9-14 exhibits cohesion and coherence.

The vision of the horn should be considered a structural subunit of the vision report and not a part of the section of the he-goat. The factors most decisive for such a structural division are the triple “hubris-fall” pattern of the vision (Leitwort הָרֶש), which shows that the horn functions on the same level as the ram and the he-goat, as well as the introduction of a new, prominent character and a sudden change in the course of events and thematic orientation that revolves around the religious and the cultic.

In the audition, a holy being first comments on the final scene of the vision (vs. 12). Only after another angel's pressing question in vs. 13 comes the denouement in vs. 14, and the tension, which was built up by the incomplete third “hubris-fall” pattern, is ultimately resolved.

On the basis of the literary data and the thematic distribution and arrangement, Dan 8:9-14 has to be reckoned as a well-crafted literary piece that exhibits a rhetorically magnificent form, as well as artistic and creative unity. The various literary and

1Only a few recognize the rhetorical artistry of Dan 8:9-14. Koch regards the composition of Dan 8 as well-planned, very artistic, and fully capable of creating aesthetic pleasure (“Visionsbericht,” 420). With a different position and meaning of נַעַר in vs. 12a (see p. 549 n. 1 [above]), Gese finds

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
structural devices are fit together with consummate skill. The form supports its content. For example, the culmination of the hubristic activities of the horn in vs. 11 is marked formally by the literary devices of gender and poetic-like language.

Most important, however, is the message of vss. 9-14. Although the climactic flow of the vision report is emphasized by thematic intensification through a concentration of nearly synonymous words for destruction, the thematic distribution reveals that the predominant semantic field “power, control, and violence” is shifted to the semantic field “holiness and sanctuary” in vss. 11b-14c. The emphasis of the vision report is on the cult and it becomes clear that the horn and its host actually wage a cultic war. By doing so, the horn enters the role of the archetypal enemy of God. It is characterized as anti-priest, anti-creator, and anti-YHWH. The vision proper ends abruptly, and surprisingly, on a victorious note for the horn, leaving the hubris-fall pattern unfulfilled. However, the audition resolves the tension. The horn’s war in the realm of cult is countered and cut short by divine intervention that is carried out in the context of an eschatological Day of Atonement. The thematic analysis, the terminological allusions, and the following intertextual analysis all reinforce that the Day of Atonement functions as the macrotheme, comprising the important themes in 8:9-14, that is, cult, judgment, and creation. At last, terror finds its end, and God’s people, the cult, and the sanctuary are restored to their rightful position, and in the final analysis, God himself is vindicated.

the structure of vss. 11-13 to be rhetorically brilliant (409).
CHAPTER 4

TEXTUAL RELATIONS

Introduction to Intertextual Analysis

"No text is an island."¹ No text can be read as an isolated unit. This simple
dictum, of course, also applies to the text of Dan 8:9-14, which proves to be not only the
centerpiece of chap. 8, but is moreover closely linked to Daniel's other revelatory
experiences in chaps. 7, 9, and 10-12, and carries some of the major theological strands
of the book. The passage also shows themes and motifs taken from other texts of the
Hebrew Bible. The purpose of this chapter is to explore the web of textual relations of
Dan 8:9-14, that is, the specific text or range of texts with which 8:9-14 holds a dynamic
relationship, and to see how these other texts contribute to the understanding of 8:9-14.

The theoretical foundation for this kind of analysis is the concept of
intertextuality. One needs to define how the concept of intertextuality is understood,

¹This illustrative formula to express the concept of intertextuality was first used by Peter D.
Miscale (“Isaiah: New Heavens, New Earth, New Book,” in Reading between Texts: Intertextuality
and the Hebrew Bible, ed. D. N. Fewell, Literary Currents in Biblical Interpretation [Louisville:
Westminster John Knox, 1992], 45). Based on Miscale’s line Ulrike Bail elaborates: "Texts, however,
are no islands and the reader is no castaway who, without memory and recollection, counts palm trees
and categorizes them. For texts are dialogic, they call to memory other texts, remind of things already
read, of things already experienced. No text stands in isolation, each one seeks for a place in an
already existing world of texts. It is true that texts are closed on a syntagmatic level, but on a
paradigmatic level their relations to other texts are unlimited, as it were, resulting in a regressus ad
infinitum" (Gegen das Schweigen klagen: Eine intertextuelle Studie zu den Klagepsalmen Ps 6 und Ps
which criteria help to identify intertextual relations, and which methodological procedures the present intertextual analysis uses.

The Concept of Intertextuality

As the name implies, "intertextuality" concerns the network and interconnections among texts, in short, the relations between texts. The term "intertextuality" in modern


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
literary theory has made its way into biblical studies. In fact, “intertextual studies” have grown so popular in both literary theory and biblical studies that the term “intertextuality” has become a trendy vogue expression. Intertextuality has accumulated a bewildering variety of definitions and uses among literary critics and theorists, and more recently also among biblical scholars. This situation creates an obvious problem. The variety of usages makes it dangerous to employ the term “intertextuality” without knowledge of its history and without further definition, for one could be easily misunderstood or accused of misapplication.


1 A simple search in the ATLA Religion Index database under Keyword “intertext*” showed for the years 1980-89 30 entries, for 1990-99 232 entries, and for 2000-03 151 entries (June 22, 2005). The same search criteria applied to the WorldCat database yielded 151 references for 1970-79, 439 references for 1980-89 (among them 5 diss./theses in the subject area “Bible”), 1,159 references for 1990-99 (29 diss./theses in “Bible”), and 900 references for 2000-04 (43 diss./theses in “Bible”).

2 Most surveys of intertextuality start with a similar observation like this one: “Intertextuality remains the subject of such a diversity of interpretations and is defined so variously, that it is anything but a transparent, commonly understood term” (Allen, Intertextuality, 1). Heinrich F. Plett points out: “It is even worse when scholars use the term ‘intertextuality’ without having critically examined the concept, only in order to appear up-to-date” (“Intertextualities,” in Intertextuality, ed. H. F. Plett, Research in Text Theory = Untersuchungen zur Texttheorie, no. 15 [Berlin: de Gruyter, 1991], 4). One has to be aware of a certain self-dynamic here: “The more a term circulates, the more elusive becomes its content. This applies especially to the term intertextuality” (Ulrich Broich, Manfred Pfister, and Bernd Schulte-Middelich, eds., Intertextualität: Formen, Funktionen, anglistische Fallstudien, Konzepte der Sprach- und Literaturwissenschaft, no. 35 [Tübingen: Niemeyer, 1985], ix).

3 Speaking of both areas, literary theory and biblical studies, Tull observes at the beginning of her survey: “The concept of intertextuality represents a battleground of differing emphases and claims, both linguistic and ideological. The most widely made second statement concerning intertextuality is that few agree on how best to understand and use the term” (“Intertextuality and the Hebrew Scriptures,” 59). In fact, the meaning of the term “intertextuality” has become “in itself an interesting study in intertextuality” (Patricia K. Tull, “The Rhetoric of Recollection,” in Congress Volume: Oslo 1998, ed. A. Lemaire and M. Sæbø, VTSup, no. 80 [Leiden: Brill, 2000], 75).
The unifying factor of the diverse concepts of intertextuality is the fact that an individual text is not one standing totally on its own, but is an integral part of a rich and complex web or network of texts which must be recognized in order to fully comprehend the text at hand. Texts are always interwoven in previous texts and should not, indeed cannot, be read in isolation.

The act of reading, theorists claim, plunges us into a network of textual relations. To interpret a text, to discover its meaning, or meanings, is to trace those relations. Meaning becomes something which exists between a text and all the other texts to which it refers and relates, moving out from the independent text into a network of textual relations. The text becomes the intertext. The problem therefore is how this network of textual relations should be understood theoretically.

Different Types of Intertextuality

A brief look into intertextuality and the term’s history in literary theory helps to identify two basic concepts of intertextuality. The term “intertextuality” was introduced by Julia Kristeva who attempted to combine the theories of M. M. Bakhtin and of F. de

1"For no text sets foot on communicative and thus interpretive no-man’s-land, respectively is read as if being cut off from all other texts. There always exist texts prior and next to it. This relationship between texts is described with the term intertextuality” (Christina Spaller, “Wenn zwei das Gleiche lesen, ist es doch nicht dasselbe! Überlegungen zur gegenwärtigen hermeneutischen Diskussion,” BN 98 [1999]: 78).


3It cannot be the purpose here to give a more comprehensive survey of the plethora of definitions and theories of intertextuality. For two excellent general introductions to the idea of intertextuality, the term’s history, and its use in different literary theories see Allen, Intertextuality; and Mary Orr, Intertextuality: Debates and Contexts (Cambridge: Polity; Oxford: Blackwell, 2003). Excellent introductions concerning intertextuality and biblical studies are Tull, “Intertextuality and the Hebrew Scriptures”; and Gillmayr-Bucher, “Intertextualität.”
Saussure by transferring Bakhtin’s “dialogic concept” to texts. For her, “any text is construed as a mosaic of quotations; any text is the absorption and transformation of another.” Texts are inseparably interwoven with other texts and should therefore always be viewed in a greater context, the intertext. A text always stands in dialogue with a pre-text, both illuminating the understanding of each other. It is important to understand that in this kind of intertextuality the literary meaning of texts does not depend on the author—Roland Barthes proposes “the death of the author”—but on readers who by finding new textual relations discover multiple meanings within texts and thus rewrite or reweave texts from the threads of innumerable other texts. Barthes therefore designates a text metaphorically as “tissue” or “weaving.” In other words, intertextual reading is not limited to the intertext of the author or to that of the intended reader but is concerned with the impact on the reader concerning the interpretative process of a text. The intertext designates the relations between texts the reader is reminded of while reading a given text. Intertextuality understood in this sense is a complex phenomenon. It involves the author, who first is a reader of previous texts, the author’s culture and setting, the reader’s culture and setting, and connections made by the reader that the author might have never intended. For Kristeva and Barthes, intertextuality is a quasi-guarantee for the unending possibilities to interpret any given text. Texts are not fixed in their meaning but are


2Ibid., 66. One should note that for Kristeva the term “texts” includes non-literary texts, in particular the life-experience of the reader.
radically open, polyphonic, and polyvalent.\textsuperscript{1} This original definition of intertextuality is reader-oriented and synchronic, and in biblical studies closely related to reader-response criticism.

In opposition to Kristeva and Barthes, French literary critics Gérard Genette and Michael Riffaterre independently argue for critical certainty in establishing intertextual relations. For them, intertextuality can be used to produce a stable reading of the text if one introduces historical components, signals or markers to identify intertextual links to specific previous texts.\textsuperscript{2} Thus, the radical openness of texts in the original idea of intertextuality is modified and restricted to comparatively few intertextual relations that can be critically established and intersubjectively verified. This second concept of intertextuality emphasizes authorial intention and is text-oriented.

In summary, with some simplification, there are two major and distinct conceptual approaches regarding intertextuality (see table 32).\textsuperscript{3} At the center of the debate between

\textsuperscript{1} Cf. Bail, Gegen das Schweigen klagen, 106.

\textsuperscript{2} Gerard Genette introduces the term “hypertextuality” which describes “any relationship uniting a text B (... the hypertext) to an earlier text A (... the hypotext), upon which it is grafted in a manner that is not that of a commentary” (Palimpsests: Literature in the Second Degree, trans. C. Newman and C. Doubinsky [Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press, 1997], 5).

\textsuperscript{3} From a New Testament perspective, Steve Moyise speaks of three subcategories of intertextuality: (1) intertextual echo: one text alludes or echoes a previous text (unilinear direction); (2) dialogical intertextuality: interaction between text and subtext operates in both directions; and (3) postmodern intertextuality: the process of tracing the interactions between texts is inherently unstable so that “there is never only one way of interpreting a text” (“Intertextuality and the Study of the Old Testament in the New Testament,” in The Old Testament in the New Testament: Essays in Honour of J. L. North, ed. S. Moyise, JSNTSup, no. 189 [Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 2000], 17-18). It does not matter too much if one speaks of “subcategories of intertextuality” or “different intertextual approaches” as long as one realizes the distinctiveness of the categories or approaches. It appears that the first two of Moyise’s subcategories fall into author-intended or text-oriented intertextuality, whereas his third subcategory is the same as reader-oriented intertextuality.
intertextualists are the questions of who gives meaning to the text—the author or the reader—and how texts are interrelated—by influence theory or by a multifaceted dialogical concept.

Table 32. Two Concepts of Intertextuality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reader-Oriented Intertextuality</th>
<th>Author-Intended Intertextuality or Text-Oriented Intertextuality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reader constructs intertextual relations</td>
<td>Author constructed (deliberately or involuntarily) intertextual relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radically open: unlimited number of intertextual relations</td>
<td>Restricted: limited number of intertextual relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free relations</td>
<td>Compulsory relations identified by close reading (text-oriented)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receptor-oriented: exegete is interested in functions (effect of intertextual relations)</td>
<td>Source-oriented: exegete is interested in sources (purpose of intertextual relations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synchronic: all texts can function as intertext</td>
<td>Diachronic: only prior or contemporary texts can function as intertext</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Reader-oriented intertextuality focuses on the reader as the center of interpretation. The reader constructs the mutual relevance of different texts as perceived

---

1For an appraisal of these two question see Tull ("Intertextuality and the Hebrew Scriptures," 59-64) who adds as a third issue the dispute over what constitutes a text—a written text or any kind of communication (cf. Gillmair-Bucher, "Intertextualität," 19). See also the treatment on the concepts "author" and "reader" in Donald C. Polaski, *Authorizing an End: The Isaiah Apocalypse and Intertextuality*, BiblIntS, no. 50 (Leiden: Brill, 2001), 35-45, who tries to avoid using these concepts by choosing a social understanding of intertextuality that focuses on a particular text and a particular culture (45-49), which, however, creates its own difficulties in regard to the use of "culture."
by the reader but not necessarily intended by the author. The intertext from which the reader can freely choose intertextual relations is the entire universe of written and non-written texts, which makes this model a truly synchronic approach.

Author-intended intertextuality focuses on the author who intends intertextual relations. It is thus a productional intertextuality that concerns the interrelationship between two or more texts deliberately established or proposed by the author through various markers or signals. The intertextual relations involve the aspect of influence, which makes this model diachronic. As such, author-intended intertextuality requires close reading of the texts and is essentially text-oriented. In fact, since the intertextual markers or signals are to be found in the text and thus demonstrate basically "textual intentionality," it is possible, and maybe even preferable, to designate this type of intertextuality as "text-oriented intertextuality."

Similar differences in understanding intertextuality are found among biblical scholars. There are those who follow Kristeva's reader-oriented intertextuality, those

---

1Edgar W. Conrad believes that "authorial intentionality" is entirely beyond our grasp. However, "textual intentionality" refers not to the human mind but to signals and codes that, to some extent, are typical of writing and reading everywhere" (Reading the Latter Prophets: Toward a New Canonical Criticism, JSOTSup, no. 376 [London: Clark, 2003], 271).

2The essays in Semel 69/70 (1995); Bail, Gegen das Schweigen kragen (shorter, but exceptionally clear: Ulrike Bail, "Psalm 110: Eine intertextuelle Lektüre aus alttestamentlicher Perspektive," in Heiligkeit und Herrschaft: Intertextuelle Studien zu Heiligschaft und zu Psalm 110, ed. D. Sänger, BTS, no. 55 [Neukirchen-Vluyn, Neukirchener, 2003], 94-121); Steins, Die "Bindung Isaks" im Kanon, esp. 84-102 (proposes in detail a new exegetical method called "canonical-intertextual reading" within the scope of reception theory; cf. idem, "Der Bibelkanon als Denkmal und Text," 177-198; Childs, "Critique of Recent Intertextual Canonical Interpretation," 173-178); Kirsten Nielsen, "Intertextuality and Hebrew Bible," in Congress Volume: Oslo 1998, ed. A. Lemaire and M. Sarba, VTSup, no. 80 (Leiden: Brill, 2000), 17-31, esp. 31 (proposes the concept of "responsible exegesis" in which exegesis is understood as response to texts and intertexts, including historically later intertexts).
who opt for intentional intertextual relations\(^1\) and specifically reject radical openness,\(^2\) those who argue for the validity and use of both approaches,\(^3\) and finally those who prefer the one over the other.\(^4\)


\(^4\)Lyle Eslinger argues for a synchronic approach: inner-biblical allusion can only be studied as inner-biblical exegesis when textual precedence can be established (“Inner-Biblical Exegesis and Inner-Biblical Allusion: The Question of Category,” *VT* 42 [1992]: 47-58). However, if there is not enough historical data the literary connections must be read “atemporally and without assumptions about vectors of dependence,” and then inner-biblical allusion should be studied as what it is, and not as inner-biblical exegesis (56). Eslinger suggests a study of inner-biblical allusion that “can turn again to the sequence of events actually described or implied in much of biblical literature and follow the chain of reverse trajectory allusions through from creation to apocalypse.” Matters of history and historicity are then “simply bracketed or even rejected as beyond verification” (58). Benjamin D. Sommer argues that there is a basic distinction between intertextuality and allusion and that both Fishbane’s diachronic (inner-biblical allusion and influence theory) and Eslinger’s synchronic approach (intertextuality) are valuable in their own respect (“Exegesis, Allusion and Intertextuality in the Hebrew Bible: A Response to Lyle Eslinger,” *VT* 46 [1996]: 479-489; idem, *A Prophet Reads Scripture*, 6-10). However intertextuality should be restricted to a synchronic approach: “The study of
In conclusion, the broad definition of reader-oriented intertextuality makes it difficult to use for the interpretation of texts. If the interrelation between texts is only perceived in the mind of today’s reader but was not intended by the author and/or the community that produced and received the book of Daniel, there are no limits to intertextual relations, which then could include anything in and outside of the biblical text.\(^1\) In fact, the definition of this type of intertextuality prevents any valid controls to be established. In the intentional intertextuality, the endless openness of the text, in contrast to reader-oriented intertextuality, disappears in the background in favor of verifiable procedures to establish concrete intertextual relations.\(^2\) From a text-oriented viewpoint the concept of intertextuality must be methodized for each individual interpretation. Thus, the approach used in the present study builds on the restricted and limited concept of intertextuality. Needless to say, preferring a restricted intertextuality does not entail the broader concept to be irrelevant.

Criteria for Intertextual Relations and Methodological Considerations

Like in any other area of exegesis, intertextuality should have “internal controls intertextuality is synchronic, the analysis of allusion diachronic or even historicist” (“Exegesis, Allusion and Intertextuality,” 487). Pyeon, in following the theoretical foundation laid by Sommer, proposes two levels of intertextuality: a synchronic level interested in words, phrases, motifs from one another, and a diachronic level interested in words, phrases, and motifs from other biblical texts (You Have Not Spoken What Is Right About Me, 43-44).

\(^1\)This is not to say that reader-oriented intertextuality is otiose. For some possible benefits of this type of intertextuality from the viewpoint of a practitioner of author-oriented or text-oriented intertextuality see Moyise, 37-40.

\(^2\)Cf. Wolde, Words Become Worlds, 164; idem, “Texts in Dialogue with Texts,” 4. Schultz uses the term “intentional interrelationships” (40 [emphasis his]), although one may doubt whether all verbal parallels need to indicate conscious authorial intention.
against incautious or fallacious methodological procedures." Protection from methodological arbitrariness is especially important in the area of intertextuality since one could easily get the feeling that exegetes have been given carte blanche in their intertextual endeavors. A call for careful consideration of intertextual criteria is necessary.  

The foundation of intertextual devices is similarity or repetition. Similarity can function on the level of vocabulary, specific word constructions, structure, theme, and content.

A major factor in identifying an intertextual relation is verbal and/or thematic correspondence in two passages. The intertextual study of Dan 8:9-14 focuses therefore on the lexical and thematic links of this text with other parts in the book of Daniel. Every occurrence of the lexemes of this passage in other places in the book of Daniel is noted. To help in this effort, a “word/word group concordance” of Dan 8:9-14 is constructed (see Appendix 1).

However, a “word/word group concordance” does not automatically display intertextual relations. Adele Berlin cautions that verbal correspondence does not indicate an authorial or compositional device since comparisons between texts are generated by the reader. She continues that “verbal correspondence may indicate an allusion but does not necessarily do so. To confirm an allusion we would generally need more than the

1Fishbane, Biblical Interpretation, 288.

2Adele Berlin pleads that “it is worth thinking through the criteria more carefully than has been done thus far, both in the interest of developing sound exegetical principles and in the interest of untangling the literary history of the Bible” (“Literary Exegesis of Biblical Narrative,” 128).
correspondence of a single term or usage.”¹

There are two factors that help to establish an intertextual relation between two texts on the lexical and the thematic level: first, a “cluster of parallel terms,”² that is, the density of lexical correspondences between two texts in a relatively short textual range, which includes the repetition of relevant semantic fields,³ and second, the correspondence of rare or unique words and phrases. Obviously, the more links that exist between two passages, the more likely an intertextual relation exists between them. Two further criteria play a role in identifying an intertextual relation and make it even more probable: if lexical correspondences happen to occur in “analogous contexts”⁴ and show a similarity in theme or genre, and if a similarity in structure, structural elements and units, or sequence exists.⁵

By these criteria Dan 8:9-14 reveals a number of texts which form the intertextuality of the focal text. These other texts may provide syntactic, structural, or

¹Ibid. (emphasis hers). In larger text sections, random verbal correspondence happens more easily, which is why intertextual “verbal correspondence between stories, and between story cycles, is more difficult to prove conclusively” (Joel Rosenberg, King and Kin: Political Allegory in the Hebrew Bible, ISBL [Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1986], 203).

²Fishbane, Biblical Interpretation, 287.

³This is one of the two major methodological points argued by Paul R. Noble: “A catalogue of individual, unrelated points of resemblance between two texts is not, in general, a sufficient criterion for identifying a probable authorial or redactional allusion of one text to the other” (“Esau, Tamar, and Joseph: Criteria for Identifying Inner-Biblical Allusions,” VT 52 [2002]: 251; emphasis mine). His second major point is that “discovering a common pattern in two texts is a sufficient criterion” (251; emphasis his). Such “shared patterns of interconnected resemblances” (252) could be designated as thematic-structural similarities (on this criterion see below).

⁴Fishbane, Biblical Interpretation, 287.

⁵Compare the list of similarities that possibly could function as markers or signs of intertextual relations set forth by Wolde (“Texts in Dialogue with Texts,” 7-8); cf. Schultz, 44-45.
semantic data which should be considered and could be of vital importance towards a better understanding of Dan 8:9-14. The focus therefore is how these texts impact the understanding of Dan 8:9-14.

There are certain delimitations of the present intertextual analysis. One can only select a portion of the intertextual web for analysis. The entire book of Daniel itself is considered a suitable intertext of Dan 8:9-14, including chaps. 9-12, since the author of Daniel put all its chapters together intentionally. However, the intertextual analysis will not systematically deal with texts of the Hebrew Bible beyond the book of Daniel. There are several reasons for such a decision. First, while from a formal point of view the vision reports in the book of Daniel are found to be in the tradition of the prophetic vision reports, the thematic contents differ markedly. Hence, terminological links between Dan 8:9-14 and other texts in the Hebrew Bible are expected to be rare. Second, texts

---

1I do not differentiate here between author or final redactor since I do not perceive such a question to make any difference in the analysis of the intertextuality of the final text. To be sure, reading the interconnections of Dan 8:9-14 to other parts in Daniel without regard for the issues of history, or even historicity, should not be understood as a rejection of historical study. See the methodological considerations by Eslinger for the study of inner-biblical allusion ("Inner-Biblical Exegesis," 56-58).

2One could also distinguish between these two possible intertexts by the concepts of intertextuality and intratextuality, although the latter term needs to be defined as clearly as the previous one in order to avoid confusion. If one wants to employ both terms, a possible definition could be the following: While intertextuality denotes external links, that is, the interaction of a given text with texts from a different author, the term "intratextuality" denotes internal links, that is, the interaction of a given text with texts from the same author, often standing within the same book. The former has also been designated as "hetero-intertextuality" and the latter as "auto-intertextuality" (Holthuis, cited in Alkier, 14). However, in the present analysis the term "intertextuality" includes both types of intertextuality, without distinguishing them, and therefore does not necessarily imply different authors.

3Behrens, 333-345.

4This is one of the reasons why the book of Daniel is classified as apocalyptic literature.
within the book of Daniel should in general be more decisive for the intertextual understanding of Dan 8:9-14. And third, possible intertexts elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible that shed light on the meaning of words and phrases and on the thematic meaning of Dan 8:9-14 or its parts have already been discussed in the linguistic analysis, for example, the passage where the commander of *Yhwh*’s host appears to Joshua (Josh 5:13-15), and in the literary analysis, for example, the connection of the vision in Dan 8 to the Day of Atonement.

Also, this study is not concerned with the valid question whether parts of Dan 8:9-14 have been influenced by elements of ancient mythology or draw motifs from extrabiblical sources. Neither will the reception history of the text be considered, although this has recently been a fruitful and legitimate exercise in itself, however, not for an intertextual analysis that concentrates on the meaning of the text under consideration and deals with author-intended or text-oriented intertextuality. This means that intertestamental literature, including the texts from Qumran, as well as literature dating to

---

1If one wants to undertake further study of intertextual links between Dan 8:9-14 and other texts in the Hebrew Bible the following texts might yield profitable results: Isa 6:11 ("how long?") ; Isa 14:12-15 (terminological links: "דָּאָל "fall" [vs. 12], נַעֲרָא "earth" [vs. 12], כַּלְכֵל "stars" [vs. 13], שֵׁש "heaven" [vs. 13], and הר וָד "rise" [vs. 13]); Isa 16:4-5 ("trample" [vs. 4] ὁ "earth" [vs. 4], ἡ "truth" [vs. 5], ἡ "righteousness" [vs. 5]); and the three visions in Zech 1:8-2:17 that also show celestial beings in conversation (the angelic cry of נַעֲרָא "host always in conversation YHWH of hosts" [1:12, 14, 16, 17; 2:12, 13, 15]; נַעֲרָא "horn" [2:1, 2, 4]; נַעֲרָא "the four winds of the heaven" [2:10]; נַעֲרָא "holy" [2:16, 17]).


3For example, see the six essays on the reception of Daniel in Judaism and Christianity in The Book of Daniel: Composition and Reception, ed. J. J. Collins and P. W. Flint, 2:421-571.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
C.E., like the New Testament, are excluded from this study.¹

Finally, one should not overlook previous biblical research which has studied aspects of the intertextuality of Dan 8:9-14, albeit by other names and methods. A new name on the scene of methodology—intertextuality—does not imply that previous work has produced nothing worthwhile with regard to intertextuality. Similarly, several "modern" intertextual studies are merely traditional approaches clothed in new terminology.²

The procedure of this analysis follows two steps: first, an analytical, descriptive one, then a synthetic, interpretative one. In the analytical and descriptive step, I will identify the correspondences and similarities between two texts. These signals of textual relation include lexical correspondences, thematic similarities, and structural similarities. In the second, synthetic and interpretative step, I will discuss in what way another text influences, shapes, or adds to the meaning of Dan 8:9-14.³

In general, similarities emphasize specific aspects of Dan 8:9-14 and confirm the understanding of the text, whereas dissimilarities—additions or absences—can enhance

¹This has indeed to be regarded as a delimitation since texts that originated post-biblically could in some sense be viewed as possible intertext. Cf. Michael Fishbane, "Types of Biblical Intertextuality," in Congress Volume: Oslo 1998, ed. A. Lemaire and M. Sæbø, VTSup, no. 80 (Leiden: Brill, 2000), 39-44.

²That is why Hatina claims that the intertextual approach of "even the more astute Old Testament scholars is largely indistinguishable from that of traditional historical criticism" (28 n. 2).

³This procedure is quite similar to what Peter D. Miscall describes as a "two-staged process": comparing and contrasting texts followed by an assessment of the parallels. In contrast to such a process Miscall describes what he refers to as true intertextual reading, which is more in line with reader-oriented intertextuality ("Texts, More Texts, a Textual Reader and a Textual Writer," Semeia 69/70 [1995]: 247-260, esp. 248).
or offer additional nuances to the understanding of its meaning, as well as reveal the different characteristics of the texts.

The order in which texts from within Daniel will be intertextually discussed moves from the visionary to the narrative part of the book. Those texts which are immediately contiguous to the vision report in Dan 8 precede the others in the order of intertextual study. First and foremost, the interpretation of the vision in chap. 8 (8:23-26) is considered, then the immediately preceding chap. 7, which is structurally close to chap. 8 and employs the same symbol of a horn. Next follows the analyses of the subsequent chap. 9 and of the concluding part of the visionary material in Daniel, the long visionary experience in chaps. 10-12. Finally, the narratives (chaps. 1–6) are investigated for intertextual relations. Suffice it to say that the order of analysis does not necessarily reflect a gradation of intertextual significance.

When comparing Dan 8:9-14 with other parts in the book of Daniel, first the corresponding data will be presented as a list of lexical similarities (distinguishing keyword links, thematic word links, and incidental correspondences), thematic similarities, and structural similarities. Then follows the discussion on relevant intertextual questions, always bearing in mind that a more comprehensive exegesis of these other passages will not be attempted. In the case of the interpretation of the horn vision in Dan 8:23-26, a synoptic comparison of the vision and the interpretation in chap. 8 will be included.
Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 8:23-26

The comparative data between the climax of the vision in Dan 8:9-14 and the climax of the interpretation in Dan 8:23-26 are presented in the following list.

Lexical correspondences

Keyword links
- נד (9b, 10a, 11a, 25)
- יש (11a, 25 [2x])
- פסנ (12a) and משנ (23)
- ינ (12c, 24)
- כלת (12d, 24, 25)
- אמ (12b, 26)
- רור (13a, 13b, 24)
- יול (13c, 26)
- יר (14b, 26)
- ב (14b, 26)

Thematic word links
- פסנ (9a) // כלת (23)
- יש (10c, 13c), רר (11c, 12b), פסנ (13c) // שמח hif. (24 [2x], 25)
- מדרד ב (10b) // רר (24), מדרד ב (25)
- 14b-c // מדרד (26)
- רר (14b) // רר (26)

Incidental correspondences
- אמ (13b, 14a, 26)

Thematic similarities
- Self-magnifying, anti-divine power (*Himmelsstürmer*)
- Attack on saints and opposition to God
- Success in its doings
- End of anti-divine power by divine action (*passivum divinum*)

Structural similarities
- Basic elements of the vision report are repeated in the angelic interpretation.

The structural correspondence is illustrated by table 33, which presents a synoptic comparison of the vision report and the angelic interpretation.
Table 33. Lexical and Thematic Links between Vision and Interpretation in Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vision Report (8:3-14)</th>
<th>Interpretation (8:20-26)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 Then I lifted my eyes and looked, and behold, a ram which had two horns was standing in front of the canal. Now the two horns were long, but one was longer than the other, with the longer one coming up last.</td>
<td>20 “The ram which you saw with the two horns represents the kings of Media and Persia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I saw the ram butting westward, northward, and southward, and no other beasts could stand before him nor was there anyone to rescue from his power, but he did as he pleased and magnified himself.</td>
<td>21 The shaggy goat represents the kingdom of Greece, and the large horn that is between his eyes is the first king.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 While I was observing, behold, a male goat was coming from the west over the surface of the whole earth without touching the ground; and the goat had a conspicuous horn between his eyes.</td>
<td>22 The broken horn and the four horns that arose in its place represent four kingdoms which will arise from his nation, although not with his power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 He came up to the ram that had the two horns, which I had seen standing in front of the canal, and rushed at him in his mighty wrath.</td>
<td>23 In the latter period of their rule, When the transgressors have run their course,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I saw him come beside the ram, and he was enraged at him; and he struck the ram and shattered his two horns, and the ram had no strength to withstand him. So he hurled him to the ground and trampled on him, and there was none to rescue the ram from his power.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Then the male goat magnified himself exceedingly. But as soon as he was mighty, the large horn was broken; and in its place there came up four conspicuous horns toward the four winds of heaven.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 33—Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9 And from the one of them went forth one horn from littleness and it grew exceedingly toward the south, toward the sunrise (east), and toward the beauty.</th>
<th>a king will arise, insolent and skilled in intrigue. 24 His power will be mighty, but not by his own power, and he will destroy to an extraordinary degree and prosper and perform his will; he will destroy mighty men and the holy people. 25 And through his shrewdness He will cause deceit to succeed by his influence; and he will magnify himself in his heart, and he will destroy many while they are at ease. He will even oppose the Prince of princes,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 And it grew up to the host of heaven and caused to fall to earth some of the host and some of the stars, and it trampled them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 And he magnified himself up to the commander of the host; and from him it took away the ēmi d, and the foundation of his sanctuary was thrown down. 12 And a host will be set against the ēmi d in rebellion; and it will throw down truth to the earth and it will do and will succeed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 And I had heard one holy one speaking, and another holy one said to the previous one who had been speaking, “Until when is the vision? (Concerning) the ēmi d and the giving of the devastating crime and (the) holy and a host to be trampled?”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 And he said to me, “Until evening-morning two thousand three hundred, then (the) holy will be restored.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 The vision of the evenings and mornings which has been told is true; but keep the vision secret, for it pertains to many days in the future.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Lexical links are boldface; thematic word links are italicized.
The structural parallels are obvious and not surprising since the angelic interpretation is expected to follow at least the basic outline of the vision to be interpreted. Hence the main actors, as well as the sequence in which they are mentioned, correspond between the vision and its interpretation.

The nature of 8:20-26 as interpretation is also the reason for the relatively numerous lexical links, both keyword links and thematic word links, to the vision. From 8:9-14 the key verbal roots נדּי (9b, 10a, 11a, 25), נָשָׁה (12c, 24), and נֶרֶשׁ (12d, 24, 25) are taken up. The main target of the horn/king’s attack is a prince (טנק in vss. 11a, 25). And with “holy” (כְּפָדוּת, vss. 13a, 13b, 24) and “truth” (אַנְטָב, vss. 12b, 26), two conceptually important words from the audition in vss. 12-14 are used again, as well as the reference to the vision (כְּפָדוּת in vss. 13c, 26) and the “evening-morning” (כְּפָדוּת and in vss. 14b, 26).

Thematic Similarities

There are also a number of thematic word links. Based on the correspondence of horns and kings, which is already established by identifying the great horn as the first king (vs. 21), it is clear that the king in vs. 23 corresponds to the horn of the vision in vs. 9a. The destructive activities of that horn (דָּרִים in vss. 10c, 13c; רֶפֶס in vss. 11c, 12b; כְּפָדוֹת in vs. 13c) are expressed in the interpretation by the military term הָרֹם hif. “ruin, destroy” (vss. 24, 25), which indicates intent to ruin. The self-magnification (כְּפָדוּת, vs. 11a) finds its correspondence in the magnifying of the king’s heart (כְּפָדוּת, vs. 25).
The attack on the host and the stars (vs. 10b) seems to be taken up in a similar double expression of the mighty ones and the people of holy ones (vs. 24). The vision, or part of it, is not only referred to as יִזְרֵעַ, but also as הִזְרֵע “appearance” (vs. 26). Finally, the time span of “2300 evening-morning” (vs. 14b) seems to be alluded to by the “many days” (וֹלֶֽיתָמִּים וְכַבִּים, vs. 26) that the vision will cover or after which the vision will be of current interest.

Thematic similarities between the vision and the interpretation of the horn/king are restricted to two of the various isotopies of vss. 9-14, since only these two are extant in vss. 23-25. One is the isotopy of power, control, and violence, the other is the isotopy of presumption and judgment. The theme of power, control, and violence runs throughout vss. 23-25 (עם, the military term שיחות ההף, and by *11317). The king’s movements are successful as if God himself is blessing him. The king attacks the people of God, and in self-magnification he even opposes the “prince of princes.” However, after such presumption “he will be broken.” The passive voice in vs. 25 (ֶֽעַֽבְר) corresponds to the passive in vs. 14c (ָֽעַֽבְרֵם). It appears that both refer to the same divine intervention that, at last, reacts to the blasphemous and mind-boggling activities of this human power in the final days.1

Another parallel between vision and interpretation is the noticeable emphasis on the horn/king in relation to the previous powers. In the interpretation, the importance of the king is perceived by the structure, the style of language, and the introduction of the

1Furthermore, דַּֽהְרָנָה “and not by hand” (8:25) reminds one of נַחַת אֵל “not by hands” in 2:34, 45 and links the crushing of the world kingdoms by the stone with the breaking of the king (8:25) and the restoration of holy to its rightful place (8:14c).
king. In the structure of the interpretation, the correlate to the first part of the vision report (vss. 3-8) takes a few words (vss. 20-22; 30 words), whereas the climax of the vision report is explained more extensively (vss. 23-25; 39 words).¹ The ram, the he-goat, the large horn, and the four (horns) are merely identified as the kings of Media and Persia and of Greece, without commenting on their activities as described in the vision. Neither is any evaluation of these political powers given. It is evident that the interest of the interpretation is not on these powers—they function merely as backdrop—but on the following king who represents the last horn in the vision.²

This structural division goes hand in hand with a change in style of language. Daniel 8:23-26 is one of the recognized poetic passages in the visionary part of the book of Daniel.³ The poetic character of these verses aligns with the subject of the king, thus enhancing the significance of this section of the interpretation and marking it as the climax of the interpretative section. A similar change to elevated language for the sake of literary emphasis is detectable in vs. 11.

Finally, the passage regarding the king is emphasized by its altered introduction. Whereas in vss. 20-22 the symbols of the vision report (ram, he-goat, horns) are repeated before their interpretation is given, the symbol of the horn is not at all mentioned in vs. 23. Rather, the final power is directly designated as “a king.” This can hardly be

¹Cf. Delcor, 168; Porter, Metaphors, 11.
³Segert examines the poetic elements of Dan 8:23-26 and finds prosodic regularity, features of parallelism in almost all the verses, word pairs, and repetition (“Poetic Structures,” 265-267).
accidental since the pattern "symbol + interpretation" is used no less than four times in vss. 20-22. What significance does this structural disruption have? Besides pointing out that the king is an important entity independent from the previous powers, the direct introduction as king, without referring to the symbolic horn, indicates specifically that he is of a different nature. He is structurally set apart from the previous powers. In the vision, the horn differs from the previous powers most clearly by its cultic interests. However, the cultic elements seem to be absent in the interpretation. The sudden mention of "a king" in vs. 23 appears to convey an emphasis on the human element in contrast to the beasts and horns mentioned before. In fact, vss. 23-25 avoid any animal imagery in relation to this king. The phrases יִבְלָכַבּוּ ‘and in his heart’ and, to some degree, רַבְרִי ‘in his hand’1 (both vs. 25) reinforce the idea that the king is deliberately portrayed as being human. Thus, one may find in vss. 20-25 a contrast between humanity and beasts, between the human portrayal of the king (vs. 23-25) and the beastly representations of the previous powers (vs. 20-22). Such a contrast is reminiscent of Dan 4, where king Nebuchadnezzar is transformed into an animal-like being and after "seven times" becomes human again, and of Dan 7, where the "one like a son of man" stands in contrast to the imagery of beasts. The implications of these findings will be discussed in the analysis of Dan 7 as intertext below.

Specific Phrases

A few phrases in the vision are enlightened by the interpretation. First, Dan 8:24f

1Of course, יִבְלָכַבּוּ “his hand” occurs in this chapter also in reference to the power of the ram (Dan 8:4) and the he-goat (8:7).
mentions that the king will destroy "mighty/numerous and a people of holy ones." The juxtaposition of the "mighty" or "numerous" and the "people of holy ones" resembles the juxtaposition of the "host" and the "stars" in 8:10b. The clauses in which these phrases appear correspond syntactically and thematically: Both mention two personal objects of the destructive activity of the horn/king. The "host of heaven" and the "stars" in the vision are obviously referred to by the "mighty" and the "people of holy ones" in the interpretation. Furthermore, in both vision and interpretation the attack of the horn/king climaxes after these statements with the attitude against the "prince of the host" and the "prince of princes," respectively.

Similar to the discussion of the relationship between the terms in 8:10b, so in 8:24f the question is whether the מיעטוע should be understood as another designation for the מיעטוע or do the two expressions stand for two different entities, either in the sense that מיעטוע refers to God’s people and מיעטוע to Gentile rulers or enemies of the king, or in the sense that מיעטוע, being the more comprehensive group, includes

---

1If the MT is to be trusted (so, e.g., Montgomery, 350; Lucas, Daniel, 208). Others consider מיעטוע to be misplaced from vs. 25a which should read מיעטוע (Bevan, 139; Marti, Daniel, 62; Charles, 219; Plöger, Daniel, 123; Niditch, 218, 221; Collins, Daniel [1993], 327, 341; Stahl, Weltengagement, 177), which, however, does not affect the meaning of the "people of holy ones.

2Dequeker, “The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 175.

3So, e.g., von Lengerke, 401; Kliefoth, 279; Lacocque, Daniel, 401; Goldingay, Daniel, 208, 218; Gowen, Daniel, 122; Lucas, Daniel, 221.

4Calvin, 126; Hitzig, 141; Bevan, 140; Marti, Daniel, 62; Montgomery, 350; Charles, 219; Aalders, Daniel (1962), 192; Delcor, 182; Collins, Daniel (1993), 341; Miller, Daniel, 235. Some understand מיעטוע to be mighty ones in general, both Gentile and Jewish: Havernick, 306; Keil, 318.
the smaller group of "people"? A semantic analysis of the two expressions will help to

decide the question of their relationship.

In almost all of its thirty-one occurrences in the Hebrew Bible the adjective ד"ו

is used in reference to the number, might or strength of human beings, often referring to

people, nations, or multitudes, but never in reference to celestial beings. The conclusion

therefore is that ד"ו should be understood to refer to human beings. Considering that

"he will destroy many" in vs. 25 expresses the same idea as ד"ו נֵרְפָּל "he will

Since elsewhere a nominally used בְּנֵי חַיָּה may denote a distinguished group among a people or

nation, that is, "the mighty ones," one might understand them in 8:24f as a distinguished group among

the "people of holy ones" (Maier, 316: the mighty are the high priests). With such an interpretation

and with reference to Dan 12:3, where a special group of believers is singled out and compared to the

brightness of the expanse of heaven and of the stars—however, they are not symbolically represented

as stars—there seems to be some reason to suggest that the "stars" in Dan 8:10b represent also a
distinguished group among the "host of heaven." Since both the "mighty ones" and the "people of

holy ones" (8:24f) denote believers (see below), the symbolic meaning of the "host" and of the "stars"
in such a view should also be identified as denoting believers: the "host" as the large group of the

covenant people and the "stars" as a distinguished group among them. The main problem with this

interpretation is that in regard to the literal meaning the "host of heaven" and the "stars" in vs. 10b
refer to the same entity, viz. celestial bodies (see chapter 2 above), and subsequently they should refer
to the same also in regard to their symbolic meaning. So if there is no apparent distinction between
the "stars" and the "host of heaven" in vs. 10, then in vs. 24 both the "mighty ones" and the "people of

holy ones" should refer to the same entity, both designating the people of God. See also below.

The adjective בְּנֵי חַיָּה refers to humans in a nominative or attributive sense in 28 instances

(Gen 18:18; Exod 1:9; Num 14:12; 22:6; Deut 4:38; 7:1; 9:1, 14; 11:23; 26:5; Josh 23:9; Isa 8:7
["mighty waters of the Euphrates" figuratively for the people from Mesopotamia]; 60:22; Joel 1:6;
2:2, 5, 11; Mic 4:3, 7; Zech 8:22; Ps 10:10; 35:18; 135:10; Prov 7:26; 18:18; Dan 11:25 and thus also
in Isa 53:12 and Dan 8:24), twice for animals (Num 32:1; Prov 30:26), and once for sins (Amos 5:12).
Aside from Dan 8:24, בְּנֵי חַיָּה is used nominally four times and in each instance denotes a distinguished

group among a people or nation (Isa 53:12; Ps 10:10; Prov 7:26; 18:18). Nineteen times בְּנֵי חַיָּה occurs
in adjectival relation to בֵּית "people" (Exod 1:9; Num 22:6; Joel 2:2, 5; Ps 35:18; Prov 30:26) or to מְדִינָה
"nation" (Gen 18:18; Num 14:12; Deut 4:38; 7:1; 9:1, 14; 11:23; 26:5; Josh 23:9; Isa 60:22; Joel 1:6;
Mic 4:3, 7; Zech 8:22), of which 8 times the covenant people are meant (for Israel in Gen 18:18; Exod
1:9; Num 22:6; Deut 26:5; Isa 60:22; Mic 4:7; and for a possible new covenant people through Moses
in Num 14:12; Deut 9:14).
destroy the numerous," particularly since both clauses use the same verb (יהיה שֵׁם הִק).

In fact, רָעִים and רֵעִים occur frequently juxtaposed in parallel thought. The meaning of רָעִים in 8:25 becomes a pointer to the meaning of רֵעִים in vs. 24. In the book of Daniel the term "many" refers always to human beings when it is not used in an adjectival relationship. This would indicate that both רָעִים "numerous" and רֵעִים "many" refer to the same group of human beings, that is, God's people.

The second expression in 8:24, רֵעִים הַרְשֵׁים "people of holy ones," is also a reference to the people of God. In the book of Daniel רֵעִים "people" always refers to human people, most often to the people of God. Since in 8:24 רֵעִים stands in a construct relation with הרשֵׁים "holy ones," it is clear that the people belong to the realm of holiness and therefore are the people of God. The construct phrase itself is usually understood in either of two ways, that is, either with epexegetic or with possessive (or subjective) function: either the people consist of holy ones, in which case the phrase could also be understood as "holy people" (cf. 12:7), or the people are belonging to the holy ones in

---

1The parallel of רָעִים and רֵעִים is pointed out by Rosenmüller, 276; von Lengerke, 401; Behrmann, 57; Seow, Daniel, 131.

2Exod 1:9; Num 32:1; Deut 7:1; 9:14; 26:5; Isa 8:7; 53:12; Joel 2:2, 11; Amos 5:12; Mic 4:3; Zech 8:22; Pss 35:18; 135:10; Prov 7:26. In addition, the verb לָכַּה and the adjective לָכַּה are used in expressing parallel thoughts in Isa 31:1; Ps 40:6; the verb לָכַּה and the noun לָכַּה in Jer 30:14, 15; and the verbs לָכַּה and לָכַּה in Pss 38:20; 69:5; Jer 5:6.

3Dan 8:25; 9:27; 11:14, 18, 26, 33, 34, 39, 44; 12:2 (רָעִים in 11:41 functions as an adjective to the elliptical רָעִים; cf. vs. 40).

4In Daniel, רֵעִים refers to the people of God in 8:24; 9:6, 15, 16, 19, 20, 24, 26; 10:14; 11:14, 15, 32, 33; 12:1, 7; and to other people in 9:26 (note that in the discourse of chap. 9, after vs. 6, the people of God are always designated specifically as "my people" or "your people"; its different use in vs. 26 suggests it refers to another people); 11:15.

5So most of the commentators.
one way or another, in which the “holy ones” could designate celestial beings.\(^1\) Recently Seow suggested as third alternative a partitive function (“the people of the holy ones,” that is, the human elements among the holy ones”).\(^2\) In any case, similarly to the “host of heaven” in 8:10, the “holy ones” may refer to yet another, celestial dimension in the battle of the king, which would make it a cosmic battle.

In conclusion, the “mighty” or “numerous,” the “people of the holy ones,” and the “many” all refer to one and the same, that is, the people of God.\(^3\) The conjunction \textit{waw} between the first two expressions should be understood as a \textit{waw explicativum}: “the mighty/numerous, \textit{that is} the people of God.”\(^4\) The clause in Dan 8:24f therefore supports several conclusions drawn from 8:10b: the understanding that D,33i3n”|Dr l  is explanatory

\(^1\)John J. Collins believes that הַנִּפְרֵדָד יַעַבְרָה either refers to the angelic holy ones or the human “people of the holy ones,” but according to his interpretation of the “host of heaven” (8:10) and the “holy ones” (8:13) it should be understood as the angelic host (\textit{Daniel} [1993], 341; cf. idem, “The Son of Man and the Saints of the Most High in the Book of Daniel,” \textit{JBL} 93 [1974]: 59-61; idem, Apocalyptic Vision, 138-141). The understanding of the “host of heaven” in 8:10 is Collins’s starting point to interpret Dan 8:24, which then functions as key to the understanding of the “holy ones of the Most High” in Dan 7 (see ibid.). For Smith-Christopher, the phrase הַנִּפְרֵדָד יַעַבְרָה in 8:24 “suggests actual persons in league with the angelic forces,” though he does not exclude the possibility that angels are intended (117). Seow also interprets the “people of holy ones” as “both the celestial host and the terrestrial one” (\textit{Daniel}, 131).


\(^3\)It is not possible to determine the exact relationship between the four expressions for the people of God in Dan 8:10b and 8:24f. There may be no specific connections involved at all. Then again the relation between them could be interpreted as one of parallel order or one of reverse order. If they are in parallel order (ab/a’b’), the “host” is taken up by the phrase “the mighty” and the “stars” by “the holy people.” Whereas if the relation of the two objects of aggression is one of reverse order (ab/b’a’), the “host” is taken up by the “the holy people” and the “stars” by “the mighty.” The latter would lend itself to see a connection between the terms clearly referring to God’s people (“stars” and “mighty/numerous”) and the ones that in addition to their reference to God’s people could also point to an involvement of the celestial beings (“host of heaven” and “people of holy ones”). The idea of a reverse order in 8:24f finds some support by the immediately preceding ולַדְנֵי הַיָּהָר, which reverses the order of וַלָּדְנֵי הַיָּהָר in 8:12c-d.

with *waw explicativum*, that both the “host of heaven” and the “stars” refer to the people of God, and furthermore that there is an indication of the involvement of the celestial world, since both the “host of heaven” and the “holy ones” in the phrase “people of holy ones” could also denote angels.

A second significant phrase in the angelic explanation is ד"ה “prince of princes” in 8:25, which refers in all probability to the same figure who is designated by ס"י in 8:11a. This is evident from several pointers: the lexical link of צר, the appearance of this figure in close proximity to a group that is attacked by the horn/king and (“mighty men,” “holy people,” “many”), and the figure being the final and climactic personal target of the king’s assault. The construct word group ד"י uses the same root twice, the first in singular and the second in plural, and thus refers in a superlative sense to the highest and greatest prince. Since the term צר is never used in the Hebrew Bible in reference to God, and in the book of Daniel, apart from its use for human beings, always designates chief angels, the ס"י should be understood to refer to the commander-in-chief of these angels, most likely Michael who in 12:1 is called in a similar expression ל"כ the “great prince.” Obviously the term צר contrasts the use of מ"כ, for kingship is a “symbol of negative ruling power,” not only in chap. 8 but

---

1 Cf. the discussion on ס"י in chapter 2 (above).

2 Similarly, in Dan 11:36 the king of the North exalts himself above the י"כ “God of gods”; cf. Dan 2:47 where Nebuchadnezzar calls Daniel’s god a י"כ “God of gods and Lord of kings” and Ezek 26:7 where Nebuchadnezzar is called י"כ “king of kings.”

3 Cf. Dan 10:13. Dörfel argues that the ס"י is the primus inter pares (151).

4 Langer, 99. For Langer that is the reason why “God is portrayed as prince (if not the supreme angel is meant) and not as king” (ibid.)
particularly in chap. 11.

Third, the expressions of time in 8:17 ( Heb תֵּקָה, "time of the end"), 8:19 ( Heb נַחֲצָה, "the appointed time of the end"), and 8:26 ( Heb רָכִּם, "many days") take up the central question of the vision report—"until when is the vision?" (8:13c)—and provide in addition to vs. 14c extended answers to it. The time span of "2300 evening-morning" is equal to "many days" and its end must be associated with the "time of the end." The multiple temporal references by the angel point to the importance given to the question in vs. 13c. Indeed, Bader believes that the question נַחֲצָה structures the second part of Dan 8, treating the theme of knowledge, perception, and ignorance.²

Fourth, it is interesting to note that חֲעֲלָה and עֶשֶׂב are used in 8:24-25 in reference to activities of the king, whereas in vs. 12 they described the success in the doings of the horn’s host. Accordingly, the conclusion must be that what the host of the horn does can be attributed to the workings of the horn/king. The host set up in 8:12a is indeed the horn’s host and functions under its command.

Fifth, the magnification of the horn in vs. 11a is indeed to be considered as self-magnification since it occurs "in his heart" (vs. 25). As with the description of the horn’s activities, the king’s self-magnification occurs at the climax of his presumptuousness, just as it was with the ram and the he-goat (8:4, 8, 11a, 25; all בַּיִת-hif.).

Finally, the interpretation does not in any way refer to transgressions on the part of the mighty or the holy people, thus being compatible with the view that אֶפְשָׂר in vs. 12a

---

¹ Bader, "Reale und gedachte Welt," 50-51; cf. Pfandl, Time of the End, 244-246, 265-268.
refers to the horn and not to the host of heaven. One should not appeal to הָעַרְטֵשׁ “the transgressors” (8:23) as a possible indicator for the sins of God’s people since the king/horn arises only when the transgressors have reached or are reaching the full measure (םֹלֶה) as the climax of the transgression. There are basically two opinions regarding the identity of the “transgressors.” One is that they are the unfaithful people of God, usually apostate Israelites. The other is that they are heathen sinners, usually the powers oppressing the people of God, often including the brazen-faced king as the climax of the transgression. Several considerations favor the latter interpretation.

There are two time indicators in 8:23 that refer to the rise of the king (little horn):

הָעַרְטֵשׁ “in the end of their reign” and מֹלֶה יְהֹוָה יְהֹאָשׁ “when the transgressors are finished/completed.” In the book of Daniel the noun מֹלֶה refers to the end or the final period of something. In 8:23 it refers either to the final regnal period of the powers mentioned in vs. 22 or to their end: “in/at the last time of…” Thus the presumptuous

1There is no need to read the Hebrew as “sins” (םֹלֶה) with the Greek versions (“their sins”) and the Peshitta (“sins”), which might be an assimilation to 8:12, 13 (the reading of the Greek is preferred by Montgomery, 349; Charles, 217; Niditch, 218, 221; Collins, Daniel [1993], 327). The Hiphil of מָשָׂא can be used with an intransitive meaning and be accompanied by a Qal participle, as Isa 33:1 illustrates: הֶפֲנִיתוּ “when you have ceased to destroy you will be destroyed” (so Montgomery, 353; Gzella, 42-43). Furthermore, in the book of Daniel the noun מָשָׂא “sin” is used only in the singular (8:12, 13; 9:24); hence מֹלֶה יְהֹאָשׁ could be intentionally distinguished from these to designate the transgressors (Goldingay, Daniel, 199).

2See, e.g., Hävernick, 303; von Lengerke, 399; Klieftho, 278; Keil, 317; Knabenbauer, 219; Behrmann, 57; Maier, 314; Miller, Daniel, 234.

3See, e.g., Hitzig, 141; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 311; Bevan, 138; Marti, Daniel, 62; Charles, 217-218; Rast, 182; Goldingay, Daniel, 217; Collins, Daniel (1993), 339; Seow, Daniel, 130.

4“The end of the indignation” (8:19); “the end of the days” (10:14); “the end of these” (12:8).

5Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 315.
king is somehow linked with the world powers mentioned previously. The second temporal phrase contains the infinitive construct בָּא רָאִים with the preposition ב, which implies that the action of the infinitive construct occurs just before the events described in the main clause: “the moment when . . .” or “as soon as . . .” The infinitive clause has not a causal function. If the author would have liked to express a causal function in 8:19—that is, the king came up because the transgressors have completed (their course)—he would probably have used one of the following prepositions before the infinitive construct: ב, מ, ינש, or בּ. Hence, the king did not come up as a covenant curse because of any transgressions. He rather represents the climax of the transgressors, the ultimate rebel. Possible translations of the infinitive clause are “as the transgressors come to an end” or “when the rebels reach full measure.” This second temporal phrase therefore refers to the same time as the first one.

Taking both temporal expressions together, the presumptuous king is linked to the previous powers (in whatever way), comes at their end and represents the climax of the rebellion: “At the last time of their rule, at the moment when the rebels reach full measure, a brazen-faced king will arise” (8:23).

Such an interpretation is confirmed by a possible intertextual link between Dan 8:23 and Isa 33:1. The two texts are lexically, syntactically, and thematically in close

---

1BH R G, 157 ([§20.1.5(ii)])
2See Waltke and O’Connor, 604.
3Lucas, Daniel, 203.
4Goldingay, Daniel, 195.
parallel. Both use a similar construction: “preposition ד + infinitive construct of הָיָה hif. + Qal participle (though with different syntactic function) + yiqtol form.” Insofar as Isa 33:1 is a woe-oracle concerning a faithless destroyer (referred to by the Qal participle form), one may argue that in Dan 8:23 the Qal participle “transgressors” should also refer to the oppressors of God’s people.¹

Two further arguments can be advanced. First, the definiteness of הֶבֶן הָעֵד points to the fact that its referent is known from the context. The preceding context to the “transgressors” in Dan 8:23 clearly speaks of the other world powers, but not of God’s people.² Second, the theological motif hinted at in 8:23-25 is that sin must reach full measure before God punishes it. The concept of reaching the full measure of sin in the Hebrew Bible more likely applies to Gentiles whom God grants forbearance until their iniquity is complete before the divine punishment must be carried out (cf. Gen 15:6; 2 Macc 6:14). In contrast, the people of God are the object of God’s chastising and disciplinary action.³

In sum, הֶבֶן הָעֵד may indeed refer to other transgressors besides the brazen-faced king, though it is much more plausible that he is to be understood as the climax of the rebels. It is unlikely that in this context הֶבֶן הָעֵד refers to God’s people who have not even been mentioned yet in Gabriel’s interpretation. Thus, the reference of הֶבֶן הָעֵד to the

¹Noted also by Gzella, 42-43.

²For its position in the chronological sequences of events in 8:20-23 and its plural number, it is unlikely that הֶבֶן הָעֵד in 8:23 refers exclusively to the horn and its host which act in חֵלֶד in 8:12-13.

rebels and oppressors of God’s people and the entire text in Dan 8:23-25, which like vss. 9-11 describes only the activities of the king/horn, is consistent with the view that נֹשֵׁא in vs. 12a refers to the horn’s rebellion.

Differences

There are also several points of difference between the vision of the horn and its interpretation, which are significant for the understanding of Dan 8:9-14. First, whereas the vision report describes the activities of the horn without explicitly mentioning the nature of the horn or the means it uses, the interpretation adds a qualitative dimension by attributing “wisdom” characteristics to the king: he is מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח “understanding riddles” (vs. 23) and exhibits לֵבָן “insight” (vs. 25). The language used here is wisdom terminology.1 Even that the king is depicted as מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח “strong of face” or “shameless” (vs. 23) is reminiscent of the “wisdom” context (Prov 7:13; Eccl 8:1),2 as does the motif

---


2 The exact same phrase מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח occurs elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible only in Deut 28:50, and may be borrowed from there, where it refers to a callous nation that YHWH will bring against his people as one of the covenant curses (מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח occurs also Postbiblical Hebrew b. Abot 5.20; Ber. 16b; Sabb. 30b; Beṣah 25b). One should however be careful not to infer that the final king in Dan 8 represents a divinely initiated covenant curse (Collins, Daniel [1993], 339). Rather the main point is the hard-hearted and cold-blooded nature of those who are depicted as מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח. The phrase simply refers to the insensibility to any kind of humanness. For one, מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח in Dan 8:23 also reminds one of the only other occurrence of the phrase מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח in Isa 19:4 where God will bring Egypt into the cruel mastership of a מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח “strong king,” which obviously is not to be understood as a covenant curse. More importantly, in the sphere of wisdom terminology in Dan 8:23-25 the phrase מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח is reminiscent of the use of מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח “she makes her face strong” for the seductress, the antagonist to wisdom, in Prov 7:13 (so Lebram, “König Antiochus,” 741-742; Otto Plöger, Sprüche Salomos (Proverbia), BKAT, vol. 17 [Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1984], 74; Collins, Daniel [1993], 339). Further evidence for מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח being used in a wisdom context is found in the praise of the wise man in Eccl 8:1. Whereas in Eccl 8:1b it is said that wisdom illumines the wise man and changes or brightens מְיָדֵן יִדְרַחְרַח “the severity of his face,” using here the noun מְיָדֵן of which מְיָדֵן is a by-form, in Dan
of success (תפארת in Dan 8:24) that is part of the thematic pattern of “wisdom-success-pride-fall.” The description of a sacrilegious king distinguished by wisdom that in the end will lead to destruction is also found in Isa 10:13 and Ezek 28:2-5, 12, 17.

Although wisdom is a typical motif of royal ideology, in the context of the book of Daniel the wisdom motif in 8:23-25 carries further implications. The root שבע "insight" illustrates the point. The noun שבע "insight" is used only for the king (8:25). The verb שבע appears a number of times: insight is given by God, the source of intelligence, to Daniel and his friends (1:17; 9:22, 25), who used their insight to understand God’s revelations (7:8; 9:22, 25) and whose insight could be perceived by others (1:4; 5:11, 12, 14). God also gives insight to the wise men (11:33, 35; 12:3, 10; cf. 1:4). God’s people failed to have insight into God’s truth, though they were expected to have done so (9:13).

It is therefore quite strange that the blasphemous king, as the only one among the opposing powers, is attributed insight (8:25). It appears the king’s insight is intentionally contrasted to the insight of God’s people. The same effect is achieved by the root ביע "understand" and its noun ביע "understanding." In the book of Daniel, understanding is

8:23 the “wise” king is and remains bold-faced (שׁבע). One should note the relationship between the interpretative competence of the wise man in Eccl 8:1a and the role of Daniel (Thomas Krüger, Qoheleth: A Commentary, Hermeneia [Minneapolis: Fortress, 2004], 151-152). Against the backdrop of the praise of the wise in Eccl 8:1 it is clear that the king in Dan 8:23 is portrayed as not truly led and influenced by wisdom that originates from God. In sum, the expression שבע in whatever form means “to be devoid of proper human sensibilities, such as the capacity for mercy (Deut 28:50), humility (Qoh 8:1, cf. 2a), and shame (Prov 7:13)” (Michael V. Fox, Proverbs 1-9: A New Translation with Introduction and Commentary, AB, vol. 18A [New York: Doubleday, 2000], 245) and in association with wisdom terminology in Dan 8:23-25 it depicts the king as the negative counterpart of a truly wise man.

1Lebram, “König Antiochus,” 739.

a gift from God (2:21), often given through his angel Gabriel (8:16-17; 9:22-23; 10:11-14). Daniel exhibits understanding (1:4, 17, 20; 8:5, 15; 9:2, 10:1; although sometimes even he does not understand: 8:27; 12:8); so do the (11:33; 12:10). And again, understanding is one of the characteristics of the king (8:23). It is also used for the king of the north (11:30, 37). The effect of using the same wisdom vocabulary for the king in 8:23-25 that in the book of Daniel is a characteristic of God and his people¹ is that the king appears as if blessed by God, even though indeed he is a “pious” evil one.² He also prospers and performs as he wishes (8:24), again using terms usually attributed to God’s favored ones. In short, the blasphemous king “stylized in wisdom tradition” is typified as the “negative pendant to the pious sage.”³ Such a portrayal of the king gives rise to the same perplexity that the angelic comment produced in 8:12c-d, where the horn’s host appears to be granted divine success, resulting in the pleading question by another celestial being (8:13). Thus, the interpretation gives correlating support for the purposive function of in the audition to evoke feigned alleged, supposed, and ostensible divine approval. The interpretation helps to clarify that the horn/king is not blunt in his attack, but intelligent and working with wisdom and “deceit” or “fraud” (vs. 25), placing the focus of attention on the treacherous terrorization of truth.

¹One may add another parallel: the king is not “understanding riddles” (8:23) corresponds to Daniel is capable of “loosening magical knots” (5:12).

²As Baldwin points out: “Intellectually gifted, this ruler will have a great capacity for good or evil” (160).

Second, the interpretation contains an enigmatic reference to the king’s strength:

“but not with/by his power” (8:24b). In the case that the phrase is original and not a misplaced duplication of the same phrase in vs. 22, it could be understood in different ways. Either the pronominal suffix refers to someone other than the king, which is rather unlikely, or it refers to the king. In the latter case, could indicate that the king’s rise takes place “not by his power” but by his wisdom and intrigues which are mentioned frequently in these verses. Another possibility is that the origin of the king’s mighty power mentioned in vs. 24a lies somewhere else. Although it is not explicitly indicated who strengthens the king, his rise to power could be by permission from God or by the infusion of demonic powers. Beside the text-critical solution, the best option

---

1So, e.g., von Gall, 51; Montgomery, 349-350, 354; Charles, 218; Plöger, Daniel, 123; Niditch, 221; Collins, Daniel (1993), 327, 340; Gzella, 43; as option considered by Bevan, 139; and Goldingay, Daniel, 199.

2The suggestion that the power in vs. 25b refers to the power of the first king in vs. 21 so that the horn/king does not reach that level of strength (Kamphausen, 34; Hasslberger, 67, 76; Maier, 315) is unconvincing since the antecedent is far away. Rather, in vs. 25a refers to the insolent king, and the present king is the climax of the interpretation and seems to display more power than those before him. Equally unlikely would be the suggestion that his power is not like the divine power implied at the end of vs. 25, for the pronominal suffix would refer several clauses ahead to an entity not even mentioned explicitly.

3Von Lengerke, 400; Kliefoth, 278; Behrmann, 57; Driver, 123.

4Thus Langer, who does not identify the king’s source of power (93).

5For a long tradition of commentators it implies that the king gains power by the permission of God, usually corresponding to their interpretation of vs. 12a in the sense of divine retaliation: Theodoret, Ephrem Syrus, Rashi, and Ibn Ezra (all cited in Lacocque, Daniel, 170); Hävernick, 305; Rosenmüller, 276; Hitzig, 141; Rohling, Daniel, 245; Knabenbauer, 220; Prince, Daniel, 150; Delcor, 182; Lacocque, Daniel, 170; Lucas, Daniel, 208, 221.

6If the power by which the king arises is referred to as supernatural origin, it “would come from Satan, the prince of darkness” (Miller, Daniel, 234) and the deeds of the king need to be understood “as deeds performed by demonical strength” (Keil, 317).
remains to understand the might of the king as transferred by another, probably
supernatural power, perhaps by the unmentioned archenemy of the prince of princes.
This would allow for the idea that the war waged by the horn/king is indicative of a
cosmic war that is fought on two levels, the earthly and the heavenly—an observation that
supports the similar conclusion drawn after the analysis of the vision.

Finally, a few important elements present in Dan 8:9-14 are missing in the
interpretation. While cultic terminology is a central emphasis of the vision, it seems to be
totally absent in the interpretation. Similarly absent is creation terminology. The
following explanation seems to account for this. The synoptic table shows that the
interpretation breaks off once it reaches the climax of activities of the horn in the vision:
the self-magnification unto the prince of the host or the prince of princes. The
interpretation gives the impression of being only concerned with the vision itself, but not
with the audition, since neither the horn’s host nor the restoring activity that begins at the
end of the “2300 evening-morning” is mentioned.1 It does refer to the “evening-morning”
in vs. 26, but only to say that the “vision of the evening-morning” is true, giving no
interpretation whatsoever about the time. One gets the impression that the interpretation
is almost intentionally cut short and incomplete, creating a sense of frustration (possibly
also responsible for Daniel’s lack of understanding in vs. 27) as well as expectation. At

---

1The absence of the horn’s host should not be too surprising. The mention that the king is
successful in its doings (גֶּדֶק הַנֶּפֶשׁ [גַּלַּפָּה] הַנֶּפֶשׁ [גַּלַּפָּה]) mirrors the statement that the host performs and prospers
(גֶּדֶק הַנֶּפֶשׁ [גַּלַּפָּה] ) and confirms that the king/horn and his/its host have a close relationship, the
king/horn acting by means of this host. Naturally, the host is part of the horn power, and the king has
an army that follows his instructions. It seems that as the commander of the host of heaven is its
leader, so the horn is the leader of its own host.
the same time the interpretation shows the self-magnification of the horn/king in its true light by placing it last, immediately before the divine retributive action, as the real climax of the effrontery to YHWH.

Conclusion

The intertextual contribution of the angelic interpretation to the understanding of Dan 8:9-14 can now be summarized. Several themes expressed in Dan 8:23-25 support the analysis and interpretation of 8:9-14. The more important ones include the prominence of the king, who, like the horn in the vision, is the center and climax of the interpretation, his attack against both the holy people and God, his self-magnification and final fall. The most significant shift in language is the surprising absence of cultic terminology and the employment of wisdom terminology, developing the idea previously expressed in the vision that the horn not only appears to be blessed by God and takes over the position of the pious sage but indeed usurps God’s position. These differences do not provide enough reason, however, to regard the interpretation in 8:23-25 as “strikingly independent” from the vision in 8:9-14. Rather the two correspond to and supplement each other so that the understanding of the vision of the horn benefits greatly from consideration of the corresponding angelic interpretation.

Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and the Vision and Interpretation in Daniel 7

At the outset one should acknowledge that there are some differences between

---

1Pace Gzella, 153.
chap. 7 and chap. 8. The most obvious is that Dan 7 is written in Aramaic, while Dan 8 is written in Hebrew. The two chapters are also somewhat different in style and language use. Nevertheless they invite comparison. Although Dan 7 is written in Aramaic, correspondences not only in theme but also in terminology can be noted. Lexical links are constituted both by usage of the same and similar terms.

### Lexical correspondences

| Keyword and thematic word links |  |
|---------------------------------|  |
| in the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon |  |
| in the third year of Belshazzar king of Babylon |  |
| “king” |  |
| “Daniel” |  |
| vision |  |
| “see, look” |  |
| “speak” |  |
| “heaven” |  |
| “four winds of heaven” |  |
| “earth” |  |
| “heart” |  |
| peil “be given” |  |
| strong |  |
| “tread down” |  |
| “crush” |  |
| “wear out” |  |
| “smite” |  |
| “throw down” |  |
| “trample” |  |
| “ruin” |  |
| “horn” |  |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>בָּשָׁעָת יְהוָה לְמָלָאָליָא מֵלֶךְ הָבָטָנָא</td>
<td>in the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּשָׁעָת הָלִישָׁא לְמָלָאָליָא מֵלֶךְ הָבָטָנָא</td>
<td>in the third year of Belshazzar king of Babylon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֶלֶךְ</td>
<td>“king”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דָּנִיֵּאל</td>
<td>“Daniel”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גָּלִיזָה</td>
<td>vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בּוּדְקָא</td>
<td>“see, look”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דָּנָא</td>
<td>“speak”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָבָטָנָא</td>
<td>“heaven”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בּוּזָרָה רְחֹתָה בּוֹקָא</td>
<td>“four winds of heaven”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָבָטָנָא</td>
<td>“earth”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בּוֹדָר בּוּדְקָא</td>
<td>“heart”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֱּיָפָר</td>
<td>peil “be given”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַלּוֹק</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַפְּרָא</td>
<td>“tread down”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צָעֵפָא</td>
<td>“crush”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָעַר נֵפָר</td>
<td>“wear out”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֵאמָר</td>
<td>“smite”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דְּפַנּוּ הָבָטָנָא</td>
<td>“throw down”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַפְּרָא</td>
<td>“tread down”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Niditch notes that in general Dan 7 uses chains of synonymous terms, while Dan 8 uses more brief clauses (224-226).
Thematic similarities
Horn power
Self-magnifying, anti-divine power
Attack on saints, opposition to God
End of anti-divine power by divine action
Time factor
Judgment
Creation
Cult

Structural similarities
Close structural correspondence exhibiting basic elements of a vision report.

General Assessment of the Intertextual Relation

A close relationship between Dan 7 and Dan 8 is recognized immediately. Since chap. 8 comes after chap. 7, both textually and chronologically, this relationship is usually seen in those terms of chap. 8 which amplify or elaborate chap. 7. The connection is so strong, that Collins regards Dan 7 and 8, even if produced by different

authors, as “a coherent literary work.” This coherency is created by agreement of form and content, both chapters sharing “the same conceptual and symbolic world.” In particular the sequence of animals symbolizing successive empires and the description of a single horn functioning as the climax of earthly powers give the impression that both visions cover more or less the same ground.

The major part of both chapters is designated as “vision.” In chap. 7 it is called “night vision(s),” “visions of the head,” and “dream,” while in chap. 8 it is simply referred to as “vision.” Both chapters follow the basic pattern of a vision report, even

1 Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 87; cf. Lebram, Daniel, 92. Recently, Porter argued for a literary unity of the two chapters (Metaphors, esp. 6-12).

2 Cf. אשתך לִבִּי “in my vision at night” (7:2) and אישלי לִבִּי “in visions of the night” (7:7, 13) with עֵינִי “vision” (8:1, 13, 15, 17, 26) and עֵינִי “in the vision” (8:2 [2x]). Daniel 7 also uses the phrases נָשָׂא/נָשָׂא עֵינִי “visions of his/my mind” (7:1, 15) and עֵינִי “dream” (7:1 [2x]). There appears to be no specific reason why “vision” in Dan 7 is used both in the singular (vs. 2) and in the plural (vss. 1, 7, 13, 15).

3 For Collins, both Dan 7 and Dan 8 belong to the genre of symbolic dream visions (Daniel, FOTL, 6-8; Daniel [1993], 54-55). It is usually suggested that there is a difference of mode between a symbolic dream vision (the recipient is asleep) and a symbolic vision (the recipient is awake), although Shaul Bar gives evidence that there may not have been such a meticulous distinction between dreams and visions (A Letter That Has Not Been Read: Dreams in the Hebrew Bible, HUCM, no. 25 [Cincinnati: Hebrew Union College Press, 2001], 143-182 [see 143-145, esp. n. 9, on עֵינִי “vision” in Daniel and 168-169 on עֵינִי “vision” and עֵינִי “appearance” in Daniel]). Goldingay reasons that Dan 8 is not a dream vision by pointing out that the characteristic terminology, as used in 7:1, 2, 7, 13, is absent in chap. 8 (Daniel, 201), a fact that Collins also acknowledges (Daniel, FOTL, 86). However, in spite of different terminology, the visionary experience in Dan 7 and Dan 8 is quite close. First, the difference between dreaming and being awake while receiving a vision does not seem so much to affect the literary form of the vision report (cf. the close structural affinity between Dan 7 and Dan 8 as well as the frequent use of the verb נָשָׂא “see” and the root עינ “in both chapters) than it has an effect in terms of the authority of the revelation. A vision that is received in the state of full consciousness surprises certainly more than a dream in a deep or trancelike sleep that is associated more closely with the supernatural (see Niditch, 224, 232). Second, and to some extent pace Bar, the difference in terminology between עֵינִי “dream” in 7:1 and עינ “vision” in 7:1, 2, 7, 13, 15 or עינ “vision” in chap. 8 may be due to different literary associations they convey. Elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible עינ and the verb נָשָׂא are found predominantly in epic literature and עינ in prophetic and apocalyptic works (so Robert Karl Gnuse, The Dream Theophany of Samuel: Its Structure in Relation to Ancient Near Eastern Dreams and Its Theological Significance [Lanham: University Press,
if Behrens has recently argued that Dan 7 does not constitute or contain a prophetic vision report.¹

¹The principal pattern of a "prophecy vision report" as defined by Behrens consists of two parts, a vision and a dialogue, both exhibiting their peculiar linguistic features (32-60, 377-378). The vision part opens with a form of the verbal root נקун followed by הראת + nominal clause functioning as a "surprise clause"; the dialogue part is introduced by a wayyiqtol-form of נקון, starts with its first

of America, 1984], 60; idem, Dreams and Dream Reports in the Writings of Josephus: A Traditio-Historical Analysis, AGJU, no. 36 [Leiden: Brill, 1996], 70, where he adds that "there is indeed a difference between the two words, though we can no longer discern it," similar to the view of Ernst Ludwig Ehrlich, Der Traum im Alten Testament, BZAW, no. 73 [Berlin: Töpelmann, 1953], 6, 47). Thus, נקון in 7:1 could be an indicator of the association of chap. 7 with the narrative material in chaps. 2–7, while הראת and נקון would associate the vision in chap. 7 with Daniel's other prophetic revelations. This would underscore the central structural position of chap. 7 in the book. Third, the specific terminology for the visionary experience in Dan 7 seems to be intentionally used to distinguish it from the king's dreams in Dan 2 and 4, since Daniel's "dream" is also called "vision of the night" (7:2, 7, 13), an expression already used for the revelation to Daniel "in a vision of the night" (נופל יבשת כבש) in 2:19. Thus, James E. Miller argues that Daniel did not have a dream in chap. 7 but a "nocturnal revelation" ("Dreams and Prophetic Visions," Bib 71 [1990]: 402), and Jean-Marie Husser, recognizing also the deliberate distinction between the dreams in chaps. 2 and 4 and the mode of revelation in chap. 7, concludes that the vision in Dan 7 is a classic example for the assimilation of dreams with visions in apocalyptic literature, since chap. 7 is presented as a dream but then "has all the stylistic traits and layout of a vision," underlining again the "pivotal position" of chap. 7 between the tales with its dreams and the apocalyptic visions (Dreams and Dream Narratives in the Biblical World, trans. J. M. Munro, The Biblical Seminar, no. 63 [Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1999], 120-122, 150). The distinction between Dan 7 and the dreams in Daniel 2:1-45 and 4:4-33 is also supported by a form-critical comparison. Wolfgang Richter, who studied the dreams in the Joseph narrative (Gen 40, 41, and 37:5-11), the Jacob narrative (Gen 20:3; 28:11-22; 31:10-13), and Judg 7:13-14, establishes the following formal criteria of symbolic dream reports: (1) announcement of the dream (נופל יבשת כבש), (2) introductory dream formula (נוכל), (3) dream corpus, (4) interpretation of the dream (formula of interpretation, identification of the symbols, and meaning of the symbols), and (5) dream fulfillment ("Traum und Traumdeutung im AT," BZ 7 [1963]: 202-220). Gnuse follows the internal structure of dream reports explicated by Richter, and also provides a form-critical analysis of the two dreams in Daniel 2 and 4 (Dreams and Dream Reports, JJSup 90 [Leiden: Brill, 2004], 38-47, citation on p. 45). Cf. Roberto Fornara, La visione contraddetta: La dialettica fra visibilità e non-visibilità divina nella Bibbia ebraica, AnBib, no. 155 [Rome: Pontifical Biblical Institute, 2004], 48-56, 63-67, 308 n. 11.
The structural correspondence between the two chapters comprises the following components (see table 34): an introduction indicating the circumstances with a chronological reference to King Belshazzar (7:1-2a; 8:1-2), a description of the vision introduced by the term “behold” (7:2b-14; 8:3-11), a request for interpretation (7:16, 19-20; 8:15a-b), an interpretation provided by an angel (7:17-18, 23-27; 8:19-26), and a concluding statement mentioning the distressed reaction of the seer (7:28; 8:27).

Structural differences between the two accounts can be considered minor in the overall structural pattern. They concern two additional parts in chap. 7 and one in chap. 8. In chap. 7, the visionary’s reaction is not only stated after the interpretation but also after the vision, before the dialogue with the angelus interpres. And secondly, Daniel request and receives further interpretation after the initial interpretation by the angel. These features are not present as structural components in chap. 8. To be sure, the reaction of the seer

---

and the interpretation by the angel are described in chap. 8, however just once. Also
distinct from chap. 7, in chap. 8 a description of the epiphany of the angelic interpreter is
inserted before the interpretation. Thus, in Dan 7 the interpretation is given "in" the
vision, while in Dan 8 the interpretation is introduced by an epiphany of the angelic
interpreter.

Table 34. Basic Structural Components in Daniel 7 and Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structural Component</th>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction: indicating time and place</td>
<td>1-2a</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description of the vision</td>
<td>2b-14</td>
<td>3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue</td>
<td></td>
<td>12-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visionary’s reaction</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visionary’s request for interpretation</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>15a-b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epiphany of the angelic interpreter</td>
<td></td>
<td>15c-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angelic interpretation</td>
<td>17-18</td>
<td>19-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarification</td>
<td>19-27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visionary’s request for interpretation</td>
<td>19-20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visionary’s elaboration of vision</td>
<td>21-22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Further angelic interpretation</td>
<td>23-27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concluding statement: visionary’s reaction</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further links are the prominence of water in relation to the visionary experience.
In chap. 8 the location of the vision is by the canal Ulai (8:2; cf. the location of Daniel’s
other visions near a river: 10:4; 12:5), while in chap. 7 the vision itself starts with the
great sea (7:2-3). The mention of the "four winds of heaven" is striking (7:2; 8:8; see
also 11:4). Finally in 8:1, the statement “a vision . . . subsequent to the one which appeared to me previously” explicitly refers to the vision in chap. 7. Having established the intertextual relationship between chap. 7 and chap. 8, it is now time to examine how the intertext of chap. 7 helps the understanding of 8:9-14.

**Focal Position of the Little Horn in Daniel 7**

As in Dan 8:9-14 and in 8:23-25, the power symbolized by the little horn occupies a special position in the vision of Dan 7. Attention is directed to the little horn by means of vocabulary, syntax, and structure. First, the little horn is introduced differently from any of the other scenes (see table 35). In vs. 8, the introductory formula רָאִים הָיוּ בַעֲשֵׂה בַעֲשֵׂה with the verb בַעֲשֵׂה “consider” is used instead of the formula רָאִים הָיוּ H1K3 with the verb הָיוּ “see,” which occurs elsewhere in the chapter (7:2, 4, 6, 7, 9, 11a, 11b, 13, 21). The verb בַעֲשֵׂה occurs in BA only here in 7:8, supporting the idea that it is used intentionally. Also, 

---

1For most of the following observations see Dequeker, “The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 115-116; Collins, *Apocalyptic Vision*, 129-131; idem, *Daniel*, FOTL, 76-77; idem, *Daniel* (1993), 279. Whereas Dequeker holds that the variation in vs. 8 verifies its secondary character (so also Holscher, 120; Ginsberg, *Studies in Daniel*, 11; Reinhard G. Kratz, *Translatio imperii: Untersuchungen zu den aramäischen Danielerzählungen und ihrem theologie-geschichtlichen Umfeld*, Wissenschaftliche Monographien zum Alten und neuen Testament, no. 63 [Neukirchen: Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1991], 23), Collins believes that it “should be understood as a stylistic device to focus attention” on the little horn (*Daniel* [1993], 279; similarly also Raabe, 269-270 n. 9; Lucas, *Daniel*, 164, 166-167).

2Already in vs. 7 the fourth beast, on which the little horn comes up, is structurally marked different from the previous three beasts by the introduction רָאִים הָיוּ בַעֲשֵׂה בַעֲשֵׂה “after this I kept looking in the visions of the night and behold.” The major division of sections in the vision by the long formula רָאִים הָיוּ רָאִים (בַעֲשֵׂה) (vss. 2, 7, 13) is argued by Zevit (“Daniel 7,” 388) and Kvanvig (“Struktur,” 104).

3Ferch, *Son of Man*, 121-123. Zevit assumes that the use of בַעֲשֵׂה is “due to the fact that no change of scene takes place; rather, the author is focusing his attention on the activities of the horns which are so important to him” (“Daniel 7,” 388 n. 16). However, the little horn, being different from the ten horns, appears to constitute a new scene.
the scene of the little horn employs the word הִנֵּה “and behold” twice, instead of the structural refrain הִנֵּה “and behold” that introduces each of the four beasts as well as the “one like a son of man” (7:2, 5, 6, 7, 13).

Table 35. References to the Visionary Activity in Daniel 7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“Behold” (+ Verb Form)</th>
<th>Reference to Night Vision</th>
<th>Verbal Element</th>
<th>Temporal Deixis</th>
<th>Verse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(+ ptc.) נָרָא</td>
<td>הַזָּהֳבִּים עַמֶּשֶׁת לֵילָה</td>
<td>הַזָּהֳבִּים</td>
<td>הַזָּהֳבִּים</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ ptc.) נָרָא</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ ptc.) נָרָא</td>
<td>כָּפָרָה רֱבָּה</td>
<td>כָּפָרָה רֱבָּה</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ ptc.) נָרָא</td>
<td>בַּכָּהוֹן לֵילָה</td>
<td>בַּכָּהוֹן</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ perfect) נָרָא</td>
<td>מְשֶׁבֶל הָדוֹר</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ nom. cl.) נָרָא</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ ptc.) נָרָא</td>
<td>בַּכָּהוֹן לֵילָה</td>
<td>בַּכָּהוֹן</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+ perfect) נָרָא</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A syntactic difference is that הִנֵּה in vs. 8a is followed by a perfect instead of a participle as elsewhere following נָרָא in this chapter (vss. 2, 5, 7, 13; a nominal clause follows in vs. 6). In fact, the perfect הָהָלְכָה "it came up" in vs. 8 is the only finite verb form that describes an activity on the part of the beasts and horns. Elsewhere in describing the animals of the vision only participles (vss. 2, 3 [2x], 5 [2x], 7 [5x], 11) and

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
finite passive forms are used (vss. 4 [4x], 5, 6, 11 [3x], 12).\(^1\) The same phenomenon occurs in the brief recounting of the vision in vss. 19-22, where the only two finite verbs describe activities in relation to the upcoming of the little horn (vs. 20), whereas otherwise only participles are used (vss. 19 [4x], 20, 21 [2x]). Elsewhere in the vision and interpretation finite verb forms occur in the description of the activities of the Ancient of Days (vss. 9, 22), the celestial host (vss. 10, 13?), and the one like a son of man (vss. 13, 14) and those who serve him (vss. 14, 22). It seems possible that the use of finite verbs is a syntactic device to contrast the activities of the little horn with the activities on the part of the celestial world.

It is also conspicuous that the little horn is not incorporated into the schematic number of ten horns. It is singled out as a different, “eleventh” horn (cf. vs. 24). The little horn therefore represents a structural unit of its own.

Finally, in the interpretation and clarification much more space is devoted to the fourth beast and its little horn, covering eight verses (vss. 19-26), than to the other beasts, which are explained in a single verse (vs. 17).\(^2\) This is indicative of the specific focus of the vision.

It is therefore evident that in Dan 7 the little horn receives particular emphasis. As Collins concludes, the little horn “is not included as one of the ten horns but is the subject of a distinct scene in the vision, and the change in vocabulary and syntax all have

\(^{1}\)The two imperatives used in the direct speech in vs. 5 do not belong to the verb forms in the narrative line of the vision.

the effect of attracting attention to the little horn, and we must assume that the effect is intentional.\textsuperscript{1} These devices distinguish the appearance of the little horn as the “climax of the vision of the beasts.”\textsuperscript{2} Intertextually, the focus on the little horn in Dan 7 and its structural and syntactic differentiation from the other powers affirms the previous conclusion that the horn in Dan 8:9-11 needs to be distinguished from the previous animal powers and constitutes a structural unit of its own.

Relationship between the Little Horn in Daniel 7 and the Little Horn in Daniel 8

Before focusing on how the scenes of the little horn in Dan 7 help to interpret Dan 8:9-14, it is important to clarify the relationship between the little horn in chap. 7 and the one in chap. 8. Do they have the same referent or not? In answering this question, first the similarities and then the differences between the homs will be observed and evaluated.

Similarities

Several lexical, thematic, and structural similarities between the two homs are evident (see table 36).\textsuperscript{3} On the lexical level both are called בַּר הָרִים "horn": בַּר הָרִים

\textsuperscript{1}Collins, Daniel (1993), 279.

\textsuperscript{2}Lucas, Daniel, 164; cf. 166-167.

“another horn” (7:8a) and “one horn” (8:9). Both have the characteristic of a small beginning: מַעֲנֶיךָ (yūrêh) “a little one” (7:8) and מַעֲנֶיךָ מִן הָעַלְיוֹן (8:9a). One of their targets is designated as נָעַמְתֵּי יִשְׂרָאֵל “the people of the holy ones of the Most High” (7:27) and נָעַמְתֵּי יִשָּׂרָאֵל “people of the holy ones” (8:24). Thematic links include their growth from smallness to large dimensions (7:20; 8:9-11) with accompanying hubris (in chap. 7 expressed in terms of speaking arrogant words [7:8, 11, 20, 25], in chap. 8 in terms of self-magnification [8:11, 25]), their attack on God (7:8, 11, 20, 25; 8:11-12, 25) and divine principles (7:25; 8:11-12), as well as their attack on divine associates, that is, the holy ones and the host of heaven (7:21, 25; 8:10, 13, 24), their apparent success (7:21, 25; 8:12, 25), the prophetic delimitation of their activities (7:25; 8:14; note that both time spans are preceded by the preposition ﷲ), and eventually their supernatural destruction (7:11, 26; 8:25).1 Finally, the structural place of the small horn in both visions is the same: the horn comes after a series of beasts, representing the climax of human, wicked power, and remains viable until the end brought about by God.

Differences

The differences between the little horn in Dan 7 and the one in Dan 8 that are usually pointed out fall into two categories. The first category is differences of activities

---

1Some would include intelligence in the list of similarities, referring to the “eyes like eyes of a man” in 7:8 and the wisdom terminology in 8:23-25 (Shea, “Unity of Daniel,” 187; Moskala, 126). However, it is not clear whether in chap. 7 the horn’s eyes which are like human eyes connote intelligence. Most consider the human eyes as one of the personality traits, the other being the mouth, or as another indication of the horn’s haughtiness (Collins, Daniel [1993], 299). Another alleged similarity that R. P. Denis Buzy calls a “symbolic analogy” (“Les symboles de Daniel,” RB 15 [1918]: 418) is the rooting out of three horns before the small horn in 7:8 and the extensive growth of the horn toward three directions in 8:9b.
Table 36. Similarities of the Little Horns in Daniel 7 and Daniel 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Horn in Dan 7</th>
<th>Horn in Dan 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>&quot;another horn&quot; (7:8)</td>
<td>&quot;one horn&quot; (8:9a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallness</td>
<td>&quot;a little one&quot; (7:8)</td>
<td>&quot;from littleness&quot; (8:9a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth</td>
<td>larger in appearance than its associates (7:20)</td>
<td>grew (8:9-11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hubris</td>
<td>&quot;mouth uttering great&quot; (7:8, 20)</td>
<td>&quot;magnified itself up to the commander of the host&quot; (8:11a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;boastful words&quot; (7:11)</td>
<td>&quot;magnify in his heart&quot; (8:25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;speak out against the Most High&quot; (7:25)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on God</td>
<td>against the Most High (7:8, 11, 20, 25)</td>
<td>against the commander of the host and against the prince of princes (8:11-12, 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on divine principles</td>
<td>on times and law (7:25)</td>
<td>on tami d (8:11b, 12a) and truth (8:12b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on God's associates</td>
<td>on the holy ones (7:21, 25)</td>
<td>on the host of heaven (8:10, 13, 24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>י&quot;ת יִשְׂרָאֵל &quot;people of the holy ones of the Most High&quot; (7:27)</td>
<td>י&quot;ת יִשְׂרָאֵל &quot;people of the holy ones&quot; (8:24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Success</td>
<td>overpowering the holy ones (7:21); they are given into his hand (7:25)</td>
<td>succeeds (8:12c-d, 25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time factor</td>
<td>&quot;until [ךְָו] time, times, and half a time&quot; (7:25)</td>
<td>&quot;until [ךְָו] 2300 evening-morning&quot; (8:14b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supernatural destruction</td>
<td>beast was slain, destroyed, given to the fire (7:11); horn's dominion will be taken away, annihilated and destroyed forever (7:26)</td>
<td>broken without human hand (8:25; implied in vs. 14c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural position</td>
<td>final power in a series of beasts, before the divine intervention</td>
<td>final power after two animals, before the divine intervention</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the horn is involved in, that is, activities that are mentioned in one vision but not in the other. The prime example may be that the horn in chap. 8 engages in anti-cultic activities, while nothing comparable seems to be said in chap. 7. However, this is not necessarily a reason to adduce that the two horns are different since the cultic orientation of the horn in chap. 8 could be interpreted as supplemental to its activities already mentioned in chap. 7. The same could be said for other so-called dissimilarities, which on a closer look should not be regarded as differences but simply as variant forms of description, more detailed elaborations, or the mention of a different aspect. In fact, such variation between two visions, which basically cover the same ground but obviously also have a slightly different focus, should be expected.

The second category of alleged differences concerns the origin of the little horn of chap. 7 and that of chap. 8. In chap. 7 the little horn is connected to the fourth beast and grows up among ten horns of which three are uprooted by the little one (7:8, 24). The little horn in chap. 8 is generally believed to be connected to the he-goat and to come forth from one of his four horns without mentioning any conflict among the horns (8:8-9).

Suggestions of Relationship

Two main suggestions have been offered to explain the relationship between the two horns, one focusing on their dissimilarity, the other on their similarity. These suggestions also bear consequences on the relationship between the four beasts of Dan 7,
on the one hand, and the ram and the he-goat of Dan 8, on the other hand.

The first suggestion is based on the logical assumption that if the little horn in chap. 7 and the one in chap. 8 are of different origin they cannot refer to the same power and hence do not appear at the same time. Scholars taking this line of thought conclude that different historical realities are involved,¹ though the similarities between the horns often lead them to a view usually expressed in terms of pattern, prefiguration, or type (little horn in Dan 8) and antitype (little horn in Dan 7).² In this case the animal symbols correspond as shown in table 37.

The main problem with such an interpretation is that it is difficult to comprehend why the same symbol of the “small horn” occurring in two structurally and thematically closely linked visions would represent two different powers.

The other suggestion is that, in spite of the differences, the similarities in the

---

¹So already Hippolyt, In Danielem IV 7 and 26 (between 200 and 204 A.D.) in Hippolyt, Kommentar zu Daniel, 208-211, 254-257. Cf. more recently, Aalders, Daniël (1962), 161-163, 175.

²In the typological approach the horn in Dan 8 is understood to symbolize Antiochus IV who becomes a type for the power symbolized by the horn in Dan 7. The horn in Dan 8 therefore has a historical typological fulfillment (Antiochus IV) as well as a further antitypical fulfillment (usually argued to be an eschatological Antichrist). For such an argumentation, expressed in varying terminology, see, e.g., Carl August Auberlen, The Prophecies of Daniel and the Revelations of St John, Viewed in Their Mutual Relation: With an Exposition of the Principal Passages, trans. A. Saphir (Edinburgh: Clark, 1856), 54-56, 185 (“model,” “prototype”); David Zündel, Kritische Untersuchungen über die Abfassungszeit des Buches Daniel (Basel: Bahnmaier, 1861), 74-93, 117-120 (“model,” “prototype”); Kliefoth, 252-253, 258-259, 266-267, 281-285 (“parallel”); Rohling, Daniel, 218-219 (“model”); Baldwin, 162 (“recurring historical phenomenon”); Archer, 7:99 (type/antitype); Wood, 212 (“prefiguration”); Maier, 307-309 (“model”); Miller, Daniel, 225 n. 22 (both horns are “satanically inspired” and share similar qualities); Ford, Daniel and the Coming King, 104-105 (type/antitype); Andrew E. Steinmann, “Is the Antichrist in Daniel 11?” Bseac 162 (2005): 203-204 (“foreshadowing”). For a viewpoint that holds the two horns to be different but rejects a typological relation see, e.g., Young, Daniel, 171, 276-279.
Table 37. Correlation of Daniel 7 and 8 with the Little Horns Designating Different Powers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interpretation</th>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Babylon</td>
<td>Winged Lion</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medo-Persia</td>
<td>Bear</td>
<td>Ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece Antiochus IV</td>
<td>Winged Four-headed Leopard</td>
<td>He-goat — Little Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rome</td>
<td>Fourth Beast</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power after Rome (Antichrist)</td>
<td>Little Horn</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 38. Correlation of Daniel 7 and 8 with the Little Horns Designating the Same Power (A)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interpretation</th>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Babylon</td>
<td>Winged Lion</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Bear</td>
<td>Ram’s Horn 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persia</td>
<td>Winged Four-headed Leopard</td>
<td>Ram’s Horn 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece Antiochus IV</td>
<td>Fourth Beast</td>
<td>He-goat — Little Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>— — Little Horn</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

portrayal of the small horns indicate that the horns have one and the same referent. Most scholars maintain that the he-goat of Dan 8 can be equated with the fourth beast of Dan 7 since both are assumed to constitute the origin of the little horn (see table 38).

---

1See, e.g., Bentzen, 73; Ford, Daniel, 168; Lebram, Daniel, 93, 95; Goldingay, Daniel, 207; Doukhan, Secrets of Daniel, 123-124; Redditt, 144; Lucas, Daniel, 214-215.

2For similar tables see Goldingay, Daniel, 207; Redditt, 143.
Objections to this view lie mainly in the fact that the descriptions of the little horn’s origin in chap. 7 and the one in chap. 8 vary too much to be harmonized. Furthermore, according to this view the ram is understood to denote two separate kingdoms that correspond to two animals in the vision of chap. 7. There is however no textual reason why two horns of one animal in the vision of chap. 8 should refer to two different animals in the corresponding vision of chap. 7.

In sum, both suggestions have considerable weaknesses and a third, alternative suggestion is desirable. The linguistic and literary discussion of Dan 8:9-14 in the previous two chapters has provided enough evidence that the small horn in chap. 8 does not grow from the he-goat. This would resolve the perceived differences in origin between the little horn in chap. 7 and the one in chap. 8 and would open the possibility that both horns refer to one and the same power. As will be shown subsequently, the evidence from chap. 7 lends additional support for the decision to separate the horn in 8:9-11 from the he-goat.

Origin and Starting Point of the Little Horn

The close parallel between the vision in Dan 7 and the one in Dan 8 invites a comparison, not only of the little horns but also of the other animals (see below). Although there are not many lexical or thematic points of contact between the animal powers of the two visions, it seems that a few possible links corroborate the idea that the horn in Dan 8 does not originate from the he-goat or from one of his four horns.1

1The starting point of the horn’s movement expressed by בְּנֵי הַנַּחֲלָה in Dan 8:9a has been found syntactically ambiguous, that is, on grounds of syntax alone one cannot decide whether the
In Dan 7, it is explicitly stated that the little horn is connected to the fourth beast as it comes up from among the beast’s ten horns (7:8). Some suggest that this fourth beast and the he-goat in Dan 8 refer to the same entity, which would give reason to believe that the horn originates from the he-goat (see table 38). The only textual argument that could be forwarded for this view is that both the fourth beast and the he-goat engage in “trampling.” The fourth beast trampled down (יָשָׁב) “the remains” (7:7, 19), and the he-goat trampled (𝖞嗪ָר) on the ram (8:7). However, the activity of trampling could also indicate a relationship between the fourth beast in Dan 7 and the horn in Dan 8, since the horn and its host also “trample” (יָשָׁב; 8:11c, 12b). At the least, this double reference to trampling should strongly caution against identifying the he-goat with the fourth beast on the basis of a single occurrence of יָשָׁב.

horn comes from one of the he-goat’s four horns or whether it goes out from one of the four winds of heaven. Other reasons, particularly the structural outline of the vision report, led to the conclusion that the horn probably comes forth from one of the four winds of heaven.

1See Gzella, 109. A thematic comparison of the representation of the fourth beast and of the he-goat is undertaken by Young (Daniel, 287-288) with the conclusion that they differ in the description of activities, as well as in origin, nature, and destiny of the beasts.

2Lucas notes: “The statement that the horn ‘trampled’ on the stars brings to mind the actions of the fourth beast of Dan. 7:7” (Daniel, 216).

3C. C. Caragounis advances two reasons why Persia and Greece in chap. 8 correlate to the third and fourth empires in the schemes of chaps. 2 and 7 (“History and Supra-History: Daniel and the Four Empires,” in The Book of Daniel in the Light of New Findings, ed. A. S. van der Woude, BETL, no. 106 [Leuven: Leuven University Press, 1993], 388-390). First, the amount of space devoted to the different empires, that is, the number of words used for their description, marks the fourth empire as climax. Second, and similarly, the emphasis on the second empire in chap. 8 is comparable to the emphasis on the fourth empire in chaps. 2 and 7. Both arguments are based on the word count for the various empires which shows an emphasis on the fourth power in chaps. 2 and 7 and seemingly also on the Greek empire in chap. 8 (in the vision of Dan 8: 125 words used for the he-goat, 34 words for the ram; in the interpretation: 61 words used for Greece, 8 words for Medo-Persia). The statistical argument, however, is flawed since Caragounis decided already beforehand that the power represented by the small horn or the defiant king in chap. 8 should be taken as part of Greece. If the horn/king
It is striking that the other lexical and thematic similarities of the visions in Dan 7 and 8 link the second beast with the ram, and the third beast with the he-goat.¹ Both the second beast in Dan 7 and the ram in Dan 8 are described with only one physical characteristic that happens to be quite similar: The second beast was higher on one side than the other (7:5) and the ram had two horns, “one higher than the other” (8:3).² Furthermore, both animals are portrayed superior to other beasts: The second beast had three ribs—obviously from one or more animals—in its mouth and is commanded to devour much flesh (7:5); the ram was butting in three directions—westward, northward, and southward³—and no other beast could withstand it (8:4).⁴

The third beast in Dan 7 and the he-goat in Dan 8 also share two similarities. The represents a separate power, the word count in chap. 8 shows this power to be at least equally emphasized (in the vision: 74 words used for the he-goat, 65 words for the horn [with the audition included]; in the interpretation: 22 words used for Greece, 39 words for the king). In the end, the statistical data are of secondary importance and should not substitute terminological and thematic data.


²Hubert Junker (41) and Ernst Haag (“Der Menschensohn und die Heiligen [des] Hochsten: Eine literar-, form- und traditionsgeschichtliche Untersuchung zu Daniel 7,” in The Book of Daniel in the Light of New Findings, ed. A. S. van der Woude, BETL, no. 106 [Leuven: Leuven University Press, 1993], 161-162 n. 13) understand “one side” as referring to a cardinal direction, not to the side of the beast, and interpret the raising up of the bear-like animal “on one side” as the preparation of an attack towards one cardinal direction. However, each of the other beasts is first described in their characteristics before any activity is mentioned. It is therefore more natural to take the mention of the raising up on “one side,” which is the first specification of the bear, as a description of the bear’s features rather than a preparation for activity.

³So the MT. 4QDan³ adds וָיוּרָדוֹת “and eastwards” after “westwards.”

⁴In 8:4c וָיוֹרֶד מַעֲנֵי מָנוּרָה “and there was none to rescue from his power” refers in light of the previous clause (vs. 4b: “no beast could withstand him”) to other beasts. Compare also the indirect reference to other beasts when the he-goat overpowers and defeats the ram and the comment is made that לָא וָיוָרָדוֹת מַעֲנֵי מָנוּרָה “and there is none to rescue the ram from his power” (8:7).
first relates to their ability of movement: The third beast has four wings upon its back and
thus apparently has the ability to fly (7:6); the he-goat comes over the surface without
touching the ground as if he would fly (8:5). Both the image of wings and the image of
not touching the ground express the idea of swift attack. The second similarity lies in the
mention of the number “four”: the third beast has four heads (7:6), while the he-goat has
four conspicuous horns (8:8) see table 39).

The similarities appear to be more than mere coincidence and suggest that the
bear-like beast and the ram represent the same kingdom, and the leopard-like beast and
the he-goat represent the same, yet another kingdom. This has implications for the origin

---

1 Cf. Eggler, “Iconographic Motiffs,” 280. Related to the imagery of the swift-attacking eagle
in the Hebrew Bible when God brings judgment on various nations (Deut 28:49; Jer 4:13; 48:40;
49:22; Ezek 17:3; Hos 8:1; Hab 1:8; Lam 4:19) seems to be Isa 41:3 (ibid., 280 n. 875). Isaiah 41:2-3
describes that Yhwh’s helper is victorious over kings and nations (vs. 2) and “his feet do not touch the
ground” (so the translation by Blenkinsopp, Isaiah 40-55, 195; cf. Baltzer, 87), an image “usually
understood as referring to speed” (Jerome T. Walsh, “Summons to Judgement: A Close Reading of
Isaiah xli 1-20,” VT 43 [1993]: 355). This text is sometimes linked with Dan 8:5 (see the discussion
that the imagery in Isa 41:3 rather denotes “the overwhelming and all-engulfing nature of Cyrus’s
advance” [54] and could be best translated with “keeping to no footpath” [55]).

2 The number “four” occurs in Dan 7 only in relation to the “four winds of heaven”
(7:2), the “four beasts” (7:3, 17 [2x]), and the third beast that has “four heads” and “four wings,”
whereas in Dan 8 it occurs only in relation to the “four (horns)” of the he-goat (8:8, 22) and the “four
winds of heaven” (8:8).

3 Since the ram represents Medo-Persia (8:20) and the he-goat represents Greece (8:21), the
bear-like beast should be identified with Medo-Persia and the leopard-like beast with Greece. In
support one can note that elsewhere the book of Daniel presents Media and Persia together (5:28; 6:9,
12, 16). Although such a historical interpretation of the beasts in Dan 7 goes against the predominant
view of those who identify the small horn with Antiochus Epiphanes (see table 38), it has found its
adherents among those who then identify the fourth beast as the Seleucid empire: e.g., M. J. Lagrange,
“Les prophéties messianique de Daniel,” RB 1 (1904): 494-520; Buzy, 403-431; Lattey, xxx-xxxi;
Wendelin Kellner, Der Traum vom Menschensohn: Die politisch-theologische Botschaft Jesu
(Munich: Kösel, 1985), 32-46, 201-206. The suggestions to explain the imagery of the fourth beasts
with its horns by Seleucid coins that depict the king with horns as a regnal emblem (Siegfried Morenz,
“Das Tier mit den Hörnern, ein Beitrag zu Dan 7,7f.,” ZAW 63 [1951]: 151-154) and to identify the
Table 39. Lexical and Thematic Correspondences between
the Animals of the Visions in Daniel 7 and 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First beast (lion)</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second beast (bear)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Ram</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two sides: “raised up on one side” (7:5)</td>
<td>two horns: “one higher than the other” (8:3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“three ribs in its mouth” (7:5)</td>
<td>“butting west, north, and south” (8:4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“devour much flesh!” (7:5)</td>
<td>“no other beasts could stand against it” (8:4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Third beast (leopard)</strong></td>
<td><strong>He-goat</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“four wings of a bird” (7:6)</td>
<td>“without touching the ground” (8:5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“the beast had four heads” (7:6)</td>
<td>“four conspicuous [horns] to the four winds of heaven” (8:8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fourth beast</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הַר “to tread down” (7:7, 19)</td>
<td>דָּם “to trample” (8:11c, 12b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Horn (see also table 36)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Horn (see also table 36)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

fourth beast with the Seleucid battle elephant might even help such an interpretation. However, those who regard the fourth beast as a battle elephant usually hold that it is used as a sort of “heraldic animal” for the Macedonian empire, supporting the sequence Babylonia–Media–Persia–Macedonia: Urs Staub, “Das Tier mit den Hörnern: Ein Beitrag zu Dan 7,7f.,” Freiburger Zeitschrift für Philosophie und Theologie 25 (1978): 389-396; Goldingay, Daniel, 163 (probable); Haag, Daniel, 58; idem, “Menschensohn,” 162; Bauer, Daniel, 151-152 (Hellenistic war elephant); Othmar Keel, “Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” in Hellenismus und Judentum, by O. Keel and U. Staub, OBO, no. 178 [Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag; Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 2000], 16-17; a proposal John J. Collins finds “very interesting,” “illuminating,” and “quite persuasive” (review of Influences and Traditions Underlying the Vision of Daniel 7:2-14, by Jürg Eggler, and Hellenismus und Judentum, by Othmar Keel and Urs Staub, JBL 121 [2002]: 157) in contrast to his previous comment (Daniel [1993], 299 n. 194); identifying the fourth beast with the Syrian or Seleucid battle elephant, but understanding the four animals in Dan 7 as representing four contemporaneous kingdoms lying to the four cardinal points from a Judaean point of view—Egypt (south), Persia (east), Rome (west), and Syria (north)—is suggested by K. Hanhart, “The Four Beasts of Daniel’s Vision in the Night in the Light of Rev. 13.2,” NTS 27 (1980-81): 576-583. However, a difficulty remains if the fourth beast represents the Seleucid empire: one would have to explain why the Seleucid empire, one of the Greek Diadoch empires, is represented by a separate beast from the Greek empire represented by the third beast (cf. Gruenthaner, “The Four Empires of Daniel,” 210).
of the horn in Dan 8. Since the little horn in Dan 7 originates from the fourth beast and the fourth beast apparently does not refer to the same entity as the he-goat in Dan 8, it must be inferred that the horn in Dan 8, being equal to the little horn in Dan 7, cannot come from the he-goat. Indeed, an equivalent to the fourth beast from which the horn originates in Dan 7 does not appear in Dan 8, at least not as an independent entity.

Inasmuch as both the fourth beast in Dan 7 and the horn in Dan 8 are described as “trampling” others, the hypothesis could be put forth that the horn in Dan 8 is not only identical to the little horn in Dan 7 but, maybe in the sense of a synecdoche, encompasses the fourth beast of Dan 7. In the end, two options of correlating the horn of Dan 8 to the symbols of Dan 7 seem possible: Either the horn of Dan 8 stands for what is symbolized in Dan 7 by the little horn and by the fourth beast that carries the horn (option 1), or the horn of Dan 8 represents what is symbolized in Dan 7 by the little horn alone, while the fourth beast has no counterpart in Dan 8 and should not be regarded as included in the horn symbol (option 2). The correlation of the animal imagery in the visions of Dan 7

---

1Sims equates the horn vision of Dan 8 with the fourth beast vision of Dan 7 and regards both as referring to Antiochus IV (37-40; cf. also Ford, Daniel and the Coming King, 106). Hasel suggests on the basis of verbal gender change that the horn of Dan 8 symbolizes two phases of Rome: the political-pagan phase (8:9-10) equivalent to the fourth beast of Dan 7 (masculine verbs) and the ecclesiastical-papal phase (8:11-12) equivalent to the little horn of Dan 7 (feminine verbs) ("Little Horn" [1986], 394, 399; cf. Gerhard Pfandl, Daniel: The Seer of Babylon [Hagerstown: Review and Herald, 2004], 78, 83 n. 7). Shea also suggests two phases of the horn, however, with the turning point already in vs. 10 on the basis of the direction in which the horn of Dan 8 moves: an imperial phase of Rome in 8:9 (horizontal movement) and a religious phase in 8:10-12 (vertical movement) ("Spatial Dimensions," 506-520; cf. "Unity of Daniel," 189-190).

2Doukhan regards the link between the “four winds of heaven” in 8:8 and in 7:2 as crucial for the understanding of the origin of the little horn in chap. 8. He suggests that “in mentioning that the horn comes from one of the winds, [the author] is implying that it originates in one of the beasts [of the vision in chap. 7]” and that the omission of that beast in chap. 8 is deliberate “to keep the attention of his readers solely on the ram and the goat” (Secrets of Daniel, 125).
and Dan 8 can thus be presented as shown in table 40.

Table 40. Correlation of Daniel 7 and 8 with the Little Horns
Designating the Same Power (B)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8 (option 1)</th>
<th>Daniel 8 (option 2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Winged Lion</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bear</td>
<td>Ram</td>
<td>Ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winged Four-headed Leopard</td>
<td>He-goat</td>
<td>He-goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Beast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L Little Horn</td>
<td>L Little Horn</td>
<td>L Little Horn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In conclusion, the vision in Dan 7 supports the conclusion arrived at previously that the horn in Dan 8:9-11 does not originate from the he-goat, or from one of his four horns, but that the starting point of its expansion is one of the four winds of heaven (8:8). At the same time the proposal that the little horn in Dan 7 and the one in Dan 8 refer to the same power is substantiated since the apparent difficulty of their different description of origin has been shown to be nonexistent.

Thematic Similarities

At this point the two descriptions of the little horn in chaps. 7 and 8 can be compared more closely (cf. table 36). In relationship to the horn, they show important thematic similarities which concern the horn’s attitude, its action, and its nature.
Attitude: Self-magnifying, Anti-divine
Power (Himmelsstürmer)

In Dan 7 the keyword "great" occurs eight times, four times with respect to
the little horn: from the great sea (7:2) come up great beasts (7:3, 17), the fourth, which is
different from the three beasts before, has great iron teeth (7:7), and the horn is speaking
great words (7:8, 11, 20) and is in appearance greater than its companions (7:20).

It is immediately after the horn utters great things (7:8) that the judgment scene
sets in (7:9-10). Right after the judgment scene, Daniel refers again to the great words
that the horn speaks (7:11), immediately followed by the destruction of the fourth beast.
The great words of the horn frame the judgment scene, almost like an inclusio, and the
literary effect is that the judgment of the horn and the fourth beast is triggered by the great
words of the horn. So in Dan 7 the theme of hubris before the fall is evoked, which in
Dan 8 becomes the structural theme in the vision report.

Action: Attack on the Holy Ones
and Opposition to God

The horn launches an attack on the "holy ones" (7:21, 25b) and blasphemes God
by uttering great words and assuming a divine-like position (7:25; cf. the end of vs. 8).
This twofold target of the horn's attack seems to correspond to the twofold object of the
horn's attack in Dan 8, that is the host of heaven and the commander of the host. It
would appear that the "holy ones" in Dan 7 and the "host of heaven" in Dan 8 should be

---

\textsuperscript{1}The continuity of perception expressed in 7:9a ("I kept on looking until"),
7:11a ("I kept looking"), and 7:11b ("I kept looking until")
without a presentative formula ("behold") suggests that the judgment has to be perceived as being
in process while the horn is speaking "great words."
interpreted to refer to the same. Hence, the understanding of one of the phrases does affect the understanding of the other one, as well as vice versa.

The referential meaning of the “holy ones” in Dan 7 is a controversial issue. Two different interpretations have been proposed. The traditional one is that the “holy ones” refers to the faithful people of God.¹ The other understands the “holy ones” to be angels, a view that gained wider support only after M. Noth’s article in 1955, which revived an idea by O. Procksch.² A third one, which sometimes appears to be a variant to the angelic view, is a more composite interpretation which sees in the “holy ones” an ambiguous term that includes both an angelic and a human dimension.³


Comparative arguments have often been advanced in favor of the view that the term "holy ones" designates angels, but they are not compelling enough. First, in the Hebrew Bible the substantive use of שִׁמְרֵי refers most often to celestial beings, with the notable exception of Ps 34:10. However, Ps 34:10 and other, debatable texts (Deut 33:3; Ps 16:3; Prov 9:10; 30:3) are evidence that שִׁמְרֵי referring to human beings is not unprecedented outside of Daniel.

Second, the extra-biblical usage of "holy ones" in the Dead Sea Scrolls and in the Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha, which earlier in the discussion was put forward as evidence for the angelic meaning, shows that "holy ones" can refer to angels as well as to human beings.

Third, elsewhere in the book of Daniel the substantive use of the BA adjective שִׁמְרֵי designates a heavenly watcher (4:10, 14, 20) and the substantive use of the BH

---

1Exod 15:11; Deut 33:2; Ps 89:6, 8; Job 5:1; 15:15; Zech 14:5; not so clear are Deut 33:3; Ps 16:3; Prov 9:10; 30:3.

2This is Noth's original argument for the angelic meaning ("The Holy Ones of the Most High," 217-218).

3Brekelmans, 308; Poythress, 211.


adjective שָׁבַרְשׁי refers to a celestial being (8:13a, 13b). However, this does not mean that
the “holy ones” in Dan 7 needs to be angels, for in 8:24 the occurrence of the plural
שָׁבַרְשׁי—the equivalent to BA שָׁבַרְשׁי in Dan 7—in the construct phrase שָׁבַרְשׁי
“people of holy ones” refers to human beings. Also, one should not completely disregard
other uses of the root שָׁבַרְשׁי in Daniel. In the Aramaic part, שָׁבַרְשׁי occurs in adjectival use
always in the phrase שִׁפֶלֶת הַשָּׁבַרְשׁי “spirit of the holy gods” (4:5, 6, 15; 5:11). In the
Hebrew sections, שָׁבַרְשׁי is never used adjectivally. The noun שָׁבַרְשׁי “holy” occurs on its
own (8:13, 14; 9:24 [2x], 26) or in construct relation, always as postconstructus, with
“mountain” (9:16, 20; 11:45), נַרְשׁי “city” (9:24), נַרְשׁי “covenant” (11:28, 30 [2x]), and
שָׁבַרְשׁי “people” (12:7). The last occurrence is significant since שָׁבַרְשׁי “holy people”
clearly refers to human beings. In short, in Daniel the root שָׁבַרְשׁי is connected with
celestial beings as well as with human beings.

Fourth, arguments built upon a specific literary and redactional history of Dan 7,
which excises crucial verses from a supposedly original layer of Dan 7, have correctly
been identified as in danger of circular reasoning and should not be used to establish or

1This was Procksch’s original reason for the suggestion to understand the “holy ones” as
heavenly beings (“Christus im Alten Testament,” 80) and is also the major argument used by Collins
(Daniel [1993], 317).

2Noth leaves the “textually most uncertain passage” in Dan 8:24 out of consideration (“The
Holy Ones of the Most High,” 216 n. 8), while R. Hanhart believes that in this text, “even on
condition of textual corruption, the people of the saints or the saints can hardly be conjectured away
from those affected by the oppressor’s destructive measures” (93). For the referential meaning of
שָׁבַרְשׁי see the intertextual analysis of Dan 8:23-25.

3Cf. ibid.

4See, e.g., Dequeker, “The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 111-133.
prove the meaning of the text.¹

Thus far the Hebrew Bible, including Daniel, and the extra-biblical literature (Qumran, Apocrypha, and Pseudepigrapha) show that the term נְאֵרָיָם itself could refer to humans or to angels. If there are two options of interpretation, one needs to avoid the statistical fallacy of choosing the referential meaning that occurs more often in the Hebrew Bible or in extra-biblical literature.² Like with the semantic analysis of words and phrases in Dan 8, the meaning of the “holy ones” in Dan 7 must primarily be determined by its context.³

The expression נְאֵרָיָם “holy ones” occurs six times in Dan 7, two times on its own and four times in the construct phrase נְאֵרִים אֱלֹהִים “the holy ones of the Most High”⁴ (see table 41). Although the term נְאֵרָיָם “holy ones” is not mentioned in the

¹Collins, “Son of Man,” 53-54, esp. n. 23; idem, Apocalyptic Vision, 126. Interestingly, both Noth (“The Holy Ones of the Most High,” 226-227) and Dequeker (“The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 179) admit that when reading Dan 7 at the supposedly final stage of its Redaktionsgeschichte, that is, the text as is, the “holy ones” must necessarily be understood as God’s faithful people. Hence, both argue that vss. 21-22, respectively vss. 21 and 25, which in their opinion lead to the conclusion that the “holy ones” are the saints, must be a later redactional insertion that changed the meaning of the “holy ones” to refer to God’s people (Noth, “The Holy Ones of the Most High,” 228) and therefore “can no longer be invoked as unequivocal arguments against the ‘angelic’ interpretation” (Dequeker, “The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 180). This type of argumentation can serve as an illustration of circular reasoning.

²Poythress, 211-212; pace Noth who declares the comparative material to be decisive for the interpretation of the “holy ones” in Dan 7 (“The Holy Ones of the Most High,” 221).

³Time and again the decisiveness of the context has been pointed out by advocates of both positions: Brekelmans, 326; Dequeker, “The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 110; Poythress, 211-212; Di Lella, “One in Human Likeness,” 7; Collins, Apocalyptic Vision, 126; idem, Daniel (1993), 317.

⁴Goldingay’s suggestion to interpret נְאֵרִים אֱלֹהִים as an indeterminate phrase with a genuine plural נְאֵרִים that is exegetical or adjectival (“‘Holy Ones on High’ in Daniel 7:18,” JBL 107 [1988]: 495-501; so already indicated by Procksch, “Menschensohn als Gottessohn,” 429) is difficult to maintain in lighthouse of the substantive use of the Hebrew נְאֵרִים and the Aramaic cognate נְאֵרִים which refer unambiguously to God and hence function as an epithet of the Deity (Goldingay also mentions
vision, it functions as *Leitwort* in the dialogue between the *angelus interpres* and Daniel in the second half of Dan 7. All three parts of the dialogue speak of the “holy ones”: the first angelic interpretation (7:17-18), the visionary’s request for interpretation and elaboration of the vision (21-22), and the second angelic interpretation (23-27). The order of the three events that involve the “holy ones” is the following: the horn battles against the “holy ones” (7:21, 25), the judgment given in favor of the “holy ones” (7:22b), and the transference of the kingdom into the possession of the “holy ones” (7:18, 22c), or the “people of the holy ones” respectively (7:27). Similar to vs. 21 and vs. 25, which describe the same occurrence in different words, so the last three clauses describe the same final event in the course of revelation. This last event is also linked by the use of the keyword קָדְם оתא הָא דא “kingdom” or “kingship” in each of the three dialogue parts, as well as by the verb נָטַן וָחַפ. “take possession of” in the first two parts of the dialogue.  

Because of these terminological connectors there is no contextual reason here to identify קָדְם оתא יָדִינוּ in 7:27 with an entity different from קָדְם оתא יָדִינוּ in 7:18 or

that a partitive sense is within the realm of possibility, translating the phrase with “holy ones [among ones] on high” [similar to Procksch, “Menschensohn als Gottessohn,” 429; and Helge S Kvanvig, *The Roots of Apocalyptic: The Mesopotamian Background of the Enoch Figure and of the Son of Man*, WMANT, no. 61 (Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1988), 573]). Rather, the plural קָדְם оתא יָדִינוּ should be understood as plural of manifestation or majesty, similar to the Hebrew קְדוֹם הָא דא. For a refutation of Goldingay’s proposal, see Douglas MacCallum Lindsay Judisch, “The Saints of the Most High,” *CTQ* 53 (1989): 96-103; cf. also Collins, *Daniel* (1993), 312.

Because the war against the holy ones is not mentioned in the vision of Dan 7, Dequeker assumes that the attack on the holy ones in the interpretation (7:21, 25) is not original but must be an insertion made by the Maccabean author of chap. 8 (“The ‘Saints of the Most High,’” 180).

It is not necessary here to distinguish between the giving of the kingdom to the holy ones (7:27), their reception of the kingdom (7:18), and finally their continuous possession of the kingdom (7:18, 22c). All are part of the act of transference of kingdom and kingship with its logical results.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Dialogue</th>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Order of Events + Clause Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Angelic interpretation (7:17-18)</td>
<td>7:18</td>
<td>הֵלְגִיתֶים הַבֵּית</td>
<td>Event Θ: the holy ones of the Most High will receive the kingdom and possess the kingdom forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visionary’s request and elaboration (7:19-22)</td>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>הֵלְגִיתֶים</td>
<td>Event Θ: the horn was waging war with the holy ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:22b</td>
<td>הֵלְגִיתֶים</td>
<td>Event Θ: judgment was given for/to the holy ones of the Most High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:22c</td>
<td>הֵלְגִיתֶים</td>
<td>Event Θ: the holy ones took possession of the kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angelic interpretation (7:23-27)</td>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>הֵלְגִיתֶים</td>
<td>Event Θ: he [king=horn] shall wear out the holy ones of the Most High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7:27</td>
<td>הֵלְגִיתֶים</td>
<td>Event Θ: the kingship, the powers and the greatness of the kingdoms under the whole heaven will be given to the people (of) the holy ones of the Most High</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The “people of the holy ones of the Most High” are therefore the same group as the “holy ones of the Most High.”

Still, the phrase הֵלְגִיתֶים in 7:22c can be grammatically analyzed in two ways. A possessive understanding of הֵלְגִיתֶים “the people who belong to the holy ones of the Most High,” which is favored by advocates of the angel view, is possible, while the explicative or appositional sense of הֵלְגִיתֶים “the people

---

who are the holy ones of the Most High” seems to be the more natural understanding.¹ Several points need to be considered. First, the possessive understanding presupposes two groups: the people (םֹאָב) and the angelic holy ones of the Most High (קֱדוֹשֵׁי ה' צְבָאֹת), while of this point in chap. 7 there was only one group in view. If all the references of “holy ones” would mean angels, the sudden mention of the “people” in 7:27 represents an “intrusion.”² Second, there seems to be an intertextual relationship between the “holy ones” under attack in 7:21 and 7:25 and the “holy people” under attack in 8:24 and 12:7 (see table 42). Each text uses a verb of physical violence and a form of the root שנח for the group assaulted. Daniel 7:25 and 12:7 are also connected by the similar temporal expression of “time, times and half (a time).”

It is quite likely therefore that the “holy ones” in 7:21, 25 and the “holy people” in 8:24 and 12:4 refer to one and the same group. As a result, the “people of the holy ones of the Most High” in 7:27, which uses בָּנָי like the expressions in 8:24 and 12:4, should also be understood to refer to that same group. The term בָּנָי, which neither in the Hebrew Bible nor in the Dead Sea Scrolls is used to designate angels, indicates that the “holy

¹The epexegetical or appositional understanding is held by Noth, “The Holy Ones of the Most High,” 223 (yet, he interprets the phrase in Dan 7:27 as a reference to heavenly beings [224-225]); Di Lella, “One in Human Likeness,” 12, who also enlists the Greek versions and the Peshitta for support; Hasel, “The Identity of ‘The Saints of the Most High’ in Daniel 7,” 186-187; M. Casey, 41; Keel, “Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” 22. For appositional constructions of the noun בָּנָי followed by a plural noun cf. בָּנָי, בָּנָי תְּרָם מַלְאָךְ “people of the sons of Israel” in Exod 1:9; בָּנָי תְּרָם מַלְאָךְ “people of the escapers of the sword” in Jer 31:2; and בָּנָי, בָּנָי תְּרָם מַלְאָךְ “people of his choicest ones” in Dan 11:15.

²Poythress, 212.
Table 42. “Holy Ones” under Attack in the Book of Daniel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Other Links</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7:21</td>
<td>wage war</td>
<td>holy ones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:25</td>
<td>wear out</td>
<td>holy ones of the Most High</td>
<td>3½ times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:24</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>people of holy ones = holy people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:7</td>
<td>smash</td>
<td>power of the holy people</td>
<td>3½ times</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ones” are implied to be human beings. In the Hebrew Bible, Israel is frequently referred to as “holy people” (cf. Dan 12:7). This serves as a “secondary support for the equation ‘holy ones’ = Israel.”

There are also other arguments for the view that the “holy ones” are human beings. First, the physical nature of the description of the attack on the holy ones, which is expressed by the verbs הָעַבְדָתָה “waging war with” (vs. 21) and הָעַבְדָתָה “will wear out” (vs. 25), implies that they are human beings. Second, the eschatological kingdom is

---

1Brekelmans, 323, 329; Poythress, 209-211; E. Lipski, “יָשׁוֹעׁ, am,” TDOT, 11:177. Apparently to avoid the force of this argument, Noth suggests again a change of meaning and translates הָעַבְדָתָה with “host” and applies it to angels (“The Holy Ones of the Most High,” 223-224). However, his proposal lacks persuasiveness (Hasel, “The Identity of ‘The Saints of the Most High’ in Daniel 7,” 186-188).


3Poythress, 209; Di Lella, ‘One in Human Likeness,” 12. The suggestion by Noth to understand the intensive form of הָעַבְדָתָה in Dan 7:25 in the sense of “to greatly offend” or “to hurt seriously” with reference to Arabic bala(w) “to put to the test” (“The Holy Ones of the Most High,” 224-225) is not convincing (see Hasel, “The Identity of ‘The Saints of the Most High’ in Daniel 7,”
promised to God's people but not to the angels.¹ The chapter of Dan 7 would have less tangible relevance for the original addressees if it would outline the struggle and final victory of the angels.² And third, in the book of Daniel angels are in general easily identifiable, making it difficult to perceive why they would be referred to in Dan 7 by the "holy ones of the Most High."³ Furthermore, in Dan 7 the angels are already depicted as a multitude of heavenly attendants standing at the throne of the Ancient of Days (7:10).⁴

In conclusion, the "holy ones (of the Most High)" in Dan 7 is a reference to the faithful humans. As such, the "holy ones" in the angelic interpretation of Dan 7 depicts the same group that is symbolically represented by the "host of heaven" or the "stars" in the vision of Dan 8 (8:10). Thus, the contextual identification of the "holy ones" as humans supports the interpretation of the "host of heaven" as humans and strengthens the intertextual connection between Dan 7 and Dan 8.⁵

185-186). The traditional meaning of "to wear out" with humans as the object has support from BH with מָלֵך piel in Lam 3:4 and 1 Chr 17:9, and מָלֵך qal in Gen 18:12; Pss 32:3; 49:15.

¹Brekelmans, 326-328; Poythress, 209.

²Di Lella, "One in Human Likeness," 7. The hypothesis that angels who would possess the kingdom are guardian angels ruling over God's people (so Dequeker, "The 'Saints of the Most High,'" 185-187) is not convincing, for in Daniel the concept of national guardian angels is not limited to the time of eschatological fulfillment. Angels are presented as already "ruling" over different kingdoms (cf. Dan 10), and there is one who rules over God's people (Dan 10:21; 12:1).

³Poythress, 209; Di Lella, "One in Human Likeness," 10-11.

⁴Di Lella, "One in Human Likeness," 11.

⁵To some extent, this line of reasoning differs markedly from that by Collins ("Son of Man," 58-61; "Apocalyptic Eschatology as the Transcendence of Death," CBQ 36 [1974]: 31-32; Apocalyptic Vision, 142; Daniel [1993], 320, 322). The major starting point for his interpretation of the "holy ones" in Dan 7 is his understanding of the "host of heaven" in Dan 8:10. Collins pleads to understand 7:21 in parallel with 8:9-12, and 7:25 in parallel with 8:10. Because of his angelic interpretation of the host in 8:9-12, Collins is able to argue that the "holy ones" in chap. 7 should also
Finally, one might propose a relationship between the one like a son of man in
Dan 7 and the commander of the host in Dan 8.1 Of course, it is not explicitly expressed
in Dan 7 that the horn would attack the one like a son of man. In an indirect way, though,
the horn, having eyes and a mouth like the eyes and mouth of a human, resembles in these
two characteristics the one who appears entirely as human. Furthermore, the realm of the
little horn is succeeded by the realm of the son of man whom all human beings serve
(7:14). Being the final earthly power, the little horn takes dominion which should only be
given by God. Thus, the horn can be seen as attempting to take the place of the one like a
son of man to whom God finally gives dominion and kingdom. Such an endeavor is
paralleled by the horn’s attempt to usurp the place of the commander of the host in Dan 8.
Hence, it would appear that the two figures in Dan 7 and Dan 8 refer to the same entity.

Nature: Religious Interest

A first indicator of the different nature of the horn is the term נָוֶשׁ “be different.”

be allowed to have an angelic interpretation. The parallel to chap. 8 is his only argument for the
meaning of מַשָּׁה in 7:25, and a major factor for his understanding of מַשָּׁה in 7:21. In fact,
Collins seems to use an argumentative chain. After establishing that the “host of heaven” and the
“stars” in 8:10 as well as the “holy ones” in 8:13 represent angels, Collins argues that therefore the
“powerful people” or “holy ones,” as he reconstructs the text, and the “mighty” in 8:24 are a reference
to angels (Daniel [1993], 341; cf. “Son of Man,” 59; Apocalyptic Vision, 138-141). Both texts in the
vision and in the interpretation of chap. 8 function as argument for him that the “holy ones” in chap. 7
must refer to angels (“Son of Man,” 59). Thus, the pivotal point of Collins’s angelic interpretation is
his understanding of 8:10. However, if the “host of heaven” and the “stars” in 8:10 are not understood
to be angels, as argued in chapter 2 (above), Collins’s argumentation to interpret the “holy ones” in
7:21, 25 correspondingly is critically weakened.

given by Anderson who identifies both the commander of the host in 8:11 and the one like a son of
man in 7:13-14 with Michael, although he does not compare the two directly with each other
(“Michael Figure,” 420-424).
Already the fourth beast, from which the little horn arises, is different (נְפֵל paal/pael in 7:7, 19, 23), and the author offers no zoological comparison for it. The little horn then “will be different” (נְפֵל peal) from the previous horns (vs. 24). An external distinction is its size, since it “was larger in appearance than its associates” (vs. 20). However, the differences manifest themselves particularly in the horn’s interests and activities. The verbal root נֶפֶל links the different nature of the horn (7:24) with its attempt to change (נְפֶל haphel) times (-finals) and law (7:25), which in the book of Daniel is known as a prerogative of God himself, who alone changes (נְפֶל haphel) times and seasons (נְפֶל) (2:21). The continuation in 7:25 after the declaration that the horn “will be different” (vs. 24) leads to the conclusion that the idiosyncratic nature of the horn lies in its activities against the holy ones and against God and also in its assumption of divine status in that it intends to change times and law.

The different nature of the little horn is also indicated by using human features in its description. It has two facial organs: eyes like the eyes of a man (7:8), and a mouth that can utter intelligible words (7:8). Only the first lion-like animal had human features, but they were given to the beast, apparently using a passivum divinum to describe this process, whereas the little horn is characterized by human features that it possesses and which are not given to it. In contrast to the first three beasts there is no divine passive used in the description of the fourth beast and its little horn. They are thus both portrayed as independent of God. In sum, the little horn distinguishes itself from the previous symbolic powers in that its activities are directed against God and it actually

---

1Already pointed out by Haag, “Menschensohn,” 150, 163; cf. Lucas, Daniel, 198.
pretends to replace God.

The human features in the description of the little horn subtly underline this conclusion. To suggest that the human traits of the little horn function only to identify it as an individual\(^1\) is inconsistent in light of the use of human imagery in the vision of Dan 7. It is possible to associate “eyes” with haughtiness,\(^2\) especially as they appear together with a boastful mouth, but this does not seem to exhaust their symbolic function. For there is a basic contrast between human and beast in the vision of Dan 7, which is perceived most clearly in the transformation of the first beast and in the contrast between the beasts and “the one like a son of man.”

The human imagery in 7:4 often receives a symbolic interpretation, and probably rightly so. The gradual transformation of the winged lion into an upright being with a human heart suggests a positive metamorphosis of the first beast and “is presumably influenced by the conversion of Nebuchadnezzar in the earlier chapter.”\(^3\) This observation is supported by the lexical correspondence of the terms ליבן “give” and לביה “heart” which links Dan 7:4 (“a heart of a human was given to it”) with Dan 4:13 (“a heart of a beast shall be given to him”). D. Bryan distinguishes two stages in the transformation process: first, the plucking out of the wings transforms the extremely

---

\(^1\)So, e.g., Montgomery, 291: “It is universally accepted that these two human traits, the most expressive of the individual person, interpret the little horn as an individual.”

\(^2\)For example, suggested by Collins who refers to Isa 2:11; 5:15; Ps 101:5 (Daniel [1993], 297). It is however far-fetched when Kellner surmises that the “eyes” represent “people spying and listening” for the king throughout his kingdom (46), as may have been the practice in the Persian empire (Herodotus, Histories, 1.100; cf. the use of “King’s Eye” in 1.114).

\(^3\)Collins, Daniel (1993), 297; cf. von Gall, 93-94; Meadowcroft, Aramaic Daniel, 236; Keel even believes that the link to Dan 4 “cannot be missed” (“Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” 18).
unclean Mischwesen into an unclean lion, and second, the change of the lion’s posture and heart transforms the unclean lion into a "converted lion," similar to a human being.

Taking the beast as a symbol for Nebuchadnezzar, Bryan regards the first stage as referring to an early stage of the Babylonian king’s conversion, probably found in his reaction to the miraculous deliverance of the three Jews in Dan 3, while the second stage symbolically describes what happened to Nebuchadnezzar in Dan 4.\(^1\) Whether vs. 4 should be understood as a general reference to Nebuchadnezzar’s conversion or as a more detailed two-stage transformation, the symbolic picture is one of change from negative to positive.\(^2\)

The understanding of Dan 7:4 is a typical example, almost a key, for how to

---


\(^2\)Besides a positive understanding of the lion’s metamorphosis, there is also the tradition of a negative interpretation, regarding it as an act of judgment (so Lucas, *Daniel*, 178-179). U. Worschech argues that the author of Daniel uses and contorts the neo-Assyrian image of the lion man (Löwenmenschen) in order to polemicize against Babylon, exposing its frightening lion metaphor as being just human. For him, Dan 7:4 plays on the contrast between the lion metaphor for the realm of the gods and the human imagery denoting a weak lion that is stripped of all power conveying the message that Babylon behaves like a winged lion, but in the eyes of YHWH there is nothing like a human miserable effort as a human dancing in a lion’s hide ("Der assyrisch-babylonische Löwenmensch und der ‘menschliche’ Löwe aus Daniel 7,4" in *Ad bene et fideliter seminandum: Festgabe für Karlheinz Deller zum 21. Februar 1987*, ed. G. Maurer and U. Magen, AOAT, no. 220 [Kevelaer: Butzon & Bercker; Neukirchen-Vluyn: Neukirchener, 1988], 321-333). The ingenious proposal by Worschech, which is based more on iconographic data than on the text itself, fails to convince for at least two reasons. First, the metaphor in 7:4 is not that the winged lion with its divine prerogatives is unmasked as nothing but human, as Worschech suggests, but that the winged lion is gradually transformed under God’s influence (note the four passive forms) into a humanlike being. Daniel 7:4 is not about the masquerade of the first beast but about a change of its nature and character. There is a true transformation process involved. Second, human imagery in the vision of Dan 7 can hardly be considered to denote weakness. The human mouth of the little horn seems to be a rather powerful instrument (cf. 7:11, 25)—the human eyes of the little horn do not receive a specific explanation in Dan 7—and the “one like a son of man” is undeniably the recipient of power and dominion. It would be inconsistent to suggest a symbolic meaning of weakness for the human imagery in 7:4.
understand the function of the imagery of beasts and human in Dan 7. It is clear that the beasts are contrary to the divine creation order. The allusion to creation in 7:2 (winds, great sea), the divine judgment in vss. 9-10 that reestablishes order, and the Adamic figure in vss. 13-14 all adumbrate the fact that the four beasts represent violations of the creation order.\(^1\) Being *Mischwesen*, they should in all likelihood be seen as “intensified unclean creatures.”\(^2\) Human features, on the other hand, represent positive elements.\(^3\)

The contrast between beasts and human can also be seen in the figure of the “one like a son of man.”\(^4\) The deliberate thematic opposition is evident: whereas the beasts signify earthly powers and their kingdoms are merely evanescent, the “one like a son of man” stands in relationship with God, the “Ancient of Days,” and receives the eternal dominion from him. A structural-terminological contrast exists in that the “four winds of heaven” bring about the rise of the four beasts and the “one like a son of man” appears “with the clouds of heaven.”\(^5\) That the “one like a son of man” is a foil to the four beasts

\(^1\) See the section on “Creation” below.

\(^2\) Bryan, 239. The portrayal of the foreign powers in Dan 7 by both unclean and hybrid creatures and its significance for a Jewish audience against the backdrop of the Pentateuchal dietary laws in Lev 11 and Deut 14 and the implied forbidden junction (*Ki Payim*) in Gen 1 has already been pointed out by J. Massyngberde Ford, “Jewish Law and Animal Symbolism,” *JSJ* 10 (1979): 204-206. Lucas also sees a connection between the hybrid animals in Dan 7 and the Mosaic food laws, while stressing that this does not explain the bizarre nature of the imagery (“Daniel: Resolving the Enigma,” 69; *Daniel*, 171, 178). The basic notion of the beasts’ uncleanness is also recognized by Seow, “The Rule of God,” 231.

\(^3\) So, e.g., Bryan, 238; Meadowcroft, 236.

\(^4\) The second beast, too, has been suggested to carry a certain human likeness because of its standing upright like the “converted lion” (Keel, “Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” 15, following a suggestion by Klaus Koch).

is also marked formally in that the lion and the leopard as well as the son of man are introduced by the preposition כ “like.”¹ The same preposition is used to describe the eyes of the horn as being like כ the eyes of man, creating a contrast between the little horn’s partial human likeness and the full human likeness “of the one like a son of man.” Furthermore, the term יָשָׁר “man” in chap. 7 is used only for the transformation of the first beast, the son of man, and the human eyes of the little horn.

Finally, one should not overlook that the figure for God in 7:9-10 is visualized as a human being, too. He has hair, wears a white vesture, and sits on a throne. The phrase “Ancient of Days” evokes venerableness and wisdom, which in the human world comes with age and experience and is the best prerequisite for being a judge who acts with sagacity.

The contrast between human and beastly imagery could be considered one of the most important aspects of the animal symbolism in Dan 7. While the beasts represent the Gentile powers and the rule of human kings, which often are hostile to God, the human element seems to evoke a spiritual or religious nature. The main point according to R. Bartelmus is this: “Only a being like a son of man is entitled to eternal dominion as quasi-divine potency, but not animals, for animals are beings of inferior importance.”² The

¹K. Seybold believes that the specific use of the preposition כ in the vision in Dan 7 marks the “one like a son of man” as “a figure standing in visual and thematic contrast to the fantastic animals just described” (“כ K’,” TDOT, 7:7; cf. Seow, “The Rule of God,” 234). For the second beast the participle כ יָשָׁר “be like” is used which is found elsewhere only in Dan 3:25 when Nebuchadnezzar describes the appearance of the fourth person in the furnace as being like כ a son of the gods.

human element becomes an indication of “the knowledge and recognition of the sovereignty and supremacy of God,” which expresses itself in the act of ruling obliged and bound to God.¹ Thus, the human becomes a metaphor or symbol for the relation to the heavenly, in a sense for the religious aspect in dominion.²

Consistency in symbolic imagery would suggest interpreting the human elements in the description of the little horn in 7:8 in light of the use of human imagery in vss. 4, 9, and 13-14 and the intentional contrast between beast and human in the vision.³ But how can a symbolically positive element that implies a religious aspect or a relationship to God be understood in connection with the little horn? The solution seems to be that the little horn is religiously interested and mimics to some extent the one like a son of man. Furthermore, Bryan notices a progression of uncleanness in the imagery of the vision: from the humanized ‘clean lion’ to the unclean bear, to the Mischwesen leopard, to the chaos of unparalleled form in an indescribable monster—iron teeth, bronze claws, ten

Bartelmus recognizes “the messianic claim of Israel to be chosen as bearer of the eternal divine dominion.” Thus, Israel “as humanlike being is destined for dominion,” while “beast-like beings, that is, the nations who use animal symbols for representation of themselves, are in the end without real power” (294). Bartelmus detects a similar idea conveyed in Ezek 1 and 10, where “YHWH, who is thought to be humanlike, rules over the other powers who are presented in animal form” (303).

¹Keel, “Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” 27-28 (cf. 21).

²Morna D. Hooker comes to a similar conclusion after examining Dan 7:4 in relation to Dan 4: “The fundamental basis of the antithesis between human and beastly in Daniel would thus seem to be man’s attitude to God. Those who recognize his dominion and are subservient to his will can be described as having human characteristics, while those who rebel against his authority are akin to beasts” (The Son of Man in Mark: A Study of the Background of the Term “Son of Man” in Its Use in St Mark’s Gospel [London: SPCK, 1967], 17).

³It seems incoherent to take the human imagery in 7:8 differently; pace, e.g., Kvanvig, who takes the human imagery in 7:2-7 in reference to reception of the kingdom, while in vs. 8 it denotes for him a historical person (“Struktur,” 109).
horns, and another horn with human eyes and a filthy mouth—which in its little horn
“blasphemously combines human characteristics with the most confusing disordered
creature.”

It is specifically the combination of the bestial with human components that
brings this crescendo of abhorrence to the climax: “The combination of the ‘image of
God’ with the bestial represents a most daring and high-handed abominable mixing.”

The contrast between beast and human is a motif that can be found at several
places in the book of Daniel. This “central distinction” is clearly recognizable in Dan 4,
5, and 7. J. Doukhan concludes that in the symbolic language of the book of Daniel “the
animal symbolizes the political dimension of the earthly kingdoms while the human
symbolizes the religious dimension of the kingdom of heaven.” A similar attribute to
human imagery can be detected to a certain extent when celestial beings are described in

1 Bryan, 239.

2 Ibid., 238.

3 Keel, “Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” 21 (cf. 18-23). In Dan 4, Nebuchadnezzar’s
pride brought him in danger of losing his human status. As he refused to realize God’s authority over
human rulership but instead engaged in self-idolization, the proclaimed punishment is carried out and
he is forced to undergo a bestial transformation. His restoration as a human being, and as king, comes
only at the point when he acknowledges God’s sovereignty and reign. The backward transformation
of the Babylonian king conveys the message that his being human is dependent upon his recognition
of God’s power, which is portrayed not only as factual knowledge but also as spiritual intelligence,
expressing itself in doxology. In Dan 5, Daniel reminds Belshazzar of Nebuchadnezzar’s experience
and the spiritual lessons he had learned, which Belshazzar obviously had not learned (vss. 20-23).

suggests a religious connotation for the lion who receives the heart of a man in 7:4 (Secrets of Daniel,
102), the horn with a human face in 7:8 (106), the one like a son of man in 7:13 (116), and the potter’s
clay, “which always evokes the human person in a relationship of dependence upon the Creator,” in
2:45 (34), and also includes the passages in 3:25; 4:34; and 5:5 (116).
the book of Daniel as human beings.1

Without discussing suggestions of this contrast's broader cultural background, which has been viewed in a Mesopotamian, Greek, or Israelite context,2 one concludes that in the book of Daniel itself, and particularly in chap. 7, the distinction between beasts and humans seems to be one between the pagan/earthly and the religious/heavenly. Being humanlike is symbolically linked to the right of power, to the divinely entitled or even the divine dominion. In fact, the contrast between beast and human can be identified as a conflict.

A reading of Dan 8 in light of such a contrast reveals a similar shift from beast-like powers to humanity both in the vision report and in the angelic interpretation. In the vision report, the nouns and verbs used in the sections of the ram and the he-goat exhibit a variety of animal imagery. However, the horn is mentioned only once as “horn” in vs. 9a. Furthermore, whereas the animals in the vision of Dan 8 fight against each other, the horn does not explicitly engage in battle against other animals, except for the oblique

---

1 Collins concludes that the symbolism of a human figure in Daniel (8:15; 9:21; 10:5; 12:5-7; cf. 3:25; מַשְׁמֶרֶן in 8:17 is the address from the heavenly being to Daniel), as well as in the context of prophetic visionary literature (Ezek 1:26; 8:2; 9-10) and the Animal Apocalypse of Enoch (1 Enoch 87:2; 90:14, 17, 22), represents a heavenly being, that is, an angel or a divine being (Daniel [1993], 305-306, 310).

2 For example, concerning Dan 4 Matthias Henze proposes as background the trope of the wild man in the Mesopotamian mythic lore so that Dan 4 is a reversal of the humanization process in that tradition (The Madness of King Nebuchadnezzar: The Ancient Near Eastern Origins and Early History of Interpretation of Daniel 4, JSJSup, no. 61 [Leiden: Brill, 1999], 90-99). In regard to Dan 7, Othmar Keel argues that the central distinction between beasts and humanity is rooted in Greek philosophy, in particular Aristotelian and Stoic concepts, and is one of contrast in terms of intelligence and reason, which in Daniel focuses on the knowledge and recognition of God's sovereignty (“Die Tiere und der Mensch in Daniel 7,” 23-29), whereas David Bryan believes that the obvious contrast between the Mischwesen and the one like a son of man is best explained by the concept of Pentateuchal “Kosher mentality” in which anomaly functions as criterion of impurity (Cosmos, Chaos and the Kosher Mentality, 213-248; cf. Ford, “Jewish Law and Animal Symbolism,” 204-206).
reference that it grew exceedingly toward the south and the east in vs. 9b, which in
comparison with the ram’s butting in vs. 4 may involve a campaign of conquest. Instead
of attacking other beasts, the horn rather confronts the “world of holy.” The horn’s
religious dimension is clearly expressed by the terminological shift of emphasis from
power and violence to cult and holiness in 8:9-14.

These observations underscore that the core of the conflict in Dan 8 is, what Bauer
calls, the confrontation of the “world of ‘holy’ and the world of ‘bestial.’”1 Such a
confrontation is at the center of attention in the climactic section of the little horn (8:9-14)
and its correlating interpretation (8:23-25). The supreme blasphemy of the little horn in
Dan 7, expressed by the combination of bestiality with human elements, which
symbolically refers to the mixture of the earthly-political with the heavenly-religious,
repeats itself in Dan 8:9-13 where the earthly power of the horn sacrilegiously imitates
Yhwh with a claim to dominion.

The purpose of describing the king (= the horn) in 8:23-25 with human features
only, without any reference to the animal imagery of the vision, appears to carry the same
underlying message: the king is portrayed as if he were a religious ruler directly entitled
to dominion. However, his deeds do not fit that kind of image. The contrast between the
humanness of the king and the beast-like powers in the angelic interpretation must be
understood as a clever device that subtly indicates the king’s claim to power and his self-

1 Bauer explains: “By putting the world of ‘holy’ opposite the world of ‘bestial,’ virtually
‘world’ and ‘anti-world’ are put up against each other. This completely typical procedure of (not
only) the apocalyptic—which often is insufficiently described as ‘dualistic’—is found purely
unadulterated in Dan 7, where the ‘beasts’ from the chaotic waters of the sea are confronted with the
“(son of) man,” who is coming with the clouds of ‘heaven’” (“Daniel 8,” 81).
magnification to divine status.

In conclusion, the human imagery used for the horn in Dan 7 and for the king in 8:23-25 matches the depiction of the horn as anti-YHWH in the vision of Dan 8.

Time

Both chapters, Dan 7 and Dan 8, contain a prophetic time period. The two are different in length and, as I suggest, also different regarding the events they cover. It is the difference in the events they refer to that appears to be the key to explaining their different lengths of time. The “time, times, and half a time” in Dan 7:25, an expression usually considered to be equal to 1260 days, is the length of time of the persecution of the holy ones of the Most High. The period of “2300 evening-morning” in Dan 8:14b marks the length of time from the beginning of the vision until the divine intervention.

1 Other explanations are that the two time periods are true prophetic calculations for the same period, indicating successive postponement, or that the two periods should both be understood with symbolic significance (cf. pp. 346-348 n. 167 [footnote on the placement of the exact beginning and end date of the “2300 evening-morning” if understood as 1150 days]).

2 The interpretations of the “period, periods and half a period” in Dan 7:25 are similar to those of the “2300 evening-morning” in 8:14. Most understand the phrase in 7:25 to be equal to three and a half periods or years, that is, 1260 days (even if קָחָה is plural and not dual and קָחָה designates more generally a part and not necessarily a half, the comparison with the similar phrase in Dan 12:7 and its context there verifies the traditional understanding). This would then refer to a specific period in the time of the Maccabees, often identified as the period between the temple desecration on Kislev 15 (Dec. 6), 167 and its purification on Kislev 25 (Dec. 14), 164 (e.g., Montgomery, 312-315; Lacocque, Daniel, 154; Collins, Daniel [1993], 322), or to a time in the future (Miller, Daniel, 214-215, for whom the small horn represents a future Antichrist), or some suggest that the 1260 days signify 1260 years according to a supposed prophetic day-year principle (Shea, Daniel 7-12, 140-141 [cf. 40-44]; Doukhob, Secrets of Daniel, 108-109). Still others prefer to interpret the “period, periods, and half a period” as a symbolic reference to a specifically allotted time for the small horn, a “broken seven,” that is not without end and falls short of the full seven periods (e.g., Keil, 242-243; Young, 161-162; Leupold, 326; Goldingay, Daniel, 181; Stahl, “Eine Zeit, Zeiten und die Hälfte einer Zeit,” 482-484 [tentatively]; Lucas, Daniel, 194; Seow, Daniel, 112).
that brings an end to the horn's activities.\(^1\) If the giving of the holy ones into the little horn's power (7:25) and the horn's trampling of some of the host of heaven (8:10, 13c) refer to the same event, the "2300 evening-morning" need to designate a longer period than the "three and a half times," since the former includes the latter (i.e., the time of the destructive activities of the horn).\(^2\) This is another indication that the "2300 evening-morning" should be understood as 2300 days rather than 1150 days, since only then could this time period include the 1260 days of 7:25.\(^3\)

**Judgment: End of Anti-divine Power by Supernatural Intervention**

The structural parallel between the chapters suggests that the divine response to the activities of the small horn in Dan 7, the judgment,\(^4\) corresponds to the divine response to the horn's activities in Dan 8, the restoration of the holy. The theme of hubris followed by judgment, which is integral to the structural pattern of the vision report in chap. 8, is found three times in chap. 7. The hubris is always connected to the little horn

---

\(^1\)See the remarks on יִלְלָה (8:13c) in chapter 2 (above).

\(^2\)For different suggestions of how to relate the two time periods in 7:25 and 8:14b, see pp. 374-375 n. 1 (above).

\(^3\)In other words, the difference between the two time periods does not need to be explained diachronically, qualifying 8:14c as *Fortschreibung* to 7:25, but could receive a synchronic explanation that takes into account that both time periods appear next to each other in the final text and therefore should be conceived of equal textual value.

and in each instance is immediately followed by a description of divine judgment so as to make clear that the horn’s presumptuousness causes the divine judgment (7:8 to 7:9-10, in 7:21 to 7:22, and in 7:25 to 7:26). As seen in the literary analysis, in chap. 8 the divine reaction to the horn’s presumption is the restoration of the people and the sanctuary to their rightful state, which is unmistakably expressed by judicial terminology (andin and צדק).

There is indeed a close relationship between judgment and restoration. The outcome of both is very similar. In chap. 7 the judgment in heaven carries a positive aspect for the holy ones: The judgment is “for” or “in favor of” them and they will finally take possession of God’s kingdom (7:22). At the same time the judgment brings the activities of the horn to their end and finally results in its annihilation (7:11, 26). The restoration of the holy to its rightful place mentioned in 8:14 has similar effects. It has a positive aspect for the sanctuary and the host of heaven as they are brought to their rightful and legitimate state. Since vs. 14 is the response to the question about the horn’s destructive activities in vs. 13c, the restoration implies also that the horn’s vigorous activity comes to its end; a fact more explicitly stated in the interpretation when the king “will be broken without human hand” (8:25). Thus, the restoration of the holy in Dan 8 corresponds in its effects to the judgment in heaven delineated in Dan 7.2

1 A possible link between Dan 8:14 and 7:22 is hinted at by Lacocque’s reference to 7:22 in his notes to The Book of Daniel, 159). Apparently, he regards the idea of 7:22 that “justice is rendered to the Saints” (153) as an adequate description of the meaning of the root צדק in Daniel.

2 A. Feuillet sees a specific parallel between the “justification” of the sanctuary and the enthronization and reign of the Son of Man (7:14) and of the saints (7:27), as well as a common thematic threat between the anointing of the sanctuary in 9:24, the coming of the Son of Man in 7:13-14, and God’s avenging justification of the sanctuary in 8:14 (“Le Fils de l’homme de Daniel et la
Terminologically, the connection between the judgment in Dan 7 and the restoration in Dan 8 is indicated by the use of the temporal preposition יָבֶן. In the Aramaic of chap. 7, יָבֶן occurs eleven times, signaling in the vision temporal positioning nine times. In such a temporal sense יָבֶן points specifically to a time of judgment (7:4, 9, 11, 22), after a given period of time (7:12, 25), and looks forward by describing the outcome of that judgment as lasting forever (7:18 [2x], 26). The preposition יָבֶן in its temporal sense is thus always indicating or referring to some aspect of divine judgment. One may say that temporal יָבֶן has a judicial function in chap. 7. In the Hebrew of chap. 8, the only two temporal instances of יָבֶן are found in vss. 13c and 14b. They, too, point to a time of judgment or divine intervention after a given period of time. Based on its use in chap. 7 the preposition יָבֶן could play a significant role here. When the celestial being asks the question יָבֶן יָבֶן "until when?" (8:13c), one is reminded of the frequent use of the same temporal preposition in Dan 7 where it introduces the divine judgment and its consequences after the blasphemous activities of the horn. One expects that the answer in vs. 14b, "until (יָבֶן) 2300 evening-morning," which uses the same preposition again, would continue with a reference to such a judgment. Instead it is said that the holy is

---

tradition biblique," RBB 60 [1953]: 196-198). Nelis argues, maybe independently, the same (97). Both locate these events historically into the time of Antiochus IV Epiphanes and the context of the profanation and subsequent dedication of the sanctuary. Others who see a connection between judgment in chap. 7 and restoration in chap. 8 include Ford (Daniel, 167), Hasel ("The 'Little Horn'" [1986], 458-460), Shea ("Unity of Daniel," 202-203, 208-209), and Doukhan (Secrets of Daniel, 127).

1In its other two occurrences in Dan 7, יָבֶן once indicates primarily spatial positioning (vs. 13), and once it is used to designate the end of the revelation (vs. 28).

2Elsewhere in Dan 8, the preposition יָבֶן is used to indicate spatial positioning, always with a verb of movement (in vs. 6 with מָלַל; in vss. 8, 10a, 11a with מָלַל).
brought to its rightful state (8:14c), inferring that this activity must be closely connected to the divine judgment in Dan 7. Although the preposition יָּדַע presents an important linguistic link between the judgment in chap. 7 and the restoration in chap. 8, their relationship however rests primarily on structural and thematic correspondences.¹

Finally, it is tempting to suggest that the close intertextual relationship of the divine judgment in Dan 7 and the restoration of the holy to its rightful place in Dan 8 points to another concept that comprises both of them, the Day of Atonement, for it is only on this cultic day that cleansing and judgment are prominent themes.² The final scenes of both the vision of Dan 7 and the vision of Dan 8 in this case would be understood in terms of an eschatological Day of Atonement. As we will see later, the vision of Dan 7 indeed contains cultic allusions that refer to the concept of the Day of Atonement.

Creation

In Dan 7, the use of creation imagery in the first part of the vision is obvious (vss.

¹Another suggestion to link chap. 7 and chap. 8 is argued by Shea (“Unity of Daniel,” 210-216). He sees a linguistic relationship between יָּדַע in Dan 7:9 and יָּדַע in Dan 8:11c, 12b. He assumes, first, that the root meaning of בָּשַׁע יָּדַע which is “cast down” corresponds to the meaning of בָּשַׁע, and second, that the object of יָּדַע in Dan 8:11c (Shea mistakenly refers to 8:12), which is יִשְׁתַּרְתָּפֶס “foundation place,” not only refers to the foundation place of the whole sanctuary, but more specifically to the foundation place of the throne of God. Hence, in Dan 8 it was the foundation of the sanctuary or God’s throne that was “cast down” by the horns while in the heavenly court scene in Dan 7 it was God’s throne “cast down” upon its foundation in order to begin the judgment and thus the restoration of what the horn has done. For Shea, the setting up of thrones for the judgment is a direct response to the casting down of God’s throne by the little horn. Furthermore, he argues for a relation between the root יָּדַע in 7:9 and the root יָּדַע in 8:11b on the basis of their similar phonology. However, these arguments are not entirely convincing. They do not indicate a linguistic relationship, at best only a broad thematic relation.

²See Gane, Cult and Character, 305-309.
2-8), while it seems to be rather inferred than explicit in the judgment and enthronement scenes (vss. 9-14). The allusions to creation are often traced back to elements of ancient Near Eastern chaos combat myths, which the author supposedly incorporated. At the same time, there are clear connections to the creation story in Genesis. The mention of the “great sea” (vs. 2) and the “four winds of heaven” that stir the sea and as it were produce four beasts (vss. 2-3) both seem to recall Gen 1:2. The four beasts, with the exception of the second one, have the physical appearance of hybrid creatures and thus are “violations of the natural order that God set up in creation, and by implication the


4Anne E. Gardner suggests that the “great sea” in Dan 7:2 draws especially upon a tradition of a mythological sea in Ps 104:25-26 (see also Ps 74:13-14 and Isa 51:9-10, which, for her, testify together with Ps 104:25-26 to a blurring of the distinction between an actual and a mythological sea), which has either direct or indirect links to Gen 1 (“The Great Sea of Dan. vii 2,” VT 49 [1999]: 412-415, esp. 415 n. 12). Klaus Koch even proposes that the “four winds of heaven” in Dan 7:2, beyond an intertextual evocation of Gen 1:2, is a genitivus auctoris and implies that the four beasts originate from divine creation (“Die Winde des Himmels über dem Chaosmeer [Dan 7,1f]: Schöpfung oder Chaos?” in „Unter dem Fußboden ein Tropfen Wahrheit”: Festschrift für Johann Michael Schmidt zum 65jährigen Geburtstag, ed. H.-J. Barkenings and U. F. W. Bauer [Düsseldorf: Presseverband der Evangelischen Kirche im Rheinland e.V., 2000], 46-55).
kings and kingdoms that they represent are also violations of the order.\textsuperscript{1} One gains the impression that "the world has reverted to its pre-creation state and is clearly in need of re-creation."\textsuperscript{2} In this setting, the divine judgment in the second part of the vision seemingly implies re-creation,\textsuperscript{3} a creation that will subdue the chaos and establish order by the enthronement of "one like a son of man," who has been suggested to function as a "universal, 'Adamic' figure."\textsuperscript{4} Such a connection between kingship/enthronement and creation is a familiar one in ancient Near Eastern thought.\textsuperscript{5}

In Dan 8, creation terminology is most evident in vs. 14b in the use of the expression "evening-morning." It characterizes the restoration of the holy as God's re-creation. The activities of the horn which necessitate the re-creation are not explicitly expressed in creation imagery, although the symbolic throwing down of stars to the ground and their being trampled (vs. 10) implies a violation of the natural order.

These explicit and implicit references to creation in Dan 7 and Dan 8 intertwine both chapters. The vision in Dan 7 moves from an unordered state, from a violation of creation order (explicitly alluding to the creation account in Gen 1), to re-creation (implicit allusion to creation). In like manner, the vision in Dan 8 moves from an attack

\textsuperscript{1}Wilson, "Creation," 202.

\textsuperscript{2}Ibid.

\textsuperscript{3}LaCocque, "Allusions," 1:115: "The divine judgement is re-creation."

\textsuperscript{4}Ibid., 1:125, cf. 1:122. In fact, the movement from the four winds of heaven that stir up the great sea to the coming of "one like a son of man" is reminiscent of the movement in Gen 1 from the waters to the creation of the human being (cf. Crispin H. T. Fletcher-Louis, "The High Priest as Divine Mediator in the Hebrew Bible: Dan 7:13 as a Test Case," \textit{SBLSP} 36 (1997): 167).

\textsuperscript{5}Wilson, "Creation," 192; LaCocque, "Allusions," 1:124.
on creation (implicit allusion to creation) to re-creation (explicit allusion to the creation account in Gen 1). It thus appears that Dan 8:14, by using creation language in combination with the divine response to the horn’s activities, intentionally continues the practice of alluding to creation in chap. 7 (see table 43).

Table 43. Creation Theme in Daniel 7 and 8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Daniel 7</th>
<th>Daniel 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Human Kingdoms</td>
<td>Violation of creation (vss. 2-8)</td>
<td>Violation of creation (vss. 10-11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Lexical link to Gen 1 (Dan 7:2)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divine Response</td>
<td>Re-creation (vss. 9-10, 13-14):</td>
<td>Re-creation (vss. 14b-c):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heavenly judgment</td>
<td>Restoration of the “holy”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enthronement of the son of man</td>
<td><em>Lexical link to Gen 1 (Dan 8:14b)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In both visions the little horn is marked as being against creation. In Dan 7 it belongs to the beast powers that do not comply with the divine order of division between animal kinds.¹ In Dan 8 it oversteps the natural order by not respecting the division between heaven and earth and bringing stars down to earth. In both visions the eschatological divine response to the horn’s activities is creation, particularly re-creation: in Dan 7 in terms of heavenly judgment and enthronement of one like a son of man and in Dan 8 in terms of restoring the “holy” to its right state.² Thus, the divine judgment in


heaven and the enthronement of the son of man are linked to the restoration of the sanctuary and the host of heaven to their rightful position.

At the same time the combination of the themes of creation or re-creation and divine judgment in both Dan 7 and Dan 8 again evokes the concept of an eschatological Day of Atonement. Thus it is appropriate to consider the cultic associations in Dan 7 next.

**Cult**

One of the major motifs in Dan 8 is the cultic motif. At first sight, the cultic element seems to be absent in Dan 7 so much so that it is not surprising when Gese concludes that "the substantially new material in chap. 8 is the cultic wantonness of the horn." Within the scope of an intertextual analysis one might legitimately pose the question whether the cultic theme, which is so prominent in Dan 8, and also in Dan 9 and 10–12, does not already show itself in Dan 7. In general, such a question, if addressed at all, has been answered to the negative. However, an intertextual reading of Dan 7 in light of Dan 8 heightens the awareness of subtle cultic overtones in chap. 7.

A cultic framework of the vision in Dan 7 has been proposed by only a few

---

1. See chapter 3 (above).

2. Gese, 407.

3. In a diachronic reading that puts chap. 7 originally together with chaps. 2–6 to form a so-called Aramaic book (that is, before chaps. 8–12 were added at a later stage), it is somewhat more difficult to argue for cultic overtones existent in chap. 7 itself. This is probably one of the reasons why a cultic setting for chap. 7, or at least a cultic motif in chap. 7, has not yet been proposed more convincingly. Still, a possible indication within the framework of such an Aramaic book would be the parallel of the divine intervention in chap. 2 and in chap. 7 (see below).
scholars. Based on the parallel between Dan 2 and Dan 7, Lacocque is convinced that “the vision in chapter 7 has the Temple as its framework” and at its climax portrays “the enthronement of the ‘son of man’ as High Priest.” The structural and functional parallel of the mountain in chap. 2 and the divine judgment scene with the coming of one like a son of man in chap. 7 points indeed to a cultic setting of the heavenly scenes in 7:9-10, 13-14. Unfortunately, Lacocque does not point to specific cultic associations in chap. 7 itself.

Himmelfarb’s work provides some more explicit textual reasons for a cultic setting of Dan 7, although her primary focus is 1 Enoch 14. Evidently, the throne vision

---

1Lacocque, Daniel, 124-126. He identifies the one like a son of man with the heavenly-earthly community of the saints of the Most High, that is, the people of Israel (133, 146), who are represented by the angel Michael (133-134). For him, the one like a son of man stands for both Michael and God’s people.

2Both scenes, the mountain in Dan 2 and the heavenly judgment and the coming of one like a son of man in Dan 7, come after a fourth, iron kingdom and end the succession of four world powers by establishing the kingdom of God (the parallel between Dan 2 and Dan 7 is obvious and has long been noted [e.g., Lenglet, 171-182], although the exact relationship between the two may be debatable [Bryan, 213-214]). If it is argued that the “great mountain” in 2:35 is a cultic symbol and evokes the preeminent cultic space of Mount Zion, the Temple Mount (so Lacocque, Daniel, 124; Vogel, “Cultic Motif,” 55-68, who even suggests that the mountain in 2:45, out of which the stone that becomes a great mountain is cut out, “is an evocation of the cultic notion of the universal mountain of God where his sanctuary is located and from whence his judgments emanate” [64], in other words, “the heavenly sanctuary mountain” [68]; G. K. Beale, The Temple and the Church’s Mission: A Biblical Theology of the Dwelling Place of God, New Studies in Biblical Theology, no. 17 [Downers Grove: InterVarsity; Leicester: Apollos, 2004], 144-153; for a cultic association via language see Koch; Daniel, BKAT, 1:188; “when the cosmic mountain in 2:35 is called הַר in Aramaic, the primary reader is probably reminded of Hebrew statements about the cultic significance of הַר = rock”; for the general association of the cosmic mountain with Zion traditions in the Hebrew Bible see Richard J. Clifford, The Cosmic Mountain in Canaan and the Old Testament, HSM, no. 4 [Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1972], 131-160; cf. also Edward F. Siegman, “The Stone Hewn from the Mountain [Daniel 2],” CBQ 18 [1956]: 370-373), then the divine judgment with the coming of the son of man in chap. 7 should at least be investigated for a cultic focus. Fletcher-Louis proposes on the basis of the literary parallelism between Dan 2 and Dan 7 a link between the mountain, that is, Zion and her Temple, and the divine judgment, which for him then takes place at the cosmic mountain (174-175).
in Dan 7:9-10 finds a close parallel in the description of God on his throne in 1 Enoch 14:20. Himmelfarb argues that the divine council portrayed in these chapters—and the purpose of the heavenly council is always judgment (1 Kgs 22:19; Isa 6:1; Ps 82; Zech 3:1-10; Job 1:6-12; 2:1-6)—should be understood as convening in the heavenly temple. In other words, the heavenly throne room or courtroom is a temple, more precisely the holy of holies of the heavenly sanctuary. Several elements in Dan 7 and 1 Enoch 14 support their temple setting. According to Himmelfarb, the fiery streams in Dan 7 originated in the ancient traditions of the divine council at the cosmic mountain of God/El where rivers flow at its base. These rivers “have been transferred in biblical literature to the temple mount.” To describe God’s hair and his garment as white is not only a symbolism of judgment, Himmelfarb also relates the whiteness of God’s robe in 1 Enoch 14 to the picture of heaven as temple. The emphasis on the garment in 1 Enoch 14 “may indicate that the plain linen garment that the high priest wore when he entered the holy of holies, the earthly counterpart of the spot where God sits enthroned in the heavenly temple, contributed to the whiteness of the garment in 1 Enoch 14.”

1Himmelfarb, 14-17. So also George W. E. Nickelsburg for 1 Enoch 14:8-23 (1 Enoch 1: A Commentary on the Book of 1 Enoch, Chapters 1-36; 81-108, Hermeneia [Minneapolis: Fortress, 2001], 256) and Loron Wade for Dan 7 (“’Son of Man’ Comes to the Judgment in Daniel 7:13,” JATS 11/1-2 [2000]: 279). The connection between palace (throne room) and temple (sanctuary) is furthermore explicit in the semantic range of BH בַּיָּתָן which can refer to both palace and temple.

2So Nickelsburg (1 Enoch 1, 264) with reference to 1 Enoch 14:18-20.

3Himmelfarb, 17.

4So Lacocque, Daniel, 143.

5Himmelfarb, 18. One could add to the list of temple allusions the suggestion by Nickelsburg that 1 Enoch 14:23 “may indicate some kind of cultic activity on the part of the holy ones” (1 Enoch 1,
Himmelfarb thus tries to demonstrate a Day of Atonement setting for 1 Enoch 14, she is virtually silent about such a setting for Dan 7. For her, the difference between Dan 7 and 1 Enoch 14 seems to lie in the fact that Dan 7 also mentions that the hair or beard is white and thus the emphasis does not appear to be on the whiteness of the garment. However, the description of the enthroned God in Dan 7:9 indeed could be influenced by the (high) priestly dress. The fact that in Daniel the angels are wearing garments of "white linen" (Dan 10:5; 12:6-7), a term used for the priestly garment, suggests that the whiteness of the robe and the hair of the Ancient of Days contribute to the priestly background of the heavenly throne room scene in Dan 7.

Fletcher-Louis moves a step further than Himmelfarb and explicitly suggests a Day of Atonement setting for Dan 7. While Himmelfarb sees the tradition-historical relationship from Dan 7 to 1 Enoch 14, Fletcher-Louis holds the opinion that Dan 7:9-14 is dependent upon 1 Enoch 14 which describes Enoch's ascent to heaven and vision, using the imagery of wheels of God's throne, rivers of fire, God's snow-white garment, and a human figure coming with clouds. However, Enoch, who also comes to God in the clouds, is not the son of man. Rather, both Enoch and the one like a son of man are priests. Fletcher-Louis believes that the background of the Enoch passage is the Day of Yom Kippur as backdrop to the heavenly scene in Dan 7 is also assumed by Wade (279-280).

1 Cf. Haran, Temples, 173-174; even noted by Himmelfarb, 18. See also Ezek 9:2-3, 11; 10:2, 6-7 for angels dressed in linen; cf. Mal 2:7 where the priest is called the messenger or angel of YHWH of hosts (ָּהוֹ נְ הַמְּ שֹּׁרְאֵ).  
2 Fletcher-Louis, 161-193. Yom Kippur as backdrop to the heavenly scene in Dan 7 is also assumed by Wade (279-280).  
3 Ibid., 176-181, esp. 176.
Atonement ritual so that “Enoch’s heavenly ascent looks most like the high priest’s annual visit to the holy of holies on the Day of Atonement.” His conclusion is that if Dan 7 is parallel to 1 Enoch 14, the coming of the “one like a son of man” into God’s presence surrounded by clouds parallels Enoch’s ascent related to the Day of Atonement ritual and thus “the parallel to 1 Enoch 14 suggests Daniel 7 has a Day of Atonement focus.”

Whatever the precise relationship between Dan 7 and 1 Enoch 14 may be, it does not affect the observation that Dan 7 contains elements that point to its cultic or high priestly setting. Drawing from the book of Daniel itself as well as from the ancient Near Eastern context, Fletcher-Louis gives several reasons, and the strongest case so far, for a temple-centered reading of Dan 7. First, because of the focus on temple and cult in Dan 8–12, to which chap. 7 is linked at least by its form and perhaps also by its Sitz im Leben, “we might expect that it also has a temple focus.” Second, the book’s implied authorship has often been identified as priestly or at least as closely related to priestly circles. Third, Dan 7 combines “Jerusalem centered geography and mythological space.”

---

1Cf. Kvanvig’s proposal that 1 Enoch 10:4-8 is influenced by the living goat ritual on the Day of Atonement (*Roots*, 100, 102).

2Fletcher-Louis, 180.

3Ibid., 181.

4Ibid., 169-176.

5Ibid., 170 (emphasis his).

6To substantiate the claim of an origin of the book of Daniel in priestly circles Fletcher-Louis refers to (1) the description of Daniel and his friends similar to priests in Dan 1:4; (2) the mention of the מַשֵּׁתִיס "wise" who teach the מַשֵּׁתִיס "many" (11:33; 12:3, 10) as reference to priesthood and laity; and (3) the Old Greek addition of *Bel et Draco* 2 depicting Daniel as a priest (171-172). Others who...
This twofold concept is exemplified by the “great sea” in 7:2. On the one hand it designates the Mediterranean and thus suggests that the vision “moves spatially in v. 9 from the pagan coastline to Jerusalem and the temple as the site of God’s earthly throne-room.” On the other hand it also designates the mythological Chaosmeer and thus evokes the ancient Near Eastern thought pattern of the Chaoskampf which is “fundamentally temple centred.” According to this thought pattern “Mount Zion is the epicentre of all cosmic conflict.” As elsewhere, so also in Dan 7: The temple is the center of judgment, both of pronouncement and execution, and of creation and recreation.

Fourth, the literary parallelism between Dan 2 and Dan 7 points to an intertextual link between the mountain in chap. 2, that is, Zion and her Temple, and the divine judgment in chap. 7 which is understood to take place at the cosmic mountain. And fifth, the impurity of the Mischwesen that represent the pagan chaos in 7:4-8 has to be countered by Zion, the source of true purity, in 7:9-10, 13-14.

It is at this point that the cultic background of the scene in Dan 7:9-14 should be seen the book as interpretation of political events from a priestly-cultic perspective include J. C. H. Lebram ("Apokalyptik and Hellenismus im Buche Daniel," 515) and André Lacocque who proposes that “apocalypticism may have originated in priestly circles within the Hasidic movement” ("The Socio-Spiritual Formative Milieu of the Daniel Apocalypse," in The Book of Daniel in the Light of New Findings, ed. A. S. van der Woude, BETL, no. 106 [Leuven: Leuven University Press, 1993], 335-336).

1Fletcher-Louis, 174.
2Ibid., 172.
3Ibid., 173.
4Ibid., 175-176. Fletcher-Louis follows here the concept of “kosher mentality” argued by Bryan.
linked with the Day of Atonement. The removal of impurity, as signified by the
Mischwesen, by the coming of the one like a son of man corresponds to the removal of
impurity on the Day of Atonement in the Torah. In a temple setting, the coming of the
one like a son of man “with the clouds of heaven” naturally brings to mind the entrance of
the high priest with the clouds of incense on the Day of Atonement. Not surprisingly
then, Fletcher-Louis proposes that the “clouds are the cosmological equivalent of the
Temple’s incense smoke.”

In addition to Fletcher-Louis’ observations, one should also point to vs. 13 in
which the language of the approach of the “one like a son of man” has cultic overtones:

\[\text{TPN} \text{ n\onionp } \text{ “he was presented before him” (7:13).}^{2}\]

The obvious meaning is that the “one like a son of man” was presented before the Ancient of Days. Besides
“bringing” the verbal root \(3\text{lp} \) also contains the notion of “presenting” sacrificial gifts,
especially when it is used in the Haphel stem.\(^3\) The latter connotation, however, does not

---

\(^1\)Ibid., 181-186, citation on p. 182.

\(^2\)The third person plural \(3\text{TPQ} \) (literally: “they presented him”; cf. Old Greek: o\(\varepsilon\) παρεστηκές περίσσων καὶ ἤνεγα “and the attendants presented him” with the identification of “one like a son of man” with the “Ancient of Days”) should be understood as an impersonal pseudo-passive construction typical for Biblical Hebrew (cf. Theodotion: προσήνεσαν αὐτῷ “he was presented to him”).

\(^3\)In BA the idea of approaching or coming near is usually expressed by \(3\text{lp} \) in the Peal (Dan 3:8, 26; 6:13, 21; 7:16), whereas the notion of offering is expressed by \(3\text{lp} \) in the Haphel (Ezra 6:10, 17) or \(3\text{Se} \) in the Pael (Ezra 7:17) (see Klaus Beyer, Die aramäischen Texte vom Toten Meer: samt den Inschriften aus Palästina, dem Testament Levi aus der Kairoer Genisa, der Fastenrolle und den alten talmudischen Zitaten [Göttingen: Vandehoek & Ruprecht, 1984], 685-686; HALOT, 5:1972; for the lack of differentiation between Pael and Haphel in Biblical Aramaic see Bauer and Leander, Grammatik des Biblisch-Aramäischen, 274 [§76n]). However, this distinction may be simply due to different contexts, for in BH \(3\text{lp} + \) can mean “to offer before” (Lev 3:1, 7, 12; 6:7; 9:2; 10:19;
12:7; 17:4; Num 3:4; 6:16; 7:10; 8:9, 10; 26:61; 1 Chr 16:1) or “to bring before” (Exod 29:10; Num 7:3; 16:17; 17:3; 27:5; Ezek 43:24), with some texts offering both possibilities. The cultic context of these passages is, except for Num 27:5, indisputable. In sum, \(3\text{lp} \) hif. is “primarily a technical term in cultic language” (J. Kühlewein, “3\text{lp} qrb to approach,” TLOT, 3:1167) and for persons it is used

---

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
seem to fit into the context of 7:13, where the root פב appears to indicate a "formal presentation" rather than a sacrificial offering of the one like a son of man. Still, a cultic touch of קפוב cannot be categorically denied, in particular, since the author could have used, like elsewhere, the more common קפ in the Haphel (Dan 3:13; 5:13; 6:17, 25) or in the Hophal (Dan 3:13; 6:18, 25[?]) if only the idea of the bringing of persons had to be expressed.

In conclusion, the numerous cultic indicators strongly suggest a cultic setting of the heavenly throne room scene in Dan 7:9-14, and the most natural cultic setting is the Day of Atonement. Therefore, "Dan 7:9-14 describes the eschatological Day of Atonement (perhaps a Jubilee) when the true high priest will come to the Ancient of Days surrounded by clouds of incense." As on the Day of Atonement "the entry into the adytum is equivalent to admission to the heavenly council," so the admission to the heavenly council of the one like a son of man in Dan 7:13 should be seen as equivalent to ______

for "conducting someone to the holy tent (Exod 29:4, 8, etc.)" (ibid., 1168). Thus, in BH ב is a verb used to mean "approach" in the cultic sense (Ezek 44:15, 16; 45:4), especially in the Hiphil, although a variety of specific usages can be noted (ibid., 3:1165-1166; R. Gane and J. Milgrom, "ב קפ qarah," TDOT, 13:141-143). Significant is that in a judicial context BH ב can designate a person approaching another person in a situation that calls for a legal decision. Daniel 7:13-14 could to some extent present such a judicial procedure if one views the legal decision to be the transference of power to the one like a son of man.

1Gane and Milgrom, 13:146.

2In the Haphel is used for the bringing of things in Dan 5:2, 3, 23. The prepositional noun ספ in front or "before," which is used in 7:13 with the verbal root ב, is also found with ספ in the Hophal (3:13). ספ is also used with the verbal root ספ "bring in" (in the Haphel in 2:25; 4:3; 6:19; in the Hophal in 5:13, 15).

3Fletcher-Louis, 186.

4Milgrom, Leviticus 1-16, 1016.
the entry into the heavenly adytum. Whereas Fletcher-Louis argues that the one like a son of man is an angelomorphic high priest, I would rather suggest that this figure represents an anthropomorphic heavenly high priest, who is either angelic or divine. The latter interpretation would allow for a parallel to the figure of the “commander of the host of heaven” in Dan 8:11, who seems to be in an equivalent position to the one like a son of man, both being representatives of the host of heaven, respectively the holy ones of the Most High.¹

Thus different cultic allusions in the vision of Dan 7—impurity of the Mischwesen, fire, whiteness of garment, judgment, the presenting of the one like a son of man, and his coming with clouds—converge in the concept of the Day of Atonement. In this regard, the contribution of Dan 7 to the understanding of Dan 8 is twofold. It prepares for the extensive use of cultic imagery in the vision report of Dan 8 and it sets the tone for the Day of Atonement theme.

Differences

At least three differences between Dan 7 and Dan 8 need to be observed. First, the animal imagery of Dan 7 uses four strange beasts, whereas the animal imagery of Dan 8 uses two familiar animals: the ram and he-goat. In light of the cultic interest in Dan 8 and the temple or Day of Atonement setting of the vision of Dan 7, there is no denying

¹In fact, an angelic or divine nature of the one like a son of man would fit better to an assumed Canaanite mythic backdrop against which the role of the one like a son of man is often compared with the role of Baal (for scholars who suggest such a comparison, see Jürg Eggler, Influences and Traditions Underlying the Vision of Daniel 7:2-14: The Research History from the End of the 19th Century to the Present, OBO, no. 177 [Fribourg: University Press; Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 2000], 58-70; LaCocque, “Allusions,” 1:116-124; Heiser, 152-182).
the possibility that the ram and the he-goat represent imagery taken from the Day of Atonement, when both יָרָן “ram” and תְּאֹת “goat” are sacrificed for Israel (Lev 16:5). This kind of animal imagery prepares the reader for a Day of Atonement setting of Dan 8:14. Others usually suggest as background of the animal imagery ancient astrology, which assigned the signs of the zodiac to different kingdoms and empires: the ram would stand for Persia and the he-goat for Syria.

Second, whereas the conflict theme between the animals appears not to be the emphasis in the vision of Dan 7—only the fourth beast is trampling down and before the little horn three others are rooted up—the vision of Dan 8 shows an intense power struggle between the ram and the he-goat, as well as fierce aggression by the horn.

And third, God appears to be much more involved in Dan 7 than in Dan 8. Besides the heavenly scenes in Dan 7:9-14 and their corresponding interpretations, the frequent occurrence of passive forms in Dan 7 implies that God is in control and active behind the scene. One of these passive forms occurs in 7:25 where it says that the holy ones “will be given” into the hand of the little horn. That this will last for a specific period of time is again an indicator that it is God who is ultimately in control, even over the time of persecution which the horn is allowed to bring on the holy ones. In contrast, in the vision and interpretation of Dan 8 God seems to be much less involved. He is

1So also Doukhan, Secrets of Daniel, 126.


3On divine passives in Dan 7 see Altpeter, 112. In regard to Dan 7, T. J. Meadowcroft points out rightly that “the Aramaic use of passive forms creates a nuance of divine workmanship lying behind events” (Aramaic Daniel, 243-244, cf. 209-210; “Who are the Princes?” 105).
almost absent, which is the reason for the painful question of the celestial being in vs. 13.
The use of the six passive forms in the vision and interpretation illustrates the point.¹ The
vision report itself contains four passives: רשם "was thrown down" (8:11c) and נтверд "will be given/established" (8:12a) reflect activities of the little horn,² while possibly לברבב "was broken" (8:8), and certainly לברבב "will be restored" (8:14c) refer to the
divine hand. In the interpretation only two passives are used: נחרבב "the broken one" (8:22) refers to לברבב "was broken" in 8:8, possibly being another indication of divine involvement, and the passive form לברבב "will be broken" (8:25), which is the final clause in the interpretative section of the horn/king, definitely signals divine engagement. Thus, there is no allusion to God’s presence whatsoever in the description of the ram, a possible one at the end of the he-goat’s large horn (8:8, 22), and a clear indication at the end of the section of the horn/king (8:14c, 25). The other passive forms (8:11c, 12a), which have the horn as subject, could allude to the fact that the horn plays the role of God.

Conclusion

The intertextual contribution of Dan 7 to the understanding of Dan 8:9-14 is immense. The structural and thematic comparison between them has shown that the small horn in chap. 7 and the one in chap. 8 have the same referent. The self-magnifying

¹Outside the visionary and interpretative contents passive forms are used to describe the supernatural source of Daniel’s experience (לראות "appeared" in 8:1 [2x]; and לאמנים "told" in 8:26) and Daniel’s reaction to it (לראות "I was terrified" in 8:17; לראות "I fell into heavy sleep" in 8:18; and לראות ננקועות "I was exhausted," לראות ננקועות "I was weak," and לראות ננקועות "I was astounded" in 8:27).

²It is important to note again the different connotations of the phrases with the verb “to give” in Dan 7:25 (นอกจาก in BA) and in 8:12a (לдавать in BH) for syntactic and semantic reasons. See comments on Dan 8:12a in chapter 2.
attitude and religious interest of the horn as well as its assaults on the holy ones and on God are just a few of the more prominent similarities. The structural comparison also supports the analysis of the origin of the horn in chap. 8 as not stemming from the he-goat. Furthermore, as the vision in chap. 7 exhibits a course “from trauma to dream,” the vision in chap. 8, especially its climax, also moves from trauma to dream.

Probably the most important contribution of the intertextual analysis between Dan 7 and Dan 8:9-14 lies in the connection of the three themes of judgment, creation, and cult. Reading chap. 8 in light of chap. 7 adds emphasis to the theme of judgment as expressed by הַמָּזוֹזֶן in 8:14c. At the same time, reading chap. 7 in light of 8:9-14 sensitizes the reader to the cultic overtones present in chap. 7, in particular as expressed by the coming of the one like a son of man in vs. 13. Both themes, judgment/restoration as well as cult, are combined with the theme of creation. I argue that such an intertextual interplay between chap. 7 and chap. 8 is designed intentionally and not at all accidental. As suggested, a possible focal point of this intertextual web seems to be the concept of an eschatological Day of Atonement, in which the themes of cult, judgment, restoration, and re-creation find their center. The promised restoration in 8:14 is therefore not merely linked to judgment and creation but also strongly connected to an eschatological Day of Atonement, to which the vision of chap. 8 already pointed.

**Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 9**

The corresponding terms in Dan 8:9-14 and Dan 9, as well as thematic and

---

structural links, are presented in the following list.

Lexical correspondences

Keyword links
- קְשָׁה (8:12, 26; 9:13)
- קָרָה (8:1, 2 [2x], 13, 15, 17, 26; 9:21, 24)
- מָכָּה (8:11; 9:17)
- יָדָע (8:14, 26; 9:21)
- יִשְׁעָה (8:12, 24 and verb מְשַׁמֵּשׁ in 8:23)
- יֵּשָׁר (8:13, 14; 9:16, 20, 24 [3x], 26 (11:28, 30 [2x], 45; 12:7)
- יָמָּשְׁתָּ (8:13, 27; 9:17, 18, 26, 27 [2x])
- תֹּאמִּר "say" (8:14, 17; 9:22)—a celestial being speaking to Daniel
- יִרְאָה (8:14; 9:24)

Thematic word links
- מָשַׁת "trample down" (8:10c) // בֹּשֶׁת "destroy" (9:26)

Incidental correspondences
- "one" (8:3 [2x], 9 [2x]; 9:1, 2, 27)
- "say" (8:13, 14, 16, 17, 19, 26; 9:4 [9:22 see under keyword links])
- "land" (8:5 [2x], 7, 10, 12, 18; 9:6, 7, 15)
- "speak" (8:13 [2x], 18; 9:6, 12, 20, 21, 22)
- "go forth" (8:9; 9:15, 22, 23, 25 [מִנָּחֵם])
- "fall" (8:10, 17; 9:18, 20)
- "give" (8:12, 13; 9:3, 10)
- "do" (8:4, 12, 24, 27; 9:12 [2x], 14, 15, 19)
- "prince" (8:11, 25 [2x]; 9:6, 8)
- מָשַׁת "heaven" (8:8, 10; 9:12)
- מָסָּכָה "hear" (8:13, 16; 9:6, 10, 11, 14, 17, 18, 19)

Thematic similarities
- Understanding
- Concern for people and cult
- Concern for time
- Conflict

Structural similarities
- No structural similarities on a formal level can be detected.¹

¹Recently, Donn Walter Leatherman suggested that Dan 8 and Dan 9 form a “single extended apocalyptic visionary experience” that comprises a series of structural elements similar to those of Dan 7: the vision consisting of a series of animals (7:2-6; 8:2-8a), horns (7:7-12; 8:8b-12), and an
Lexical correspondences also exist between the rest of Dan 8 and Dan 9 that strengthen their relationship:

Keyword links

- **"see"** (8:1 [2x], 2 [3x], 3, 4, 6, 7, 15, 20; 9:18, 21)
- **"before"** (8:1; 9:21, 23)
- **"I, Daniel"** (8:1, 15, 27; 9:2)

Eschatological event (7:13-14; 8:13-14), and the interpretation consisting of an initial inquiry (7:15-16; 8:15), a preliminary explanation (7:17-18; 8:16-26), a supplemental inquiry (7:19-20; 9:4-19), a supplemental vision (7:21-22; 9:20-23), and a supplemental explanation (7:23-27; 9:24-27)

(“Structural Considerations regarding the Relation of Daniel 8 & Daniel 9,” in The Cosmic Battle for Planet Earth: Essays in Honor of Norman R. Gulley, ed. R. du Preez and J. Moskala [Berrien Springs: Old Testament Department, Seventh-day Adventist Theological Seminary, Andrews University, 2003], 293-305). Although such a structural comparison would confirm the strong connection between Dan 8 and Dan 9, and thus the use of Dan 9 for the interpretation of Dan 8, there are several weak points. First, Leatherman excludes 8:27 and 9:1-3 from his structural comparison, interpreting it as necessary material for the narrative but having no function in the structure of the vision. Second, Dan 8:27 has to be interpreted as “narrative transition” (304 n. 20) that concludes the preliminary explanation. However, in chap. 7 a very similar reference to the effects on the prophet concludes the entire visionary experience (7:28). Formally, 8:27 should better be interpreted as the conclusion of the vision in Dan 8. Third, 9:1-3 which Leatherman regards as “narrative introduction” to chap. 9 (304 n. 21) could equally be regarded as the introduction to the prophet’s experience indicating time and occasion, like similarly in 7:1-2a and 8:1-2. Fourth, the supplemental vision in 7:19-20 is indeed an elaboration of the vision, whereas 9:20-23, which according to Leatherman constitutes the structurally corresponding supplemental vision to 7:19-20, recounts the appearance of the angel Gabriel and his prefatory remarks to Daniel, but do not supplement in any way the vision of Dan 8. Fifth, Leatherman corresponds structurally the visionary’s inquiry in 7:19-20 with the prayer in 9:14-19. The supposed inquiry about the vision of Dan 8 in Daniel’s prayer would be more implicit than explicit. In fact, Daniel’s prayer finds its **raison d’être** in a time prophecy of Jeremiah (9:2) and primarily is inquiring about that time instead of asking about Dan 8. And finally, the length of the units designated as “supplemental inquiry” varies quite extensively in size, covering two verses in chap. 7 but sixteen verses in chap. 9. Such a comparison seems to be rather imbalanced.

1 The inconspicuous combination of the personal pronoun first person singular with a personal name is a special characteristic of the book of Daniel (aside from the combination with a divine name) and occurs also in 10:2, 7; 12:5 and in Aramaic in 7:15, 28. Outside Daniel this construction occurs in BH only in Eccl 1:12 and in BA in Ezra 6:12; 7:21. This autobiographic stylistic device in Daniel unites chaps. 7–12 and indicates the authority of the writer (cf. Hansjörg Rigger, Siebzig Siebener: Die “Jahrwochenprophezei” in Dan 9, TThSt, no. 57 [Trier: Paulinus, 1997], 130-134, who, however, explains that the pseudonym “I, Daniel” indicates authoritative “scribal prophecy” produced by prophetic scriptural exegesis, in contrast to the revelation of the word in “classical prophecy”).

2 Compare the use of נְאָה by Daniel in 8:2 (2x), 5; 9:20, 21; 10:4, 8, 9, 17; 12:8; and also נְאָה in 4:1, 31, 34.
General Assessment of the Intertextual Relation

In contrast to the previous chapter, visionary elements fade nearly completely into the background in Dan 9. The text does not mention that Daniel sees (יהוה), a term so prominent in chap. 8, except in a relative clause in 9:21 where it refers to seeing Gabriel previously, implying that he is now seeing Gabriel again. Formally, Dan 9 consists of
two parts: a prayer of Daniel and an epiphany vision in which a celestial messenger appears, conveying divine words to the prophet.

The continuation of Dan 8 in Dan 9 has often been observed previously. As will be seen, the connection is especially strong between 8:12-14 and 9:21-27, which makes it imperative to analyze these textual links closely. The links, however, function mainly on the terminological and thematic level, not on a structural level. This is why one might note that the connection between chap. 8 and chap. 9 is not as close as the one between chap. 8 and chap. 7, although it would be preferable to say that it is simply different in nature from the one between chap. 8 and chap. 7.

Terminological links between Dan 8:9-14 and Dan 9 predominate in the introduction to the oracle (9:20-23: קִּצְיָת, תְּרוּבָּה, וּמְרָא, בְּלַע, מַרְבּוּ, מֹרֶב) and the oracle itself, particularly 9:24 (9:24-27: מַשְׁקַל, יְדוֹר, מְרָא, שְׁחָד, מַטְמִיט, תְּרוּבָּה). Only קִּצְיָת (9:13) and מַטְמִיט (9:17) occur solely in the prayer. מַשְׁקַל (9:16) and מַטְמִיט appear in both the prayer and (the introduction to) the oracle. However, in 9:16-18 the root מַטְמִיט recalls the language of Jer 25:9-12 (בְּלַע in vss. 9, 11), which is the text Daniel contemplates (Dan 9:2), providing the numerical starting point for the seventy-weeks prophecy (9:24). Most incidental

---

1 For example, Noth stresses in his literary-critical analysis of the composition of Daniel that Dan 8 and Dan 9 "belong inseparably together" ("Zur Komposition des Buches Daniel," 160-161) and Steck does not find in Dan 8 a solution to the problems presented there, but regards chap. 9 as a "necessary continuation" of the angelic interpretation in Dan 8 ("Weltgeschehen," 67). Interestingly, in most commentaries the connection between the two chapters is not explicitly recognized, though exceptions are possible (e.g., Płöger, Daniel, 139; Lacocque, Daniel, 173).

2 So Goldingay, Daniel, 238.


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
correspondences are found in the prayer, some in the description of the epiphany, and one in the oracle.

**Intertextual Leitwort** יִשָּׁנָה

The major Leitwort that interlocks Dan 8 and Dan 9 is the root יִשָּׁנָה "understand."

In the book of Daniel the root יִשָּׁנָה is used as a "technical term for the understanding of visions and auditions." In chaps. 8 and 9 the root يִשָּׁנָה, which constitutes "an internal and significant bridge" for Daniel's concern with understanding, connects the two chapters (see table 44).

Daniel sees the vision of chap. 8 which naturally he tries to understand (8:15). The angel Gabriel is entrusted with the task to impart understanding to the prophet (8:16, 17). However, at the end of chap. 8 Daniel is left without understanding: יִשָּׁנָה יִנְשָׁנָה “and there was no understanding” (8:27). Hence, the end of Dan 8 emphasizes “non-solution, the continuation of the problem, the non-understanding.” The chapter does not

---

1 H. H. Schmid, “Yishàn bin to understand,” *TLOT*, 1:232; cf. Helmer Ringgren, “Yishàn bin,” *TDOT*, 2:106. In chap. 1 the root יִשָּׁנָה is used twice to designate Daniel's and his friends' general capacity to understand (1:4, 20). The key to the specific use of יִשָּׁנָה in the book is found in 1:17 which singles out Daniel for his ability “to understand all kinds of visions and dreams” (cf. Jacques Doukhan, “The Seventy Weeks of Dan 9: An Exegetical Study,” *AUS*, 17 [1979]: 4 n. 7). From there on, the root designates "the ability of profound understanding of what kind of meta-history [Metahistorie] and developments of the future underlie the visible side of the world" (Koch, *Daniel*, BKAT, 45). Besides 1:4, 17 the verb יִשָּׁנָה occurs in 8:5, 16, 17, 23, 27; 9:2 (qal), 22, 23 (qal), 23; 10:1 (qal), 11, 12, 14; 11:30 (qal), 33, 37 (2x: qal); 12:8 (qal), 10 (2x: qal); the noun יִשָּׁנָה “understanding” occurs in 1:20; 8:15; 9:22; 10:1. In the second half of the book, the root יִשָּׁנָה seems to refer specifically to the understanding of the prophecy of the end (Doukhan, *Daniel: The Vision of the End*, 108).


Table 44. Usage of the Root וְהָיָה in Daniel 8 and 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Root וְהָיָה</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Agent of וְהָיָה</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:5</td>
<td>hif. ptc.</td>
<td>reflect, observe</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>context: vision of ram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:15</td>
<td>noun</td>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>context: רָאָה “vision”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:16</td>
<td>hif. ipv.</td>
<td>explain (subj.: Gabriel)</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>רָאָה “vision”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:17</td>
<td>hif. ipv.</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>object clause: that the vision (רָאָה) is for the end time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:23</td>
<td>hif. ptc.</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>king (horn)</td>
<td>riddles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:27</td>
<td>hif. ptc.</td>
<td>not understand¹</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>context: רָאָה “vision”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:2</td>
<td>qal pf.</td>
<td>observe</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>books &amp; number of years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22a</td>
<td>hif. wayyiqtol</td>
<td>explain, instruct (subj.: Gabriel)</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:22d</td>
<td>noun</td>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23d</td>
<td>qal ipv.</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:23e</td>
<td>hif. ipv.</td>
<td>understand, grasp</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>רָאָה “vision”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

constitute a well-rounded narrative with vision report and complete interpretation but rather remains open-ended. The function of this ending seems obvious: it challenges the reader to see what can be understood in the text of chap. 8 and to what exactly this lack of understanding refers.² Apparently, Daniel was bewildered about the vision of the “2300 evening-morning” (see below) and therefore did not understand the meaning of the

¹Instead of taking דָּלַּם as a nominal clause with the meaning “and there was no understanding,” the negation could be used as equivalent to הֲזַּנֵּנִי similar to הֲזַנֵּנִי תִּקְרָא in 8:5 where the subject of the preceding verbal clause functions also as subject of the הֲזַנֵּנִי clause (Goldingay, Daniel, 200). The translation in 8:27 would then be “and I did not understand.”

²Bader, “Reale und gedachte Welt,” 56.
answer to the great question of the text in vs. 13c: "Until when is the vision?"

Daniel 9 continues the theme of understanding with a "noticeable contrast" to 8:27: Daniel seeks to understand now (9:2).² Apparently, the lack of understanding regarding the time prophecy causes Daniel to seek understanding by consulting and pondering upon another time prophecy which was given to Jeremiah. The repetition of the root תָּפָא also connects the two chapters (8:15; 9:3).³ The following prayer of Daniel, with its unique and main focus on the covenant pattern, is therefore appropriate for one "who failed to understand the end of chap. 8." In chap. 9 Gabriel is sent to make Daniel understand. At the epiphany of Gabriel subsequent to Daniel’s prayer, the angel again mentions, as in 8:16-17, that he had come to give Daniel insight with understanding (9:22). He calls on Daniel to understand the vision (9:23).⁵

Daniel 9:21

Verse 21 in chap. 9 plays an important role in connecting 9:24-27 with chap. 8.

¹Rigger, 181.

²There is also a link in syntax between Dan 8:27 and 9:2 in that the first main clause in both have the order "independent pronoun + personal name + verb /1sg/," which elsewhere in Daniel occurs only in 10:2 (Charles E. McLain, “Daniel’s Prayer in Chapter 9,” DBSJ 9 (2004): 271 n. 18).

³Daniel sought (שָׁפָא) to understand (8:15). The same idea is implied in 9:2-3 when Daniel pondered over the number of years prophesied by Jeremiah and then intensely "sought [שָׁפָא] (by) prayer and supplications, with fasting, sackcloth and ashes" (9:3). That Daniel sought understanding is implied by the purpose of Gabriel’s visit in response to Daniel’s prayer, when he instructs Daniel and tells him: “to instruct you with understanding [תָּפָא]” (9:22).


⁵The marked use of שָׁפָא in 9:22-23 and the close link between these verses and 8:15-17 as an opening for the angelic explanation is recognized by Noth, “Zur Komposition des Buches Daniel,” 161; and Koch, “Bedeutung der Apokalyptik,” 195-196.
Daniel 9:21 exhibits several terminological links to chap. 8. First, the name גַּבְרִיאֵל “Gabriel” occurs elsewhere only in 8:16. Second, the root וָאָרֵא “see” refers to Daniel’s visionary experience, recalling its technical usage in chap. 8 (8:1 [2x], 2 [3x], 3, 4, 6, 7, 15, 20). Third, the use of the verb תָּמַן in 9:21 to describe an activity by Gabriel (“approach”) recalls 8:18, even though it had a different meaning there (“touch”). Fourth, the fact that Gabriel came at the time of the evening offering echoes the term גֶּפֶן used in the time prophecy of “2300 evening-morning.” Also, Gabriel talking with Daniel is expressed by the root וֹאָרֵא “speak” with the prepositional phrase מִמִּי “with me” (8:18; 9:22).

The most distinct retrospective reference in 9:21 is the relative clause to Gabriel: מִמֵּאָרֵא בְּבִיתָןָלָה “whom I had seen in the vision previously.” The question remains to which vision מֵאָרֵא לֶאֵת (literally “in the beginning”) refers. The following observations point to chap. 8 as the reference of the relative clause which seems to allude specifically to 8:15-17. First, Gabriel’s initial explicit appearance occurs in 8:16. Second, the mention of מֵאָרֵא “vision” refers to the vision in chap. 8 for only this revelation is designated as מֵאָרֵא, whereas the one in chap. 7 is called a “dream” (7:1). Third, the accumulated effect of the other terminological links, which are listed above, suggests a

---

1Vice versa it is possible to speak of prospective references in Dan 8 that prepare for a continuation in Dan 9 (cf. the use of the term “prospective reference” by Steck who applies it to 8:19, 23, 26 which all contain a reference to the timing of the end (“Weltgeschehen,” 67 n. 60)).

connection to chap. 8. Particularly noteworthy is the immediate context in 9:22-23 where Gabriel functions again as a mediator of understanding like he did in 8:16-17. Finally, the expression הָגַדְתָּה does not necessarily refer to Daniel’s first visionary experience, as would be the case if it were translated literally with “in the beginning,” but may very well mean “previously” when the context suggests it.¹ Yet, on the basis of the phrase הָגַדְתָּה the possibility cannot be completely ruled out that the relative clause in 9:21 in addition also refers to the angelus interpres in chap. 7, for the vision of chap. 7 appeared to Daniel הָגַדְתָּה (8:1) and thus it could be said that Gabriel had appeared in the vision הָגַדְתָּה.² It may therefore be likely that the relative clause in 9:21 alludes beyond Dan 8 to Dan 7, since Gabriel fulfilled the role of angelus interpres in both instances.³ The primary allusion in 9:21, however, is to 8:15-17. What is the function of this allusion?

¹As argued by Goldingay, Daniel, 196, 256-257; Lucas, Daniel, 229, 240.

²By contrast, Ziony Zevit understands the relative clause in 9:21 as referring to the dream in chap. 7 and he then identifies Gabriel with the “one like a son of man,” for 9:21 says that Gabriel was seen הָגַדְתָּה “in the vision” and not outside of it like the figure in 7:16 (“The Structure and Individual Elements of Daniel 7,” 394-396; “The Exegetical Implications of Dan viii 1, ix 21,” VT 28 [1978]: 488-492). However, even if הָגַדְתָּה would refer to the vision in chap. 7, Gabriel should probably be identified with “one of the attendants” in 7:16 whose role as interpreter is congruent to Gabriel’s role in chaps. 8 and 9. Furthermore, the phrase הָגַדְתָּה “in the vision” (9:21) does not need to be restricted to the dreamlike vision itself (pace Zevit), but could encompass the entire revelatory experience in which Gabriel appears (so, e.g., Collins, Daniel [1993], 310, 351; Lucas, Daniel, 240, who both reject Zevit’s identification of Gabriel with the “one like a son of man”). Collins takes הָגַדְתָּה as a reference to the dream in chap. 7, since the vision in chap. 8 happened “after the one that appeared to me in the beginning הָגַדְתָּה” (8:1) (Daniel [1993], 310, 351). Obviously, for Collins the term הָגַדְתָּה has a single referent. So also William H. Shea, “The Relationship between the Prophecies of Daniel 8 and Daniel 9,” in The Sanctuary and the Atonement, ed. A. V. Wallenkampf and W. R. Lesher (Washington, DC: Review and Herald, 1981), 237-238 (however, later Shea seems to take הָגַדְתָּה הָגַדְתָּה “in the earlier vision” in 9:21 as a connector of chaps. 8 and 9 [Daniel 7-12, 174]).

³So also Rigger, who sees in this double reference of the relative clause in 9:21 an indication that the final redactor attempted to integrate Dan 9 in the context of Dan 7-12 “as their center and climax so to speak” (106-107).
Daniel 9:23 and the Vision (נַעַרַת) of the “Evening-Morning” of Daniel 8

Both the usage of the keyword יִבְשָׁל and the epiphany of Gabriel in 9:21-23 prepare for the fact that the oracle in 9:24-27 explains some enigmatic aspect of 8:12-14. In 8:27 it seems that Daniel had no understanding (נָאֵרָת מִבְשָׁל) concerning the רַעַר רַעַר “vision” for the previous clause in this verse mentions that he was particularly horrified about the רַעַר. It is therefore significant that Gabriel advises Daniel to give heed to the רַעַר “word” and understand the רַעַר (9:23). Strikingly, the combination יִבְשָׁל (Hifil imperative of יִבְשָׁל) and רַעַר occurs only in 9:23 and 8:16. The obvious conclusion implies that רַעַר “vision” in 9:23 refers, according to 8:16 and 8:26, to “the vision of the evening and the morning.” Due to the particular specification of the רַעַר in 8:27 as “the vision of the evening and the morning,” the term רַעַר refers more precisely to that part in the angelic conversation in 8:12-14 that deals with “the evening and the morning”: the time prophecy of the “2300 evening-morning.” Based on the use of רַעַר in 9:23 as

1In addition to the lexical links of יִבְשָׁל and רַעַר, for Owusu-Antwi the definiteness of רַעַר in 9:23e also suggests that the angel refers to the previous רַעַר in chap. 8 (125). However, this argument is not unimpeachable for the definite article is also used with רַעַר and in both instances it could be understood as prospective usage, although this is doubtful (see the following note).

2So Plöger, Daniel, 134, 139; cf. also Noth, “Zur Komposition des Buches Daniel,” 161; Goldwurm, 258. On the other hand, most commentators argue that רַעַר in 9:23e does not refer to chap. 8 but, in parallel to יִבְשָׁל “word, message” in 9:23d, signifies a prophetic revelation. They understand both יִבְשָׁל and רַעַר as referring prospectively to the following oracle (e.g., Driver, Daniel, 135; Marti, Daniel, 67; Aaalders, Daniel (1962), 214; Rast, 134; Collins, Daniel, 352; Miller, Daniel, 252; Bauer, Daniel, 188). In such a case, the identification of 9:24-27 as רַעַר would link the audition in 9:24-27 formally to the audition in 8:12-14 which was also designated as רַעַר. Although such a prospective reference in 9:23e is certainly not impossible (cf. the use of יִבְשָׁל and רַעַר in 10:1), the previous use of both יִבְשָׁל and רַעַר suggests that they are used retrospectively. The definite רַעַר refers back to the רַעַר in chap. 8 (8:16, 26, 27) and the definite יִבְשָׁל refers back to the יִבְשָׁל that went forth at the beginning of Daniel’s pleading (9:23a), which Gabriel is supposed to make known to Daniel (9:23b). Hence, what 9:23d and 23e are expressing is that by understanding the יִבְשָׁל which Gabriel recounts in 9:24-27 Daniel would be able to understand the רַעַר of chap. 8. More
a reference to the prophetic time element in chap. 8, Plöger takes the prophecy in Dan 9:24-27 to be an interpretation of the time element in Dan 8:14.1

This identification of רָאִים in chaps. 8 and 9 is strengthened by noticing the specific use of the terms רָאִים and רָאָי in the book of Daniel.2 The apparently fluent

recently, Armin Lange translates רָאִים בָּשִׁים (9:23e) with “gain understanding in the vision” (“erlange Einsicht in der Vision”), obviously attributing to the preposition ב a locative connotation with רָאִים functioning as a prepositional object, and takes the phrase as clear indication that the visionary finds the key to the text in Jer 25:11-12 in his vision (“Interpretation als Offenbarung: Zum Verhältnis von Schriftauslegung und Offenbarung in apokalyptischer und nichtapokalyptischer Literatur,” in Wisdom and Apocalypticism in the Dead Sea Scrolls and in the Biblical Tradition, ed. F. Garcia Martinez, BETL, no. 168 [Leuven: Leuven University Press; Leuven: Peeters, 2003], 17, 22). Understood in this way, רָאִים would refer to the following revelation in Dan 9:24-27. However, Lange’s translation stems from a mistaken syntactic understanding. The phrase רָאִים + ב is often found in later Hebrew (Dan 1:17; 9:2, 23; 10:11; Ezra 8:15; Neh 8:8, 12; 13:7; 2 Chr 26:5; 34:12) and belongs to a group of verbs of perception that are used with the preposition ב. The preposition ב should be interpreted as designating “mental contact” with רָאִים being the object of perception (see Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 252-253), so that Dan 9:23e should be translated with “gain understanding of the vision.”

1 Plöger, Daniel, 139. After discussing the use of the keyword ב, Doukhan concludes that the use of ב “intentionally places that prophecy of the 70 weeks directly into the same perspective and context as Daniel’s preceding and ‘incomplete’ revelation, the prophecy of the 2300 evenings and mornings in chap. 8” (“The Seventy Weeks,” 5) and Goldingay observes that “the implication might be that Dan 9 was intended to clarify issues raised in chap. 8; it takes up the question of the fate of the temple and seeks light from Scripture on what dream and vision left opaque” (Daniel, 238).

2 The technical terms רָאִים and רָאָי occur in regard to prophetic vision reports apart from Ezekiel only in Daniel (Behrens, 331-332). As designations for divine revelations, they appear also elsewhere. Based on an analysis of 1 Sam 3 in comparison with the use of the terms in Ezekiel and Isaiah, Conrad suggests that in the prophets רָאִים and רָאָי function as semiotic codes, especially in superscriptions (70-75, 166-167, 183-186): a רָאִים is a prophetic activity for the reception of הָאָרָךְ by a prophet in the temple (166), which is to be written down, and, most importantly, concerns a future time. According to Conrad, the “most succinct statement of רָאִים” is Hab 2:1-3 (183-184). A רָאִים puts less emphasis on the figure of the prophet and by pertaining to a distant future initiates a period of waiting. On the other hand, a רָאָי is a vision of YHWH that happens to the prophet and concerns a contemporaneous time. “To receive a רָאִים may involve a הָאָרָךְ of God” (166) and thus “while a רָאִים may be a הָאָרָךְ not every הָאָרָךְ is a רָאִים” (73). Whereas Conrad traces the two terms and their “encoded meaning” throughout the latter prophets, he is not concerned with their function in the book of Daniel. It seems that not all differences proposed by Conrad can also be found in Daniel, for example, the distinction that a רָאָי concerns the present situation is not evident with the רָתִים with the vision of the “evening-morning” in Dan 8. However, the distinct characteristic that a הָאָרָךְ involves more of a focus on the prophet and happens as a vision of YHWH or of his ambassadors can also be shown in Daniel (see below).
interchange between the two words in Dan 8:15-17; 8:26-27; and 9:21-23 may lead to the belief that they are used synonymously. However, the specific distribution of the terms gives reason to suppose that they actually carry different notions: נָבֶג designates the epiphany of a celestial being in vision and when it contains revelatory information in particular it refers to an audition, while נָבַז stands for the visionary elements of a revelation and refers to a symbolic vision. It is noteworthy that in 8:26 נָבֶג is

1So Plöger, Daniel, 129, 139; Fuhs, 232; and especially Shea, “The Relationship between the Prophecies of Daniel 8 and Daniel 9,” 232-239 (followed by Owusu-Antwi, 124-125).

גָּאֵר “appearance, vision” occurs twelve times in BH Daniel (1:4, 13 [2x], 15; 8:15, 16, 26, 27; 9:23; 10:1, 6, 18). The context is decisive for its meaning. In connection with persons, usually in a construct phrase, נָבַז designates their appearance or looks: appearance of human beings (1:4, 13 [2x], 15) or of a celestial being (always in the form נָבָג “like the appearance of...” with comparative ב: 8:15; 10:6, 18). However, when Gabriel is commanded to help Daniel understand נָבַז, the revelatory “vision” is meant (8:16, 26, 27). In 9:23, Gabriel comes again to make Daniel understand the vision (נָבַז לָבַז in 9:23; cf. 8:16). The revelatory vision is also meant in 10:1 when Daniel understood the vision (cf. the use of נָבַז, הָגוֹר, and the root נָב in 9:23 and 10:1). Note also the occurrences of the corresponding feminine noun נָבַז “apparition” in chap. 10 (the different use of נָבַז in comparison with the more usual נָבָג is still unclear; maybe it distinguishes the epiphany of a celestial being from the auditory revelatory vision). The context clarifies that the נָבַז which was seen by Daniel but not by his companions refers to the appearance of the man dressed in linen (10:7 [2x], 8), as probably does the occurrence in 10:16.

נָבַז “vision” occurs twelve times in BH Daniel (1:17; 8:1, 2 [2x], 13, 15, 17, 26; 9:21, 24; 10:14; 11:14). Daniel understands all sort of visions and dreams (1:17). The placing of vision and dreams next to each other suggests their affinity. The occurrences of נָבַז in chap. 8 all refer to the entire vision of 8:3-11. Its occurrence in 9:21 most likely refers back to the vision of chap. 8. The referent of נָבַז in 9:24 is disputed. If it would refer to a previous vision in Daniel, it must be the vision of Dan 8, which is the only one called נָבַז. For Goldingay the sealing (נָבַז) of vision (נָבַז) and prophet in 9:24 recalls the order to keep the vision (נָבַז) secret (נָבַז) in 8:26, considering that both verbal roots, נָבַז וָנָבַז, are used in parallel thoughts in 12:4, 9 (Daniel, 259-260). However, if in 9:24 such a reference to the vision of Dan 8 was intended, one would probably expect the article to be used in front of נָבַז (so von Lengerke, 363; Rigger, 203). Instead, the striking generality of the oracle in 9:24 (see Doukhan, “Seventy Weeks,” 20-21, who explains this phenomenon as expressing a “universalistic dimension”) does not point to the fulfillment of a specific prophetic vision but rather to “the completion of God’s plan of salvation per se” (Rigger, 203). In 10:14 the celestial being lets Daniel know that the vision (indefinite נָבַז) refers to many days in the future; similarly, in 8:17 it has been said that the vision of Dan 8 is to pertain “to the time of the end.” Hence נָבַז in 10:14 either refers to the following revelation in 11:1-12:4, or, less likely, it refers back to the vision of Dan 8. Finally, in 11:14 the activity of the violent or lawless ones will fulfill the vision (indefinite נָבַז),

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
identified by the relative clause as the vision "that has been uttered" (םלועה בקעי) which makes clear that המִרְעָה "can only refer to the aforementioned audition."1

Once it is established that the prophecy in 9:24-27 has something to do with the prophecy of the "2300 evening-morning," the question arises how the former illuminates the latter. The connection between the two concerns at least the following concepts and themes: time, cult, people, and conflict.2 While in the following these themes will be discussed in the order listed above, I will avoid as far as possible entering "the Dismal Swamp of O.T. criticism"3 and not attempt an exegesis of the seventy-weeks oracle or a discussion of its history of interpretation.

Thematic Similarities between Daniel 9:24-27 and Daniel 8:9-14

Time

That the prophecy in 9:24-27 relates to time does not come as a surprise since the concern for time is evident in both Dan 8 and 9. First, the center issue of Daniel’s prayer which refers either to the present vision or because of the indefinite use of [יתנה it refers again to God’s general prophetic plan.

1H. L. Ginsberg, “The Book of Daniel,” 522. Hence Ginsberg concludes that המִרְעָה “must mean something like ‘statement’ or ‘declaration’” (ibid.).

2It is mainly the thematic connection between Dan 8 and Dan 9 that impresses Collins the most. For him, both chapters are preoccupied with the disruption of the cult and focus thematically on the time of the end (Daniel [1993], 352, 359; cf. Bauer, Daniel, 180).

in chap. 9 is time. More specifically, both chapters focus on “the timing of the end.”

Daniel’s prayer is basically the petitionary question “how long?” of 8:13 (cf. 9:19: יַעֲשׂוּ "make no delay!"). It gives the impression that the prayer of chap. 9 applies the question of 8:13 to the situation of the exiled Israel. Hence, in giving a reply to the praying Daniel, the prophecy in 9:24-27 needs to relate to time. Second, as noted above, the intentional reference to the vision of the “2300 evening-morning” in 9:21-23 lets one expect that the seventy-weeks prophecy will somehow shed light on the time element of that previous vision.

Regarding this latter connection it is important to understand the meaning of the hapax legomenon יַעֲשׂוּ in 9:24. Since the root יָשׂו occurs only here in BH, we need to


2Collins, Daniel (1993), 359. Eibert Tigchelaar remarks aptly, yet slightly overemphasized, that “in Dan 8,13.17.26; 9,22-27; 12,4.8-13 the most important issue is not what will happen, but when these things will happen” (“Your Wisdom and Your Folly: The Case of 1-QMysteries,” in Wisdom and Apocalypticism in the Dead Sea Scrolls and in the Biblical Tradition, ed. F. Garcia Martinez, BETL, no. 168 [Leuven: Leuven University Press; Leuven: Peeters, 2003], 83 n. 57). Steck sees the continuing interpretation in Dan 9 occasioned by the divinely decreed time for Israel (“Weltgeschehen,” 67-69).


4Shea, suggesting another link between the two prophecies, detects a distributional pattern of the prophetic time element in Daniel’s prophecies—they occur toward the end (7:25; 8:14; 12:7)—and reasons that the “unusual” beginning of the seventy-weeks prophecy with the time element is to “juxtapose this time element . . . alongside the time element with which the vision of ch 8 ends, the latter coming at the end of the intravisional explanation of ch 8 and the former coming at the beginning of the extravisional explanation of ch 9” (“The Relationship between the Prophecies of Daniel 8 and Daniel 9,” 231-232). However, whereas Shea takes the extravisional statements in Dan 7 and 12 into account, he does not do so with the extravisional explanation in 8:19-26 which renders his proposed juxtaposition of the “2300 evening-morning” and the “seventy weeks” rather hypothetical.
look at comparative extra-biblical literature, in particular post-biblical Hebrew, to
determine its possible meaning. The chronologically closest use of הָדַר in extra-biblical
Hebrew is, as of late, a single occurrence in Qumran Hebrew. The root הָדַר occurs in the
Niphal form in 4Q252 (4QCommGen A) i, 2 in some sort of commentary on Gen 6:3.
The clause in lines 2-3 reads: "...their days were determined at one hundred and twenty years until the time/end of (the)
waters of (the) flood." The use of הָדַר in 4Q252 i, 2 is syntactically similar to its
employment in Dan 9:24, both appearing in the Niphal form and having a grammatical
subject from the semantic field of time. In 4Q252 הָדַר takes on the sense of "to decide"
or "to decree" and this meaning seems also present in Dan 9:24. However, there is more
to it. Other extra-biblical occurrences of הָדַר are found in Middle Hebrew. There the
verb has the primary meaning of "to cut, cut off" and the secondary sense "to decree,
determine"; the meaning of its denominatives derives exclusively from cutting.
Comparative material from other Semitic languages corroborates the idea that the Hebrew
root הָדַר carries two semantic notions: "cut" and "determine." The meaning of the root

---

1The translation is the one by George Brooke in the editio princeps in DJD 22:196.
3For references see Jastrow, 1:512-513. He also lists references of the Niphal form of הָדַר in Middle Hebrew with the sense "be cut off, amputated" on the one hand and "be decided, decreed" on the other hand. The masculine denominative הָדַּritis denotes a "cut" or "wound"; the feminine denominative הָדַּרית refers to "cutting" or "piece, portion."
4The evidence is as follows: Jewish Aramaic הָדַּritis "to cut, sever" (Michael Sokoloff, A
   Dictionary of Jewish Palestinian Aramaic of the Byzantine Period, 2d ed. [Ramat-Gan: Bar Ilan
   University Press; Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2002], 218); Arabic hatak [with h] "to
tear" (HALOT, 1:364); and Akkadian hatakum "decide" (AHw 1:335). The Ugaritic root הָדַּר does not

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
thus developed from the concrete “cut” to include the extended meaning of “determine, decide.”¹ This is exactly how BH dictionaries render its basic meaning, though they usually decide to translate יַעֲשָׂהוּ in Dan 9:24 with “be determined.”² However, it seems unfortunate to decide for one of the two notions at the expense of the other. Both notions appear to be present: that the seventy weeks are a portion cut out from something else and determined especially for the people and the holy city. If one wants to do justice to both semantic notions—and the context certainly allows for it, maybe even requires it—and comprise them in one gloss, a more preferable rendering would be “apportioned.”³

From which larger unit are the “seventy weeks” “apportioned”? Frequently the suggestion is put forward that the “seventy weeks” are cut out from the total stock of created world time in the style of the periodization exhibited in the Apocalypse of Weeks seem to be of help: the verb יָכַּב carries the meaning “to subdue, control; exercise power”; the noun יָכַב has three homonyms: (I) “progenitor, father”; (II) “lineage, offspring”; and (III) “sovereignty, power” (DUL 1:375-376). Shea’s ingenious suggestion that the Ugaritic sources could point to a father-son situation behind יַעֲשָׂהוּ in Dan 9:24 and hence the seventy-weeks prophecy should be pictured as “son” to the longer “2300 evening-morning,” which is pictured as “father,” is based solely on the meaning of יָכַב I and II, and appears to be far-fetched (“The Relationship between the Prophecies of Daniel 8 and Daniel 9,” 244-246; also mentioned favorably by Owusu-Antwi, 122-123).

¹J. L. Palache notes such a semantic development not only for יַעֲשָׂהוּ, but similarly also for several other Semitic roots, including the Hebrew יָכַּב “cut through/off > decide,” יַעֲשָׂהוּ “cut > determine,” and Talmudic Hebrew יָכַּב “cut off > fix” (Semantic Notes on the Hebrew Lexicon, trans. Z. Werblowsky [Leiden: Brill, 1959], 19). Cf. Johannes Pedersen, Der Eid bei den Semiten: In seinem Verhältnis zu verwandten Erscheinungen sowie die Stellung des Eides im Islam, Studien zur Kultur und Geschichte des islamischen Orients, no. 3 (Strassburg: Trübner, 1914), 12, 46; Shea, “The Relationship between the Prophecies of Daniel 8 and Daniel 9,” 241-244; and Frederick E. Greenspahn, Hapax Legomena in Biblical Hebrew: A Study of the Phenomenon and Its Treatment Since Antiquity with Special Reference to Verbal Forms, SBLDS, no. 74 (Chico: Scholars, 1984), 118.

²For example: BDB, 367 (“be determined” with basic sense “divide, determine”); HALOT, 1:364 and HAHAT, 2:410 (both: “be determined, imposed”); and DCH, 3:335 (“be determined”).

³Emile Nicole and Eugene Carpenter, “יַעֲשָׂהוּ (# 3155),” NIDOTTE, 2:323.
The problem with this approach, however, is that the book of Daniel does not mention a broad scope of history divided into periods like it is outlined in the Animal Vision (1 Enoch 85-90), the Apocalypse of Weeks, or the book of Jubilees. If the time period in Dan 9:24, which is apportioned to Daniel’s people, is cut off from a longer period, one should first of all look at the immediate context; and the context unmistakably suggests this longer period to be the “2300 evening-morning.” The arguments outlined above—use of the keyword י"ע and retrospective references in 9:21-23—demonstrate an intentional link concerning time between the seventy-weeks prophecy and the “2300 evening-morning.” In addition, both prophecies contain a similar


2 See Nickelsburg, 1 Enoch 1, 357. He lists several other differences as well as similarities between the visions in Daniel and 1 Enoch 85-90. Nevertheless he connects the “seventy weeks of years” of Dan 9 with the Animal Vision’s period of the seventy shepherds (391-393).

syntactic-semantic feature: The passive form מַעֲשֶׂה in 9:24 is a passivum divinum and recalls the passivum divinum מַעֲשֶׂה in 8:14c.

In conclusion, the prophecy in Dan 9:24 implies that "seventy weeks" of the "2300 evening-morning" are apportioned "for your people and your holy city." The connection between the two time prophecies thus gives a better understanding with regard to the time element of the vision of the "evening-morning," designating it as the longer period of the two. Provided that one could establish the exact relation between them and fix the date of the "seventy weeks," it would also be possible to gain understanding of the timing of the "2300 evening-morning."

Cult, Temple, and People

The relationship between Dan 8:12-14 and Dan 9:24 is not restricted to the aspect of time; it also involves thematic connections, especially in regard to the cultic, as is evident from several terminological links. Four terms in 9:24 occur also in 8:9-14: מַעֲשֶׂה (8:12, 13; 9:24), רַמּוֹשׁ (8:13; 9:24), מְשׁוֹרַח (8:14; 9:24), and שֶׁנֶּרַח (8:13, 14; 9:24 [3x]; also

1So, e.g., Rigger, 194.

2Such an analysis is beyond the present scope, since it would require a detailed exegetical analysis of the beginning of the "seventy weeks."

3An interest in cult and temple is found in Dan 9 both in the prayer and in the oracle. In the prayer, Daniel mentions specifically God’s holy mountain (מְשׁוֹרַח in vs. 16; מַעֲשֶׂה in vs. 20) and sanctuary (מְשׁוֹרַח, vs. 17). Naturally, Daniel’s concern for the city Jerusalem (vss. 12, 16, 18, 19) must be seen as connected with the temple, for he calls Jerusalem “your holy mountain” (vs. 16) and summarizes the aspects of his prayer as confessing Israel’s sin and supplicating for “the holy mountain of my God” (vs. 20). The cultic motif is also underlined by the coming of Gabriel at the time of the evening offering (9:21), which not only proves that Daniel, who was praying at this time, conceptually links prayer with sacrifice, but also indicates that “God behaves as though the offerings are still being made. The cosmic temporal order, reflected in the rhythm of the hours of prayer, stands despite the vicissitudes of history” (Goldingay, Daniel, 255).
9:26). Interestingly, all of these are found in the audition of 8:12-14, reinforcing the relationship between the seventy-weeks prophecy in 9:24 and the vision (なぜ) of the “evening-morning” in chap. 8. Words of the remainder of the prophetic oracle (9:25-27) that occur also in 8:9-14 are only נַעֲשֶׁהוּ (9:26) and שַׁלֹּחַ (8:13; 9:26, 27 [2x]).¹

The three words that can have cultic overtones— יִתְפָּשֵׁה, תּוֹרָה, and נַעֲשֶׁהוּ—are significant.² In Dan 9:24, a prophecy is given that, among other things, transgression (שֶׁפֶר) will be finished, everlasting righteousness (רְשָׁיִם) will be brought, and a holy of holies (קְדֻשָּׁת הַקְּדֹשָׁה) will be anointed. The terms שֶׁפֶר and רְשָׁיִם are antithetically linked to the phrases “to finish transgression” and “to bring in everlasting righteousness” as they probably stand in a “synthetic parallelism.”³ The succession of these terms in Dan 9:24 resembles Dan 8:12-14 where the problem is rebellion (שֶׁפֶר) which will be terminated by bringing righteousness (verb רְשָׁיִים) to the holy (קְדֻשָּׁת הַקְּדֹשָׁה). Furthermore, both in Dan 8:14c and 9:24 God is the implied subject who counteracts the transgression and brings righteousness. The terminological parallels present as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dan 8:12-14</th>
<th>Dan 9:24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>וֹתַשַּׁה (vs. 12a), וֹתַשַּׁה (vs. 13c)</td>
<td>נַעֲשֶׁהוּ (vs. 24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַעֲשֶׁהוּ (vs. 14c)</td>
<td>נַעֲשֶׁהוּ (vs. 24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַעֲשֶׁהוּ (vs. 14c)</td>
<td>נַעֲשֶׁהוּ (vs. 24)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹While 9:24 seems to connect more closely with Dan 8, the words used in the nominal clauses in 9:26, 27 establish specifically a connection with Dan 11 (noted by Rigger, 117 n. 196).

²On תּוֹרָה see my previous comments above.

These parallels do not necessarily imply that the corresponding phrases, or even the two texts, refer to the same entities. The basic question stands whether 9:24 is "a restatement of the visionary promises of chap. 8"\(^1\) or if it has a different focus altogether and is only conceptually linked to 8:12-14. Hence, the individual terms in 9:24 need to be examined. I begin with קֶשֶׁת בַּיָּרָה, for among the three expressions this is the one that is most often seen as a reference to its counterpart in 8:12-14 with identical meaning.

So what does קֶשֶׁת בַּיָּרָה mean? Usually it is considered to be the most holy place or the sanctuary,\(^2\) but it has also been suggested that it might refer to a holy people or to a specific person, usually the Messiah,\(^3\) or to God's presence in the midst of his people, which combines the concepts of the sanctuary and the holiness of God's people.\(^4\) The exact words used are significant: קֶשֶׁת בַּיָּרָה is a term of heightened holiness, expressing quality. Elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible the phrase is used twenty-two times to denote something as extremely holy, always in relationship to the cultic, the sanctuary service, and the sanctuary or temple itself.\(^5\) However, it never designates the

---

\(^1\) Goldingay, Daniel, 260.

\(^2\) See, e.g., Goldingay, Daniel, 260; Collins, Daniel, 354.


\(^4\) Rigger, 209-211.

\(^5\) The phrase קֶשֶׁת בַּיָּרָה can designate the altar (Exod 29:37; 30:10; 40:10), the utensils of the cult (Exod 30:29), the incense (Exod 30:36), the remainder of the קְדֹשֶׁת "cereal offering" (Lev 2:3, 10; 6:10; 10:12), the קְדֹשֶׁת "purification offering" (Lev 6:18, 22; 10:17), the קְדֹשֶׁת "reparation offering" (Lev 7:1, 6; 14:13), the bread for the tabernacle table (Lev 24:9), any proscriptions to יהוה (Lev 27:28), offerings by fire (Num 18:9), the temple mountain (Ezek 43:12), the sanctuary or the priestly reserve (Ezek 45:3), the priestly reserve (Ezek 48:12). In the Ezekiel passages Meadowcroft detects a "broadening of conceptualization" of קֶשֶׁת בַּיָּרָה as concept of the temple to include land that is also most holy. He argues that the broadening conception of קֶשֶׁת בַּיָּרָה developed still further, pointing to texts from Qumran where the phrase can now describe a group of people, so that it
most holy place. In contrast, the expression בְּשֵׁם הָאֱלֹהִים "the most holy" with the article is used twenty-one times and functions (primarily?) as a spatial designation for the most holy place, that is, the inner sanctum, but also as a quality expression for offerings and objects in relationship to the sanctuary/temple.¹ This brief terminological overview shows that the expression בְּשֵׁם הָאֱלֹהִים in Dan 9:24 should not be interpreted as referring to the inner sanctum, which always is called בְּשֵׁם הָאֱלֹהִים. Rather בְּשֵׁם הָאֱלֹהִים denotes "holy things which belong to the Sanctuary service, or the whole Temple."²

This observation supports that בְּשֵׁם in 8:14c, which is terminologically linked to בְּשֵׁם בְּשֵׁם in 9:24, could indeed refer to the sanctuary or temple and also to holy things seems possible to understand the community as sanctuary. It is right at this point in the development of meaning of בְּשֵׁם that Meadowcroft would like to place its occurrence in Dan 9:24 where it should be conceived of as a community ("Exploring," 437-440). For Doukhan, however, the position of the infinitive "to anoint a most holy" in the series of three infinitives concerning the holy city Jerusalem and the sanctuary (see his structure on Dan 9:24 on p. 10) precludes that בְּשֵׁם refers to people or to a person ("Seventy Weeks," 11). In the Hebrew Bible only in 1 Chr 23:13 might it be possible that the phrase בְּשֵׁם בְּשֵׁם is uniquely applied to a person (e.g., Japhet, I & II Chronicles, 415, who explains this use as midrash on Exod 30:29-30), although it has also been claimed that there it refers to most holy things (e.g., Rigger, 40, who takes the following three infinitives in this clause as parallel or even explanatory to the infinitive clause in question).

¹The phrase בְּשֵׁם בְּשֵׁם most often designates the most holy place of the sanctuary or temple (Exod 26:33, 34; 1 Kgs 6:16; 7:50; 8:6; Ezek 41:4; 2 Chr 3:8, 10; 4:22; 5:7); sometimes it is not clear enough whether the most holy place or something else is meant: most sacred objects of the sanctuary or the most holy place (Num 4:19), the sanctuary/temple or an interior area of it (Num 18:10 [though here it could also refer to the manner of eating]; 1 Chr 6:34). בְּשֵׁם בְּשֵׁם can also designate offerings, such as the bread of the presence (Lev 21:22) or the offerings (by fire) to be eaten by the priests (Num 18:9; Ezek 42:13 [2x]; Ezra 2:6:3; Neh 7:65; 2 Chr 31:14), and (cultic) objects inside the sanctuary or the sanctuary tent (Num 4:4).

²Doukhan, "Seventy Weeks," 11; cf. also Theodor Seidl, "Volk Gottes und seine Zukunft nach Aussagen des Buches Daniel," in Unterwegs zur Kirche: Altestamentliche Konzeptionen, ed. J. Schreiner, QD, no. 110 (Freiburg: Herder, 1987), 199 n. 88. Some even see in בְּשֵׁם a special emphasis on the altar (see, e.g., Montogmery, 375, and Ploger, Daniel, 140, for whom the phrase refers to either the temple or the altar of burnt offering). This could be done so on the basis of the relation between Exod 29:36-37 and Dan 9:24—the only texts to mention the three concepts of atonement (IALOG), anointing (INTQ), and בְּשֵׁם—and the understanding that in Exod 29:37 בְּשֵׁם refers to the altar (cf. Vogel, "The Cultic Motif," 92-93).
connected with either. However, one should not infer that the two phrases are completely identical with regard to their point of reference. The difference between them indicates the following crucial distinction: the more specific הַרְּפָאָה בלשון designates the sanctuary and its utensils alone, while the simple בלשון needs to be understood as being broader in meaning, implying additionally personal aspects in reference to holy people.¹

Furthermore, the difference between the verbs—the verb in 8:14c is זָכַר נַפְּלָה "restore to its right," while in 9:24 it is מָסַח "anoint"—signals that two different activities are being described with regard to the "holy" and the "holy of holies." Usually the anointing of the "holy of holies" in 9:24 is understood to refer to the rededication of the temple in Jerusalem.² However, one should be careful not to conclude too quickly that Dan 9:24 is about the rededication of the temple. The texts in Exod 29:36-37 (where מָסַח, מִכְזָב, and מְכֹרֶשׁ מַעֲמָכָר occur together) and 30:26-29; 40:9-11 (where מִכְזָב and מְכֹרֶשׁ מַעֲמָכָר occur together), which appear to be intertextually linked to Dan 9:24, refer to the inauguration of the wilderness sanctuary.³ The intertextual relation between Dan 9:24 and Exod 29:36-37 is particularly significant for only in these two texts are the three notions of atonement (様々), anointing (משחה), and holy of holies (קרית כהר) found.⁴ Thus, it is at least equally possible, if not more likely, that the anointing of the holy of holies in Dan 9:24 refers to the inauguration of a sanctuary or temple. The idea is that an

¹For the meaning of בלשון in 8:14c see chapter 2 (above).
eschatological sanctuary, and possibly even its priesthood, is being inaugurated for service. The use of the verbal root מָשַׁה supports this conclusion. מָשַׁה is always employed for the dedication or inauguration of inanimate objects for their specific use, or for the anointing or consecration of persons for a specific office or service, usually as king or as (high) priest. It is never used to describe merely an act of rededication or re-anointing.

In light of the anointing and inauguration of a sanctuary in Dan 9:24, the bringing back of righteousness to what is holy—including the sanctuary of the commander of the host—in Dan 8:14c (กระบวน פֶּרֶשׁ) and its justification after the horn’s rebellion and transgression (בְּשַׁפָּה) would suggest that the activity in Dan 8:14c refers to the cleansing and re-consecration of that sanctuary, probably in an eschatological Day of Atonement setting where the שֶׁרֶך is purified from בּוּשָׁה (Lev 16:16). Thus, with regard to the sanctuary Dan 9:24 refers to its inauguration, while Dan 8:14c refers to its restoration.

The root עֲדֵר forms another terminological link between 9:24 and 8:12-14. The first of the three positive infinitive clauses in 9:24, ולָכֶה עֲדֵר פִּסְמֶה נִלָּמֶה “and to bring in everlasting righteousness,” is sometimes understood as an allusion to Dan 8:14c on

1In the Torah, at the inauguration of the tabernacle and its utensils the priesthood was also inaugurated, using for both the root מָשַׁה (Exod 30:30; 40:13-15; Lev 8:12) (cf. ibid., 11-12).

2This is very close to Steck’s conclusion that the anointing of the holy of holies “significantly does not simply mean the restoration of the previous condition in the sense of the rededication under Judas Maccabaeus . . . but the dedication of an eschatological temple, as the wording shows” (“Weltgeschehen und Gottesvolk,” 70 n. 75).

3For the purpose of anointing see Milgrom, Leviticus 1-16, 553-555, and John N. Oswalt, נִדּוֹת, 2:1123-1127; cf. H. Weinel, "מָשַׁה und seine Derivate," ZAW 18 (1898): 1-82, esp. 28-48; and Ernst Kutsch, Salbung als Rechtsakt im Alten Testament und im Alten Orient, BZAW, no. 87 (Berlin: Töpelmann, 1963), 22-27 (for the anointing of the high priest).
account of the use of the same root דָּרֵך. Again, a conceptual link between the bringing in of everlasting righteousness in Dan 9:24 and the vindication of the holy in Dan 8:14c seems possible, and is probably intended. It is doubtful, however, that the use of the same root provides reason enough to support the belief that the two phrases refer to the same event, particularly since one is used as a noun in the general sense (note the indefiniteness of דָּרֵך) and the other as a verb with a passive subject. What seems clear is that דָּרֵך in both texts stands in opposition to עָשָׂז and functions as an apocalyptic term designating some kind of eschatological vindication.

A third terminological link between 9:24 and 8:12-14 is the noun עָשָׂז “rebellion, transgression,” which aside from its cultic overtones in 9:24 also belongs to the second focus of the prophecy that concerns the people. Like in chap. 8, עָשָׂז jeopardizes the existence of דָּרֵך and triggers divine intervention. The question remains whether עָשָׂז applies to the same transgressions in both 8:12-13 and 9:24, and to the same transgressors respectively. The mention of עָשָׂז in 9:24 has been attributed to different agents. For the majority of scholars the term refers to the transgressions of God’s people. In short, there are three main arguments for this understanding. First, the definiteness of עָשָׂז indicates that the context in Dan 9 determines the referential meaning of עָשָׂז. The statement “to

1Goldingay, Daniel, 259; Lucas, Daniel, 242.

2See the analysis of the meaning of דָּרֵך in Dan 8:14c in chapter 2 (above).

3Syntactically, the use of עָשָׂז in 9:24 cannot be paralleled to 8:12b, simply for the reason that the clause construction in these verses is totally different. The most important dissimilarities are the different verbs (דָּע “set up” and הָלַל “bring to an end” or “destroy” [see HALOT, 2:477]) and the syntactic function of עָשָׂז (in 8:12a עָשָׂז occurs in a prepositional phrase functioning as an optional clause constituent, whereas in 9:24 עָשָׂז occurs with the definite article functioning as a required clause constituent, that is, the direct object).
The context speaks only of Israel’s transgressions. Second, since both parallel terms to מָשָׁם in 9:24, חֲמוֹד “sin” and מִנָּה “iniquity,” are used previously in chap. 9 in reference to the sins of Israel, it seems obvious that מָשָׁם should also designate the people’s transgression. And third, according to the literary structure of 9:24 which mirrors the dual nature of the subject, that is, “your people” and “your holy city,” מָשָׁם once more should refer to the sins of the people. Other scholars do not regard מָשָׁם as a reference to Israel’s sins in general, as confessed in the prayer, but rather to the offensive acts of the little horn in chap. 8. This rebellious transgression shall be brought to an end, similar to 8:23 where it is mentioned that the transgressors have run their course. The difficulty arising from this view is that thus far the rebellion of the little horn has not been mentioned in Dan 9. Perhaps this is the reason why for Collins מָשָׁם in 9:24 also includes “the transgressions of Jews who forsake the covenant” (cf. 11:30-35; 12:10), although for him the emphasis is on evil that must run its course.

Still others hold a complementary view and see both the sins of Israel and those of her

1The verbs and nouns used to describe that Israel sinned are מָשָׁם “sin” (9:5, 8, 11, 15), מִנָּה “do wrong” (9:5), מָשָׁם “make oneself guilty” (9:5, 9), מָשָׁם “rebel” (9:5, 9), מָשָׁם “turn aside” (9:5, 11), מָשָׁם “not listen” (9:6, 10, 11, 14), מָשָׁם “disloyalty” and מָשָׁם “violate one’s legal obligations” (9:7), מָשָׁם “overstep” (9:11), מָשָׁם “be wicked/guilty” (9:15), מָשָׁם “sin” (9:16), מָשָׁם “iniquity” (9:16), and מָשָׁם (9:21 [2x]). Because of her sins, Israel has befallen מָשָׁם “shame” (9:7, 8), מָשָׁם “curse” (9:11), מָשָׁם “evil” (9:12, 13, 14), מָשָׁם “reproach” (9:16), and מָשָׁם “desolations” (9:18).


3So, e.g., Goldingay, Daniel, 259; Collins, Daniel (1993), 354; Bauer, Daniel, 189.
pagan oppressors in 9:24.1 In short, considering the context, both of 9:24 itself and of Daniel’s prayer, it seems most natural to understand the transgression primarily in reference to God’s people, although it should not be excluded that עזבנ contains a more universal dimension.2

It is problematic that some interpreters extend the terminological link of עזבנ between 8:12-13 and 9:24 beyond its function of connecting the two texts conceptually and claim that the agent of transgression in both texts must be the same. Either they try to understand the agent of עזבנ in 9:24, which they correctly identify as God’s people, as the agent of עזבנ in 8:12-13 as well,3 or they take 8:12-13, in which they correctly identify the horn as the agent of rebellion, as background for עזבנ in 9:24 and conclude that the agent must be the same in both instances.4 Either assumption should be avoided. Once again it is better to refrain from harmonizing the interpretational meaning of 9:24 with 8:12-13, to decide in each passage who the agent of transgression is without looking to the other passage for explanation, and to note that the two texts are mainly linked

---

1 So, e.g., Lucas, Daniel, 241-242, 250-251. Klaus Koch seems to understand עזבנ in this way when he cautiously states that “it is not clear . . . whether it concerns the guilt of Israel alone or also that of the nations” (“Universalgeschichte, auserwähltes Volk und Reich der Ewigkeit: Das Geschichtsverständnis des Danielbuches,” in Europa, Tausendjähriges Reich und Neue Welt: Zwei Jahrhundertliche Geschichte und Utopie in der Rezeption des Danielbuches, ed. M. Delgado, K. Koch, and E. Marsch, Studien zur christlichen Religions- und Kulturgeschichte, no. 1 [Freiburg, Switzerland: Universitätsverlag; Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 2003], 32).

2 The definite עזבנ without the extension “of the people” or the like could also surpass any limited understanding and may be interpreted more broadly than just the transgressions of the people.


4 See, e.g., Goldingay, Daniel, 259; Collins, Daniel (1993), 354; Bauer, Daniel, 189.
conceptually, while the specific connection focuses on the prophetic time element.

Eschatological Day of Atonement

Several factors in Dan 9:24 indicate strongly that this verse is not only immersed in Levitical terminology but is also situated in a Day of Atonement setting. First of all, the combined concern for both sanctuary and people and their restoration, which is also characteristic of Dan 8:9-14, signals a possible association with the concept of the Day of Atonement. Koch sees a connection from Dan 9:24 to the promise of eschatological atonement for God's people in Mic 7:18-19, which also uses the three terms יִשָּׁע, יִשְׂעָה, and נָשִׂי, and maybe even to "an eschatological Day of Atonement" for the three terms also appear in Lev 16:21. Similarly, Laato assumes that "the eschatological 'expiation of crime' described in Dan 9:24 is connected with the kipper-ritual at the Temple." In this regard, it is interesting to note that Daniel's prayer does not use the root יִשָּׁע for the sins of Israel, despite the variety of other expressions for sin employed in it. Its use in 9:24 in parallel to נָשִׂי "sin" and יִשָּׁע "iniquity" could therefore be attributed to a specific function of this triad of terms for sin as an intertextual reference to the Day of Atonement.

Furthermore, Lacocque observes that the obvious relationship between the

1Koch, "Bedeutung der Apokalyptik," 198; cf. idem, "Universalgeschichte," 32. Besides Lev 16:21; Mic 7:18-19; and Dan 9:24, the terms יִשָּׁע, יִשְׂעָה, and נָשִׂי occur together in close proximity only in Isa 43:24-25; 59:12; Ezek 21:29; Pss 32:5; 51:3-5; 59:4-5; Job 13:23; 14:16-17.

2Antti Laato, "The Eschatological Act of kipper in the Damascus Document," in Intertestamental Essays in Honour of Józef Tadeusz Milik, ed. Z. J. Kapera, Qumranica mogilanensia, no. 6 (Kraków: Enigma, 1992), 104. Laato finds similarities between Dan 9:24 and Zech 12:1-13:1 (and more distantly also with Zech 3:8-10) and associates the eschatological kipper or blotting out of sins with the coming of the Messianic era (104, 106).
division of the seventy weeks and the reckoning of the jubilee year (Lev 25:8-11) also points to the Day of Atonement, since the proclamation of the jubilee has to occur on the tenth day of the seventh month, which is the annual Day of Atonement, after the sanctuary and the people have been purged from all their impurities and sins.\(^1\)

An allusion to the Day of Atonement in Dan 9:24 would emphasize that the interpretation of 8:14c against the background of an eschatological Day of Atonement is well-founded and coherent, as has been suggested by the thematic analysis of 8:9-14, by the animal symbolism employed in chap. 8, and by the intertextual relation to 7:9-10 and 7:13-14. Thus, the intertextual relation to 9:24, although not being a compelling reason for it, still supports the idea that the interpretation of 8:14 should be engaged within the parameters of the Day of Atonement.\(^2\) Again, the terminological links to 9:24 certainly emphasize the cultic or Levitical canvas of 8:12-14, since in 9:24 these specific terms are used precisely to create such a background.\(^3\)

**Covenant**

At this point, one needs to take a closer look at the covenant theme and the

---

\(^1\) Lacocque, *Daniel*, 192.

\(^2\) This does not mean, of course, that the events prophesied in Dan 9:24 correspond to the events prophesied in Dan 8:14, which, among other things, is already evident from the different activity in regard to the sanctuary (inauguration in 9:24 vs. restoration in 8:14). It follows that one should not suppose that with the possible fulfillment of the events described in 9:24 all the aspects of an eschatological Day of Atonement would be (antitypically) fulfilled.

\(^3\) In the seventy-weeks prophecy, Doukhan identifies the following terms as Levitical: "sin," "holy of holies," "righteousness," "Holy," "the City," "Jerusalem," "offering," and "sacrifice" ("Seventy Weeks," 11, 20).
connection between divine wrath and the sin of the people.¹ Frequently the prayer in Dan 9 with its covenantal background has led scholars to the assumption that the covenantal pattern of sin can also be found in the prophecies of Daniel.² The question to be asked here is whether the covenant theme or the breaking of the covenant by God's people as mentioned in the prayer of chap. 9 is thematically broached in chap. 8, and specifically, whether it is present in Dan 8:12-13.

To start with, there is no question that the covenant forms the theological framework of the prayer of Daniel, and to some extent also of the seventy-weeks oracle.³ Indeed, the prayer in Dan 9 is the place where the obvious covenantal or "Deuteronomistic" pattern of sin, oppression and desolation, repentance, and deliverance can be easily detected, which certainly was influenced by the prophets, particularly by Jer 25:8-13 to which Daniel paid attention (Dan 9:2).⁴ The sins of Israel in breaking the


²See recently P. B. Petersen, 200-211.

³The prayer of Daniel is interwoven with covenant terminology. For example, in the book of Daniel, the covenant name YHWH occurs only here (9:2, 4, 8, 10, 13, 14 [2x]) and the term פְּרֵיָת covenant" occurs only in chaps. 9 and 11 (9:4, 27; 11:22, 28, 30 [2x], 32). An unambiguous allusion to the covenant is the modification of the adoption formula that Israel is called by the name of YHWH (9:19). A study on the covenant theme in Dan 9, in both prayer and prophecy, is provided by Meredith G. Kline, "The Covenant of the Seventieth Week," in The Law and the Prophets: Old Testament Studies Prepared in Honor of Oswald Thompson Allis, ed. J. H. Skilton (Philadelphia: Presbyterian and Reformed, 1974), 452-469; for the covenant in the prophecy of Dan 9:24-27, see also Owusu-Antwi, 181-185.

⁴This pattern of covenantal or "Deuteronomistic" theology can be described in short as the following: Israel's sin in breaking the covenant leads to God's justice and judgment which brings foreign oppressors over Israel. The suffering of Israel then leads to her confession of sin and
covenant brought God’s anger (תַּעֲנָה) and wrath (יָרָה) upon them, manifesting itself in oppression by other nations so that God’s people, Jerusalem, and the sanctuary became desolate (9:16-17). The repentance and plea for mercy, as exemplified by the prophet Daniel, are answered by a prophecy of deliverance in which the broken covenant, as well as the people and the holy city, will be restored.

The following points might suggest a covenantal pattern as background to the events described in Dan 8. First, since the term יָרָה "wrath" (8:19) elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible refers to God’s wrath against sinners and nations (20 times), except in Hos 7:16, it would in Dan 8:19 designate God’s wrath and indicate divine providence, implying that the divine wrath against God’s people, executed by pagan people, turns against the enemy itself. Second, the phrase מִיָּרָה "stern-faced" in Dan 8:23 occurs elsewhere only in Deut 28:50, and there in the context of covenant curses: God will bring מִיָּרָה "a nation of fierce countenance" against his people. If מִיָּרָה in Dan 8:23 is borrowed from Deut 28:50 and would function as an intentional allusion to one of the covenant curses, it appears that the rise of the king/horn in Dan 8 should be understood as a covenant curse. Third, the term קָמָה "appointed time" (Dan 8:19) resonates the idea of a divinely fixed time, giving the impression that the period of indignation is under divine repentance so that God in his time can intervene by showing mercy to his people and administering retribution to the merciless oppressors. For such a pattern in the prayer of Dan 9 see, e.g., P. B. Petersen, 169-183; Lucas, Daniel, 253. For a list of the prayer’s "Deuteronomic traces" see Hans van Deventer, “The End of the End: Or, What Is the Deuteronomist (Still) Doing in Daniel?” in Past, Present, Future: The Deuteronomistic History and the Prophets, ed. J. C. de Moor and H. F. Van Rooy, OtSt, no. 44 (Leiden: Brill, 2000), 66-67.
control. And fourth, the concept that "the transgressors" (Dan 8:23) have reached their limit seems to imply that the sins of God's people have reached such an alarming stage that God is forced to take drastic measures.

Based on these observations it seems understandable why some scholars conclude that Dan 8 deals with the concept of God's wrath directed against apostate believers by "sending" an enemy who, by divine permission, oppresses God's people, and furthermore with the concept of God's salvation, when in the end his wrath turns against the unmerciful oppressor and he brings restoration to his people. As a corollary assumption, the sin or rebellion mentioned in 8:12, 13, and 8:23 is taken to refer to the sin of God's people. Since such a conclusion would affect the understanding of Dan 8:12 significantly, it is important to investigate whether the inference of a covenantal pattern in Dan 8 indeed rests on solid ground.

To begin with, and most fundamentally, the linguistic analysis of Dan 8:12-13 shows that the in these verses should not be attributed to God's people. In addition, 


2Recently, P. B. Petersen argued for such a specific thematic connection (200-211). He proposes a similar fourfold pattern of events for Dan 8 and Dan 9: sin or transgression of God's people, God's wrath brings tribulation by the hand of hostile powers, desolation of the sanctuary, and future divine intervention. Importing the covenant theme from Dan 9, he detects in 8:12a a covenantal pattern of cause and effect, with the sin of God's people being the cause and the giving over of them the effect (204, 209-211). To support the thesis that the events in Dan 8 must be seen in light of a broken covenant Petersen presents the observations on "wrath" (8:19) and "stem-faced" (8:23) as mentioned above (202-204).

3In short, there are at least six major points why 8:12a is concerned with the rebellion of the horn and its host: (1) "A host" is the grammatical subject of vs. 12a and of 12 b-d and thus cannot be regarded as the "host of heaven"; (2) "a host" in vs. 12a is indefinite to distinguish it from the "host of heaven" mentioned in vs. 10 and referred to in vs. 11a; (3) the prepositional phrase should not be interpreted as comitative but as metaphorical-locational or indicating disadvantage; (4) the
the possible terminological indicators put forth as reasons for a covenantal pattern in Dan 8 are not entirely convincing.

First, regarding the use and understanding of the term דֶּרֶךְ "wrath" in Dan 8:19, it is important for our understanding to notice that Gabriel wants to inform Daniel what will happen "at the last time of the indignation" (דֶּרֶךְ הָרָעָה). The implication seems to be that this final time of wrath refers to the rise of the blasphemous king and his activities (vss. 23-25), since the angelic interpretation focuses on this time period—new information is given only for this time span—implying in turn that the time prior to this king should also be regarded as characterized by “indignation” (דֶּרֶךְ). One may infer that the entire vision is one of “indignation” or “wrath,” which then refers not to the indignation of God but to the indignation of hostile powers, comparable to the animal powers in Dan 7. Daniel 11:36 seems to be a parallel to the last time of indignation when the king of the north has success דֶּרֶךְ "until wrath is completed." Thus, the king acts throughout the period of wrath. Indeed, one should note that the king of the

prepositional phrase דֶּרֶךְ should be understood as modal, mainly because the abstract noun for sin does not carry a pronominal suffix which would be used if the phrase should be understood as pretti or causal; (5) the literary effect of the unusual feminine gender of מֶרֶךְ in vs. 12a is to heighten by surprise the readers' awareness of the introduction of a new subject; and (6) vs. 12a is an audible explanation to vs. 11b which explicates that the taking away of the ūmād from the commander of the host of heaven involves a host that is set against the ūmād by the horn (see the discussion on vs. 12a in chapter 2 [above]).

Even if מֶרֶךֶת in 8:19 would refer to the wrath of God, the object of wrath has still to be determined, for the wrath of God can be directed against his people (Isa 10:5; 25; Ezek 22:24, 31; Lam 2:6), but it can also be directed against the nations or oppressors of his people (Isa 13:5; 30:27; Jer 10:10; 50:25; Ezek 21:36; Nah 1:6; Hab 3:12; Zeph 3:8; Ps 78:49). Cf. Rast, 176. However, since the angel Gabriel does not elaborate on God's wrath upon the nations or upon the final king, except for the laconic statement that "he will be broken without human hand" (8:25), it seems extremely unlikely that the angel would refer to this type of divine wrath.
north himself will act in wrath (verb הָעַקָּד in 11:20). This may be an indication that the phrase “at the last time of the wrath (חַיָּה)” in 8:19 could refer to the final time of wrath stemming from the oppressors of God’s people. An ongoing period characterized by wrath does not imply that God is continuously punishing God’s people for their transgressions (cf. Zech 1:12 with 1:14-15), but is viewed as harsh treatment of God’s people due to the continued hostility of their enemies rather than a deserved punishment for their own sins.1 “The ‘wrath’ has become a quasi-technical term for the tribulation.”2 If this reasoning is correct, then the final time of wrath refers to the wrath of the little horn or the brazen-faced king.

There is obviously a difference, if not a contrast, between the understanding of “wrath” in the prayer of Dan 9 and in the prophetic section of the book. The use of the terms חִנָּמ “anger” and נָרָג “rage, both of which belong to the same semantic field as הָעַקָּד “wrath,” is emblematic of this varying nature of wrath. Whereas in the prayer Daniel views the people of Israel as responsible for the divine wrath (see the use of חִנָּמ “anger” and נָרָג “rage, wrath” in 9:16), in the prophetic section wrath designates the nations’ fury (חִנָּמ in 11:20; נָרָג in 8:6; 11:44).3 One may conclude that in Daniel’s prophetic revelation divine wrath “is never manifestly connected with the sin of Israel.”4

---

3See Rast, 173-179. For the contrast between the Deuteronomistic view of history as expressed in the prayer and the apocalyptic view of history in the rest of Daniel see Collins, Apocalyptic Vision, 185-187.
4Rast, 178.
Second, the phrase □,3 D * T IJ in 8:23 evokes in all likelihood an association with wisdom rather than with covenant curses, despite the use of the same phrase in Deut 28:50. The saturation of the immediate context in Dan 8:23 with wisdom terminology in association with the king, as well as the depiction of this king as negative vis-à-vis the pious wise men, suggests that D^S'TIJ echoes Prov 7:13 and Eccl 8:1 and again characterizes the king as the shrewd counterpart of true wisdom.

Third, the use of "appointed time" in Dan 8:19 in the phrase לַמִּיתוּ "appointed time of the end" indicates that the end of the time of wrath is certain and has been divinely appointed. The hope which is affirmed here is that God remains still in control, even if the nations rage, which in fact is not only a vital aspect of the message of chap. 8 but also of the entire book.

Fourth, the mention of SH "the transgressors" (8:23) should not be interpreted in reference to God's (apostate) people. Rather, the expression refers to the previously mentioned heathen powers and most likely includes the brazen-faced king, who as the ultimate oppressor of God's people and enemy of God is then considered to stand for the climax of the transgression. Such an understanding is based on the two time phrases in 8:23 ("at the last time of their rule"; "at the moment when the transgressors reach full measure"), the preceding context, which clearly speaks of Medo-Persia, Greece

---

1 This point has already been discussed (cf. p. 587 n. 2 [above]).

2 Cf. Dan 11:27, 35. Note also that in 8:19 "the last time of the wrath" is parallel to "the time of the end" and refers to the end of history (Pfandl, Time of the End, 140, 178).

3 This point has already been discussed as well (cf. pp. 584-586 [above]).
and her followers, but not of God’s people, and the well-known theological motif that the
sins of the heathen must reach full measure before God intervenes.

It is evident by now that the proposed terminological indicators are not sufficient
to deduce a “Deuteronomistic” covenantal pattern in Dan 8. Even if such a pattern might
be found in the angelic interpretation in chap. 8, as has been claimed, this still does not
imply that הָעֵדְי in 8:12-13 should be attributed to God’s people. Linguistic evidence in
8:12-13 and its immediate context take priority over potential contextual thematic
considerations, and the former suggest that הָעֵדְי in vss. 12-13 refers to the rebellion of the
horn. That the covenant concept represents the foundation to the prayer in chap. 9 should
not lead one to infer, at any rate, that the covenant idea, in particular a breaking of the
covenant, must also be present in 8:12, even if chap. 9 is closely linked to chap. 8 for a
several other reasons.

Conflict

Finally, as in chaps. 8 and 7, the conflict motif is also present in 9:24-27 and is
generally well acknowledged. Without entering into details or establishing precise
relationships, it is clear that such expressions as הֲגוֹי ‘a leader’ (9:25)
or the הֲגוֹי “anointed one” (9:26), the הֲגוֹי “leader” or the הֲגוֹי דְּיָ֣דְי “people of the
leader who comes” (9:26), and the מְשִׁיחַ “desolator” (9:27) refer to at least two
antagonistic powers. The theme of conflict is especially expressed in 9:26-27 by words

1Generally the מְשִׁיחַ in vs. 27 is viewed as the oppressive power, whereas the two expressions
הֲגוֹי in vs. 25 and הֲגוֹי in vs. 26, which refer either to two persons or to the same person,
designate the suppressed. The identification of the הֲגוֹי דְּיָ֣דְי “leader who comes” and his people in
vs. 26 is disputed. Some identify him with the same oppressive power as the מְשִׁיחַ in vs. 27, others

 Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
that belong to the semantic field of war and destruction, such as הָנִיב “cut off,” הָנִיב “destroy,” לַכְּחֹם “war” (all 9:26), and the verb מָשַׁם “desolate, devastate” (9:26, 27 [2x]) which may be linked to 8:13.

Conclusion

In summary, Dan 9:21-27 adds significantly to the understanding of Dan 8:9-14. The Leitwort בְּנֵי in chaps. 8 and 9 and the intertextual references in 9:21 establish that the seventy-weeks prophecy contributes above all to the understanding of the prophetic time element of the vision (נַיִי) of the “evening-morning” of Dan 8, while the verb מָשַׁם “be apportioned” in 9:24 specifically suggests that the “seventy weeks” should be understood as part of the “2300 evening-morning.”

take him in line with the anointed one(s). For the different identifications see Collins (Daniel [1993], 355-358), Owusu-Antwi (162-170), and Lucas (Daniel, 243-245). Several terminological and thematic arguments lead to the conclusion that the “people of a leader who comes” refers to an oppressive power, not to God’s people, and that the “leader who comes” should not be identified with the “anointed one” in either vs. 25 or vs. 26. First, the attack on “the city and the sanctuary” which the “people of a leader who comes” will destroy is difficult to attribute to God’s people. Since the people of God and the city with its sanctuary are the two foci of Daniel’s prayer, in which they both are presented in a state of desolation, as well as the central concerns of the prophecy, it seems inconsistent to argue that in 9:26 the same people go against their own sanctuary and city. Second, while talking to Daniel, the angel is referring to the people of Israel as מַעַב “your people” (9:24; cf. 10:14; 11:14; 12:1), which somehow mirrors Daniel’s use of language when he refers to Israel in his prayer as מַעַב “your people” (9:15, 16, 19) and in the narration as מַעַב “my people” (9:20). However, in the angelic speech in 9:26 מַעַב is not qualified as the people of Daniel; the angel does not use מַעַב. Instead מַעַב occurs in a construct phrase with מַעַב and probably designates a host or an army, but not the people of Israel. Third, the term מַעַב hif. is used elsewhere in the book of Daniel for the activity of oppressive powers (8:24 [2x], 25; 11:17). And fourth, the leader is qualified by the participle מַעַב as “a leader who comes.” It is noteworthy that in Daniel מַעַב qal is frequently, though not exclusively, used for militant and military action, especially as a keyword in chap. 11 (1:1; 8:5, 6; 10:20; 11:7, 9, 10, 13, 15, 16, 17, 21, 24, 29, 30, 40, 41). If such a connotation is present in its occurrence in 9:26, and the language of destruction in vs. 26 (וֹאַשְׁבַּי etc.) points in that direction, the מַעַב has military characteristics and מַעַב may well refer to his host (on the third and fourth point cf. Doukhan, “Seventy Weeks,” 11, 14; his structure of 9:25-27 would also confirm that the “leader who comes” stands in opposition to the “anointed one” and, then, מַעַב “people” refers to an oppressive group).
The terminological links between 9:24 and 8:12-14 (תֵּפֶל, מָשָׁא, וְלָשָׁא, and also יָדִית) display the thematic affinity of the two texts, but they should not force the deduction that the texts refer to the same events. For such a conclusion the terms are used too differently. While 9:24 primarily refers to the transgression of God’s people, 8:9-14 focuses on the transgression of the rebellious horn, and thus the breaking of the covenant, so prominent in the prayer of Dan 9, is not in view in chap. 8. While 9:24 speaks about the inauguration of a sanctuary, 8:14c refers to a restoration of a sanctuary and of God’s people. The thematic affinity is expressed in the similar concern for cult and people and appears to rest, at least to some extent, on the concept of the Day of Atonement. This strengthens the view that the restoration at the climax of the vision of Dan 8 should be interpreted within the framework of an eschatological Day of Atonement.

**Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 10–12**

The comparative data between Dan 8:9-14 and Dan 10–12 are presented in the following list.¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lexical correspondences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keyword links</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀνεβής “go forth” (8:9; 10:20; 11:11, 44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄρρεπτος “great” (8:4, 8, 9, 10, 11, 25; 11:36, 37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἔδρος “South” (8:4, 9; 11:5, 6, 9, 11, 14, 15, 25 [2x], 29, 40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀκραῖος “beauty” (8:9; 11:16, 41, 45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄπνος “fall” (8:10 hif.; 11:12 hif., 19, 26)²</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹For similar phraseology in Dan 8 and Dan 10–12 see Hölscher (127) and Behrens (329). A more thematic table of comparison is offered by Desmond Ford (The Abomination of Desolation in Biblical Eschatology [Washington, DC: University Press of America, 1979], 124-125).

²The verb ἄπνος is used within a different context in 8:17 and 10:7.
Thematic word links

Trampling (8:7, 10, 13) // Hiphil “ruin” (11:17); qal “shatter” (11:26);
Hiphil “exterminate” (11:44); Hiphil “destroy” (11:44);
Hiphil “smash” (12:7);

Host (8:10 [2x], 11, 12, 13) // Host (11:15, 22); “forces” (11:31)

Incidental correspondences

One (8:3 [2x], 9 [2x], 13 [2x]; 10:5, 13 [2x]; 21:11, 20, 27; 12:5 [2x])
East (8:9; 11:44)
Heaven (8:10; 12:7; in 8:8 and 11:4 occurs מדרש ושם)
Land (8:5 [2x], 7, 10, 12, 18; 10:9, 15; 11:16, 19, 28 [2x], 40, 41, 42 [2x])
Host (8:10 [2x], 11, 12, 13); “warfare, conflict” (10:1)
Remove “lift up” (8:11); “lift up” (11:12, 36; 12:7)
Speak (8:13 [2x], 18; 10:11 [2x], 15, 16, 17, 19 [2x]; 11:27, 36)
“Speak with me” (8:18; 10:11, 15, 19; cf. 9:21; and 10:17, 19)
Say (8:13, 14, 16, 17, 19, 26; 10:11, 12, 16, 19 [2x], 20; 12:6, 8, 9)
“Thousand” (8:14; 12:11, 12)
Three (8:1, 14; 10:1, 2, 3; 11:2; 12:12)
Hundred “hundred” (8:14; 12:11, 12)

Thematic similarities

Conflict
Self-magnification of earthly power
Attack on saints and opposition to God

1 In 11:5 דַּרְךָ is used for a human prince.
2 In 10:12 אָמְשַׁר designates that in the heavenly realm Daniel’s words were heard.
Cultic interest
End of anti-divine power by divine intervention: judgment
Concern for time

Structural similarities
Supernatural revelation followed by dialogue
Basic elements of the vision are repeated in the angelic discourse.

General Assessment of the Intertextual Relation

It is generally agreed upon that Dan 8 and Dan 10–12 form a rich intertextual tapestry. In fact, Goldingay observes correctly that "it is with chap. 8 that chaps. 10–12 have most detailed points of contact." In this case the question arises where exactly these chapters refer to Dan 8, and particularly to 8:9-14. To pursue this issue it is helpful to examine the subsections of chaps. 10–12 separately.

Chapters 10–12, which should be considered as a unit, fall into three or four basic subsections, depending on whether the epiphany and the first dialogue are taken together

---

1Goldingay, Daniel, 283.

2Several points show that 10:1-12:13 should be treated as one major part (on the unity of Dan 10–12 see especially Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 98-99). First, in the epiphany "a certain man dressed in linen" (10:5) appears who is after the long angelic discourse referred to as "the man dressed in the linen" (12:6, 7). The definiteness of אֱלֹהִים and נַחֲלָה in 12:6, 7 refers back to their occurrence in 10:5 and thus links the two sections together. Second, the message of the one "like the appearance of a man" (10:18) covers 10:19 to 12:4. The main part is a revelation of the אֱלֹהִים הַמְכִנה "writing of truth" (10:21), or at least part of it, which stretches from 11:2b to 12:3 and provides a prophetic survey of history. In 12:4 the angel addresses Daniel directly. Hence, the angelic discourse in 11:2b-12:3 is part of the larger dialogue between this angel and Daniel starting in 10:10 and should not be separated from it. Third, the dating formula in 10:1 and the absence of any dating formula in 12:5 suggest that 12:5-13 is a section belonging to 10:1-12:4. Fourth, the occurrence of structural markers stresses that these chapters belong together: the dating formula in 10:1, a dateline in 10:4, לֹא הָאָרֶץ in 10:10, אֲלֹהַי in 11:2, and another לֹא הָאָרֶץ in 12:5. Fifth, the "two others" in 12:5 presuppose the revealing angel of chap. 10. And sixth, the passage in 12:9-10 echoes 11:35 as well as 12:4. The unity of chaps. 10–12 does not rule out that the epilogue in 12:5-13 was composed as a fitting conclusion not only to chaps. 10–12, but also to the second half of Daniel (chaps. 7–12) and to the entire book (Lucas, Daniel, 268).
as one unit or not: the epiphany of a celestial being (10:1-9); the dialogue between an
angel and Daniel (10:10–11:1); the angelic discourse (11:2–12:4); and the dialogue
between celestial beings as well as between “the man dressed in linen” and Daniel (12:5-
13).¹

Daniel 8 and the Visionary Experience:
Epiphany and First Dialogue (10:1–11:1)

To start with, the setting is similar with regard to the date and the location close to
water. The vision in Dan 8 appeared “in the third year of the reign of Belshazzar the
king” (8:1), while the one in Dan 10–12 happened “in the third year of Cyrus king of
Persia” (10:1). In the former Daniel was “by (עַל) the canal Ulai” (8:2), while in the latter
he was “by (עַל) the bank of the great river, that is, the Tigris” (10:4). Chapter 12 adds to
this: In chap. 8 a celestial being, who is not described by Daniel but calls out with a voice
of a man, is located “between the banks of Ulai” (8:16), while in chap. 12 a celestial
being, who is described as “the man dressed in linen” and calls out an oath, is located
“above the waters of the river” (12:7).

Similar terminology is used to describe similar events of Daniel’s visionary
experience.² The introductory phrases to these experiences are lexically and syntactically
very close: אַלָּא אָנָּא עַל עַל רָמָּאָה וְהָנָּה אֵל בָּאה לְרָמָּאָה אֵל “I lifted my eyes and looked, and behold, a
(certain) ram” (8:3) parallels אַלָּא אָנָּא עַל עַל רָמָּאָה וְהָנָּה אֵל “I lifted my eyes and

¹So also Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 96–98; idem, Daniel (1993), 371; Lucas, Daniel, 264–265.

²Some scholars note terminological links between 8:16–18 and 10:9–11, 14 (Lucas, Daniel,
36, 275) and 10:8–18 (Collins, Daniel [1993], 374–375 passim). See also Behrens, 329.
looked, and behold, a (certain) man” (10:5). Daniel’s visionary activity is described with "look, see" (8:2 [3x], 3, 4, 6, 7, 15, 20; 10:5, 7 [2x], 8; 12:5; cf. also 8:1), and what he sees is introduced by the deictic particle "and behold” (8:3, 5, 15; 10:5, 10, 13, 16, 20; 11:2 [תָּן]; 12:5). Both times at least part of Daniel’s experience is designated as "vision" (8:15, 16, 26; 10:1, 6, 18). His experiences not only include vision but also hearing (שמית) the voice (ךָּלוֹא) of a celestial being (8:16; 10:9; cf. the celestial שְׂמַח in 10:6). Naturally, celestial beings are speaking (דְּבָרָם) and saying things (אָמָרָם: 8:13, 14, 16, 17, 19, 26; 10:11, 12, 19, 20; 12:6, 9). Daniel reports that a celestial being was מַגִּיס “standing before me” (8:15; 10:16; cf. 12:5) and he uses the term אֲדֻן “man” (8:16; 10:16,18) in reference to that being. After each epiphany Daniel fell stunned (or into deep sleep) on his face to the ground, both times using מַגִּיס אָדֻן "I fell into deep sleep on/with my face to the ground” (8:18; 10:9). In both instances Daniel is touched by a celestial being (נָנֶה: 8:18; 10:10, 16, 18; with the exact same phrase מַגִּיס אָדֻן “and he touched me” in 8:18 and 10:18), and commanded or helped to stand upright at his place: מַגִּיס אָדֻן "stand . . . on your location” (8:18 [cf. vs. 17]; 10:11). Daniel needs to understand (בר hif.) the revelation (8:5, 16, 17, 27; 10:1 [qal], 11, 12, 14), although in certain respects he has difficulty understanding (8:27; 12:8). In chap. 8 he seeks understanding (בר) of the vision (לָבָנָה) (8:15), and in chap. 10 he gained understanding (בר) of the vision (לָבָנָה) (10:1).1

Finally, in both instances Daniel is requested to "keep secret” (כתיב) the revelation (8:26;

---

1Goldingay also feels that Daniel’s understanding mentioned at the beginning of the last vision (10:1) connects to his frustrating lack of understanding at the end of the previous vision (8:27) (Daniel, 289).
12:4, 9), and the angel explains to him that the vision pertains to the future: note the similarity between "keep secret the vision for it is for many days" (8:26) and "for still a vision for the days" which stands parallel to "in the latter days" (10:14). The use of "latter part" in reference to time underlines that at their climax the revelations are concerned with events of the final period (8:19, 23; 10:14; 12:8).

With so many connections between Dan 8 and Dan 10, it is quite likely that the "vision" mentioned in 10:14, which is usually interpreted to refer to the following angelic discourse, also has a connection with the "vision" in chap. 8. There are several pointers to support this conclusion. First, all the previous occurrences of "vision" refer to the vision in chap. 8 (8:1, 2 [2x], 13, 15, 17, 26). For some this might not be a strong point, for the word occurs once more in 11:14 where an exclusive reference to the vision in chap. 8 might be doubtful. However, most agree that "vision" in 11:14 refers to the prophecies in Daniel, which includes chap. 8. Second, apart from Dan 10:14 there is no evidence to be found in chaps. 10-12 that the revelation in 11:2-12:3 could be qualified as a "vision". The epiphany in 10:5-9 is called "vision" (10:7 [2x], 8, 16). The angelic discourse is called "vision" (10:1) or "revelation" (10:11; 12:4, 9), and a designation as "vision" is

---

1The view that "vision" in 10:14 refers to what the angel is about to prophetically declare is held by Hävernick, 440; Hitzig, 184; Keil, 419-420; Rohling, Daniel, 309; Bevan, 169; Tiefenthal, 315; Marti, Daniel, 76; Charles, 263; Lattey, 92; Nötscher, Daniel, 52; Young, Daniel, 227; Jeffery, 507; Aalders, Daniel (1962), 244; Delcor, 213; Baldwin, 181; Hartman and DiLella, 265; Lacocque, Daniel, 209; Maier, 368. More specifically, Redditt understands the "vision" to refer to 12:1-4a, 13 (173).
difficult for the discourse does not contain any visionary elements.\(^1\) A problem with interpreting יִהְיֶה in 10:14 as a reference to the vision in chap. 8 is that the term is indefinite. One would expect a definite article if יִהְיֶה indeed refers back to the previous vision. Still there is a possible explanation for this. Daniel 10:14 is an allusion to Hab 2:3: “for the vision is yet for an appointed time” where יִהְיֶה does not have the definite article. The assumption is that the intertextual relationship to Hab 2:3 is so strong that the author intentionally uses the indefinite יִהְיֶה in Dan 11:14.\(^2\) This argument is strengthened by the occurrence of a similar phrase in Dan 11:27, יִהְיֶה “for the end is still at the appointed time,” which again seems to allude to Hab 2:3 and in which יִהְיֶה is also indefinite.\(^3\) To conclude, יִהְיֶה in 10:14 is quite likely a reference to the vision in chap. 8.\(^4\) Hence, apart from the clear indicators of lexical and thematic links in the angelic discourse itself, there already is in the setting of the prophecy a signal that Dan 10–12 helps in understanding the vision in chap. 8. Even if יִהְיֶה in 10:14 would refer only to the following angelic discourse, the use of the same term for the angelic discourse and for the vision in chap. 8 still shows that they are closely linked.

\(^1\)Pace Keil who believes that the three terms יִהְיֶה, יִהְיֶה, and יִהְיֶה all designate the same revelation recorded in chap. 11 (419). For the distinction between יִהְיֶה and יִהְיֶה, see p. 666 n. 2.

\(^2\)So suggested by Hasslberger, 191. The link between Dan 10:14 and Hab 2:3 is noted by Hävernick, 440; Lacocque, Daniel, 209; Anderson, 126-127; and Seow, Daniel, 161.

\(^3\)In Dan 11:35 the phrase יִהְיֶה יְדֵעַ “for the end is still at the appointed time” seems to be an abbreviated form of the phrase in 11:27, possibly because יִהְיֶה occurs in 11:35 immediately before the phrase and thus might be elided in it.

\(^4\)So Hasslberger, 190-191. Stating Hasslberger’s opinion without comment, Goldingay (Daniel, 283-284) sees Dan 10–12 as “a reworking” of the earlier visions in chaps. 7, 8, and 9, with most links to chap. 8. Kliefoth (434) and Goettsberger (79) believe that “vision” in 10:14 refers to the previous visions; while Junker (97) refers to it as an untold vision by Daniel.
In conclusion, the encounter with the interpreting angel in chap. 8 and the one in chap. 10 are similarly portrayed. As we have seen, there is an overall thematic pattern in the visionary experience of Daniel, but apart from this it is foremost 10:8-18 in which most lexical correspondences to chap. 8, in particular to 8:16-18, occur. However, not only the circumstances of the visionary experience but also the contents of the revelatory material are similar, which brings us to the second part of Dan 10–12: the angelic discourse.

Daniel 8 and the Angelic Discourse (11:2–12:4)

Even though the form of the angelic discourse in 11:2b–12:3 resembles 9:24-27 (both being auditory revelations, rather than visions as in chaps. 7 and 8), its thematic contents parallel the visions more closely. The angelic discourse in 11:2-45 covers approximately the same time frame as the vision in Dan 8. Both revelations start with the kingdoms of Persia and Greece and reach to the end of an ultimate oppressor caused by

1Holzschler (127) notes the following thematic contacts between Dan 8 and Dan 10–12: the vision at the water (8:2; 10:4), the celestial being at the river (8:16; 12:8), Gabriel (8:15-26; 10:5-21; cf. 9:21-27), the exhaustion of Daniel (8:17-18; 10:8-10, 15-16), the touch by the hand of an angel (8:18; 10:10, 18), and the inability to understand (8:27; 12:8).

2On the basis of a formal analysis Behrens (323-326; cf. 317-322) detects a prophetic vision report in 10:5-14, corresponding form-critically to 8:3-14, with a vision proper (10:5-6; cf. 8:3-12) and a dialogue (10:11-14; cf. 8:13-14). Both 8:15-19 and 10:15-18 describe Daniel’s reaction to the vision he received. As we have seen, such a comparison is not entirely surprising. However, there is a significant difference between the prophetic vision in chap. 8 and the vision in chap. 10 which cannot be ignored: the former conveys the content of the revelation, while the latter prepares for the revelation in the following audition (Goldingay, Daniel, 281-282).

3Dan 11:2–12:3 has been designated as a “historical apocalypse” (Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 99; Lucas, Daniel, 273). For Lucas the genre of 11:3-45 and 8:23-25 is very similar, both being close to the so-called “Akkadian Prophecies” (Daniel, 269-272; such affinities are also recognized by Collins, Daniel, FOTL, 99).
heavenly intervention. However, the lexical references to Dan 8 in the angelic discourse are not equally distributed over the chapter.

The beginning of the angelic discourse in 11:2-4 shows many points of contact with Dan 8:3-8 and 8:20-22. Like the entire chap. 11, the first three verses of the angelic discourse are about kings (מַלְכוֹת: 8:20, 21 [2x], 23; 11:2, 3) and kingdoms (מִלְכוֹת: 8:22, 23; 11:2, 4 [2x]). The first kingdom mentioned is the kingdom of "Media" (8:20; 11:1) and מִלְכוֹת "Persia" (8:20; 11:2), which is then followed by the kingdom of מִלְכוֹת "Ionia > Greece" (8:21; 11:2). The use of the verb "stand" functions as a technical term for the arising or withstanding of the first two powers in both the vision in chap. 8 and the discourse in chap. 11 (8:3, 4, 6, 7, 22 [2x], 23, 25; 11:2, 3, 4). The great riches gained by the fourth king of Persia (11:2), involving the adjective מַלְכוֹת, is reminiscent of the use of מַלְכוֹת in the vision of chap. 8 to describe the growing greatness and magnification of the horns (8:4, 8, 21; also 8:9, 10, 11, 25). The "mighty king" in 11:3 recalls the conspicuous and large horn of chap. 8 (8:5, 8, 21). Like the kingdom before him, this mighty king will "do as he pleases," using the phrase מִלְכוֹת נָפָל (8:4; 11:3) which becomes a recurring formula in chap. 11. He will be broken as will the large horn in the previous vision (לָמָּת נַפָּל נַפָּל: 8:8, 22; 11:4). And of course the phrase מִלְכוֹת נָפָל לָמָּת נַפָּל לָמָּת נַפָּל, "toward the four winds of heaven," which in Daniel occurs only in 8:8 and 11:4, refers in both cases to the dispersal of the realm of the mighty king toward the four points of the compass.

Interestingly, the lexical connections to chap. 8 decrease drastically after 11:4. After the unmistakable reference to 8:8 by the phrase "four winds of heaven" in 11:4 one would expect references to the rest of the vision in chap. 8. However, there is a shortage
of intertextual links to 8:9-14 until 11:28 where they start to appear again more frequently. There are two possible exceptions to the lack of clear intertextual links to Dan 8:9-14 in 11:5-27. The first is the use of וַיָתַן in 11:14. It is quite disputed what וַיָתַן refers to. However, the previous occurrences of וַיָתַן in Daniel either refer directly to the vision in chap. 8 (8:1, 2 [2x], 13, 15, 17, 26) or are closely related to it (10:14). Hence, in the context of the entire book one might carefully propose that the obscure occurrence in 11:14 may be understood as a reference to Daniel’s vision(s). The second possibility of an intertextual link to 8:9-14 is the mention of one who stays in or arises against נֵבַע "the land of beauty" in 11:16 which recalls the horn’s growth against נֵבַע "the beauty" in 8:9. However, in 11:41,45 the king of the north, who, as will be argued later, is portrayed with similar characteristics and attitudes as was the horn in 8:9-14, will also campaign against “the beauty.”

It seems that lexically Dan 10-12 refers to 8:9-14 in “intertextual clusters,” that is, accumulations of lexical links (see table 45). In fact, this is substantiated by the findings

1The “vision” in Dan 11:14 has been understood as (1) prophecies in general (Keil, 440; Bevan, 181; Behrmann, 74); (2) a particular vision in the prophets: Isa 19:19 (Jerome on 11:14b [909]), Amos 9:11 (Arie van der Kooij, “A Case of Reinterpretation in the Old Greek of Daniel 11,” in Tradition and Re-interpretation in Jewish and Early Christian Literature: Essays in Honour of Jürgen C. H. Lebram, ed. J. W. Van Henten et al., StPB, no. 36 [Leiden: Brill, 1986], 75, 78), and Ezek 7:19-27 (Goldingay, Daniel, 284, 298); (3) the prophecies contained in Daniel, usually in reference to the downfall of the Jews as perceived in 8:9-14 and 11:21-39 (von Lengerke, 530; Hävernck, 465; Kliefoth, 444; Meinhold, “Daniel,” 328; Goettsberger, 83; Nötscher, Daniel, 55; Leupold, 488; Bentzen, 80); (4) Dan 11:14 itself (Maier, 383); and (5) political plans of the “violent ones” (Plöger, Daniel, 161). For a brief overview of historical interpretations of vs. 14 see Collins, Daniel (1993), 379-380.

2I am inclined to follow Goldingay who recognizes that וַיָתַן in 11:14 “recalls chap. 8,” but does not understand why it would be just here that a fulfillment of Daniel’s revelation is mentioned while this could be said of many other aspects in chap. 11 (Daniel, 297).
Table 45. Lexical Correspondences of Keywords between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 10-12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keywords in 8:9-14</th>
<th>Epiphany 10:1-9</th>
<th>Dialogue 10:10-11:1</th>
<th>Angelic Discourse 11:2-12:4</th>
<th>Further Dialogue 12:5-13</th>
<th>Incidental References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>לְאַלּוּ “go forth” (8:9)</td>
<td>10:20</td>
<td>11:11, 44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דָּרֶךְ “great” (8:4, 8, 9, 10, 11, 25)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:36, 37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָעָד “beauty” (8:9)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:16, 41, 45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְסֻלָת “fall” 8:10 (hif.)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:12 (hif.), 19, 26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַעֲקַבָּל “stars” (8:10)</td>
<td></td>
<td>12:3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַעֲקַבָּל “prince” for celestial beings (8:11, 25 [2x])</td>
<td>10:13 [2x], 12:1</td>
<td>11:5 (human)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבַשָׂר “the šāmāl d” (8:11, 12, 13)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:31 12:11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָקָר “sanctuary” (8:11)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לִשָׁג “give” (8:12, 13)</td>
<td>11:6, 11, 12:11 10:12, 15 17, 21, 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָעָקָב “truth” (8:12, 26)</td>
<td>10:1 10:21</td>
<td>11:2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁלֹשׁ “do” (8:4, 12, 24, 27)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:3, 6, 7, 16, 17, 23, 24 [2x], 28, 30, 32, 36 [2x], 39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָעָקָב hif. “succeed” (8:12, 24, 25)</td>
<td></td>
<td>11:36 11:27 (qal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁלֹשׁ “hear” a celestial being (8:13, 16)</td>
<td>10:9 [2x]</td>
<td>12:7, 8 10:12 (human)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָרְדֵּן “until when?” (8:13)</td>
<td></td>
<td>12:6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of the general assessment so far, which provides evidence for intertextual clusters in 10:8-18, with numerous lexical links to 8:16-18, and in 11:2-4, with many links to 8:3-8, 20-22.

The distribution of the references of keyword links between Dan 8:9-14 and Dan 10-12 illustrates that intertextual clusters of lexical links to 8:9-14 consisting of at least three common words occur in 10:20-21 (three words, five references to 8:9-12); 11:28-31 (six words, nine references to 8:11-12, 14), 11:36-39 (three words, six references to 8:10-12), 12:1-3 (three words, three references to 8:10, 11, 14), 12:6-7 (three words, three references to 8:13-14), and 12:11 (three words, three references to 8:11, 13). The last five clusters seem to be intentionally linked to Dan 8:9-14, as are explored in the thematic similarities below, whereas the keyword links in the first cluster in 10:20-21 are more incidental and do not appear to form an intertextual link with 8:9-14.

---

Table 45—Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keywords in 8:9-14</th>
<th>Epiphany</th>
<th>Dialogue</th>
<th>Angelic Discourse</th>
<th>Further Dialogue</th>
<th>Incidental References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;vision&quot; (8:1, 2 [2x], 13, 15, 17, 26)</td>
<td>10:14</td>
<td>11:14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;be desolated&quot; (8:13)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:31</td>
<td>12:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;holy&quot; (8:13, 14)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>11:28, 30 [2x], 45</td>
<td>12:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;make righteous&quot; (8:14)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12:3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
Daniel 8 and the Concluding Dialogue (12:5-13)

The dialogue that arises after the angelic discourse has at least five major points of contact with chap. 8. First, as previously, Daniel overhears the conversation of two celestial beings which is structurally and thematically very close to the dialogue in 8:12-14: one asks the question "until when?" (12:6; cf. 8:13c) in view of "wonderful events," obviously referring to the disastrous activities of the king of the north (see הָעַלּוֹת in 11:36; cf. 8:24), to which the other gives an answer by first stating a time period and then mentioning the event (12:7; cf. 8:14b-c). Second, the revelation is concerned with "the time of the end" (12:4, 9; cf. 8:17) and "the final period" (12:8; cf. 8:19, 23). Third, the epilogue contains one more reference to the replacement of תֹּפֶן in "the midst" and the establishment (דֳּקִין) of the "abomination of desolation (מָזְרַע)" (12:11; cf. 8:11b, 13c). Fourth, Daniel again lacks understanding (יִתְנָה: 12:8; cf. 8:16, 17, 27). And finally, the understanding of the revelation is again concealed until the time of the end (דָּרוֹת: 12:9; cf. 8:26).

Conclusion

The general assessment of intertextual relationships between Dan 8 and Dan 10–12 points to passages in chaps. 10–12 that should prove to be of particular interest when examining the thematic similarities between 8:9-14 and chaps. 10–12. These passages, which show intertextual clusters of lexical links to 8:9-14, are 11:28-31, 11:36-39, 12:1-3, 12:6-7, and 12:11. The following intertextual analysis of themes concentrates

---

1 The formal correspondence, particularly between 12:5-7 and 8:13-14, has recently been investigated by Behrens, 326-330.
on these sections, without losing sight of the overall text in Dan 10–12.

Thematic Similarities between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 10–12

Most of the salient themes of Dan 8:9-14 are taken up in the intertextual clusters of Dan 10–12. The themes that can be detected are conflict, particularly religious conflict, attack on the people of God and opposition to God, the pattern of “pride goes before the fall,” and the concern for time and divine judgment.

Conflict

The thematic similarity in the general sequence of events in both revelations has already been noted. Both the angelic discourse in 11:2–12:4 and the vision in Dan 8 for the most part deal with world powers that are engaged in continuous conflict. The overall thematic pattern is similar: first, there is threat and terror imposed by rebellious powers; second, that terror and threat is removed by divine intervention which brings about a state of salvation. Naturally, such a thematic pattern involves a structural similarity. Together with the numerous lexical links mentioned above, these are the reasons why Dan 11 is perceived to be in such close parallelism to Dan 8.

The theme of conflict emerges most clearly via the use of keywords in Dan 11. Six keywords from the isotopy of military terminology emphasize the military

1Collins perceives a similar pattern of events in Dan 7, 8, and 10–12: “First, there is a threat posed by a rebellious king or kings. Then that threat is removed by some supernatural power. Finally, there follows a state of salvation,” which for Collins is in chap. 8 only implied (Apocalyptic Vision, 109-110).

developments and the conflict between kings or kingdoms: (1) הָאֹרֶץ “come”; 1 (2) תֹּחַ “be strong” or “show strength”; 2 (3) בֵּיתָן “stronghold, fortress”; 3 (4) לְאָי “stand,” “withstand,” or “arise” of powers; 4 (5) הָעָלָה “do” or “make”; 5 and (6) וְחָלֹל “return” or “turn.” 6 Three of them occur in Dan 8; וָעָלָה also in 8:9-14.

Religious Conflict

Two antagonistic powers, the king of the north and the king of the south, dominate the discourse of Dan 11 up to vs. 27. The conflict, however, does not remain on the political level alone. The intentional shift from military to religious terminology found in 8:9-14 is also represented in the angelic discourse in chap. 11. For the most part, the events described in Dan 11 seem to be purely concerned with the political level. However, religious terminology increases the further the discourse advances, which adds a certain religious, even heavenly, dimension to the earthly conflict.

Initial indicators for such an additional focus are the five occurrences of רַבִּים:

1Daniel 8:5, 6; 11:6 (2x), 7 (2x), 8, 9, 10 (2x), 13 (2x), 15, 16, 17, 21, 24, 29, 30, 40, 41, 45.
2Daniel 11:5 (2x), 6, 7, 21, 32; cf. 10:21 and 11:1.
4Daniel 8:3, 4, 6, 7, 22 (2x), 23, 25; 10:13; 11:1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 14a, 15 (2x), 16 (2x), 17, 20, 21, 25, 31; 12:1 (2x); cf. also הבוגר. “set up” in 11:11, 13. הבוגר occurs also in the description of the circumstances of the revelatory events (8:15, 17, 18; 10:11 [2x], 16, 17, 12:5) and another three times without any seeming relationship to its other occurrences (10:17; 11:14b; 12:13).
5Daniel 8:4, 12, 24, 27; 11:3, 6, 7, 16, 17, 23, 24 (2x), 28, 30, 32, 36 (2x), 39.
6Daniel 11:9, 10, 13, 18 (2x), 19, 28 (2x), 29, 30 (2x).
"covenant" in 11:32 and in the phrases "prince of a covenant" (11:22) and "holy covenant" (11:28, 30 [2x]), which at least in connection with "holy" in the latter phrase designate a covenant between God and human beings. In all these texts, the king of the north takes action against the holy covenant. After he is instrumental in shattering a prince of the covenant (11:22), he sets his heart against the holy covenant (11:28), hurls imprecations at it, gives heed to those who abandon it (11:30), and finally seems to seduce those who make themselves guilty against the covenant (11:32). The king of the north is thus portrayed as an anti-covenant power.

Second, Dan 11:31 paints the religious assault of the king of the north in the same gloomy picture as did 8:11-12. Both texts focus on an attack on the cult. The text mentions "forces" that desecrate "the sanctuary," remove "the tūmis," and establish the abomination of desolation (Cētta). The links to 8:11-12 are obvious (see table 46). The intertextual connection between these two passages is important since it helps identify the king of the north in 11:31 to be the same power as the last horn of the vision in chap. 8. Another significant aspect of 11:31 is that the king of the north uses "forces" to deal with the cult. This constitutes an exact parallel to...

1The indefiniteness of הָוֵם הַיָּד (hāwem haym) is recognized by Goldingay (Daniel, 273) and Miller (Daniel, 299 n. 64). In view of the later uses of הָוֵם הַיָּד in Dan 11, however, the indefinite term in vs. 22 should be interpreted to refer to the same covenant.

2The meaning of the Hifil of הָוֵם הַיָּד (hāwem haym) in Dan 11:32 is not absolutely clear: In Num 35:33 and Jer 3:2 it can be understood as "defile," but in Dan 11:32 it has been rendered with "they will defile" (OG), "they will win over" (Theodotion), "he will condemn" (Syriac; probably a textual error for הָוֵם הַיָּד "profane"), and "simulabunt" "they play the hypocrite" (Vulgate). If the singular verb in the Hebrew is retained, either the king of the north will seduce those who have acted wickedly in relation to the covenant by blandishments and flattery (Collins, Daniel [1993], 385) or he will turn and pervert them into apostates or hypocrites (Goldingay, Daniel, 273, 279).
Table 46. Terminological Comparison of Daniel 8:11-13 and Daniel 11:31

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dan 8:11b, 11c, 12a, 13c</th>
<th>Dan 11:31a-d</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>קִמְמְנַי הָרִים הָקָּמְנִיר</td>
<td>31c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְחַשְׁלֵךְ מַכָּשָׁנָה</td>
<td>31b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וּצְבַּא חָצֵחַ עַל-הַקְּמִמְנִיר בַּשְׂפָּה</td>
<td>31a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...הַקְּמִמְנִיר ...</td>
<td>31d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the horn and its host in 8:11-12, corroborating the understanding that the host in 8:12a refers to the horn’s host. Interestingly, the gender of “forces” in 11:31a is equally unusual as is the gender of “host” in 8:12a, establishing another link between the two. The masculine plural form of דִּינֵי in 11:31 distinguishes these forces from the other forces in chap. 11 which are feminine (דִּינֵי in 11:15, 22). It emerges that the masculine gender appears to be used intentionally to signify a different nature of the forces in 11:31, which is noticeable in their dealing with the cult, whereas the others are purely military forces. The gender therefore has the same function as the unusual feminine gender of נַפְּלִית in 8:12a which draws attention to the fact that the host is of a different nature from the “host of heaven.” Furthermore, the syntactic circumstances in both texts are similar. In 8:9-11 the horn is the (logical) subject of the clauses before the host is introduced in

1 Cf. also the other texts where נַפְּלִית clearly designates military forces and in which it is always feminine plural דִּינֵי (Ezek 30:22, 24 [2x], 25 [2x]).

2 Less likely is that the masculine gender is used intentionally to suggest individual helpers (pace Montogmery, 457).
vs. 12a in sentence-initial position and continues to be the subject in 12b-d. In 11:30b-g the king of the north is the subject of the clauses before his forces are introduced in vs. 31a in sentence-initial position and continue to be the subject in 31b-d. It is thus evident that the thematic statement of 11:31, as well as the gender of "forces" and the specific syntactic construction in which it occurs, all intertextually affirm the concept of the horn acting through its host at the climax of the vision in chap. 8.

The crucial nature of the cultic conflict becomes evident once more when in 12:11 a time is specified that takes as its starting point the removal of "the šāmīd" and the setting up of an abomination that desolates (šāmēm). The terminology used here connects this text to 8:11b, 13c, and also to 11:31 with which it shares the terms "remove" and "abomination" as well.

In fact, the text in 12:10-11 recapitulates 11:31-35. One can detect a chiastic-like arrangement of lexical links in three sections:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11:35</th>
<th>12:10a-c</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>לֶעַרְוָת הַבָּהָמ</td>
<td>יִשְׂכָּרֵר וּזְהָלֶבֶן</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְגָּלֶבֶן וּלְפַרְמָה</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11:32-33</th>
<th>12:10c-f</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>תִּרְשִׁיתְיָא בָּרָה</td>
<td>וּרְחָשָׁית</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מְטָסָלִים</td>
<td>מְטָסָלִים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָבָיוֹן</td>
<td>יְבָיוֹן</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵבְיָם</td>
<td>לֵבְיָם</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11:31c-d</th>
<th>12:11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יְנָשָּׁר תּוֹמָד</td>
<td>חָפָר וּשְׁפָנָם</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וּגִנֵּה וּשְׁפָנָם מִשְׁפָּטָם</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
First, 11:31 and 12:11 exhibit the identical sequence of five words in describing the attack on the cult (שֵׂם, נֶאֶר, נֶעַר, קְדָשִׁים, and שֵׂם), although their exact forms vary.¹ Second, the confrontation between the wicked ones and those who understand is described in 11:32-33 and in the second part of 12:10. Both texts mention people who act wickedly or make themselves guilty, using the verb רשע, which in Daniel occurs only in 9:5, 11:32 and 12:10. Their counterpart consists of the מִשְׁפְּלִים “insightful ones” and the רָבוֹת “many.” The מִשְׁפְּלִים understand (12:10) and make others understand (11:33). They are willing to sacrifice their lives (11:35).² The verb יָדַע “understand” or “make understand” is used to emphasize the distinctive groups: While the מִשְׁפְּלִים understand (12:10) and make the many understand (11:33), the wicked do not understand (12:10). In all three instances the verbal form is exactly the same יָדַע, occurring only here in Daniel. The מִשְׁפְּלִים “many” who got instructed by the מִשְׁפְּלִים (11:33) will finally also be sifted, cleansed, and refined (12:10).³ The רָבוֹת thus designates the faithful remnant who are inspired by the dedication and martyrdom of the מִשְׁפְּלִים. And third, the assault on God’s people brings about a purification process which is described in both 11:35 and 12:10 by three verbs that in the book of Daniel occur only in these two verses: הָעָד “sift,” הָעָד “purify,” and יָדַע “understand.”

¹ The phrase דָּעַהוּ in 11:31c-d parallels דָּעַהוּ in 11:31.

² Pace Rainer Albertz for whom בֹּלֶל “fall” denotes failure of action, not martyrdom, and thus identifies the מִשְׁפְּלִים in 11:35a as false מִשְׁפְּלִים who “will stumble” because of their coalition with the militant Maccabees (“The Social Setting of the Aramaic and Hebrew Book of Daniel,” in The Book of Daniel: Composition and Reception, ed. J. J. Collins and P. W. Flint, VTSup, no. 83, Fiotl, no. 2 [Leiden: Brill, 2001], 1:193).

³ The נֶאֶר “many” in 11:34 do not belong to the true followers since they join only “in hypocrisy” or “by intrigue” (נֶאֶר in 11:34; cf. 11:21).
“sort out,” cleanse,” and “refine.” In 11:35 the verbs are in the active voice (p x qal, piel, hif.), whereas in 12:10 they are in the corresponding passive voice (hitp., hitp., nif.). The slight difference is that in 11:35 the נַפְשֵׁי יָהָֽוֶֽהָ will fall and that in 12:10 the רַבִּים, who were instructed by the O(11:33), will suffer the same fate. In short, 12:10-11 with its description of a change in cultic worship, its presentation of two antagonistic groups, and its emphasis on purification of God’s people is inseparably connected to 11:31-35 and thus also to 8:11-13.

A third observation with regard to religious terminology is that a term for god occurs nine times in 11:36-39. Toward the end of the discourse the activities of the king of the north also take place in the religious realm. Before this passage, a term for god occurred only in vs. 8 and in vs. 32, of which only the latter describes a conflict on the religious level. Strangely such terminology again is completely missing in 11:40-45, which enhances the effect of the supernatural end to the king of the north (11:45) and the appearance of Michael (12:1). The last stage in this far-reaching conflict is the arising of Michael (12:1), which intentionally opposes the previous arising (םב) of the despicable king of the north (11:21) and his forces (11:31). The divine response of Michael as a final ruler demonstrates that the conflict has superseded the purely military level and now includes a strong religious dimension. In summary, in the triumphant phase of the king of the north, just before his final campaign “at the time of the end,” the

---

1Cf. Beyerle, 31 n. 30.

2The terms are נַפְשֵׁי יָהָֽוֶֽהָ (11:37), נַפְשֵׁי יָהָֽוֶֽהָ (11:36 [3x]), and נַפְשֵׁי יָהָֽוֶֽהָ (11:37, 38 [2x], 39), of which only נַפְשֵׁי יָהָֽוֶֽהָ occurs previously in the chapter (11:8, 32).
revelation focuses on his religious attitudes and in some parts also on his cultic maneuvers.

**Attack on the Holy People**

Before his final campaign (11:40-45), the king of the north focuses his attention on the people of God (11:32-35) and on God directly (11:36-39). This double assault in chap. 11 confirms the previous conclusion of both the people of God and God himself being under attack by the horn in 8:10-11 and 8:24-25.

Since the angelic discourse should reveal the fate of Daniel’s people in the latter days (10:14), one should of course expect them to be mentioned. The term יִבְשָׂל “people” occurs four times with reference to God’s people (11:14, 32, 33; 12:1; once in 11:15 obviously referring to the elite army of the king of the south). It is 11:32-35 which describes how the people of God have to suffer under the wrath of the king of the north. That some of the *maskilim* fall (חֹשֵׁך נִפ.; 11:33, 34, 35) is reminiscent of the vision in chap. 8 where the horn is said to cause some of the host or stars to fall (חָסֵךְ) to earth (8:10b), particularly since both verbs are used together in 11:19 to describe the fall of the king of the north.1

The same theme is revisited twice in the final dialogue. First, in Dan 12:7, the “smashing to pieces of the power of the holy people”2 is mentioned in connection with

---

1The verbs חֹשֵׁך and חָסֵךְ occur next to each other or in parallelism in Ps 27:2, Prov 24:16, 17; Isa 3:8; 8:15; 31:3; Jer 6:15; 8:12; 46:6, 12, 16; 50:32; Dan 11:19.

2Thus reads MT and Theodotion. Some repoint דָּבָר (Piel infinitive) to דָּבָר (Qal participle) and, supported by the Old Greek, transpose it with the following מָתָן to read “the end of the power of the shatterer of the holy people” (cf. Collins, *Daniel* [1993], 399, with further references).
the same time period as in 7:25. The combination of violence done to the holy people for a specific period of time suggests that the parties under attack in 7:25 and 12:7—and by extension also in 8:11, 24—refer to one and the same entity. Second, as explained above, 12:10-11 recapitulates 11:31-35 including the conflict that leads to the purification of God's people (12:10).

**Opposition to God**

As in Dan 8:11 the king of the north also launches an attack on God. He shows no regard for "the god of his fathers" (11:37). Although some translate this phrase with the plural "the gods of his fathers," the singular meaning is preferable on the basis of the intertextual allusions of which is a phrase that is used elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible in the context of a defection from the true God (2 Kgs 21:22; 2 Chr 21:10; 28:25; 33:12; Dan 11:37) or the seeking of God (2 Chr 30:19).

The presumptuous attitude of the king of the north is most explicitly expressed in Dan 11:36, where it states that he will magnify himself above every god and will speak amazing things against the God of gods. At the same time this verse

---

1For further discussion see the analysis of the intertextual relationship between Dan 8 and Dan 7 (above).


3See the similar phrases "God of their/your/our fathers" which are used in the context of apostasy from YHWH (Deut 29:24; Judg 2:12; 1 Chr 5:25; 2 Chr 7:22; 20:33; 24:18, 24; 28:6, 9; 30:7), but also in the positive sense that Israel and her king follow YHWH (Exod 3:13, 15, 16; 4:5; Deut 1:11, 21; 4:1; 6:3; 12:1; 26:7; 27:3; Josh 18:3; Ezra 7:27; 8:28; 10:11; 1 Chr 12:18; 29:20; 2 Chr 11:16; 13:12, 18; 14:3; 15:12; 19:4; 20:6; 29:5; 30:22; 34:32, 33; 36:15). Cf. Steinmann, "Is the Antichrist in Daniel 11?" 206.
constitutes an intertextual link to the description of the horn/king in chap. 8. The fronting of “against (ךָּל) the God of gods” (11:36d) correlates to the fronting of “up (ךָּל) to the commander of the host” in 8:11a and “against (ךָּל) the prince of princes” in 8:25e, all of which describe the ultimate religious hubris of the horn/king or the king of the north. Moreover, the superlative construction “God of gods” in 11:36d is reminiscent of “Prince of princes” in 8:25e.

The keyword מִרְצָה “magnify oneself” in 11:36, 37 is a terminological link with the keyword מִרְצָה in chap. 8 where it is used four times to describe the self-magnification of the horn/king (8:9, 10, 11, 25; cf. vss. 4, 8). This keyword occurs nowhere else in the second half of Daniel. Its Hitpael form in Dan 11:36, 37 is used elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible only in reference to יהוה exalting himself (Ezek 38:23) and with regard to the saw exalting itself over the one who wields it, metaphorically speaking of arrogant Assyria (Isa 10:15). Similarly, the Hitpolel of מְלַג used in 11:36 occurs elsewhere only in connection with God exalting himself (Isa 33:10). Thus, the verbs in Dan 11:36, 37 describe the self-deification of the king of the north. It also fits the picture when the king of the north works נָפָל “amazing things” (11:36) and thus simulates God’s mighty wonders. The speaking against the highest God recalls the


2Ibid., 25. Clifford also suggests that the reapportionment of the land in 11:39 expressed by מְשַׁמֵּר piel “apportion” is “another wrestling of a divine prerogative since only God can apportion the land” (ibid.). He refers to the use of מְשַׁמֵּר qal/piel in Joshua and מְשַׁמֵּר piel in Isa 34:17 and Joel 4:2.

3The Niphal participle of נָפָל occurs 46 times in the Hebrew Bible, designating 40 times the miraculous acts performed by God (Exod 3:20; 34:10; Josh 3:5; Judg 6:13; 1 Chr 16:9, 12, 24; Neh 9:17; Job 5:9; 9:10; 37:5, 14; Pss 9:2; 26:7; 40:6; 71:17; 72:18; 75:2; 78:4, 11, 32; 86:10; 96:3; 98:1; 105:2, 5; 106:7, 22; 107:8, 15, 21, 24, 31; 111:4; 119:27; 131:1; 136:4; 139:14; 145:5; Jer 21:2; Mic

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
“mouth uttering great things” of the horn in Dan 7:8, 20. And the success of the king of the north is expressed by the same term הָרְפָאָה “and he will prosper” that describes the success of the king (8:24, 25) and the success of the horn’s host (8:12d). Again, לוּלָו hif. is used only in these Danielic passages. Finally, the noun יִרְשָׁם "indignation" occurs in the book of Daniel only in 8:19 and 11:36, and the participle נָעַמְתָּן “amazing things” occurs only in 8:24 and 11:36 (cf. the noun מָעַמְתָּן “amazing events” in 12:6), both arguably in relationship with the king/horn and the king of the north. In sum, there can be no doubt that the king of the north in the intertextual clusters 11:28-31 and 11:36-39 is one and the same as the horn of the vision or the king of the interpretation in chap. 8 and that 11:36 describes the same anti-divine hubris as 8:11-12 and 8:25.

That the terrestrial conflict described in chap. 11 involves a heavenly dimension has been prepared for by the visionary experience in chap. 10, where the cosmic conflict is most clearly spelled out in Daniel.1 In fact, the synergetic relationship between the heavenly struggle and earthly events and vice versa in the Hebrew Bible is perhaps best explained and illustrated by Dan 10:4-11:1. This synergism between events in heaven and on earth is one of the major theological contributions of the book of Daniel. It opens a transcendent dimension to events in human history and reveals a worldview which consists of “a two-story universe where the angelic world represents a metaphysical level

---

which cannot be discounted."

**Pride Goes before a Fall**

The thematic pattern of "pride before the fall" in the vision of chap. 8 finds its development in chap. 11, and has been well recognized there. To convey this dominant theme, chap. 11 offers an extensive list of keywords for failure: "break" (11:4, 20, 22, 26; usually in the Niphal "be broken"; cf. 8:7, 8, 22, 25); "she will not retain" (11:6); "fall" (11:12, 19, 26); "he will not show himself strong" (11:12); "fall" or "collapse" (11:14, 19, 33, 34, 35, 41); the negation of "stand" (11:15 [2x], 16, 17, 25); "he will stumble, fall, and no more be found" (11:19); "he will come to his end and there is no help for him" (11:45).

Often these disasters follow some kind of success. A case in point is 11:12: "his heart will be lifted up . . . but he will not prevail," reminiscent of 8:25. That triumph heralds a downfall may be best illustrated by the recurring phrase "he will do as he pleases" (11:3, 16 [here: 11:3, 36; and earlier in 8:4]) which is followed by frustration and defeat. Like in the vision of chap. 8, the pattern shows that the fall after the final exaltation is delayed. Whereas in 11:3-4 the fall follows immediately—"as soon as he has arisen, his kingdom will be broken"—and in 11:16 it occurs at least in the

---

1Ibid., 116; cf. Goldingay, Daniel, 312-314; Lucas, Daniel, 298.

2"When, in their hubris, rulers think that they can do as they please, they are about to meet the nemesis of divine judgment" (Lucas, Daniel, 280). It is as if the keywords "contribute to the drawing of patterns in history" (Goldingay, Daniel, 288) so that "the standard description of apparently unchallengeable authority . . . presages unexpected disaster, or at least frustration and failure" (304).
course of the following activities (see vs. 19), in the last instance in 11:36 the defeat is
delayed until vs. 45, with numerous activities in between.\(^1\) Once again the horn in ch. 8 is
mirrored by the king of the north, this time with regard to the apparently prolonged
success. Furthermore, the success of the king of the north is expressed by using identical
terms for describing the success of the horn’s host in 8:12: \(\ldots \) <br/>(and he will
do \ldots and he will have success)” (11:36).

### Time

Words or phrases referring to time occur relatively often in chaps. 11–12.\(^2\) The
terms \(\text{יָמִים} \) “time,” \(\text{כֵּן} \) “at the appointed time,” and \(\text{נָעָם} \) “end” are keywords of time in
the angelic discourse in chap. 11 and in the dialogue in chap. 12, and they also occur in
chap. 8.\(^3\) Both revelations in chaps. 8 and 11 reach to the “end” and are indeed for the
end. Their common eschatological goal is expressed by the phrase \(\text{כֵּן} \) “time of the
end” which Gabriel uses to explain that the vision of chap. 8 pertains to the “time of the
end” (8:17) and which in chap. 11 marks the final climactic section of the revelation

---

\(^{1}\) However, the explanation “for that which is decreed will be done” in 11:36 with two Niphal
forms, expressing divine passives, already reminds one that there is a cosmic dimension to the
activities of the horn that is beyond its control (Meadowcroft, “Who are the Princes?” 106-107).

\(^{2}\) The relevant terms are \(\text{יָמִים} \) “time” (11:6, 13, 24, 35, 40; 12:1, 4; and 12:9, 11), an interval of
\(\text{כֵּן} \) “at the appointed time” (11:6, 8, 13), a period of \(\text{כֵּן} \) “days” (11:20, 33; and 12:11, 12), “at the
appointed time” (11:27, 29, 35; and “end” occurs in 8:17; 9:21, 25; 11:6, 13, 24, 35, 40; 12:1 (4x), 4, 9, 11;
\(\text{כֵּן} \) “at the appointed time” in 8:19; 11:27, 29, 35; and \(\text{כֵּן} \) “end” occurs in 8:17, 19; 9:26 (2x); 11:6, 13,
27, 35, 40, 45; 12:4, 6, 9, 13 (2x).
Thus, the angelic discourse covers the same temporal ground as the vision in chap. 8 and should be regarded as parallel revelation. Such a conclusion is supported by the subsequent dialogue in which the heavenly being emphasizes that the revelation is concerned with "the time of the end" (12:4, 9; cf. 8:17) and "the final period" (12:8; cf. 8:19, 23).

This special concern in regard to time is also noticeable in the two dialogues in 12:6-7 and 12:8-13. It is striking that the first dialogue is in close parallel with the angelic conversation in 8:12-14. A celestial being utters this distressed cry of lament "until when?" Once again the concern is the malignant endeavors of the final enemy. However, this time the question is not raised regarding how long the entire vision or revelation would last, as in 8:13c, but how long the "wonderful events" endure. The noun "wonderful events" seems to refer to the previously mentioned (8:24; 11:36) and could express astonishment, or that the actions of the king of the north appear to be of supernatural origin. Since the question pertains specifically to these activities, the time period mentioned in response to this cry for temporal restriction should not be expected to be the same as in 8:14b. Indeed, the meaning of the "time, times, and a half" cannot be compared to the "2300 evening-morning." Rather the time period is identical to the one in 7:25 and as in that instance refers to the oppression of

---

1It is noteworthy that "the vocabulary of the end" (דַּקָּשְׁע "time," להָלָכָה "at the appointed time," "time of the end," and לַבַּזוּ "at that time") starts in chap. 11 only from vs. 27 on. According to his structure of chap. 11 Clifford finds this vocabulary in the unit 11:21-12:3 ("History and Myth in Daniel 10-12," 24).
God’s people, implying that the “2300 evening-morning” must be a longer period that encompasses the three and a half times.

In the second dialogue, which was initiated by Daniel, the celestial being gives him two time periods that start both with the removal of the ṭēmī d and the setting up of the abomination of desolation: 1290 and 1335 days (12:11-12). In comparison with the “2300 evening-morning” it is important to recognize that the beginning point is different and that the end point is not necessarily identical. The “2300 evening-morning” include the entire vision of chap. 8 and not just the time from the removal of the ṭēmī d. Regarding the end point, the “2300 evening-morning” explicitly connect it with the beginning of the restoration of the holy to its rightful place, whereas the end point for both the 1290 days and the 1335 days is not specified, although the context might suggest that at least the latter figure should reach the end time. Hence, the two figures in 12:11-12 do not shed further light on the chronology of the “2300 evening-morning.”

Judgment

After fate overtakes the king of the north, the final scene of the angelic discourse describes the divine intervention depicted in 12:1-3. Nickelsburg characterizes this passage as a “description of a judgment scene” with the elements of a witness, that is Michael, the angelic advocate, who stands (תהליך) in court, the book of life containing the names of those who will survive divine judgment, and the resurrection of certain persons.

1The second period evidently starts at the same time as the first, otherwise the blessing formula (יִהְיוּ לָהֶם) for those who are being patient and attain 1335 days does not make any sense.

2Collins, Daniel (1993), 400.
functioning as post-mortem judgment which vindicates the righteous and condemns the wicked.\(^1\) Collins points out that the major element of a presiding judge is missing and thus the scene should better be designated as an “eschatological prophecy,”\(^2\) although it involves a judgment insofar as there is a distinction between the good and the bad.\(^3\) One could argue, however, that the presence of a judge is implied when Michael arises in court.\(^4\)

In any case, Dan 12:1-3 presents the vindication of believers and as such is thematically linked to Dan 8:14 which, among other things, includes the restoration of the host of heaven to its rightful place. Although the creation theme is not specifically alluded to,\(^5\) the resurrection in 12:2-3 implies a recreation. Hence, the hint to a recreation at the end of the vision of chap. 8 in vs. 14b is “replaced” by a resurrection at the end of the angelic discourse in 12:2-3.

**Specific Phrases**

In the final, climactic part of the angelic discourse two expressions attract attention that might shed light on phrases in Dan 8:9-14: לְפָנַי “the great prince” (12:1) is reminiscent of the “commander of the host” in 8:11a, and the נַעֲרֵי “stars”

---


\(^3\) Collins, *Apocalyptic Vision*, 172.

\(^4\) Inasmuch as the verb לְפָנִי is used for יְהוָה when he arises to judge the people (Isa 3:13), the phrase “Michael, the great prince, who stands [נַעֲרֵי] over the sons of your people, will arise [לְפָנַי]” might even allude to a judicial office of Michael.

\(^5\) No explicit allusion to creation in Dan 11:2-12:3 is detected by Doukhan (“Allusions,” 289).
(12:3) are reminiscent of the “stars” in 8:10b.

The reference to Michael as “the great prince” who stands protectively by the people of God (12:1) should be seen as an explicit link to the commander of the host (8:11a). Two aspects of this individual being are prominent in both passages: its leadership over the people of God and its high celestial status. The analysis of 8:10 has shown that the host of heaven and the stars are best understood to represent the people of God and that the אֱלֹהִים אָנָחָן is an expression for the supreme leader of the people of God. At the same time, the study of the term נֵר in the book of Daniel made it evident that in revelatory material the term is generally used to refer to supernatural beings, to chief angels. The corresponding term סְפָרָא נְפִיָּה in 8:25 suggests that the commander of the host is none other than the commander of the chief angels. Daniel 12:1 corroborates such a two-faceted interpretation of the commander of the host in 8:11a. The celestial being Michael is said to “stand protectively by the sons of your people” which distinguishes him as the celestial representative of God’s people.¹ He is also called “the great prince,” an expression that places particular emphasis on his elevated status among the chief angels, specifically since no other celestial being, except God, is called נְפִיָּה “great” in the Hebrew Bible.² Both aspects are expressed in 10:21 where Michael receives the attribute נֵרָא “your prince.” Thus it would be safe to conclude that 12:1 helps to

¹Michael is thus portrayed distinctively different in activity from the horn/king of Dan 8. Whereas the horn/king aggressively opposes (נָךְ נְפִיָּה) the prince of princes (8:25), the great prince protectively stands by (נָךְ נְפִיָּה) the people of God (12:1).

²God is called the נְפִיָּה “great God” in Dan 9:4. Elsewhere see Deut 7:21; 10:17; Jer 10:6; 32:18; Mal 1:14; Ps 47:3; 48:1; 86:10; 95:3; 96:4; 99:2; 135:5; 145:3; Neh 1:5; 8:6; 9:32; 1 Chr 16:25; and for God being greater than other gods, see Exod 18:11; Ps 77:14; 2 Chr 2:4.
identify the "commander of the host" in 8:11b as Michael. In addition, the relative clause could possibly allude to Michael as having a priestly function for God's people and confirm the priestly role of the "commander of the host" in 8:11a.

Some see a connection between the "stars" in Dan 12:3 and the "stars" in 8:10. The astral imagery in 12:3 is often understood as an indication that believers will become like the angels in the heavenly world.1 Collins asserts that "the astral imagery of 12:3 cannot be taken as simple comparison"2 for the reason that "the stars had long been identified with the angelic host in Israelite tradition"—a tradition which allegedly stems from Canaanite mythology—and that this tradition corresponds to "the crucial role played by the heavenly host throughout Daniel 7–12."4 In spite of the fact that the idea of saints being reckoned among the celestial host after their resurrection would correspond well to the interrelation of earthly and heavenly worlds that runs throughout the visions, such an interpretation of 12:3 remains questionable. First, the comparative function of ה in cannot be ignored. With an intransitive verb describing emission of light (in Dan 12:3 "shine") the nominal expression following after ה is always understood to denote comparison and not identification.5 At the same time individuals or groups of

1Cf. Hengel, Judaism, 196-197; Clifford, "History and Myth in Daniel 10–12," 26; Goldingay, Daniel, 308 ("stars" are probably a metaphor for celestial beings or angels).


3Ibid., 136.

4Ibid., 172.

5With ה hif. "shine" (Ps 139:12), ב כה qal "burn" (Isa 9:17; 62:1; Hos 7:6b; Mai 3:19; Pss 79:5; 89:47), כ ל הנפ. "break forth light" (Isa 58:8), כ ל hif. "shine" (Job 10:22b), and כ ל qal "sparkle" (Ezek 1:7). See Jenni, Die Präposition Kaph, 72.
people are compared, however not identified, with various entities from nature and life, usually in regard to a specific similarity.¹ The type of comparison in Dan 12:3 is similar to the Aramaic use of ב with the intransitive verb יהוה “become” in 2:35 and with רבעה “to become long” in 4:30. Further, even if the “stars” in 12:3 would stand metaphorically for celestial beings, the preposition ב indicates that those who lead the many to righteousness are compared only with these (simile); they will not necessarily be located among the angels nor will they become angels.² Second, the parallel thought in 12:3 precludes that “stars” is used in a metaphorical sense. Clause 3a (וַתַּשְׁלַחְתַּם יְהוָה יָדָם לַשָּׁמֶשֶׁת) and clause 3b (וַיִּשְׁלַחְתָּם יְהוָה יָדָם לַשָּׁמֶשֶׁת) are in parallel, displaying a matching order of the constituents and verbal ellipsis in 3b. However, the “glow of the firmament,” which is the parallel expression to the “stars,” is generally not understood to be metaphorical but rather literal. Hence, the “stars” should be understood in their literal meaning, too.

At the most, the simile with the brightness of the stars may associatively evoke 8:10, where the stars have already been symbolically used to represent the saints. Daniel 12:3 describes “a dramatic reversal of the situation described in 8:10, where the arrogant ‘little one’ is depicted as one who ascends the heavens, casting down some of the hosts thereby” so that the final vindication of the fallen ones in 12:3 suggests “that the host of

¹ See the list prepared by Jenni (ibid., 73).
² Bentzen, 85; Nickelsburg, Resurrection, 26; Goldingay, Daniel, 308; cf. Friedrich Nötscher, Altorientalischer und alttestamentlicher Auferstehungsglauben (Würzburg: Becker, 1926), 164-165.
Conclusion

In summary, the major themes of Dan 8:9-14 are expressed again in the angelic discourse of 11:2–12:3 as well as in the ensuing dialogue in 12:5-13. In some cases the themes are more developed. The terminological links to 8:9-14, however, do not appear evenly distributed over the text material but rather form intertextual clusters (11:28-31, 36-39; 12:1-3, 6-7, 11).

The revelation in chaps. 10–12 confirms in a forceful way that 8:9-14 portrays a climactic conflict between a power with religious interests and its forces, on the one side, and God and his people, on the other side. All the major components of the conflict in chap. 8 are also present in chaps. 11–12: the attack on the cult (11:31; 12:10-11), on the people of God (11:32-35; 12:7, 10-11), and on God himself (11:36-39), and the divine intervention associated with judgment (12:1-3). The mention of דָּרְשֵׁים “forces” in 11:31 furnishes evidence that it is accurate to interpret the host in 8:12 as the host of the horn. Furthermore, the nature and activities of the king of the north from 11:28 on to a large extent clearly resemble the nature and activities of the horn/king in chap. 8. Table 47 summarizes the similarities between the two and demonstrates again that the king of the north designates, at least in 11:28-45, the same power as the horn/king.

1Seow, “The Rule of God,” 244.
Table 47. Similarities of the Horn in Daniel 8 and the King of the North in Daniel 11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Horn in Dan 8</th>
<th>King of the North in Dan 11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hubris</td>
<td>Magnifies itself (נַוִּי הַחֲזֵר) up to the commander of the host (8:11a); magnifies (נַוִּי הַחֲזֵר) in his heart (8:25)</td>
<td>Exalts and magnifies (נַוִּי הַחֲזֵר) himself above every god and above all (11:36, 37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on the beauty</td>
<td>Goes forth (military term קָחָה) from smallness and grows against the beauty (יִשָּׂרֵא) (8:9b)</td>
<td>Stays (military term קָחָה) in the land of beauty (יִשָּׂרֵא) (11:16) &amp; enters (military term קָחָה) the land of beauty (יִשָּׂרֵא) (11:41) &amp; pitches up his state tent before the beautiful holy mountain (יִשָּׂרֵא) (11:45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on the holy</td>
<td>Against the holy (8:13c)</td>
<td>Against the holy covenant (11:28, 30 [2x]) &amp; the holy mountain (11:45) &amp; the holy people (12:7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on the sanctuary</td>
<td>Throws down the foundation of the commander’s sanctuary (שֵׁטֵחַ) (8:11c)</td>
<td>Desecrates the sanctuary (שֵׁטֵחַ), the fortress (11:31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on divine principles</td>
<td>Removal of the כְּנֶסֶת (יִשָּׂרֵא) (8:11b, 12a)</td>
<td>Removal of the כְּנֶסֶת (יִשָּׂרֵא) (11:31; cf. 12:11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation of false worship</td>
<td>Installation (תַּעֲבֹר) of the sin that desolates (נִטְאָב לַעֲבֹר) (8:13c)</td>
<td>Installation (תַּעֲבֹר) of the abomination of desolation (נִטְאָב לַעֲבֹר) (11:31; cf. 12:11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack on God’s associates</td>
<td>Assault on the host of heaven (8:10, 13; “people of holy ones” in 8:24) &amp; some of the host fall (8:10b)</td>
<td>Assault on the maskilim (11:33, 35) &amp; some of the maskilim fall (11:33, 34, 35; cf. “holy people” in 12:7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 47—Continued.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Similarity</th>
<th>Horn in Dan 8</th>
<th>King of the North in Dan 11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attack on God</td>
<td>Against the commander of the host (אֲבֹדֶת הַגְוָא) (8:11-12) and against the prince of princes (םֶלֶךְ שַׁבְעָה) (8:25)</td>
<td>Against the prince of the covenant (11:22) and against the God of gods (11:36); implied: against Michael, the great prince (םְדֵדֶא הַאָרֶץ), who stands protectively by the people of God (12:1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host or Army</td>
<td>Host of the horn (8:12)</td>
<td>Forces of the king of the north (11:31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extraordinary</td>
<td>Destroys to an extraordinary degree (גְלַאְאָה לָו) (8:24)</td>
<td>Speaks extraordinary things (גְלַאְאָה לָו) (11:36; cf. 12:6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>activities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Success</td>
<td>Host of the horn does (שֵׁם) (8:12c, 24) &amp; succeeds (גְלַאְאָה לָו) (8:12d, 24, 25)</td>
<td>Does (שֵׁם) (11:16, 17, 24 [2x], 28, 30, 36 [2x], 39) &amp; succeeds (גְלַאְאָה לָו) (11:36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wrath</td>
<td>What will occur at the end of indignation (תֵבֶן) (8:19)</td>
<td>He is enraged (שֵׁם) at the holy covenant (11:30); successful until the indignation (תֵבֶן) is finished (11:36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time factor</td>
<td>The vision pertains to the “time of the end” (כְּפִיקָה) (8:17), to the “appointed time of the end” (לֶאֶשֶׁר כִּפְיקָה) (8:19)</td>
<td>Vocabulary of end time (כְּפִיקָה in 11:27, 35, 40; cf. 12:4, 9; לֶאֶשֶׁר כִּפְיקָה in 11:27, 29, 35; cf. 12:7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supernatural</td>
<td>Broken without human hand (8:25; implied in vs. 14c)</td>
<td>He will come to his end and no one will help him (11:45; 12:1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destruction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural</td>
<td>After the kingdoms of Medo-Persia and Greece (8:3-8; cf. vss. 20-22); final power before the divine intervention</td>
<td>After the kingdoms of Persia and Greece (11:2-4); final power after great conflict before the divine intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Finally, the identification of the “great prince” in 12:1 with the “commander of the host” in 8:11 implies that the one under attack by the horn (8:11) is the same who brings about the vindication of the sanctuary and God’s people (8:14; cf. 12:1-3). This idea is not evident from chap. 8 itself, but presents an intertextual contribution of chaps. 11-12.

**Intertextual Relations between Daniel 8:9-14 and Daniel 1-6**

After studying the intertextual links between Dan 8:9-14 and blocks of literature in the visionary part of Daniel, the narratives are now investigated for textual relations. Intertextual connections between Dan 8:9-14 and the first six chapters of Daniel based on terminological links are rare. They are listed in table 48.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text</th>
<th>Word/Phrase</th>
<th>Intertextual Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:11a</td>
<td>&quot;even up to the commander of the host it magnified itself&quot; (8:11a) // &quot;even against the prince of princes he will stand&quot; (8:25e) // &quot;and against the Lord of heaven you have exalted yourself&quot; (5:23)</td>
<td>5:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:11b</td>
<td>&quot;he will magnify himself in his heart&quot; (8:25c) // &quot;his heart rose up&quot; (5:20)</td>
<td>5:20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12a, 13c</td>
<td>&quot;heavenly&quot; // &quot;host&quot;</td>
<td>6:17, 21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
There are two identifiable connections. First, Dan 8:11a recalls the language of 5:23 and 5:20, especially if the interpretation in 8:25 is included in the comparison.1 Syntactically, 5:23 and 8:11a, 25e all front the prepositional object which refers to the divine being whom the subject offended by self-exaltation. Daniel 5:23 and 8:25e even use the same preposition על על “against.” Furthermore, both verbs, BH דָּבָר (8:11a) and BA רָב (5:23), designate the activity of self-exaltation. The relationship between the two verbs is again evident by comparing רָב להב “his heart rose up,” that is, “he was arrogant,” in 5:20 with הָפַךְ לוֹ “he will magnify himself in his heart” in 8:25. It might be purely incidental that the verb רָוב in 5:20, 23 also appears in 8:11b for it has a different semantic notion there, but an intertextual function cannot easily be dismissed.

The thematic pattern is also similar: 5:23 speaks of Belshazzar’s defiance of God, whereas 5:20 refers to Nebuchadnezzar’s megalomania that was described in Dan 4. Hence, within the narrative framework both Nebuchadnezzar’s and Belshazzar’s self-exaltation serve as parallel and historical type to the horn’s overbearing apotheosis in the vision of Dan 8. In 8:9-14 these historical types find their eschatological counterpart.

Second, the one-to-one relationship between רָב and להב indicates the close connection between Dan 8:11-13 and Dan 6:17, 21, which thematically is based on the question of worship. As the significance of this textual connection has already been discussed, there is no need to repeat it here.2

Thematically, Dan 8:9-14 reflects some of the main messages of the

---

1Except for Collins (Daniel, 250), such an association has surprisingly gone unnoticed.

2See on the meaning of הָפַךְ in chapter 2 (above).
concentrically arranged chapters of Dan 2–7. With chaps. 4 and 5 it shares the theme of arrogant self-exaltation followed by divine intervention that brings about the fall of the defiant king. With chaps. 3 and 6 it shares the central issue of worship with a wrong system replacing the true worship of God. And with chaps. 2 and 7 it shares the general revelation of a succession of kingdoms that will finally come to a divinely appointed end.

Summary: Daniel 8:9-14 in the Book of Daniel

The intertextual analysis has shown that Dan 8 occupies a special place in the book of Daniel. Not only does chap. 7 function as the hinge between the two parts of Daniel, chap. 8 also has an interlocking Scharnierfunktion, particularly owing to vss. 9-14. As has been presented above, chap. 8 is closely linked to the Aramaic prophecy in chap. 7, both in form and content, and via chap. 7 forges links to the dream of successive kingdoms in chap. 2. In addition, the text in 8:9-14 is reminiscent of the almost type scenic incidents of the proud and defiant self-magnification of the Babylonian kings Nebuchadnezzar in chap. 4 (5:20) and Belshazzar in chap. 5 (5:23), and evokes Daniel’s continual cultic worship service of God in chap. 6 (6:11, 17, 21). At the same time 8:9-14 introduces new themes and motifs that are taken up in chap. 9 and chaps. 10-12.

---

1 For the chiastic arrangement of themes in Dan 2–7 see Lenglet, 169-190.

2 Prominent features that link Dan 7 to the tales are its Aramaic language (chaps. 2–7), the theme of succession of four kingdoms taken over by the kingdom of God (chap. 2), and that it is part of the concentric arrangement of chaps. 2–7. Features that link Dan 7 to the visions are its form of a dream vision, the similar content to chap. 8 (horn from smallness), and that it does not follow chap. 6 chronologically but belongs to the beginning of the chronological sequence of the visions.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
emphasis on the cult stands out especially. Thus, the subsequent visions borrow major elements from the climax of the vision in chap. 8, and it has to be concluded that the central part of the second half of Daniel is rather to be found in 8:9-14 than in another place.

In summary, out of Dan 8:9-14 originates a network of literary linkages found throughout the entire book of Daniel, most distinctly with regard to the visionary part of the book. It takes up prominent themes from chaps. 2–7 and dominates the visionary part of the book, thus elevating chap. 8 to the status of a twin pillar in the book of Daniel. Together with chap. 7, chap. 8 forms the thematic and structural center of the book of Daniel. One must therefore conclude that 8:9-14 is strategically situated in the book of Daniel and deeply embedded in its themes and, consequently, also in its theology.

1For example, terms newly introduced in chap. 8, even if one looks for equivalent Aramaic terms, are תָּמִימִים, בָּרוּךָ, הַנַבִּי, with article, דֹּרֶל hif. “to make oneself great,” מְלֹויִים, פַּרְעֹה, and מַעַל.  

2Pace Steck ("Weltgeschehen und Gottesvolk im Buche Daniel," 65-67) and others who suppose a "change of perspective" in Dan 8 in comparison to the previous chapters of the so-called "Aramaic book of Daniel" and argue that chap. 8 has been written with chap. 9 in view. In such an interpretation, the dependence of Dan 8 on Dan 9:24-27 and the influence of the prayer of confession by Daniel in Dan 9 play too large a role in interpreting the final events of the vision in Dan 8. In fact, in such a view Dan 9 is designated to be "the central part of the whole book of Daniel, which also provides the key for the reinterpretation of the older parts" (Seidl, "Volk Gottes und seine Zukunft," 182; so also Steck, "Weltgeschehen und Gottesvolk," 76; Johannes Marböck, "Gottes Plan und Herrschaft: Zu den Anfängen apokalyptischen Schrifttums," ThPQ 137 [1989]: 344).
CHAPTER 5

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Daniel 8:9-14 is indisputably one of the most challenging texts in the book of Daniel. In chapter 1 I observed that in previous research concerning this enigmatic text, only a few studies used linguistic methods and could therefore be categorized as text-oriented approaches. However, these linguistic studies, as informative and commendable as they are, pursued only selective tasks and are by no means dealing comprehensively with the text, lacking, for example, any intertextual analysis that focuses on the relationship with other passages in the book of Daniel. In fact, many intricacies of the text have not yet received copacetic explanations. The assessment of the research history therefore called for a new, systematic and comprehensive analysis which concentrates on the text and its language, and combines a linguistic, literary, and intertextual approach, that is, the basic three avenues of a text-oriented approach.

The text-oriented analysis of Dan 8:9-14 that has been undertaken has tried to provide satisfying answers to the questions that have been raised by comparing the different interpretations of these six verses. Each of the three avenues of the text-oriented analysis contributes to a better understanding of the text and its seemingly baffling features. The study of the text itself by means of linguistics solves some intricate
grammatical-syntactic and semantic problems (chapter 2). The study of the dynamics of the text in the literary analysis reveals a carefully styled composition, in which alleged irregularities turn out to be effective literary features of the text, and a thematically and theologially rich climax of the vision report (chapter 3). Finally, the study of the text in relationship with other texts in the intertextual analysis lends additional support to the linguistic and literary findings, helps to draw attention to features of the text that might not be easily noticed, and clarifies and underlines the central place and role of 8:9-14 in the book of Daniel (chapter 4).

Methodological Results

In the process of the study, two methodological observations in particular have crystallized: the value of a comprehensive systematic analysis for exegesis, and the complexity of interconnected levels of analysis. First, a systematic analysis from form to function proves to be a useful and commendable approach, specifically in dealing with such difficult texts as Dan 8:9-14. The information gained on lower levels of analysis, for example, the syntactic level, instructs, guides, provides limits for, and maximizes the analysis of higher levels, for example, the literary analysis. A good illustration of this lies in the linguistic analysis of 8:12a which shows, among other things, that direct speech commences in vs. 12a and that the transgression spoken of should be attributed to the horn. This informs the literary analysis with regard to both structure and thematic distribution of the text, as well as the intertextual analysis with regard to the relation between 8:9-14 and chap. 9.
Second, the different levels of analytical description of the text create an intricate web in which information on one level informs the analysis on another level and vice versa. The various levels of a text could perhaps adequately be compared to the elaborate interweaving of websites and their numerous hypertextual links in the internet. While reading and understanding the text in Dan 8:9-14—and for the sake of argumentation, any text—the reader opens consciously or unconsciously numerous hypertextual links in which information from various levels of analysis are “downloaded” into the present reading of the text. All contribute to the overall understanding of the text. The task of the text-oriented analysis is to detect systematically as many aspects as possible that are present in the text and its intertext, so that the process of understanding the text is as conscious as possible.

**Major Contributions**

In the course of this study I have given ample space to the summary of the exegetical results. The main points have been succinctly covered at the end of the individual subsections and chapters. Instead of compiling all of these findings again in tiresome repetition, I wish to concentrate on the major conclusions and contributions of the work at hand, presented according to the three text-oriented avenues: linguistic, literary, intertextual.

**Linguistic Analysis**

The linguistic analysis combined a systematic grammatical-syntactic and a semantic analysis. The syntax of Dan 8:9-14 was described clause by clause, and the
meaning of specific words, phrases, and sentences was analyzed. The more prominent results of the linguistic analysis may be summarized as follows.

The origin of the horn is not nearly as unambiguous as commentators believe. Syntactic arguments alone have been found insufficient to decide on the antecedent of "one of them" in Dan 8:9a. The literary-structural comparison of ram, he-goat, and horn demonstrates, however, that the horn functions on the same level as the other two powers. The intertextual comparison to Dan 7 confirms that the horn in chap. 8 has to be regarded as a power independent from the he-goat. In chap. 8 itself, its origin is concealed in mystery, which, as suggested, diverts from the idea that the horn is yet another power of purely military character, but rather draws attention to the religious interest and nature of the horn.

The first entity that experiences the terror of the horn is the "host of heaven" and the "stars" (vs. 10), which designate the same entity, and in their symbolic meaning both refer to the people of God. This is especially apparent with the expression "stars" on the basis of its use as metaphor and as simile in the Hebrew Bible (particularly in visions: Gen 37:9; Num 24:17) and the comparison with the "mighty ones" (םְבָנָאֵי) in 8:24, a term that designates a group of people. At the same time the expression "host of heaven" hints at the involvement of the celestial host of angels. What is described here is nothing less than a cosmic battle fought on two levels: on the earth and in the supernatural world.

The supernatural level of the horn's assault becomes particularly evident in vs. 11, where the horn magnifies itself to divine-like status. While the phrase "commander of the host" (אֲשֶׁר הָגוֹאְלָה) is a technical term for the highest military rank elsewhere, in the
prophetic part of Daniel the term נֵבֶן usually refers to a celestial being. The intertextual relationship to the “prince of princes” in 8:25, who designates the same being, clarifies that the commander of the host is the supreme leader of celestial beings, probably to be identified with the Danielic figure of Michael. The traits of military leader and divine being are also combined in the celestial warrior of the crucial intertext of Josh 5:13-15.

In light of the cultic terminology used in Dan 8:9-14, נֵבֶן seems to have a priestly connotation as well, especially since the commander of the host is closely linked to the tamî d and to the sanctuary (vs. 11b and 11c).

The cultic climax of the horn’s adverse activities is found in vs. 11. In removing the tamî d from the commander of the host, the horn carries out a pseudo-cultic act (נֵבֶן) and usurps priestly status. נֵבֶן is a cultic term par excellence. The present standard interpretation, namely that it refers to the “daily sacrifice,” is not doing justice to its scope of meaning in this passage. Rather נֵבֶן designates both the cultic activities of the “commander of the host” as high priest (supported by its usage in cultic texts of the Hebrew Bible) and the continual cultic worship and service directed toward him as divine being (supported by its replacement by false worship or false cult practices in 11:31 and 12:11 and the lexical and thematic link to Daniel’s continual cultic service of prayer in 6:11, 17, 21). Hence 8:11 describes the inconceivable act of the “ultimate cultic offense” perpetrated by the horn. In its hubris, the horn attempts to replace the commander of the host of heaven and reappropriate “the epitome of the cult” to itself. The results of the semantic analysis of vs. 11c reasserted such an assessment, for this clause describes the flinging down of the principles (metaphorical foundations) upon which the sanctuary of
the commander of the host rests.

Text-grammatically and consistent with the use of verbal sequences in the book of Daniel, the shift from past tense in vss. 9-11 (qatal, wayyiqtol, and x-qatal) to future tense in vs. 12 (x-yiqtol, w’yiqtol, and w’qatal) signals the shift of the text’s character from describing the vision in vss. 9-11 to reporting the speech of one of the holy ones in vs. 12. The mention that a holy one had spoken (vs. 13a) refers back to the speech in vs. 12, and the wayyiqtol הָנָּפָשָׁה should be understood in a pluperfect sense.

The linguistic analysis also furnished a satisfying explanation for the other challenging syntactic and semantic aspects of vs. 12a. A new subject is introduced: “a host.” Several features indicate that this host stands in contrast to the host of heaven, namely the sentence-initial position and indefiniteness of אֵלֶּה, the surprising use of feminine gender, the clause meaning of vs. 12a, and the host’s continuation as subject in vss. 12b-d, which have feminine verbs in sentence-initial position and no new subject introduced. With regard to the semantic function of the prepositions in vs. 12a, לָשׁ indicates disadvantage (“against”), or is used in a metaphoric-locational sense (“control over”), and ב is used in a modal sense so that either the activity is criminal and rebellious, or the agent is in a condition of rebellion and transgression. The logical subject of vs. 12a is the horn. The association of הַרְזֹּעַ in vs. 13c with other activities of the horn, as well as the intertextual relation with 11:31 and 12:11, supports such a view. The clause in 8:12a therefore introduces a counter-host who is set up by the horn “against the tāmīḏ in rebellion.” Verse 12b comments upon vs. 11c and describes the throwing down of the foundations of the sanctuary as the throwing down of truth. The end of vs. 12 shows
again that the horn lays claim to divine prerogatives, for it presumptuously grants success to its host in whatever it does.

Another holy being confronts the one who had just explained what the climax of the vision meant with a most urgent question: “How long the vision?” (vs. 13c). The definiteness of אֵין נַחֲלַת and its occurrences in chap. 8 imply that the question refers to the entire vision. The elements of the angelic cry for judgment have received a bewildering number of syntactic explanations. The best one, however, is that all the words following אֵין נַחֲלַת stand in apposition to it, and selectively specify four significant elements of the vision, all of which are associated with the destructive activities of the horn: the רָמִי d, the setting up of the devastating transgression, the holy, and the host to be a trampling.

The visionary revelation ends in vs. 14 with a ray of hope when the first holy being announces the denouement of the intolerable, dramatic situation caused by the horn and its host and bemoaned by the other angel: “until ‘evening-morning’ two thousand and three hundred then will (the) holy be restored.” The asyndetic and singular use of “evening” and “morning” evidences that the 2300 “evening-morning” designate 2300 days. The word sequence “evening-morning” is an allusion to creation, indicating that the restoration of (the) holy has to be understood as a divine act of creation, and further points to the Day of Atonement which is the only cultic day that explicitly starts in the evening and purges everything שֵׁם “holy,” that is, the holy sanctuary and the holy people.

The וּקְתָל וַעֲנֵיתִים follows the verbal forms in vs. 12c-d and, as passivum divinum, designates a divine activity that will happen after the completion of the “2300
evening-morning.” The Niphal form of הָפָךְ, being a *hapax legomenon*, should be understood as passive to the Hiphil, which refers to declaring someone as “in the right.” It therefore points to a divine judgment that will vindicate the “holy,” which in this circumstance refers in its indefinite form to both the sanctuary and the people of God, the two associations the root שָׁנַפְס has in the book of Daniel. The semantic range of the verbal root שָׁנַפְס is broad, and it is purposefully chosen to call to mind various contexts—relational (restoration), cultic (purification), and legal (vindication)—which fit both connotations of שָׁנַפְס. Thus, both points of the horn’s assault, the sanctuary and the people, are restored to their right status. Inasmuch as these entities are holy because of their relationship to God, it is theologically legitimate to infer that the restoration of holy to its right status necessarily implies the vindication of God himself.

A major conclusion of the linguistic analysis concerns the quality of the Hebrew of Dan 8:9-14, which frequently has been called poor and clumsy. However, my analysis of the MT of Dan 8:9-14 has shown that the text with its sentences is grammatically acceptable and well-formed, making full use of the entire range of syntactic possibilities. The grammatical idiosyncrasies need not necessarily be resolved by the assumption of textual corruption. Rather, the accumulation of peculiar cases in the Hebrew language serves the specific function of accentuating the passage and heightening the reader’s attention. The same high quality applies to the literary character of the text.

**Literary Analysis**

The general conclusion from the literary analysis—which focused on literary style,
thematic distribution, Leitwörter and keywords, and literary structure—is that the text in 8:9-14 is a carefully crafted passage and must be considered as a highly artistic literary piece displaying unity rather than disunity. The literary artistry is particularly exhibited in the following features: the poetic style at the climax of the vision proper in vs. 11; the gender shift of verbs in vss. 9-12, in specific the one in vs. 11 that highlights the importance of this verse; and the use of the Leitwort בַּרְזֵר, which is part of a thematic "hubris-fall leads to a great fall"-pattern of the entire vision that moves in a literary crescendo to the culmination of hubris and rebellion in vs. 11—the horn's usurpation of divine prerogatives and imitation of the divine—and finds its denouement in the divine intervention predicted at the end of the audition.

The semantic isotopies of the text reveal an interweaving of significant themes. Special focus lies on the movement from "power and violence," expressed by military and royal terminology, to "cult and holiness," expressed by cultic terminology. The thematic center of 8:9-14 consists of a cultic assault that will come to an end by a cultic measure: an eschatological Day of Atonement, combining both judgment and creation.

The literary features and the thematic distribution suggest a structure that is coherent with the linguistic findings, and that basically consists of the climax of the vision describing the horn's assault on truth (vss. 9-11) and the audition (vss. 12-14). The latter can be further divided into an angelic comment elaborating on the climactic efforts of the horn (vs. 12), the angelic cry for judgment (vs. 13), and the final proclamatory answer that truth will eventually gain the upper hand (vs. 14). This structure is at the same time the last installment of the "hubris-fall"-pattern in the vision.
The theological force of the text is determined by the conflict between the horn and its host on one side, and the heavenly commander and the host of God’s people on the other side. The horn power is characterized as the incarnation of anti-divine powers, and thus it typifies the role of a supernatural power who rages war against God and his celestial host. The conflict in chap. 8 is indeed stylized as a cosmic conflict.

The solution to this cosmic conflict is to be found in another master theme. As the horn power terrorizes the truth, attacks the holy people, and opposes God himself, it is deeply involved in cultic transgression. The final divine answer therefore needs to be a cultic one and is the eschatological Day of Atonement, the bringing together of judgment and re-creation. The attack on truth of the highest degree is met by the revelation of truth in the highest degree when everything holy is restored to its right place.

The literary artistry alone would identify 8:9-14 as an important section in the prophetic part of the book of Daniel. It is, however, in the intertextual analysis that the role of the climax of the vision in Dan 8 is perceived most clearly.

Intertextual Analysis

Finally, pursuing an author-intended and text-oriented intertextuality, the intertextual study systematically noted and carefully evaluated the lexical and thematic links of Dan 8:9-14 with other passages in the book of Daniel. The major conclusion of the intertextual analysis is that Dan 8:9-14 occupies a strategic place and role in the book of Daniel. Two main findings related to each other stand out.
First, each passage that forms an intertext contributes significantly to the understanding of 8:9-14. These texts help to support or clarify interpretations given in the linguistic and literary analyses. For example, the angelic comments in 8:23-26 give understanding to the horn as being a rebellious power of a different nature from the previous ones, while acting as a counterpart to the sage and assaulting both God and his people.

Second, Dan 8:9-14 is closely interwoven into the second part of the book of Daniel. Beyond this, it plays a strategic role in the thematic fabric of the entire book. In regard to the narrative section, Dan 8:9-14 takes up themes from major crises in the lives of Daniel and the Babylonian kings (chaps. 4-6) and projects these crises into an eschatological setting. The chapters following chap. 8 are dependent upon 8:9-14 in their choice of words and themes. While the prophetic word in chap. 9 sheds light on the time aspect of the 2300 “evening-morning” and points to the inauguration of the sanctuary that needs restoration in 8:14, chaps. 10-12 build upon the culmination of the vision of chap. 8 and expand the activities of the horn considerably. The close structural and thematic similarity between chap. 7 and chap. 8 is particularly interesting for the intertextual exegete, because these visions explain each other and reveal with more clarity both the distinct and the latent themes in the other vision. Above all, these two visions exhibit the crucial connection between judgment, creation, and cult, leading to the conclusion that the Day of Atonement, which uniquely combines these themes, constitutes the thematic and theological matrix of divine activities in both visions.
Several suggestions can be drawn from this study. First, my hope is that the present analysis invites the study of other passages in the book of Daniel using a similar approach, that is, by applying a text-oriented analysis. There are still obscurities in other Danielic texts that remain to be solved, and a systematic text-oriented approach might help to clarify some of them. Second, since the Day of Atonement motif with its thematic combination of judgment, creation, and cult has been found at the heart of Dan 8:9-14 (and of the vision in chap. 7), it suggests itself to trace such a motif in the book of Daniel, and, if other occurrences are detected, to specify their reason and function. At least in the prophetic part of the book, the motif of the Day of Atonement seems to play a significant role, so that the prophecies might be paradigmatically understood against it. Third, a systematic intertextual analysis of Dan 8:9-14 with other texts in the Hebrew Bible has yet to be carried out. Although I suspect that there are not many intertextual relations to be found on a terminological level, one should at least pursue the question whether the specific interplay of the thematic concepts of Dan 8:9-14 are found elsewhere. Finally, it would be worthwhile to examine the reception history of Dan 8:9-14, that is, the interpretations and appropriations the text has received. The application or recurrence of Danielic concepts present in 8:9-14, especially the Day of Atonement motif, in apocalyptic literature of the Second Temple period and the New Testament book of Revelation would appear to be a profitable subject for study as well.
Final Conclusion

This study has demonstrated that, as the text stands, Dan 8:9-14 is a well-crafted literary piece, which employs the entire range of linguistic possibilities, and plays an important role within the entire book, particularly within its prophetic section. The message of 8:9-14 is that truth and everything associated with it is terrorized by an ultimate incarnation of anti-divine power. However, at last God will intervene in a final restoration of everything holy to its rightful place, carrying out an eschatological day of atonement, and truth will stand victorious.
APPENDIX 1

A CONCORDANCE OF THE VOCABULARY OF DANIEL 8:9-14

IN THE BOOK OF DANIEL

The following table lists the words occurring in Dan 8:9-14 in alphabetic order. For each word is given the number of its occurrences in the Hebrew Bible, in the book of Daniel, and in Dan 8¹; the references where it occurs in Dan 8, the references where it occurs elsewhere in the Hebrew parts of Daniel (Dan 1 and 9–12); a translation equivalent; and notes, if necessary. If a word occurs more than once in the same verse, an indexed number after the reference shows how often this is the case. Pronouns, conjunctions, prepositions, and particles are not included in the list.

¹The statistics have been compiled with the help of Bible Works for Windows 6.0, and have been checked against DCH; HALOT; Abraham Even-Shoshan, A New Concordance of the Bible: Thesaurus of the Language of the Bible, Hebrew and Aramaic, Roots, Words, Proper Names, Phrases and Synonyms, 2d ed. (Jerusalem: "Kiryat Sepher," 1990); and Gerhard Lisowski, Konkordanz zum hebräischen Alten Testament, 2d ed. (Stuttgart: Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, 1981). Not infrequently, these sources differ slightly in the statistics of words that occur more than a hundred times in the Hebrew Bible. In such cases I chose usually the statistics given by the computer program.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Entry / Translation</strong></th>
<th><strong>Statistics: References in OT / Dan / Dan 8</strong></th>
<th><strong>References in Dan 8</strong></th>
<th><strong>References in Dan 1 and 9–12</strong></th>
<th><strong>Notes on Phrases</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון נון</td>
<td>977 / 19 / 6</td>
<td>8:3², 9², 13²</td>
<td>1:21; 9:1, 2, 27; 10:5, 13², 21; 11:1, 20, 27; 12:5²</td>
<td><img src="" alt="Note" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry / Translation</td>
<td>Statistics: OT / Dan / Dan 8</td>
<td>References in Dan 8</td>
<td>References in Dan 1 and 9–12</td>
<td>Notes on Phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the east</td>
<td>74 / 2 / 1</td>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>11:44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place,” “foundation”</td>
<td>17 / 1 / 1</td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanctuary</td>
<td>75 / 3 / 1</td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>9:17; 11:31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trampling</td>
<td>7 / 1 / 1</td>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when?</td>
<td>43 / 2 / 1</td>
<td>8:13</td>
<td>12:6</td>
<td>קרויה (29 / 2 / 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the south</td>
<td>110 / 12 / 2</td>
<td>8:4, 9</td>
<td>11:5, 6, 9, 11, 14, 15, always בנב (except in 8:4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>434 / 8 / 2</td>
<td>8:10, 17</td>
<td>9:18, 20; 10:7; 11:12, 19, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>2012 / 17 / 2</td>
<td>8:12, 13</td>
<td>1:2, 9, 12, 16, 17; 9:3, 10; 10:12, 15; 11:6, 11, 17, 21, 31; 12:11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evening</td>
<td>139 / 3 / 2</td>
<td>8:14, 26</td>
<td>9:21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>2629 / 24 / 4</td>
<td>8:4, 12, 24, 27</td>
<td>1:13; 9:12, 14, 15, 19; 11:3, 6, 7, 16, 17, 23, 24; 28, 30, 32, 36; 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so-and-so</td>
<td>1 / 1 / 1</td>
<td>8:13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime</td>
<td>93 / 3 / 2</td>
<td>8:12, 13</td>
<td>9:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>484 / 6 / 5</td>
<td>8:10, 11, 12, 13</td>
<td>10:1</td>
<td>לאמ עמש (18/1/1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry/Translation</td>
<td>Statistics: OT/Dan/Dan 8</td>
<td>References in Dan 8</td>
<td>References in Dan 1 and 9–12</td>
<td>Notes on Phrases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;beauty&quot;</td>
<td>31 / 4 / 1</td>
<td>8:9</td>
<td>11:16, 41, 45</td>
<td>הַעַזְויות in 8:9; נֵבָא הָדָעְשִׁים in 11:16 and 11:41; נֵבָא הָדָעְשְׁתֶּים in 11:45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;justify&quot;</td>
<td>41 / 2 / 1</td>
<td>8:14</td>
<td>12:3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;succeed&quot;</td>
<td>65 / 5 / 3</td>
<td>8:12, 24, 25</td>
<td>11:27, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;small&quot;</td>
<td>24 / 1 / 1</td>
<td>8:9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;holy&quot;</td>
<td>117 / 3 / 3</td>
<td>8:13, 24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;holiness&quot;</td>
<td>79 / 9 / 9</td>
<td>8:3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 20, 21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;horn&quot;</td>
<td>193 / 4 / 1</td>
<td>8:11</td>
<td>11:12, 36; 12:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;take away,&quot;</td>
<td>19 / 2 / 2</td>
<td>8:7, 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;trample&quot;</td>
<td>421 / 17 / 3</td>
<td>8:11, 252</td>
<td>1:7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 18; 9:6, 8; 10:13, 202; 21; 11:5; 12:1 (37 / 1 / 1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;prince&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;throw&quot;</td>
<td>125 / 3 / 3</td>
<td>8:7, 11, 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;three&quot;</td>
<td>431 / 9 / 2</td>
<td>8:1, 14</td>
<td>1:1, 5; 10:1, 2, 3; 11:2; 12:12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;heaven&quot;</td>
<td>421 / 5 / 2</td>
<td>8:8, 10</td>
<td>9:12; 11:4; 12:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry / Translation</th>
<th>Statistics: References in OT / Dan / Dan 8</th>
<th>References in Dan 8</th>
<th>References in Dan 1 and 9–12</th>
<th>Notes on Phrases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>שָׁמַע</td>
<td>92 / 8 / 2</td>
<td>8:13, 27</td>
<td>9:18, 26, 27²; 11:31; 12:11</td>
<td>adjective בָּשָׂם in 9:17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“devastate,” “desolate”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁמַע</td>
<td>1159 / 15 / 2</td>
<td>8:13, 16</td>
<td>1:14; 9:6, 10, 11, 14, 17, 18, 19; 10:9², 12; 12:7, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“hear”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חֶסְדָּא</td>
<td>104 / 5 / 3</td>
<td>8:11, 12, 13</td>
<td>11:31; 12:11</td>
<td>always חסדים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“continually,” “regularly”</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX 2

THE SEMANTIC FUNCTION OF THE PREPOSITION יָלַע

IN CLAUSES WITH נֶטֶן

The basic function of the preposition יָלַע in clauses with נֶטֶן is to indicate spatial position. Under this category fall the specific functions of the simple locative and the metaphorical locative. Other semantic functions are to indicate disadvantage, goal, comitative, and comparison. The following classification of 214 נֶטֶן-clauses that govern a prepositional phrase with יָלַע categorizes according to these semantic functions.1

1The semantic model upon which the classification of the preposition יָלַע (Appendix 1) and the preposition ב is based is X - r - Y, in which r means the relation in which X, the core of the phrase preceding the preposition, stands to Y, the core of the phrase following the preposition (so Jenni, Die Präposition Beth, 14-16). The use of X and Y in the classification refers to this semantic model.

2The clauses are counted according to the prepositional phrases with יָלַע, which means that if more than one prepositional phrase with יָלַע is governed by the same verbal root of נֶטֶן, each instance is counted separately. The classification does not list clauses in which יָלַע is not governed by the verb נֶטֶן though both occur in the same clause. In a number of cases the preposition יָלַע relates to a whole נֶטֶן-clause (X = נֶטֶן-clause), and the function of יָלַע is then, of course, not dependent upon the verb נֶטֶן. In these cases the preposition יָלַע indicates cause (“because”; Ps 115:1), or reference (“concerning,” “with regard to”; 2 Sam 18:11), or in the fixed construction יָלַע followed by a personal entity it specifies the norm according to which the giving process is performed (“according to,” “at,” “at the command of”; Gen 45:21; Josh 19:50; 2 Kgs 23:35). In other instances the preposition יָלַע occurs in a clause with נֶטֶן but the prepositional phrase is part of a clause element (direct object, indirect object etc.) and is not directly governed by the verb נֶטֶן (Gen 48:22; 1 Kgs 1:48 [cp. 3:6]; Isa 42:5; Jer 45:5; Ezek 28:18; 2 Chr 13:5; 35:25).
1 Simple locative ("on," "upon," "over") (178 times)

X, an entity which can be localized, is related to Y, a place or an entity which is located in space, in such a way that X is on or over Y. X can be a physical object (11) or a hypostatized abstract entity (12).

11 Localization of a physical object (X = physical object)

X is usually a thing, seldom a person (1 Kgs 5:5; 10:9; 2 Kgs 18:23=Isa 36:8; Jer 20:2; 2 Chr 9:8). Y is a place or a physical object which occupies a place: a thing, an animal, a person, or a part of a person (sometimes used pars pro toto).

111 Y is a place—contingent locative ("at," "next to")

Exod 26:35; 40:22; 1 Kgs 7:39 (twice ṣabytes); 8:36; 17:14; 18:1; 2 Kgs 16:14; 23:33; Ezek 32:5; Job 5:10; 2 Chr 6:27.

112 Y is physical object

1121 Y is a thing


1122 Y is an animal

Lev 16:8.

1123 Y is a person

Lev 8:7 (twice), 1 Kgs 12:4; 9; 2 Kgs 11:12; 18:14; Jer 26:15; Ezek 3:25; 4:8; 37:6; Jonah 1:14; Neh 10:33; 2 Chr 10:4; 9; 23:11.

1124 Y is part of a person

Gen 40:11; 40:21; 41:42; 42:37; Exod 29:20 (four times ṣabytes); 30:33; 34:33; Lev 8:23 (three times ṣabytes), 24 (three times ṣabytes), 27 (twice ṣabytes); 14:14 (three times ṣabytes), 17 (three times ṣabytes), 18, 25 (three times ṣabytes), 28 (three times ṣabytes), 29; Num 5:18; 6:19; Deut 28:48; 1 Sam 17:38; 2 Kgs 12:16;

3 A specific phrase which falls into this category is מְנַה + מַעֲשֵׂה "entrust to": Gen 42:37; 2 Kgs 12:16; 22:5, 7, 9; 1 Chr 29:8; 2 Chr 34:10, 17. See Lippiński in E. Lipiński and Heinz-Josef Fabry, מְנַה natan, TDOT, 10:94.
22:5, 7 (יָרֵא-יָרֵא), 9; Jer 27:2; 28:14; Ezek 16:11, 12; 23:42; Mic 3:5; Esth 6:9; 1 Chr 29:8; 2 Chr 34:10, 17.

In some of the above noted instances, the יָרֵא-clause, in which the preposition יָרֵא relates two physical objects with one another, is used metaphorically, though the function of יָרֵא needs to be marked as simple locative. There are different metaphors, like to give a yoke on the neck of someone as metaphor for a burden or punishment (Deut 28:48; 1 Kgs 12:4, 9; Jer 28:14; 2 Chr 10:4, 9), to put a specific amount of money upon persons or a land as metaphor for a duty (2 Kgs 18:14; 23:33; Neh 10:33), to put a key on someone’s shoulder as metaphor for transferring authority (Isa 22:22), to give innocent blood upon persons as metaphor for criminal responsibility (Jer 26:15; Jonah 1:14), to give cords or ropes on someone as metaphor for restriction (Ezek 3:25; 4:8), or to give a sword over city gates as metaphor for war or slaughter (Ezek 21:20).

12 Localization of an abstract entity (X = abstract entity)

An abstract entity is hypostatized and treated as concrete thing. In that way an abstract entity can be localized and can be given on or upon another entity. Again, Y can be a place, which usually implies a person or persons located there, or it can be a physical object which occupies a place—a thing, an animal, or a person—or, once, another hypostatized abstract entity.

121 Y is a place (the place may refer to persons located in that place)
Deut 11:25, 29 (twice יָרֵא); Ezek 32:8; Ps 8:2.

122 Y is a physical object

1221 Y is a thing
No entry.

1222 Y is an animal
Lev 16:21.

1223 Y is a person
Exod 32:29; Num 27:20; Deut 2:25; 26:6; 30:7; 1 Kgs 8:32; Jer 23:40; Ezek 7:3, 4, 8, 9; 23:7, 49; 36:29; Dan 11:21; 1 Chr 14:17; 22:9; 29:25.
“To give the divine spirit over you” could also be regarded as a metaphorical locative (2111): Num 11:25, 29; Isa 42:1.

4BHRG, 291 (§39.19/1[ii]), marks the function of יָרֵא here as comprehensive locative hypostatized.
123 Y is an abstract entity
Ps 69:28.

2 Metaphorical locative ("over") (17 times)

21 Indicating incumbency or rank ("over," "in control of") (X = person)

X, a personal entity, is set in a position over Y, a system which is usually personal but could also be a geographical name, a military entity, etc. Syntactically, the clauses can be distinguished between those which have a double direct object, one affected and another one effected (212), and those which do not have a double direct object (211).

211 without double direct object

2111 Y is a person
Deut 17:15; 1 Sam 12:13; 1 Kgs 2:35; 5:21; Neh 9:37; 2 Chr 32:6.

2112 Y is a place
Gen 41:41, 43.

212 with double direct object

The person (affected) is the direct object and a designation of position or rank (effected), which has the same grammatical function, is added, usually without preposition.

2121 Y is a person
Exod 18:25; Deut 1:15; 1 Kgs 14:7; 16:2; Neh 13:26; 2 Chr 2:10; 9:8b (the rank is added with the preposition ֵ֔ב).

22 Indicating value or supremacy ("over," "above") (category of X = category of Y)
Deut 26:19; 28:1.

3 Disadvantage ("against") (11 times)

An entity X is given for the disadvantage of an entity Y, which means that the giving process is carried out in a hostile sense and is directed toward or against a person, place, or abstract. The Y-complement can be regarded as an indirect object which is affected negatively.
31 Y is a person
   Jer 12:8; Ezek 19:8; 26:8; Neh 5:7; 2 Chr 20:22 (three בפ in one י INV- sentence).

32 Y is a place > person (a place name is used to refer to persons living there)
   Jer 4:16; Ezek 4:2 (twice).

33 Y is an abstract
   Dan 8:12.

4 Goal ("to," "for") (4 times)
   In these cases the preposition בפ, functioning similar to the preposition בפ, identifies the goal of the giving process. This function could be mistaken as indicating advantage ("for," "on behalf of").

41 Y is a person
   Isa 29:12 (י INV-N); Mic 1:14; Neh 2:7.

42 Y is an abstract
   Exod 30:16.

5 Comitative ("along with," "together with," "in addition to") (4 times)
   The preposition בפ is joining the two entities X (in below cases always the direct object) and Y, expressing that X undergoes the same action as Y.

51 Accompaniment ("along with," "together with")
   Exod 29:17 (once בפ); Ezek 25:10.

52 Addition ("in addition to")
   Num 35:6.
APPENDIX 3

THE SEMANTIC FUNCTION OF THE PREPOSITION ב

IN CLAUSES WITH נַע

In the following list, the semantic functions of all the 563 instances where the preposition ב occurs in a clause with נַע (except Dan 8:12a) are systematically classified.

It is again necessary to point out that my analysis has shown that ב has the same semantic functions in a נַע-clause as in clauses with other verbal predicates. Hence, this classification serves as exemplary overview of the wide range of semantic functions which ב can possess. The classification system follows Jenni, Die Präposition Beth (1992). Each entry has been looked up in Jenni’s exhaustive reference list and classified accordingly. The numbering system has been retained in order to facilitate easy comparison with Jenni’s list. Included are also those functions of ב which are not exemplified in clauses with נַע. Those occurrences of ב in נַע-sentences where ב introduces a dependent clause (e.g., a temporal clause or a causal clause) or where it is part of a sentence constituent phrase/clause are not referenced in the classification that follows, because in these cases the prepositional phrase with ב is not governed by the verb נַע. Since there is no functional difference of ב in clauses with נַע in the Niphal (54

5The semantic classification of ב is again based on the model X - r - Y (see Appendix 2, n. 1).

763
times) and in clauses with הַדְּגוּ בָּא in the Qal (509 times), both groups of clauses are compiled
in one list. The clauses with הַדְּגוּ בָּא in the Niphal are marked by underlining.

1 Realization or circumstantial use (72 times)

11 Beth essentiae
   1126 Num 18:26; 36:2; Josh 21:8, 12; 1 Chr 6:50.

12 Beth exclamationis
   No entry.

13 Beth constitutionis
   No entry.

14 Beth comitantiae
   No entry.

15 Beth gesticulationis
   1517 Jer 12:8; Pss 46:7; 68:34.

16 Beth causae
   1643 Exod 16:3.
   1656 Jer 32:36 (3x); Ezra 9:7 (4x).

17 Beth instrumenti
   1713 2 Kgs 5:1.
   1724 Lev 26:46; Dan 9:10; Neh 10:30.
   1731 Exod 29:12; Lev 8:15.
   1758 Num 36:2.
   1778 Jer 21:10.
   1795 2 Chr 31:15.

18 Beth pretii
   1811 Gen 47:16, 17 (4x); Ezek 27:12, 13, 16 (2x), 17, 19, 22 (2x); Joel 4:3.
   1812 Gen 23:9; Lev 25:37; Deut 2:28; 14:25; 1 Kgs 21:6, 15; Jer 15:13; 1 Chr

---

*The preposition ב equates in some way an entity Y with an entity X which is part of or
presupposed by the predicate of the clause or sentence (Jenni, *Die Präposition Beth*, 67). For
definitions of the specific uses of ב in this category see ibid., 74-78.
765

21:22.
1813 Gen 29:27.
1814 Deut 14:26 (6x); Cant 8:7; Lam 1:11; 1 Chr 21:25.
1815 Lev 25:37; Ezek 18:8, 13; Ps 15:5.
1816 Exod 21:22.
1831 Esth 7:3 (2x).
1871 Ezra 9:7.
1872 Jer 15:13; 17:3; Neh 9:37.
1896 1 Kgs 14:16 (the secondary preposition מִן "on account of").

19 *Beth communicationis*

No entry.

2 **Localization** (447 times)

21 Y is a place = way
No entry.

22 Y is a place = area

| 2213 | 1 Kgs 12:29. |
| 2216 | Esth 3:15; 4:8; 8:14; 9:14; 2 Chr 36:7. |
| 2218 | 2 Chr 5:10. |
| 2221 | Ezek 39:11. |
| 2222 | Ezra 9:9; 2 Chr 17:19; 2 Chr 24:9. |
| 2225 | Josh 20:8 (3x); 22:7; Jer 22:20. |
| 2228 | Job 14:13. |
| 2241 | 2 Chr 17:2 (2x). |
| 2242 | Gen 41:48; 1 Sam 27:5; Amos 4:6; 2 Chr 17:19. |
| 2243 | Ezek 6:14. |
| 2244 | Prov 1:20. |
| 2245 | 2 Chr 11:11. |
| 2251 | Gen 47:11 (2x); Exod 16:3; Num 35:14; 1 Kgs 9:11; Ezek 30:13; 1 Chr 6:40; 2 Chr 17:2. |
| 2252 | Lev 25:24; 26:1, 6; Josh 14:4; Ezek 25:4; Ps 105:32; Neh 3:36. |
| 2253 | Joel 3:3. |
| 2256 | Deut 11:15; Ezek 17:5; Zech 10:1. |
| 2258 | Josh 20:8; Isa 41:19; 43:20 (2x); Jer 9:1. |

---

The preposition ב is followed by a designation of place or space, which is not necessarily geographical.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.
2259  Esth 3:14; Joel 3:3.
2261  Gen 1:17; Joel 3:3.
2268  Ezek 26:20; 32:23, 24, 25, 26, 32.
2271  Lev 14:34; Isa 56:5.
2272  2 Chr 3:16.
2277  1 Kgs 2:5 (2x).
2278  Job 19:23.
2281  Lev 19:28; 24:19, 20, 20; Deut 7:15.
2283  1 Kgs 8:32; Ezek 9:10; 11:21; 16:12, 43; 17:19; 22:31; Esth 6:8; 2 Chr 6:23.
2293  Gen 47:11.

23 Y is a place = space
2314  Exod 36:1.
2319  Ezek 37:14.
2323  Jer 12:7.
2324  Ezch 38:4.
2325  Deut 15:17.
2326  Deut 18:18; 1 Kgs 22:23; Jer 1:9; 5:14; Ps 40:4; 2 Chr 18:22.
2327  Gen 16:5; 2 Sam 12:8; Ezek 37:6.
2328  Exod 31:6; 35:34; 36:2; 1 Kgs 10:24; Jer 32:40; Ps 4:8; Eccl 3:11; Ezra 7:27; 2 Chr 9:23.
2329  Ezek 16:27; Pss 27:12; 41:3.
2331  Lev 20:15.
2333  Ezek 29:4.
2341  2 Chr 9:16.
2342  Exod 26:34; 30:36; 40:22; 1 Kgs 7:51; Isa 56:5; Lam 2:7; Ezra 1:7; Neh 13:4; 2 Chr 4:7; 5:1; 35:3.
2344  Gen 42:27; Jer 52:11; Ps 33:7; 2 Chr 36:7.
2345  2 Chr 22:11.
2346  Deut 15:17.
2347  2 Chr 24:8.
2353  Jer 32:14; Ezek 4:9; Prov 23:31.
2354  Gen 43:23.
2357  Jer 27:8; Ezek 19:9.
2359  Lev 10:1; Num 16:7.
2361  Isa 43:16.
2366  Lam 3:29.
2369  2 Kgs 19:18; Isa 37:19.
2373  1 Sam 24:11.
2376  Isa 43:16.
2395  Gen 40:3; 41:10; Num 21:29.
2397  Ecel 10:6.

24  Y is the metaphorical expression ‘in the eyes of’

25  Y is a relative localization
2511  Jer 14:13.
2512  Ezra 9:8.
2514  Jer 24:9; Amos 4:6.
2518  Gen 48:9.
2523  Jer 15:13; 17:3.
2531  Exod 39:25 (2x).
2535  Gen 41:48; 2 Chr 6:13.
2536  1 Kgs 6:27.
2539  Ezek 29:12; 31:14.
2542  Jer 31:33; Ezek 11:19; 36:26, 27.
2548  Deut 21:8.
2564  1 Sam 9:22.
2576  Ezek 32:23.
2588  2 Kgs 12:10 (ketib).
26 Y is a contact
   2611 Exod 7:4.
   2613 Ezek 26:9.
   2617 Ezek 30:8, 14, 16.
   2621 Lev 17:10; 20:3, 6; 26:17; Ezek 14:8; 15:7.
   2624 Dan 1:17.
   2631 Joel 2:17.
   2636 Ps 50:20.
   2637 Deut 6:22 (3x); Num 31:3; Ezek 25:14, 17; Neh 9:10 (3x).
   2638 Ezek 23:25.
   2647 Deut 21:17.

27 Y = X = series of temporal or abstract expressions
   2711 1 Kgs 5:25.

28 Y is a set to which X is given
   2811 Jer 6:27.
   2817 Ezek 44:28.
   2824 1 Chr 12:19.
   2827 2 Sam 24:15; 1 Chr 21:14.
   2841 Isa 8:18.
   2844 Jer 29:18; Ezek 5:14; Joel 2:19; 2 Chr 7:20.
   2875 Ezek 32:25.

29 Y is a set to which X already belongs
   2914 Jer 49:15 (2x); Obad 2.
   2952 2 Chr 31:19 (2x).
   2956 Num 18:21.

3 Temporalization (34 times)
   3111 Neh 10:33.
   3113 2 Chr 27:5.
   3151 Deut 24:15; Jer 52:34; Neh 12:47.
   3154 Lev 27:23; Josh 9:27; 1 Sam 12:18; 27:6; 1 Kgs 13:3; Jer 39:10; Esth 8:1;
       1 Chr 16:7.

*The preposition 2 expresses contact, whereby the activity is always for the disadvantage of the referent of the prepositional phrase.

*The preposition 2 is followed by a designation of time (Y = temporal expression).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3159</td>
<td>Lev 5:24.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3163</td>
<td>Neh 12:47 (2x).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3165</td>
<td>1 Chr 22:9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3172</td>
<td>Exod 16:8; Zeph 3:5 (2x).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3175</td>
<td>Exod 16:8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3177</td>
<td>Job 35:10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3351</td>
<td>Ezra 9:8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3415</td>
<td>Lev 26:4; Deut 11:14; 28:12; Jer 5:24; Pss 1:3; 104:27; 145:15.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3442</td>
<td>Lev 7:36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3512</td>
<td>1 Chr 16:7.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Modalization

#### 41 Y is an abstract of quality
- 4134 Isa 61:8.
- 4135 2 Chr 31:15.

#### 42 Y is an abstract of an activity which is expressed by an intransitive verb
- 4261 Gen 45:2.

#### 43 Y is an abstract of an inner activity expressed by an intransitive verb
- 4311 Ezek 36:5.

#### 44 Y is an abstract of an activity which is expressed by a transitive verb
- 4451 Hos 13:11.
- 4462 Ezek 36:5.
- 4469 Prov 13:10.

### 5 Parallelization

#### 5211 1 Kgs 13:5.
- 5311 Ezek 32:29.

---

10 The preposition $\Delta$ is followed by an abstract expression ($Y = $ abstract) that qualifies the predicate $X$.

11 The preposition $\Delta$ is followed by a complete predicate that is nominalized or pronominalized.
BIBLIOGRAPHY


______. "Das Geschlecht der hebräischen Hauptwörter: (Fortsetzung)." Zeitschrift für die alttestamentliche Wissenschaft 16 (1896): 41-121.


Auchincloss, W. S. The Only Key to Daniel’s Prophecies. New York: Van Nostrand, 1903.


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.


Buchler-Gillmayr, Susanne. [See under Gillmayr-Bucher, Susanne.]


_____.


787

, "The Son of Man and the Saints of the Most High in the Book of Daniel." 


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.


________. *The Structure of Psalms 93-100.* Biblical and Judaic Studies from the University of California, San Diego, no. 5. Winona Lake: Eisenbrauns, 1997.


Magistris, Simon de, ed. Daniel secundum septuaginta: ex tetraplis Origenis (Rome: Typis Propagandae Fidei, 1772


828


———. “Point of View in Storytelling: An Experiment in Narrative Criticism in Daniel 4.” Didaskalia 8, no. 2 (Spring 1997): 30-42.


845


———. *Das Buch Daniel: textkritische Untersuchung*. Stuttgart: Roth, 1899.


852

——. “Form und Inhalt: Ein Versuch, gegenwärtige methodische Differenzen
durchsichtiger und damit überwindbar zu machen; dargestellt anhand von Ps 150.”

——. Metaphorische Grammatik: Wege zur Integration von Grammatik und
Textinterpretation in der Exegese. Arbeiten zu Text und Sprache im Alten

——. “Motive und Ziele sprachwissenschaftlicher Methodik.” Biblische Notizen 18

——. “Die Sprache der Zeichenkörper: Textinterne (Ausdrucks-)Syntax zu Daniel
8.” In “Und die Wahrheit wurde hinweggefegt”: Daniel 8 linguistisch interpretiert,


——. “Wovon reden die Exegeten? Zum Verständnis der Exegese als verstehender

Scullion, J. J. “Righteousness (OT).” The Anchor Bible Dictionary. Edited by David Noel

Segal, J. B. “Intercalation and the Hebrew Calendar.” Vetus Testamentum 7 (1957): 250-
307.

Segert, Stanislav. Altaramäische Grammatik: mit Bibliographie, Chrestomathie und

——. “Poetic Structures in the Hebrew Sections of the Book of Daniel.” In Solving
Riddles and Untying Knots: Biblical, Epigraphic, and Semitic Studies in Honor of
Jonas C. Greenfield, ed. Ziony Zevit, Seymour Gitin, and Michael Sokoloff, 261-

——. “Prague Structuralism in American Biblical Scholarship: Performance and
Potential.” In The Word of the Lord Shall Go Forth: Essays in Honor of David Noel
Freedman in Celebration of His Sixtieth Birthday, ed. Carol L. Meyers and M.
O’Connor, 697-708. American Schools of Oriental Research Special Volume

——. Review of Metaphorische Grammatik, by Harald Schweizer. Journal of the

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.


865


Willey, Patricia Tull. [See under Tull, Patricia K.]


Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.


